

NCEES

This document is protected under U.S. and international copyright law. You may print this document for your personal use, but you may not distribute it electronically or in print or post it on the internet without the express written permission of NCEES. Contact [permissions@ncees.org](mailto:permissions@ncees.org) for more information.



# FE Reference Handbook 10.5

Copyright ©2020 by NCEES®. All rights reserved.

All NCEES material is copyrighted under the laws of the United States. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means without the prior written permission of NCEES. Requests for permissions should be addressed in writing to [permissions@ncees.org](mailto:permissions@ncees.org).

ISBN 978-1-947801-11-0

Printed in the United States of America  
Seventh printing April 2025  
Edition 10.5

## **Introduction**

### **About the handbook**

The Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) exam is computer based, and the *FE Reference Handbook* is the only resource material you may use during the exam. Reviewing it before exam day will help you become familiar with the charts, formulas, tables, and other reference information provided. You won't be allowed to bring your personal copy of the handbook into the exam room. Instead, the computer-based exam will include a PDF version of the handbook for your use. No printed copies of the handbook will be allowed in the exam room.

The PDF version of the *FE Reference Handbook* that you use on exam day will be very similar to the printed version. Pages not needed to solve exam questions—such as the cover, introductory material, index, and exam specifications—will not be included in the PDF version. In addition, NCEES will periodically revise and update the handbook, and each FE exam will be administered using the updated version.

The *FE Reference Handbook* does not contain all the information required to answer every question on the exam. Basic theories, conversions, formulas, and definitions examinees are expected to know have not been included. Special material required for the solution of a particular exam question will be included in the question itself.

### **Updates on exam content and procedures**

[NCEES.org](https://www.ncees.org) is our home on the web. Visit us there for updates on everything exam related, including [specifications](#), [exam-day policies](#), [scoring](#), and [practice tests](#). A PDF version of the *FE Reference Handbook* similar to the one you will use on exam day is also available there.

### **Errata**

To report errata in this book, send your correction using our chat feature or your account on [NCEES.org](https://www.ncees.org). Examinees are not penalized for any errors in the *Handbook* that affect an exam question.





## **Contents**

|                                                 |     |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Units and Conversion Factors .....              | 1   |
| Ethics and Professional Practice .....          | 4   |
| Safety .....                                    | 14  |
| Mathematics .....                               | 35  |
| Engineering Probability and Statistics .....    | 63  |
| Chemistry and Biology .....                     | 85  |
| Statics .....                                   | 94  |
| Dynamics .....                                  | 101 |
| Materials Science/Structure of Matter .....     | 116 |
| Mechanics of Materials .....                    | 129 |
| Thermodynamics .....                            | 142 |
| Fluid Mechanics .....                           | 176 |
| Heat Transfer .....                             | 203 |
| Instrumentation, Measurement, and Control ..... | 219 |
| Engineering Economics .....                     | 229 |
| Chemical Engineering .....                      | 237 |
| Civil Engineering .....                         | 259 |
| Environmental Engineering .....                 | 312 |
| Electrical and Computer Engineering .....       | 356 |
| Industrial and Systems Engineering .....        | 419 |
| Mechanical Engineering .....                    | 433 |
| Index .....                                     | 463 |
| Appendix: FE Exam Specifications .....          | 473 |



# Units and Conversion Factors

## Distinguishing Pound-Force from Pound-Mass

The FE exam and this handbook use both the metric system of units and the U.S. Customary System (USCS). In the USCS system of units, both force and mass are called *pounds*. Therefore, one must distinguish the pound-force (lbf) from the pound-mass (lbm).

The pound-force is that force which accelerates one pound-mass at 32.174 ft/sec<sup>2</sup>. Thus, 1 lbf = 32.174 lbm-ft/sec<sup>2</sup>. The expression 32.174 lbm-ft/(lbf-sec<sup>2</sup>) is designated as  $g_c$  and is used to resolve expressions involving both mass and force expressed as pounds. For instance, in writing Newton's second law, the equation would be written as  $F = ma/g_c$ , where  $F$  is in lbf,  $m$  in lbm, and  $a$  is in ft/sec<sup>2</sup>.

Similar expressions exist for other quantities:

Kinetic energy,  $KE = mv^2/2g_c$ , with  $KE$  in (ft-lbf)

Potential energy,  $PE = mgh/g_c$ , with  $PE$  in (ft-lbf)

Fluid pressure,  $p = \rho gh/g_c$ , with  $p$  in (lbf/ft<sup>2</sup>)

Specific weight,  $SW = \rho g/g_c$ , in (lbf/ft<sup>3</sup>)

Shear stress,  $\tau = (\mu/g_c)(dv/dy)$ , with shear stress in (lbf/ft<sup>2</sup>).

In all these examples,  $g_c$  should be regarded as a force unit conversion factor. It is frequently not written explicitly in engineering equations. However, its use is required to produce a consistent set of units.

Note that the force unit conversion factor  $g_c$  [lbm-ft/(lbf-sec<sup>2</sup>)] should not be confused with the local acceleration of gravity  $g$ , which has different units (m/s<sup>2</sup> or ft/sec<sup>2</sup>) and may be either its standard value (9.807 m/s<sup>2</sup> or 32.174 ft/sec<sup>2</sup>) or some other local value.

If the problem is presented in USCS units, it may be necessary to use the constant  $g_c$  in the equation to have a consistent set of units.

Constants and conversion factors provided are approximate, with sufficient accuracy to solve exam questions.

| METRIC PREFIXES   |        |        | COMMONLY USED EQUIVALENTS                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |  |
|-------------------|--------|--------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|--|
| Multiple          | Prefix | Symbol |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-18</sup> | atto   | a      | 1 gallon of water weighs 8.34 lbf<br>1 cubic foot of water weighs 62.4 lbf<br>1 cubic inch of mercury weighs 0.491 lbf<br>The mass of 1 cubic meter of water is 1,000 kilograms<br>1 mg/L is 8.34 × 10 <sup>-6</sup> lbm/gal |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-15</sup> | femto  | f      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-12</sup> | pico   | p      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-9</sup>  | nano   | n      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-6</sup>  | micro  | μ      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-3</sup>  | milli  | m      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-2</sup>  | centi  | c      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>-1</sup>  | deci   | d      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>1</sup>   | deka   | da     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>2</sup>   | hecto  | h      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>3</sup>   | kilo   | k      | TEMPERATURE CONVERSIONS                                                                                                                                                                                                      |  |  |
| 10 <sup>6</sup>   | mega   | M      | °F = 1.8 (°C) + 32                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| 10 <sup>9</sup>   | giga   | G      | °C = (°F – 32)/1.8                                                                                                                                                                                                           |  |  |
| 10 <sup>12</sup>  | tera   | T      | °R = °F + 459.69                                                                                                                                                                                                             |  |  |
| 10 <sup>15</sup>  | peta   | P      | K = °C + 273.15                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |
| 10 <sup>18</sup>  | exa    | E      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |  |  |

## Significant Figures

Significant figures of numbers in math operations will determine the accuracy of the result. General rules for significant digits are:

*Rule 1:* Non-zero digits are always significant.

*Rule 2:* Any zeros between two significant digits are significant.

*Rule 3a:* In the decimal portion of a number whose absolute value is less than 1, all zeroes to the right of the first non-zero digit are significant.

*Rule 3b:* In the decimal portion of a number whose absolute value is greater than or equal to 1, all zeroes are significant.

*Rule 4 (Addition and Subtraction):* The number used in the calculation with the least number of significant digits after the decimal point dictates the number of significant figures after the decimal point. The number with the most significant figures to the left of the decimal point dictates the number of significant digits to the left of decimal point.

*Rule 5 (Multiplication and Division):* The result of the operation has the same number of significant digits as the input number with the least number of significant digits.

*Rule 6:* In the solution of engineering problems, it is customary to retain 3–4 significant digits in the final result.

## Ideal Gas Constants

The universal gas constant, designated as  $\bar{R}$  in the table below, relates pressure, volume, temperature, and number of moles of an ideal gas. When that universal constant,  $\bar{R}$ , is divided by the molecular weight of the gas, the result, often designated as  $R$ , has units of energy per degree per unit mass [kJ/(kg·K) or ft-lbf/(lbm·°R)] and becomes characteristic of the particular gas. Some disciplines, notably chemical engineering, often use the symbol  $R$  to refer to the universal gas constant  $\bar{R}$ .

## Fundamental Constants

| Quantity                                                  |        | Symbol    | Value                    | Units                                |
|-----------------------------------------------------------|--------|-----------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| electron charge                                           |        | $e$       | $1.6022 \times 10^{-19}$ | C (coulombs)                         |
| Faraday constant                                          |        | $F$       | 96,485                   | coulombs/(mol)                       |
| gas constant                                              | metric | $\bar{R}$ | 8,314                    | J/(kmol·K)                           |
| gas constant                                              | metric | $\bar{R}$ | 8.314                    | kPa·m <sup>3</sup> /(kmol·K)         |
| gas constant                                              | USCS   | $\bar{R}$ | 1,545                    | ft-lbf/(lb mole·°R)                  |
|                                                           |        | $\bar{R}$ | 0.08206                  | L·atm/(mole·K)                       |
| gravitation–Newtonian constant                            |        | $G$       | $6.673 \times 10^{-11}$  | m <sup>3</sup> /(kg·s <sup>2</sup> ) |
| gravitation–Newtonian constant                            |        | $G$       | $6.673 \times 10^{-11}$  | N·m <sup>2</sup> /kg <sup>2</sup>    |
| gravity acceleration (standard)                           | metric | $g$       | 9.807                    | m/s <sup>2</sup>                     |
| gravity acceleration (standard)                           | USCS   | $g$       | 32.174                   | ft/sec <sup>2</sup>                  |
| molar volume (ideal gas), $T = 273.15$ K, $p = 101.3$ kPa |        | $V_m$     | 22,414                   | L/kmol                               |
| speed of light (exact)                                    |        | $c$       | 299,792,458              | m/s                                  |
| Stefan-Boltzmann constant                                 |        | $\sigma$  | $5.67 \times 10^{-8}$    | W/(m <sup>2</sup> ·K <sup>4</sup> )  |

# Units and Conversion Factors

| Multiply                       | By                      | To Obtain                               | Multiply                                  | By                     | To Obtain                                 |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| acre                           | 43,560                  | square feet (ft <sup>2</sup> )          | joule (J)                                 | $9.478 \times 10^{-4}$ | Btu                                       |
| ampere-hr (A-hr)               | 3,600                   | coulomb (C)                             | J                                         | 0.7376                 | ft-lbf                                    |
| ångström (Å)                   | $1 \times 10^{-10}$     | meter (m)                               | J                                         | 1                      | newton•m (N•m)                            |
| atmosphere (atm)               | 76.0                    | cm, mercury (Hg)                        | J/s                                       | 1                      | watt (W)                                  |
| atm, std                       | 29.92                   | in., mercury (Hg)                       |                                           |                        |                                           |
| atm, std                       | 14.70                   | lb/in <sup>2</sup> abs (psia)           | kilogram (kg)                             | 2.205                  | pound-mass (lbm)                          |
| atm, std                       | 33.90                   | ft, water                               | kgf                                       | 9.8066                 | newton (N)                                |
| atm, std                       | $1.013 \times 10^5$     | pascal (Pa)                             | kilometer (km)                            | 3,281                  | feet (ft)                                 |
|                                |                         |                                         | km/hr                                     | 0.621                  | mph                                       |
| bar                            | $1 \times 10^5$         | Pa                                      | kilopascal (kPa)                          | 0.145                  | lb/in <sup>2</sup> (psi)                  |
| bar                            | 0.987                   | atm                                     | kilowatt (kW)                             | 1.341                  | horsepower (hp)                           |
| barrels—oil                    | 42                      | gallons—oil                             | kW                                        | 3,413                  | Btu/hr                                    |
| Btu                            | 1,055                   | joule (J)                               | kW                                        | 737.6                  | (ft-lbf)/sec                              |
| Btu                            | $2.928 \times 10^{-4}$  | kilowatt-hr (kWh)                       | kW-hour (kWh)                             | 3,413                  | Btu                                       |
| Btu                            | 778                     | ft-lbf                                  | kWh                                       | 1.341                  | hp-hr                                     |
| Btu/hr                         | $3.930 \times 10^{-4}$  | horsepower (hp)                         | kWh                                       | $3.6 \times 10^6$      | joule (J)                                 |
| Btu/hr                         | 0.293                   | watt (W)                                | kip (K)                                   | 1,000                  | lbf                                       |
| Btu/hr                         | 0.216                   | ft-lbf/sec                              | K                                         | 4,448                  | newton (N)                                |
|                                |                         |                                         |                                           |                        |                                           |
| calorie (g-cal)                | $3.968 \times 10^{-3}$  | Btu                                     | liter (L)                                 | 61.02                  | in <sup>3</sup>                           |
| cal                            | $1.560 \times 10^{-6}$  | hp-hr                                   | L                                         | 0.264                  | gal (U.S. Liq)                            |
| cal                            | 4.184                   | joule (J)                               | L                                         | $10^{-3}$              | m <sup>3</sup>                            |
| cal/sec                        | 4.184                   | watt (W)                                | L/second (L/s)                            | 2.119                  | ft <sup>3</sup> /min (cfm)                |
| centimeter (cm)                | $3.281 \times 10^{-2}$  | foot (ft)                               | L/s                                       | 15.85                  | gal (U.S.)/min (gpm)                      |
| cm                             | 0.394                   | inch (in)                               |                                           |                        |                                           |
| centipoise (cP)                | 0.001                   | pascal•sec (Pa•s)                       | meter (m)                                 | 3.281                  | feet (ft)                                 |
| centipoise (cP)                | 1                       | g/(m•s)                                 | m                                         | 1.094                  | yard                                      |
| centipoise (cP)                | 2.419                   | lbm/hr-ft                               | m/second (m/s)                            | 196.8                  | feet/min (ft/min)                         |
| centistoke (cSt)               | $1 \times 10^{-6}$      | m <sup>2</sup> /sec (m <sup>2</sup> /s) | mile (statute)                            | 5,280                  | feet (ft)                                 |
| cubic feet/second (cfs)        | 0.646317                | million gallons/day (MGD)               | mile (statute)                            | 1.609                  | kilometer (km)                            |
| cubic foot (ft <sup>3</sup> )  | 7.481                   | gallon                                  | mile/hour (mph)                           | 88.0                   | ft/min (fpm)                              |
| cubic meters (m <sup>3</sup> ) | 1,000                   | liters                                  | mph                                       | 1.609                  | km/h                                      |
|                                |                         |                                         | mm of Hg                                  | $1.316 \times 10^{-3}$ | atm                                       |
| electronvolt (eV)              | $1.602 \times 10^{-19}$ | joule (J)                               | mm of H <sub>2</sub> O                    | $9.678 \times 10^{-5}$ | atm                                       |
|                                |                         |                                         |                                           |                        |                                           |
| foot (ft)                      | 30.48                   | cm                                      | newton (N)                                | $1 \times 10^5$        | dyne                                      |
| ft                             | 0.3048                  | meter (m)                               | newton (N)                                | 0.225                  | lbf                                       |
| ft of H <sub>2</sub> O         | 0.4332                  | psi                                     | newton (N)                                | 1                      | kg•m/s <sup>2</sup>                       |
| ft-pound (ft-lbf)              | $1.285 \times 10^{-3}$  | Btu                                     | N•m                                       | 0.7376                 | ft-lbf                                    |
| ft-lbf                         | $3.766 \times 10^{-7}$  | kilowatt-hr (kWh)                       | N•m                                       | 1                      | joule (J)                                 |
| ft-lbf                         | 0.324                   | calorie (g-cal)                         |                                           |                        |                                           |
| ft-lbf                         | 1.356                   | joule (J)                               | pascal (Pa)                               | $9.869 \times 10^{-6}$ | atmosphere (atm)                          |
| ft-lbf/sec                     | $1.818 \times 10^{-3}$  | horsepower (hp)                         | Pa                                        | 1                      | newton/m <sup>2</sup> (N/m <sup>2</sup> ) |
|                                |                         |                                         | Pa•sec (Pa•s)                             | 10                     | poise (P)                                 |
| gallon (U.S. Liq)              | 231                     | in <sup>3</sup>                         | pound (lbm, avdp)                         | 0.454                  | kilogram (kg)                             |
| gallon (U.S. Liq)              | 3.785                   | liter (L)                               | lbf                                       | 4.448                  | N                                         |
| gallon (U.S. Liq)              | 0.134                   | ft <sup>3</sup>                         | lbf-ft                                    | 1.356                  | N•m                                       |
| gallons of water               | 8.3453                  | pounds of water                         | lbf/in <sup>2</sup> (psi)                 | 0.068                  | atm                                       |
| gamma (γ, Γ)                   | $1 \times 10^{-9}$      | tesla (T)                               | psi                                       | 2.307                  | ft of H <sub>2</sub> O                    |
| gauss                          | $1 \times 10^{-4}$      | T                                       | psi                                       | 2.036                  | in. of Hg                                 |
| gram (g)                       | $2.205 \times 10^{-3}$  | pound (lbm)                             | psi                                       | 6,895                  | Pa                                        |
|                                |                         |                                         |                                           |                        |                                           |
| hectare                        | $1 \times 10^4$         | square meters (m <sup>2</sup> )         | radian (rad)                              | $180/\pi$              | degree                                    |
| hectare                        | 2.47104                 | acres                                   | revolution (rev)                          | $2 \times \pi$         | radian                                    |
| horsepower (hp)                | 42.4                    | Btu/min                                 | rpm                                       |                        |                                           |
| hp                             | 745.7                   | watt (W)                                | (revolutions per minute)                  | $2 \times \pi/60$      | radian/second                             |
| hp                             | 33,000                  | (ft-lbf)/min                            |                                           |                        |                                           |
| hp                             | 550                     | (ft-lbf)/sec                            | slug                                      | 32.174                 | pound-mass (lbm)                          |
| hp-hr                          | 2,545                   | Btu                                     | stokes                                    | $1 \times 10^{-4}$     | m <sup>2</sup> /s                         |
| hp-hr                          | $1.98 \times 10^6$      | ft-lbf                                  |                                           |                        |                                           |
| hp-hr                          | $2.68 \times 10^6$      | joule (J)                               | tesla                                     | 1.0                    | weber/m <sup>2</sup>                      |
| hp-hr                          | 0.746                   | kWh                                     | therm                                     | $1 \times 10^5$        | Btu                                       |
|                                |                         |                                         | ton (metric)                              | 1,000                  | kilogram (kg)                             |
|                                |                         |                                         | ton (short)                               | 2,000                  | pound-force (lbf)                         |
|                                |                         |                                         |                                           |                        |                                           |
| inch (in.)                     | 2.540                   | centimeter (cm)                         | watt (W)                                  | 3.413                  | Btu/hr                                    |
| in. of Hg                      | 0.0334                  | atm                                     | W                                         | $1.341 \times 10^{-3}$ | horsepower (hp)                           |
| in. of Hg                      | 13.60                   | in. of H <sub>2</sub> O                 | W                                         | 1                      | joule/s (J/s)                             |
| in. of H <sub>2</sub> O        | 0.0361                  | lbf/in <sup>2</sup> (psi)               | weber/m <sup>2</sup> (Wb/m <sup>2</sup> ) | 10,000                 | gauss                                     |
| in. of H <sub>2</sub> O        | 0.002458                | atm                                     |                                           |                        |                                           |

# Ethics and Professional Practice

## Code of Ethics

Engineering is considered to be a "profession" rather than an "occupation" because of several important characteristics shared with other recognized learned professions, law, medicine, and theology: special knowledge, special privileges, and special responsibilities. Professions are based on a large knowledge base requiring extensive training. Professional skills are important to the well-being of society. Professions are self-regulating, in that they control the training and evaluation processes that admit new persons to the field. Professionals have autonomy in the workplace; they are expected to utilize their independent judgment in carrying out their professional responsibilities. Finally, professions are regulated by ethical standards. (Harris, C.E., M.S. Pritchard, & M.J. Rabins, *Engineering Ethics: Concepts and Cases*, Wadsworth Publishing company, pages 27–28, 1995.)

The expertise possessed by engineers is vitally important to societal welfare. In order to serve society effectively, engineers must maintain a high level of technical competence. However, a high level of technical expertise without adherence to ethical guidelines is as much a threat to public welfare as is professional incompetence. Therefore, engineers must also be guided by ethical principles.

The ethical principles governing the engineering profession are embodied in codes of ethics. Such codes have been adopted by state boards of registration, professional engineering societies, and even by some private industries. An example of one such code is the NCEES Rules of Professional Conduct, found in Section 240 of the *Model Rules* and presented here. As part of his/her responsibility to the public, an engineer is responsible for knowing and abiding by the code. Additional rules of conduct are also included in the *Model Rules*.

The three major sections of the *Model Rules* address (1) Licensee's Obligation to the Public, (2) Licensee's Obligation to Employers and Clients, and (3) Licensee's Obligation to Other Licensees. The principles amplified in these sections are important guides to appropriate behavior of professional engineers.

Application of the code in many situations is not controversial. However, there may be situations in which applying the code may raise more difficult issues. In particular, there may be circumstances in which terminology in the code is not clearly defined, or in which two sections of the code may be in conflict. For example, what constitutes "valuable consideration" or "adequate" knowledge may be interpreted differently by qualified professionals. These types of questions are called *conceptual issues*, in which definitions of terms may be in dispute. In other situations, *factual issues* may also affect ethical dilemmas. Many decisions regarding engineering design may be based upon interpretation of disputed or incomplete information. In addition, *tradeoffs* revolving around competing issues of risk vs. benefit, or safety vs. economics may require judgments that are not fully addressed simply by application of the code.

No code can give immediate and mechanical answers to all ethical and professional problems that an engineer may face. Creative problem solving is often called for in ethics, just as it is in other areas of engineering.

## 2024–25 Model Rules, Section 240.15 Rules of Professional Conduct

To safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public and to maintain integrity and high standards of skill and practice in the engineering and surveying professions, the rules of professional conduct provided in this section shall be binding upon every licensee and on all firms authorized to offer or perform engineering or surveying services in this jurisdiction.

### A. Obligations of Licensees to the Public

1. Licensees shall be cognizant that their first and foremost responsibility is to safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public when performing services for clients and employers.
2. Licensees shall sign and seal only those plans, surveys, and other documents that conform to accepted engineering and surveying standards and that safeguard the health, safety, and welfare of the public.
3. Licensees shall notify their employer or client and such other authority as may be appropriate when their professional judgment is overruled when the health, safety, or welfare of the public is endangered.
4. Licensees shall, to the best of their knowledge, include all relevant and pertinent information in an objective and truthful manner within all professional documents, statements, and testimony.

5. Licensees shall express a professional opinion publicly only when it is founded upon an adequate knowledge of the facts and a competent evaluation of the subject matter.
  6. Licensees shall issue no statements, criticisms, or arguments on engineering and surveying matters that are inspired or paid for by interested parties, unless they explicitly identify the interested parties on whose behalf they are speaking and reveal any interest they have in the matters.
  7. Licensees shall not partner, practice, or offer to practice with any person or firm that they know is engaged in fraudulent or dishonest business or professional practices.
  8. Licensees who have knowledge or reason to believe that any person or firm has violated any rules or laws applying to the practice of engineering or surveying shall report it to the board, may report it to appropriate legal authorities, and shall cooperate with the board and those authorities as requested.
  9. Licensees shall not knowingly provide false or incomplete information regarding an applicant in obtaining licensure.
  10. Licensees shall comply with the licensing laws and rules governing their professional practice in each of the jurisdictions in which they practice.
- B. Obligations of Licensees to Employer and Clients
1. Licensees shall undertake assignments only when qualified by education or experience in the specific technical fields of engineering or surveying involved.
  2. Licensees shall not affix their signatures or seals to any plans or documents dealing with subject matter in which they lack competence, nor to any such plan or document not prepared under their responsible charge.
  3. Licensees may accept assignments and assume responsibility for coordination of an entire project if each technical segment is signed and sealed by the licensee responsible for preparation of that technical segment.
  4. Licensees shall not reveal facts, data, or information obtained in a professional capacity without the prior consent of the client, employer, or public body on which they serve except as authorized or required by law or rules.
  5. Licensees shall not solicit or accept gratuities, directly or indirectly, from contractors, their agents, or other parties in connection with work for employers or clients.
  6. Licensees shall disclose to their employers or clients all known or potential conflicts of interest or other circumstances that could influence or appear to influence their judgment or the quality of their professional service or engagement.
  7. Licensees shall not accept compensation, financial or otherwise, from more than one party for services pertaining to the same project, unless the circumstances are fully disclosed and agreed to in writing by all interested parties.
  8. Licensees shall not solicit or accept a professional contract from a governmental body on which a principal or officer of their organization serves as a member. Conversely, licensees serving as members, advisors, or employees of a government body or department, who are the principals or employees of a private concern, shall not participate in decisions with respect to professional services offered or provided by said concern to the governmental body that they serve.
  9. Licensees shall not use confidential information received in the course of their assignments as a means of making personal profit without the consent of the party from whom the information was obtained.
- C. Obligations of Licensees to Other Licensees
1. Licensees shall not falsify or permit misrepresentation of their, or their associates', academic or professional qualifications. They shall not misrepresent or exaggerate their degree of responsibility in prior assignments nor the complexity of said assignments. Presentations incidental to the solicitation of employment or business shall not misrepresent pertinent facts concerning employers, employees, associates, joint ventures, or past accomplishments.
  2. Licensees shall not offer, give, solicit, or receive, either directly or indirectly, any commission, or gift, or other valuable consideration in order to secure work, and shall not make any political contribution with the intent to influence the award of a contract by public authority.
  3. Licensees shall not injure or attempt to injure, maliciously or falsely, directly or indirectly, the professional reputation, prospects, practice, or employment of other licensees, nor indiscriminately criticize other licensees' work.
  4. Licensees shall make a reasonable effort to inform another licensee whose work is believed to contain a material discrepancy, error, or omission that may impact the health, safety, or welfare of the public, unless such reporting is legally prohibited.

## 2024–25 Model Law, Section 110.20 Definitions

A. Professional Engineer—The term "Professional Engineer," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who is qualified to practice engineering by reason of engineering education, training, experience, and examination in the application of engineering principles and the interpretation of engineering data and who has been duly licensed as a professional engineer by the board. The board may designate a professional engineer, on the basis of education, experience, and examination, as being licensed in a specific discipline or branch of engineering signifying the area in which the engineer has demonstrated competence.

1. Professional Engineer, Retired—The term "Professional Engineer, Retired," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional engineer by the board and who chooses to relinquish or not to renew a license and who applies to and is approved by the board to be granted the use of the title "Professional Engineer, Retired."
2. Engineer Intern—The term "Engineer Intern," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly certified as an engineer intern by the board.
3. Practice of Engineering—The term "Practice of Engineering," as used in this Act, shall mean any service or creative work requiring engineering education, training, and experience in the application of engineering principles and the interpretation of engineering data to engineering activities, including the engineering design of buildings, structures, products, machines, processes, and systems, that potentially impact the health, safety, and welfare of the public.

The services may include, but not be limited to, providing planning, studies, designs, design coordination, drawings, specifications, and other technical submissions; teaching engineering design courses; commissioning of engineered systems; performing surveying that is incidental to the practice of engineering; and reviewing construction or other design products for the purposes of monitoring compliance with drawings and specifications related to engineered works.

Surveying incidental to the practice of engineering excludes the surveying of real property for the establishment or determination of land boundaries, rights of way, easements, and the dependent or independent surveys or resurveys of the public land survey system and is limited to conducting field measurements to supplement the documentation of existing conditions.

An individual shall be construed to practice engineering, within the meaning and intent of this Act, if the individual does any of the following:

- a. Practices any discipline of the profession of engineering or holds themselves out as able and entitled to practice any discipline of engineering
  - b. Represents themselves to be a professional engineer by verbal claim, sign, advertisement, letterhead, or card or in any other way
  - c. Through the use of some other title, implies that they are a professional engineer under this Act
- B. Professional Surveyor (Professional Land Surveyor, Professional Surveyor and Mapper, Geomatics Professional, or equivalent term)—The term "Professional Surveyor," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who is qualified to practice surveying by reason of surveying education, training, experience, and examination in the application of surveying principles and the interpretation of surveying data and who has been duly licensed as a professional surveyor by the board.
1. Professional Surveyor, Retired—The term "Professional Surveyor, Retired," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly licensed as a professional surveyor by the board and who chooses to relinquish or not to renew a license and who applies to and is approved by the board to be granted the use of the title "Professional Surveyor, Retired."
  2. Surveyor Intern—The term "Surveyor Intern," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who has been duly certified as a surveyor intern by the board.
  3. Practice of Surveying—The term "Practice of Surveying," as used in this Act, shall mean providing, or offering to provide, professional services using such sciences as mathematics, geodesy, and photogrammetry, and involving both (1) the making of geometric measurements and gathering related information pertaining to the physical or legal features of the earth, improvements on the earth, the space above, on, or below the earth and (2) providing, utilizing, or developing the same into survey products such as graphics, data, maps, plans, reports, descriptions, or projects.

- a. Professional services include acts of consultation, investigation, testimony evaluation, expert technical testimony, planning, mapping, assembling, and interpreting gathered measurements and information related to any one or more of the following:
  - i. Determining by measurement the configuration or contour of the earth's surface or the position of fixed objects thereon
  - ii. Determining by performing geodetic surveys the size and shape of the earth or the position of any point on the earth
  - iii. Locating, relocating, establishing, reestablishing, or retracing property lines or boundaries of any tract of land, road, right of way, or easement
  - iv. Making any survey for the division, subdivision, or consolidation of any tract(s) of land
  - v. Locating or laying out alignments, positions, or elevations for the construction of fixed works
  - vi. Determining, by the use of principles of surveying, the position for any survey monument (boundary or nonboundary) or reference point; establishing or replacing any such monument or reference point
  - vii. Creating, preparing, or modifying electronic, computerized, or other data, relative to the performance of the activities in items i–vii above
- b. An individual shall be construed to practice surveying, within the meaning and intent of this Act, if the individual does any of the following:
  - i. Engages in or holds themselves out as able and entitled to practice surveying
  - ii. Represents themselves to be a professional surveyor by verbal claim, sign, advertisement, letterhead, or card or in any other way
  - iii. Through the use of some other title, implies that they are a professional surveyor or licensed under this act
- C. Board—The term "Board," as used in this Act, shall mean the jurisdiction board of licensure for professional engineers and professional surveyors, hereinafter provided by this Act.
- D. Jurisdiction—The term "Jurisdiction," as used in this Act, shall mean a state, the District of Columbia, or any territory, commonwealth, or possession of the United States that issues licenses to practice and regulates the practice of engineering and/or surveying within its legal boundaries.
- E. Responsible Charge—The term "Responsible Charge," as used in this Act, shall mean direct control and personal supervision of engineering or surveying work, as the case may be.
- F. Rules of Professional Conduct—The term "Rules of Professional Conduct," as used in this Act, shall mean those rules of professional conduct, if any, promulgated by the board as authorized by this Act.
- G. Firm—The term "Firm," as used in this Act, shall mean any form of business or entity other than an individual operating as a sole proprietorship under their name.
- H. Managing Agent—The term "Managing Agent," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual who is licensed under this Act and who has been designated pursuant to Section 160.20 of this Act by the firm.
- I. Rules—The term "Rules," as used in this Act, shall mean those rules and regulations adopted pursuant to Section 120.60 A, Board Powers, of this Act.
- J. Signature—The term "Signature," as used in this Act, shall mean a name, mark, or writing made by the professional engineer or professional surveyor with the intention of verifying or authenticating a document.  
Electronic or Digital Signature—The term "Electronic or Digital Signature" shall mean an electronic sound, symbol, process, or secure digital code that uniquely identifies and authenticates the sender, attached to or logically associated with an electronically transmitted record and executed or adopted by a person with the intent to sign the record.
- K. Seal—The term "Seal," as used in this Act, shall mean a symbol, image, or list of information.
- L. Licensee—The term "Licensee," as used in this Act, shall mean a professional engineer or a professional surveyor.
- M. Person—The term "Person," as used in this Act, shall mean an individual or firm.
- N. Authoritative—The term "Authoritative," as used in this Act or Rules promulgated under this Act, shall mean being presented as trustworthy and competent when used to describe products, processes, applications, or data, derived from the practice of surveying, that results in a description that meets or exceeds the positional accuracy for the location of a feature, object, or boundary.
- O. Disciplinary Action—The term "Disciplinary Action," as used in this Act, shall mean any final written decision or settlement taken against an individual or firm by a licensing board based upon a violation of the board's laws and rules. Disciplinary actions include reprimands; sanctions; administrative fines; the board's refusal to issue, restore, or renew a license; settlement agreements or consent orders; probation; suspension; revocation; surrendering, relinquishing, or agreeing not to renew the license as part of an agreement or board order; or any combination thereof.

- P. Positional accuracy—The extent to which horizontal and vertical information on a map or in a digital database matches true or accepted values that are relative to the earth's surface or other reference datum
- Q. Georeferenced—Being referenced, measured, or described in spatial terms relative to the earth's surface or other reference datum
- R. Surveying deliverables—Any map, database, report, or other similar electronic or printed deliverable that shows the authoritative location of features or coordinate systems. Surveying deliverables provide spatial information to a level of positional accuracy, whether that accuracy is stated, regulated, or implied.
- S. Inactive Status—Licensees who are not engaged in engineering or surveying practice that require licensure in this jurisdiction may be granted inactive status. No licensee granted inactive status may practice or offer to practice engineering in this jurisdiction unless otherwise exempted in this Act.

### **Model Law, Section 130.10 General Requirements for Licensure**

Education, experience, and examinations are required for licensure as a professional engineer or professional surveyor as set forth by the jurisdiction.

#### **A. Eligibility for Licensure**

To be eligible for licensure as a professional engineer or professional surveyor, an individual must meet all of the following requirements:

1. Be of good character and reputation
2. Satisfy the education criteria set forth by the board
3. Satisfy the experience criteria set forth by the board
4. Pass the applicable examinations set forth by the board
5. Submit five references acceptable to the board

#### **B. Engineering**

##### **1. Certification or Enrollment as an Engineer Intern**

The following shall be considered as minimum evidence that the applicant is qualified for certification as an engineer intern.

- a. Graduating from an engineering program of four years or more accredited by the Engineering Accreditation Commission of ABET (EAC/ABET), graduating from an engineering master's program accredited by EAC/ABET, or meeting the requirements of the NCEES *Engineering Education Standard*
- b. Passing the NCEES Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination

##### **2. Licensure as a Professional Engineer**

The board may designate a professional engineer as being licensed in a specific discipline or branch of engineering, signifying the area in which the engineer has demonstrated competence.

##### **a. Initial Licensure as a Professional Engineer**

An applicant who presents evidence of meeting the applicable education, examination, and experience requirements as described below shall be eligible for licensure as a professional engineer.

##### **(1) Education Requirements**

An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall possess one or more of the following education qualifications:

- (a) A degree in engineering from an EAC/ABET-accredited bachelor's program
  - (b) A degree in engineering from an EAC/ABET-accredited master's program
  - (c) A bachelor's, master's, or doctoral degree in engineering from a non-EAC/ABET-accredited program.
- This individual's education must be shown to meet the NCEES *Engineering Education Standard*.

##### **(2) Examination Requirements**

An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall take and pass the NCEES Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) examination and the NCEES Principles and Practice of Engineering (PE) examination, and any jurisdiction-specific examination.

##### **(3) Experience Requirements**

An individual seeking licensure as a professional engineer shall present evidence of a specific record of four years of progressive engineering experience after a qualifying degree is conferred as described in a(1) above. This experience should be of a grade and character that indicate to the board that the applicant may be competent to practice engineering. The following educational criteria may apply as a substitute to the length of experience set forth above:

- (a) An individual with a master's degree in engineering acceptable to the board:  
three years of experience after the qualifying bachelor's degree is conferred as described in a(1)(a) or a(1)(c) above
  - (b) An individual with an earned doctoral degree in engineering acceptable to the board and who has passed the FE exam: two years of experience
  - (c) An individual with an earned doctoral degree in engineering acceptable to the board and who has elected not to take the FE exam: four years of experience  
A graduate degree that is used to satisfy education requirements cannot be applied for experience credit toward licensure. To be eligible for experience credit, graduate degrees shall be relevant to the applicant's area of professional practice.  
Experience credit for a graduate degree cannot be earned concurrently with work experience credit.
- b. Licensure by Comity for a Professional Engineer<sup>3,4</sup>  
The following shall be considered as minimum evidence satisfactory to the board that the applicant is qualified for licensure by comity as a professional engineer:
- (1) An individual holding a license to engage in the practice of engineering issued by a proper authority of any jurisdiction or any foreign country, based on requirements that do not conflict with the provisions of this Act and possessing credentials that are, in the judgment of the board, of a standard that provides proof of minimal competency and is comparable to the applicable licensure act in effect in this jurisdiction at the time such license was issued may, upon application, be licensed without further examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction; or
  - (2) An individual holding an active Council Record with NCEES, whose qualifications as evidenced by the Council Record meet the requirements of this Act, may, upon application, be licensed without further examination except as required to examine the applicant's knowledge of statutes, rules, and other requirements unique to this jurisdiction.

C. Surveying; *See Model Law*

### **Model Law, Section 150.10, Grounds for Disciplinary Action—Licensees and Interns**

- A. The board shall have the power to suspend, revoke, place on probation, fine, recover costs, and/or reprimand, or to refuse to issue, restore, or renew a license or intern certification to any licensee or intern that is found guilty of:
- 1. Any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain or renew a certificate of licensure
  - 2. Any negligence, incompetence, or misconduct in the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 3. Conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime that is a felony, whether or not related to the practice of engineering or surveying; and conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime, whether a felony, misdemeanor, or otherwise, an essential element of which is dishonesty or which is directly related to the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 4. Failure to comply with any of the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board
  - 5. Discipline (including voluntary surrender of a professional engineer's or professional surveyor's license in order to avoid disciplinary action) by another jurisdiction, foreign country, or the United States government, if at least one of the grounds for discipline is the same or substantially equivalent to those contained in this Act
  - 6. Failure to provide information requested by the board as a result of a formal or informal complaint to the board that alleges a violation of this Act
  - 7. Knowingly making false statements or signing false statements, certifications, or affidavits in connection with the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 8. Aiding or assisting another person in violating any provision of this Act or the rules or regulations of the board
  - 9. Violating any terms of any Order imposed or agreed to by the board or using a seal or practicing engineering or surveying while the licensee's license is inactive or restricted
  - 10. Signing, affixing, or permitting the licensee's seal or signature to be affixed to any specifications, reports, drawings, plans, plats, design information, construction documents or calculations, surveys, or revisions thereof which have not been prepared by the licensee or under the licensee's responsible charge
  - 11. Engaging in dishonorable, unethical, or unprofessional conduct of a character likely to deceive, defraud, or harm the public
  - 12. Providing false testimony or information to the board
  - 13. Habitual intoxication or addiction to the use of drugs or alcohol

14. Providing engineering or surveying services outside any of the licensee's areas of competence
- B. In addition to or in lieu of any other sanction provided in this section, any licensee or intern that violates a provision of this Act or any rule or regulation of the board may be assessed a fine in an amount determined by the board of not more than *[insert amount]* dollars for each offense
  1. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
  2. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
    - a. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation
    - b. The circumstances leading to the violation
    - c. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
    - d. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
    - e. The interest of the public
    - f. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount

### **Model Law, Section 150.30 Grounds for Disciplinary Action—Unlicensed Individuals**

- A. In addition to any other provisions of law, the board shall have the power to fine and recover costs from any unlicensed individual who is found guilty of:
  1. Engaging in the practice or offer to practice of engineering or surveying in this jurisdiction without being licensed in accordance with the provisions of this Act
  2. Using or employing the words "professional engineer," "engineering," "professional surveyor," "surveying," or any modification or derivative thereof in the individual's name or form of business activity except as provided in this Act
  3. Using or advertising any title or description tending to convey the impression that the individual is a professional engineer or professional surveyor unless the person is duly licensed in this jurisdiction
  4. Presenting or attempting to use the license or seal of a licensee
  5. Engaging in any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain a license or intern certification
  6. Impersonating any licensee
  7. Using or attempting to use an expired, suspended, revoked, inactive, retired, or nonexistent license
- B. A fine assessed under this section may not exceed *[insert amount]* dollars for each offense.
- C. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
- D. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
  1. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation
  2. The circumstances leading to the violation
  3. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
  4. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
  5. The interest of the public
  6. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount

### **Model Law, Section 160.10 General Requirements for Certificates of Authorization**

- A. A firm that practices or offers to practice engineering or surveying is required to obtain a certificate of authorization by the board in accordance with the Rules.
- B. This section shall not require a certificate of authorization for a firm performing engineering or surveying for the firm itself or for a parent or subsidiary of said firm.
- C. The secretary of state of this jurisdiction shall not accept organizational papers nor issue a certificate of incorporation, organization, licensure, or authorization to any firm which includes among the objectives for which it is established or within its name, any of the words "engineer," "engineering," "surveyor," "surveying," or any modification or derivation thereof unless the board has issued for said applicant a certificate of authorization or a letter indicating the eligibility of such applicant to receive such a certificate. The firm applying shall supply such certificate or letter from the board with its application for incorporation, organization, licensure, or authorization.
- D. The secretary of state of this jurisdiction shall decline to authorize any trade name, trademark, or service mark that includes therein such words as set forth in the previous subsection, or any modifications or derivatives thereof, except licensees and those firms holding certificates of authorization issued under the provisions of this section.

### **Model Law, Section 160.70 Grounds for Disciplinary Action—Firms Holding a Certificate of Authorization**

- A. The board shall have the power to suspend, revoke, place on probation, fine, recover costs, and/or reprimand, or to refuse to issue, restore, or renew a certificate of authorization to any firm holding a certificate of authorization that is found guilty of:
  - 1. Any fraud or deceit in obtaining or attempting to obtain or renew a certificate of authorization
  - 2. Any negligence, incompetence, or misconduct in the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 3. Conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime that is a felony, whether or not related to the practice of engineering or surveying; and conviction of or entry of a plea of guilty or nolo contendere to any crime, whether a felony, misdemeanor, or otherwise, an essential element of which is dishonesty or which is directly related to the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 4. Failure to comply with any of the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board
  - 5. Discipline (including voluntary surrender of an engineering or surveying license in order to avoid disciplinary action) by another jurisdiction, foreign country, or the United States government, if at least one of the grounds for discipline is the same or substantially equivalent to those contained in this Act
  - 6. Failure to provide information requested by the board as a result of a formal or informal complaint to the board that alleges a violation of this Act
  - 7. Knowingly making false statements or signing false statements, certifications, or affidavits in connection with the practice of engineering or surveying
  - 8. Aiding or assisting another person in violating any provision of this Act or the rules or regulations of the board
  - 9. Violating any terms of any Order imposed or agreed to by the board or using a seal or practicing engineering or surveying while the firm's certificate of authorization is inactive or restricted
  - 10. Engaging in dishonorable, unethical, or unprofessional conduct of a character likely to deceive, defraud, or harm the public
  - 11. Providing false testimony or information to the board
- B. In addition to or in lieu of any other sanction provided in this section, any firm holding a certificate of authorization that violates a provision of this Act or any rule or regulation of the board may be assessed a fine in an amount determined by the board of not more than [insert amount] dollars for each offense.
  - 1. Each day of continued violation may constitute a separate offense.
  - 2. In determining the amount of fine to be assessed pursuant to this section, the board may consider such factors as the following:
    - a. Whether the amount imposed will be a substantial economic deterrent to the violation
    - b. The circumstances leading to the violation
    - c. The severity of the violation and the risk of harm to the public
    - d. The economic benefits gained by the violator as a result of noncompliance
    - e. The interest of the public
    - f. Consistency of the fine with past fines for similar offenses, or justification for the fine amount
- C. In addition to any other sanction provided in this section, the board shall have the power to sanction as follows any firm where one or more of its managing agents, officers, directors, owners, or managers have been found guilty of any conduct which would constitute a violation under the provisions of this Act or any of the rules or regulations of the board:
  - 1. Place on probation, fine, recover costs from, and/or reprimand
  - 2. Revoke, suspend, or refuse to issue, restore, or renew the certificate of authorization

### **Model Law, Section 170.20 Exemption Clause**

This Act shall not be construed to prevent the following:

- A. Other Professions—The practice of any other legally recognized profession
- B. Contingent License—A contingent license may be issued by the board or board administrator to an applicant for licensure by comity if the applicant appears to meet the requirements for licensure by comity. Such a contingent license will be in effect from its date of issuance until such time as the board takes final action on the application for licensure by comity. If the board determines that the applicant does not meet the requirements for issuance of a license, the contingent license shall be immediately and automatically revoked upon notice to the applicant and no license will be issued.

- C. Employees and Subordinates—The work of an employee or a subordinate of an individual holding a certificate of licensure under this Act, or an employee of an individual practicing lawfully under Subsection B of this section, provided such work does not include final engineering or surveying designs or decisions and is done under the responsible charge of and verified by an individual holding a certificate of licensure under this Act or an individual practicing lawfully under Subsection B of this section.

## Intellectual Property

Intellectual property is the creative product of the intellect and normally includes inventions, symbols, literary works, patents, and designs.

A number of options are available to individuals who wish to protect their intellectual property from being claimed or misused by others. There are four protection categories used to offer varying degrees of protection to intellectual property owners: Patents, Trademarks, Copyrights, and Trade Secrets.

### Patents

A patent for an invention is the grant of a property right to the inventor, issued by the United States Patent and Trademark Office. Generally, the term of a new patent is 20 years from the date on which the application for the patent was filed in the United States or, in special cases, from the date an earlier related application was filed, subject to the payment of maintenance fees. U.S. patent grants are effective only within the United States, U.S. territories, and U.S. possessions.

There are three types of patents:

- Utility patents may be granted to anyone who invents or discovers any new and useful process, machine, article of manufacture, or composition of matter, or any new and useful improvement thereof;
- Design patents may be granted to anyone who invents a new, original, and ornamental design for an article of manufacture; and
- Plant patents may be granted to anyone who invents or discovers and asexually reproduces any distinct and new variety of plant.

### Trademarks

A trademark is a word, name, symbol, or device that is used in trade with goods to indicate the source of the goods and to distinguish them from the goods of others. Trademark rights may be used to prevent others from using a confusingly similar mark, but not to prevent others from making the same goods or from selling the same goods or services under a clearly different mark.

### Copyrights

A copyright is a form of protection provided to the authors of "original works of authorship" including literary, dramatic, musical, artistic, and certain other intellectual works, both published and unpublished. The 1976 Copyright Act generally gives the owner of copyright the exclusive right to reproduce the copyrighted work, to prepare derivative works, to distribute copies or phonorecords of the copyrighted work, to perform the copyrighted work publicly, or to display the copyrighted work publicly.

### Trade Secrets

A trade secret applies to a formula, pattern, compilation, program, device, method, technique, or process. To meet the most common definition of a trade secret, it must be used in business and give an opportunity to obtain an economic advantage over competitors who do not know or use it. Trade secrets offer little protection without a written agreement between the involved parties.

Source: United States Patent and Trademark Office, <https://www.uspto.gov/patents-getting-started/general-information-concerning-patents#headings-2>.

### Societal Considerations

"Creating a sustainable world that provides a safe, secure, healthy life for all peoples is a priority of the US engineering community. Engineers must deliver solutions that are technically viable, [economically] feasible, and environmentally and socially sustainable."

Source: Reddy, K.R., C. Cameselle, and J.A.A. Adams, Sustainable Engineering: Drivers, Metrics, Tools, and Applications, 1st ed., John Wiley & Sons, 2019.

Sustainable approaches during planning, design, and construction or manufacture will carry forward throughout a project's or product's operation and maintenance to end-of-life. Sustainable principles include consideration of:

- Safety
- Public health
- Quality of life
- Resource allocation
- Non-renewable resources

Life-cycle analysis (cradle to grave) involves assessing the potential environmental consequences associated with a project or product from design and development through utilization and disposal. Engineers must employ concern for environmental health and public safety by addressing such things as:

- Landscape aesthetics
- Protection of ecosystems
- Resource conservation
- Air and water pollution
- Atmospheric emissions
- Collection and processing of waste

Source: Adapted from: United States General Services Administration, "Sustainable Design" page, <https://www.gsa.gov/real-estate/design-construction/design-excellence/sustainability/sustainable-design>.

Dennis, "What is the Triple Bottom Line?" The Education Center (blog), RMA Environmental Services, <https://www.rmagreen.com/rma-blog/what-is-the-triple-bottom-line>.

# Safety

## Definition of Safety

Safety is the condition of protecting people from threats or failures that could harm their physical, emotional, occupational, psychological, or financial well-being. Safety is also the control of known threats to attain an acceptable level of risk.

The United States relies on public codes and standards, engineering designs, and corporate policies to ensure that a structure or place does what it should do to maintain a steady state of safety—that is, long-term stability and reliability. Some *Safety/Regulatory Agencies* that develop codes and standards commonly used in the United States are shown in the table.

| Abbreviation | Name                                                        | Jurisdiction                             |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| ANSI         | American National Standards Institute                       | Nonprofit standards organization         |
| CGA          | Compressed Gas Association                                  | Nonprofit trade association              |
| CSA          | Canadian Standards Association                              | Nonprofit standards organization         |
| FAA          | Federal Aviation Administration                             | Federal regulatory agency                |
| IEC          | International Electrotechnical Commission                   | Nonprofit standards organization         |
| ITSNA        | Intertek Testing Services NA (formerly Edison Testing Labs) | Nationally recognized testing laboratory |
| MSHA         | Mine Safety and Health Administration                       | Federal regulatory agency                |
| NFPA         | National Fire Protection Association                        | Nonprofit trade association              |
| NIOSH        | National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health       | Federal regulatory agency                |
| OSHA         | Occupational Safety and Health Administration               | Federal regulatory agency                |
| RCRA         | Resource Conservation and Recovery Act                      | Federal law                              |
| UL           | Underwriters Laboratories                                   | Nationally recognized testing laboratory |
| USCG         | United States Coast Guard                                   | Federal regulatory agency                |
| USDOT        | United States Department of Transportation                  | Federal regulatory agency                |
| USEPA        | United States Environmental Protection Agency               | Federal regulatory agency                |

## Safety and Prevention

A traditional preventive approach to both accidents and occupational illness involves recognizing, evaluating, and controlling hazards and work conditions that may cause physical or other injuries.

*Hazard* is the capacity to cause harm. It is an inherent quality of a material or a condition. For example, a rotating saw blade or an uncontrolled high-pressure jet of water has the capability (hazard) to slice through flesh. A toxic chemical or a pathogen has the capability (hazard) to cause illness.

*Risk* is the chance or probability that a person will experience harm and is not the same as a hazard. Risk always involves both probability and severity elements. The hazard associated with a rotating saw blade or the water jet continues to exist, but the probability of causing harm, and thus the risk, can be reduced by installing a guard or by controlling the jet's path. Risk is expressed by the equation:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{Hazard} \times \text{Probability}$$

When people discuss the hazards of disease-causing agents, the term *exposure* is typically used more than *probability*. If a certain type of chemical has a toxicity hazard, the risk of illness rises with the degree to which that chemical contacts your body or enters your lungs. In that case, the equation becomes:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{Hazard} \times \text{Exposure}$$

Organizations evaluate hazards using multiple techniques and data sources.

## Job Safety Analysis

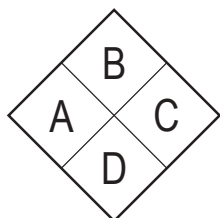
Job safety analysis (JSA) is known by many names, including activity hazard analysis (AHA), or job hazard analysis (JHA). Hazard analysis helps integrate accepted safety and health principles and practices into a specific task. In a JSA, each basic step of the job is reviewed, potential hazards identified, and recommendations documented as to the safest way to do the job. JSA techniques work well when used on a task that the analysts understand well. JSA analysts look for specific types of potential accidents and ask basic questions about each step, such as these:

- Can the employee strike against or otherwise make injurious contact with the object?
- Can the employee be caught in, on, or between objects?
- Can the employee strain muscles by pushing, pulling, or lifting?
- Is exposure to toxic gases, vapors, dust, heat, electrical currents, or radiation possible?

## Hazard Assessments

### Hazard Assessment—Hazardous Materials Classification

The fire/hazard diamond below summarizes common hazard data available on the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) and is frequently shown on chemical labels.



#### *Position A – Health Rating (Blue)*

- 4 = Can be lethal
- 3 = Serious or permanent injury
- 2 = Temporary incapacitation or residual injury
- 1 = Significant irritation
- 0 = No hazard beyond ordinary combustibles

#### *Position B – Flammability Rating (Red)*

- 4 = Rapidly or completely vaporized and burn readily
- 3 = Ignite readily in ambient conditions
- 2 = Ignite when moderately heated
- 1 = Require preheating for ignition
- 0 = Will not burn under normal fire conditions

#### *Position C – Instability Rating (Yellow)*

- 4 = May detonate or have explosive reaction
- 3 = Shock and heat may detonate or cause explosive reaction
- 2 = Violent chemical change at elevated temperatures
- 1 = Unstable if heated
- 0 = Normally stable

#### *Position D – Special Hazards (White)*

- OX = Oxidizers
- W = Water Reactives
- SA = Simple Asphyxiants

No other hazards should be listed in this quadrant. In cases where a unique hazard symbol exists, it must be placed outside of the white special hazard quadrant.

### GHS

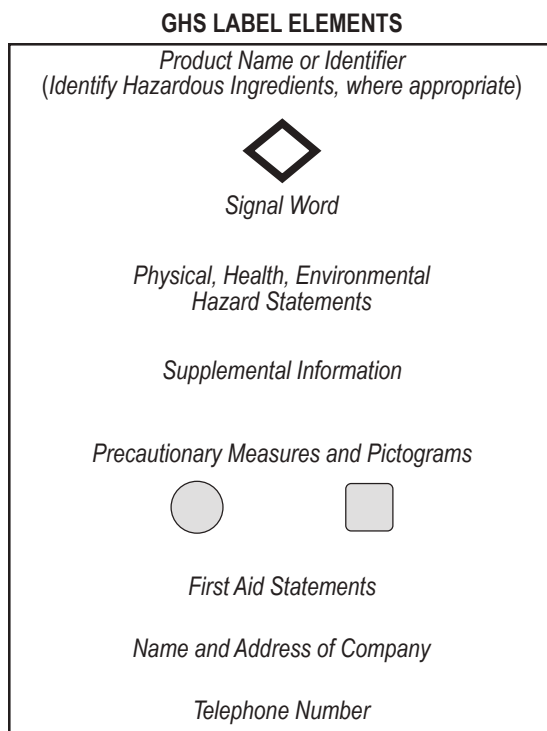
The *Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals*, or GHS, is a system for standardizing and harmonizing the classification and labeling of chemicals. GHS is a comprehensive approach to:

- Defining health, physical, and environmental hazards of chemicals
- Creating classification processes that use available data on chemicals for comparison with the defined hazard criteria
- Communicating hazard information, as well as protective measures, on labels and Safety Data Sheets (SDSs), formerly called *Material Safety Data Sheets* (MSDSs).

GHS label elements include:

- Precautionary statements and pictograms: Measures to minimize or prevent adverse effects
- Product identifier (ingredient disclosure): Name or number used for a hazardous product on a label or in the SDS
- Supplier identification: The name, address, and telephone number of the supplier
- Supplemental information: nonharmonized information

Other label elements include symbols, signal words, and hazard statements.



Source: Occupational Safety and Health Administration, *A Guide to The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)*, United States Department of Labor, <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/ghsguideoct05.pdf>

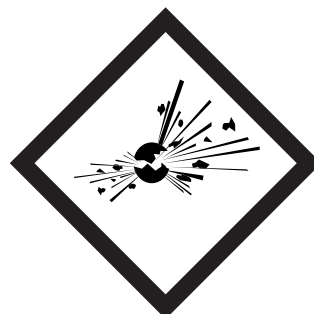
### GHS PICTOGRAMS AND HAZARD CLASSES



- OXIDIZERS



- FLAMMABLES
- SELF-REACTIVES
- PYROPHORICS
- SELF-HEATING
- EMITS FLAMMABLE GAS
- ORGANIC PEROXIDES



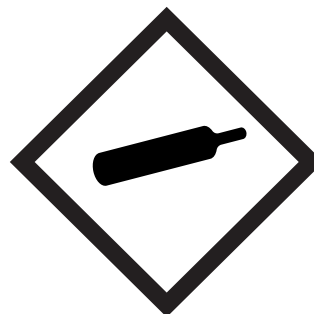
- EXPLOSIVES
- SELF-REACTIVES
- ORGANIC PEROXIDES



- ACUTE TOXICITY (SEVERE)



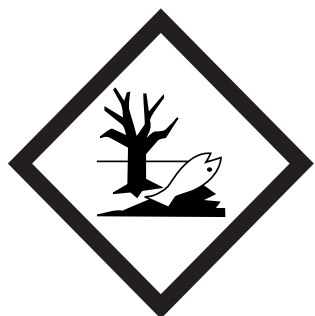
- CORROSIVES



- GASES UNDER PRESSURE



- CARCINOGEN
- RESPIRATORY SENSITIZER
- REPRODUCTIVE TOXICITY
- TARGET ORGAN TOXICITY
- MUTAGENICITY
- ASPIRATION TOXICITY



- ENVIRONMENTAL TOXICITY



- IRRITANT
- DERMAL SENSITIZER
- ACUTE TOXICITY (HARMFUL)
- NARCOTIC EFFECTS
- RESPIRATORY TRACT IRRITATION

Source: Occupational Safety and Health Administration, *A Guide to The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)*, United States Department of Labor, <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/ghsguideoct05.pdf>

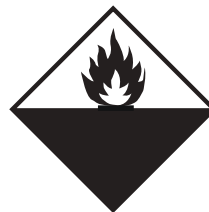
## TRANSPORT PICTOGRAMS



FLAMMABLE LIQUID  
FLAMMABLE GAS  
FLAMMABLE AEROSOL



FLAMMABLE SOLID  
SELF-REACTIVE  
SUBSTANCES



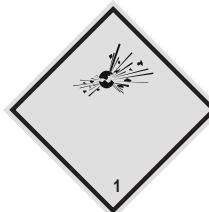
PYROPHORICS (SPONTANEOUSLY  
COMBUSTIBLE)  
SELF-HEATING SUBSTANCES



SUBSTANCES, WHICH IN  
CONTACT WITH WATER,  
EMIT FLAMMABLE GASES  
(DANGEROUS WHEN WET)



OXIDIZING GASES  
OXIDIZING LIQUIDS  
OXIDIZING SOLIDS



EXPLOSIVE DIVISIONS  
1.1, 1.2, 1.3



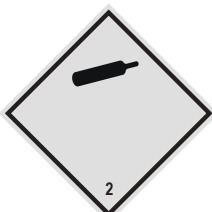
EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.4



EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.5



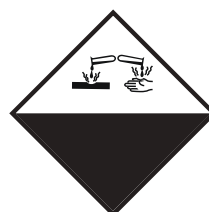
EXPLOSIVE DIVISION 1.6



COMPRESSED GASES



ACUTE TOXICITY (POISON):  
ORAL, DERMAL, INHALATION



CORROSIVE



MARINE POLLUTANT



ORGANIC PEROXIDES

Source: Occupational Safety and Health Administration, *A Guide to The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals (GHS)*,  
United States Department of Labor, <https://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/ghsguideoct05.pdf>

| ACUTE ORAL TOXICITY |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                     |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| LD <sub>50</sub>    | CATEGORY 1<br>≤ 5 mg/kg                                                           | CATEGORY 2<br>> 5 < 50 mg/kg                                                      | CATEGORY 3<br>≥ 50 < 300 mg/kg                                                    | CATEGORY 4<br>≥ 300 < 2,000 mg/kg                                                   | CATEGORY 5<br>≥ 2,000 < 5,000 mg/kg |
| PICTOGRAM           |  |  |  |  | NO SYMBOL                           |
| SIGNAL WORD         | DANGER                                                                            | DANGER                                                                            | DANGER                                                                            | WARNING                                                                             | WARNING                             |
| HAZARD STATEMENT    | FATAL IF SWALLOWED                                                                | FATAL IF SWALLOWED                                                                | TOXIC IF SWALLOWED                                                                | HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED                                                                | MAY BE HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED         |

## Safety Data Sheet (SDS)

The SDS provides comprehensive information for use in workplace chemical management. Employers and workers use the SDS as a source of information about hazards and to obtain advice on safety precautions. The SDS is product related and, usually, is not able to provide information that is specific for any given workplace where the product may be used. However, the SDS information enables the employer to develop an active program of worker protection measures, including training, which is specific to the individual workplace, and to consider any measures that may be necessary to protect the environment. Information in an SDS also provides a source of information for those involved with the transport of dangerous goods, emergency responders, poison centers, those involved with the professional use of pesticides, and consumers.

The SDS has 16 sections in a set order, and minimum information is prescribed.

The Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires chemical manufacturers, distributors, or importers to provide SDSs to communicate the hazards of hazardous chemical products. As of June 1, 2015, the HCS requires new SDSs to be in a uniform format, and include the section numbers, the headings, and associated information under the headings below:

Section 1, Identification: Includes product identifier; manufacturer or distributor name, address, phone number; emergency phone number; recommended use; restrictions on use

Section 2, Hazard(s) identification: Includes all hazards regarding the chemical; required label elements

Section 3, Composition/information on ingredients: Includes information on chemical ingredients; trade secret claims

Section 4, First-aid measures: Includes important symptoms/effects, acute, and delayed; required treatment

Section 5, Fire-fighting measures: Lists suitable extinguishing techniques, equipment; chemical hazards from fire

Section 6, Accidental release measures: Lists emergency procedures; protective equipment; proper methods of containment and cleanup

Section 7, Handling and storage: Lists precautions for safe handling and storage, including incompatibilities

Section 8, Exposure controls/personal protection: Lists OSHA's Permissible Exposure Limits (PELs); Threshold Limit Values (TLVs); appropriate engineering controls; personal protective equipment (PPE)

Section 9, Physical and chemical properties: Lists the chemical's characteristics

Section 10, Stability and reactivity: Lists chemical stability and possibility of hazardous reactions

Section 11, Toxicological information: Includes routes of exposure; related symptoms, acute and chronic effects; numerical measures of toxicity

Section 12, Ecological information\*

Section 13, Disposal considerations\*

Section 14, Transport information\*

Section 15, Regulatory information\*

Section 16, Other information: Includes the date of preparation or last revision

\*Note: Since other Agencies regulate this information, OSHA will not be enforcing Sections 12 through 15 (29 CFR 1910.1200(g)(2)).

## Signal Words

The signal word found on every product's label is based on test results from various oral, dermal, and inhalation toxicity tests, as well as skin and eye corrosion assays in some cases. Signal words are placed on labels to convey a level of care that should be taken (especially personal protection) when handling and using a product, from purchase to disposal of the empty container, as demonstrated by the Pesticide Toxicity Table.

**Pesticide Toxicity Categories**

| Signal Word on Label | Toxicity Category   | Acute-Oral LD <sub>50</sub> for Rats | Amount Needed to Kill an Average Size Adult | Notes                                                  |
|----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Danger–Poison        | Highly Toxic        | 50 or less                           | Taste to a teaspoon                         | Skull and crossbones;<br>Keep Out of Reach of Children |
| Warning              | Moderately Toxic    | 50 to 500                            | One to six teaspoons                        | Keep Out of Reach of Children                          |
| Caution              | Slightly Toxic      | 500 to 5,000                         | One ounce to a pint                         | Keep Out of Reach of Children                          |
| Caution              | Relatively Nontoxic | >5,000                               | More than a pint                            | Keep Out of Reach of Children                          |

LD<sub>50</sub> - See Risk Assessment/Toxicology section.

Source: From *Regulating Pesticides*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency.

## Flammability

*Flammable* describes any solid, liquid, vapor, or gas that will ignite easily and burn rapidly. A flammable liquid is defined by NFPA and USDOT as a liquid with a flash point below 100°F (38°C). Flammability is further defined with lower and upper limits:

LFL = lower flammability limit (volume % in air)

UFL = upper flammability limit (volume % in air)

The LFL is also known as the lower explosive limit (LEL). The UFL is also referred to as the upper explosive limit (UEL). There is no difference between the terms *flammable* and *explosive* as applied to the lower and upper limits of flammability.

A vapor-air mixture will only ignite and burn over the range of concentrations between LFL and UFL. Examples are:

| Gas/Compound     | LFL  | UFL   |
|------------------|------|-------|
| Acetone          | 2.6  | 13.0  |
| Acetylene        | 2.5  | 100.0 |
| Ammonia          | 15.0 | 28.0  |
| <i>n</i> -butane | 1.8  | 8.4   |
| Carbon disulfide | 1.3  | 50.0  |
| Carbon monoxide  | 12.5 | 74.0  |
| Cycloheptane     | 1.1  | 6.7   |
| Cyclohexane      | 1.3  | 7.8   |
| Cyclopropane     | 2.4  | 10.4  |
| Diethyl ether    | 1.9  | 36.0  |
| Ethane           | 3.0  | 12.4  |
| Ethyl acetate    | 2.2  | 11.0  |
| Ethyl alcohol    | 3.3  | 19.0  |
| Ethyl ether      | 1.9  | 36.0  |
| Ethyl nitrite    | 3.0  | 50.0  |
| Ethylene         | 2.7  | 36.0  |
| Gasoline 100/130 | 1.3  | 7.1   |
| Gasoline 115/145 | 1.2  | 7.1   |
| Hydrazine        | 4.7  | 100.0 |
| Hydrogen         | 4.0  | 75.0  |
| Hydrogen sulfide | 4.0  | 44.0  |
| Isobutane        | 1.8  | 8.4   |
| Methane          | 5.0  | 15.0  |
| Propane          | 2.1  | 9.5   |

Source: From *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, 4th ed., Society of Fire Protection Engineers, 2008.

LOC, limiting oxygen concentration (vol % O<sub>2</sub>), is the concentration of oxygen below which combustion is not possible.

AIT, autoignition temperature, is the lowest temperature above which no external ignition source is required to initiate combustion.

### Predicting Lower Flammable Limits of Mixtures of Flammable Gases (Le Chatelier's Rule)

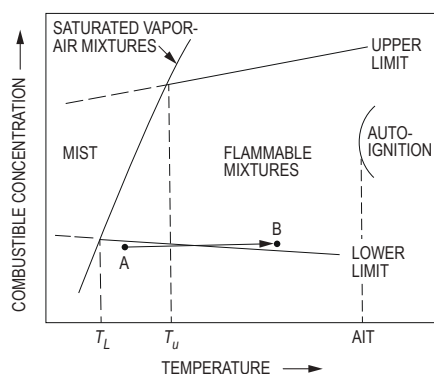
Based on an empirical rule developed by Le Chatelier, the lower flammable limit of mixtures of multiple flammable gases in air can be determined. A generalization of Le Chatelier's rule is

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (C_i/LFL_i) \geq 1$$

where  $C_i$  is the volume percent of fuel gas,  $i$ , in the fuel/air mixture and  $LFL_i$  is the volume percent of fuel gas,  $i$ , at its lower flammable limit in air alone. If the indicated sum is greater than unity, the mixture is above the lower flammable limit. This can be restated in terms of the lower flammable limit concentration of the fuel mixture,  $LFL_m$ , as follows:

$$LFL_m = \frac{100}{\sum_{i=1}^n (C_{fi}/LFL_i)}$$

where  $C_{fi}$  is the volume percent of fuel gas  $i$  in the fuel gas mixture.



Source: *The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, 1st ed., Society of Fire Protection Association, 1988. With permission.

### Granular Storage and Process Safety

Some materials that are not inherently hazardous can become hazardous during storage or processing. An example is the handling of grain in grain bins. Grain bins should not be entered when the grain is being removed since grains flow to the center of the emptying bin and create suffocation hazards. Bridging may occur at the top surface due to condensation and resulting spoilage creating a crust.

Organic vapors and dusts associated with grain handling often contain toxic yeasts or molds and have low oxygen contents. These organic vapors and dusts may also be explosive.

### Confined Space Safety

Many workplaces contain spaces that are considered "confined" because their configurations hinder the activities of employees who must enter, work in, and exit them. A confined space has limited or restricted means for entry or exit and is not designed for continuous employee occupancy. Confined spaces include, but are not limited to, underground vaults, tanks, storage bins, manholes, pits, silos, process vessels, and pipelines. OSHA uses the term "permit-required confined spaces" (permit space) to describe a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics: contains or has the potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere; contains a material that has the potential to engulf an entrant; has walls that converge inward or floors that slope downward and taper into a smaller area that could trap or asphyxiate an entrant; or contains any other recognized safety or health hazard such as unguarded machinery, exposed live wires or heat stress.

Sensor placement in confined spaces should be based on constituent gas molecular weight relative to that of air and, where applicable, source location.

OSHA has developed OSHA standards, directives (instructions for compliance officers), standard interpretations (official letters of interpretation of the standards), and national consensus standards related to confined spaces. The following gases are often present in confined spaces:

Ammonia: Irritating at 50 ppm and deadly above 1,000 ppm; sharp, cutting odor

Hydrogen sulfide: Irritating at 2–5 ppm and deadly at 100 ppm; accumulates at lower levels and in corners where circulation is minimal; rotten egg odor at 0.1–1.5 ppm; above 30 ppm has a sweet smell; 100–150 ppm loss of smell.

Methane: Explosive at levels above 50,000 ppm, lighter than air, odorless

Carbon dioxide: Heavier than air, accumulates at lower levels and in corners where circulation is minimal, displaces air leading to asphyxiation

## Electrical Safety

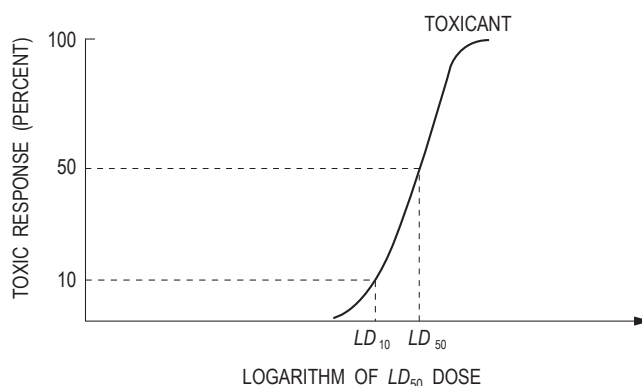
| Current Level (Milliamperes) | Probable Effect on Human Body                                                                                                                                     |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 mA                         | Perception level. Slight tingling sensation. Still dangerous under certain conditions.                                                                            |
| 5 mA                         | Slight shock felt; not painful but disturbing. Average individual can let go. However, strong involuntary reactions to shocks in this range may lead to injuries. |
| 6 mA–16 mA                   | Painful shock, begin to lose muscular control. Commonly referred to as the freezing current or "let-go" range.                                                    |
| 17 mA–99 mA                  | Extreme pain, respiratory arrest, severe muscular contractions. Individual cannot let go. Death is possible.                                                      |
| 100 mA–2,000 mA              | Ventricular fibrillation (uneven, uncoordinated pumping of the heart). Muscular contraction and nerve damage begins to occur. Death is likely.                    |
| > 2,000 mA                   | Cardiac arrest (stop in effective blood circulation), internal organ damage, and severe burns. Death is probable.                                                 |

Source: *Worker Deaths by Electrocution; A Summary of NIOSH Surveillance and Investigative Findings*, U.S. Health and Human Services, (NIOSH), 1998.  
Greenwald E.K., *Electrical Hazards and Accidents—Their Cause and Prevention*, Van Nostrand Reinhold, 1991.

## Risk Assessment/Toxicology

### Dose-Response Curves

The dose-response curve relates toxic response (i.e., percentage of test population exhibiting a specified symptom or dying) to the logarithm of the dosage [i.e., mg/(kg•day) ingested]. A typical dose-response curve is shown below.



$LC_{50}$

Median lethal concentration in air that, based on laboratory tests, is expected to kill 50% of a group of test animals when administered as a single exposure over 1 or 4 hours.

$LD_{50}$

Median lethal single dose, based on laboratory tests, expected to kill 50% of a group of test animals, usually by oral or skin exposure.

Similar definitions exist for  $LC_{10}$  and  $LD_{10}$ , where the corresponding percentages are 10%.

## Comparative Acutely Lethal Doses

| Actual Ranking No. | $LD_{50}$ (mg/kg) | Toxic Chemical                     |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1                  | 15,000            | PCBs                               |
| 2                  | 10,000            | Alcohol (ethanol)                  |
| 3                  | 4,000             | Table salt—sodium chloride         |
| 4                  | 1,500             | Ferrous sulfate—an iron supplement |
| 5                  | 1,375             | Malathion—pesticide                |
| 6                  | 900               | Morphine                           |
| 7                  | 150               | Phenobarbital—a sedative           |
| 8                  | 142               | Tylenol (acetaminophen)            |
| 9                  | 2                 | Strychnine—a rat poison            |
| 10                 | 1                 | Nicotine                           |
| 11                 | 0.5               | Curare—an arrow poison             |
| 12                 | 0.001             | 2,3,7,8-TCDD (dioxin)              |
| 13                 | 0.00001           | Botulinum toxin (food poison)      |

Source: Republished with permission of John Wiley and Sons, from *Principles of Toxicology: Environmental and Industrial Applications*, Williams, P.L., R.C. James, and S.M. Roberts, 2 ed, 2000; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.

## Selected Chemical Interaction Effects

| Effect       | Relative toxicity (hypothetical) | Example                                 |
|--------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| Additive     | $2 + 3 = 5$                      | Organophosphate pesticides              |
| Synergistic  | $2 + 3 = 20$                     | Cigarette smoking + asbestos            |
| Antagonistic | $6 + 6 = 8$                      | Toluene + benzene or caffeine + alcohol |

Source: Republished with permission of John Wiley and Sons, from *Principles of Toxicology: Environmental and Industrial Applications*, Williams, P.L., R.C. James, and S.M. Roberts, 2 ed, 2000; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.

**Exposure Limits for Selected Compounds**

| N  | Allowable Workplace Exposure Level (mg/m <sup>3</sup> ) | Chemical (use)                            |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| 1  | 0.1                                                     | Iodine                                    |
| 2  | 5                                                       | Aspirin                                   |
| 3  | 10                                                      | Vegetable oil mists (cooking oil)         |
| 4  | 55                                                      | 1,1,2-Trichloroethane (solvent/degreaser) |
| 5  | 188                                                     | Perchloroethylene (dry-cleaning fluid)    |
| 6  | 170                                                     | Toluene (organic solvent)                 |
| 7  | 269                                                     | Trichloroethylene (solvent/degreaser)     |
| 8  | 590                                                     | Tetrahydrofuran (organic solvent)         |
| 9  | 890                                                     | Gasoline (fuel)                           |
| 10 | 1,590                                                   | Naphtha (rubber solvent)                  |
| 11 | 1,910                                                   | 1,1,1-Trichloroethane (solvent/degreaser) |

Source: Republished with permission of John Wiley and Sons, from *Principles of Toxicology: Environmental and Industrial Applications*, Williams, P.L., R.C. James, and S.M. Roberts, 2 ed, 2000; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.

### Carcinogens

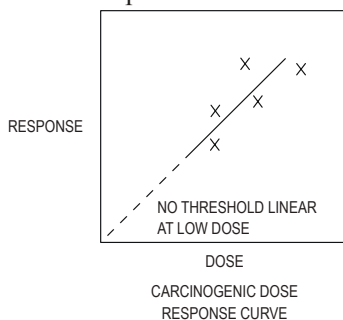
For carcinogens, EPA considers an acceptable risk to be within the range of  $10^{-4}$  to  $10^{-6}$ . The added risk of cancer is calculated as follows:

$$\text{Risk} = \text{dose} \times \text{toxicity} = CDI \times CSF$$

where

$CDI$  = Chronic Daily Intake

$CSF$  = Cancer Slope Factor. Slope of the dose-response curve for carcinogenic materials.



### Threshold Limit Value (TLV)

TLV is the highest dose (ppm by volume in the atmosphere) the body is able to detoxify without any detectable effects.

Examples are:

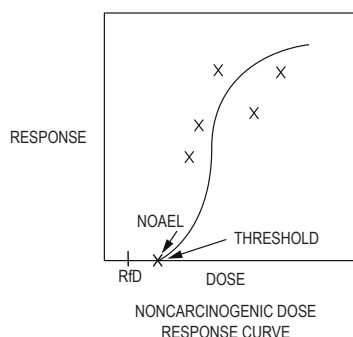
| Compound       | TLV   |
|----------------|-------|
| Ammonia        | 25    |
| Chlorine       | 0.5   |
| Ethyl Chloride | 1,000 |
| Ethyl Ether    | 400   |

## Noncarcinogens

For noncarcinogens, a hazard index (*HI*) is used to characterize risk from all pathways and exposure routes. EPA considers an  $HI > 1.0$  as representing the possibility of an adverse effect occurring.

$$HI = CDI_{\text{noncarcinogen}} / RfD$$

$CDI_{\text{noncarcinogen}}$  = chronic daily intake of noncarcinogenic compound



Dose is expressed

$$\left( \frac{\text{mass of chemical}}{\text{body weight} \cdot \text{exposure time}} \right)$$

*NOAEL* = No Observable Adverse Effect Level. The dose below which there are no harmful effects

## Reference Dose

Reference dose (*RfD*) is determined from the Noncarcinogenic Dose-Response Curve using *NOAEL*.

*RfD* = lifetime (i.e., chronic) dose that a healthy person could be exposed to daily without adverse effects

$$RfD = \frac{NOAEL}{UF}$$

and

$$SHD = RfD \times W = \frac{NOAEL \times W}{UF}$$

where

*SHD* = safe human dose (mg/day)

*NOAEL* = threshold dose per kg of test animal [mg/(kg•day)] from the dose-response curve

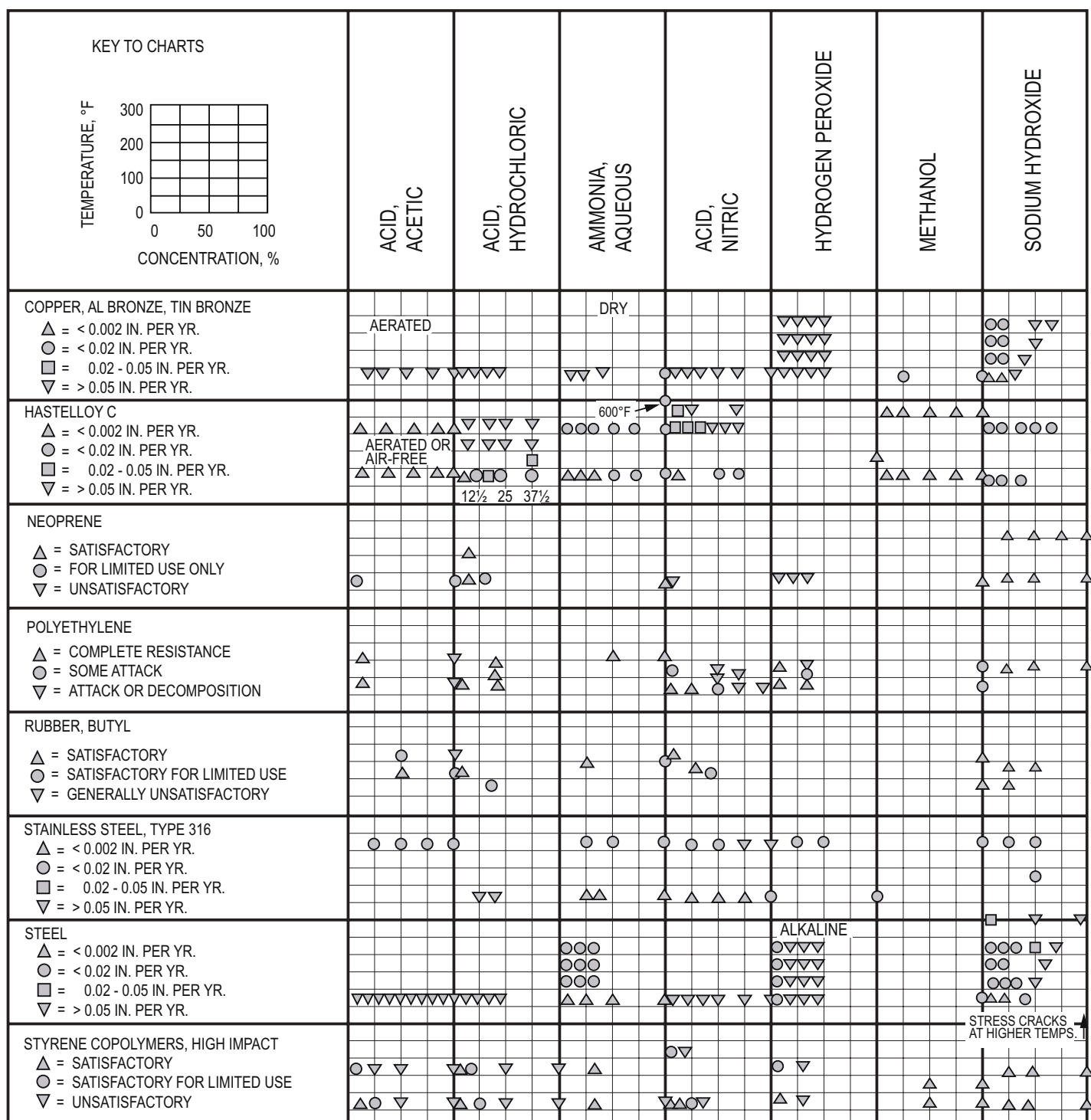
*UF* = total uncertainty factor, depending on nature and reliability of the animal test data

*W* = weight of the adult male

## Safety

Source: U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, April 1980. EPA-600/2-80-076.

Detailed Corrosion Data on Construction Materials



Note: Symbols on vertical heavy lines represent 100% concentration. Symbols on horizontal heavy lines represent 300°F temperature.

Source: Adapted from Perry, Robert H., and Don Green, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 6 ed, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1963, pp 23-13-23-30.

## Exposure

### Residential Exposure Equations for Various Pathways

Ingestion in drinking water

$$CDI = \frac{(CW)(IR)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion while swimming

$$CDI = \frac{(CW)(CR)(ET)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Dermal contact with water

$$AD = \frac{(CW)(SA)(PC)(ET)(EF)(ED)(CF)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion of chemicals in soil

$$CDI = \frac{(CS)(IR)(CF)(FI)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Dermal contact with soil

$$AD = \frac{(CS)(CF)(SA)(AF)(ABS)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Inhalation of airborne (vapor phase) chemicals

$$CDI = \frac{(CA)(IR)(ET)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

Ingestion of contaminated fruits, vegetables, fish and shellfish

$$CDI = \frac{(CF)(IR)(FI)(EF)(ED)}{(BW)(AT)}$$

where

ABS = absorption factor for soil contaminant (unitless)

AD = absorbed dose (mg/[kg•day])

AF = soil-to-skin adherence factor (mg/cm<sup>2</sup>)

AT = averaging time (days)

BW = body weight (kg)

CA = contaminant concentration in air (mg/m<sup>3</sup>)

CDI = chronic daily intake (mg/[kg•day])

CF = volumetric conversion factor for water  
= 1 L/1,000 cm<sup>3</sup>

= conversion factor for soil = 10<sup>-6</sup> kg/mg

CR = contact rate (L/hr)

CS = chemical concentration in soil (mg/kg)

CW = chemical concentration in water (mg/L)

ED = exposure duration (years)

EF = exposure frequency (days/yr or events/year)

ET = exposure time (hr/day or hr/event)

FI = fraction ingested (unitless)

IR = ingestion rate (L/day or mg soil/day or kg/meal)  
= inhalation rate (m<sup>3</sup>/hr)

PC = chemical-specific dermal permeability constant  
(cm/hr)

SA = skin surface area available for contact (cm<sup>2</sup>)

Source: *Risk Assessment Guidance for Superfund*. Volume 1, *Human Health Evaluation Manual* (part A). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/540/1-89/002, 1989.

## Intake Rates—Variable Values

EPA-Recommended Values for Estimating Intake

| Parameter                                                                                               | Standard Value           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| Average body weight, female adult                                                                       | 65.4 kg                  |
| Average body weight, male adult                                                                         | 78 kg                    |
| Average body weight, child <sup>a</sup>                                                                 |                          |
| 6–11 months                                                                                             | 9 kg                     |
| 1–5 years                                                                                               | 16 kg                    |
| 6–12 years                                                                                              | 33 kg                    |
| Amount of water ingested, adult                                                                         | 2.3 L/day                |
| Amount of water ingested, child                                                                         | 1.5 L/day                |
| Amount of air breathed, female adult                                                                    | 11.3 m <sup>3</sup> /day |
| Amount of air breathed, male adult                                                                      | 15.2 m <sup>3</sup> /day |
| Amount of air breathed, child (3–5 years)                                                               | 8.3 m <sup>3</sup> /day  |
| Amount of fish consumed, adult                                                                          | 6 g/day                  |
| Water swallowing rate, while swimming                                                                   | 50 mL/hr                 |
| Inhalation rates                                                                                        |                          |
| adult (6-hr day)                                                                                        | 0.98 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |
| adult (2-hr day)                                                                                        | 1.47 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |
| child                                                                                                   | 0.46 m <sup>3</sup> /hr  |
| Skin surface available, adult male                                                                      | 1.94 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| Skin surface available, adult female                                                                    | 1.69 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| Skin surface available, child                                                                           |                          |
| 3–6 years (average for male and female)                                                                 | 0.720 m <sup>2</sup>     |
| 6–9 years (average for male and female)                                                                 | 0.925 m <sup>2</sup>     |
| 9–12 years (average for male and female)                                                                | 1.16 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| 12–15 years (average for male and female)                                                               | 1.49 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| 15–18 years (female)                                                                                    | 1.60 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| 15–18 years (male)                                                                                      | 1.75 m <sup>2</sup>      |
| Soil ingestion rate, child 1–6 years                                                                    | >100 mg/day              |
| Soil ingestion rate, persons > 6 years                                                                  | 50 mg/day                |
| Skin adherence factor, gardener's hands                                                                 | 0.07 mg/cm <sup>2</sup>  |
| Skin adherence factor, wet soil                                                                         | 0.2 mg/cm <sup>2</sup>   |
| Exposure duration (ED)                                                                                  |                          |
| Lifetime                                                                                                | 75 years                 |
| At one residence, 90th percentile                                                                       | 30 years                 |
| National median                                                                                         | 5 years                  |
| Averaging time (ED for carcinogens is lifetime duration;<br>noncarcinogens is actual exposure duration) | (ED)(365 days/year)      |
| Exposure frequency (EF)                                                                                 |                          |
| Swimming                                                                                                | 7 days/year              |
| Eating fish and shellfish                                                                               | 48 days/year             |
| Oral ingestion                                                                                          | 350 days/year            |
| Exposure time (ET)                                                                                      |                          |
| Shower, 90th percentile                                                                                 | 12 min                   |
| Shower, 50th percentile                                                                                 | 7 min                    |

<sup>a</sup>Data in this category taken from: Copeland, T., A. M. Holbrow, J. M. Otan, et al., "Use of probabilistic methods to understand the conservatism in California's approach to assessing health risks posed by air contaminants," *Journal of the Air and Waste Management Association*, vol. 44, pp. 1399-1413, 1994.

Source: *Risk Assessment Guidance for Superfund*. Volume 1, *Human Health Evaluation Manual* (part A). U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, EPA/540/1-89/002, 1989.

## Concentrations of Vaporized Liquids

### Vaporization Rate ( $Q_m$ , mass/time) from a Liquid Surface

$$Q_m = [MKA_S P^{\text{sat}} / (R_g T_L)]$$

where

$M$  = molecular weight of volatile substance

$K$  = mass-transfer coefficient

$A_S$  = area of liquid surface

$P^{\text{sat}}$  = saturation vapor pressure of the pure liquid at  $T_L$

$R_g$  = ideal gas constant

$T_L$  = absolute temperature of the liquid

### Mass Flow Rate of Liquid from a Hole in the Wall of a Process Unit

$$Q_m = A_H C_0 (2\rho g_c P_g)^{1/2}$$

where

$A_H$  = area of hole

$C_0$  = discharge coefficient

$\rho$  = density of the liquid

$g_c$  = gravitational constant

$P_g$  = gauge pressure within the process unit

### Concentration ( $C_{\text{ppm}}$ ) of Vaporized Liquid in Ventilated Space

$$C_{\text{ppm}} = [Q_m R_g T \times 10^6 / (k Q_V P M)]$$

where

$T$  = absolute ambient temperature

$k$  = nonideal mixing factor

$Q_V$  = ventilation rate

$P$  = absolute ambient pressure

## Sweep-Through Concentration Change in a Vessel

$$Q_V t = V \ln [(C_1 - C_0) / (C_2 - C_0)]$$

where

$Q_V$  = volumetric flow rate

$t$  = time

$V$  = vessel volume

$C_0$  = inlet concentration

$C_1$  = initial concentration

$C_2$  = final concentration

## Ergonomics

### NIOSH Formula

#### Recommended Weight Limit (RWL)

$$RWL = 51(10/H)(1 - 0.0075|V - 30|)(0.82 + 1.8/D)(1 - 0.0032A)(FM)(CM)$$

where

RWL = recommended weight limit (pounds)

H = horizontal distance of the hand from the midpoint of the line joining the inner ankle bones to a point projected on the floor directly below the load center (inches)

V = vertical distance of the hands from the floor (inches)

D = vertical travel distance of the hands between the origin and destination of the lift (inches)

A = asymmetry angle (degrees)

FM = frequency multiplier (see table)

CM = coupling multiplier (see table)

Frequency Multiplier Table

|                      | ≤ 8 hr/day |            | ≤ 2 hr/day |            | ≤ 1 hr/day |            |
|----------------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| F, min <sup>-1</sup> | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. | V < 30 in. | V ≥ 30 in. |
| 0.2                  | 0.85       |            | 0.95       |            | 1.00       |            |
| 0.5                  | 0.81       |            | 0.92       |            | 0.97       |            |
| 1                    | 0.75       |            | 0.88       |            | 0.94       |            |
| 2                    | 0.65       |            | 0.84       |            | 0.91       |            |
| 3                    | 0.55       |            | 0.79       |            | 0.88       |            |
| 4                    | 0.45       |            | 0.72       |            | 0.84       |            |
| 5                    | 0.35       |            | 0.60       |            | 0.80       |            |
| 6                    | 0.27       |            | 0.50       |            | 0.75       |            |
| 7                    | 0.22       |            | 0.42       |            | 0.70       |            |
| 8                    | 0.18       |            | 0.35       |            | 0.60       |            |
| 9                    |            | 0.15       | 0.30       |            | 0.52       |            |
| 10                   |            | 0.13       | 0.26       |            | 0.45       |            |
| 11                   |            |            |            | 0.23       | 0.41       |            |
| 12                   |            |            |            | 0.21       | 0.37       |            |
| 13                   |            |            | 0.00       |            |            | 0.34       |
| 14                   |            |            |            |            |            | 0.31       |
| 15                   |            |            |            |            |            | 0.28       |

Source: Waters, Thomas R., Ph.D., et al, *Applications Manual for the Revised NIOSH Lifting Equation*, Table 5, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (NIOSH), January 1994.

**Coupling Multiplier (CM) Table  
(Function of Coupling of Hands to Load)**

| Container                |                         | Loose Part / Irreg. Object |      |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------|------|
| Optimal Design           |                         | Comfort Grip               | Not  |
| Opt. Handles or Cut-outs | Not                     | POOR                       | GOOD |
|                          |                         |                            |      |
| GOOD                     | Flex Fingers 90 Degrees | Not                        |      |
|                          | FAIR                    | POOR                       |      |

| Coupling | V < 30 in. or 75 cm | V ≥ 30 in. or 75 cm |
|----------|---------------------|---------------------|
| GOOD     | 1.00                |                     |
| FAIR     | 0.95                |                     |
| POOR     | 0.90                |                     |

Source: Waters, Thomas R., Ph.D., et al, *Applications Manual for the Revised NIOSH Lifting Equation*, Table 7, U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (NIOSH), January 1994.

## Biomechanics of the Human Body

### Basic Equations

$$H_x + F_x = 0$$

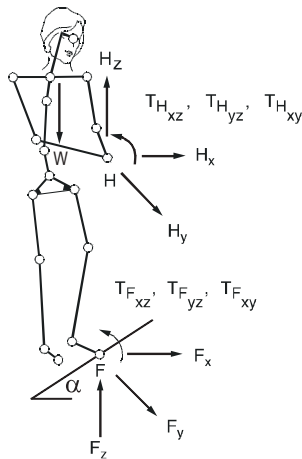
$$H_y + F_y = 0$$

$$H_z + W + F_z = 0$$

$$T_{Hxz} + T_{Wxz} + T_{Fxz} = 0$$

$$T_{Hyx} + T_{Wyx} + T_{Fyx} = 0$$

$$T_{Hxy} + T_{Fxy} = 0$$



The coefficient of friction  $\mu$  and the angle  $\alpha$  at which the floor is inclined determine the equations at the foot.

$$F_x = \mu F_z$$

With the slope angle  $\alpha$

$$F_x = \mu F_z \cos \alpha$$

Of course, when motion must be considered, dynamic conditions come into play according to Newton's Second Law. Force transmitted with the hands is counteracted at the foot. Further, the body must also react with internal forces at all points between the hand and the foot.

## Incidence Variable Values

Two concepts can be important when completing OSHA forms. These concepts are *incidence rates* and *severity rates*. On occasion it is necessary to calculate the total injury/illness incident rate of an organization in order to complete OSHA forms. This calculation must include fatalities and all injuries requiring medical treatment beyond mere first aid. The formula for determining the total injury/illness incident rate is as follows:

$$IR = N \times 200,000 \div T$$

where

$IR$  = Total injury/illness incidence rate

$N$  = Number of injuries, illnesses, and fatalities

$T$  = Total hours worked by all employees during the period in question

The number 200,000 in the formula represents the number of hours 100 employees work in a year (40 hours per week  $\times$  50 weeks = 2,000 hours per year per employee). Using the same basic formula with only minor substitutions, safety managers can calculate the following types of incidence rates:

1. Injury rate
2. Illness rate
3. Fatality rate
4. Lost workday cases rate
5. Number of lost workdays rate
6. Specific hazard rate
7. Lost workday injuries rate

## Noise Pollution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{SPL (dB)} &= 10 \log_{10} \left( P^2 / P_0^2 \right) \\ \text{SPL}_{\text{total}} &= 10 \log_{10} \sum 10^{\text{SPL}/10} \end{aligned}$$

Point Source Attenuation

$$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)} = 10 \log_{10} (r_1/r_2)^2$$

Line Source Attenuation

$$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)} = 10 \log_{10} (r_1/r_2)$$

where

SPL (dB) = sound pressure level, measured in decibels

$P$  = sound pressure (Pa)

$P_0$  = reference sound pressure ( $2 \times 10^{-5}$  Pa)

$\text{SPL}_{\text{total}}$  = sum of multiple sources

$\Delta \text{SPL (dB)}$  = change in sound pressure level with distance, measured in decibels

$r_1$  = distance from source to receptor at Point 1

$r_2$  = distance from source to receptor at Point 2

## Permissible Noise Exposure (OSHA)

Noise dose  $D$  should not exceed 100%.

$$D = 100\% \times \sum \frac{C_i}{T_i}$$

where

$C_i$  = time spent at specified sound pressure level, SPL (hours)

$T_i$  = time permitted at SPL (hours)

$\sum C_i$  = 8 (hours)

| Noise Level<br>(dBA) | Permissible Time<br>(hr) |
|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 80                   | 32                       |
| 85                   | 16                       |
| 90                   | 8                        |
| 95                   | 4                        |
| 100                  | 2                        |
| 105                  | 1                        |
| 110                  | 0.5                      |
| 115                  | 0.25                     |
| 120                  | 0.125                    |
| 125                  | 0.063                    |
| 130                  | 0.031                    |

If  $D > 100\%$ , noise abatement required.

If  $50\% \leq D \leq 100\%$ , hearing conservation program required.

Note:  $D = 100\%$  is equivalent to 90 dBA time-weighted average (TWA).  $D = 50\%$  equivalent to TWA of 85 dBA.

Hearing conservation program requires: (1) testing employee hearing, (2) providing hearing protection at employee's request, and (3) monitoring noise exposure.

Exposure to impulsive or impact noise should not exceed 140 dB sound pressure level (SPL).

# Mathematics

## Discrete Math

### Symbols

|                          |                                                                  |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $x \in X$                | $x$ is a member of $X$                                           |
| $\{ \}, \phi$            | The empty (or null) set                                          |
| $S \subseteq T$          | $S$ is a subset of $T$                                           |
| $S \subset T$            | $S$ is a proper subset of $T$                                    |
| $(a, b)$                 | Ordered pair                                                     |
| $P(S)$                   | Power set of $S$                                                 |
| $(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$ | $n$ -tuple                                                       |
| $A \times B$             | Cartesian product of $A$ and $B$                                 |
| $A \cup B$               | Union of $A$ and $B$                                             |
| $A \cap B$               | Intersection of $A$ and $B$                                      |
| $\forall x$              | Universal qualification for all $x$ ; for any $x$ ; for each $x$ |
| $\exists y$              | Uniqueness qualification that there exists $y$                   |

A binary relation from  $A$  to  $B$  is a subset of  $A \times B$ .

### Matrix of Relation

If  $A = \{a_1, a_2, \dots, a_m\}$  and  $B = \{b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n\}$  are finite sets containing  $m$  and  $n$  elements, respectively, then a relation  $R$  from  $A$  to  $B$  can be represented by the  $m \times n$  matrix

$M_R = [m_{ij}]$ , which is defined by:

$$m_{ij} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \in R \\ 0 & \text{if } (a_i, b_j) \notin R \end{cases}$$

### Directed Graphs, or Digraphs, of Relation

A directed graph, or digraph, consists of a set  $V$  of vertices (or nodes) together with a set  $E$  of ordered pairs of elements of  $V$  called *edges* (or *arcs*). For edge  $(a, b)$ , the vertex  $a$  is called the *initial vertex* and vertex  $b$  is called the *terminal vertex*. An edge of form  $(a, a)$  is called a *loop*.

### Finite State Machine

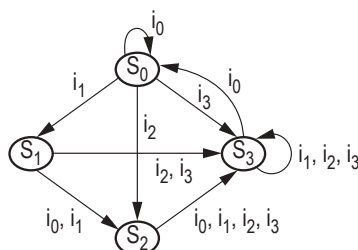
A finite state machine consists of a finite set of states

$S_i = \{s_0, s_1, \dots, s_n\}$  and a finite set of inputs  $I$ ; and a transition function  $f$  that assigns to each state and input pair a new state.

A state (or truth) table can be used to represent the finite state machine.

| State | Input |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
|       | $i_0$ | $i_1$ | $i_2$ | $i_3$ |
| $S_0$ | $S_0$ | $S_1$ | $S_2$ | $S_3$ |
| $S_1$ | $S_2$ | $S_2$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ |
| $S_2$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ |
| $S_3$ | $S_0$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ | $S_3$ |

Another way to represent a finite state machine is to use a state diagram, which is a directed graph with labeled edges.



The characteristic of how a function maps one set (X) to another set (Y) may be described in terms of being either injective, surjective, or bijective.

An injective (one-to-one) relationship exists if, and only if,

$$\forall x_1, x_2 \in X, \text{ if } f(x_1) = f(x_2), \text{ then } x_1 = x_2$$

A surjective (onto) relationship exists when  $\forall y \in Y, \exists x \in X$  such that  $f(x) = y$

A bijective relationship is both injective (one-to-one) and surjective (onto).

## Straight Line

The general form of the equation is

$$Ax + By + C = 0$$

The standard form of the equation is

$$y = mx + b,$$

which is also known as the *slope-intercept* form.

The *point-slope* form is

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$$

Given two points: slope,

$$m = (y_2 - y_1)/(x_2 - x_1)$$

The angle between lines with slopes  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  is

$$\alpha = \arctan [(m_2 - m_1)/(1 + m_2 \cdot m_1)]$$

Two lines are perpendicular if  $m_1 = -1/m_2$

The distance between two points is

$$d = \sqrt{(y_2 - y_1)^2 + (x_2 - x_1)^2}$$

## Quadratic Equation

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

$$x = \text{Roots} = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

## Quadric Surface (SPHERE)

The standard form of the equation is

$$(x - h)^2 + (y - k)^2 + (z - m)^2 = r^2$$

with center at  $(h, k, m)$ .

In a three-dimensional space, the distance between two points is

$$d = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2 + (z_2 - z_1)^2}$$

## Logarithms

The logarithm of  $x$  to the Base  $b$  is defined by

$$\log_b(x) = c$$

where  $b^c = x$

Special definitions for  $b = e$  or  $b = 10$  are:

$$\ln x, \text{ Base} = e$$

$$\log x, \text{ Base} = 10$$

To change from one Base to another:

$$\log_b x = (\log_a x)/(\log_a b)$$

$$\text{e.g., } \ln x = (\log_{10} x)/(\log_{10} e) = 2.302585 (\log_{10} x)$$

## Identities

$$\log_b b^n = n$$

$$\log x^c = c \log x; x^c = \text{antilog } (c \log x)$$

$$\log xy = \log x + \log y$$

$$\log_b b = 1; \log 1 = 0$$

$$\log x/y = \log x - \log y$$

## Algebra of Complex Numbers

Complex numbers may be designated in rectangular form or polar form. In rectangular form, a complex number is written in terms of its real and imaginary components.

$$z = a + jb$$

where

$a$  = real component

$b$  = imaginary component

$j = \sqrt{-1}$  (some disciplines use  $i = \sqrt{-1}$ )

In polar form

$$z = c \angle \theta$$

where

$$c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$$

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} (b/a)$$

$$a = c \cos \theta$$

$$b = c \sin \theta$$

Complex numbers can be added and subtracted in rectangular form. If

$$z_1 = a_1 + jb_1 = c_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1) = c_1 \angle \theta_1 \text{ and}$$

$$z_2 = a_2 + jb_2 = c_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2) = c_2 \angle \theta_2, \text{ then}$$

$$z_1 + z_2 = (a_1 + a_2) + j (b_1 + b_2) \text{ and}$$

$$z_1 - z_2 = (a_1 - a_2) + j (b_1 - b_2)$$

While complex numbers can be multiplied or divided in rectangular form, it is more convenient to perform these operations in polar form.

$$z_1 \times z_2 = (c_1 \times c_2) \angle (\theta_1 + \theta_2)$$

$$z_1/z_2 = (c_1/c_2) \angle (\theta_1 - \theta_2)$$

The complex conjugate of a complex number  $z_1 = (a_1 + jb_1)$  is defined as  $z_1^* = (a_1 - jb_1)$ . The product of a complex number and its complex conjugate is  $z_1 z_1^* = a_1^2 + b_1^2$ .

## Polar Coordinate System

$$x = r \cos \theta; y = r \sin \theta; \theta = \arctan (y/x)$$

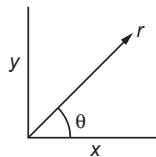
$$r = |x + jy| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2}$$

$$x + jy = r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta) = r e^{j\theta}$$

$$[r_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1)][r_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2)] = r_1 r_2 [\cos (\theta_1 + \theta_2) + j \sin (\theta_1 + \theta_2)]$$

$$(x + jy)^n = [r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta)]^n = r^n (\cos n\theta + j \sin n\theta)$$

$$\frac{r_1 (\cos \theta_1 + j \sin \theta_1)}{r_2 (\cos \theta_2 + j \sin \theta_2)} = \frac{r_1}{r_2} [\cos (\theta_1 - \theta_2) + j \sin (\theta_1 - \theta_2)]$$



## Euler's Identity

$$e^{j\theta} = \cos \theta + j \sin \theta$$

$$e^{-j\theta} = \cos \theta - j \sin \theta$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{e^{j\theta} + e^{-j\theta}}{2}, \quad \sin \theta = \frac{e^{j\theta} - e^{-j\theta}}{2j}$$

## Roots

If  $k$  is any positive integer, any complex number (other than zero) has  $k$  distinct roots. The  $k$  roots of  $r (\cos \theta + j \sin \theta)$  can be found by substituting successively  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots, (k - 1)$  in the formula

$$w = \sqrt[k]{r} \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\theta}{k} + n \frac{360^\circ}{k} \right) + j \sin \left( \frac{\theta}{k} + n \frac{360^\circ}{k} \right) \right]$$

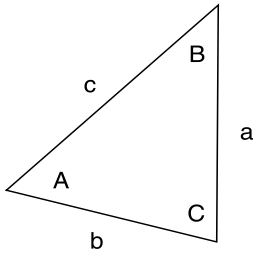
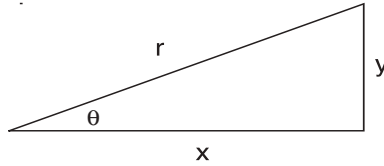
## Trigonometry

Trigonometric functions are defined using a right triangle.

$$\sin \theta = y/r, \quad \cos \theta = x/r$$

$$\tan \theta = y/x, \quad \cot \theta = x/y$$

$$\csc \theta = r/y, \quad \sec \theta = r/x$$



**Law of Sines**  $\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$

### Law of Cosines

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$$

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

Source: Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Co., Inc., Englewood Cliffs, NJ, 1937.

## Identities

$$\cos \theta = \sin (\theta + \pi/2) = -\sin (\theta - \pi/2)$$

$$\sin \theta = \cos (\theta - \pi/2) = -\cos (\theta + \pi/2)$$

$$\csc \theta = 1/\sin \theta$$

$$\sec \theta = 1/\cos \theta$$

$$\tan \theta = \sin \theta / \cos \theta$$

$$\cot \theta = 1/\tan \theta$$

$$\sin^2 \theta + \cos^2 \theta = 1$$

$$\tan^2 \theta + 1 = \sec^2 \theta$$

$$\cot^2 \theta + 1 = \csc^2 \theta$$

$$\sin (\alpha + \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta + \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos (\alpha + \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta - \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\sin 2\alpha = 2 \sin \alpha \cos \alpha$$

$$\cos 2\alpha = \cos^2 \alpha - \sin^2 \alpha = 1 - 2 \sin^2 \alpha = 2 \cos^2 \alpha - 1$$

$$\tan 2\alpha = (2 \tan \alpha) / (1 - \tan^2 \alpha)$$

$$\cot 2\alpha = (\cot^2 \alpha - 1) / (2 \cot \alpha)$$

$$\tan (\alpha + \beta) = (\tan \alpha + \tan \beta) / (1 - \tan \alpha \tan \beta)$$

$$\cot (\alpha + \beta) = (\cot \alpha \cot \beta - 1) / (\cot \alpha + \cot \beta)$$

$$\sin (\alpha - \beta) = \sin \alpha \cos \beta - \cos \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\cos (\alpha - \beta) = \cos \alpha \cos \beta + \sin \alpha \sin \beta$$

$$\tan (\alpha - \beta) = (\tan \alpha - \tan \beta) / (1 + \tan \alpha \tan \beta)$$

$$\cot (\alpha - \beta) = (\cot \alpha \cot \beta + 1) / (\cot \beta - \cot \alpha)$$

$$\sin (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 - \cos \alpha)/2}$$

$$\cos (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 + \cos \alpha)/2}$$

$$\tan (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 - \cos \alpha)/(1 + \cos \alpha)}$$

$$\cot (\alpha/2) = \pm \sqrt{(1 + \cos \alpha)/(1 - \cos \alpha)}$$

$$\sin \alpha \sin \beta = (1/2)[\cos (\alpha - \beta) - \cos (\alpha + \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha \cos \beta = (1/2)[\cos (\alpha - \beta) + \cos (\alpha + \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha \cos \beta = (1/2)[\sin (\alpha + \beta) + \sin (\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha + \sin \beta = 2 \sin [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \cos [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\sin \alpha - \sin \beta = 2 \cos [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \sin [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha + \cos \beta = 2 \cos [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \cos [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

$$\cos \alpha - \cos \beta = -2 \sin [(1/2)(\alpha + \beta)] \sin [(1/2)(\alpha - \beta)]$$

## Mensuration of Areas and Volumes

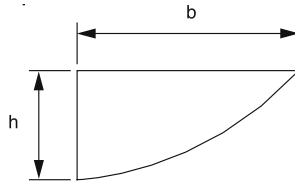
### Nomenclature

$A$  = total surface area

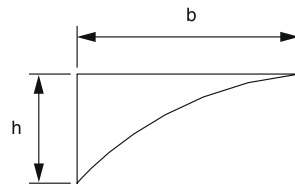
$P$  = perimeter

$V$  = volume

### Parabola

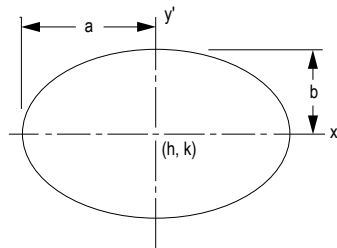


$$A = 2bh/3$$



$$A = bh/3$$

### Ellipse



$$A = \pi ab$$

$$P_{approx} = 2\pi\sqrt{(a^2 + b^2)/2}$$

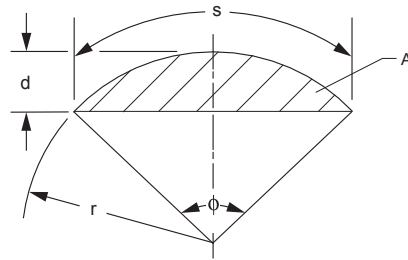
$$P = \pi(a+b) \left[ 1 + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 \lambda^2 + \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}\right)^2 \lambda^4 + \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{3}{6}\right)^2 \lambda^6 + \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{3}{6} \times \frac{5}{8}\right)^2 \lambda^8 + \left(\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4} \times \frac{3}{6} \times \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{7}{10}\right)^2 \lambda^{10} + \dots \right]$$

where

$$\lambda = (a-b)/(a+b)$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Circular Segment

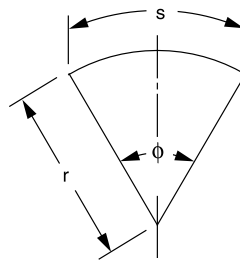


$$A = \left[ r^2 (\phi - \sin \phi) \right] / 2$$

$$\phi = s/r = 2 \left\{ \arccos \left[ (r - d)/r \right] \right\}$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Circular Sector

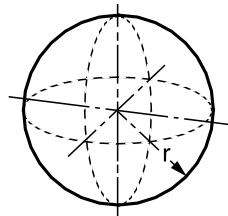


$$A = \phi r^2 / 2 = sr / 2$$

$$\phi = s/r$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Sphere

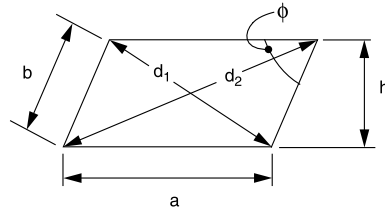


$$V = 4\pi r^3 / 3 = \pi d^3 / 6$$

$$A = 4\pi r^2 = \pi d^2$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Parallelogram



$$P = 2(a + b)$$

$$d_1 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab(\cos \phi)}$$

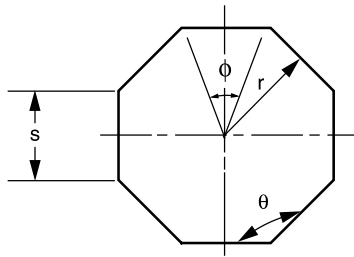
$$d_2 = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 + 2ab(\cos \phi)}$$

$$d_1^2 + d_2^2 = 2(a^2 + b^2)$$

$$A = ah = ab(\sin \phi)$$

If  $a = b$ , the parallelogram is a rhombus.

## Regular Polygon ( $n$ equal sides)



$$\phi = 2\pi/n$$

$$\theta = \left[ \frac{\pi(n-2)}{n} \right] = \pi \left( 1 - \frac{2}{n} \right)$$

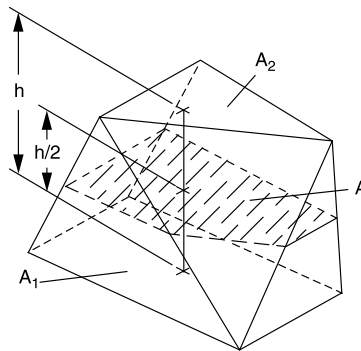
$$P = ns$$

$$s = 2r \left[ \tan(\phi/2) \right]$$

$$A = (nsr)/2$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

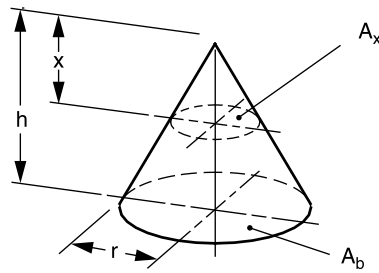
## Prismoid



$$V = (h/6)(A_1 + A_2 + 4A)$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Right Circular Cone



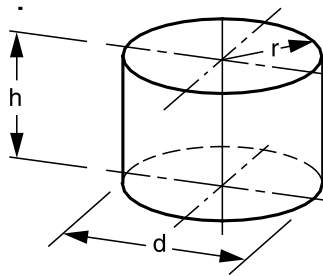
$$V = (\pi r^2 h) / 3$$

$$A = \text{side area} + \text{base area} = \pi r (r + \sqrt{r^2 + h^2})$$

$$A_x : A_b = x^2 : h^2$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Right Circular Cylinder

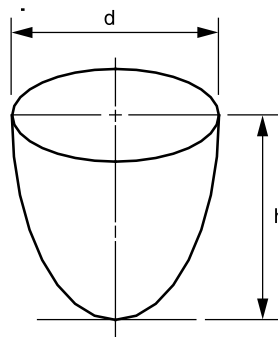


$$V = \pi r^2 h = \frac{\pi d^2 h}{4}$$

$$A = \text{side area} + \text{end areas} = 2\pi r(h + r)$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

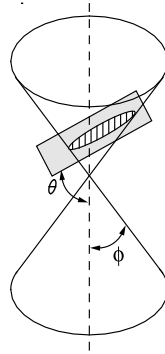
## Paraboloid of Revolution



$$V = \frac{\pi d^2 h}{8}$$

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

## Conic Sections

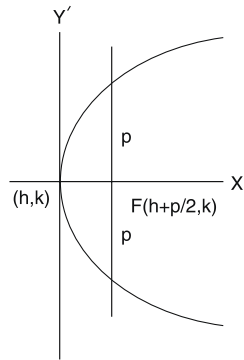


$$e = \text{eccentricity} = \cos \theta / (\cos \phi)$$

[Note:  $X'$  and  $Y'$ , in the following cases, are translated axes.]

Source: Gieck, K., and R. Gieck, *Engineering Formulas*, 6th ed., Gieck Publishing, 1967.

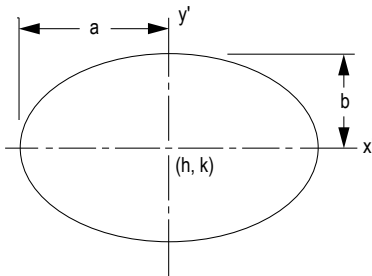
### Case 1. Parabola $e = 1$ :



$(y - k)^2 = 2p(x - h)$ ; Center at  $(h, k)$  is the standard form of the equation. When  $h = k = 0$ ,  
Focus:  $(p/2, 0)$ ; Directrix:  $x = -p/2$

Source: Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc. (Prentice Hall), 1937.

### Case 2. Ellipse $e < 1$ :



$\frac{(x - h)^2}{a^2} + \frac{(y - k)^2}{b^2} = 1$ ; Center at  $(h, k)$  is the standard form of the equation. When  $h = k = 0$ ,

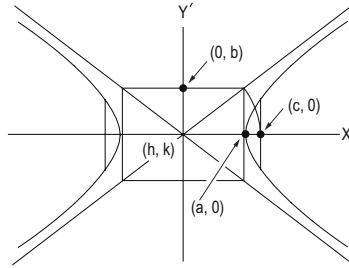
Eccentricity:  $e = \sqrt{1 - (b^2/a^2)} = c/a$

$$b = a\sqrt{1 - e^2};$$

Focus:  $(\pm ae, 0)$ ; Directrix:  $x = \pm a/e$

Source: Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc. (Prentice Hall), 1937.

**Case 3. Hyperbola  $e > 1$ :**



$$\frac{(x-h)^2}{a^2} - \frac{(y-k)^2}{b^2} = 1;$$

Center at  $(h, k)$  is the standard form of the equation. When  $h = k = 0$ ,

Eccentricity:  $e = \sqrt{1 + (b^2/a^2)} = c/a$

$$b = a\sqrt{e^2 - 1};$$

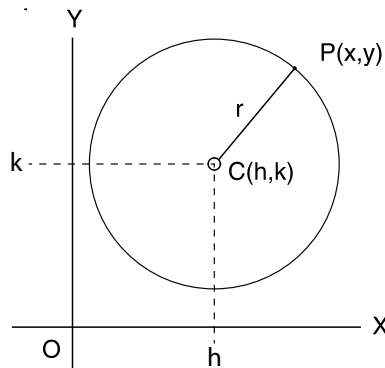
Focus:  $(\pm ae, 0)$ ; Directrix:  $x = \pm a/e$

Source: Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc. (Prentice Hall), 1937.

**Case 4. Circle  $e = 0$ :**

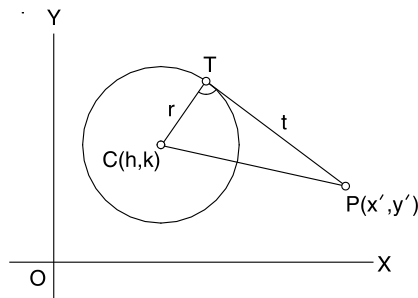
$(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 = r^2$ ; Center at  $(h, k)$  is the standard form of the equation with radius

$$r = \sqrt{(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2}$$



Length of the tangent line from a point on a circle to a point  $(x', y')$ :

$$t^2 = (x' - h)^2 + (y' - k)^2 - r^2$$



Source: Brink, R.W., *A First Year of College Mathematics*, D. Appleton-Century Company, Inc. (Prentice Hall), 1937.

## Conic Section Equation

The general form of the conic section equation is

$$Ax^2 + Bxy + Cy^2 + Dx + Ey + F = 0$$

where not both  $A$  and  $C$  are zero.

If  $B^2 - 4AC < 0$ , an ellipse is defined.

If  $B^2 - 4AC > 0$ , a hyperbola is defined.

If  $B^2 - 4AC = 0$ , the conic is a parabola.

If  $A = C$  and  $B = 0$ , a circle is defined.

If  $A = B = C = 0$ , a straight line is defined.

$$x^2 + y^2 + 2ax + 2by + c = 0$$

is the normal form of the conic section equation, if that conic section has a principal axis parallel to a coordinate axis.

$$h = -a; k = -b$$

$$r = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - c}$$

If  $a^2 + b^2 - c$  is positive, a circle, center  $(-a, -b)$ .

If  $a^2 + b^2 - c$  equals zero, a point at  $(-a, -b)$ .

If  $a^2 + b^2 - c$  is negative, locus is imaginary.

## Differential Calculus

### The Derivative

For any function  $y = f(x)$ , the derivative  $= D_x y = dy/dx = y'$

$$y' = \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} [(\Delta y)/(\Delta x)]$$

$$= \lim_{\Delta x \rightarrow 0} \{[f(x + \Delta x) - f(x)]/(\Delta x)\}$$

$y' =$  the slope of the curve  $f(x)$ .

#### Test for a Maximum

$y = f(x)$  is a maximum for

$x = a$ , if  $f'(a) = 0$  and  $f''(a) < 0$ .

#### Test for a Minimum

$y = f(x)$  is a minimum for

$x = a$ , if  $f'(a) = 0$  and  $f''(a) > 0$ .

#### Test for a Point of Inflection

$y = f(x)$  has a point of inflection at  $x = a$ ,

if  $f''(a) = 0$ , and

if  $f''(x)$  changes sign as  $x$  increases through

$x = a$ .

#### *The Partial Derivative*

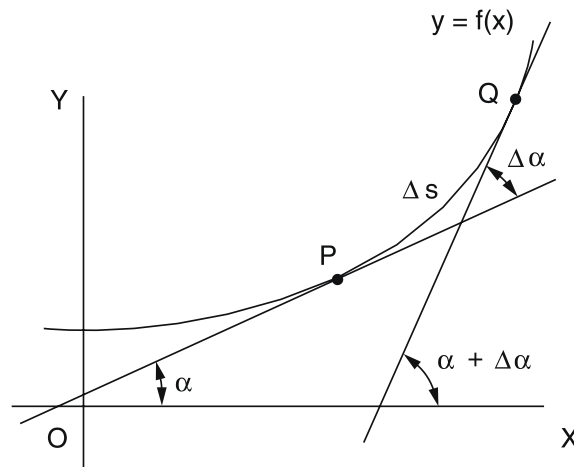
In a function of two independent variables  $x$  and  $y$ , a derivative with respect to one of the variables may be found if the other variable is *assumed* to remain constant. If  $y$  is *kept fixed*, the function

$$z = f(x, y)$$

becomes a function of the *single variable*  $x$ , and its derivative (if it exists) can be found. This derivative is called the *partial derivative of  $z$  with respect to  $x$* . The partial derivative with respect to  $x$  is denoted as follows:

$$\frac{\partial z}{\partial x} = \frac{\partial f(x, y)}{\partial x}$$

### The Curvature of Any Curve



The curvature  $K$  of a curve at  $P$  is the limit of its average curvature for the arc  $PQ$  as  $Q$  approaches  $P$ . This is also expressed as: the curvature of a curve at a given point is the rate-of-change of its inclination with respect to its arc length.

$$K = \lim_{\Delta s \rightarrow 0} \frac{\Delta \alpha}{\Delta s} = \frac{d\alpha}{ds}$$

Source: Wade, Thomas L., *Calculus*, Boston, Ginn and Company, 1953.

### Curvature in Rectangular Coordinates

$$K = \frac{|y''|}{[1 + (y')^2]^{3/2}}$$

No absolute value signs for the signed curvature.

When it may be easier to differentiate the function with respect to  $y$  rather than  $x$ , the notation  $x'$  will be used for the derivative.

$$x' = dx/dy$$

$$K = \frac{-x''}{[1 + (x')^2]^{3/2}}$$

### The Radius of Curvature

The *radius of curvature*  $R$  at any point on a curve is defined as the absolute value of the reciprocal of the curvature  $K$  at that point.

$$R = \frac{1}{|K|} \quad (K \neq 0)$$

$$R = \left| \frac{[1 + (y')^2]^{3/2}}{|y''|} \right| \quad (y'' \neq 0)$$

### L'Hospital's Rule (L'Hôpital's Rule)

If the fractional function  $f(x)/g(x)$  assumes one of the indeterminate forms  $0/0$  or  $\infty/\infty$  (where  $\alpha$  is finite or infinite), then

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} f(x)/g(x)$$

is equal to the first of the expressions

$$\lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f'(x)}{g'(x)}, \lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f''(x)}{g''(x)}, \lim_{x \rightarrow \alpha} \frac{f'''(x)}{g'''(x)}$$

which is not indeterminate, provided such first indicated limit exists.

### Integral Calculus

The definite integral is defined as:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i) \Delta x_i = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

Also,  $\Delta x_i \rightarrow 0$  for all  $i$ .

A table of derivatives and integrals is available in the Derivatives and Indefinite Integrals sections. The integral equations can be used along with the following methods of integration:

- A. Integration by Parts (integral equation #6),
- B. Integration by Substitution, and
- C. Separation of Rational Fractions into Partial Fractions.

## Derivatives

In these formulas,  $u$ ,  $v$ , and  $w$  represent functions of  $x$ . Also,  $a$ ,  $c$ , and  $n$  represent constants. All arguments of the trigonometric functions are in radians. A constant of integration should be added to the integrals. The following definitions are followed:  
 $\arcsin u = \sin^{-1} u$ ,  $(\sin u)^{-1} = 1/\sin u$ .

1.  $dc/dx = 0$
2.  $dx/dx = 1$
3.  $d(cu)/dx = c du/dx$
4.  $d(u + v - w)/dx = du/dx + dv/dx - dw/dx$
5.  $d(uv)/dx = u dv/dx + v du/dx$
6.  $d(uvw)/dx = uv dw/dx + uw dv/dx + vw du/dx$
7.  $\frac{d(u/v)}{dx} = \frac{v du/dx - u dv/dx}{v^2}$
8.  $d(u^n)/dx = nu^{n-1} du/dx$
9.  $d[f(u)]/dx = \{d[f(u)]/du\} du/dx$
10.  $du/dx = 1/(dx/du)$
11.  $\frac{d(\log_a u)}{dx} = (\log_a e) \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$
12.  $\frac{d(\ln u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{u} \frac{du}{dx}$
13.  $\frac{d(a^u)}{dx} = (\ln a) a^u \frac{du}{dx}$
14.  $d(e^u)/dx = e^u du/dx$
15.  $d(u^v)/dx = vu^{v-1} du/dx + (\ln u) u^v dv/dx$
16.  $d(\sin u)/dx = \cos u du/dx$
17.  $d(\cos u)/dx = -\sin u du/dx$
18.  $d(\tan u)/dx = \sec^2 u du/dx$
19.  $d(\cot u)/dx = -\csc^2 u du/dx$
20.  $d(\sec u)/dx = \sec u \tan u du/dx$
21.  $d(\csc u)/dx = -\csc u \cot u du/dx$
22.  $\frac{d(\sin^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (-\pi/2 \leq \sin^{-1} u \leq \pi/2)$
23.  $\frac{d(\cos^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{1-u^2}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 \leq \cos^{-1} u \leq \pi)$
24.  $\frac{d(\tan^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{1+u^2} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (-\pi/2 < \tan^{-1} u < \pi/2)$
25.  $\frac{d(\cot^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{1+u^2} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 < \cot^{-1} u < \pi)$
26.  $\frac{d(\sec^{-1} u)}{dx} = \frac{1}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 < \sec^{-1} u < \pi/2)(-\pi \leq \sec^{-1} u < -\pi/2)$
27.  $\frac{d(\csc^{-1} u)}{dx} = -\frac{1}{u\sqrt{u^2-1}} \frac{du}{dx} \quad (0 < \csc^{-1} u \leq \pi/2)(-\pi < \csc^{-1} u \leq -\pi/2)$

### Indefinite Integrals

1.  $\int df(x) = f(x)$
2.  $\int dx = x$
3.  $\int a f(x) dx = a \int f(x) dx$
4.  $\int [u(x) \pm v(x)] dx = \int u(x) dx \pm \int v(x) dx$
5.  $\int x^m dx = \frac{x^{m+1}}{m+1} \quad (m \neq -1)$
6.  $\int u(x) dv(x) = u(x)v(x) - \int v(x) du(x)$
7.  $\int \frac{dx}{ax+b} = \frac{1}{a} \ln |ax+b|$
8.  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x}} = 2\sqrt{x}$
9.  $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\ln a}$
10.  $\int \sin x dx = -\cos x$
11.  $\int \cos x dx = \sin x$
12.  $\int \sin^2 x dx = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\sin 2x}{4}$
13.  $\int \cos^2 x dx = \frac{x}{2} + \frac{\sin 2x}{4}$
14.  $\int x \sin x dx = \sin x - x \cos x$
15.  $\int x \cos x dx = \cos x + x \sin x$
16.  $\int \sin x \cos x dx = (\sin^2 x)/2$
17.  $\int \sin ax \cos bx dx = -\frac{\cos(a-b)x}{2(a-b)} - \frac{\cos(a+b)x}{2(a+b)} \quad (a^2 \neq b^2)$
18.  $\int \tan x dx = -\ln |\cos x| = \ln |\sec x|$
19.  $\int \cot x dx = -\ln |\csc x| = \ln |\sin x|$
20.  $\int \tan^2 x dx = \tan x - x$
21.  $\int \cot^2 x dx = -\cot x - x$
22.  $\int e^{ax} dx = (1/a) e^{ax}$
23.  $\int x e^{ax} dx = (e^{ax}/a^2)(ax - 1)$
24.  $\int \ln x dx = x [\ln(x) - 1] \quad (x > 0)$
25.  $\int \frac{dx}{a^2 + x^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} \quad (a \neq 0)$
26.  $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{ac}} \tan^{-1} \left( x \sqrt{\frac{a}{c}} \right) \quad (a > 0, c > 0)$
- 27a.  $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + bx + c} = \frac{2}{\sqrt{4ac - b^2}} \tan^{-1} \frac{2ax + b}{\sqrt{4ac - b^2}} \quad (4ac - b^2 > 0)$
- 27b.  $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + bx + c} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}} \ln \left| \frac{2ax + b - \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2ax + b + \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}} \right| \quad (b^2 - 4ac > 0)$
- 27c.  $\int \frac{dx}{ax^2 + bx + c} = -\frac{2}{2ax + b} \quad (b^2 - 4ac = 0)$

## Progression and Series

### Arithmetic Progression

To determine whether a given finite sequence of numbers is an arithmetic progression, subtract each number from the following number. If the differences are equal, the series is arithmetic.

1. The first term is  $a$ .
2. The common difference is  $d$ .
3. The number of terms is  $n$ .
4. The last or  $n$ th term is  $l$ .
5. The sum of  $n$  terms is  $S$ .

$$l = a + (n - 1)d$$

$$S = n(a + l)/2 = n [2a + (n - 1) d]/2$$

### Geometric Progression

To determine whether a given finite sequence is a geometric progression (G.P.), divide each number after the first by the preceding number. If the quotients are equal, the series is geometric:

1. The first term is  $a$ .
2. The common ratio is  $r$ .
3. The number of terms is  $n$ .
4. The last or  $n$ th term is  $l$ .
5. The sum of  $n$  terms is  $S$ .

$$l = ar^{n-1}$$

$$S = a (1 - r^n)/(1 - r); r \neq 1$$

$$S = (a - rl)/(1 - r); r \neq 1$$

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} S_n = a/(1 - r); r < 1$$

A G.P. converges if  $|r| < 1$  and it diverges if  $|r| > 1$ .

### Properties of Series

$$\sum_{i=1}^n c = nc; \quad c = \text{constant}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n cx_i = c \sum_{i=1}^n x_i$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n (x_i + y_i - z_i) = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i + \sum_{i=1}^n y_i - \sum_{i=1}^n z_i$$

$$\sum_{x=1}^n x = (n + n^2)/2$$

$$\prod_{i=1}^n x_i = x_1 x_2 x_3 \dots x_n$$

### Power Series

$$\sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i (x - a)^i$$

1. A power series, which is convergent in the interval  $-R < x < R$ , defines a function of  $x$  that is continuous for all values of  $x$  within the interval and is said to represent the function in that interval.
2. A power series may be differentiated term by term within its interval of convergence. The resulting series has the same interval of convergence as the original series (except possibly at the end points of the series).
3. A power series may be integrated term by term provided the limits of integration are within the interval of convergence of the series.
4. Two power series may be added, subtracted, or multiplied, and the resulting series in each case is convergent, at least, in the interval common to the two series.
5. Using the process of long division (as for polynomials), two power series may be divided one by the other within their common interval of convergence.

## Taylor's Series

$$f(x) = f(a) + \frac{f'(a)}{1!}(x-a) + \frac{f''(a)}{2!}(x-a)^2 + \dots + \frac{f^{(n)}(a)}{n!}(x-a)^n + \dots$$

is called *Taylor's series*, and the function  $f(x)$  is said to be expanded about the point  $a$  in a Taylor's series.

If  $a = 0$ , the Taylor's series equation becomes a *Maclaurin's series*.

## Differential Equations

A common class of ordinary linear differential equations is

$$b_n \frac{d^n y(x)}{dx^n} + \dots + b_1 \frac{dy(x)}{dx} + b_0 y(x) = f(x)$$

where  $b_n, \dots, b_1, b_0$  are constants.

When the equation is a homogeneous differential equation,  $f(x) = 0$ , the solution is

$$y_h(x) = C_1 e^{r_1 x} + C_2 e^{r_2 x} + \dots + C_i e^{r_i x} + \dots + C_n e^{r_n x}$$

where  $r_n$  is the  $n$ th distinct root of the characteristic polynomial  $P(x)$  with

$$P(r) = b_n r^n + b_{n-1} r^{n-1} + \dots + b_1 r + b_0$$

If the root  $r_1 = r_2$ , then  $C_2 e^{r_2 x}$  is replaced with  $C_2 x e^{r_1 x}$ .

Higher orders of multiplicity imply higher powers of  $x$ . The complete solution for the differential equation is

$$y(x) = y_h(x) + y_p(x),$$

where  $y_p(x)$  is any particular solution with  $f(x)$  present. If  $f(x)$  has  $e^{r_n x}$  terms, then resonance is manifested.

Furthermore, specific  $f(x)$  forms result in specific  $y_p(x)$  forms, some of which are:

| $f(x)$                                  | $y_p(x)$                                |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| $A$                                     | $B$                                     |
| $Ae^{\alpha x}$                         | $Be^{\alpha x}, \alpha \neq r_n$        |
| $A_1 \sin \omega x + A_2 \cos \omega x$ | $B_1 \sin \omega x + B_2 \cos \omega x$ |

If the independent variable is time  $t$ , then transient dynamic solutions are implied.

### First-Order Linear Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

$$y' + ay = 0$$

where  $a$  is a real constant:

$$\text{Solution, } y = Ce^{-at}$$

where  $C$  = a constant that satisfies the initial conditions.

### First-Order Linear Nonhomogeneous Differential Equations

$$\tau \frac{dy}{dt} + y = Kx(t) \quad x(t) = \begin{cases} A & t < 0 \\ B & t > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$y(0) = KA$$

$\tau$  = time constant

$K$  = gain

The solution is

$$y(t) = KA + (KB - KA) \left( 1 - \exp\left(\frac{-t}{\tau}\right) \right) \text{ or}$$

$$\frac{t}{\tau} = \ln \left[ \frac{KB - KA}{KB - y} \right]$$

## Second-Order Linear Homogeneous Differential Equations with Constant Coefficients

An equation of the form

$$y'' + ay' + by = 0$$

can be solved by the method of undetermined coefficients where a solution of the form  $y = Ce^{rx}$  is sought. Substitution of this solution gives

$$(r^2 + ar + b) Ce^{rx} = 0$$

and since  $Ce^{rx}$  cannot be zero, the characteristic equation must vanish or

$$r^2 + ar + b = 0$$

The roots of the characteristic equation are

$$r_{1,2} = \frac{-a \pm \sqrt{a^2 - 4b}}{2}$$

and can be real and distinct for  $a^2 > 4b$ , real and equal for  $a^2 = 4b$ , and complex for  $a^2 < 4b$ .

If  $a^2 > 4b$ , the solution is of the form (overdamped)

$$y = C_1 e^{r_1 x} + C_2 e^{r_2 x}$$

If  $a^2 = 4b$ , the solution is of the form (critically damped)

$$y = (C_1 + C_2 x) e^{r_1 x}$$

If  $a^2 < 4b$ , the solution is of the form (underdamped)

$$y = e^{\alpha x} (C_1 \cos \beta x + C_2 \sin \beta x), \text{ where}$$

$$\alpha = -a/2$$

$$\beta = \frac{\sqrt{4b - a^2}}{2}$$

## Fourier Transform

The Fourier transform pair, one form of which is

$$F(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

$$f(t) = [1/(2\pi)] \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

can be used to characterize a broad class of signal models in terms of their frequency or spectral content. Some useful transform pairs are:

| $f(t)$                                                                                          | $F(\omega)$                                    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| $\delta(t)$                                                                                     | 1                                              |
| $u(t)$                                                                                          | $\pi\delta(\omega) + 1/j\omega$                |
| $u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) = r_{rect} \frac{t}{\tau}$ | $\tau \frac{\sin(\omega\tau/2)}{\omega\tau/2}$ |
| $e^{j\omega_0 t}$                                                                               | $2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$                |

Some mathematical liberties are required to obtain the second and fourth form. Other Fourier transforms are derivable from the Laplace transform by replacing  $s$  with  $j\omega$  provided

$$f(t) = 0, t < 0$$

$$\int_0^{\infty} |f(t)| dt < \infty$$

### Fourier Series

Every periodic function  $f(t)$  which has the period  $T = 2\pi/\omega_0$  and has certain continuity conditions can be represented by a series plus a constant

$$f(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos(n\omega_0 t) + b_n \sin(n\omega_0 t)]$$

The above holds if  $f(t)$  has a continuous derivative  $f'(t)$  for

all  $t$ . It should be noted that the various sinusoids present in the series are orthogonal on the interval 0 to  $T$  and as a result the coefficients are given by

$$a_0 = (1/T) \int_0^T f(t) dt$$

$$a_n = (2/T) \int_0^T f(t) \cos(n\omega_0 t) dt \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

$$b_n = (2/T) \int_0^T f(t) \sin(n\omega_0 t) dt \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$$

The constants  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are the *Fourier coefficients* of  $f(t)$  for the interval 0 to  $T$  and the corresponding series is called the *Fourier series of  $f(t)$*  over the same interval.

The integrals have the same value when evaluated over any interval of length  $T$ .

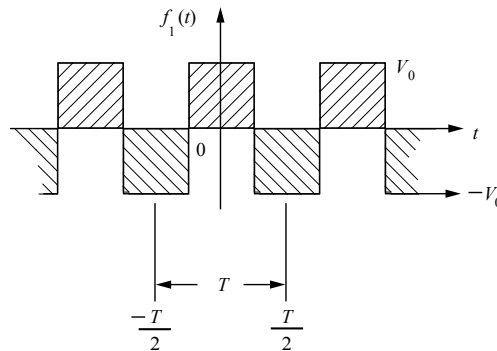
If a Fourier series representing a periodic function is truncated after term  $n = N$ , the mean square value  $F_N^2$  of the truncated series is given by Parseval's relation. This relation says that the mean-square value is the sum of the mean-square values of the Fourier components, or

$$F_N^2 = a_0^2 + (1/2) \sum_{n=1}^N (a_n^2 + b_n^2)$$

and the RMS value is then defined to be the square root of this quantity or  $F_N$ .

Three useful and common Fourier series forms are defined in terms of the following graphs (with  $\omega_0 = 2\pi/T$ ).

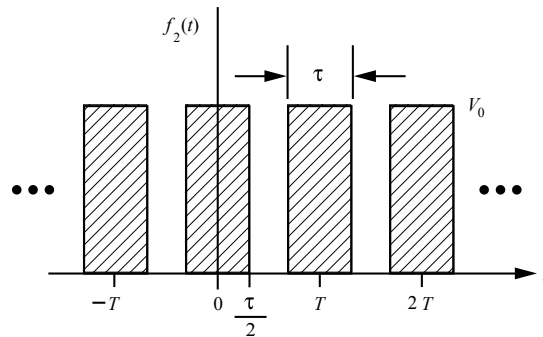
Given:



then

$$f_1(t) = \sum_{\substack{n=1 \\ (n \text{ odd})}}^{\infty} (-1)^{(n-1)/2} (4V_0/n\pi) \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

Given:

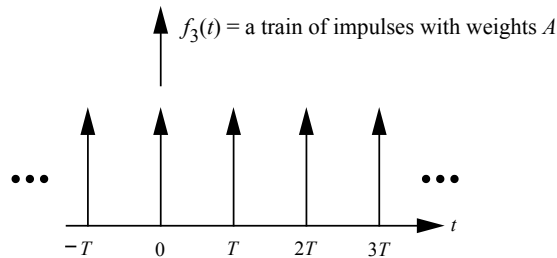


then

$$f_2(t) = \frac{V_0 \tau}{T} + \frac{2V_0 \tau}{T} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi\tau/T)}{(n\pi\tau/T)} \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

$$f_2(t) = \frac{V_0 \tau}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\sin(n\pi\tau/T)}{(n\pi\tau/T)} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

Given:



then

$$f_3(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} A \delta(t - nT)$$

$$f_3(t) = (A/T) + (2A/T) \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos(n\omega_0 t)$$

$$f_3(t) = (A/T) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

### The Fourier Transform and its Inverse

$$X(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t) e^{-j2\pi ft} dt$$

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} X(f) e^{j2\pi ft} df$$

We say that  $x(t)$  and  $X(f)$  form a *Fourier transform pair*:

$$x(t) \leftrightarrow X(f)$$

Fourier Transform Pairs

| $x(t)$                                        | $X(f)$                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1                                             | $\delta(f)$                                                                     |
| $\delta(t)$                                   | 1                                                                               |
| $u(t)$                                        | $\frac{1}{2}\delta(f) + \frac{1}{j2\pi f}$                                      |
| $\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$              | $\tau \operatorname{sinc}(\tau f)$                                              |
| $\operatorname{sinc}(Bt)$                     | $\frac{1}{B}\Pi\left(\frac{f}{B}\right)$                                        |
| $\Lambda\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$          | $\tau \operatorname{sinc}^2(\tau f)$                                            |
| $e^{-at}u(t)$                                 | $\frac{1}{a+j2\pi f} \quad a > 0$                                               |
| $te^{-at}u(t)$                                | $\frac{2a}{a^2 + (2\pi f)^2} \quad a > 0$                                       |
| $e^{-a t }$                                   | $\frac{2a}{a^2 + (2\pi f)^2} \quad a > 0$                                       |
| $e^{-(at)^2}$                                 | $\frac{\sqrt{\pi}}{a} e^{-\left(\frac{\pi f}{a}\right)^2}$                      |
| $\cos(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$                   | $\frac{1}{2}\left[e^{j\theta}\delta(f-f_0) + e^{-j\theta}\delta(f+f_0)\right]$  |
| $\sin(2\pi f_0 t + \theta)$                   | $\frac{1}{2j}\left[e^{j\theta}\delta(f-f_0) - e^{-j\theta}\delta(f+f_0)\right]$ |
| $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \delta(t-nT_s)$ | $f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \delta(f-kf_s) \quad f_s = \frac{1}{T_s}$     |

Fourier Transform Theorems

|                 |                                       |                                                    |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Linearity       | $ax(t) + by(t)$                       | $aX(f) + bY(f)$                                    |
| Scale change    | $x(at)$                               | $\frac{1}{ a }X\left(\frac{f}{a}\right)$           |
| Time reversal   | $x(-t)$                               | $X(-f)$                                            |
| Duality         | $X(t)$                                | $x(-f)$                                            |
| Time shift      | $x(t-t_0)$                            | $X(f)e^{-j2\pi f t_0}$                             |
| Frequency shift | $x(t)e^{j2\pi f_0 t}$                 | $X(f-f_0)$                                         |
| Modulation      | $x(t)\cos 2\pi f_0 t$                 | $\frac{1}{2}X(f-f_0) + \frac{1}{2}X(f+f_0)$        |
| Multiplication  | $x(t)y(t)$                            | $X(f)*Y(f)$                                        |
| Convolution     | $x(t)*y(t)$                           | $X(f)Y(f)$                                         |
| Differentiation | $\frac{d^n x(t)}{dt^n}$               | $(j2\pi f)^n X(f)$                                 |
| Integration     | $\int_{-\infty}^t x(\lambda)d\lambda$ | $\frac{1}{j2\pi f}X(f) + \frac{1}{2}X(0)\delta(f)$ |

where:

$$\operatorname{sinc}(t) = \frac{\sin(\pi t)}{\pi t}$$

$$\Pi(t) = \begin{cases} 1, & |t| \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\Lambda(t) = \begin{cases} 1-|t|, & |t| \leq 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

## Laplace Transforms

The unilateral Laplace transform pair

$$F(s) = \int_0^{\infty} f(t) e^{-st} dt$$

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} F(s) e^{st} ds$$

where  $s = \sigma + j\omega$

represents a powerful tool for the transient and frequency response of linear time invariant systems. Some useful Laplace transform pairs are:

**Laplace Transform Pairs**

| $f(t)$                             | $F(s)$                                                        |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\delta(t)$ , Impulse at $t = 0$   | 1                                                             |
| $u(t)$ , Step at $t = 0$           | $\frac{1}{s}$                                                 |
| $t[u(t)]$ , Ramp at $t = 0$        | $\frac{1}{s^2}$                                               |
| $e^{-at}$                          | $\frac{1}{(s+a)}$                                             |
| $te^{-at}$                         | $\frac{1}{(s+a)^2}$                                           |
| $e^{-\alpha t} \sin \beta t$       | $\frac{\beta}{[(s+\alpha)^2 + \beta^2]}$                      |
| $e^{-\alpha t} \cos \beta t$       | $\frac{(s+\alpha)}{[(s+\alpha)^2 + \beta^2]}$                 |
| $\frac{d^n f(t)}{dt^n}$            | $s^n F(s) - \sum_{m=0}^{n-1} s^{n-m-1} \frac{d^m f(0)}{dt^m}$ |
| $\int_0^t f(\tau) d\tau$           | $\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) F(s)$                               |
| $\int_0^t x(t-\tau) h(\tau) d\tau$ | $H(s) X(s)$                                                   |
| $f(t-\tau) u(t-\tau)$              | $e^{-\tau s} F(s)$                                            |
| $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} f(t)$ | $\lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sF(s)$                                |
| $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} f(t)$      | $\lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sF(s)$                           |

The last two transforms represent the Final Value Theorem (F.V.T.) and Initial Value Theorem (I.V.T.), respectively. It is assumed that the limits exist.

## Matrices

A matrix is an ordered rectangular array of numbers with  $m$  rows and  $n$  columns. The element  $a_{ij}$  refers to row  $i$  and column  $j$ . The rank of a matrix is equal to the number of rows that are linearly independent.

### Multiplication of Two Matrices

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \\ E & F \end{bmatrix} \quad A_{3,2} \text{ is a 3-row, 2-column matrix}$$

$$B = \begin{bmatrix} H & I \\ J & K \end{bmatrix} \quad B_{2,2} \text{ is a 2-row, 2-column matrix}$$

In order for multiplication to be possible, the number of columns in  $A$  must equal the number of rows in  $B$ .

Multiplying matrix  $B$  by matrix  $A$  occurs as follows:

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \\ E & F \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} H & I \\ J & K \end{bmatrix}$$

$$C = \begin{bmatrix} (A \cdot H + B \cdot J) & (A \cdot I + B \cdot K) \\ (C \cdot H + D \cdot J) & (C \cdot I + D \cdot K) \\ (E \cdot H + F \cdot J) & (E \cdot I + F \cdot K) \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix multiplication is not commutative.

### Addition of Two Matrices

$$\begin{bmatrix} A & B & C \\ D & E & F \end{bmatrix} + \begin{bmatrix} G & H & I \\ J & K & L \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} A+G & B+H & C+I \\ D+J & E+K & F+L \end{bmatrix}$$

### Identity Matrix

The matrix  $\mathbf{I} = (a_{ij})$  is a square  $n \times n$  matrix with 1's on the diagonal and 0's everywhere else.

### Matrix Transpose

Rows become columns. Columns become rows.

$$A = \begin{bmatrix} A & B & C \\ D & E & F \end{bmatrix} \quad A^T = \begin{bmatrix} A & D \\ B & E \\ C & F \end{bmatrix}$$

### Inverse $[\ ]^{-1}$

The inverse  $B$  of a square  $n \times n$  matrix  $A$  is

$$B = A^{-1} = \frac{\text{adj}(A)}{|A|}$$

where

$\text{adj}(A)$  = adjoint of  $A$  (obtained by replacing  $A^T$  elements with their cofactors)

$|A|$  = determinant of  $A$

$$[A][A]^{-1} = [A]^{-1}[A] = [I]$$

where  $I$  is the identity matrix.

## Matrix Properties

Suppose  $A$  is  $N \times N$  over real numbers. Then if one of the following is true, all are true. If one of the following is false, all are false.

1.  $A$  is nonsingular.
2.  $A$  has an inverse.
3.  $A \cdot X = 0$  has a unique solution.
4. Determinant of  $A$  is not equal to zero.
5. Columns of  $A$  are linearly independent.
6. Rows of  $A$  are linearly independent.
7. Rank of  $A$  is  $N$ .
8.  $A$  is row equivalent to  $I$  (identity matrix).
9. Null Space of  $A = \{0\}$ .

Source: Cullen, C., *Matrices and Linear Transformations*. Reading, Massachusetts: Addison-Wesley, 1967.

## Determinants

A *determinant of order  $n$*  consists of  $n^2$  numbers, called the *elements* of the determinant, arranged in  $n$  rows and  $n$  columns and enclosed by two vertical lines.

For a second-order determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 \\ b_1 & b_2 \end{vmatrix} = a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1$$

For a third-order determinant:

$$\begin{vmatrix} a_1 & a_2 & a_3 \\ b_1 & b_2 & b_3 \\ c_1 & c_2 & c_3 \end{vmatrix} = a_1(b_2 c_3 - b_3 c_2) - a_2(b_1 c_3 - b_3 c_1) + a_3(b_1 c_2 - b_2 c_1)$$

$$= a_1 b_2 c_3 + a_2 b_3 c_1 + a_3 b_1 c_2 - a_3 b_2 c_1 - a_2 b_1 c_3 - a_1 b_3 c_2$$

## Vectors

$$\mathbf{A} = a_x \mathbf{i} + a_y \mathbf{j} + a_z \mathbf{k}$$

Length of Vector  $\mathbf{A}$

$$|\mathbf{A}| = \sqrt{a_x^2 + a_y^2 + a_z^2}$$

Direction Cosines of  $\mathbf{A}$

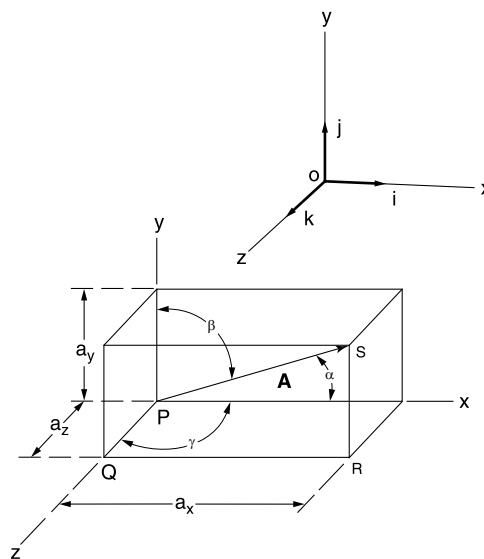
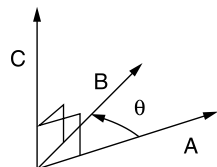
$$\cos \alpha = \frac{a_x}{|\mathbf{A}|} \quad \cos \beta = \frac{a_y}{|\mathbf{A}|} \quad \cos \gamma = \frac{a_z}{|\mathbf{A}|}$$

$$\cos^2 \alpha + \cos^2 \beta + \cos^2 \gamma = 1$$

Addition and subtraction:

$$\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{B} = (a_x + b_x)\mathbf{i} + (a_y + b_y)\mathbf{j} + (a_z + b_z)\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{A} - \mathbf{B} = (a_x - b_x)\mathbf{i} + (a_y - b_y)\mathbf{j} + (a_z - b_z)\mathbf{k}$$



The *dot product* is a *scalar product* and represents the projection of **B** onto **A** times |**A**|. It is given by

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = a_x b_x + a_y b_y + a_z b_z = |\mathbf{A}| |\mathbf{B}| \cos \theta = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}$$

The *cross product* is a *vector product* of magnitude |**B**| |**A**| sin  $\theta$  which is perpendicular to the plane containing **A** and **B**. The product is

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \begin{vmatrix} \mathbf{i} & \mathbf{j} & \mathbf{k} \\ a_x & a_y & a_z \\ b_x & b_y & b_z \end{vmatrix} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$$

The sense of  $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}$  is determined by the right-hand rule.

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = |\mathbf{A}| |\mathbf{B}| \mathbf{n} \sin \theta$$

where

**n** = unit vector perpendicular to the plane of **A** and **B**

### Gradient, Divergence, and Curl

$$\nabla \phi = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \phi$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{V} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \cdot (V_1 \mathbf{i} + V_2 \mathbf{j} + V_3 \mathbf{k})$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{V} = \left( \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \mathbf{i} + \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \mathbf{j} + \frac{\partial}{\partial z} \mathbf{k} \right) \times (V_1 \mathbf{i} + V_2 \mathbf{j} + V_3 \mathbf{k})$$

The Laplacian of a scalar function  $\phi$  is

$$\nabla^2 \phi = \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial x^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial y^2} + \frac{\partial^2 \phi}{\partial z^2}$$

### Identities

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{B} \cdot \mathbf{A}; \mathbf{A} \cdot (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} + \mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{C}$$

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} = |\mathbf{A}|^2$$

$$\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{k} = 1$$

$$\mathbf{i} \cdot \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{j} \cdot \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{k} \cdot \mathbf{i} = 0$$

If  $\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$ , then either  $\mathbf{A} = 0$ ,  $\mathbf{B} = 0$ , or **A** is perpendicular to **B**.

$$\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = -\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}$$

$$\mathbf{A} \times (\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) = (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B}) + (\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{C})$$

$$(\mathbf{B} + \mathbf{C}) \times \mathbf{A} = (\mathbf{B} \times \mathbf{A}) + (\mathbf{C} \times \mathbf{A})$$

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{0}$$

$$\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{j} = \mathbf{k} = -\mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{i}; \mathbf{j} \times \mathbf{k} = \mathbf{i} = -\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{j}$$

$$\mathbf{k} \times \mathbf{i} = \mathbf{j} = -\mathbf{i} \times \mathbf{k}$$

If  $\mathbf{A} \times \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}$ , then either  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{0}$ ,  $\mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}$ , or **A** is parallel to **B**.

$$\nabla^2 \phi = \nabla \cdot (\nabla \phi) = (\nabla \cdot \nabla) \phi$$

$$\nabla \times \nabla \phi = \mathbf{0}$$

$$\nabla \cdot (\nabla \times \mathbf{A}) = \mathbf{0}$$

$$\nabla \times (\nabla \times \mathbf{A}) = \nabla(\nabla \cdot \mathbf{A}) - \nabla^2 \mathbf{A}$$

## Numerical Methods

### Difference Equations

Any system whose input  $v(t)$  and output  $y(t)$  are defined only at the equally spaced intervals

$$f(t) = y' = \frac{y_{i+1} - y_i}{t_{i+1} - t_i}$$

can be described by a difference equation.

### First-Order Linear Difference Equation

$$\Delta t = t_{i+1} - t_i$$

$$y_{i+1} = y_i + y'(\Delta t)$$

### Newton's Method for Root Extraction

Given a function  $f(x)$  which has a simple root of  $f(x) = 0$  at  $x = a$ , an important computational task would be to find that root. If  $f(x)$  has a continuous first derivative then the  $(j + 1)$ st estimate of the root is

$$a^{j+1} = a^j - \frac{f(x)}{\frac{df(x)}{dx}} \bigg|_{x=a^j}$$

The initial estimate of the root  $a^0$  must be near enough to the actual root to cause the algorithm to converge to the root.

### Newton's Method of Minimization

Given a scalar value function

$$h(\mathbf{x}) = h(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

find a vector  $\mathbf{x}^* \in R_n$  such that

$$h(\mathbf{x}^*) \leq h(\mathbf{x}) \text{ for all } \mathbf{x}$$

Newton's algorithm is

$$\mathbf{x}_{k+1} = \mathbf{x}_k - \left( \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial \mathbf{x}^2} \bigg|_{\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_k} \right)^{-1} \frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{x}} \bigg|_{\mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}_k}, \text{ where}$$

$$\frac{\partial h}{\partial \mathbf{x}} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_1} \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_2} \\ \dots \\ \frac{\partial h}{\partial x_n} \end{bmatrix}$$

and

$$\frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial \mathbf{x}^2} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1^2} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} \\ \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_2} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2^2} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots & \dots \\ \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_1 \partial x_n} & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_2 \partial x_n} & \dots & \dots & \frac{\partial^2 h}{\partial x_n^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

## Numerical Integration

Three of the more common numerical integration algorithms used to evaluate the integral

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx$$

are:

*Euler's or Forward Rectangular Rule*

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \Delta x \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x)$$

*Trapezoidal Rule*

for  $n = 1$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \Delta x \left[ \frac{f(a) + f(b)}{2} \right]$$

for  $n > 1$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{2} \left[ f(a) + 2 \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x) + f(b) \right]$$

*Simpson's Rule/Parabolic Rule* ( $n$  must be an even integer)

for  $n = 2$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \left( \frac{b-a}{6} \right) \left[ f(a) + 4f\left(\frac{a+b}{2}\right) + f(b) \right]$$

for  $n \geq 4$

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \frac{\Delta x}{3} \left[ f(a) + 2 \sum_{k=2,4,6,\dots}^{n-2} f(a + k\Delta x) + 4 \sum_{k=1,3,5,\dots}^{n-1} f(a + k\Delta x) + f(b) \right]$$

with  $\Delta x = (b-a)/n$

$n$  = number of intervals between data points

## Numerical Solution of Ordinary Differential Equations

Euler's Approximation

Given a differential equation

$$dx/dt = f(x, t) \text{ with } x(0) = x_o$$

At some general time  $k\Delta t$

$$x[(k+1)\Delta t] \cong x(k\Delta t) + \Delta t f[x(k\Delta t), k\Delta t]$$

which can be used with starting condition  $x_o$  to solve recursively for  $x(\Delta t)$ ,  $x(2\Delta t)$ , ...,  $x(n\Delta t)$ .

The method can be extended to  $n$ th order differential equations by recasting them as  $n$  first-order equations.

In particular, when  $dx/dt = f(x)$

$$x[(k+1)\Delta t] \cong x(k\Delta t) + \Delta t f[x(k\Delta t)]$$

which can be expressed as the recursive equation

$$x_{k+1} = x_k + \Delta t (dx_k/dt)$$

$$x_{k+1} = x + \Delta t [f(x(k), t(k))]$$

# Engineering Probability and Statistics

## Dispersion, Mean, Median, and Mode Values

If  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  represent the values of a random sample of  $n$  items or observations, the *arithmetic mean* of these items or observations, denoted  $\bar{X}$ , is defined as

$$\bar{X} = (1/n)(X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n) = (1/n) \sum_{i=1}^n X_i$$
$$\bar{X} \rightarrow \mu \text{ for sufficiently large values of } n.$$

The *weighted arithmetic mean* is

$$\bar{X}_w = \frac{\sum w_i X_i}{\sum w_i}$$

where

$X_i$  = the value of the  $i$ th observation, and

$w_i$  = the weight applied to  $X_i$ .

The *variance* of the population is the *arithmetic mean* of the *squared deviations from the population mean*. If  $\mu$  is the arithmetic mean of a discrete population of size  $N$ , the *population variance* is defined by

$$\sigma^2 = (1/N) \left[ (X_1 - \mu)^2 + (X_2 - \mu)^2 + \dots + (X_N - \mu)^2 \right]$$
$$= (1/N) \sum_{i=1}^N (X_i - \mu)^2$$

*Standard deviation* formulas (assuming statistical independence) are

$$\sigma_{\text{population}} = \sqrt{(1/N) \sum (X_i - \mu)^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{sum}} = \sqrt{\sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2 + \dots + \sigma_n^2}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{series}} = \sigma \sqrt{n}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{mean}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

$$\sigma_{\text{product}} = \sqrt{A^2 \sigma_b^2 + B^2 \sigma_a^2}$$

The *sample variance* is

$$s^2 = [1/(n-1)] \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2$$

The *sample standard deviation* is

$$s = \sqrt{[1/(n-1)] \sum_{i=1}^n (X_i - \bar{X})^2}$$

The *sample coefficient of variation* =  $CV = s/\bar{X}$

The *sample geometric mean* =  $\sqrt[n]{X_1 X_2 X_3 \dots X_n}$

The *sample root-mean-square value* =  $\sqrt{(1/n) \sum X_i^2}$

When the discrete data are rearranged in increasing order and  $n$  is odd, the median is the value of the  $\left(\frac{n+1}{2}\right)^{\text{th}}$  item

When  $n$  is even, the median is the average of the  $\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)^{\text{th}}$  and  $\left(\frac{n}{2} + 1\right)^{\text{th}}$  items.

The *mode* of a set of data is the value that occurs with greatest frequency.

The *sample range*  $R$  is the largest sample value minus the smallest sample value.

## Permutations and Combinations

A *permutation* is a particular sequence of a given set of objects. A *combination* is the set itself without reference to order.

1. The number of different *permutations* of  $n$  distinct objects *taken  $r$  at a time* is

$$P(n, r) = \frac{n!}{(n - r)!}$$

$nPr$  is an alternative notation for  $P(n, r)$

2. The number of different *combinations* of  $n$  distinct objects *taken  $r$  at a time* is

$$C(n, r) = \frac{P(n, r)}{r!} = \frac{n!}{[r!(n - r)!]}$$

$nCr$  and  $\binom{n}{r}$  are alternative notations for  $C(n, r)$

3. The number of different *permutations* of  $n$  objects *taken  $n$  at a time*, given that  $n_i$  are of type  $i$ , where  $i = 1, 2, \dots, k$  and  $\sum n_i = n$ , is

$$P(n; n_1, n_2, \dots, n_k) = \frac{n!}{n_1! n_2! \dots n_k!}$$

## Sets

### De Morgan's Law

$$\overline{A \cup B} = \overline{A} \cap \overline{B}$$

$$\overline{A \cap B} = \overline{A} \cup \overline{B}$$

### Associative Law

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap C$$

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup C$$

### Distributive Law

$$A \cup (B \cap C) = (A \cup B) \cap (A \cup C)$$

$$A \cap (B \cup C) = (A \cap B) \cup (A \cap C)$$

## Laws of Probability

### Property 1. General Character of Probability

The probability  $P(E)$  of an event  $E$  is a real number in the range of 0 to 1. The probability of an impossible event is 0 and that of an event certain to occur is 1.

### Property 2. Law of Total Probability

$$P(A + B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A, B)$$

where

$P(A + B)$  = the probability that either  $A$  or  $B$  occur alone or that both occur together

$P(A)$  = the probability that  $A$  occurs

$P(B)$  = the probability that  $B$  occurs

$P(A, B)$  = the probability that both  $A$  and  $B$  occur simultaneously

### Property 3. Law of Compound or Joint Probability

If neither  $P(A)$  nor  $P(B)$  is zero,

$$P(A, B) = P(A)P(B | A) = P(B)P(A | B)$$

where

$P(B | A)$  = the probability that  $B$  occurs given the fact that  $A$  has occurred

$P(A | B)$  = the probability that  $A$  occurs given the fact that  $B$  has occurred

If either  $P(A)$  or  $P(B)$  is zero, then  $P(A, B) = 0$ .

### Bayes' Theorem

$$P(B_j | A) = \frac{P(B_j)P(A | B_j)}{\sum_{i=1}^n P(A | B_i)P(B_i)}$$

where

$P(A_j)$  = the probability of event  $A_j$  within the population of  $A$

$P(B_j)$  = the probability of event  $B_j$  within the population of  $B$

## Probability Functions, Distributions, and Expected Values

A random variable  $X$  has a probability associated with each of its possible values. The probability is termed a discrete probability if  $X$  can assume only discrete values, or

$$X = x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$$

The *discrete probability* of any single event,  $X = x_i$ , occurring is defined as  $P(x_i)$  while the *probability mass function* of the random variable  $X$  is defined by

$$f(x_k) = P(X = x_k), k = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

### Probability Density Function

If  $X$  is continuous, the *probability density function*,  $f$ , is defined such that

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

### Cumulative Distribution Functions

The *cumulative distribution function*,  $F$ , of a discrete random variable  $X$  that has a probability distribution described by  $P(x_i)$  is defined as

$$F(x_m) = \sum_{k=1}^m P(x_k) = P(X \leq x_m), m = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

If  $X$  is continuous, the *cumulative distribution function*,  $F$ , is defined by

$$F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(x) dx$$

which implies that  $F(a)$  is the probability that  $X \leq a$ .

### Expected Values

Let  $X$  be a discrete random variable having a probability mass function

$$f(x_k), k = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

The expected value of  $X$  is defined as

$$\mu = E[X] = \sum_{k=1}^n x_k f(x_k)$$

The variance of  $X$  is defined as

$$\sigma^2 = V[X] = \sum_{k=1}^n (x_k - \mu)^2 f(x_k)$$

Let  $X$  be a continuous random variable having a density function  $f(X)$  and let  $Y = g(X)$  be some general function. The expected value of  $Y$  is:

$$E[Y] = E[g(X)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x) f(x) dx$$

The mean or expected value of the random variable  $X$  is now defined as

$$\mu = E[X] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) dx$$

while the variance is given by

$$\sigma^2 = V[X] = E[(X - \mu)^2] = E[X^2] - \mu^2 = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx$$

The standard deviation is given by

$$\sigma = \sqrt{V[X]}$$

The coefficient of variation is defined as  $\sigma/\mu$ .

### Combinations of Random Variables

$$Y = a_1 X_1 + a_2 X_2 + \dots + a_n X_n$$

The expected value of  $Y$  is:

$$\mu_y = E(Y) = a_1 E(X_1) + a_2 E(X_2) + \dots + a_n E(X_n)$$

If the random variables are statistically *independent*, then the variance of  $Y$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_y^2 &= V(Y) = a_1^2 V(X_1) + a_2^2 V(X_2) + \dots + a_n^2 V(X_n) \\ &= a_1^2 \sigma_1^2 + a_2^2 \sigma_2^2 + \dots + a_n^2 \sigma_n^2 \end{aligned}$$

Also, the standard deviation of  $Y$  is:

$$\sigma_y = \sqrt{\sigma_y^2}$$

When  $Y = f(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n)$  and  $X_i$  are independent, the standard deviation of  $Y$  is expressed as:

$$\sigma_y = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_1} \sigma_{X_1}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_2} \sigma_{X_2}\right)^2 + \dots + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial X_n} \sigma_{X_n}\right)^2}$$

### Binomial Distribution

$P(x)$  is the probability that  $x$  successes will occur in  $n$  trials.

If  $p$  = probability of success and  $q$  = probability of failure =  $1 - p$ , then

$$P_n(x) = C(n, x) p^x q^{n-x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!} p^x q^{n-x}$$

where

$$x = 0, 1, 2, \dots, n$$

$C(n, x)$  = number of combinations

$n, p$  = parameters

The variance is given by the form:

$$\sigma^2 = npq$$

### Normal Distribution (Gaussian Distribution)

This is a unimodal distribution, the mode being  $x = \mu$ , with two points of inflection (each located at a distance  $\sigma$  to either side of the mode). The averages of  $n$  observations tend to become normally distributed as  $n$  increases. The variate  $x$  is said to be normally distributed if its density function  $f(x)$  is given by an expression of the form

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$$

where

$\mu$  = population mean

$\sigma$  = standard deviation of the population

$$-\infty \leq x \leq \infty$$

When  $\mu = 0$  and  $\sigma^2 = \sigma = 1$ , the distribution is called a *standardized* or *unit normal* distribution. Then

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-x^2/2}, \text{ where } -\infty \leq x \leq \infty.$$

A unit normal distribution table is included at the end of this section. In the table, the following notations are utilized:

$F(x)$  = area under the curve from  $-\infty$  to  $x$

$R(x)$  = area under the curve from  $x$  to  $\infty$

$W(x)$  = area under the curve between  $-x$  and  $x$

$$F(-x) = 1 - F(x)$$

It should be noted that for any normal distribution with mean  $\mu$  and standard deviation  $\sigma$ , the table for the unit normal distribution can be used by utilizing the following transformation:

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$$

$f(x)$  then becomes  $f(z)$ ,  $F(x)$  becomes  $F(z)$ , etc.

### The Central Limit Theorem

Let  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$  be a sequence of independent and identically distributed random variables each having mean  $\mu$  and variance  $\sigma^2$ . Then for large  $n$ , the Central Limit Theorem asserts that the sum

$Y = X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n$  is approximately normal.

$$\mu_{\bar{y}} = \mu$$

and the standard deviation

$$\sigma_{\bar{y}} = \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

## t-Distribution

Student's  $t$ -distribution has the probability density function given by:

$$f(t) = \frac{\Gamma\left(\frac{\nu+1}{2}\right)}{\sqrt{\nu\pi}\Gamma\left(\frac{\nu}{2}\right)} \left(1 + \frac{t^2}{\nu}\right)^{-\frac{\nu+1}{2}}$$

where

$\nu$  = number of degrees of freedom

$n$  = sample size

$\nu = n - 1$

$\Gamma$  = gamma function

$$t = \frac{\bar{x} - \mu}{s/\sqrt{n}}$$

$$-\infty \leq t \leq \infty$$

A table later in this section gives the values of  $t_{\alpha, \nu}$  for values of  $\alpha$  and  $\nu$ . Note that, in view of the symmetry of the  $t$ -distribution,  $t_{1-\alpha, \nu} = -t_{\alpha, \nu}$

The function for  $\alpha$  follows:

$$\alpha = \int_{t_{\alpha, \nu}}^{\infty} f(t) dt$$

## $\chi^2$ - Distribution

If  $Z_1, Z_2, \dots, Z_n$  are independent unit normal random variables, then

$$\chi^2 = Z_1^2 + Z_2^2 + \dots + Z_n^2$$

is said to have a chi-square distribution with  $n$  degrees of freedom.

A table at the end of this section gives values of  $\chi_{\alpha, n}^2$  for selected values of  $\alpha$  and  $n$ .

## Gamma Function

$$\Gamma(n) = \int_0^{\infty} t^{n-1} e^{-t} dt, \quad n > 0$$

## Propagation of Error

### Measurement Error

Measurement error is defined as: *Measured quantity value minus a reference quantity value*. [Source: ISO JCGM 200:2012 definition 2.16]

Sources of errors in measurements arise from imperfections and disturbances in the measurement process, and added noise. One may model a measurement as:

$$x = x_{\text{ref}} + d_{\text{systematic}} + d_{\text{random}}$$

where  $x$  is the measurand (value being measured),  $x_{\text{ref}}$  is the reference value,  $d_{\text{systematic}}$  is a disturbance from the measurement process such as a drift or bias, and  $d_{\text{random}}$  is a disturbance such as random noise.

### Linear Combinations

In mathematics, a linear combination is an expression constructed from a set of terms by multiplying each term by a constant and adding the results (e.g., if  $z$  is a linear combination of  $x$  and  $y$ , then  $z = ax + by$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants).

See the section "Combinations of Random Variables" for how variances and standard deviations of random variables combine.

## Measurement Uncertainty

Measurement uncertainty is defined as: *A quantitative estimate of the range of values about the reported or measured value in which the true value is believed to lie.* [Source: ISO JCGM 200:2012, definition 2.26]

Given a desired state or measurement  $y$ , which is a function of different measured or available states  $x_i$ :

$$y = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

Given the individual states  $x_i$  and their standard deviations  $\sigma_{x_i}$ , and assuming that the different  $x_i$  are uncorrelated, the Kline-McClintock equation can be used to compute the expected standard uncertainty of  $y$  ( $\sigma_y$ ) is:

$$\sigma_y = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_1}^2 + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_2}^2 + \dots + \left(\frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n}\right)^2 \sigma_{x_n}^2}$$

Expanded uncertainties are typically given at an approximately 95% level of confidence with a coverage factor of  $k = 2$ . This represents 95% of the area under a Normal probability distribution and is often called *2 sigma*.

## Linear Regression and Goodness of Fit

### Least Squares

$$\hat{y} = \hat{a} + \hat{b}x$$

$$y\text{-intercept, } \hat{a} = \bar{y} - \hat{b}\bar{x}$$

$$\text{and slope, } \hat{b} = S_{xy}/S_{xx}$$

where

$$\hat{b} = S_{xy}/S_{xx}$$

$$\hat{a} = \bar{y} - \hat{b}\bar{x}$$

$$S_{xy} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i y_i - (1/n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right) = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})(y_i - \bar{y})$$

$$S_{xx} = \sum_{i=1}^n x_i^2 - (1/n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (x_i - \bar{x})^2$$

$$\bar{y} = (1/n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right)$$

$$\bar{x} = (1/n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n x_i \right)$$

where

$n$  = sample size

$S_{xx}$  = sum of squares of the difference between each  $x$  and the mean  $x$  value

$S_{yy}$  = sum of squares of the difference between each  $y$  and the mean  $y$  value

$S_{xy}$  = sum of the products of the difference between each  $x$  and its mean and the difference between each  $y$  and its mean

### Residual

$$e_i = y_i - \hat{y} = y_i - (\hat{a} + \hat{b}x_i)$$

### Standard Error of Estimate ( $S_e$ ):

$$S_e^2 = \frac{S_{xx}S_{yy} - S_{xy}^2}{S_{xx}(n-2)} = MSE$$

where

$$S_{yy} = \sum_{i=1}^n y_i^2 - (1/n) \left( \sum_{i=1}^n y_i \right)^2 = \sum_{i=1}^n (y_i - \bar{y})^2$$

### Confidence Interval for Intercept ( $\hat{a}$ ):

$$\hat{a} \pm t_{\alpha/2, n-2} \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{n} + \frac{\bar{x}^2}{S_{xx}}\right) MSE}$$

### Confidence Interval for Slope ( $\hat{b}$ ):

$$\hat{b} \pm t_{\alpha/2, n-2} \sqrt{\frac{MSE}{S_{xx}}}$$

### Sample Correlation Coefficient ( $R$ ) and Coefficient of Determination ( $R^2$ ):

$$R = \frac{S_{xy}}{\sqrt{S_{xx} S_{yy}}}$$

$$R^2 = \frac{S_{xy}^2}{S_{xx} S_{yy}}$$

## Hypothesis Testing

Let a "dot" subscript indicate summation over the subscript. Thus:

$$y_{i\cdot} = \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij} \quad \text{and} \quad y_{\cdot\cdot} = \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij}$$

### One-Way Analysis of Variance (ANOVA)

Given independent random samples of size  $n_i$  from  $k$  populations, then:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i (\bar{y}_{i\cdot} - \bar{y}_{\cdot\cdot})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{i\cdot})^2$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_{\text{treatments}} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

If  $N$  = total number observations

$$N = \sum_{i=1}^k n_i, \text{ then}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^{n_i} y_{ij}^2 - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{N}$$

$$SS_{\text{treatments}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \frac{y_{i\cdot}^2}{n_i} - \frac{y_{\cdot\cdot}^2}{N}$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - SS_{\text{treatments}}$$

Source: Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4 ed., New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2007.

## Randomized Complete Block Design

For  $k$  treatments and  $b$  blocks

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b (y_{ij} - \bar{y}_{..})^2 = b \sum_{i=1}^k (\bar{y}_{i.} - \bar{y}_{..})^2 + k \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{.j} - \bar{y}_{..})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{ij} - \bar{y}_{.j} - \bar{y}_{i.} + \bar{y}_{..})^2$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_{\text{treatments}} + SS_{\text{blocks}} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^k \sum_{j=1}^b y_{ij}^2 - \frac{y_{..}^2}{kb}$$

$$SS_{\text{treatments}} = \frac{1}{b} \sum_{i=1}^k y_{i.}^2 - \frac{y_{..}^2}{bk}$$

$$SS_{\text{blocks}} = \frac{1}{k} \sum_{j=1}^b y_{.j}^2 - \frac{y_{..}^2}{bk}$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - SS_{\text{treatments}} - SS_{\text{blocks}}$$

Source: Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4 ed., New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2007.

## Two-Factor Factorial Designs

For  $a$  levels of Factor A,  $b$  levels of Factor B, and  $n$  repetitions per cell:

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n (y_{ijk} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 &= bn \sum_{i=1}^a (\bar{y}_{i..} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 + an \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{.j.} - \bar{y}_{...})^2 \\ &+ n \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b (\bar{y}_{ij.} - \bar{y}_{i..} - \bar{y}_{.j.} + \bar{y}_{...})^2 + \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n (y_{ijk} - \bar{y}_{ij.})^2 \end{aligned}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = SS_A + SS_B + SS_{AB} + SS_{\text{error}}$$

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \sum_{k=1}^n y_{ijk}^2 - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_A = \sum_{i=1}^a \frac{y_{i..}^2}{bn} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_B = \sum_{j=1}^b \frac{y_{.j.}^2}{an} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn}$$

$$SS_{AB} = \sum_{i=1}^a \sum_{j=1}^b \frac{y_{ij.}^2}{n} - \frac{y_{...}^2}{abn} - SS_A - SS_B$$

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_T - SS_A - SS_B - SS_{AB}$$

Source: Montgomery, Douglas C., and George C. Runger, *Applied Statistics and Probability for Engineers*, 4 ed., New York: John Wiley and Sons, 2007.

One-Way ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares           | Mean Square                                  | $F$               |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Between Treatments  | $k - 1$            | $SS_{\text{treatments}}$ | $MST = \frac{SS_{\text{treatments}}}{k - 1}$ | $\frac{MST}{MSE}$ |
| Error               | $N - k$            | $SS_{\text{error}}$      | $MSE = \frac{SS_{\text{error}}}{N - k}$      |                   |
| Total               | $N - 1$            | $SS_{\text{total}}$      |                                              |                   |

Randomized Complete Block ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares           | Mean Square                                      | <i>F</i>          |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| Between Treatments  | $k - 1$            | $SS_{\text{treatments}}$ | $MST = \frac{SS_{\text{treatments}}}{k - 1}$     | $\frac{MST}{MSE}$ |
| Between Blocks      | $n - 1$            | $SS_{\text{blocks}}$     | $MSB = \frac{SS_{\text{blocks}}}{n - 1}$         | $\frac{MSB}{MSE}$ |
| Error               | $(k - 1)(n - 1)$   | $SS_{\text{error}}$      | $MSE = \frac{SS_{\text{error}}}{(k - 1)(n - 1)}$ |                   |
| Total               | $N - 1$            | $SS_{\text{total}}$      |                                                  |                   |

Two-Way Factorial ANOVA Table

| Source of Variation | Degrees of Freedom | Sum of Squares      | Mean Square                             | <i>F</i>           |
|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------|
| A Treatments        | $a - 1$            | $SS_A$              | $MSA = \frac{SS_A}{a - 1}$              | $\frac{MSA}{MSE}$  |
| B Treatments        | $b - 1$            | $SS_B$              | $MSB = \frac{SS_B}{b - 1}$              | $\frac{MSB}{MSE}$  |
| AB Interaction      | $(a - 1)(b - 1)$   | $SS_{AB}$           | $MSAB = \frac{SS_{AB}}{(a - 1)(b - 1)}$ | $\frac{MSAB}{MSE}$ |
| Error               | $ab(n - 1)$        | $SS_{\text{error}}$ | $MSE = \frac{SS_E}{ab(n - 1)}$          |                    |
| Total               | $abn - 1$          | $SS_{\text{total}}$ |                                         |                    |

Consider an unknown parameter  $\theta$  of a statistical distribution. Let the null hypothesis be

$$H_0: \mu = \mu_0$$

and let the alternative hypothesis be

$$H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$$

Rejecting  $H_0$  when it is true is known as a Type I error, while accepting  $H_0$  when it is wrong is known as a Type II error. Furthermore, the probabilities of Type I and Type II errors are usually represented by the symbols  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$ , respectively:

$\alpha$  = probability (Type I error)

$\beta$  = probability (Type II error)

The probability of a Type I error is known as the level of significance of the test.

**Table A. Tests on Means of Normal Distribution—Variance Known**

| <i>Hypothesis</i>                                                 | <i>Test Statistic</i>                                                                                      | <i>Criteria for Rejection</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$                       |                                                                                                            | $ Z_0  > Z_{\alpha/2}$        |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu < \mu_0$                          | $Z_0 \equiv \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}}$                                                       | $Z_0 < -Z_{\alpha}$           |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu > \mu_0$                          |                                                                                                            | $Z_0 > Z_{\alpha}$            |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq \gamma$ |                                                                                                            | $ Z_0  > Z_{\alpha/2}$        |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 < \gamma$    | $Z_0 \equiv \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{\sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}}}$ | $Z_0 < -Z_{\alpha}$           |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > \gamma$    |                                                                                                            | $Z_0 > Z_{\alpha}$            |

**Table B. Tests on Means of Normal Distribution—Variance Unknown**

| <i>Hypothesis</i>                                                 | <i>Test Statistic</i>                                                                                                                                                                         | <i>Criteria for Rejection</i> |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$                       |                                                                                                                                                                                               | $ t_0  > t_{\alpha/2, n-1}$   |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu < \mu_0$                          | $t_0 = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_0}{s/\sqrt{n}}$                                                                                                                                                    | $t_0 < -t_{\alpha, n-1}$      |
| $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$<br>$H_1: \mu > \mu_0$                          |                                                                                                                                                                                               | $t_0 > t_{\alpha, n-1}$       |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 \neq \gamma$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Variances} \\ \text{equal} \\ t_0 = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{s_p \sqrt{\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}}} \\ v = n_1 + n_2 - 2 \end{array} \right.$ | $ t_0  > t_{\alpha/2, v}$     |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 < \gamma$    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Variances} \\ \text{unequal} \\ t_0 = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - \gamma}{\sqrt{\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}}} \end{array} \right.$                | $t_0 < -t_{\alpha, v}$        |
| $H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \gamma$<br>$H_1: \mu_1 - \mu_2 > \gamma$    | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} v = \frac{\left( \frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2} \right)^2}{\frac{(s_1^2/n_1)^2}{n_1 - 1} + \frac{(s_2^2/n_2)^2}{n_2 - 1}} \end{array} \right.$               | $t_0 > t_{\alpha, v}$         |

In Table B,  $s_p^2 = [(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2]/v$

**Table C. Tests on Variances of Normal Distribution with Unknown Mean**

| <i>Hypothesis</i>                                                   | <i>Test Statistic</i>                    | <i>Criteria for Rejection</i>                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma^2 \neq \sigma_0^2$     |                                          | $\chi_0^2 > \chi_{\alpha/2, n-1}^2$ or<br>$\chi_0^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha/2, n-1}^2$ |
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma^2 < \sigma_0^2$        | $\chi_0^2 = \frac{(n-1)s^2}{\sigma_0^2}$ | $\chi_0^2 < \chi_{1-\alpha, n-1}^2$                                             |
| $H_0: \sigma^2 = \sigma_0^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma^2 > \sigma_0^2$        |                                          | $\chi_0^2 > \chi_{\alpha, n-1}^2$                                               |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma_1^2 \neq \sigma_2^2$ | $F_0 = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2}$              | $F_0 > F_{\alpha/2, n_1-1, n_2-1}$<br>$F_0 < F_{1-\alpha/2, n_1-1, n_2-1}$      |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma_1^2 < \sigma_2^2$    | $F_0 = \frac{s_2^2}{s_1^2}$              | $F_0 > F_{\alpha, n_2-1, n_1-1}$                                                |
| $H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$<br>$H_1: \sigma_1^2 > \sigma_2^2$    | $F_0 = \frac{s_1^2}{s_2^2}$              | $F_0 > F_{\alpha, n_1-1, n_2-1}$                                                |

Assume that the values of  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are given. The sample size can be obtained from the following relationships. In (A) and (B),  $\mu_1$  is the value assumed to be the true mean.

(A)  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0; H_1: \mu \neq \mu_0$

$$\beta = \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} + Z_{\alpha/2}\right) - \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} - Z_{\alpha/2}\right)$$

An approximate result is

$$n \simeq \frac{(Z_{\alpha/2} + Z_{\beta})^2 \sigma^2}{(\mu_1 - \mu_0)^2}$$

(B)  $H_0: \mu = \mu_0; H_1: \mu > \mu_0$

$$\beta = \Phi\left(\frac{\mu_0 - \mu}{\sigma/\sqrt{n}} + Z_{\alpha}\right)$$

$$n = \frac{(Z_{\alpha} + Z_{\beta})^2 \sigma^2}{(\mu_1 - \mu_0)^2}$$

## Confidence Intervals, Sample Distributions and Sample Size

### Confidence Interval for the Mean $\mu$ of a Normal Distribution

(A) Standard deviation  $\sigma$  is known

$$\bar{X} - Z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X} + Z_{\alpha/2} \frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}$$

(B) Standard deviation  $\sigma$  is not known

$$\bar{X} - t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \leq \mu \leq \bar{X} + t_{\alpha/2} \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$$

where  $t_{\alpha/2}$  corresponds to  $n - 1$  degrees of freedom.

### Confidence Interval for the Difference Between Two Means $\mu_1$ and $\mu_2$

(A) Standard deviations  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  known

$$\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}} \leq \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq \bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 + Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{\sigma_2^2}{n_2}}$$

(B) Standard deviations  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  are not known

$$\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - t_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}\right) \left[ (n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2 \right]}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}} \leq \mu_1 - \mu_2 \leq \bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 + t_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2}\right) \left[ (n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2 \right]}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}}$$

where  $t_{\alpha/2}$  corresponds to  $n_1 + n_2 - 2$  degrees of freedom.

### Confidence Intervals for the Variance $\sigma^2$ of a Normal Distribution

$$\frac{(n-1)s^2}{x_{\alpha/2, n-1}^2} \leq \sigma^2 \leq \frac{(n-1)s^2}{x_{1-\alpha/2, n-1}^2}$$

### Sample Size

$$z = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu}{\sigma / \sqrt{n}} \quad n = \left[ \frac{z_{\alpha/2} \sigma}{\bar{x} - \mu} \right]^2$$

### Test Statistics

The following definitions apply.

$$Z_{\text{var}} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_o}{\frac{\sigma}{\sqrt{n}}}$$

$$t_{\text{var}} = \frac{\bar{X} - \mu_o}{\frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}}$$

where

$Z_{\text{var}}$  = standard normal Z score

$t_{\text{var}}$  = sample distribution test statistic

$\sigma$  = standard deviation

$\mu_o$  = population mean

$\bar{X}$  = hypothesized mean or sample mean

$n$  = sample size

$s$  = computed sample standard deviation

The Z score is applicable when the standard deviation ( $s$ ) is known. The test statistic is applicable when the standard deviation ( $s$ ) is computed at time of sampling.

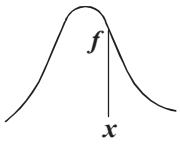
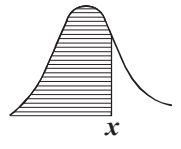
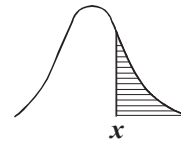
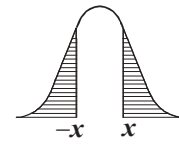
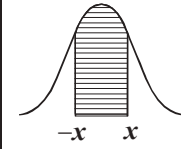
$Z_{\alpha}$  corresponds to the appropriate probability under the normal probability curve for a given  $Z_{\text{var}}$ .

$t_{\alpha, n-1}$  corresponds to the appropriate probability under the  $t$  distribution with  $n-1$  degrees of freedom for a given  $t_{\text{var}}$ .

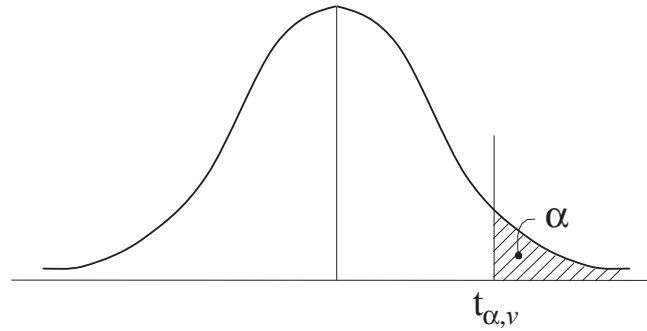
Values of  $Z_{\alpha/2}$

| Confidence Interval | $Z_{\alpha/2}$ |
|---------------------|----------------|
| 80%                 | 1.2816         |
| 90%                 | 1.6449         |
| 95%                 | 1.9600         |
| 96%                 | 2.0537         |
| 98%                 | 2.3263         |
| 99%                 | 2.5758         |

Unit Normal Distribution ( $\mu = 0, \sigma = 1$ )

|           |  |  |  |  |  |
|-----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $x$       | $f(x)$                                                                            | $F(x)$                                                                            | $R(x)$                                                                            | $2R(x)$                                                                             | $W(x)$                                                                              |
| 0.0       | 0.3989                                                                            | 0.5000                                                                            | 0.5000                                                                            | 1.0000                                                                              | 0.0000                                                                              |
| 0.1       | 0.3970                                                                            | 0.5398                                                                            | 0.4602                                                                            | 0.9203                                                                              | 0.0797                                                                              |
| 0.2       | 0.3910                                                                            | 0.5793                                                                            | 0.4207                                                                            | 0.8415                                                                              | 0.1585                                                                              |
| 0.3       | 0.3814                                                                            | 0.6179                                                                            | 0.3821                                                                            | 0.7642                                                                              | 0.2358                                                                              |
| 0.4       | 0.3683                                                                            | 0.6554                                                                            | 0.3446                                                                            | 0.6892                                                                              | 0.3108                                                                              |
| 0.5       | 0.3521                                                                            | 0.6915                                                                            | 0.3085                                                                            | 0.6171                                                                              | 0.3829                                                                              |
| 0.6       | 0.3332                                                                            | 0.7257                                                                            | 0.2743                                                                            | 0.5485                                                                              | 0.4515                                                                              |
| 0.7       | 0.3123                                                                            | 0.7580                                                                            | 0.2420                                                                            | 0.4839                                                                              | 0.5161                                                                              |
| 0.8       | 0.2897                                                                            | 0.7881                                                                            | 0.2119                                                                            | 0.4237                                                                              | 0.5763                                                                              |
| 0.9       | 0.2661                                                                            | 0.8159                                                                            | 0.1841                                                                            | 0.3681                                                                              | 0.6319                                                                              |
| 1.0       | 0.2420                                                                            | 0.8413                                                                            | 0.1587                                                                            | 0.3173                                                                              | 0.6827                                                                              |
| 1.1       | 0.2179                                                                            | 0.8643                                                                            | 0.1357                                                                            | 0.2713                                                                              | 0.7287                                                                              |
| 1.2       | 0.1942                                                                            | 0.8849                                                                            | 0.1151                                                                            | 0.2301                                                                              | 0.7699                                                                              |
| 1.3       | 0.1714                                                                            | 0.9032                                                                            | 0.0968                                                                            | 0.1936                                                                              | 0.8064                                                                              |
| 1.4       | 0.1497                                                                            | 0.9192                                                                            | 0.0808                                                                            | 0.1615                                                                              | 0.8385                                                                              |
| 1.5       | 0.1295                                                                            | 0.9332                                                                            | 0.0668                                                                            | 0.1336                                                                              | 0.8664                                                                              |
| 1.6       | 0.1109                                                                            | 0.9452                                                                            | 0.0548                                                                            | 0.1096                                                                              | 0.8904                                                                              |
| 1.7       | 0.0940                                                                            | 0.9554                                                                            | 0.0446                                                                            | 0.0891                                                                              | 0.9109                                                                              |
| 1.8       | 0.0790                                                                            | 0.9641                                                                            | 0.0359                                                                            | 0.0719                                                                              | 0.9281                                                                              |
| 1.9       | 0.0656                                                                            | 0.9713                                                                            | 0.0287                                                                            | 0.0574                                                                              | 0.9426                                                                              |
| 2.0       | 0.0540                                                                            | 0.9772                                                                            | 0.0228                                                                            | 0.0455                                                                              | 0.9545                                                                              |
| 2.1       | 0.0440                                                                            | 0.9821                                                                            | 0.0179                                                                            | 0.0357                                                                              | 0.9643                                                                              |
| 2.2       | 0.0355                                                                            | 0.9861                                                                            | 0.0139                                                                            | 0.0278                                                                              | 0.9722                                                                              |
| 2.3       | 0.0283                                                                            | 0.9893                                                                            | 0.0107                                                                            | 0.0214                                                                              | 0.9786                                                                              |
| 2.4       | 0.0224                                                                            | 0.9918                                                                            | 0.0082                                                                            | 0.0164                                                                              | 0.9836                                                                              |
| 2.5       | 0.0175                                                                            | 0.9938                                                                            | 0.0062                                                                            | 0.0124                                                                              | 0.9876                                                                              |
| 2.6       | 0.0136                                                                            | 0.9953                                                                            | 0.0047                                                                            | 0.0093                                                                              | 0.9907                                                                              |
| 2.7       | 0.0104                                                                            | 0.9965                                                                            | 0.0035                                                                            | 0.0069                                                                              | 0.9931                                                                              |
| 2.8       | 0.0079                                                                            | 0.9974                                                                            | 0.0026                                                                            | 0.0051                                                                              | 0.9949                                                                              |
| 2.9       | 0.0060                                                                            | 0.9981                                                                            | 0.0019                                                                            | 0.0037                                                                              | 0.9963                                                                              |
| 3.0       | 0.0044                                                                            | 0.9987                                                                            | 0.0013                                                                            | 0.0027                                                                              | 0.9973                                                                              |
| Fractiles |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                     |
| 1.2816    | 0.1755                                                                            | 0.9000                                                                            | 0.1000                                                                            | 0.2000                                                                              | 0.8000                                                                              |
| 1.6449    | 0.1031                                                                            | 0.9500                                                                            | 0.0500                                                                            | 0.1000                                                                              | 0.9000                                                                              |
| 1.9600    | 0.0584                                                                            | 0.9750                                                                            | 0.0250                                                                            | 0.0500                                                                              | 0.9500                                                                              |
| 2.0537    | 0.0484                                                                            | 0.9800                                                                            | 0.0200                                                                            | 0.0400                                                                              | 0.9600                                                                              |
| 2.3263    | 0.0267                                                                            | 0.9900                                                                            | 0.0100                                                                            | 0.0200                                                                              | 0.9800                                                                              |
| 2.5758    | 0.0145                                                                            | 0.9950                                                                            | 0.0050                                                                            | 0.0100                                                                              | 0.9900                                                                              |

### Student's $t$ -Distribution

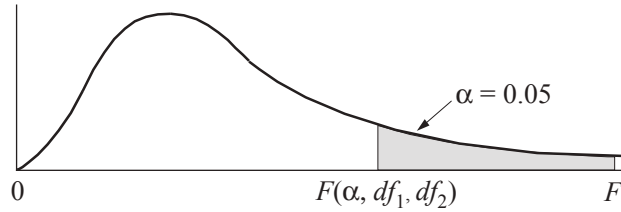


VALUES OF  $t_{\alpha, \nu}$

| $\nu$     | $\alpha$     |              |              |              |              |              |              |              | $\nu$     |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|-----------|
|           | 0.25         | 0.20         | 0.15         | 0.10         | 0.05         | 0.025        | 0.01         | 0.005        |           |
| 1         | 1.000        | 1.376        | 1.963        | 3.078        | 6.314        | 12.706       | 31.821       | 63.657       | 1         |
| 2         | 0.816        | 1.061        | 1.386        | 1.886        | 2.920        | 4.303        | 6.965        | 9.925        | 2         |
| 3         | 0.765        | 0.978        | 1.350        | 1.638        | 2.353        | 3.182        | 4.541        | 5.841        | 3         |
| 4         | 0.741        | 0.941        | 1.190        | 1.533        | 2.132        | 2.776        | 3.747        | 4.604        | 4         |
| <b>5</b>  | <b>0.727</b> | <b>0.920</b> | <b>1.156</b> | <b>1.476</b> | <b>2.015</b> | <b>2.571</b> | <b>3.365</b> | <b>4.032</b> | <b>5</b>  |
| 6         | 0.718        | 0.906        | 1.134        | 1.440        | 1.943        | 2.447        | 3.143        | 3.707        | 6         |
| 7         | 0.711        | 0.896        | 1.119        | 1.415        | 1.895        | 2.365        | 2.998        | 3.499        | 7         |
| 8         | 0.706        | 0.889        | 1.108        | 1.397        | 1.860        | 2.306        | 2.896        | 3.355        | 8         |
| 9         | 0.703        | 0.883        | 1.100        | 1.383        | 1.833        | 2.262        | 2.821        | 3.250        | 9         |
| <b>10</b> | <b>0.700</b> | <b>0.879</b> | <b>1.093</b> | <b>1.372</b> | <b>1.812</b> | <b>2.228</b> | <b>2.764</b> | <b>3.169</b> | <b>10</b> |
| 11        | 0.697        | 0.876        | 1.088        | 1.363        | 1.796        | 2.201        | 2.718        | 3.106        | 11        |
| 12        | 0.695        | 0.873        | 1.083        | 1.356        | 1.782        | 2.179        | 2.681        | 3.055        | 12        |
| 13        | 0.694        | 0.870        | 1.079        | 1.350        | 1.771        | 2.160        | 2.650        | 3.012        | 13        |
| 14        | 0.692        | 0.868        | 1.076        | 1.345        | 1.761        | 2.145        | 2.624        | 2.977        | 14        |
| <b>15</b> | <b>0.691</b> | <b>0.866</b> | <b>1.074</b> | <b>1.341</b> | <b>1.753</b> | <b>2.131</b> | <b>2.602</b> | <b>2.947</b> | <b>15</b> |
| 16        | 0.690        | 0.865        | 1.071        | 1.337        | 1.746        | 2.120        | 2.583        | 2.921        | 16        |
| 17        | 0.689        | 0.863        | 1.069        | 1.333        | 1.740        | 2.110        | 2.567        | 2.898        | 17        |
| 18        | 0.688        | 0.862        | 1.067        | 1.330        | 1.734        | 2.101        | 2.552        | 2.878        | 18        |
| 19        | 0.688        | 0.861        | 1.066        | 1.328        | 1.729        | 2.093        | 2.539        | 2.861        | 19        |
| <b>20</b> | <b>0.687</b> | <b>0.860</b> | <b>1.064</b> | <b>1.325</b> | <b>1.725</b> | <b>2.086</b> | <b>2.528</b> | <b>2.845</b> | <b>20</b> |
| 21        | 0.686        | 0.859        | 1.063        | 1.323        | 1.721        | 2.080        | 2.518        | 2.831        | 21        |
| 22        | 0.686        | 0.858        | 1.061        | 1.321        | 1.717        | 2.074        | 2.508        | 2.819        | 22        |
| 23        | 0.685        | 0.858        | 1.060        | 1.319        | 1.714        | 2.069        | 2.500        | 2.807        | 23        |
| 24        | 0.685        | 0.857        | 1.059        | 1.318        | 1.711        | 2.064        | 2.492        | 2.797        | 24        |
| <b>25</b> | <b>0.684</b> | <b>0.856</b> | <b>1.058</b> | <b>1.316</b> | <b>1.708</b> | <b>2.060</b> | <b>2.485</b> | <b>2.787</b> | <b>25</b> |
| 26        | 0.684        | 0.856        | 1.058        | 1.315        | 1.706        | 2.056        | 2.479        | 2.779        | 26        |
| 27        | 0.684        | 0.855        | 1.057        | 1.314        | 1.703        | 2.052        | 2.473        | 2.771        | 27        |
| 28        | 0.683        | 0.855        | 1.056        | 1.313        | 1.701        | 2.048        | 2.467        | 2.763        | 28        |
| 29        | 0.683        | 0.854        | 1.055        | 1.311        | 1.699        | 2.045        | 2.462        | 2.756        | 29        |
| <b>30</b> | <b>0.683</b> | <b>0.854</b> | <b>1.055</b> | <b>1.310</b> | <b>1.697</b> | <b>2.042</b> | <b>2.457</b> | <b>2.750</b> | <b>30</b> |
| $\infty$  | 0.674        | 0.842        | 1.036        | 1.282        | 1.645        | 1.960        | 2.326        | 2.576        | $\infty$  |

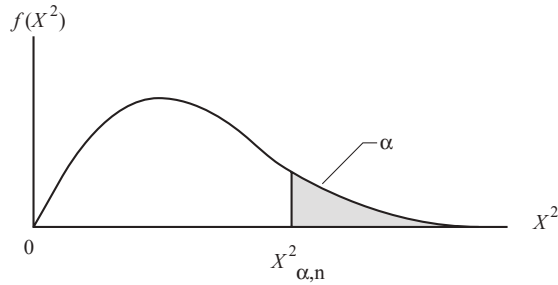
CRITICAL VALUES OF THE  $F$  DISTRIBUTION – TABLE

For a particular combination of numerator and denominator degrees of freedom, entry represents the critical values of  $F$  corresponding to a specified upper tail area ( $\alpha$ ).



| Denominator<br>$df_2$ | Numerator $df_1$ |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |
|-----------------------|------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
|                       | 1                | 2           | 3           | 4           | 5           | 6           | 7           | 8           | 9           | 10          | 12          | 15          | 20          | 24          | 30          | 40          | 60          | 120         | $\infty$    |
| 1                     | 161.4            | 199.5       | 215.7       | 224.6       | 230.2       | 234.0       | 236.8       | 238.9       | 240.5       | 241.9       | 243.9       | 245.9       | 248.0       | 249.1       | 250.1       | 251.1       | 252.2       | 253.3       | 254.3       |
| 2                     | 18.51            | 19.00       | 19.16       | 19.25       | 19.30       | 19.33       | 19.35       | 19.37       | 19.38       | 19.40       | 19.41       | 19.43       | 19.45       | 19.45       | 19.46       | 19.47       | 19.48       | 19.49       | 19.50       |
| 3                     | 10.13            | 9.55        | 9.28        | 9.12        | 9.01        | 8.94        | 8.89        | 8.85        | 8.81        | 8.79        | 8.74        | 8.70        | 8.66        | 8.64        | 8.62        | 8.59        | 8.57        | 8.55        | 8.53        |
| 4                     | 7.71             | 6.94        | 6.59        | 6.39        | 6.26        | 6.16        | 6.09        | 6.04        | 6.00        | 5.96        | 5.91        | 5.86        | 5.80        | 5.77        | 5.75        | 5.72        | 5.69        | 5.66        | 5.63        |
| 5                     | <b>6.61</b>      | <b>5.79</b> | <b>5.41</b> | <b>5.19</b> | <b>5.05</b> | <b>4.95</b> | <b>4.88</b> | <b>4.82</b> | <b>4.77</b> | <b>4.74</b> | <b>4.68</b> | <b>4.62</b> | <b>4.56</b> | <b>4.53</b> | <b>4.50</b> | <b>4.46</b> | <b>4.43</b> | <b>4.40</b> | <b>4.36</b> |
| 6                     | 5.99             | 5.14        | 4.76        | 4.53        | 4.39        | 4.28        | 4.21        | 4.15        | 4.10        | 4.06        | 4.00        | 3.94        | 3.87        | 3.84        | 3.81        | 3.77        | 3.74        | 3.70        | 3.67        |
| 7                     | 5.59             | 4.74        | 4.35        | 4.12        | 3.97        | 3.87        | 3.79        | 3.73        | 3.68        | 3.64        | 3.57        | 3.51        | 3.44        | 3.41        | 3.38        | 3.34        | 3.30        | 3.27        | 3.23        |
| 8                     | 5.32             | 4.46        | 4.07        | 3.84        | 3.69        | 3.58        | 3.50        | 3.44        | 3.39        | 3.35        | 3.28        | 3.22        | 3.15        | 3.12        | 3.08        | 3.04        | 3.01        | 2.97        | 2.93        |
| 9                     | 5.12             | 4.26        | 3.86        | 3.63        | 3.48        | 3.37        | 3.29        | 3.23        | 3.18        | 3.14        | 3.07        | 3.01        | 2.94        | 2.90        | 2.86        | 2.83        | 2.79        | 2.75        | 2.71        |
| 10                    | <b>4.96</b>      | <b>4.10</b> | <b>3.71</b> | <b>3.48</b> | <b>3.33</b> | <b>3.22</b> | <b>3.14</b> | <b>3.07</b> | <b>3.02</b> | <b>2.98</b> | <b>2.91</b> | <b>2.85</b> | <b>2.77</b> | <b>2.74</b> | <b>2.70</b> | <b>2.66</b> | <b>2.62</b> | <b>2.58</b> | <b>2.54</b> |
| 11                    | 4.84             | 3.98        | 3.59        | 3.36        | 3.20        | 3.09        | 3.01        | 2.95        | 2.90        | 2.85        | 2.79        | 2.72        | 2.65        | 2.61        | 2.57        | 2.53        | 2.49        | 2.45        | 2.40        |
| 12                    | 4.75             | 3.89        | 3.49        | 3.26        | 3.11        | 3.00        | 2.91        | 2.85        | 2.80        | 2.75        | 2.69        | 2.62        | 2.54        | 2.51        | 2.47        | 2.43        | 2.38        | 2.34        | 2.30        |
| 13                    | 4.67             | 3.81        | 3.41        | 3.18        | 3.03        | 2.92        | 2.83        | 2.77        | 2.71        | 2.67        | 2.60        | 2.53        | 2.46        | 2.42        | 2.38        | 2.34        | 2.30        | 2.25        | 2.21        |
| 14                    | 4.60             | 3.74        | 3.34        | 3.11        | 2.96        | 2.85        | 2.76        | 2.70        | 2.65        | 2.60        | 2.53        | 2.46        | 2.39        | 2.35        | 2.31        | 2.27        | 2.22        | 2.18        | 2.13        |
| 15                    | <b>4.54</b>      | <b>3.68</b> | <b>3.29</b> | <b>3.06</b> | <b>2.90</b> | <b>2.79</b> | <b>2.71</b> | <b>2.64</b> | <b>2.59</b> | <b>2.54</b> | <b>2.48</b> | <b>2.40</b> | <b>2.33</b> | <b>2.29</b> | <b>2.25</b> | <b>2.20</b> | <b>2.16</b> | <b>2.11</b> | <b>2.07</b> |
| 16                    | 4.49             | 3.63        | 3.24        | 3.01        | 2.85        | 2.74        | 2.66        | 2.59        | 2.54        | 2.49        | 2.42        | 2.35        | 2.28        | 2.24        | 2.19        | 2.15        | 2.11        | 2.06        | 2.01        |
| 17                    | 4.45             | 3.59        | 3.20        | 2.96        | 2.81        | 2.70        | 2.61        | 2.55        | 2.49        | 2.45        | 2.38        | 2.31        | 2.23        | 2.19        | 2.15        | 2.10        | 2.06        | 2.01        | 1.96        |
| 18                    | 4.41             | 3.55        | 3.16        | 2.93        | 2.77        | 2.66        | 2.58        | 2.51        | 2.46        | 2.41        | 2.34        | 2.27        | 2.19        | 2.15        | 2.11        | 2.06        | 2.02        | 1.97        | 1.92        |
| 19                    | 4.38             | 3.52        | 3.13        | 2.90        | 2.74        | 2.63        | 2.54        | 2.48        | 2.42        | 2.38        | 2.31        | 2.23        | 2.16        | 2.11        | 2.07        | 2.03        | 1.98        | 1.93        | 1.88        |
| 20                    | <b>4.35</b>      | <b>3.49</b> | <b>3.10</b> | <b>2.87</b> | <b>2.71</b> | <b>2.60</b> | <b>2.51</b> | <b>2.45</b> | <b>2.39</b> | <b>2.35</b> | <b>2.28</b> | <b>2.20</b> | <b>2.12</b> | <b>2.08</b> | <b>2.04</b> | <b>1.99</b> | <b>1.95</b> | <b>1.90</b> | <b>1.84</b> |
| 21                    | 4.32             | 3.47        | 3.07        | 2.84        | 2.68        | 2.57        | 2.49        | 2.42        | 2.37        | 2.32        | 2.25        | 2.18        | 2.10        | 2.05        | 2.01        | 1.96        | 1.92        | 1.87        | 1.81        |
| 22                    | 4.30             | 3.44        | 3.05        | 2.82        | 2.66        | 2.55        | 2.46        | 2.40        | 2.34        | 2.30        | 2.23        | 2.15        | 2.07        | 2.03        | 1.98        | 1.94        | 1.89        | 1.84        | 1.78        |
| 23                    | 4.28             | 3.42        | 3.03        | 2.80        | 2.64        | 2.53        | 2.44        | 2.37        | 2.32        | 2.27        | 2.20        | 2.13        | 2.05        | 2.01        | 1.96        | 1.91        | 1.86        | 1.81        | 1.76        |
| 24                    | 4.26             | 3.40        | 3.01        | 2.78        | 2.62        | 2.51        | 2.42        | 2.36        | 2.30        | 2.25        | 2.18        | 2.11        | 2.03        | 1.98        | 1.94        | 1.89        | 1.84        | 1.79        | 1.73        |
| 25                    | <b>4.24</b>      | <b>3.39</b> | <b>2.99</b> | <b>2.76</b> | <b>2.60</b> | <b>2.49</b> | <b>2.40</b> | <b>2.34</b> | <b>2.28</b> | <b>2.24</b> | <b>2.16</b> | <b>2.09</b> | <b>2.01</b> | <b>1.96</b> | <b>1.92</b> | <b>1.87</b> | <b>1.82</b> | <b>1.77</b> | <b>1.71</b> |
| 26                    | 4.23             | 3.37        | 2.98        | 2.74        | 2.59        | 2.47        | 2.39        | 2.32        | 2.27        | 2.22        | 2.15        | 2.07        | 1.99        | 1.95        | 1.90        | 1.85        | 1.80        | 1.75        | 1.69        |
| 27                    | 4.21             | 3.35        | 2.96        | 2.73        | 2.57        | 2.46        | 2.37        | 2.31        | 2.25        | 2.20        | 2.13        | 2.06        | 1.97        | 1.93        | 1.88        | 1.84        | 1.79        | 1.73        | 1.67        |
| 28                    | 4.20             | 3.34        | 2.95        | 2.71        | 2.56        | 2.45        | 2.36        | 2.29        | 2.24        | 2.19        | 2.12        | 2.04        | 1.96        | 1.91        | 1.87        | 1.82        | 1.77        | 1.71        | 1.65        |
| 29                    | 4.18             | 3.33        | 2.93        | 2.70        | 2.55        | 2.43        | 2.35        | 2.28        | 2.22        | 2.18        | 2.10        | 2.03        | 1.94        | 1.90        | 1.85        | 1.81        | 1.75        | 1.70        | 1.64        |
| 30                    | <b>4.17</b>      | <b>3.32</b> | <b>2.92</b> | <b>2.69</b> | <b>2.53</b> | <b>2.42</b> | <b>2.33</b> | <b>2.27</b> | <b>2.21</b> | <b>2.16</b> | <b>2.09</b> | <b>2.01</b> | <b>1.93</b> | <b>1.89</b> | <b>1.84</b> | <b>1.79</b> | <b>1.74</b> | <b>1.68</b> | <b>1.62</b> |
| 40                    | 4.08             | 3.23        | 2.84        | 2.61        | 2.45        | 2.34        | 2.25        | 2.18        | 2.12        | 2.08        | 2.00        | 1.92        | 1.84        | 1.79        | 1.74        | 1.69        | 1.64        | 1.58        | 1.51        |
| 60                    | 4.00             | 3.15        | 2.76        | 2.53        | 2.37        | 2.25        | 2.17        | 2.10        | 2.04        | 1.99        | 1.92        | 1.84        | 1.75        | 1.70        | 1.65        | 1.59        | 1.53        | 1.47        | 1.39        |
| 120                   | 3.92             | 3.07        | 2.68        | 2.45        | 2.29        | 2.17        | 2.09        | 2.02        | 1.96        | 1.91        | 1.83        | 1.75        | 1.66        | 1.61        | 1.55        | 1.50        | 1.43        | 1.35        | 1.25        |
| $\infty$              | 3.84             | 3.00        | 2.60        | 2.37        | 2.21        | 2.10        | 2.01        | 1.94        | 1.88        | 1.83        | 1.75        | 1.67        | 1.57        | 1.52        | 1.46        | 1.39        | 1.32        | 1.22        | 1.00        |

CRITICAL VALUES OF  $\chi^2$  DISTRIBUTION



| Degrees of Freedom | $\chi^2_{.995}$ | $\chi^2_{.990}$ | $\chi^2_{.975}$ | $\chi^2_{.950}$ | $\chi^2_{.900}$ | $\chi^2_{.100}$ | $\chi^2_{.050}$ | $\chi^2_{.025}$ | $\chi^2_{.010}$ | $\chi^2_{.005}$ |
|--------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1                  | 0.0000393       | 0.0001571       | 0.0009821       | 0.0039321       | 0.0157908       | 2.70554         | 3.84146         | 5.02389         | 6.63490         | 7.87944         |
| 2                  | 0.0100251       | 0.0201007       | 0.0506356       | 0.102587        | 0.210720        | 4.60517         | 5.99147         | 7.37776         | 9.21034         | 10.5966         |
| 3                  | 0.0717212       | 0.114832        | 0.215795        | 0.351846        | 0.584375        | 6.25139         | 7.81473         | 9.34840         | 11.3449         | 12.8381         |
| 4                  | 0.206990        | 0.297110        | 0.484419        | 0.710721        | 1.063623        | 7.77944         | 9.48773         | 11.1433         | 13.2767         | 14.8602         |
| 5                  | 0.411740        | 0.554300        | 0.831211        | 1.145476        | 1.61031         | 9.23635         | 11.0705         | 12.8325         | 15.0863         | 16.7496         |
| 6                  | 0.675727        | 0.872085        | 1.237347        | 1.63539         | 2.20413         | 10.6446         | 12.5916         | 14.4494         | 16.8119         | 18.5476         |
| 7                  | 0.989265        | 1.239043        | 1.68987         | 2.16735         | 2.83311         | 12.0170         | 14.0671         | 16.0128         | 18.4753         | 20.2777         |
| 8                  | 1.344419        | 1.646482        | 2.17973         | 2.73264         | 3.48954         | 13.3616         | 15.5073         | 17.5346         | 20.0902         | 21.9550         |
| 9                  | 1.734926        | 2.087912        | 2.70039         | 3.32511         | 4.16816         | 14.6837         | 16.9190         | 19.0228         | 21.6660         | 23.5893         |
| 10                 | 2.15585         | 2.55821         | 3.24697         | 3.94030         | 4.86518         | 15.9871         | 18.3070         | 20.4831         | 23.2093         | 25.1882         |
| 11                 | 2.60321         | 3.05347         | 3.81575         | 4.57481         | 5.57779         | 17.2750         | 19.6751         | 21.9200         | 24.7250         | 26.7569         |
| 12                 | 3.07382         | 3.57056         | 4.40379         | 5.22603         | 6.30380         | 18.5494         | 21.0261         | 23.3367         | 26.2170         | 28.2995         |
| 13                 | 3.56503         | 4.10691         | 5.00874         | 5.89186         | 7.04150         | 19.8119         | 22.3621         | 24.7356         | 27.6883         | 29.8194         |
| 14                 | 4.07468         | 4.66043         | 5.62872         | 6.57063         | 7.78953         | 21.0642         | 23.6848         | 26.1190         | 29.1413         | 31.3193         |
| 15                 | 4.60094         | 5.22935         | 6.26214         | 7.26094         | 8.54675         | 22.3072         | 24.9958         | 27.4884         | 30.5779         | 32.8013         |
| 16                 | 5.14224         | 5.81221         | 6.90766         | 7.96164         | 9.31223         | 23.5418         | 26.2962         | 28.8454         | 31.9999         | 34.2672         |
| 17                 | 5.69724         | 6.40776         | 7.56418         | 8.67176         | 10.0852         | 24.7690         | 27.5871         | 30.1910         | 33.4087         | 35.7185         |
| 18                 | 6.26481         | 7.01491         | 8.23075         | 9.39046         | 10.8649         | 25.9894         | 28.8693         | 31.5264         | 34.8053         | 37.1564         |
| 19                 | 6.84398         | 7.63273         | 8.90655         | 10.1170         | 11.6509         | 27.2036         | 30.1435         | 32.8523         | 36.1908         | 38.5822         |
| 20                 | 7.43386         | 8.26040         | 9.59083         | 10.8508         | 12.4426         | 28.4120         | 31.4104         | 34.1696         | 37.5662         | 39.9968         |
| 21                 | 8.03366         | 8.89720         | 10.28293        | 11.5913         | 13.2396         | 29.6151         | 32.6705         | 35.4789         | 38.9321         | 41.4010         |
| 22                 | 8.64272         | 9.54249         | 10.9823         | 12.3380         | 14.0415         | 30.8133         | 33.9244         | 36.7807         | 40.2894         | 42.7956         |
| 23                 | 9.26042         | 10.19567        | 11.6885         | 13.0905         | 14.8479         | 32.0069         | 35.1725         | 38.0757         | 41.6384         | 44.1813         |
| 24                 | 9.88623         | 10.8564         | 12.4011         | 13.8484         | 15.6587         | 33.1963         | 36.4151         | 39.3641         | 42.9798         | 45.5585         |
| 25                 | 10.5197         | 11.5240         | 13.1197         | 14.6114         | 16.4734         | 34.3816         | 37.6525         | 40.6465         | 44.3141         | 46.9278         |
| 26                 | 11.1603         | 12.1981         | 13.8439         | 15.3791         | 17.2919         | 35.5631         | 38.8852         | 41.9232         | 45.6417         | 48.2899         |
| 27                 | 11.8076         | 12.8786         | 14.5733         | 16.1513         | 18.1138         | 36.7412         | 40.1133         | 43.1944         | 46.9630         | 49.6449         |
| 28                 | 12.4613         | 13.5648         | 15.3079         | 16.9279         | 18.9392         | 37.9159         | 41.3372         | 44.4607         | 48.2782         | 50.9933         |
| 29                 | 13.1211         | 14.2565         | 16.0471         | 17.7083         | 19.7677         | 39.0875         | 42.5569         | 45.7222         | 49.5879         | 52.3356         |
| 30                 | 13.7867         | 14.9535         | 16.7908         | 18.4926         | 20.5992         | 40.2560         | 43.7729         | 46.9792         | 50.8922         | 53.6720         |
| 40                 | 20.7065         | 22.1643         | 24.4331         | 26.5093         | 29.0505         | 51.8050         | 55.7585         | 59.3417         | 63.6907         | 66.7659         |
| 50                 | 27.9907         | 29.7067         | 32.3574         | 34.7642         | 37.6886         | 63.1671         | 67.5048         | 71.4202         | 76.1539         | 79.4900         |
| 60                 | 35.5346         | 37.4848         | 40.4817         | 43.1879         | 46.4589         | 74.3970         | 79.0819         | 83.2976         | 88.3794         | 91.9517         |
| 70                 | 43.2752         | 45.4418         | 48.7576         | 51.7393         | 55.3290         | 85.5271         | 90.5312         | 95.0231         | 100.425         | 104.215         |
| 80                 | 51.1720         | 53.5400         | 57.1532         | 60.3915         | 64.2778         | 96.5782         | 101.879         | 106.629         | 112.329         | 116.321         |
| 90                 | 59.1963         | 61.7541         | 65.6466         | 69.1260         | 73.2912         | 107.565         | 113.145         | 118.136         | 124.116         | 128.299         |
| 100                | 67.3276         | 70.0648         | 74.2219         | 77.9295         | 82.3581         | 118.498         | 124.342         | 129.561         | 135.807         | 140.169         |

Source: Thompson, C. M., "Tables of the Percentage Points of the  $\chi^2$ -Distribution," *Biometrika*, ©1941, 32, 188-189. Reproduced by permission of Oxford University Press.

**Cumulative Binomial Probabilities,  $P(X \leq x)$**

| <i>n</i> | <i>x</i> | 0.10     | 0.20     | 0.30     | 0.40     | 0.50     | 0.60     | 0.70     | 0.80     | 0.90     | 0.95     | 0.99     |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 1        | 0        | 9.00E-01 | 8.00E-01 | 7.00E-01 | 6.00E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 4.00E-01 | 3.00E-01 | 2.00E-01 | 1.00E-01 | 5.00E-02 | 1.00E-02 |
| 2        | 0        | 8.10E-01 | 6.40E-01 | 4.90E-01 | 3.60E-01 | 2.50E-01 | 1.60E-01 | 9.00E-02 | 4.00E-02 | 1.00E-02 | 2.50E-03 | 1.00E-04 |
| 2        | 1        | 9.90E-01 | 9.60E-01 | 9.10E-01 | 8.40E-01 | 7.50E-01 | 6.40E-01 | 5.10E-01 | 3.60E-01 | 1.90E-01 | 9.75E-02 | 1.99E-02 |
| 3        | 0        | 7.29E-01 | 5.12E-01 | 3.43E-01 | 2.16E-01 | 1.25E-01 | 6.40E-02 | 2.70E-02 | 8.00E-03 | 1.00E-03 | 1.25E-04 | 1.00E-06 |
| 3        | 1        | 9.72E-01 | 8.96E-01 | 7.84E-01 | 6.48E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 3.52E-01 | 2.16E-01 | 1.04E-01 | 2.80E-02 | 7.25E-03 | 2.98E-04 |
| 3        | 2        | 9.99E-01 | 9.92E-01 | 9.73E-01 | 9.36E-01 | 8.75E-01 | 7.84E-01 | 6.57E-01 | 4.88E-01 | 2.71E-01 | 1.43E-01 | 2.97E-02 |
| 4        | 0        | 6.56E-01 | 4.10E-01 | 2.40E-01 | 1.30E-01 | 6.25E-02 | 2.56E-02 | 8.10E-03 | 1.60E-03 | 1.00E-04 | 6.25E-06 | 1.00E-08 |
| 4        | 1        | 9.48E-01 | 8.19E-01 | 6.52E-01 | 4.75E-01 | 3.13E-01 | 1.79E-01 | 8.37E-02 | 2.72E-02 | 3.70E-03 | 4.81E-04 | 3.97E-06 |
| 4        | 2        | 9.96E-01 | 9.73E-01 | 9.16E-01 | 8.21E-01 | 6.88E-01 | 5.25E-01 | 3.48E-01 | 1.81E-01 | 5.23E-02 | 1.40E-02 | 5.92E-04 |
| 4        | 3        | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.92E-01 | 9.74E-01 | 9.38E-01 | 8.70E-01 | 7.60E-01 | 5.90E-01 | 3.44E-01 | 1.85E-01 | 3.94E-02 |
| 5        | 0        | 5.90E-01 | 3.28E-01 | 1.68E-01 | 7.78E-02 | 3.13E-02 | 1.02E-02 | 2.43E-03 | 3.20E-04 | 1.00E-05 | 3.13E-07 | 1.00E-10 |
| 5        | 1        | 9.19E-01 | 7.37E-01 | 5.28E-01 | 3.37E-01 | 1.88E-01 | 8.70E-02 | 3.08E-02 | 6.72E-03 | 4.60E-04 | 3.00E-05 | 4.96E-08 |
| 5        | 2        | 9.91E-01 | 9.42E-01 | 8.37E-01 | 6.83E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 3.17E-01 | 1.63E-01 | 5.79E-02 | 8.56E-03 | 1.16E-03 | 9.85E-06 |
| 5        | 3        | 1.00E+00 | 9.93E-01 | 9.69E-01 | 9.13E-01 | 8.13E-01 | 6.63E-01 | 4.72E-01 | 2.63E-01 | 8.15E-02 | 2.26E-02 | 9.80E-04 |
| 5        | 4        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.90E-01 | 9.69E-01 | 9.22E-01 | 8.32E-01 | 6.72E-01 | 4.10E-01 | 2.26E-01 | 4.90E-02 |
| 6        | 0        | 5.31E-01 | 2.62E-01 | 1.18E-01 | 4.67E-02 | 1.56E-02 | 4.10E-03 | 7.29E-04 | 6.40E-05 | 1.00E-06 | 1.56E-08 | 1.00E-12 |
| 6        | 1        | 8.86E-01 | 6.55E-01 | 4.20E-01 | 2.33E-01 | 1.09E-01 | 4.10E-02 | 1.09E-02 | 1.60E-03 | 5.50E-05 | 1.80E-06 | 5.95E-10 |
| 6        | 2        | 9.84E-01 | 9.01E-01 | 7.44E-01 | 5.44E-01 | 3.44E-01 | 1.79E-01 | 7.05E-02 | 1.70E-02 | 1.27E-03 | 8.64E-05 | 1.48E-07 |
| 6        | 3        | 9.99E-01 | 9.83E-01 | 9.30E-01 | 8.21E-01 | 6.56E-01 | 4.56E-01 | 2.56E-01 | 9.89E-02 | 1.59E-02 | 2.23E-03 | 1.96E-05 |
| 6        | 4        | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.89E-01 | 9.59E-01 | 8.91E-01 | 7.67E-01 | 5.80E-01 | 3.45E-01 | 1.14E-01 | 3.28E-02 | 1.46E-03 |
| 6        | 5        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.96E-01 | 9.84E-01 | 9.53E-01 | 8.82E-01 | 7.38E-01 | 4.69E-01 | 2.65E-01 | 5.85E-02 |
| 7        | 0        | 4.78E-01 | 2.10E-01 | 8.24E-02 | 2.80E-02 | 7.81E-03 | 1.64E-03 | 2.19E-04 | 1.28E-05 | 1.00E-07 | 7.81E-10 | 1.00E-14 |
| 7        | 1        | 8.50E-01 | 5.77E-01 | 3.29E-01 | 1.59E-01 | 6.25E-02 | 1.88E-02 | 3.79E-03 | 3.71E-04 | 6.40E-06 | 1.05E-07 | 6.94E-12 |
| 7        | 2        | 9.74E-01 | 8.52E-01 | 6.47E-01 | 4.20E-01 | 2.27E-01 | 9.63E-02 | 2.88E-02 | 4.67E-03 | 1.76E-04 | 6.03E-06 | 2.07E-09 |
| 7        | 3        | 9.97E-01 | 9.67E-01 | 8.74E-01 | 7.10E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 2.90E-01 | 1.26E-01 | 3.33E-02 | 2.73E-03 | 1.94E-04 | 3.42E-07 |
| 7        | 4        | 1.00E+00 | 9.95E-01 | 9.71E-01 | 9.04E-01 | 7.73E-01 | 5.80E-01 | 3.53E-01 | 1.48E-01 | 2.57E-02 | 3.76E-03 | 3.40E-05 |
| 7        | 5        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.81E-01 | 9.38E-01 | 8.41E-01 | 6.71E-01 | 4.23E-01 | 1.50E-01 | 4.44E-02 | 2.03E-03 |
| 7        | 6        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.92E-01 | 9.72E-01 | 9.18E-01 | 7.90E-01 | 5.22E-01 | 3.02E-01 | 6.79E-02 |
| 8        | 0        | 4.30E-01 | 1.68E-01 | 5.76E-02 | 1.68E-02 | 3.91E-03 | 6.55E-04 | 6.56E-05 | 2.56E-06 | 1.00E-08 | 3.91E-11 | 1.00E-16 |
| 8        | 1        | 8.13E-01 | 5.03E-01 | 2.55E-01 | 1.06E-01 | 3.52E-02 | 8.52E-03 | 1.29E-03 | 8.45E-05 | 7.30E-07 | 5.98E-09 | 7.93E-14 |
| 8        | 2        | 9.62E-01 | 7.97E-01 | 5.52E-01 | 3.15E-01 | 1.45E-01 | 4.98E-02 | 1.13E-02 | 1.23E-03 | 2.34E-05 | 4.01E-07 | 2.75E-11 |
| 8        | 3        | 9.95E-01 | 9.44E-01 | 8.06E-01 | 5.94E-01 | 3.63E-01 | 1.74E-01 | 5.80E-02 | 1.04E-02 | 4.32E-04 | 1.54E-05 | 5.46E-09 |
| 8        | 4        | 1.00E+00 | 9.90E-01 | 9.42E-01 | 8.26E-01 | 6.37E-01 | 4.06E-01 | 1.94E-01 | 5.63E-02 | 5.02E-03 | 3.72E-04 | 6.78E-07 |
| 8        | 5        | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.89E-01 | 9.50E-01 | 8.55E-01 | 6.85E-01 | 4.48E-01 | 2.03E-01 | 3.81E-02 | 5.79E-03 | 5.39E-05 |
| 8        | 6        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.91E-01 | 9.65E-01 | 8.94E-01 | 7.45E-01 | 4.97E-01 | 1.87E-01 | 5.72E-02 | 2.69E-03 |
| 8        | 7        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.96E-01 | 9.83E-01 | 9.42E-01 | 8.32E-01 | 5.70E-01 | 3.37E-01 | 7.73E-02 |
| 9        | 0        | 3.87E-01 | 1.34E-01 | 4.04E-02 | 1.01E-02 | 1.95E-03 | 2.62E-04 | 1.97E-05 | 5.12E-07 | 1.00E-09 | 1.95E-12 | 1.00E-18 |
| 9        | 1        | 7.75E-01 | 4.36E-01 | 1.96E-01 | 7.05E-02 | 1.95E-02 | 3.80E-03 | 4.33E-04 | 1.89E-05 | 8.20E-08 | 3.36E-10 | 8.92E-16 |
| 9        | 2        | 9.47E-01 | 7.38E-01 | 4.63E-01 | 2.32E-01 | 8.98E-02 | 2.50E-02 | 4.29E-03 | 3.14E-04 | 3.00E-06 | 2.57E-08 | 3.54E-13 |
| 9        | 3        | 9.92E-01 | 9.14E-01 | 7.30E-01 | 4.83E-01 | 2.54E-01 | 9.94E-02 | 2.53E-02 | 3.07E-03 | 6.42E-05 | 1.15E-06 | 8.19E-11 |
| 9        | 4        | 9.99E-01 | 9.80E-01 | 9.01E-01 | 7.33E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 2.67E-01 | 9.88E-02 | 1.96E-02 | 8.91E-04 | 3.32E-05 | 1.22E-08 |
| 9        | 5        | 1.00E+00 | 9.97E-01 | 9.75E-01 | 9.01E-01 | 7.46E-01 | 5.17E-01 | 2.70E-01 | 8.56E-02 | 8.33E-03 | 6.43E-04 | 1.21E-06 |
| 9        | 6        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.75E-01 | 9.10E-01 | 7.68E-01 | 5.37E-01 | 2.62E-01 | 5.30E-02 | 8.36E-03 | 8.03E-05 |
| 9        | 7        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.80E-01 | 9.29E-01 | 8.04E-01 | 5.64E-01 | 2.25E-01 | 7.12E-02 | 3.44E-03 |
| 9        | 8        | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.90E-01 | 9.60E-01 | 8.66E-01 | 6.13E-01 | 3.70E-01 | 8.65E-02 |

Cumulative Binomial Probabilities,  $P(X \leq x)$  (cont'd)

| $n$ | $x$ | 0.10     | 0.20     | 0.30     | 0.40     | 0.50     | 0.60     | 0.70     | 0.80     | 0.90     | 0.95     | 0.99     |
|-----|-----|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| 10  | 0   | 3.49E-01 | 1.07E-01 | 2.82E-02 | 6.05E-03 | 9.77E-04 | 1.05E-04 | 5.90E-06 | 1.02E-07 | 1.00E-10 | 9.77E-14 | 1.00E-20 |
| 10  | 1   | 7.36E-01 | 3.76E-01 | 1.49E-01 | 4.64E-02 | 1.07E-02 | 1.68E-03 | 1.44E-04 | 4.20E-06 | 9.10E-09 | 1.87E-11 | 9.91E-18 |
| 10  | 2   | 9.30E-01 | 6.78E-01 | 3.83E-01 | 1.67E-01 | 5.47E-02 | 1.23E-02 | 1.59E-03 | 7.79E-05 | 3.74E-07 | 1.61E-09 | 4.42E-15 |
| 10  | 3   | 9.87E-01 | 8.79E-01 | 6.50E-01 | 3.82E-01 | 1.72E-01 | 5.48E-02 | 1.06E-02 | 8.64E-04 | 9.12E-06 | 8.20E-08 | 1.17E-12 |
| 10  | 4   | 9.98E-01 | 9.67E-01 | 8.50E-01 | 6.33E-01 | 3.77E-01 | 1.66E-01 | 4.73E-02 | 6.37E-03 | 1.47E-04 | 2.75E-06 | 2.03E-10 |
| 10  | 5   | 1.00E+00 | 9.94E-01 | 9.53E-01 | 8.34E-01 | 6.23E-01 | 3.67E-01 | 1.50E-01 | 3.28E-02 | 1.63E-03 | 6.37E-05 | 2.42E-08 |
| 10  | 6   | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.89E-01 | 9.45E-01 | 8.28E-01 | 6.18E-01 | 3.50E-01 | 1.21E-01 | 1.28E-02 | 1.03E-03 | 2.00E-06 |
| 10  | 7   | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.88E-01 | 9.45E-01 | 8.33E-01 | 6.17E-01 | 3.22E-01 | 7.02E-02 | 1.15E-02 | 1.14E-04 |
| 10  | 8   | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.89E-01 | 9.54E-01 | 8.51E-01 | 6.24E-01 | 2.64E-01 | 8.61E-02 | 4.27E-03 |
| 10  | 9   | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.94E-01 | 9.72E-01 | 8.93E-01 | 6.51E-01 | 4.01E-01 | 9.56E-02 |
| 15  | 0   | 2.06E-01 | 3.52E-02 | 4.75E-03 | 4.70E-04 | 3.05E-05 | 1.07E-06 | 1.43E-08 | 3.28E-11 | 1.00E-15 | 3.05E-20 | 1.00E-30 |
| 15  | 1   | 5.49E-01 | 1.67E-01 | 3.53E-02 | 5.17E-03 | 4.88E-04 | 2.52E-05 | 5.17E-07 | 2.00E-09 | 1.36E-13 | 8.73E-18 | 1.49E-27 |
| 15  | 2   | 8.16E-01 | 3.98E-01 | 1.27E-01 | 2.71E-02 | 3.69E-03 | 2.79E-04 | 8.72E-06 | 5.70E-08 | 8.64E-12 | 1.17E-15 | 1.03E-24 |
| 15  | 3   | 9.44E-01 | 6.48E-01 | 2.97E-01 | 9.05E-02 | 1.76E-02 | 1.93E-03 | 9.17E-05 | 1.01E-06 | 3.40E-10 | 9.64E-14 | 4.43E-22 |
| 15  | 4   | 9.87E-01 | 8.36E-01 | 5.15E-01 | 2.17E-01 | 5.92E-02 | 9.35E-03 | 6.72E-04 | 1.25E-05 | 9.30E-09 | 5.53E-12 | 1.32E-19 |
| 15  | 5   | 9.98E-01 | 9.39E-01 | 7.22E-01 | 4.03E-01 | 1.51E-01 | 3.38E-02 | 3.65E-03 | 1.13E-04 | 1.87E-07 | 2.32E-10 | 2.87E-17 |
| 15  | 6   | 1.00E+00 | 9.82E-01 | 8.69E-01 | 6.10E-01 | 3.04E-01 | 9.50E-02 | 1.52E-02 | 7.85E-04 | 2.85E-06 | 7.42E-09 | 4.74E-15 |
| 15  | 7   | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.50E-01 | 7.87E-01 | 5.00E-01 | 2.13E-01 | 5.00E-02 | 4.24E-03 | 3.36E-05 | 1.83E-07 | 6.05E-13 |
| 15  | 8   | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.85E-01 | 9.05E-01 | 6.96E-01 | 3.90E-01 | 1.31E-01 | 1.81E-02 | 3.11E-04 | 3.52E-06 | 6.00E-11 |
| 15  | 9   | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.66E-01 | 8.49E-01 | 5.97E-01 | 2.78E-01 | 6.11E-02 | 2.25E-03 | 5.28E-05 | 4.63E-09 |
| 15  | 10  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.91E-01 | 9.41E-01 | 7.83E-01 | 4.85E-01 | 1.64E-01 | 1.27E-02 | 6.15E-04 | 2.76E-07 |
| 15  | 11  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.82E-01 | 9.09E-01 | 7.03E-01 | 3.52E-01 | 5.56E-02 | 5.47E-03 | 1.25E-05 |
| 15  | 12  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.73E-01 | 8.73E-01 | 6.02E-01 | 1.84E-01 | 3.62E-02 | 4.16E-04 |
| 15  | 13  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.95E-01 | 9.65E-01 | 8.33E-01 | 4.51E-01 | 1.71E-01 | 9.63E-03 |
| 15  | 14  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.95E-01 | 9.65E-01 | 7.94E-01 | 5.37E-01 | 1.40E-01 |
| 20  | 0   | 1.22E-01 | 1.15E-02 | 7.98E-04 | 3.66E-05 | 9.54E-07 | 1.10E-08 | 3.49E-11 | 1.05E-14 | 1.00E-20 | 9.54E-27 | 1.00E-40 |
| 20  | 1   | 3.92E-01 | 6.92E-02 | 7.64E-03 | 5.24E-04 | 2.00E-05 | 3.41E-07 | 1.66E-09 | 8.49E-13 | 1.81E-18 | 3.63E-24 | 1.98E-37 |
| 20  | 2   | 6.77E-01 | 2.06E-01 | 3.55E-02 | 3.61E-03 | 2.01E-04 | 5.04E-06 | 3.77E-08 | 3.27E-11 | 1.56E-16 | 6.58E-22 | 1.86E-34 |
| 20  | 3   | 8.67E-01 | 4.11E-01 | 1.07E-01 | 1.60E-02 | 1.29E-03 | 4.73E-05 | 5.43E-07 | 7.98E-10 | 8.47E-15 | 7.52E-20 | 1.11E-31 |
| 20  | 4   | 9.57E-01 | 6.30E-01 | 2.38E-01 | 5.10E-02 | 5.91E-03 | 3.17E-04 | 5.55E-06 | 1.38E-08 | 3.26E-13 | 6.10E-18 | 4.67E-29 |
| 20  | 5   | 9.89E-01 | 8.04E-01 | 4.16E-01 | 1.26E-01 | 2.07E-02 | 1.61E-03 | 4.29E-05 | 1.80E-07 | 9.48E-12 | 3.72E-16 | 1.48E-26 |
| 20  | 6   | 9.98E-01 | 9.13E-01 | 6.08E-01 | 2.50E-01 | 5.77E-02 | 6.47E-03 | 2.61E-04 | 1.85E-06 | 2.15E-10 | 1.78E-14 | 3.66E-24 |
| 20  | 7   | 1.00E+00 | 9.68E-01 | 7.72E-01 | 4.16E-01 | 1.32E-01 | 2.10E-02 | 1.28E-03 | 1.52E-05 | 3.92E-09 | 6.79E-13 | 7.26E-22 |
| 20  | 8   | 1.00E+00 | 9.90E-01 | 8.87E-01 | 5.96E-01 | 2.52E-01 | 5.65E-02 | 5.14E-03 | 1.02E-04 | 5.81E-08 | 2.11E-11 | 1.17E-19 |
| 20  | 9   | 1.00E+00 | 9.97E-01 | 9.52E-01 | 7.55E-01 | 4.12E-01 | 1.28E-01 | 1.71E-02 | 5.63E-04 | 7.09E-07 | 5.38E-10 | 1.55E-17 |
| 20  | 10  | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.83E-01 | 8.72E-01 | 5.88E-01 | 2.45E-01 | 4.80E-02 | 2.59E-03 | 7.15E-06 | 1.13E-08 | 1.69E-15 |
| 20  | 11  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.95E-01 | 9.43E-01 | 7.48E-01 | 4.04E-01 | 1.13E-01 | 9.98E-03 | 5.99E-05 | 1.98E-07 | 1.52E-13 |
| 20  | 12  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.79E-01 | 8.68E-01 | 5.84E-01 | 2.28E-01 | 3.21E-02 | 4.16E-04 | 2.86E-06 | 1.13E-11 |
| 20  | 13  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.94E-01 | 9.42E-01 | 7.50E-01 | 3.92E-01 | 8.67E-02 | 2.39E-03 | 3.39E-05 | 6.92E-10 |
| 20  | 14  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.98E-01 | 9.79E-01 | 8.74E-01 | 5.84E-01 | 1.96E-01 | 1.13E-02 | 3.29E-04 | 3.44E-08 |
| 20  | 15  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.94E-01 | 9.49E-01 | 7.62E-01 | 3.70E-01 | 4.32E-02 | 2.57E-03 | 1.37E-06 |
| 20  | 16  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.84E-01 | 8.93E-01 | 5.89E-01 | 1.33E-01 | 1.59E-02 | 4.26E-05 |
| 20  | 17  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.96E-01 | 9.65E-01 | 7.94E-01 | 3.23E-01 | 7.55E-02 | 1.00E-03 |
| 20  | 18  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.92E-01 | 9.31E-01 | 6.08E-01 | 2.64E-01 | 1.69E-02 |
| 20  | 19  | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 1.00E+00 | 9.99E-01 | 9.88E-01 | 8.78E-01 | 6.42E-01 | 1.82E-01 |

## Statistical Quality Control

### Average and Range Charts

| $n$ | $A_2$ | $D_3$ | $D_4$ |
|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| 2   | 1.880 | 0     | 3.268 |
| 3   | 1.023 | 0     | 2.574 |
| 4   | 0.729 | 0     | 2.282 |
| 5   | 0.577 | 0     | 2.114 |
| 6   | 0.483 | 0     | 2.004 |
| 7   | 0.419 | 0.076 | 1.924 |
| 8   | 0.373 | 0.136 | 1.864 |
| 9   | 0.337 | 0.184 | 1.816 |
| 10  | 0.308 | 0.223 | 1.777 |

$X_i$  = an individual observation

$n$  = the sample size of a group

$k$  = the number of groups

$R$  = (range) the difference between the largest and smallest observations in a sample of size  $n$ .

$$\bar{X} = \frac{X_1 + X_2 + \dots + X_n}{n}$$

$$\bar{\bar{X}} = \frac{\bar{X}_1 + \bar{X}_2 + \dots + \bar{X}_k}{k}$$

$$\bar{R} = \frac{R_1 + R_2 + \dots + R_k}{k}$$

The  $R$  Chart formulas are:

$$CL_R = \bar{R}$$

$$UCL_R = D_4 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL_R = D_3 \bar{R}$$

The  $\bar{X}$  Chart formulas are:

$$CL_X = \bar{\bar{X}}$$

$$UCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_2 \bar{R}$$

$$LCL_X = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_2 \bar{R}$$

### Standard Deviation Charts

| $n$ | $A_3$ | $B_3$ | $B_4$ |
|-----|-------|-------|-------|
| 2   | 2.659 | 0     | 3.267 |
| 3   | 1.954 | 0     | 2.568 |
| 4   | 1.628 | 0     | 2.266 |
| 5   | 1.427 | 0     | 2.089 |
| 6   | 1.287 | 0.030 | 1.970 |
| 7   | 1.182 | 0.119 | 1.882 |
| 8   | 1.099 | 0.185 | 1.815 |
| 9   | 1.032 | 0.239 | 1.761 |
| 10  | 0.975 | 0.284 | 1.716 |

$$UCL_S = \bar{\bar{X}} + A_3 \bar{S}$$

$$CL_S = \bar{\bar{S}}$$

$$LCL_S = \bar{\bar{X}} - A_3 \bar{S}$$

$$UCL_X = B_4 \bar{S}$$

$$CL_X = \bar{\bar{X}}$$

$$LCL_X = B_3 \bar{S}$$

## Approximations

The following table and equations may be used to generate initial approximations of the items indicated.

| $n$ | $c_4$  | $d_2$ | $d_3$ |
|-----|--------|-------|-------|
| 2   | 0.7979 | 1.128 | 0.853 |
| 3   | 0.8862 | 1.693 | 0.888 |
| 4   | 0.9213 | 2.059 | 0.880 |
| 5   | 0.9400 | 2.326 | 0.864 |
| 6   | 0.9515 | 2.534 | 0.848 |
| 7   | 0.9594 | 2.704 | 0.833 |
| 8   | 0.9650 | 2.847 | 0.820 |
| 9   | 0.9693 | 2.970 | 0.808 |
| 10  | 0.9727 | 3.078 | 0.797 |

$$\hat{\sigma} = \bar{R} / d_2$$

$$\hat{\sigma} = \bar{S} / c_4$$

$$\sigma_R = d_3 \hat{\sigma}$$

$$\sigma_S = \hat{\sigma} \sqrt{1 - c_4^2}$$

where

$\hat{\sigma}$  = an estimate of  $\sigma$

$\sigma_R$  = an estimate of the standard deviation of the ranges of the samples

$\sigma_S$  = an estimate of the standard deviation of the standard deviations of the samples

## Tests for Out of Control

1. A single point falls outside the (three sigma) control limits.
2. Two out of three successive points fall on the same side of and more than two sigma units from the center line.
3. Four out of five successive points fall on the same side of and more than one sigma unit from the center line.
4. Eight successive points fall on the same side of the center line.

Probability and Density Functions: Means and Variances

| Variable             | Equation                                                                                                                                         | Mean                                         | Variance                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Binomial Coefficient | $\binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$                                                                                                             |                                              |                                                                                                                             |
| Binomial             | $b(x; n, p) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}$                                                                                                      | $np$                                         | $np(1-p)$                                                                                                                   |
| Hyper Geometric      | $h(x; n, r, N) = \binom{r}{x} \frac{\binom{N-r}{n-x}}{\binom{N}{n}}$                                                                             | $\frac{nr}{N}$                               | $\frac{r(N-r)n(N-n)}{N^2(N-1)}$                                                                                             |
| Poisson              | $f(x; \lambda) = \frac{\lambda^x e^{-\lambda}}{x!}$                                                                                              | $\lambda$                                    | $\lambda$                                                                                                                   |
| Geometric            | $g(x; p) = p(1-p)^{x-1}$                                                                                                                         | $1/p$                                        | $(1-p)/p^2$                                                                                                                 |
| Negative Binomial    | $f(y; r, p) = \binom{y+r-1}{r-1} p^r (1-p)^y$                                                                                                    | $r/p$                                        | $r(1-p)/p^2$                                                                                                                |
| Multinomial          | $f(x_1, \dots, x_k) = \frac{n!}{x_1! \dots x_k!} p_1^{x_1} \dots p_k^{x_k}$                                                                      | $np_i$                                       | $np_i(1-p_i)$                                                                                                               |
| Uniform              | $f(x) = 1/(b-a)$                                                                                                                                 | $(a+b)/2$                                    | $(b-a)^2/12$                                                                                                                |
| Gamma                | $f(x) = \frac{x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x/\beta}}{\beta^\alpha \Gamma(\alpha)}$ ; $\alpha > 0, \beta > 0$                                                 | $\alpha\beta$                                | $\alpha\beta^2$                                                                                                             |
| Exponential          | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\beta} e^{-x/\beta}$                                                                                                            | $\beta$                                      | $\beta^2$                                                                                                                   |
| Weibull              | $f(x) = \frac{\alpha}{\beta} x^{\alpha-1} e^{-x^\alpha/\beta}$                                                                                   | $\beta^{1/\alpha} \Gamma[(\alpha+1)/\alpha]$ | $\beta^{2/\alpha} \left[ \Gamma\left(\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha}\right) - \Gamma^2\left(\frac{\alpha+1}{\alpha}\right) \right]$ |
| Normal               | $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$                                                         | $\mu$                                        | $\sigma^2$                                                                                                                  |
| Triangular           | $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{2(x-a)}{(b-a)(m-a)} & \text{if } a \leq x \leq m \\ \frac{2(b-x)}{(b-a)(b-m)} & \text{if } m < x \leq b \end{cases}$ | $\frac{a+b+m}{3}$                            | $\frac{a^2 + b^2 + m^2 - ab - am - bm}{18}$                                                                                 |

## Chemistry and Biology

### Definitions

*Avogadro's Number* – The number of elementary particles in a mol of a substance.

$$1 \text{ mol} = 1 \text{ gram mole}$$

$$1 \text{ mol} = 6.02 \times 10^{23} \text{ particles}$$

*Molarity of Solutions* – The number of gram moles of a substance dissolved in a liter of solution.

*Molality of Solutions* – The number of gram moles of a substance per 1,000 grams of solvent.

*Normality of Solutions* – The product of the molarity of a solution and the number of valence changes taking place in a reaction.

*Molar Volume of an Ideal Gas* [at 0°C (32°F) and 1 atm (14.7 psia)]; 22.4 L/(g mole) [359 ft<sup>3</sup>/(lb mole)].

$$K_{EQ} = \frac{[C]^c [D]^d}{[A]^a [B]^b}$$

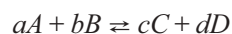
where  $[x]$  is the thermodynamic activity of  $x$  unless otherwise noted

$[x]$  = concentration of  $x$  in dilute solution, or

= partial pressure of  $x$ , or

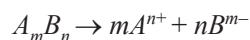
= 1 for solids and liquids

*Equilibrium Constant of a Chemical Reaction*



*Heats of Reaction, Solution, Formation, and Combustion* – Chemical processes generally involve the absorption or evolution of heat. In an endothermic process, heat is absorbed (enthalpy change is positive). In an exothermic process, heat is evolved (enthalpy change is negative).

*Solubility Product* of a slightly soluble substance  $AB$ :



*Solubility Product Constant*  $= K_{SP} = [A^+]^m [B^-]^n$

*Faraday's Equation*

$$m = \left( \frac{Q}{F} \right) \left( \frac{M}{z} \right)$$

where

$m$  = mass (grams) of substance liberated at electrode

$Q$  = total electric charge passed through electrolyte (coulomb or ampere•second)

$F$  = 96,485 coulombs/mol

$M$  = molar mass of the substance (g/mol)

$z$  = valence number

A *catalyst* is a substance that alters the rate of a chemical reaction. The catalyst does not affect the position of equilibrium of a reversible reaction.

The *atomic number* is the number of protons in the atomic nucleus.

*Boiling Point Elevation* – The presence of a nonvolatile solute in a solvent raises the boiling point of the resulting solution.

*Freezing Point Depression* – The presence of a solute lowers the freezing point of the resulting solution.

### Nernst Equation

$$\Delta E = (E_2^0 - E_1^0) - \frac{RT}{nF} \ln \left[ \frac{M_1^{n+}}{M_2^{n+}} \right]$$

where

$E_1^0$  = half-cell potential (volts)

$R$  = ideal gas constant (J/kmol•K) [Note: 1 J = (1 volt)(1 coulomb)]

$n$  = number of electrons participating in either half-cell reaction (dimensionless)

$T$  = absolute temperature (K)

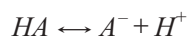
$M_1^{n+}$  and  $M_2^{n+}$  = molar ion concentration (mol/L of solution)

### Acids, Bases, and pH (aqueous solutions)

$$\text{pH} = \log_{10} \left( \frac{1}{[H^+]} \right)$$

where

$[H^+]$  = molar concentration of hydrogen ion, in gram moles per liter. Acids have  $\text{pH} < 7$ . Bases have  $\text{pH} > 7$ .



$$K_a = \frac{[A^-][H^+]}{[HA]}$$

$$\text{p}K_a = -\log(K_a)$$

For water  $[H^+][OH^-] = 10^{-14}$

[ ] denotes molarity

### Bioconversion

Aerobic Biodegradation of Glucose with No Product, Ammonia Nitrogen Source, Cell Production Only, where Respiration Quotient (RQ) = 1.1



Substrate

Cells

For the above conditions, one finds that:

$$a = 1.94$$

$$b = 0.77$$

$$c = 3.88$$

$$d = 2.13$$

$$e = 3.68$$

The  $c$  coefficient represents a theoretical maximum yield coefficient, which may be reduced by a yield factor.

The respiratory quotient (RQ) is a dimensionless number used in calculations of basal metabolic rate when estimated from the ratio of  $CO_2$  produced to the  $O_2$  consumed. The RQ depends on substrates and organisms involved.

Anaerobic Biodegradation of Organic Wastes, Incomplete Stabilization

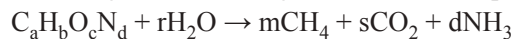


$$s = a - nw - m$$

$$r = c - ny - 2s$$

Knowledge of product composition, yield coefficient ( $n$ ) and a methane/ $CO_2$  ratio is needed.

### Anaerobic Biodegradation of Organic Wastes, Complete Stabilization



$$r = \frac{4a - b - 2c + 3d}{4}$$

$$s = \frac{4a - b + 2c + 3d}{8}$$

$$m = \frac{4a + b - 2c - 3d}{8}$$

## Photosynthesis

Photosynthesis is a most important process form synthesizing glucose from carbon dioxide. It also produces oxygen. The most important photosynthesis reaction is summarized as follows.



The light is required to be in the 400- to 700-nm range (visible light). Chlorophyll is the primary photosynthesis compound and it is found in organisms ranging from tree and plant leaves to single celled algae.

## Instrumental Methods of Analysis

| Method                                    | Qualitative |           | Quantitative |           |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|
|                                           | Elemental   | Molecular | Elemental    | Molecular |
| Atomic absorption spectrometry            | No          | No        | Yes          | No        |
| Atomic emission spectrometry (AES)        | Yes         | No        | Yes          | No        |
| Capillary electrophoresis (CE)            | Yes         | Yes       | Yes          | Yes       |
| Electrochemistry                          | Yes         | Yes       | Yes          | Yes       |
| Gas Chromatography (GC)                   | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| ICP-mass spectrometry(ICP MS)             | Yes         | No        | Yes          | No        |
| Infrared spectroscopy (IS)                | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| Ion chromatography                        | Yes         | Yes       | Yes          | Yes       |
| Liquid chromatography (LC)                | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| Mass spectrometry (MS)                    | Yes         | Yes       | Yes          | Yes       |
| Nuclear Magnetic Resonance (NMR)          | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| Raman spectroscopy                        | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| Thermal analysis (TA)                     | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| UV and visible (UV/VIS) spectrophotometry | Yes         | Yes       | Yes          | Yes       |
| UV absorption                             | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| UV fluorescence                           | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| X-ray absorption                          | Yes         | No        | Yes          | No        |
| X-ray diffraction                         | No          | Yes       | No           | Yes       |
| X-ray fluorescence (XRF)                  | Yes         | No        | Yes          | No        |

Source: Adapted from Robinson, James W., Eileen M. Skelly Frame, George M. Frame II, *Undergraduate Instrumental Analysis*, 6th ed., p. 8.

Periodic Table of Elements

| I                  |                                                                     |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    | VIII                  |                    |                       |                    |                       |                       |                    |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1<br>H<br>1.0079   | <div>Atomic Number</div> <div>Symbol</div> <div>Atomic Weight</div> |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    | III                   |                    | IV                    | V                  | VI                    | VII                   | 2<br>He<br>4.0026  |
| 3<br>Li<br>6.941   |                                                                     |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    | 4<br>Be<br>9.0122     | 5<br>B<br>10.811   | 6<br>C<br>12.011      | 7<br>N<br>14.007   | 8<br>O<br>15.999      | 9<br>F<br>18.998      | 10<br>Ne<br>20.179 |
| 11<br>Na<br>22.990 |                                                                     |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    | 12<br>Mg<br>24.305    | 13<br>Al<br>26.981 | 14<br>Si<br>28.086    | 15<br>P<br>30.974  | 16<br>S<br>32.066     | 17<br>Cl<br>35.453    | 18<br>Ar<br>39.948 |
| 19<br>K<br>39.098  | 20<br>Ca<br>40.078                                                  | 21<br>Sc<br>44.956 | 22<br>Ti<br>47.88  | 23<br>V<br>50.941  | 24<br>Cr<br>51.996 | 25<br>Mn<br>54.938 | 26<br>Fe<br>55.847 | 27<br>Co<br>58.933 | 28<br>Ni<br>58.69  | 29<br>Cu<br>63.546 | 30<br>Zn<br>65.39  | 31<br>Ga<br>69.723    | 32<br>Ge<br>72.61  | 33<br>As<br>74.921    | 34<br>Se<br>78.96  | 35<br>Br<br>79.904    | 36<br>Kr<br>83.80     |                    |
| 37<br>Rb<br>85.468 | 38<br>Sr<br>87.62                                                   | 39<br>Y<br>88.906  | 40<br>Zr<br>91.224 | 41<br>Nb<br>92.906 | 42<br>Mo<br>95.94  | 43<br>Tc<br>(98)   | 44<br>Ru<br>101.07 | 45<br>Rh<br>102.91 | 46<br>Pd<br>106.42 | 47<br>Ag<br>107.87 | 48<br>Cd<br>112.41 | 49<br>In<br>114.82    | 50<br>Sn<br>118.71 | 51<br>Sb<br>121.75    | 52<br>Te<br>127.60 | 53<br>I<br>126.90     | 54<br>Xe<br>131.29    |                    |
| 55<br>Cs<br>132.91 | 56<br>Ba<br>137.33                                                  | 57–71              | 72<br>Hf<br>178.49 | 73<br>Ta<br>180.95 | 74<br>W<br>183.85  | 75<br>Re<br>186.21 | 76<br>Os<br>190.2  | 77<br>Ir<br>192.22 | 78<br>Pt<br>195.08 | 79<br>Au<br>196.97 | 80<br>Hg<br>200.59 | 81<br>Tl<br>204.38    | 82<br>Pb<br>207.2  | 83<br>Bi<br>208.98    | 84<br>Po<br>(209)  | 85<br>At<br>(210)     | 86<br>Rn<br>(222)     |                    |
| 87<br>Fr<br>(223)  | 88<br>Ra<br>226.02                                                  | 89–103             | 104<br>Rf<br>(261) | 105<br>Db<br>(262) | 106<br>Sg<br>(266) | 107<br>Bh<br>(264) | 108<br>Hs<br>(269) | 109<br>Mt<br>(268) | 110<br>Ds<br>(269) | 111<br>Rg<br>(272) | 112<br>Cn<br>(277) | 113<br>Uut<br>unknown | 114<br>Fl<br>(289) | 115<br>Uup<br>unknown | 116<br>Lv<br>(298) | 117<br>Uus<br>unknown | 118<br>Uuo<br>unknown |                    |

|                   |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| Lanthanide Series | 57<br>La<br>138.91 | 58<br>Ce<br>140.12 | 59<br>Pr<br>140.91 | 60<br>Nd<br>144.24 | 61<br>Pm<br>(145)  | 62<br>Sm<br>150.36 | 63<br>Eu<br>151.96 | 64<br>Gd<br>157.25 | 65<br>Tb<br>158.92 | 66<br>Dy<br>162.50 | 67<br>Ho<br>164.93 | 68<br>Er<br>167.26 | 69<br>Tm<br>168.93 | 70<br>Yb<br>173.04 | 71<br>Lu<br>174.97 |
|                   | 89<br>Ac<br>227.03 | 90<br>Th<br>232.04 | 91<br>Pa<br>231.04 | 92<br>U<br>238.03  | 93<br>Np<br>237.05 | 94<br>Pu<br>(244)  | 95<br>Am<br>(243)  | 96<br>Cm<br>(247)  | 97<br>Bk<br>(247)  | 98<br>Cf<br>(251)  | 99<br>Es<br>(252)  | 100<br>Fm<br>(257) | 101<br>Md<br>(258) | 102<br>No<br>(259) | 103<br>Lr<br>(260) |

## Selected Rules of Nomenclature in Organic Chemistry

### Alcohols

Three systems of nomenclature are in general use. In the first, the alkyl group attached to the hydroxyl group is named and the separate word *alcohol* is added. In the second system, the higher alcohols are considered as derivatives of the first member of the series, which is called *carbinol*. The third method is the modified Geneva system in which (1) the longest carbon chain containing the hydroxyl group determines the surname, (2) the ending *e* of the corresponding saturated hydrocarbon is replaced by *ol*, (3) the carbon chain is numbered from the end that gives the hydroxyl group the smaller number, and (4) the side chains are named and their positions indicated by the proper number. Alcohols in general are divided into three classes. In *primary* alcohols the hydroxyl group is united to a primary carbon atom, that is, a carbon atom united directly to only one other carbon atom. *Secondary* alcohols have the hydroxyl group united to a secondary carbon atom, that is, one united to two other carbon atoms. *Tertiary* alcohols have the hydroxyl group united to a tertiary carbon atom, that is, one united to three other carbon atoms.

### Ethers

Ethers are generally designated by naming the alkyl groups and adding the word *ether*. The group RO is known as an *alkoxyl group*. Ethers may also be named as alkoxy derivatives of hydrocarbons.

### Carboxylic Acids

The name of each linear carboxylic acid is unique to the number of carbon atoms it contains. 1: (one carbon atom) Formic. 2: Acetic. 3: Propionic. 4: Butyric. 5: Valeric. 6: Caproic. 7: Enanthic. 8: Caprylic. 9: Pelargonic. 10: Capric.

### Aldehydes

The common names of aldehydes are derived from the acids that would be formed on oxidation, that is, the acids having the same number of carbon atoms. In general the *ic acid* is dropped and *aldehyde* added.

### Ketones

The common names of ketones are derived from the acid which on pyrolysis would yield the ketone. A second method, especially useful for naming mixed ketones, simply names the alkyl groups and adds the word *ketone*. The name is written as three separate words.

### Unsaturated Acyclic Hydrocarbons

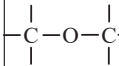
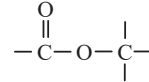
The simplest compounds in this class of hydrocarbon chemicals are olefins or alkenes with a single carbon-carbon double bond, having the general formula of  $C_nH_{2n}$ . The simplest example in this category is ethylene,  $C_2H_4$ .

Dienes are acyclic hydrocarbons with two carbon-carbon double bonds, having the general formula of  $C_nH_{2n-2}$ ; butadiene ( $C_4H_6$ ) is an example of such.

Similarly, trienes have three carbon-carbon double bonds with the general formula of  $C_nH_{2n-4}$ ; hexatriene ( $C_6H_8$ ) is such an example.

The simplest alkynes have a single carbon-carbon triple bond with the general formula of  $C_nH_{2n-2}$ . This series of compounds begins with acetylene, or  $C_2H_2$ .

## Important Families of Organic Compounds

|                         | FAMILY                          |                                                                                                    |                           |                                                                                   |                                                                                     |                                                                                      |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |                                                                                       |
|-------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                         | Alkane                          | Alkene                                                                                             | Alkyne                    | Arene                                                                             | Haloalkane                                                                          | Alcohol                                                                              | Ether                                                                                 | Amine                                                                                 | Aldehyde                                                                              | Ketone                                                                                | Carboxylic Acid                                                                       | Ester                                                                                 |
| <b>Specific Example</b> | CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>3</sub> | H <sub>2</sub> C = CH <sub>2</sub>                                                                 | HC ≡ CH                   |  | CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> Cl                                                  | CH <sub>3</sub> CH <sub>2</sub> OH                                                   | CH <sub>3</sub> OCH <sub>3</sub>                                                      | CH <sub>3</sub> NH <sub>2</sub>                                                       | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CH} \end{array}$          | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{CCH}_3 \end{array}$       | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COH} \end{array}$         | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{CH}_3\text{COCH}_3 \end{array}$      |
| <b>IUPAC Name</b>       | Ethane                          | Ethene<br>or<br>Ethylene                                                                           | Ethyne<br>or<br>Acetylene | Benzene                                                                           | Chloroethane                                                                        | Ethanol                                                                              | Methoxy-<br>methane                                                                   | Methan-<br>amine                                                                      | Ethanal                                                                               | Acetone                                                                               | Ethanoic<br>Acid                                                                      | Methyl<br>ethanoate                                                                   |
| <b>Common Name</b>      | Ethane                          | Ethylene                                                                                           | Acetylene                 | Benzene                                                                           | Ethyl<br>chloride                                                                   | Ethyl alcohol                                                                        | Dimethyl<br>ether                                                                     | Methyl-<br>amine                                                                      | Acetal-<br>dehyde                                                                     | Dimethyl<br>ketone                                                                    | Acetic Acid                                                                           | Methyl<br>acetate                                                                     |
| <b>General Formula</b>  | RH                              | RCH = CH <sub>2</sub><br>RCH = CHR<br>R <sub>2</sub> C = CHR<br>R <sub>2</sub> C = CR <sub>2</sub> | RC ≡ CH<br>RC ≡ CR        | ArH                                                                               | RX                                                                                  | ROH                                                                                  | ROR                                                                                   | RNH <sub>2</sub><br>R <sub>2</sub> NH<br>R <sub>3</sub> N                             | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCH} \end{array}$                    | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{R}_1\text{CR}_2 \end{array}$         | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCOH} \end{array}$                   | $\begin{array}{c} \text{O} \\ \parallel \\ \text{RCOR} \end{array}$                   |
| <b>Functional Group</b> | C-H<br>and<br>C-C<br>bonds      |                 | -C ≡ C-                   | Aromatic<br>Ring                                                                  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |

**Common Names and Molecular Formulas of Some Industrial  
(Inorganic and Organic) Chemicals**

| Common Name   | Chemical Name              | Molecular Formula   |
|---------------|----------------------------|---------------------|
| Muriatic acid | Hydrochloric acid          | HCl                 |
| Cumene        | Isopropyl benzene          | $C_6H_5CH(CH_3)_2$  |
| Styrene       | Vinyl benzene              | $C_6H_5CH=CH_2$     |
| —             | Hypochlorite ion           | $OCI^{-1}$          |
| —             | Chlorite ion               | $ClO_2^{-1}$        |
| —             | Chlorate ion               | $ClO_3^{-1}$        |
| —             | Perchlorate ion            | $ClO_4^{-1}$        |
| Gypsum        | Calcium sulfate            | $CaSO_4$            |
| Limestone     | Calcium carbonate          | $CaCO_3$            |
| Dolomite      | Magnesium carbonate        | $MgCO_3$            |
| Bauxite       | Aluminum oxide             | $Al_2O_3$           |
| Anatase       | Titanium dioxide           | $TiO_2$             |
| Rutile        | Titanium dioxide           | $TiO_2$             |
| —             | Vinyl chloride             | $CH_2=CHCl$         |
| —             | Ethylene oxide             | $C_2H_4O$           |
| Pyrite        | Ferrous sulfide            | FeS                 |
| Epsom salt    | Magnesium sulfate          | $MgSO_4$            |
| Hydroquinone  | p-Dihydroxy benzene        | $C_6H_4(OH)_2$      |
| Soda ash      | Sodium carbonate           | $Na_2CO_3$          |
| Salt          | Sodium chloride            | NaCl                |
| Potash        | Potassium carbonate        | $K_2CO_3$           |
| Baking soda   | Sodium bicarbonate         | $NaHCO_3$           |
| Lye           | Sodium hydroxide           | NaOH                |
| Caustic soda  | Sodium hydroxide           | NaOH                |
| —             | Vinyl alcohol              | $CH_2=CHOH$         |
| Carbolic acid | Phenol                     | $C_6H_5OH$          |
| Aniline       | Aminobenzene               | $C_6H_5NH_2$        |
| —             | Urea                       | $(NH_2)_2CO$        |
| Toluene       | Methyl benzene             | $C_6H_5CH_3$        |
| Xylene        | Dimethyl benzene           | $C_6H_4(CH_3)_2$    |
| —             | Silane                     | $SiH_4$             |
| —             | Ozone                      | $O_3$               |
| Neopentane    | 2,2-Dimethylpropane        | $CH_3C(CH_3)_2CH_3$ |
| Magnetite     | Ferrous/ferric oxide       | $Fe_3O_4$           |
| Quicksilver   | Mercury                    | Hg                  |
| Heavy water   | Deuterium oxide            | $^2H_2O$            |
| —             | Borane                     | $BH_3$              |
| Eyewash       | Boric acid (solution)      | $H_3BO_3$           |
| —             | Deuterium                  | $^2H$               |
| —             | Tritium                    | $^3H$               |
| Laughing gas  | Nitrous oxide              | $N_2O$              |
| —             | Phosgene                   | $COCl_2$            |
| Wolfram       | Tungsten                   | W                   |
| —             | Permanganate ion           | $MnO_4^{-1}$        |
| —             | Dichromate ion             | $Cr_2O_7^{-2}$      |
| —             | Hydronium ion              | $H_3O^{+1}$         |
| Brine         | Sodium chloride (solution) | NaCl                |
| Battery acid  | Sulfuric acid              | $H_2SO_4$           |

## Electrochemistry

*Cathode* – The electrode at which reduction occurs.

*Anode* – The electrode at which oxidation occurs.

*Oxidation* – The loss of electrons.

*Reduction* – The gaining of electrons.

*Cation* – Positive ion

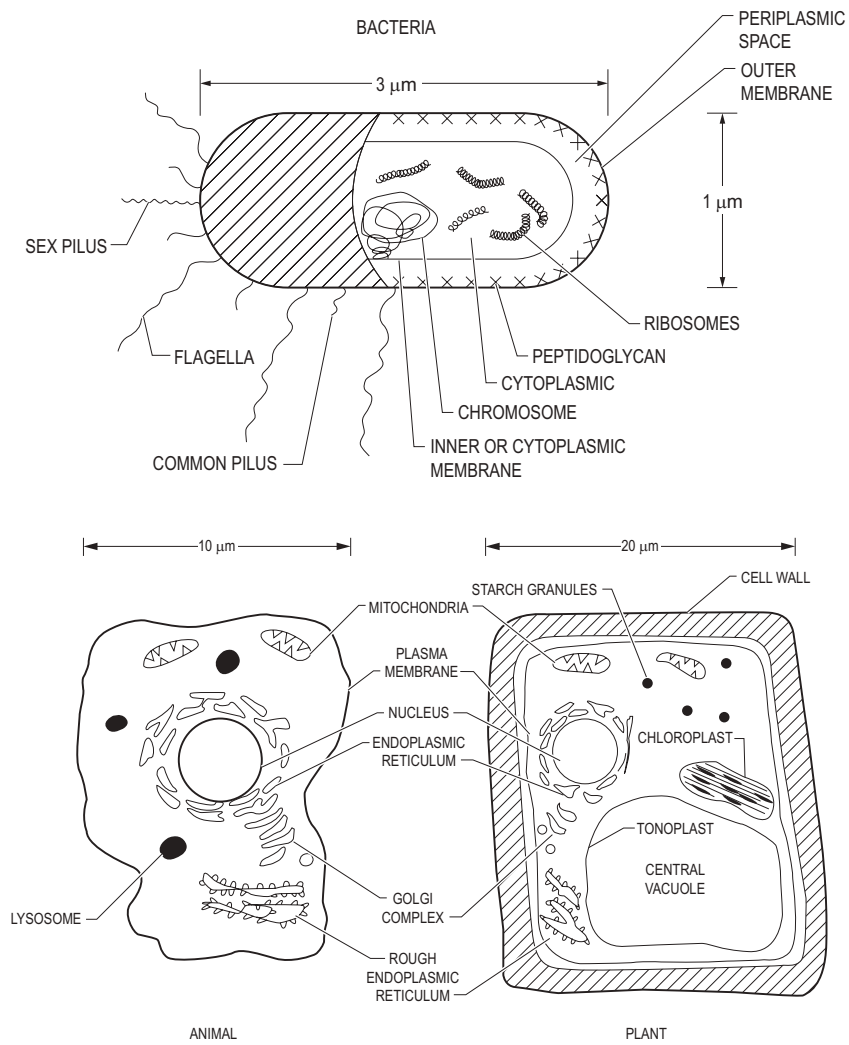
*Anion* – Negative ion

| Standard Oxidation Potentials for Corrosion Reactions*                                                        |                                                           |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| Corrosion Reaction                                                                                            | Potential, $E_o$ , Volts<br>vs. Normal Hydrogen Electrode |
| $\text{Au} \rightarrow \text{Au}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$                                                          | -1.498                                                    |
| $2\text{H}_2\text{O} \rightarrow \text{O}_2 + 4\text{H}^+ + 4\text{e}^-$                                      | -1.229                                                    |
| $\text{Pt} \rightarrow \text{Pt}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | -1.200                                                    |
| $\text{Pd} \rightarrow \text{Pd}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | -0.987                                                    |
| $\text{Ag} \rightarrow \text{Ag}^+ + \text{e}^-$                                                              | -0.799                                                    |
| $2\text{Hg} \rightarrow \text{Hg}_2^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                       | -0.788                                                    |
| $\text{Fe}^{2+} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{3+} + \text{e}^-$                                                      | -0.771                                                    |
| $4(\text{OH})^- \rightarrow \text{O}_2 + 2\text{H}_2\text{O} + 4\text{e}^-$                                   | -0.401                                                    |
| $\text{Cu} \rightarrow \text{Cu}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | -0.337                                                    |
| $\text{Sn}^{2+} \rightarrow \text{Sn}^{4+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                     | -0.150                                                    |
| $\text{H}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{H}^+ + 2\text{e}^-$                                                            | 0.000                                                     |
| $\text{Pb} \rightarrow \text{Pb}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.126                                                    |
| $\text{Sn} \rightarrow \text{Sn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.136                                                    |
| $\text{Ni} \rightarrow \text{Ni}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.250                                                    |
| $\text{Co} \rightarrow \text{Co}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.277                                                    |
| $\text{Cd} \rightarrow \text{Cd}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.403                                                    |
| $\text{Fe} \rightarrow \text{Fe}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.440                                                    |
| $\text{Cr} \rightarrow \text{Cr}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.744                                                    |
| $\text{Zn} \rightarrow \text{Zn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +0.763                                                    |
| $\text{Al} \rightarrow \text{Al}^{3+} + 3\text{e}^-$                                                          | +1.662                                                    |
| $\text{Mg} \rightarrow \text{Mg}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^-$                                                          | +2.363                                                    |
| $\text{Na} \rightarrow \text{Na}^+ + \text{e}^-$                                                              | +2.714                                                    |
| $\text{K} \rightarrow \text{K}^+ + \text{e}^-$                                                                | +2.925                                                    |
| * Measured at 25°C. Reactions are written as anode half-cells.<br>Arrows are reversed for cathode half-cells. |                                                           |

Source: Flinn, Richard A., and Paul K. Trojan, *Engineering Materials and Their Applications*, 4th ed., Houghton Mifflin Company, 1990.

NOTE: In some chemistry texts, the reactions and the signs of the values (in this table) are reversed; for example, the half-cell potential of zinc is given as -0.763 volt for the reaction  $\text{Zn}^{2+} + 2\text{e}^- \rightarrow \text{Zn}$ . When the potential  $E_o$  is positive, the reaction proceeds spontaneously as written.

## Cellular Biology



Source: Shuler, Michael L., & Fikret Kargi, *Bioprocess Engineering Basic Concepts*, Prentice Hall PTR, New Jersey, 1992.

## Statics

### Force (Two Dimensions)

A *force* is a *vector* quantity. It is defined when its (1) magnitude, (2) point of application, and (3) direction are known.

The vector form of a force is

$$\mathbf{F} = F_x \mathbf{i} + F_y \mathbf{j}$$

### Resultant (Two Dimensions)

The *resultant*,  $F$ , of  $n$  forces with components  $F_{x,i}$  and  $F_{y,i}$  has the magnitude of

$$F = \left[ \left( \sum_{i=1}^n F_{x,i} \right)^2 + \left( \sum_{i=1}^n F_{y,i} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

The resultant direction with respect to the  $x$ -axis is

$$\theta = \arctan \left( \sum_{i=1}^n F_{y,i} / \sum_{i=1}^n F_{x,i} \right)$$

### Resolution of a Force

$$\begin{aligned} F_x &= F \cos \theta_x & F_y &= F \cos \theta_y & F_z &= F \cos \theta_z \\ \cos \theta_x &= F_x / F & \cos \theta_y &= F_y / F & \cos \theta_z &= F_z / F \end{aligned}$$

Separating a force into components when the geometry of force is known and  $R = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$

$$F_x = (x/R)F \quad F_y = (y/R)F \quad F_z = (z/R)F$$

### Moments (Couples)

A system of two forces that are equal in magnitude, opposite in direction, and parallel to each other is called a *couple*. A *moment*  $\mathbf{M}$  is defined as the cross product of the *radius vector*  $\mathbf{r}$  and the *force*  $\mathbf{F}$  from a point to the line of action of the force.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{M} &= \mathbf{r} \times \mathbf{F} \\ M_x &= yF_z - zF_y \\ M_y &= zF_x - xF_z \\ M_z &= xF_y - yF_x \end{aligned}$$

### Systems of Forces

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{F} &= \sum \mathbf{F}_n \\ \mathbf{M} &= \sum (\mathbf{r}_n \times \mathbf{F}_n) \end{aligned}$$

### Equilibrium Requirements

$$\begin{aligned} \sum \mathbf{F}_n &= 0 \\ \sum \mathbf{M}_n &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

## Centroids of Masses, Areas, Lengths, and Volumes

The following formulas are for discrete masses, areas, lengths, and volumes:

$$\mathbf{r}_c = \Sigma m_n \mathbf{r}_n / \Sigma m_n$$

where

$m_n$  = mass of each particle making up the system

$\mathbf{r}_n$  = radius vector to each particle from a selected reference point

$\mathbf{r}_c$  = radius vector to the centroid of the total mass from the selected reference point

The *moment of area* ( $M_a$ ) is defined as

$$M_{ay} = \Sigma x_n a_n$$

$$M_{ax} = \Sigma y_n a_n$$

The *centroid of area* is defined as

$$x_{ac} = M_{ay} / A = \Sigma x_n a_n / A$$

$$y_{ac} = M_{ax} / A = \Sigma y_n a_n / A$$

where  $A = \Sigma a_n$

The following equations are for an area, bounded by the axes and the function  $y = f(x)$ . The centroid of area is defined as

$$x_c = \frac{\int x dA}{A}$$

$$y_c = \frac{\int y dA}{A}$$

$$A = \int f(x) dx$$

$$dA = f(x) dx = g(y) dy$$

The *first moment of area* with respect to the  $y$ -axis and the  $x$ -axis, respectively, are:

$$M_y = \int x dA = x_c A$$

$$M_x = \int y dA = y_c A$$

## Moment of Inertia

The *moment of inertia*, or the second moment of area, is defined as

$$I_y = \int x^2 dA$$

$$I_x = \int y^2 dA$$

The *polar moment of inertia*  $J$  of an area about a point is equal to the sum of the moments of inertia of the area about any two perpendicular axes in the area and passing through the same point.

$$\begin{aligned} I_z &= J = I_y + I_x = \int (x^2 + y^2) dA \\ &= r_p^2 A \end{aligned}$$

where  $r_p$  = the radius of gyration (as defined below)

### Moment of Inertia Parallel Axis Theorem

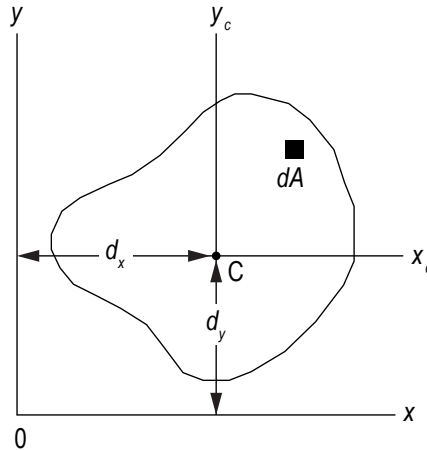
The moment of inertia of an area about any axis is defined as the moment of inertia of the area about a parallel centroidal axis plus a term equal to the area multiplied by the square of the perpendicular distance  $d$  from the centroidal axis to the axis in question.

$$I_x = I_{x_c} + d_y^2 A$$

$$I_y = I_{y_c} + d_x^2 A$$

where

- $d_x, d_y$  = distance between the two axes in question  
 $I_{x_c}, I_{y_c}$  = moment of inertia about the centroidal axis  
 $I_x, I_y$  = moment of inertia about the new axis



Source: Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics: Statics and Dynamics*, 10 ed., Pearson Prentice Hall, 2004.

## Radius of Gyration

The *radius of gyration*  $r_p, r_x, r_y$  is the distance from a reference axis at which all of the area can be considered to be concentrated to produce the moment of inertia.

$$r_x = \sqrt{I_x / A} \quad r_y = \sqrt{I_y / A} \quad r_p = \sqrt{J / A}$$

## Product of Inertia

The *product of inertia* ( $I_{xy}$ , etc.) is defined as:

$$I_{xy} = \int xy dA, \text{ with respect to the } xy\text{-coordinate system}$$

The *parallel-axis theorem* also applies:

$$I'_{xy} = I_{x_c y_c} + d_x d_y A \text{ for the } xy\text{-coordinate system, etc.}$$

where

- $d_x$  = x-axis distance between the two axes in question  
 $d_y$  = y-axis distance between the two axes in question

## Friction

The largest frictional force is called the *limiting friction*.

Any further increase in applied forces will cause motion.

$$F \leq \mu_s N$$

where

- $F$  = friction force  
 $\mu_s$  = coefficient of static friction  
 $N$  = normal force between surfaces in contact

## Screw Thread

For a *screw-jack, square thread*,

$$M = Pr \tan (\alpha \pm \phi)$$

where

+ is for screw tightening

– is for screw loosening

$M$  = external moment applied to axis of screw

$P$  = load on jack applied along and on the line of the axis

$r$  = mean thread radius

$\alpha$  = pitch angle of the thread

$\mu = \tan \phi$  = appropriate coefficient of friction

## Belt Friction

$$F_1 = F_2 e^{\mu \theta}$$

where

$F_1$  = force being applied in the direction of impending motion

$F_2$  = force applied to resist impending motion

$\mu$  = coefficient of static friction

$\theta$  = total angle of contact between the surfaces expressed in radians

## Statically Determinate Truss

A zero-force member in a plane truss is a member which supports no loading. In general, if only two members form a truss joint and no external load or support reaction is applied to the joint, the members must be zero-force members; or if three members form a truss joint for which two of the members are collinear, the third member is a zero-force member provided no external force or support reaction is applied to the joint.

### Plane Truss: Method of Joints

The method consists of solving for the forces in the members by writing the two equilibrium equations for each joint of the truss.

$$\Sigma F_H = 0 \text{ and } \Sigma F_V = 0$$

where

$F_H$  = horizontal forces and member components

$F_V$  = vertical forces and member components

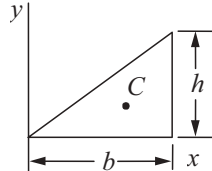
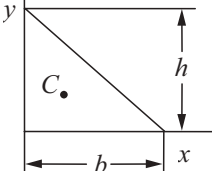
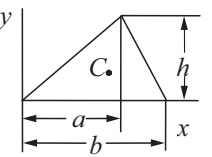
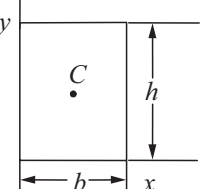
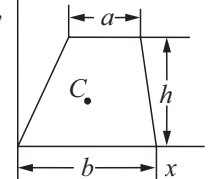
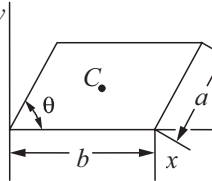
### Plane Truss: Method of Sections

The method consists of drawing a free-body diagram of a portion of the truss in such a way that the unknown truss member force is exposed as an external force.

## Concurrent Forces

A concurrent-force system is one in which the lines of action of the applied forces all meet at one point.

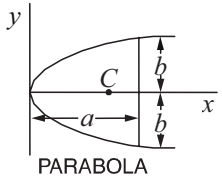
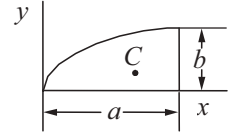
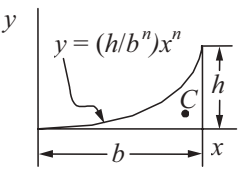
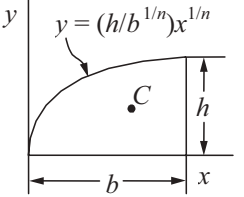
A *two-force* body in static equilibrium has two applied forces that are equal in magnitude, opposite in direction, and collinear.

| Figure                                                                              | Area & Centroid                                                                    | Area Moment of Inertia                                                                                                                                                                                                              | (Radius of Gyration) <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                          | Product of Inertia                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | $A = bh/2$<br>$x_c = 2b/3$<br>$y_c = h/3$                                          | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$<br>$I_{y_c} = b^3h/36$<br>$I_x = bh^3/12$<br>$I_y = b^3h/4$                                                                                                                                                     | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/18$<br>$r_x^2 = h^2/6$<br>$r_y^2 = b^2/2$                                                                                                         | $I_{x_c y_c} = Abh/36 = b^2 h^2 / 72$<br>$I_{xy} = Abh/4 = b^2 h^2 / 8$                                         |
|    | $A = bh/2$<br>$x_c = b/3$<br>$y_c = h/3$                                           | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$<br>$I_{y_c} = b^3h/36$<br>$I_x = bh^3/12$<br>$I_y = b^3h/12$                                                                                                                                                    | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/18$<br>$r_x^2 = h^2/6$<br>$r_y^2 = b^2/6$                                                                                                         | $I_{x_c y_c} = -Abh/36 = -b^2 h^2 / 72$<br>$I_{xy} = Abh/12 = b^2 h^2 / 24$                                     |
|    | $A = bh/2$<br>$x_c = (a + b)/3$<br>$y_c = h/3$                                     | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/36$<br>$I_{y_c} = [bh(b^2 - ab + a^2)]/36$<br>$I_x = bh^3/12$<br>$I_y = [bh(b^2 + ab + a^2)]/12$                                                                                                                    | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/18$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = (b^2 - ab + a^2)/18$<br>$r_x^2 = h^2/6$<br>$r_y^2 = (b^2 + ab + a^2)/6$                                                                               | $I_{x_c y_c} = [Ah(2a - b)]/36$<br>$= [bh^2(2a - b)]/72$<br>$I_{xy} = [Ah(2a + b)]/12$<br>$= [bh^2(2a + b)]/24$ |
|    | $A = bh$<br>$x_c = b/2$<br>$y_c = h/2$                                             | $I_{x_c} = bh^3/12$<br>$I_{y_c} = b^3h/12$<br>$I_x = bh^3/3$<br>$I_y = b^3h/3$<br>$J = [bh(b^2 + h^2)]/12$                                                                                                                          | $r_{x_c}^2 = h^2/12$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = b^2/12$<br>$r_x^2 = h^2/3$<br>$r_y^2 = b^2/3$<br>$r_p^2 = (b^2 + h^2)/12$                                                                             | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = Abh/4 = b^2 h^2 / 4$                                                             |
|  | $A = h(a + b)/2$<br>$y_c = \frac{h(2a + b)}{3(a + b)}$                             | $I_{x_c} = \frac{h^3(a^2 + 4ab + b^2)}{36(a + b)}$<br>$I_x = \frac{h^3(3a + b)}{12}$                                                                                                                                                | $r_{x_c}^2 = \frac{h^2(a^2 + 4ab + b^2)}{18(a + b)}$<br>$r_x^2 = \frac{h^2(3a + b)}{6(a + b)}$                                                                                             |                                                                                                                 |
|  | $A = ab \sin \theta$<br>$x_c = (b + a \cos \theta)/2$<br>$y_c = (a \sin \theta)/2$ | $I_{x_c} = (a^3 b \sin^3 \theta)/12$<br>$I_{y_c} = [ab \sin \theta (b^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta)]/12$<br>$I_x = (a^3 b \sin^3 \theta)/3$<br>$I_y = [ab \sin \theta (b + a \cos \theta)^2]/3$<br>$- (a^2 b^2 \sin \theta \cos \theta)/6$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = (a \sin \theta)^2 / 12$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = (b^2 + a^2 \cos^2 \theta) / 12$<br>$r_x^2 = (a \sin \theta)^2 / 3$<br>$r_y^2 = (b + a \cos \theta)^2 / 3$<br>$- (ab \cos \theta) / 6$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = (a^3 b \sin^2 \theta \cos \theta) / 12$                                                          |

Source: Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, *Applied Mechanics Dynamics*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959. Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson.

| Figure               | Area & Centroid                                                                                                                                      | Area Moment of Inertia                                                                                                                                                                                                                | (Radius of Gyration) <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Product of Inertia                                               |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                      | $A = \pi a^2$<br>$x_c = a$<br>$y_c = a$                                                                                                              | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = \pi a^4 / 4$<br>$I_x = I_y = 5\pi a^4 / 4$<br>$J = \pi a^4 / 2$                                                                                                                                                  | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = a^2 / 4$<br>$r_x^2 = r_y^2 = 5a^2 / 4$<br>$r_p^2 = a^2 / 2$                                                                                                                                                  | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = A a^2$                            |
|                      | $A = \pi(a^2 - b^2)$<br>$x_c = a$<br>$y_c = a$                                                                                                       | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = \pi(a^4 - b^4) / 4$<br>$I_x = I_y = \frac{5\pi a^4}{4} - \pi a^2 b^2 - \frac{\pi b^4}{4}$<br>$J = \pi(a^4 - b^4) / 2$                                                                                            | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = (a^2 + b^2) / 4$<br>$r_x^2 = r_y^2 = (5a^2 + b^2) / 4$<br>$r_p^2 = (a^2 + b^2) / 2$                                                                                                                          | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = A a^2$<br>$= \pi a^2 (a^2 - b^2)$ |
|                      | $A = \pi a^2 / 2$<br>$x_c = a$<br>$y_c = 4a / (3\pi)$                                                                                                | $I_{x_c} = \frac{a^4(9\pi^2 - 64)}{72\pi}$<br>$I_{y_c} = \pi a^4 / 8$<br>$I_x = \pi a^4 / 8$<br>$I_y = 5\pi a^4 / 8$                                                                                                                  | $r_{x_c}^2 = \frac{a^2(9\pi^2 - 64)}{36\pi^2}$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = a^2 / 4$<br>$r_x^2 = a^2 / 4$<br>$r_y^2 = 5a^2 / 4$                                                                                                                    | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = 2a^4 / 3$                         |
| <br>CIRCULAR SECTOR  | $A = a^2 \theta$<br>$x_c = \frac{2a \sin \theta}{3 \theta}$<br>$y_c = 0$                                                                             | $I_x = a^4 (\theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta) / 4$<br>$I_y = a^4 (\theta + \sin \theta \cos \theta) / 4$                                                                                                                              | $r_x^2 = \frac{a^2 (\theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta)}{4 \theta}$<br>$r_y^2 = \frac{a^2 (\theta + \sin \theta \cos \theta)}{4 \theta}$                                                                                                | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = 0$                                |
| <br>CIRCULAR SEGMENT | $A = a^2 \left[ \theta - \frac{\sin 2\theta}{2} \right]$<br>$x_c = \frac{2a}{3} \frac{\sin^3 \theta}{\theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta}$<br>$y_c = 0$ | $I_x = \frac{A a^2}{4} \left[ 1 - \frac{2 \sin^3 \theta \cos \theta}{3\theta - 3 \sin \theta \cos \theta} \right]$<br>$I_y = \frac{A a^2}{4} \left[ 1 + \frac{2 \sin^3 \theta \cos \theta}{\theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta} \right]$ | $r_x^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ 1 - \frac{2 \sin^3 \theta \cos \theta}{3\theta - 3 \sin \theta \cos \theta} \right]$<br>$r_y^2 = \frac{a^2}{4} \left[ 1 + \frac{2 \sin^3 \theta \cos \theta}{\theta - \sin \theta \cos \theta} \right]$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = 0$                                |

Source: Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, *Applied Mechanics Dynamics*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959. Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson.

| Figure                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Area & Centroid                                                                    | Area Moment of Inertia                                                  | (Radius of Gyration) <sup>2</sup>                                          | Product of Inertia                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
|  <p>PARABOLA</p>                                                                                                      | $A = 4ab/3$<br>$x_c = 3a/5$<br>$y_c = 0$                                           | $I_{x_c} = I_x = 4ab^3/15$<br>$I_{y_c} = 16a^3b/175$<br>$I_y = 4a^3b/7$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_x^2 = b^2/5$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = 12a^2/175$<br>$r_y^2 = 3a^2/7$ | $I_{x_c y_c} = 0$<br>$I_{xy} = 0$ |
|  <p>HALF A PARABOLA</p>                                                                                               | $A = 2ab/3$<br>$x_c = 3a/5$<br>$y_c = 3b/8$                                        | $I_x = 2ab^3/15$<br>$I_y = 2ba^3/7$                                     | $r_x^2 = b^2/5$<br>$r_y^2 = 3a^2/7$                                        | $I_{xy} = Aab/4 = a^2b^2$         |
|  <p>n<sup>th</sup> DEGREE PARABOLA</p>                                                                                | $A = bh/(n+1)$<br>$x_c = \frac{n+1}{n+2}b$<br>$y_c = \frac{h}{2} \frac{n+1}{2n+1}$ | $I_x = \frac{bh^3}{3(3n+1)}$<br>$I_y = \frac{hb^3}{n+3}$                | $r_x^2 = \frac{h^2(n+1)}{3(3n+1)}$<br>$r_y^2 = \frac{n+1}{n+3}b^2$         |                                   |
|  <p>n<sup>th</sup> DEGREE PARABOLA</p>                                                                              | $A = \frac{n}{n+1}bh$<br>$x_c = \frac{n+1}{2n+1}b$<br>$y_c = \frac{n+1}{2(n+2)}h$  | $I_x = \frac{n}{3(n+3)}bh^3$<br>$I_y = \frac{n}{3n+1}b^3h$              | $r_x^2 = \frac{n+1}{3(n+1)}h^2$<br>$r_y^2 = \frac{n+1}{3n+1}b^2$           |                                   |
| Source: Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, <i>Applied Mechanics Dynamics</i> , D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959. Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson. |                                                                                    |                                                                         |                                                                            |                                   |

# Dynamics

## Common Nomenclature

- $t$  = time
- $s$  = position coordinate, measured along a curve from an origin
- $v$  = velocity
- $a$  = acceleration
- $a_n$  = normal acceleration
- $a_t$  = tangential acceleration
- $\theta$  = angular position coordinate
- $\omega$  = angular velocity
- $\alpha$  = angular acceleration
- $\Omega$  = angular velocity of  $x,y,z$  reference axis measured from the  $X,Y,Z$  reference
- $\dot{\Omega}$  = angular acceleration of  $x,y,z$  reference axis measured from the  $X,Y,Z$  reference
- $\mathbf{r}_{A/B}$  = relative position of "A" with respect to "B"
- $\mathbf{v}_{A/B}$  = relative velocity of "A" with respect to "B"
- $\mathbf{a}_{A/B}$  = relative acceleration of "A" with respect to "B"

## Particle Kinematics

Kinematics is the study of motion without consideration of the mass of, or the forces acting on, a system. For particle motion, let  $\mathbf{r}(t)$  be the position vector of the particle in an inertial reference frame. The velocity and acceleration of the particle are defined, respectively, as

$$\mathbf{v} = d\mathbf{r}/dt$$

$$\mathbf{a} = d\mathbf{v}/dt$$

where

$\mathbf{v}$  = instantaneous velocity

$\mathbf{a}$  = instantaneous acceleration

$t$  = time

## Cartesian Coordinates

$$\mathbf{r} = x\mathbf{i} + y\mathbf{j} + z\mathbf{k}$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{x}\mathbf{i} + \dot{y}\mathbf{j} + \dot{z}\mathbf{k}$$

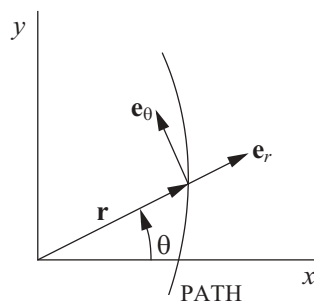
$$\mathbf{a} = \ddot{x}\mathbf{i} + \ddot{y}\mathbf{j} + \ddot{z}\mathbf{k}$$

where

$$\dot{x} = dx/dt = v_x, \text{ etc.}$$

$$\ddot{x} = d^2x/dt^2 = a_x, \text{ etc.}$$

## Radial and Transverse Components for Planar Motion



Unit vectors  $\mathbf{e}_r$  and  $\mathbf{e}_\theta$  are, respectively, collinear with and normal to the position vector  $\mathbf{r}$ . Thus:

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r$$

$$\mathbf{v} = \dot{r}\mathbf{e}_r + r\dot{\theta}\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

$$\mathbf{a} = (\ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2)\mathbf{e}_r + (r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta})\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

where

$r$  = radial position coordinate

$\theta$  = angle from the  $x$  axis to  $\mathbf{r}$

$\dot{r} = dr/dt$ , etc.

$\ddot{r} = d^2r/dt^2$ , etc.

### Particle Rectilinear Motion

| <u>Variable <math>a</math></u> | <u>Constant <math>a = a_0</math></u>    |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| $a = \frac{dv}{dt}$            | $v = v_0 + a_0 t$                       |
| $v = \frac{ds}{dt}$            | $s = s_0 + v_0 t + \frac{1}{2} a_0 t^2$ |
| $a ds = v dv$                  | $s = s_0 + \frac{1}{2} (v_0 + v) t$     |
|                                | $v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a_0 (s - s_0)$          |

### Particle Curvilinear Motion

| <u><math>x, y, z</math> Coordinates</u> | <u><math>r, \theta, z</math> Coordinates</u>                                      |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $v_x = \dot{x} \quad a_x = \ddot{x}$    | $v_r = \dot{r} \quad a_r = \ddot{r} - r\dot{\theta}^2$                            |
| $v_y = \dot{y} \quad a_y = \ddot{y}$    | $v_\theta = r\dot{\theta} \quad a_\theta = r\ddot{\theta} + 2\dot{r}\dot{\theta}$ |
| $v_z = \dot{z} \quad a_z = \ddot{z}$    | $v_z = \dot{z} \quad a_z = \ddot{z}$                                              |

$n, t, b$  Coordinates

|                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $v = \dot{s} \quad \left  \begin{array}{l} a_t = \dot{v} = \frac{dv}{dt} = v \frac{dv}{ds} \\ a_n = \frac{v^2}{\rho} \quad \rho = \frac{[1 + (dy/dx)^2]^{3/2}}{ d^2y/dx^2 } \end{array} \right.$ |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

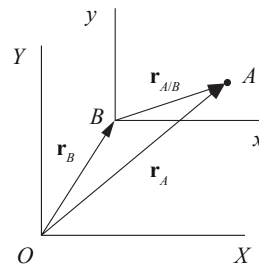
### Relative Motion

$$\mathbf{r}_A = \mathbf{r}_B + \mathbf{r}_{A/B} \quad \mathbf{v}_A = \mathbf{v}_B + \mathbf{v}_{A/B} \quad \mathbf{a}_A = \mathbf{a}_B + \mathbf{a}_{A/B}$$

#### Translating Axes $x$ - $y$

The equations that relate the absolute and relative position, velocity, and acceleration vectors of two particles  $A$  and  $B$ , in plane motion, and separated at a constant distance, may be written as

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{r}_A &= \mathbf{r}_B + \mathbf{r}_{A/B} \\ \mathbf{v}_A &= \mathbf{v}_B + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} = \mathbf{v}_B + \mathbf{v}_{A/B} \\ \mathbf{a}_A &= \mathbf{a}_B + \boldsymbol{\alpha} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B} + \boldsymbol{\omega} \times (\boldsymbol{\omega} \times \mathbf{r}_{A/B}) = \mathbf{a}_B + \mathbf{a}_{A/B} \end{aligned}$$

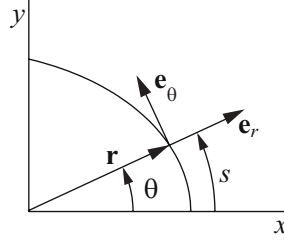


where  $\omega$  and  $\alpha$  are the absolute angular velocity and absolute angular acceleration of the relative position vector  $\mathbf{r}_{A/B}$  of constant length, respectively.

Source: Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics*, 10th ed., Prentice Hall, 2003.

## Plane Circular Motion

A special case of radial and transverse components is for constant radius rotation about the origin, or plane circular motion.



Here the vector quantities are defined as

$$\mathbf{r} = r\mathbf{e}_r$$

$$\mathbf{v} = r\omega\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

$$\mathbf{a} = (-r\omega^2)\mathbf{e}_r + r\alpha\mathbf{e}_\theta$$

where

$r$  = radius of the circle

$\theta$  = angle from the  $x$  axis to  $\mathbf{r}$

The values of the angular velocity and acceleration, respectively, are defined as

$$\omega = \dot{\theta}$$

$$\alpha = \dot{\omega} = \ddot{\theta}$$

Arc length, transverse velocity, and transverse acceleration, respectively, are

$$s = r\theta$$

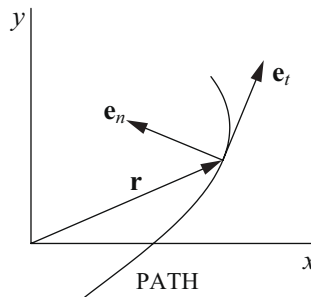
$$v_\theta = r\omega$$

$$a_\theta = r\alpha$$

The radial acceleration is given by

$$a_r = -r\omega^2 \text{ (towards the center of the circle)}$$

## Normal and Tangential Components



Unit vectors  $\mathbf{e}_t$  and  $\mathbf{e}_n$  are, respectively, tangent and normal to the path with  $\mathbf{e}_n$  pointing to the center of curvature. Thus

$$\mathbf{v} = v(t)\mathbf{e}_t$$

$$\mathbf{a} = a(t)\mathbf{e}_t + (v_t^2/\rho)\mathbf{e}_n$$

where

$\rho$  = instantaneous radius of curvature

## Constant Acceleration

The equations for the velocity and displacement when acceleration is a constant are given as

$$a(t) = a_0$$

$$v(t) = a_0 (t - t_0) + v_0$$

$$s(t) = a_0 (t - t_0)^2 / 2 + v_0 (t - t_0) + s_0$$

where

$s$  = displacement at time  $t$ , along the line of travel

$s_0$  = displacement at time  $t_0$

$v$  = velocity along the direction of travel

$v_0$  = velocity at time  $t_0$

$a_0$  = constant acceleration

$t$  = time

$t_0$  = some initial time

For a free-falling body,  $a_0 = g$  (downward towards earth).

An additional equation for velocity as a function of position may be written as

$$v^2 = v_0^2 + 2a_0(s - s_0)$$

For constant angular acceleration, the equations for angular velocity and displacement are

$$\alpha(t) = \alpha_0$$

$$\omega(t) = \alpha_0(t - t_0) + \omega_0$$

$$\theta(t) = \alpha_0(t - t_0)^2 / 2 + \omega_0(t - t_0) + \theta_0$$

where

$\theta$  = angular displacement

$\theta_0$  = angular displacement at time  $t_0$

$\omega$  = angular velocity

$\omega_0$  = angular velocity at time  $t_0$

$\alpha_0$  = constant angular acceleration

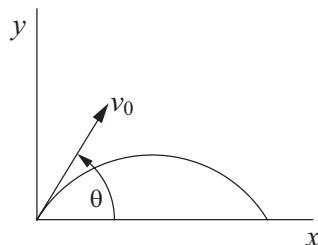
$t$  = time

$t_0$  = some initial time

An additional equation for angular velocity as a function of angular position may be written as

$$\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha_0(\theta - \theta_0)$$

## Projectile Motion



The equations for common projectile motion may be obtained from the constant acceleration equations as

$$\begin{aligned}a_x &= 0 \\v_x &= v_0 \cos(\theta) \\x &= v_0 \cos(\theta)t + x_0 \\a_y &= -g \\v_y &= -gt + v_0 \sin(\theta) \\y &= -gt^2/2 + v_0 \sin(\theta)t + y_0\end{aligned}$$

### Non-constant Acceleration

When non-constant acceleration,  $a(t)$ , is considered, the equations for the velocity and displacement may be obtained from

$$\begin{aligned}v(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t a(\tau) d\tau + v_{t_0} \\s(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t v(\tau) d\tau + s_{t_0}\end{aligned}$$

For variable angular acceleration

$$\begin{aligned}\omega(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t \alpha(\tau) d\tau + \omega_{t_0} \\\theta(t) &= \int_{t_0}^t \omega(\tau) d\tau + \theta_{t_0}\end{aligned}$$

where  $\tau$  is the variable of integration

### Concept of Weight

$$W = mg$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}W &= \text{weight (N or lbf)} \\m &= \text{mass (kg or lbf-sec}^2/\text{ft)} \\g &= \text{local acceleration of gravity (m/s}^2 \text{ or ft/sec}^2\end{aligned}$$

### Particle Kinetics

Newton's second law for a particle is

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = d(m\mathbf{v})/dt$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}\Sigma \mathbf{F} &= \text{sum of the applied forces acting on the particle} \\m &= \text{mass of the particle} \\\mathbf{v} &= \text{velocity of the particle}\end{aligned}$$

For constant mass,

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = m d\mathbf{v}/dt = m\mathbf{a}$$

### One-Dimensional Motion of a Particle (Constant Mass)

When motion exists only in a single dimension then, without loss of generality, it may be assumed to be in the  $x$  direction, and

$$a_x = F_x/m$$

where  $F_x$  = the resultant of the applied forces, which in general can depend on  $t$ ,  $x$ , and  $v_x$ .

If  $F_x$  only depends on  $t$ , then

$$a_x(t) = F_x(t)/m$$

$$v_x(t) = \int_{t_0}^t a_x(\tau) d\tau + v_{xt_0}$$

$$x(t) = \int_{t_0}^t v_x(\tau) d\tau + x_{t_0}$$

where  $\tau$  is the variable of integration.

If the force is constant (i.e., independent of time, displacement, and velocity) then

$$a_x = F_x/m$$

$$v_x = a_x(t - t_0) + v_{xt_0}$$

$$x = a_x(t - t_0)^2/2 + v_{xt_0}(t - t_0) + x_{t_0}$$

### Normal and Tangential Kinetics for Planar Problems

When working with normal and tangential directions, the scalar equations may be written as

$$\Sigma F_t = ma_t = m dv_t/dt$$

$$\Sigma F_n = ma_n = m(v_t^2/\rho)$$

### Principle of Work and Energy

If  $T_i$  and  $V_i$  are, respectively, the kinetic and potential energy of a particle at state  $i$ , then for conservative systems (no energy dissipation or gain), the law of conservation of energy is

$$T_2 + V_2 = T_1 + V_1$$

If nonconservative forces are present, then the work done by these forces must be accounted for. Hence

$$T_2 + V_2 = T_1 + V_1 + U_{1 \rightarrow 2}, \text{ where}$$

$U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$  = the work done by the nonconservative forces in moving between state 1 and state 2. Care must be exercised during computations to correctly compute the algebraic sign of the work term. If the forces serve to increase the energy of the system,  $U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$  is positive. If the forces, such as friction, serve to dissipate energy,  $U_{1 \rightarrow 2}$  is negative.

### Kinetic Energy

|                                            |                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Particle</i>                            | $T = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$                             |
| <i>Rigid Body</i><br><i>(Plane Motion)</i> | $T = \frac{1}{2}mv_c^2 + \frac{1}{2}I_c \omega^2$ |

subscript  $c$  represents the center of mass

### Potential Energy

$$V = V_g + V_e, \text{ where } V_g = Wy, V_e = 1/2 ks^2$$

The work done by an external agent in the presence of a conservative field is termed the change in potential energy.

*Potential Energy in Gravity Field*

$$V_g = mgh$$

where  $h$  = the elevation above some specified datum.

### Elastic Potential Energy

For a linear elastic spring with modulus, stiffness, or spring constant,  $k$ , the force in the spring is

$$F_s = k s$$

where  $s$  = the change in length of the spring from the undeformed length of the spring.

In changing the deformation in the spring from position  $s_1$  to  $s_2$ , the change in the potential energy stored in the spring is

$$V_2 - V_1 = k(s_2^2 - s_1^2)/2$$

### Work

Work  $U$  is defined as

$$U = \int \mathbf{F} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

$$\text{Variable force} \quad U_F = \int F \cos \theta \, ds$$

$$\text{Constant force} \quad U_F = (F_c \cos \theta) \Delta s$$

$$\text{Weight} \quad U_W = -W \Delta y$$

$$\text{Spring} \quad U_s = -\left(\frac{1}{2}k s_2^2 - \frac{1}{2}k s_1^2\right)$$

$$\text{Couple moment} \quad U_M = M \Delta \theta$$

### Power and Efficiency

$$P = \frac{dU}{dt} = \mathbf{F} \cdot \mathbf{v} \quad \epsilon = \frac{P_{\text{out}}}{P_{\text{in}}} = \frac{U_{\text{out}}}{U_{\text{in}}}$$

Source: Adapted from Hibbeler, R.C., *Engineering Mechanics*, 10th ed., Prentice Hall, 2003.

## Impulse and Momentum

### Linear Momentum

Assuming constant mass, the equation of motion of a particle may be written as

$$m d\mathbf{v}/dt = \mathbf{F}$$

$$m d\mathbf{v} = \mathbf{F} dt$$

For a system of particles, by integrating and summing over the number of particles, this may be expanded to

$$\Sigma m_i (\mathbf{v}_i)_{t_2} = \Sigma m_i (\mathbf{v}_i)_{t_1} + \Sigma \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{F}_i dt$$

The term on the left side of the equation is the linear momentum of a system of particles at time  $t_2$ . The first term on the right side of the equation is the linear momentum of a system of particles at time  $t_1$ . The second term on the right side of the equation is the impulse of the force  $\mathbf{F}$  from time  $t_1$  to  $t_2$ . It should be noted that the above equation is a vector equation. Component scalar equations may be obtained by considering the momentum and force in a set of orthogonal directions.

### Angular Momentum or Moment of Momentum

The angular momentum or the moment of momentum about point 0 for a particle is defined as

$$\mathbf{H}_0 = \mathbf{r} \times m\mathbf{v}, \text{ or}$$

$$\mathbf{H}_0 = I_0 \omega$$

Taking the time derivative of the above, the equation of motion may be written as

$$\dot{\mathbf{H}}_0 = d(I_0 \omega)/dt = \mathbf{M}_0$$

where  $\mathbf{M}_0$  is the moment applied to the particle. Now by integrating and summing over a system of any number of particles, this may be expanded to

$$\Sigma(\mathbf{H}_{0i})_{t_2} = \Sigma(\mathbf{H}_{0i})_{t_1} + \Sigma \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \mathbf{M}_{0i} dt$$

The term on the left side of the equation is the angular momentum of a system of particles at time  $t_2$ . The first term on the right side of the equation is the angular momentum of a system of particles at time  $t_1$ . The second term on the right side of the equation is the angular impulse of the moment  $\mathbf{M}_0$  from time  $t_1$  to  $t_2$ .

## Impact

During an impact, momentum is conserved while energy may or may not be conserved. For direct central impact with no external forces

$$m_1 \mathbf{v}_1 + m_2 \mathbf{v}_2 = m_1 \mathbf{v}'_1 + m_2 \mathbf{v}'_2$$

where

$m_1, m_2$  = masses of the two bodies

$\mathbf{v}_1, \mathbf{v}_2$  = velocities of the bodies just before impact

$\mathbf{v}'_1, \mathbf{v}'_2$  = velocities of the bodies just after impact

For impacts, the relative velocity expression is

$$e = \frac{(\mathbf{v}'_2)_n - (\mathbf{v}'_1)_n}{(\mathbf{v}_1)_n - (\mathbf{v}_2)_n}$$

where

$e$  = coefficient of restitution

$(\mathbf{v}_i)_n$  = velocity normal to the plane of impact just **before** impact

$(\mathbf{v}'_i)_n$  = velocity normal to the plane of impact just **after** impact

The value of  $e$  is such that

$0 \leq e \leq 1$ , with limiting values

$e = 1$ , perfectly elastic (energy conserved)

$e = 0$ , perfectly plastic (no rebound)

Knowing the value of  $e$ , the velocities after the impact are given as

$$(\mathbf{v}'_1)_n = \frac{m_2 (\mathbf{v}_2)_n (1 + e) + (m_1 - em_2) (\mathbf{v}_1)_n}{m_1 + m_2}$$

$$(\mathbf{v}'_2)_n = \frac{m_1 (\mathbf{v}_1)_n (1 + e) - (em_1 - m_2) (\mathbf{v}_2)_n}{m_1 + m_2}$$

## Friction

The Laws of Friction are

1. The total friction force  $F$  that can be developed is independent of the magnitude of the area of contact.
2. The total friction force  $F$  that can be developed is proportional to the normal force  $N$ .
3. For low velocities of sliding, the total frictional force that can be developed is practically independent of the sliding velocity, although experiments show that the force  $F$  necessary to initiate slip is greater than that necessary to maintain the motion.

The formula expressing the Laws of Friction is

$$F \leq \mu N$$

where  $\mu$  = the coefficient of friction.

In general

$$F < \mu_s N, \text{ no slip occurring}$$

$$F = \mu_s N, \text{ at the point of impending slip}$$

$$F = \mu_k N, \text{ when slip is occurring}$$

Here,

$$\mu_s = \text{coefficient of static friction}$$

$$\mu_k = \text{coefficient of kinetic friction}$$

## Plane Motion of a Rigid Body (Equations of Motion)

In general, Newton's second law for a rigid body, with constant mass and mass moment of inertia, in plane motion may be written in vector form as

$$\Sigma \mathbf{F} = m \mathbf{a}_c$$

$$\Sigma \mathbf{M}_c = I_c \boldsymbol{\alpha}$$

$$\Sigma \mathbf{M}_p = I_c \boldsymbol{\alpha} + \boldsymbol{\rho}_{pc} \times m \mathbf{a}_c$$

where  $\mathbf{F}$  are forces and  $\mathbf{a}_c$  is the acceleration of the body's mass center both in the plane of motion,  $\mathbf{M}_c$  are moments and  $\boldsymbol{\alpha}$  is the angular acceleration both about an axis normal to the plane of motion,  $I_c$  is the mass moment of inertia about the normal axis through the mass center, and  $\boldsymbol{\rho}_{pc}$  is a vector from point p to point c.

## Kinematics of a Rigid Body

### Rigid Body Rotation About a Fixed Axis

| Variable $\alpha$                 | Constant $\alpha = \alpha_0$                                |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| $\alpha = \frac{d\omega}{dt}$     | $\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha_0 t$                            |
| $\omega = \frac{d\theta}{dt}$     | $\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \frac{1}{2} \alpha_0 t^2$ |
| $\omega d\omega = \alpha d\theta$ | $\omega^2 = \omega_0^2 + 2\alpha_0(\theta - \theta_0)$      |

For rotation about some arbitrary fixed axis  $q$

$$\Sigma M_q = I_q \alpha$$

For rotation about the longitudinal axis of a shaft

$$\Sigma T = I \alpha$$

where

$$I = \text{mass moment of inertia about the axis of rotation}$$

$$\alpha = \text{angular acceleration about the axis of rotation}$$

$$T = \text{torque about the axis of rotation}$$

If the applied moment acting about the fixed axis is constant then integrating with respect to time, from  $t = 0$  yields

$$\alpha = M_q / I_q$$

$$\omega = \omega_0 + \alpha t$$

$$\theta = \theta_0 + \omega_0 t + \alpha t^2 / 2$$

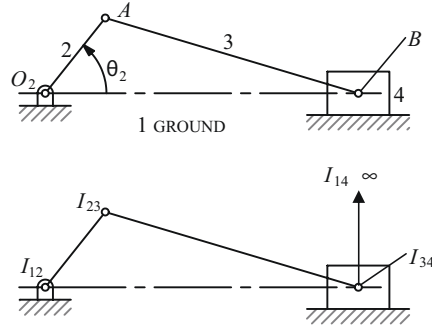
where  $\omega_0$  and  $\theta_0$  are the values of angular velocity and angular displacement at time  $t = 0$ , respectively.

The change in kinetic energy is the work done in accelerating the rigid body from  $\omega_0$  to  $\omega$

$$I_q \omega^2 / 2 = I_q \omega_0^2 / 2 + \int_{\theta_0}^{\theta} M_q d\theta$$

### Instantaneous Center of Rotation (Instant Centers)

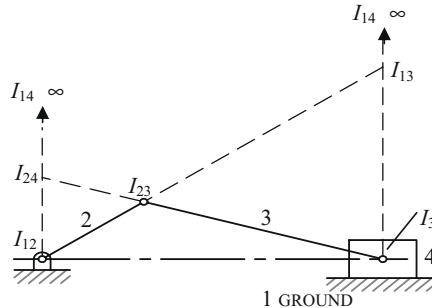
An instantaneous center of rotation (instant center) is a point, common to two bodies, at which each has the same velocity (magnitude and direction) at a given instant. It is also a point in space about which a body rotates, instantaneously.



The figure shows a fourbar slider-crank. Link 2 (the crank) rotates about the fixed center,  $O_2$ . Link 3 couples the crank to the slider (link 4), which slides against ground (link 1). Using the definition of an instant center (IC), we see that the pins at  $O_2$ ,  $A$ , and  $B$  are ICs that are designated  $I_{12}$ ,  $I_{23}$ , and  $I_{34}$ . The easily observable IC is  $I_{14}$ , which is located at infinity with its direction perpendicular to the interface between links 1 and 4 (the direction of sliding). To locate the remaining two ICs (for a fourbar) we must make use of Kennedy's rule.

*Kennedy's Rule: When three bodies move relative to one another they have three instantaneous centers, all of which lie on the same straight line.*

To apply this rule to the slider-crank mechanism, consider links 1, 2, and 3 whose ICs are  $I_{12}$ ,  $I_{23}$ , and  $I_{13}$ , all of which lie on a straight line. Consider also links 1, 3, and 4 whose ICs are  $I_{13}$ ,  $I_{34}$ , and  $I_{14}$ , all of which lie on a straight line. Extending the line through  $I_{12}$  and  $I_{23}$  and the line through  $I_{34}$  and  $I_{14}$  to their intersection locates  $I_{13}$ , which is common to the two groups of links that were considered.



Similarly, if body groups 1, 2, 4 and 2, 3, 4 are considered, a line drawn through known ICs  $I_{12}$  and  $I_{14}$  to the intersection of a line drawn through known ICs  $I_{23}$  and  $I_{34}$  locates  $I_{24}$ .

The number of ICs,  $c$ , for a given mechanism is related to the number of links,  $n$ , by

$$c = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$$

### Mass Moment of Inertia

The definitions for the mass moments of inertia are

$$I_x = \int (y^2 + z^2) dm$$

$$I_y = \int (x^2 + z^2) dm$$

$$I_z = \int (x^2 + y^2) dm$$

$$I = \int r^2 dm$$

A table listing moment of inertia formulas for some standard shapes is at the end of this section.

### Parallel-Axis Theorem

The mass moments of inertia may be calculated about any axis through the application of the above definitions. However, once the moments of inertia have been determined about an axis passing through a body's mass center, it may be transformed to another parallel axis. The transformation equation is

$$I_{\text{new}} = I_c + md^2$$

where

$I_{\text{new}}$  = mass moment of inertia about any specified axis

$I_c$  = mass moment of inertia about an axis that is parallel to the above specified axis but passes through the body's mass center

$m$  = mass of the body

$d$  = normal distance from the body's mass center to the above-specified axis

### Mass Radius of Gyration

The mass radius of gyration is defined as

$$r_m = \sqrt{I/m}$$

Without loss of generality, the body may be assumed to be in the  $x$ - $y$  plane. The scalar equations of motion may then be written as

$$\Sigma F_x = ma_{xc}$$

$$\Sigma F_y = ma_{yc}$$

$$\Sigma M_{zc} = I_{zc} \alpha$$

where  $zc$  indicates the  $z$  axis passing through the body's mass center,  $a_{xc}$  and  $a_{yc}$  are the acceleration of the body's mass center in the  $x$  and  $y$  directions, respectively, and  $\alpha$  is the angular acceleration of the body about the  $z$  axis.

### Kinetic Energy

In general the kinetic energy for a rigid body may be written as

$$T = mv^2/2 + I_c \omega^2/2$$

For motion in the  $xy$  plane this reduces to

$$T = m(v_{cx}^2 + v_{cy}^2)/2 + I_c \omega_z^2/2$$

For motion about an instant center,

$$T = I_{IC} \omega^2/2$$

### **Principle of Angular Impulse and Momentum**

|                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>Rigid Body</i><br><i>(Plane Motion)</i> | $(\mathbf{H}_c)_1 + \Sigma \int \mathbf{M}_c dt = (\mathbf{H}_c)_2$<br>where $\mathbf{H}_c = I_c \omega$<br>$(\mathbf{H}_o)_1 + \Sigma \int \mathbf{M}_o dt = (\mathbf{H}_o)_2$<br>where $\mathbf{H}_o = I_o \omega$ |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

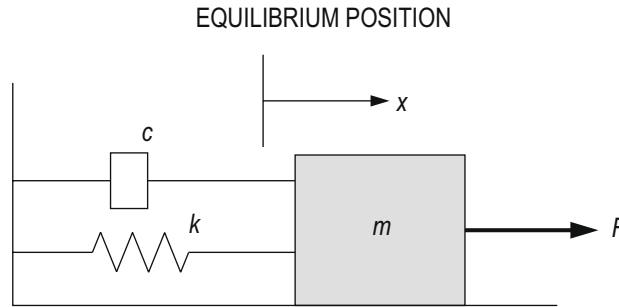
Subscript  $c$  indicates center of mass.

### **Conservation of Angular Momentum**

$$\Sigma(\text{syst. } \mathbf{H})_1 = \Sigma(\text{syst. } \mathbf{H})_2$$

## Free and Forced Vibration

A single degree-of-freedom vibration system, containing a mass  $m$ , a spring  $k$ , a viscous damper  $c$ , and an external applied force  $F$  can be diagrammed as shown:



The equation of motion for the displacement of  $x$  is:

$$m\ddot{x} = -kx - c\dot{x} + F$$

or in terms of  $x$ ,

$$m\ddot{x} + c\dot{x} + kx = F$$

One can define

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{\frac{k}{m}}$$

$$\zeta = \frac{c}{2\sqrt{km}}$$

$$K = \frac{1}{k}$$

Then:

$$\frac{1}{\omega_n^2}\ddot{x} + \frac{2\zeta}{\omega_n}\dot{x} + x = KF$$

If the externally applied force is 0, this is a free vibration, and the motion of  $x$  is solved as the solution to a homogeneous ordinary differential equation.

The solution in this case with zero damping ( $\zeta = 0$ ) may be written in terms of the initial conditions  $x(0) = x_0$  and  $\dot{x}(0) = \dot{x}_0$  as  $x(t) = x_0 \cos(\omega_n t) + \dot{x}_0 \sin(\omega_n t)$ .

In a forced vibration system, the externally applied force  $F$  is typically periodic (for example,  $F = F_0 \sin \omega t$ ). The solution is the sum of the homogeneous solution and a particular solution.

For forced vibrations, one is typically interested in the steady-state behavior (i.e. a long time after the system has started), which is the particular solution.

For  $F = F_0 \sin \omega t$ , the particular solution is:

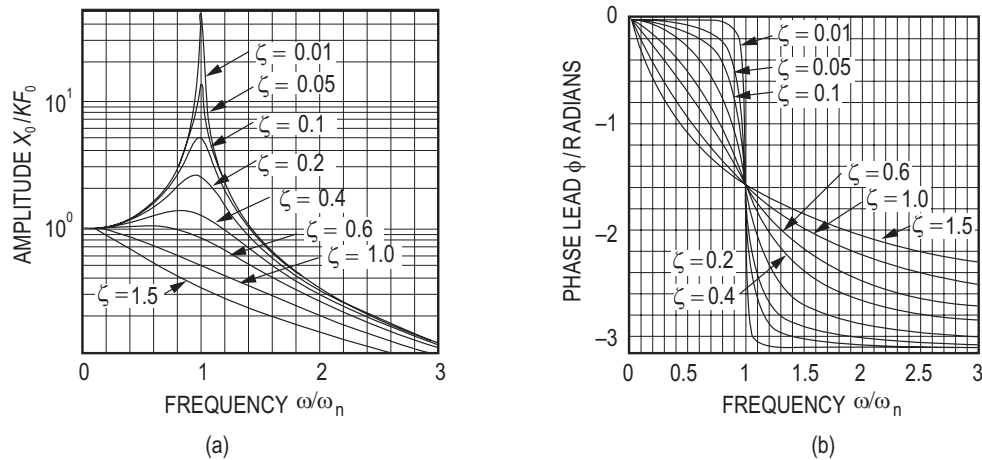
$$x(t) = X_0 \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

where

$$X_0 = \frac{KF_0}{\sqrt{\left(1 - \frac{\omega^2}{\omega_n^2}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2\zeta\omega}{\omega_n}\right)^2}}$$

$$\phi = \tan^{-1} \frac{-\frac{2\zeta\omega}{\omega_n}}{1 - \frac{\omega^2}{\omega_n^2}}$$

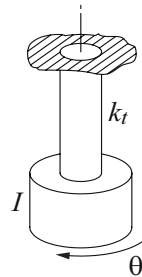
The following figures provide illustrative plots of relative amplitude and phase, depending on  $\omega$  and  $\omega_n$ .



Steady-state vibration of a force spring-mass system (a) amplitude (b) phase.

Source: From Brown University School of Engineering, Introduction to Dynamics and Vibrations, as posted on [www.brown.edu/Departments/Engineering/Courses/En4/Notes/vibrations\\_forced/vibrations\\_forced.htm](http://www.brown.edu/Departments/Engineering/Courses/En4/Notes/vibrations_forced/vibrations_forced.htm), April 2019.

## Torsional Vibration



For torsional free vibrations it may be shown that the differential equation of motion is

$$\ddot{\theta} + (k_t/I)\theta = 0$$

where

$\theta$  = angular displacement of the system

$k_t$  = torsional stiffness of the massless rod

$I$  = mass moment of inertia of the end mass

The solution may now be written in terms of the initial conditions  $\theta(0) = \theta_0$  and  $\dot{\theta}(0) = \dot{\theta}_0$  as

$$\theta(t) = \theta_0 \cos(\omega_n t) + (\dot{\theta}_0/\omega_n) \sin(\omega_n t)$$

where the undamped natural circular frequency is given by

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{k_t/I}$$

The torsional stiffness of a solid round rod with associated polar moment-of-inertia  $J$ , length  $L$ , and shear modulus of elasticity  $G$  is given by

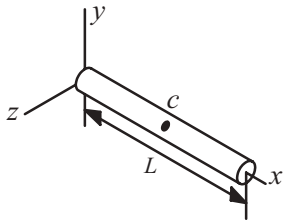
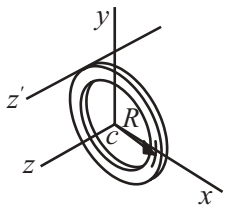
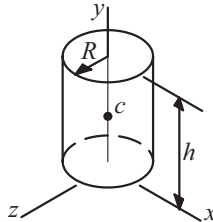
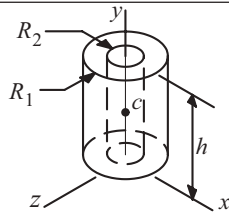
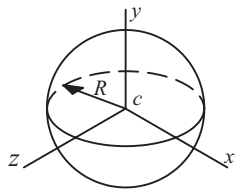
$$k_t = GJ/L$$

Thus the undamped circular natural frequency for a system with a solid round supporting rod may be written as

$$\omega_n = \sqrt{GJ/IL}$$

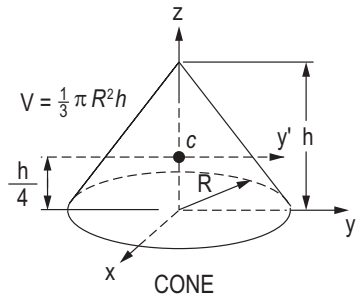
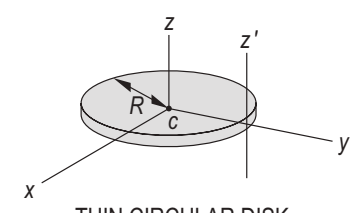
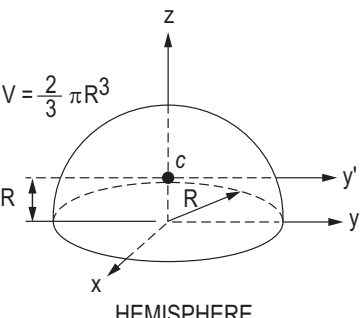
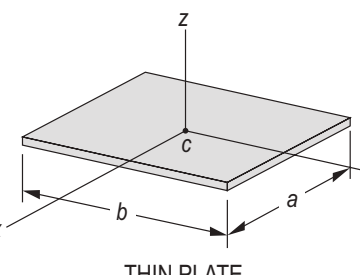
Similar to the linear vibration problem, the undamped natural period may be written as

$$\tau_n = 2\pi/\omega_n = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{\frac{k_t}{I}}} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{\frac{GJ}{IL}}}$$

| Figure                                                                              | Mass & Centroid                                                                                                                                                         | Mass Moment of Inertia                                                                                                                  | (Radius of Gyration) <sup>2</sup>                                                                                                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | $M = \rho LA$<br>$x_c = L/2$<br>$y_c = 0$<br>$z_c = 0$<br>$A$ = cross-sectional area of rod<br>$\rho$ = mass/vol.                                                       | $I_x = I_{x_c} = 0$<br>$I_{y_c} = I_{z_c} = ML^2/12$<br>$I_y = I_z = ML^2/3$                                                            | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{x_c}^2 = 0$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = L^2/12$<br>$r_y^2 = r_z^2 = L^2/3$                                                       |
|    | $M = \rho_s A$<br>$x_c = R$ = mean radius <sup>1</sup><br>$y_c = R$ = mean radius <sup>1</sup><br>$z_c = 0$<br>$A$ = cross-sectional area of ring<br>$\rho$ = mass/area | $I_{x_c} = I_{y_c} = MR^2/2$<br>$I_{z_c} = MR^2$<br>$I_x = I_y = 3MR^2/2$<br>$I_{z'} = 2MR^2$                                           | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{y_c}^2 = R^2/2$<br>$r_{z_c}^2 = R^2$<br>$r_x^2 = r_y^2 = 3R^2/2$<br>$r_{z'}^2 = 3R^2$                                            |
|   | $M = \pi R^2 \rho h$<br>$x_c = 0$<br>$y_c = h/2$<br>$z_c = 0$<br>$\rho$ = mass/vol.                                                                                     | $I_{x_c} = I_{z_c} = M(3R^2 + h^2)/12$<br>$I_{y_c} = I_y = MR^2/2$<br>$I_x = I_z = M(3R^2 + 4h^2)/12$                                   | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = (3R^2 + h^2)/12$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = R^2/2$<br>$r_x^2 = r_z^2 = (3R^2 + 4h^2)/12$                                   |
|  | $M = \pi(R_1^2 - R_2^2)\rho h$<br>$x_c = 0$<br>$y_c = h/2$<br>$z_c = 0$<br>$\rho$ = mass/vol.                                                                           | $I_{x_c} = I_{z_c} = M(3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + h^2)/12$<br>$I_{y_c} = I_y = M(R_1^2 + R_2^2)/2$<br>$I_x = I_z = M(3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + 4h^2)/12$ | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_{z_c}^2 = (3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + h^2)/12$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = (R_1^2 + R_2^2)/2$<br>$r_x^2 = r_z^2 = (3R_1^2 + 3R_2^2 + 4h^2)/12$ |
|  | $M = \frac{4}{3}\pi R^3 \rho$<br>$x_c = 0$<br>$y_c = 0$<br>$z_c = 0$<br>$\rho$ = mass/vol.                                                                              | $I_{x_c} = I_x = 2MR^2/5$<br>$I_{y_c} = I_y = 2MR^2/5$<br>$I_{z_c} = I_z = 2MR^2/5$                                                     | $r_{x_c}^2 = r_x^2 = 2R^2/5$<br>$r_{y_c}^2 = r_y^2 = 2R^2/5$<br>$r_{z_c}^2 = r_z^2 = 2R^2/5$                                                     |

<sup>1</sup> Mean radius is radius to centerline of thin wall.

Source: Adapted from Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, *Applied Mechanics Dynamics*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959.  
Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson.

| Figure                                                                                                      | Mass & Centroid                                                                                | Mass Moment of Inertia                                                                                                            | (Radius of Gyration) <sup>2</sup>                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|  <p>CONE</p>               | $M = \frac{1}{3} \pi R^2 h \rho$ $x_c = y_c = 0$ $z_c = \frac{h}{4}$ $\rho = \text{mass/vol.}$ | $I_{x'x'} = I_{y'y'} = \frac{3}{80} M (4R^2 + h^2)$ $I_{zz} = \frac{3}{10} MR^2$ $I_{yy} = I_{xx} = \frac{1}{20} M (3R^2 + 2h^2)$ | $r_{xx}^2 = r_{yy}^2 = \frac{3}{80} (4R^2 + h^2)$ $r_{zz}^2 = \frac{3}{10} R^2$                     |
|  <p>THIN CIRCULAR DISK</p> | $M = \pi R^2 \rho_s$ $x_c = y_c = z_c = 0$ $\rho_s = \text{mass/area}$                         | $I_{xx} = I_{yy} = \frac{1}{4} MR^2$ $I_{zz} = \frac{1}{2} MR^2$ $I_{z'z'} = \frac{3}{2} MR^2$                                    | $r_{xx}^2 = r_{yy}^2 = \frac{1}{4} R^2$ $r_{zz}^2 = \frac{1}{2} R^2$ $r_{z'z'}^2 = \frac{3}{2} R^2$ |
|  <p>HEMISPHERE</p>        | $M = \frac{2}{3} \pi R^3 \rho$ $x_c = y_c = 0$ $z_c = \frac{3}{8} R$ $\rho = \text{mass/vol.}$ | $I_{x'x'} = I_{y'y'} = \frac{83}{320} MR^2$ $I_{zz} = \frac{2}{5} MR^2$                                                           | $r_{xx}^2 = r_{yy}^2 = 0.259 R^2$ $r_{zz}^2 = \frac{2}{5} R^2$                                      |
|  <p>THIN PLATE</p>       | $M = ab \rho_s$ $x_c = y_c = z_c = 0$ $\rho_s = \text{mass/area}$                              | $I_{xx} = \frac{1}{12} Mb^2$ $I_{yy} = \frac{1}{12} Ma^2$ $I_{zz} = \frac{1}{12} M (a^2 + b^2)$                                   | $r_{xx}^2 = \frac{1}{12} b^2$ $r_{yy}^2 = \frac{1}{12} a^2$ $r_{zz}^2 = \frac{1}{12} (a^2 + b^2)$   |

Source: Housner, George W., and Donald E. Hudson, *Applied Mechanics Dynamics*, D. Van Nostrand Company, Inc., Princeton, NJ, 1959. Table reprinted by permission of G.W. Housner & D.E. Hudson.

# Materials Science/Structure of Matter

## Atomic Bonding

### Primary Bonds

Ionic (e.g., salts, metal oxides)

Covalent (e.g., within polymer molecules)

Metallic (e.g., metals)

## Corrosion

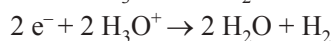
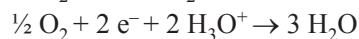
The "Standard Oxidation Potential for Corrosion Reactions" table in the Chemistry and Biology Chapter lists standard electromotive potentials of metals.

For corrosion to occur, there must be an anode and a cathode in electrical contact in the presence of an electrolyte.

### Anode Reaction (Oxidation) of a Typical Metal, M



### Possible Cathode Reactions (Reduction)



When dissimilar metals are in contact, the more electropositive one becomes the anode in a corrosion cell. Different regions of carbon steel can also result in a corrosion reaction: e.g., cold-worked regions are anodic to noncold-worked; different oxygen concentrations can cause oxygen-deficient regions to become cathodic to oxygen-rich regions; grain boundary regions are anodic to bulk grain; in multiphase alloys, various phases may not have the same galvanic potential.

## Diffusion

### Diffusion Coefficient

$$D = D_o e^{-Q/(RT)}$$

where

$D$  = diffusion coefficient

$D_o$  = proportionality constant

$Q$  = activation energy

$R$  = gas constant [8.314 J/(mol•K)]

$T$  = absolute temperature

## Thermal and Mechanical Processing

*Cold working* (plastically deforming) a metal increases strength and lowers ductility.

Raising temperature causes (1) recovery (stress relief), (2) recrystallization, and (3) grain growth. *Hot working* allows these processes to occur simultaneously with deformation.

*Quenching* is rapid cooling from elevated temperature, preventing the formation of equilibrium phases.

In steels, quenching austenite [FCC ( $\gamma$ ) iron] can result in martensite instead of equilibrium phases—ferrite [BCC ( $\alpha$ ) iron] and cementite (iron carbide).

## Properties of Materials

### Electrical

Capacitance: The charge-carrying capacity of an insulating material

Charge held by a capacitor

$$q = CV$$

where

$q$  = charge

$C$  = capacitance

$V$  = voltage

Capacitance of a parallel plate capacitor

$$C = \frac{\epsilon A}{d}$$

where

$C$  = capacitance

$\epsilon$  = permittivity of material

$A$  = cross-sectional area of the plates

$d$  = distance between the plates

$\epsilon$  is also expressed as the product of the dielectric constant ( $\kappa$ ) and the permittivity of free space ( $\epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}$  F/m)

Resistivity: The material property that determines the resistance of a resistor

Resistivity of a material within a resistor

$$\rho = \frac{RA}{L}$$

where

$\rho$  = resistivity of the material

$R$  = resistance of the resistor

$A$  = cross-sectional area of the resistor

$L$  = length of the resistor

Conductivity is the reciprocal of the resistivity

*Photoelectric effect*—electrons are emitted from matter (metals and nonmetallic solids, liquids or gases) as a consequence of their absorption of energy from electromagnetic radiation of very short wavelength and high frequency.

*Piezoelectric effect*—the electromechanical and the electrical state in crystalline materials.

## Mechanical

Strain is defined as change in length per unit length; for pure tension the following apply:

Engineering strain

$$\varepsilon = \frac{\Delta L}{L_0}$$

where

$\varepsilon$  = engineering strain

$\Delta L$  = change in length

$L_0$  = initial length

True strain

$$\varepsilon_T = \int \frac{dL}{L}$$

where

$\varepsilon_T$  = true strain

$dL$  = differential change in length

$L$  = initial length

$\varepsilon_T = \ln (1 + \varepsilon)$

**Properties of Metals**

| <b>Metal</b> | <b>Symbol</b> | <b>Atomic Weight</b> | <b>Density <math>\rho</math> (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)<br/>Water = 1000</b> | <b>Melting Point (°C)</b> | <b>Melting Point (°F)</b> | <b>Specific Heat (J/(kg·K))</b> | <b>Electrical Resistivity (10<sup>-8</sup> <math>\Omega</math>·m)<br/>at 0°C (273.2 K)</b> | <b>Heat Conductivity <math>\lambda</math> (W/(m·K))<br/>at 0°C (273.2 K)</b> |
|--------------|---------------|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aluminum     | Al            | 26.98                | 2,698                                                                | 660                       | 1,220                     | 895.9                           | 2.5                                                                                        | 236                                                                          |
| Antimony     | Sb            | 121.75               | 6,692                                                                | 630                       | 1,166                     | 209.3                           | 39                                                                                         | 25.5                                                                         |
| Arsenic      | As            | 74.92                | 5,776                                                                | subl. 613                 | subl. 1,135               | 347.5                           | 26                                                                                         | –                                                                            |
| Barium       | Ba            | 137.33               | 3,594                                                                | 710                       | 1,310                     | 284.7                           | 36                                                                                         | –                                                                            |
| Beryllium    | Be            | 9.012                | 1,846                                                                | 1,285                     | 2,345                     | 2,051.5                         | 2.8                                                                                        | 218                                                                          |
| Bismuth      | Bi            | 208.98               | 9,803                                                                | 271                       | 519                       | 125.6                           | 107                                                                                        | 8.2                                                                          |
| Cadmium      | Cd            | 112.41               | 8,647                                                                | 321                       | 609                       | 234.5                           | 6.8                                                                                        | 97                                                                           |
| Caesium      | Cs            | 132.91               | 1,900                                                                | 29                        | 84                        | 217.7                           | 18.8                                                                                       | 36                                                                           |
| Calcium      | Ca            | 40.08                | 1,530                                                                | 840                       | 1,544                     | 636.4                           | 3.2                                                                                        | –                                                                            |
| Cerium       | Ce            | 140.12               | 6,711                                                                | 800                       | 1,472                     | 188.4                           | 7.3                                                                                        | 11                                                                           |
| Chromium     | Cr            | 52                   | 7,194                                                                | 1,860                     | 3,380                     | 406.5                           | 12.7                                                                                       | 96.5                                                                         |
| Cobalt       | Co            | 58.93                | 8,800                                                                | 1,494                     | 2,721                     | 431.2                           | 5.6                                                                                        | 105                                                                          |
| Copper       | Cu            | 63.54                | 8,933                                                                | 1,084                     | 1,983                     | 389.4                           | 1.55                                                                                       | 403                                                                          |
| Gallium      | Ga            | 69.72                | 5,905                                                                | 30                        | 86                        | 330.7                           | 13.6                                                                                       | 41                                                                           |
| Gold         | Au            | 196.97               | 19,281                                                               | 1,064                     | 1,947                     | 129.8                           | 2.05                                                                                       | 319                                                                          |
| Indium       | In            | 114.82               | 7,290                                                                | 156                       | 312                       | 238.6                           | 8                                                                                          | 84                                                                           |
| Iridium      | Ir            | 192.22               | 22,550                                                               | 2,447                     | 4,436                     | 138.2                           | 4.7                                                                                        | 147                                                                          |
| Iron         | Fe            | 55.85                | 7,873                                                                | 1,540                     | 2,804                     | 456.4                           | 8.9                                                                                        | 83.5                                                                         |
| Lead         | Pb            | 207.2                | 11,343                                                               | 327                       | 620                       | 129.8                           | 19.2                                                                                       | 36                                                                           |
| Lithium      | Li            | 6.94                 | 533                                                                  | 180                       | 356                       | 4,576.2                         | 8.55                                                                                       | 86                                                                           |
| Magnesium    | Mg            | 24.31                | 1,738                                                                | 650                       | 1,202                     | 1,046.7                         | 3.94                                                                                       | 157                                                                          |
| Manganese    | Mn            | 54.94                | 7,473                                                                | 1,250                     | 2,282                     | 502.4                           | 138                                                                                        | 8                                                                            |
| Mercury      | Hg            | 200.59               | 13,547                                                               | –39                       | –38                       | 142.3                           | 94.1                                                                                       | 7.8                                                                          |
| Molybdenum   | Mo            | 95.94                | 10,222                                                               | 2,620                     | 4,748                     | 272.1                           | 5                                                                                          | 139                                                                          |
| Nickel       | Ni            | 58.69                | 8,907                                                                | 1,455                     | 2,651                     | 439.6                           | 6.2                                                                                        | 94                                                                           |
| Niobium      | Nb            | 92.91                | 8,578                                                                | 2,425                     | 4,397                     | 267.9                           | 15.2                                                                                       | 53                                                                           |
| Osmium       | Os            | 190.2                | 22,580                                                               | 3,030                     | 5,486                     | 129.8                           | 8.1                                                                                        | 88                                                                           |
| Palladium    | Pd            | 106.4                | 11,995                                                               | 1,554                     | 2,829                     | 230.3                           | 10                                                                                         | 72                                                                           |
| Platinum     | Pt            | 195.08               | 21,450                                                               | 1,772                     | 3,221                     | 134                             | 9.81                                                                                       | 72                                                                           |
| Potassium    | K             | 39.09                | 862                                                                  | 63                        | 145                       | 753.6                           | 6.1                                                                                        | 104                                                                          |
| Rhodium      | Rh            | 102.91               | 12,420                                                               | 1,963                     | 3,565                     | 242.8                           | 4.3                                                                                        | 151                                                                          |
| Rubidium     | Rb            | 85.47                | 1,533                                                                | 38.8                      | 102                       | 330.7                           | 11                                                                                         | 58                                                                           |
| Ruthenium    | Ru            | 101.07               | 12,360                                                               | 2,310                     | 4,190                     | 255.4                           | 7.1                                                                                        | 117                                                                          |
| Silver       | Ag            | 107.87               | 10,500                                                               | 961                       | 1,760                     | 234.5                           | 1.47                                                                                       | 428                                                                          |
| Sodium       | Na            | 22.989               | 966                                                                  | 97.8                      | 208                       | 1,235.1                         | 4.2                                                                                        | 142                                                                          |
| Strontium    | Sr            | 87.62                | 2,583                                                                | 770                       | 1,418                     | –                               | 20                                                                                         | –                                                                            |
| Tantalum     | Ta            | 180.95               | 16,670                                                               | 3,000                     | 5,432                     | 150.7                           | 12.3                                                                                       | 57                                                                           |
| Thallium     | Tl            | 204.38               | 11,871                                                               | 304                       | 579                       | 138.2                           | 10                                                                                         | 10                                                                           |
| Thorium      | Th            | 232.04               | 11,725                                                               | 1,700                     | 3,092                     | 117.2                           | 14.7                                                                                       | 54                                                                           |
| Tin          | Sn            | 118.69               | 7,285                                                                | 232                       | 449                       | 230.3                           | 11.5                                                                                       | 68                                                                           |
| Titanium     | Ti            | 47.88                | 4,508                                                                | 1,670                     | 3,038                     | 527.5                           | 39                                                                                         | 22                                                                           |
| Tungsten     | W             | 183.85               | 19,254                                                               | 3,387                     | 6,128                     | 142.8                           | 4.9                                                                                        | 177                                                                          |
| Uranium      | U             | 238.03               | 19,050                                                               | 1,135                     | 2,075                     | 117.2                           | 28                                                                                         | 27                                                                           |
| Vanadium     | V             | 50.94                | 6,090                                                                | 1,920                     | 3,488                     | 481.5                           | 18.2                                                                                       | 31                                                                           |
| Zinc         | Zn            | 65.38                | 7,135                                                                | 419                       | 786                       | 393.5                           | 5.5                                                                                        | 117                                                                          |
| Zirconium    | Zr            | 91.22                | 6,507                                                                | 1,850                     | 3,362                     | 284.7                           | 40                                                                                         | 23                                                                           |

Some Extrinsic, Elemental Semiconductors

| Element | Dopant | Periodic table group of dopant | Maximum solid solubility of dopant (atoms/m <sup>3</sup> ) |
|---------|--------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| Si      | B      | III A                          | $600 \times 10^{24}$                                       |
|         | Al     | III A                          | $20 \times 10^{24}$                                        |
|         | Ga     | III A                          | $40 \times 10^{24}$                                        |
|         | P      | V A                            | $1,000 \times 10^{24}$                                     |
|         | As     | V A                            | $2,000 \times 10^{24}$                                     |
|         | Sb     | V A                            | $70 \times 10^{24}$                                        |
| Ge      | Al     | III A                          | $400 \times 10^{24}$                                       |
|         | Ga     | III A                          | $500 \times 10^{24}$                                       |
|         | In     | III A                          | $4 \times 10^{24}$                                         |
|         | As     | V A                            | $80 \times 10^{24}$                                        |
|         | Sb     | V A                            | $10 \times 10^{24}$                                        |

Impurity Energy Levels for Extrinsic Semiconductors

| Semiconductor | Dopant | $E_g - E_d$ (eV) | $E_a$ (eV) |
|---------------|--------|------------------|------------|
| Si            | P      | 0.044            | —          |
|               | As     | 0.049            | —          |
|               | Sb     | 0.039            | —          |
|               | Bi     | 0.069            | —          |
|               | B      | —                | 0.045      |
|               | Al     | —                | 0.057      |
|               | Ga     | —                | 0.065      |
|               | In     | —                | 0.160      |
|               | Tl     | —                | 0.260      |
| Ge            | P      | 0.012            | —          |
|               | As     | 0.013            | —          |
|               | Sb     | 0.096            | —          |
|               | B      | —                | 0.010      |
|               | Al     | —                | 0.010      |
|               | Ga     | —                | 0.010      |
|               | In     | —                | 0.011      |
|               | Tl     | —                | 0.01       |
| GaAs          | Se     | 0.005            | —          |
|               | Te     | 0.003            | —          |
|               | Zn     | —                | 0.024      |
|               | Cd     | —                | 0.021      |

Source: Runyan, W.R., and S.B. Watelski, *Handbook of Materials and Processes for Electronics*, C.A. Harper, ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 1970.

Stress is defined as force per unit area; for pure tension the following apply:

Engineering stress

$$\sigma = \frac{F}{A_0}$$

where

$\sigma$  = engineering stress

$F$  = applied force

$A_0$  = initial cross-sectional area

True stress

$$\sigma_T = \frac{F}{A}$$

where

$\sigma_T$  = true stress

$F$  = applied force

$A$  = actual cross-sectional area

The elastic modulus (also called *modulus*, *modulus of elasticity*, *Young's modulus*) describes the relationship between engineering stress and engineering strain during elastic loading. Hooke's Law applies in such a case.

$$\sigma = E\varepsilon$$

where  $E$  = elastic modulus

Key mechanical properties obtained from a tensile test curve:

- Elastic modulus
- Ductility (also called *percent elongation*): Permanent engineering strain after failure
- Ultimate tensile strength (also called *tensile strength*): Maximum engineering stress
- Yield strength: Engineering stress at which permanent deformation is first observed, calculated by 0.2% offset method.

Other mechanical properties:

- Creep: Time-dependent deformation under load. Usually measured by strain rate. For steady-state creep this is:

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{dt} = A\sigma^n e^{-\frac{Q}{RT}}$$

where

$A$  = pre-exponential constant

$n$  = stress sensitivity

$Q$  = activation energy for creep

$R$  = ideal gas law constant

$T$  = absolute temperature

- Fatigue: Time-dependent failure under cyclic load. Fatigue life is the number of cycles to failure. The endurance limit is the stress below which fatigue failure is unlikely.

$$R = \frac{\sigma_{\min}}{\sigma_{\max}}$$

where  $R$  = stress ratio

For  $R = -1$  and high cycle fatigue, based on the Basquin equation:

$$N = \left( \frac{\sigma_r}{A} \right)^{\frac{1}{B}}$$

where

$N$  = cycles to failure

$\sigma_r$  = completely (fully) reversed stress

$A$  and  $B$  = material constants

- Fracture toughness: The combination of applied stress and the crack length in a brittle material. It is the stress intensity when the material will fail.

$$K_{IC} = Y\sigma\sqrt{\pi a}$$

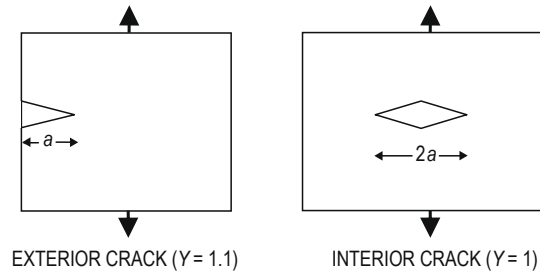
where

$K_{IC}$  = fracture toughness

$\sigma$  = applied engineering stress

$a$  = crack length

$Y$  = geometrical factor



The critical value of stress intensity at which catastrophic crack propagation occurs,  $K_{Ic}$ , is a material property.

### Representative Values of Fracture Toughness

| Material        | $K_{Ic}$ (MPa·m <sup>1/2</sup> ) | $K_{Ic}$ (ksi-in <sup>1/2</sup> ) |
|-----------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A1 2014-T651    | 24.2                             | 22                                |
| A1 2024-T3      | 44                               | 40                                |
| 52100 Steel     | 14.3                             | 13                                |
| 4340 Steel      | 46                               | 42                                |
| Alumina         | 4.5                              | 4.1                               |
| Silicon Carbide | 3.5                              | 3.2                               |

### Relationship Between Hardness and Tensile Strength

For plain carbon steels, there is an approximate relationship between Brinell hardness number (BHN) and tensile strength (TS) as follows:

$$TS(\text{psi}) \simeq 500 \text{ BHN}$$

$$TS(\text{MPa}) \simeq 3.5 \text{ BHN}$$

### ASTM Grain Size

$$S_V = 2P_L$$

$$N_{(0.0645 \text{ mm}^2)} = 2^{(n-1)}$$

$$\frac{N_{\text{actual}}}{\text{Actual Area}} = \frac{N}{(0.0645 \text{ mm}^2)}$$

where

$S_V$  = grain-boundary surface per unit volume

$P_L$  = number of points of intersection per unit length between the line and the boundaries

$N$  = number of grains observed in an area of 0.0645 mm<sup>2</sup>

$n$  = grain size (nearest integer > 1)

## Composite Materials

$$\rho_c = \sum f_i \rho_i$$

$$C_c = \sum f_i c_i$$

$$\left[ \sum \frac{f_i}{E_i} \right]^{-1} \leq E_c \leq \sum f_i E_i$$

$$\sigma_c = \sum f_i \sigma_i$$

where

$\rho_c$  = density of composite

$C_c$  = heat capacity of composite per unit volume

$E_c$  = Young's modulus of composite

$f_i$  = volume fraction of individual material

$c_i$  = heat capacity of individual material per unit volume

$E_i$  = Young's modulus of individual material

$\sigma_c$  = strength parallel to fiber direction

Also, for axially oriented, long, fiber-reinforced composites, the strains of the two components are equal.

$$(\Delta L/L)_1 = (\Delta L/L)_2$$

where

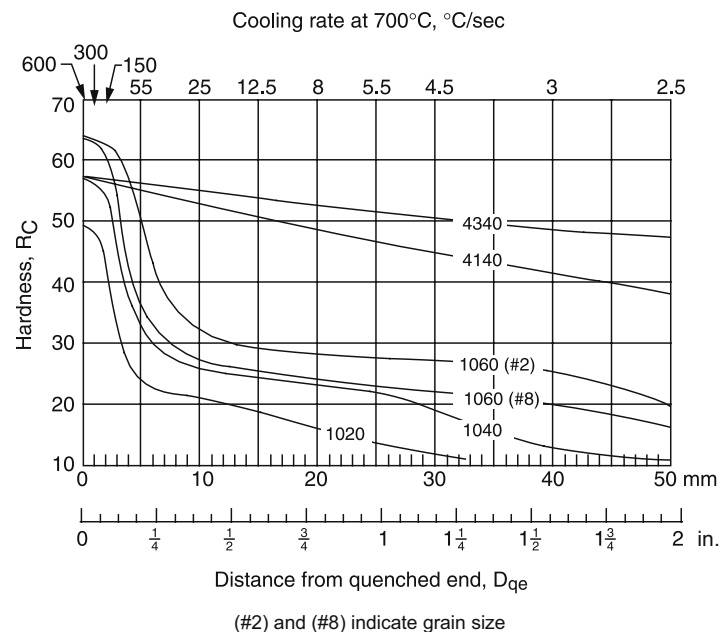
$\Delta L$  = change in length of the composite

$L$  = original length of the composite

## Hardenability

Hardness: Resistance to penetration. Measured by denting a material under known load and measuring the size of the dent.

Hardenability: The "ease" with which hardness can be obtained.



**JOMINY HARDENABILITY CURVES FOR SIX STEELS**

Source: Van Vlack, L.H., *Elements of Materials Science and Engineering*, 6th ed., ©1989. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New, New York.

The following two graphs show cooling curves for four different positions in the bar.

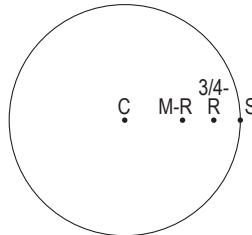
C = Center

M-R = Halfway between center and surface

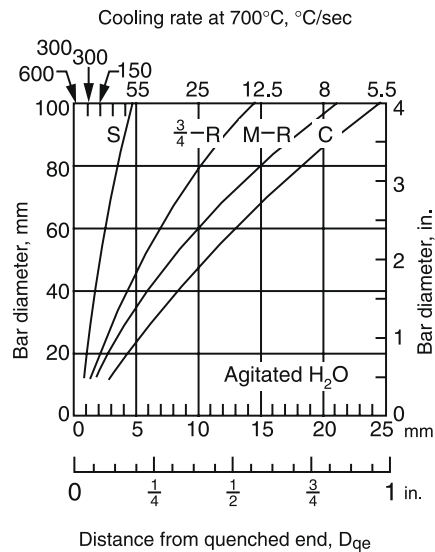
3/4-R = 75% of the distance between the center and the surface

S = Surface

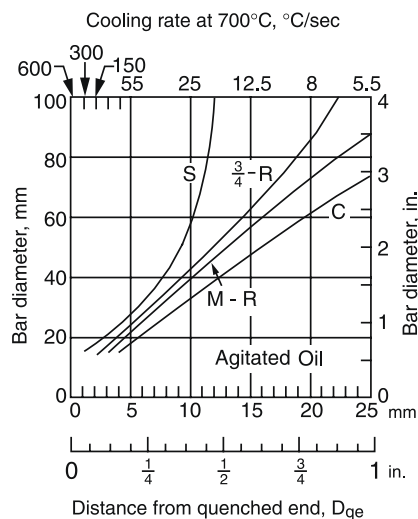
These positions are shown in the following figure.



### COOLING RATES FOR BARS QUENCHED IN AGITATED WATER



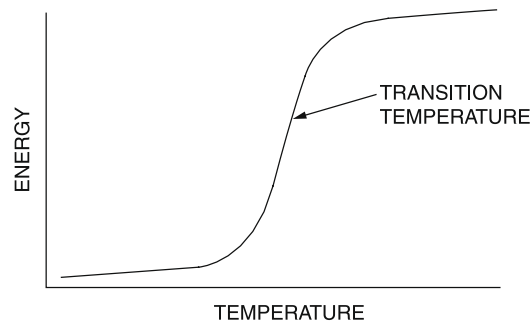
### COOLING RATES FOR BARS QUENCHED IN AGITATED OIL



Source: Van Vlack, L.H., *Elements of Materials Science and Engineering*, 6th ed., ©1989. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New, New York.

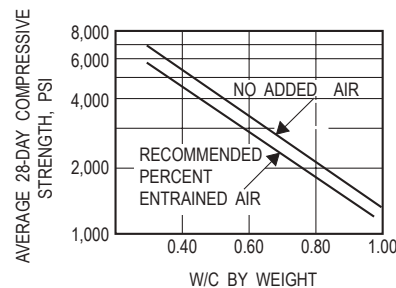
## Impact Test

The *Charpy Impact Test* is used to find energy required to fracture and to identify ductile to brittle transition.



Impact tests determine the amount of energy required to cause failure in standardized test samples. The tests are repeated over a range of temperatures to determine the *ductile to brittle transition temperature*.

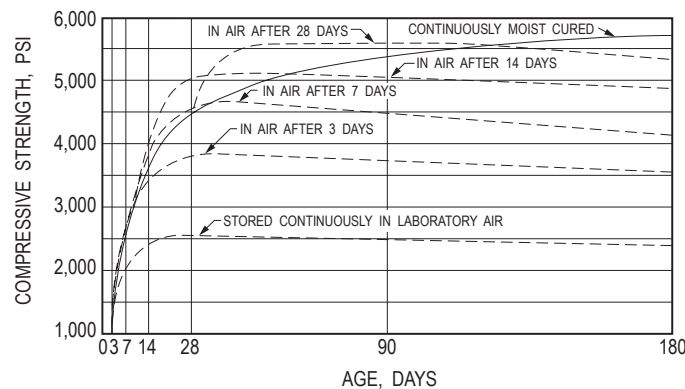
## Concrete



Concrete strength decreases with increases in water-cement ratio for concrete with and without entrained air.

Source: *Concrete Manual*, 8th ed., U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, 1975.

Water-cement (W/C) ratio is the primary factor affecting the strength of concrete. The figure above shows how W/C expressed as a ratio of weight of water and cement by weight of concrete mix affects the compressive strength of both air-entrained and non-air-entrained concrete.



Concrete compressive strength varies with moist-curing conditions. Mixes tested had a water-cement ratio of 0.50, a slump of 3.5 in., cement content of 556 lb/yd<sup>3</sup>, sand content of 36%, and air content of 4%.

Source: Merritt, Frederick S., *Standard Handbook for Civil Engineers*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1983.

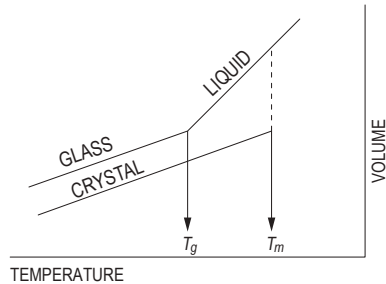
Water content affects workability. However, an increase in water without a corresponding increase in cement reduces the concrete strength. Superplasticizers are the most typical way to increase workability. Air entrainment is used to improve durability.

## Amorphous Materials

Amorphous materials such as glass are non-crystalline solids.

Thermoplastic polymers are either semicrystalline or amorphous.

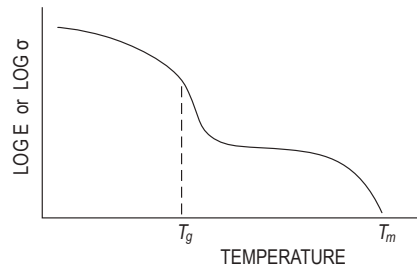
Below the glass transition temperature ( $T_g$ ) the amorphous material will be a brittle solid.



The volume temperature curve as shown above is often used to show the difference between amorphous and crystalline solids.

## Polymers

Polymers are classified as thermoplastics that can be melted and reformed or as thermosets that cannot be melted and reformed.



The above curve shows the temperature dependent strength ( $\sigma$ ) or modulus (E) for a thermoplastic polymer.

## Polymer Additives

Chemicals and compounds are added to polymers to improve properties for commercial use. These substances, such as plasticizers, improve formability during processing, while others increase strength or durability.

Examples of common additives are:

Plasticizers: vegetable oils, low molecular weight polymers or monomers

Fillers: talc, chopped glass fibers

Flame retardants: halogenated paraffins, zinc borate, chlorinated phosphates

Ultraviolet or visible light resistance: carbon black

Oxidation resistance: phenols, aldehydes

## Thermal Properties

The thermal expansion coefficient is the ratio of engineering strain to the change in temperature.

$$\alpha = \frac{\epsilon}{\Delta T}$$

where

$\alpha$  = thermal expansion coefficient

$\epsilon$  = engineering strain

$\Delta T$  = change in temperature

Specific heat is the energy required to raise the temperature of a unit mass of a material by one degree  $\left(\frac{\text{J}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}\right)$ .

Heat capacity is the energy required to raise the temperature of one mole of a material by one degree  $\left(\frac{\text{J}}{\text{mol} \cdot \text{K}}\right)$ .

Both specific heat and heat capacity can be based on constant pressure or constant volume.

Thermal diffusivity (units are area/time) is a measure of the rate of heat transfer through something. It is based on the ratio of the thermal conductivity to the heat capacity (also called *specific heat*).

## Binary Phase Diagrams

Allows determination of (1) what phases are present at equilibrium at any temperature and average composition, (2) the compositions of those phases, and (3) the fractions of those phases.

Eutectic reaction (liquid  $\rightarrow$  two solid phases)

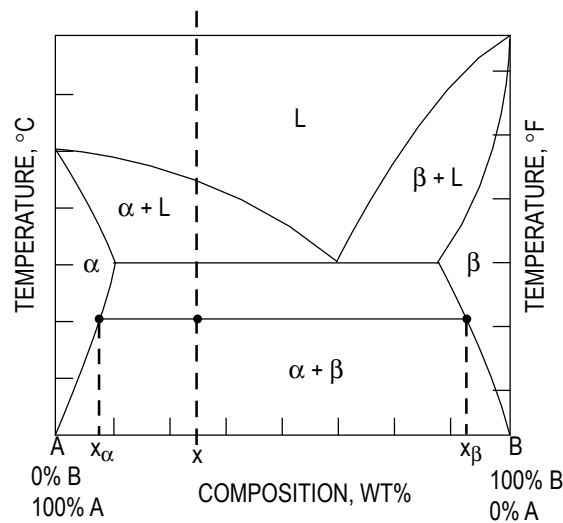
Eutectoid reaction (solid  $\rightarrow$  two solid phases)

Peritectic reaction (liquid + solid  $\rightarrow$  solid)

Peritectoid reaction (two solid phases  $\rightarrow$  solid)

## Lever Rule

The following phase diagram and equations illustrate how the weight of each phase in a two-phase system can be determined:

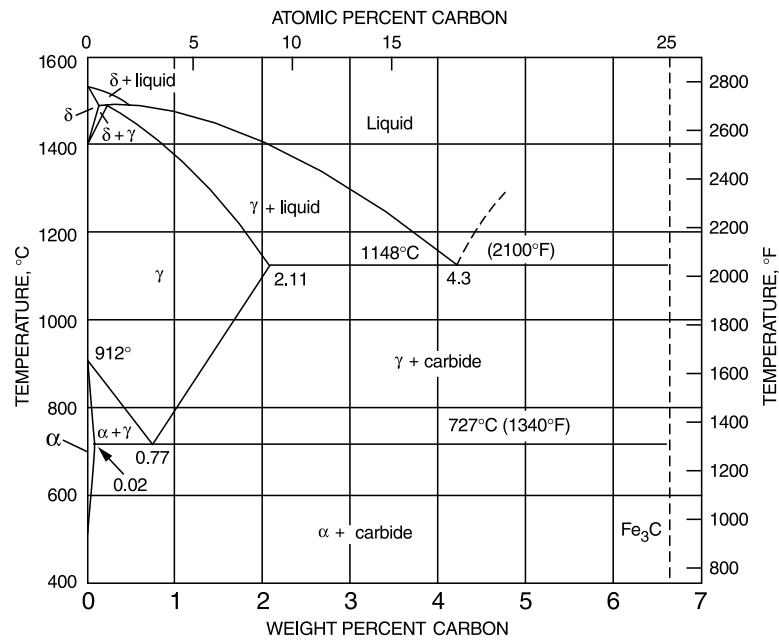


(In diagram, L = liquid.) If  $x$  = the average composition at temperature  $T$ , then

$$\text{wt}\% \alpha = \frac{x_{\beta} - x}{x_{\beta} - x_{\alpha}} \times 100$$

$$\text{wt}\% \beta = \frac{x - x_{\alpha}}{x_{\beta} - x_{\alpha}} \times 100$$

## Iron-Iron Carbide Phase Diagram

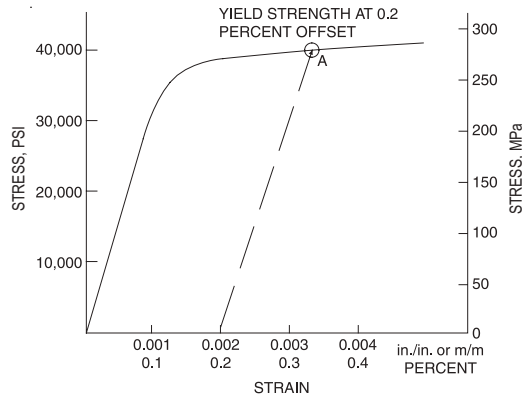


Source: Van Vlack, L.H., *Elements of Materials Science and Engineering*, 6th ed., ©1989. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New, New York.

# Mechanics of Materials

## Uniaxial Stress-Strain

### Stress-Strain Curve for Mild Steel



Source: Flinn, Richard A., and Paul K. Trojan, *Engineering Materials & Their Applications*, 4th ed., Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston, 1990.

The slope of the linear portion of the curve equals the modulus of elasticity.

## Definitions

### Engineering Strain

$$\varepsilon = \Delta L / L_o$$

where

$\varepsilon$  = engineering strain (units per unit)

$\Delta L$  = change in length (units) of member

$L_o$  = original length (units) of member

### Percent Elongation

$$\% \text{ Elongation} = \left( \frac{\Delta L}{L_o} \right) \times 100$$

### Percent Reduction in Area (RA)

The % reduction in area from initial area,  $A_i$ , to final area,  $A_f$ , is:

$$\% RA = \left( \frac{A_i - A_f}{A_i} \right) \times 100$$

### Shear Stress-Strain

$$\gamma = \tau / G$$

where

$\gamma$  = shear strain

$\tau$  = shear stress

$G$  = shear modulus (constant in linear torsion-rotation relationship)

$$G = \frac{E}{2(1 + \nu)}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \text{modulus of elasticity (Young's modulus)} \\ \nu &= \text{Poisson's ratio} \\ &= -(\text{lateral strain})/(\text{longitudinal strain}) \end{aligned}$$

### Bulk (Volume) Modulus of Elasticity

$$K = \frac{E}{3(1 - 2\nu)}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} K &= \text{bulk modulus} \\ E &= \text{modulus of elasticity} \\ \nu &= \text{Poisson's ratio} \end{aligned}$$

### Uniaxial Loading and Deformation

$$\sigma = P/A$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma &= \text{stress on the cross section} \\ P &= \text{loading} \\ A &= \text{cross-sectional area} \\ \varepsilon &= \delta/L \end{aligned}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \delta &= \text{elastic longitudinal deformation} \\ L &= \text{length of member} \\ E = \sigma/\varepsilon &= \frac{P/A}{\delta/L} \\ \delta &= \frac{PL}{AE} \end{aligned}$$

True stress is load divided by actual cross-sectional area whereas engineering stress is load divided by the initial area.

### Thermal Deformations

$$\delta_t = \alpha L(T - T_o)$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_t &= \text{deformation caused by a change in temperature} \\ \alpha &= \text{temperature coefficient of expansion} \\ L &= \text{length of member} \\ T &= \text{final temperature} \\ T_o &= \text{initial temperature} \end{aligned}$$

### Cylindrical Pressure Vessel

For internal pressure only, the stresses at the inside wall are:

$$\sigma_t = P_i \frac{r_o^2 + r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_r = -P_i$$

For external pressure only, the stresses at the outside wall are:

$$\sigma_t = -P_o \frac{r_o^2 + r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_r = -P_o$$

where

$\sigma_t$  = tangential (hoop) stress

$\sigma_r$  = radial stress

$P_i$  = internal pressure

$P_o$  = external pressure

$r_i$  = inside radius

$r_o$  = outside radius

For vessels with end caps, the axial stress is:

$$\sigma_a = P_i \frac{r_i^2}{r_o^2 - r_i^2}$$

where  $\sigma_t$ ,  $\sigma_r$ , and  $\sigma_a$  are principal stresses.

When the thickness of the cylinder wall is about one-tenth or less of inside radius, the cylinder can be considered as thin-walled. In which case, the internal pressure is resisted by the hoop stress and the axial stress.

$$\sigma_t = \frac{P_i r}{t} \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma_a = \frac{P_i r}{2t}$$

where

$t$  = wall thickness

$$r = \frac{r_i + r_o}{2}$$

## Stress and Strain

### Principal Stresses

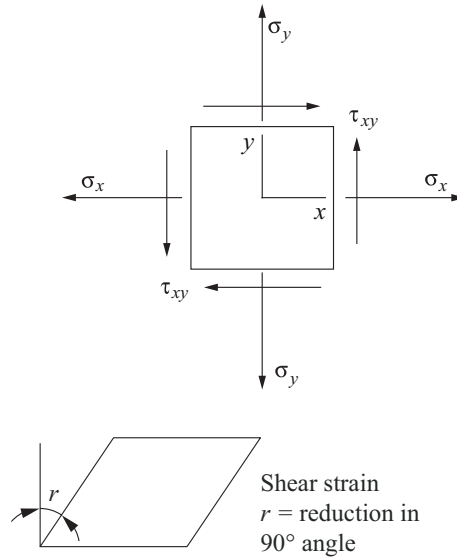
For the special case of a *two-dimensional* stress state, the equations for principal stress reduce to

$$\sigma_a, \sigma_b = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2} \pm \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xy}^2}$$

$$\sigma_c = 0$$

The two nonzero values calculated from this equation are temporarily labeled  $\sigma_a$  and  $\sigma_b$  and the third value  $\sigma_c$  is always zero in this case. Depending on their values, the three roots are then labeled according to the convention:

*algebraically largest* =  $\sigma_1$ , *algebraically smallest* =  $\sigma_3$ , *other* =  $\sigma_2$ . A typical 2D stress element is shown below with all indicated components shown in their positive sense.



Source: Crandall, S.H., and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

## Mohr's Circle—Stress, 2D

To construct a Mohr's circle, the following sign conventions are used.

1. Tensile normal stress components are plotted on the horizontal axis and are considered positive. Compressive normal stress components are negative.
2. For constructing Mohr's circle only, shearing stresses are plotted above the normal stress axis when the pair of shearing stresses, acting on opposite and parallel faces of an element, forms a clockwise couple. Shearing stresses are plotted below the normal axis when the shear stresses form a counterclockwise couple.

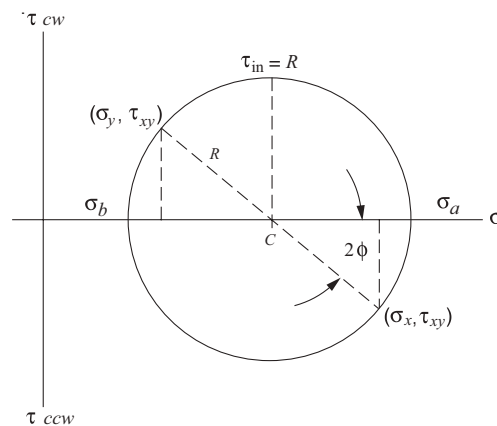
The circle drawn with the center on the normal stress (horizontal) axis with center,  $C$ , and radius,  $R$ , where

$$C = \frac{\sigma_x + \sigma_y}{2}, \quad R = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\sigma_x - \sigma_y}{2}\right)^2 + \tau_{xy}^2}$$

The two nonzero principal stresses are then:

$$\sigma_a = C + R$$

$$\sigma_b = C - R$$



Source: Crandall, S.H., and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

The maximum *in-plane* shear stress is  $\tau_{in} = R$ . However, the maximum shear stress considering three dimensions is always

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2}.$$

## Hooke's Law

Three-dimensional case:

$$\begin{aligned}\epsilon_x &= (1/E)[\sigma_x - \nu(\sigma_y + \sigma_z)] & \gamma_{xy} &= \tau_{xy}/G \\ \epsilon_y &= (1/E)[\sigma_y - \nu(\sigma_z + \sigma_x)] & \gamma_{yz} &= \tau_{yz}/G \\ \epsilon_z &= (1/E)[\sigma_z - \nu(\sigma_x + \sigma_y)] & \gamma_{zx} &= \tau_{zx}/G\end{aligned}$$

Plane stress case ( $\sigma_z = 0$ ):

$$\begin{aligned}\epsilon_x &= (1/E)(\sigma_x - \nu\sigma_y) \\ \epsilon_y &= (1/E)(\sigma_y - \nu\sigma_x) \\ \epsilon_z &= -(1/E)(\nu\sigma_x + \nu\sigma_y)\end{aligned} \quad \begin{Bmatrix} \sigma_x \\ \sigma_y \\ \tau_{xy} \end{Bmatrix} = \frac{E}{1-\nu^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & \nu & 0 \\ \nu & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{1-\nu}{2} \end{bmatrix} \begin{Bmatrix} \epsilon_x \\ \epsilon_y \\ \gamma_{xy} \end{Bmatrix}$$

Uniaxial case ( $\sigma_y = \sigma_z = 0$ ):

$$\sigma_x = E\epsilon_x \text{ or } \sigma = E\epsilon$$

where

$\epsilon_x, \epsilon_y, \epsilon_z$  = normal strain  
 $\sigma_x, \sigma_y, \sigma_z$  = normal stress  
 $\gamma_{xy}, \gamma_{yz}, \gamma_{zx}$  = shear strain  
 $\tau_{xy}, \tau_{yz}, \tau_{zx}$  = shear stress  
 $E$  = modulus of elasticity  
 $G$  = shear modulus  
 $\nu$  = Poisson's ratio

When there is a temperature change from an initial temperature  $T_i$  to a final temperature  $T_f$ , there are also thermally-induced normal strains. In this case,  $\epsilon_x$ ,  $\epsilon_y$ , and  $\epsilon_z$  require modification. Thus,

$$\epsilon_x = \frac{1}{E}[\sigma_x - \nu(\sigma_y + \sigma_z)] + \alpha(T_f - T_i)$$

and similarly for  $\epsilon_y$  and  $\epsilon_z$ , where  $\alpha$  = coefficient of thermal expansion (CTE).

## Torsion

Torsion stress in circular solid or thick-walled ( $t > 0.1 r$ ) shafts:

$$\tau = \frac{Tr}{J}$$

where  $J$  = polar moment of inertia

## Torsional Strain

$$\gamma_{\phi z} = \lim_{\Delta z \rightarrow 0} r(\Delta\phi/\Delta z) = r(d\phi/dz)$$

The shear strain varies in direct proportion to the radius, from zero strain at the center to the greatest strain at the outside of the shaft.  $d\phi/dz$  is the twist per unit length or the rate of twist.

$$\begin{aligned}\tau_{\phi z} &= G\gamma_{\phi z} = Gr(d\phi/dz) \\ T &= G(d\phi/dz) \int_A r^2 dA = GJ(d\phi/dz) \\ \phi &= \int_0^L \frac{T}{GJ} dz = \frac{TL}{GJ}\end{aligned}$$

where

$\phi$  = total angle (radians) of twist

$T$  = torque

$L$  = length of shaft

$T/\phi$  gives the *twisting moment per radian of twist*. This is called the *torsional stiffness* and is often denoted by the symbol  $k$  or  $c$ .

### For Hollow, Thin-Walled Shafts

$$\tau = \frac{T}{2A_m t}$$

where

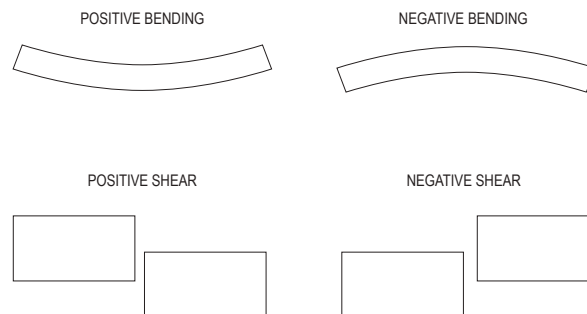
$t$  = thickness of shaft wall

$A_m$  = area of a solid shaft of radius equal to the mean radius of the hollow shaft. Mean radius is radius to centerline of thin wall.

## Beams

### Shearing Force and Bending Moment Sign Conventions

1. The bending moment is *positive* if it produces bending of the beam *concave upward* (compression in top fibers and tension in bottom fibers).
2. The shearing force is *positive* if the *right portion of the beam tends to shear downward with respect to the left*.



Source: Timoshenko, S., and Gleason H. MacCullough, *Elements of Strengths of Materials*, K. Van Nostrand Co./Wadsworth Publishing Co., 1949.

The relationship between the load ( $w$ ), shear ( $V$ ), and moment ( $M$ ) equations are:

$$w(x) = -\frac{dV(x)}{dx}$$

$$V = \frac{dM(x)}{dx}$$

$$V_2 - V_1 = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} [-w(x)] dx$$

$$M_2 - M_1 = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} V(x) dx$$

### Stresses in Beams

The normal stress in a beam due to bending:

$$\sigma_x = -My/I$$

where

$M$  = moment at the section

$I$  = moment of inertia of the cross section

$y$  = distance from the neutral axis to the fiber location above or below the neutral axis

The maximum normal stresses in a beam due to bending:

$$\sigma_x = \pm Mc/I$$

where

$c$  = distance from the neutral axis to the outermost fiber of a symmetrical beam section

$$\sigma_x = -M/s$$

where

$s = I/c$ : the elastic section modulus of the beam

Transverse shear stress:

$$\tau_{xy} = VQ/(Ib)$$

where

$V$  = shear force

$Q = A'\bar{y}'$  = first moment of area above or below the point where shear stress is to be determined

Source: Hibbeler, Russel C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 10th ed., Pearson, 2015, pp. 386–387.

where

$A'$  = area above the layer (or plane) upon which the desired transverse shear stress acts

$\bar{y}'$  = distance from neutral axis to area centroid

$b$  = width or thickness of the cross-section

Transverse shear flow:

$$q = VQ/I$$

### Deflection of Beams

Using  $1/\rho = M/(EI)$ ,

$$EI \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = M, \text{ differential equation of deflection curve}$$

$$EI \frac{d^3y}{dx^3} = dM(x)/dx = V$$

$$EI \frac{d^4y}{dx^4} = dV(x)/dx = -w$$

Determine the deflection curve equation by double integration (apply boundary conditions applicable to the deflection and/or slope).

$$EI (dy/dx) = \int M(x) dx$$

$$EI y = \int \left[ \int M(x) dx \right] dx$$

The constants of integration can be determined from the physical geometry of the beam.

### Principle of Superposition

This principle states that the effect of a given combined loading on a structure can be obtained by determining separately the effects of the various loads and combining the results obtained, provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

1. Each effect is linearly related to the load that produces it.
2. The deformation resulting from any given load is small and does not affect the conditions of application of the other loads.

## Composite Sections

The bending stresses in a beam composed of dissimilar materials (Material 1 and Material 2) where  $E_1 > E_2$  are:

$$\sigma_1 = -nMy/I_T$$

$$\sigma_2 = -My/I_T$$

where

$I_T$  = moment of inertia of the transformed section

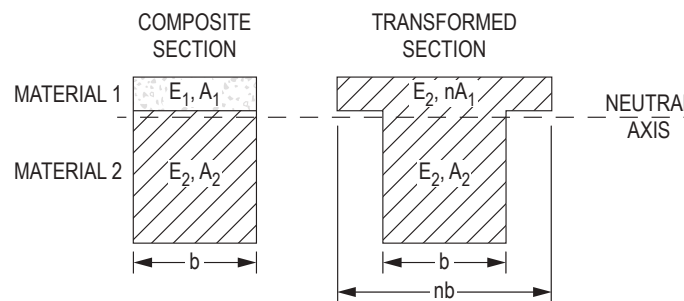
$n$  = modular ratio =  $E_1/E_2$

$E_1$  = elastic modulus of Material 1

$E_2$  = elastic modulus of Material 2

$y$  = distance from the neutral axis to the fiber location above or below the neutral axis

The composite section is transformed into a section composed of a single material. The centroid and then the moment of inertia are found on the transformed section for use in the bending stress equations.



## Columns

Critical axial load for long column subject to buckling:

Euler's Formula

$$P_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EI}{(K\ell)^2}$$

where

$\ell$  = unbraced column length

$K$  = effective-length factor to account for end supports

Theoretical effective-length factors for columns include:

Pinned-pinned,  $K = 1.0$

Fixed-fixed,  $K = 0.5$

Fixed-pinned,  $K = 0.7$

Fixed-free,  $K = 2.0$

Critical buckling stress for long columns:

$$\sigma_{cr} = \frac{P_{cr}}{A} = \frac{\pi^2 E}{(K\ell/r)^2}$$

where

$r$  = radius of gyration =  $\sqrt{I/A}$

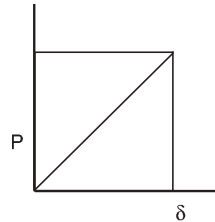
$K\ell/r$  = effective slenderness ratio for the column

## Elastic Strain Energy

If the strain remains within the elastic limit, the work done during deflection (extension) of a member will be transformed into potential energy and can be recovered.

If the final load is  $P$  and the corresponding elongation of a tension member is  $\delta$ , then the total energy  $U$  stored is equal to the work  $W$  done during loading.

$$U = W = P\delta/2$$



The strain energy per unit volume is

$$u = U/AL = \sigma^2/2E \quad (\text{for tension})$$

## Material Properties

**Table 1 - Typical Material Properties**  
(Use these values if the specific alloy and temper are not listed on Table 2 below)

| Material                 | Modulus of Elasticity, E<br>[Mpsi (GPa)] | Modulus of Rigidity, G<br>[Mpsi (GPa)] | Poisson's Ratio, $\nu$ | Coefficient of Thermal Expansion, $\alpha$<br>[ $10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{F}$ ( $10^{-6}/^{\circ}\text{C}$ )] | Density, $\rho$<br>[lb/in <sup>3</sup> (Mg/m <sup>3</sup> )] |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| Steel                    | 29.0 (200.0)                             | 11.5 (80.0)                            | 0.30                   | 6.5 (11.7)                                                                                                 | 0.282 (7.8)                                                  |
| Aluminum                 | 10.0 (69.0)                              | 3.8 (26.0)                             | 0.33                   | 13.1 (23.6)                                                                                                | 0.098 (2.7)                                                  |
| Cast Iron                | 14.5 (100.0)                             | 6.0 (41.4)                             | 0.21                   | 6.7 (12.1)                                                                                                 | 0.246–0.282 (6.8–7.8)                                        |
| Wood (Fir)               | 1.6 (11.0)                               | 0.6 (4.1)                              | 0.33                   | 1.7 (3.0)                                                                                                  | —                                                            |
| Brass                    | 14.8–18.1 (102–125)                      | 5.8 (40)                               | 0.33                   | 10.4 (18.7)                                                                                                | 0.303–0.313 (8.4–8.7)                                        |
| Copper                   | 17 (117)                                 | 6.5 (45)                               | 0.36                   | 9.3 (16.6)                                                                                                 | 0.322 (8.9)                                                  |
| Bronze                   | 13.9–17.4 (96–120)                       | 6.5 (45)                               | 0.34                   | 10.0 (18.0)                                                                                                | 0.278–0.314 (7.7–8.7)                                        |
| Magnesium                | 6.5 (45)                                 | 2.4 (16.5)                             | 0.35                   | 14 (25)                                                                                                    | 0.061 (1.7)                                                  |
| Glass                    | 10.2 (70)                                | —                                      | 0.22                   | 5.0 (9.0)                                                                                                  | 0.090 (2.5)                                                  |
| Polystyrene              | 0.3 (2)                                  | —                                      | 0.34                   | 38.9 (70.0)                                                                                                | 0.038 (1.05)                                                 |
| Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC) | <0.6 (<4)                                | —                                      | —                      | 28.0 (50.4)                                                                                                | 0.047 (1.3)                                                  |
| Alumina Fiber            | 58 (400)                                 | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.141 (3.9)                                                  |
| Aramid Fiber             | 18.1 (125)                               | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.047 (1.3)                                                  |
| Boron Fiber              | 58 (400)                                 | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.083 (2.3)                                                  |
| Beryllium Fiber          | 43.5 (300)                               | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.069 (1.9)                                                  |
| BeO Fiber                | 58 (400)                                 | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.108 (3.0)                                                  |
| Carbon Fiber             | 101.5 (700)                              | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.083 (2.3)                                                  |
| Silicon Carbide Fiber    | 58 (400)                                 | —                                      | —                      | —                                                                                                          | 0.116 (3.2)                                                  |

Source: Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4 ed., 2000. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New York, New York.

## Mechanics of Materials

**Table 2 - Average Mechanical Properties of Typical Engineering Materials  
(U.S. Customary Units)**

(Use these values for the specific alloys and temper listed. For all other materials refer to Table 1 above.)

| Materials                    | Specific Weight $\gamma$<br>(lb/in <sup>3</sup> ) | Modulus of Elasticity E<br>(10 <sup>3</sup> ksi) | Modulus of Rigidity G<br>(10 <sup>3</sup> ksi) | Yield Strength (ksi)<br>$\sigma_y$ |       |       | Ultimate Strength (ksi)<br>$\sigma_u$ |                   |                   | % Elongation in<br>2 in. specimen | Poisson's<br>Ratio $\nu$ | Coef. of Therm.<br>Expansion $\alpha$<br>(10 <sup>-6</sup> )/°F |      |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------|-------|---------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|------|
|                              |                                                   |                                                  |                                                | Tens.                              | Comp. | Shear | Tens.                                 | Comp.             | Shear             |                                   |                          |                                                                 |      |
| Metallic                     |                                                   |                                                  |                                                |                                    |       |       |                                       |                   |                   |                                   |                          |                                                                 |      |
| Aluminum Wrought Alloys      | [ 2014-T6                                         | 0.101                                            | 10.6                                           | 3.9                                | 60    | 60    | 25                                    | 68                | 68                | 42                                | 10                       | 0.35                                                            | 12.8 |
|                              | [ 6061-T6                                         | 0.098                                            | 10.0                                           | 3.7                                | 37    | 37    | 19                                    | 42                | 42                | 27                                | 12                       | 0.35                                                            | 13.1 |
| Cast Iron Alloys             | [ Gray ASTM 20                                    | 0.260                                            | 10.0                                           | 3.9                                | —     | —     | —                                     | 26                | 97                | —                                 | 0.6                      | 0.28                                                            | 6.70 |
|                              | [ Malleable ASTM A197                             | 0.263                                            | 25.0                                           | 9.8                                | —     | —     | —                                     | 40                | 83                | —                                 | 5                        | 0.28                                                            | 6.60 |
| Copper Alloys                | [ Red Brass C83400                                | 0.316                                            | 14.6                                           | 5.4                                | 11.4  | 11.4  | —                                     | 35                | 35                | —                                 | 35                       | 0.35                                                            | 9.80 |
|                              | [ Bronze C86100                                   | 0.319                                            | 15.0                                           | 5.6                                | 50    | 50    | —                                     | 95                | 95                | —                                 | 20                       | 0.34                                                            | 9.60 |
| Magnesium Alloy              | [ Am 1004-T611]                                   | 0.066                                            | 6.48                                           | 2.5                                | 22    | 22    | —                                     | 40                | 40                | 22                                | 1                        | 0.30                                                            | 14.3 |
| Steel Alloys                 | [ Structural A36                                  | 0.284                                            | 29.0                                           | 11.0                               | 36    | 36    | —                                     | 58                | 58                | —                                 | 30                       | 0.32                                                            | 6.60 |
|                              | [ Stainless 304                                   | 0.284                                            | 28.0                                           | 11.0                               | 30    | 30    | —                                     | 75                | 75                | —                                 | 40                       | 0.27                                                            | 9.60 |
|                              | [ Tool L2                                         | 0.295                                            | 29.0                                           | 11.0                               | 102   | 102   | —                                     | 116               | 116               | —                                 | 22                       | 0.32                                                            | 6.50 |
|                              |                                                   |                                                  |                                                |                                    |       |       |                                       |                   |                   |                                   |                          |                                                                 |      |
| Titanium Alloy               | [ Ti-6Al-4V]                                      | 0.160                                            | 17.4                                           | 6.4                                | 134   | 134   | —                                     | 145               | 145               | —                                 | 16                       | 0.36                                                            | 5.20 |
| Nonmetallic                  |                                                   |                                                  |                                                |                                    |       |       |                                       |                   |                   |                                   |                          |                                                                 |      |
| Concrete                     | [ Low Strength                                    | 0.086                                            | 3.20                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | 1.8                                   | —                 | —                 | —                                 | —                        | 0.15                                                            | 6.0  |
|                              | [ High Strength                                   | 0.086                                            | 4.20                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | 5.5                                   | —                 | —                 | —                                 | —                        | 0.15                                                            | 6.0  |
| Plastic Reinforced           | [ Kevlar 49                                       | 0.0524                                           | 19.0                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | —                                     | 104               | 70                | 10.2                              | 2.8                      | 0.34                                                            | —    |
|                              | [ 30% Glass                                       | 0.0524                                           | 10.5                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | —                                     | 13                | 19                | —                                 | —                        | 0.34                                                            | —    |
| Wood Select Structural Grade | [ Douglas Fir                                     | 0.017                                            | 1.90                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | —                                     | 0.30 <sup>c</sup> | 3.78 <sup>d</sup> | 0.90 <sup>d</sup>                 | —                        | 0.29 <sup>c</sup>                                               | —    |
|                              | [ White Spruce                                    | 0.013                                            | 1.40                                           | —                                  | —     | —     | —                                     | 0.36 <sup>c</sup> | 5.18 <sup>d</sup> | 0.97 <sup>d</sup>                 | —                        | 0.31 <sup>c</sup>                                               | —    |

<sup>a</sup> SPECIFIC VALUES MAY VARY FOR A PARTICULAR MATERIAL DUE TO ALLOY OR MINERAL COMPOSITION, MECHANICAL WORKING OF THE SPECIMEN, OR HEAT TREATMENT. FOR A MORE EXACT VALUE REFERENCE BOOKS FOR THE MATERIAL SHOULD BE CONSULTED.

<sup>b</sup> THE YIELD AND ULTIMATE STRENGTHS FOR DUCTILE MATERIALS CAN BE ASSUMED EQUAL FOR BOTH TENSION AND COMPRESSION.

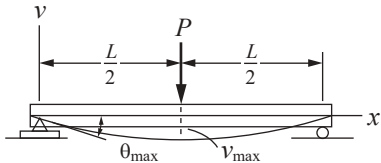
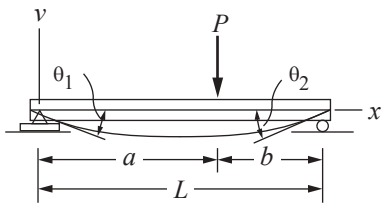
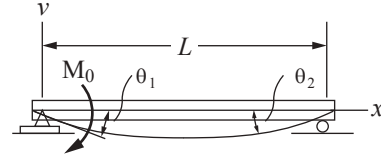
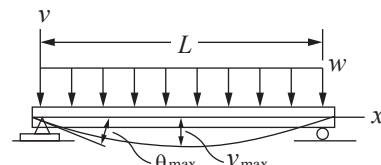
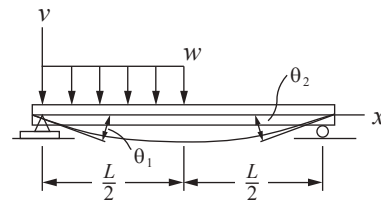
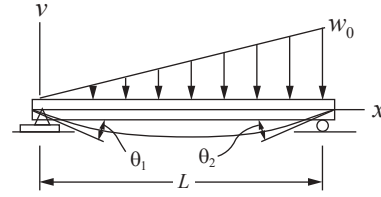
<sup>c</sup> MEASURED PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN.

<sup>d</sup> MEASURED PARALLEL TO THE GRAIN.

<sup>e</sup> DEFORMATION MEASURED PERPENDICULAR TO THE GRAIN WHEN THE LOAD IS APPLIED ALONG THE GRAIN.

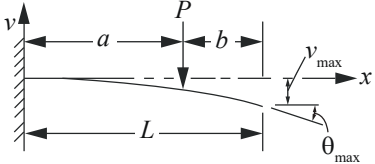
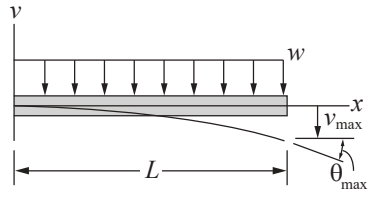
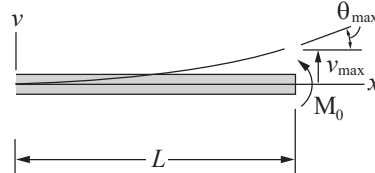
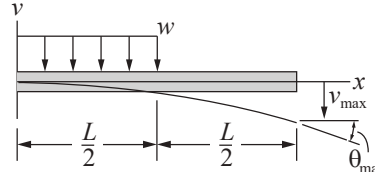
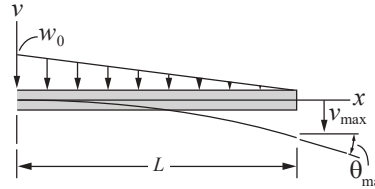
Source: Adapted from: Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4 ed., 2000. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New York, New York.

### Simply Supported Beam Slopes and Deflections

| BEAM                                                                                | SLOPE                                                                     | DEFLECTION                                                                                        | ELASTIC CURVE                                                                                                                                        | MAXIMUM MOMENT                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-PL^2}{16EI}$                                      | $v_{\max} = \frac{-PL^3}{48EI}$                                                                   | $v = \frac{-Px}{48EI} (3L^2 - 4x^2)$<br>$0 \leq x \leq L/2$                                                                                          | $M_{\max} \text{ (at center)} = \frac{PL}{4}$                                          |
|    | $\theta_1 = \frac{-Pab(L+b)}{6EIL}$<br>$\theta_2 = \frac{Pab(L+a)}{6EIL}$ | $v _{x=a} = \frac{-Pba}{6EIL} (L^2 - b^2 - a^2)$                                                  | $v = \frac{-Pbx}{6EIL} (L^2 - b^2 - x^2)$<br>$0 \leq x \leq a$                                                                                       | $M_{\max} \text{ (at point of load)} = \frac{Pab}{L}$                                  |
|    | $\theta_1 = \frac{-M_0L}{3EI}$<br>$\theta_2 = \frac{M_0L}{6EI}$           | $v_{\max} = \frac{-M_0L^2}{\sqrt{243EI}}$                                                         | $v = \frac{-M_0x}{6EIL} (x^2 - 3Lx + 2L^2)$                                                                                                          | $M_{\max} \text{ (at } x = 0) = M_0$                                                   |
|    | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{24EI}$                                      | $v_{\max} = \frac{-5wL^4}{384EI}$                                                                 | $v = \frac{-wx}{24EI} (x^3 - 2Lx^2 + L^3)$                                                                                                           | $M_{\max} \text{ (at center)} = \frac{wL^2}{8}$                                        |
|   | $\theta_1 = \frac{-3wL^3}{128EI}$<br>$\theta_2 = \frac{7wL^3}{384EI}$     | $v _{x=L/2} = \frac{-5wL^4}{768EI}$<br>$v_{\max} = -0.006563 \frac{wL^4}{EI}$<br>at $x = 0.4598L$ | $v = \frac{-wx}{384EI} (16x^3 - 24Lx^2 + 9L^3)$<br>$0 \leq x \leq L/2$<br>$v = \frac{-wL}{384EI} (8x^3 - 24Lx^2 + 17L^2x - L^3)$<br>$L/2 \leq x < L$ | $M_{\max} \left( \text{at } x = \frac{3}{8}l \right) = \frac{9}{128}wL^2$              |
|  | $\theta_1 = \frac{-7w_0L^3}{360EI}$<br>$\theta_2 = \frac{w_0L^3}{45EI}$   | $v_{\max} = -0.00652 \frac{w_0L^4}{EI}$<br>at $x = 0.5193L$                                       | $v = \frac{-w_0x}{360EIL} (3x^4 - 10L^2x^2 + 7L^4)$                                                                                                  | $M_{\max} \left( \text{at } x = \frac{L}{\sqrt{3}} \right) = \frac{w_0L^2}{9\sqrt{3}}$ |

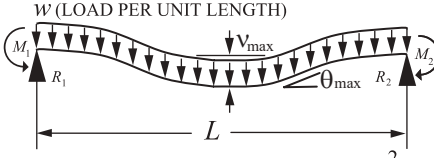
Source: Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4 ed., 2000. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New York, New York.

## Cantilevered Beam Slopes and Deflections

| BEAM                                                                                | SLOPE                                  | DEFLECTION                              | ELASTIC CURVE                                                                                                                                           | MAXIMUM MOMENT                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
|    | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-Pa^2}{2EI}$    | $v_{\max} = \frac{-Pa^2}{6EI} (3L - a)$ | $v = \frac{-Pa^2}{6EI} (3x - a), \text{ for } x > a$ $v = \frac{-Px^2}{6EI} (-x + 3a), \text{ for } x \leq a$                                           | $M_{\max} (\text{at } x = 0) = Pa$               |
|    | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{6EI}$    | $v_{\max} = \frac{-wL^4}{8EI}$          | $v = \frac{-wx^2}{24EI} (x^2 - 4Lx + 6L^2)$                                                                                                             | $M_{\max} (\text{at } x = 0) = \frac{wL^2}{2}$   |
|    | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{M_0L}{EI}$      | $v_{\max} = \frac{M_0L^2}{2EI}$         | $v = \frac{M_0x^2}{2EI}$                                                                                                                                | $M_{\max} (\text{at all } x) = M_0$              |
|   | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-wL^3}{48EI}$   | $v_{\max} = \frac{-7wL^4}{384EI}$       | $v = \frac{-wx^2}{24EI} \left( x^2 - 2Lx + \frac{3}{2}L^2 \right) \quad 0 \leq x \leq L/2$ $v = \frac{-wL^3}{192EI} (4x - L/2) \quad L/2 \leq x \leq L$ | $M_{\max} (\text{at } x = 0) = \frac{wL^2}{8}$   |
|  | $\theta_{\max} = \frac{-w_0L^3}{24EI}$ | $v_{\max} = \frac{-w_0L^4}{30EI}$       | $v = \frac{-w_0x^2}{120EI} (10L^3 - 10L^2x + 5Lx^2 - x^3)$                                                                                              | $M_{\max} (\text{at } x = 0) = \frac{w_0L^2}{6}$ |

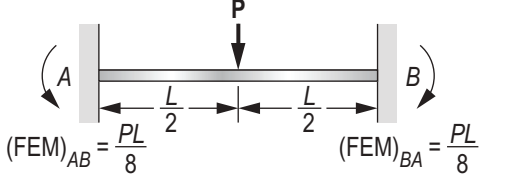
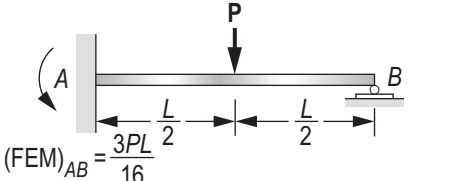
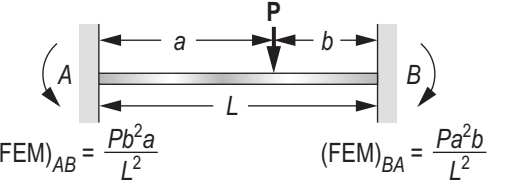
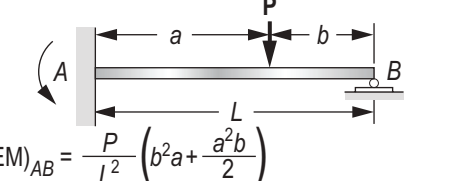
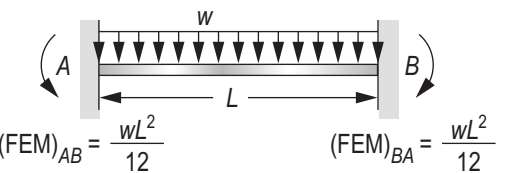
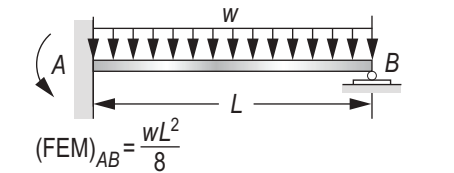
Source: Hibbeler, R.C., *Mechanics of Materials*, 4 ed., 2000. Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., New York, New York.

Piping Segment Slopes and Deflections

| PIPE                                                                                                                                              | SLOPE                                                                                     | DEFLECTION                                             | ELASTIC CURVE                                | MAXIMUM MOMENT                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <br>$R_1 = R_2 = \frac{wL}{2}$ and $M_1 = M_2 = \frac{wL^2}{12}$ | $ \theta_{\max}  = 0.008 \frac{wL^3}{EI}$<br>at $x = \frac{L}{2} \pm \frac{L}{\sqrt{12}}$ | $ v_{\max}  = \frac{wL^4}{384EI}$ at $x = \frac{L}{2}$ | $v(x) = \frac{wx^2}{24EI} (L^2 - 2Lx + x^2)$ | $M_{\max} \text{ (at } x = 0) = \frac{wL^2}{12}$ |

Source: Adapted from Crandall, S.H. and N.C. Dahl, *An Introduction to Mechanics of Solids*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1959.

Fixed End Moments

|                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{PL}{8}$ $(FEM)_{BA} = \frac{PL}{8}$           | <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{3PL}{16}$                                     |
| <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{Pb^2a}{L^2}$ $(FEM)_{BA} = \frac{Pa^2b}{L^2}$ | <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{P}{L^2} \left( b^2a + \frac{a^2b}{2} \right)$ |
| <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{wL^2}{12}$ $(FEM)_{BA} = \frac{wL^2}{12}$    | <br>$(FEM)_{AB} = \frac{wL^2}{8}$                                    |

Source: Adapted from Hibbeler, R. C., *Structural Analysis*, 11th ed., Pearson, 2024.

# Thermodynamics

## Properties of Single-Component Systems

### Nomenclature

1. Intensive properties are independent of mass.
2. Extensive properties are proportional to mass.
3. Specific properties are lowercase (extensive/mass).

### State Functions (properties)

Functions and Their Symbols and Units

| Function                 | Symbol(s)                  | Unit (I-P or SI)                                                                                       |
|--------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Absolute pressure        | $P$                        | $\frac{\text{lbf}}{\text{in}^2}$ or Pa                                                                 |
| Absolute temperature     | $T$                        | $^{\circ}\text{R}$ or K                                                                                |
| Volume                   | $V$                        | $\text{ft}^3$ or $\text{m}^3$                                                                          |
| Specific volume          | $v = \frac{V}{m}$          | $\frac{\text{ft}^3}{\text{lbm}}$ or $\frac{\text{m}^3}{\text{kg}}$                                     |
| Internal energy          | $U$                        | Btu or kJ                                                                                              |
| Specific internal energy | $u = \frac{U}{m}$          | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{lbm}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$                                       |
| Enthalpy                 | $H$                        | Btu or kJ                                                                                              |
| Specific enthalpy        | $h = u + Pv = \frac{H}{m}$ | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{lbm}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$                                       |
| Entropy                  | $S$                        | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{^{\circ}\text{R}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{K}}$                                  |
| Specific entropy         | $s = \frac{S}{m}$          | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{lbm} \cdot ^{\circ}\text{R}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg} \cdot \text{K}}$ |
| Gibbs free energy        | $G = h - Ts$               | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{lbm}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$                                       |
| Helmholtz free energy    | $A = u - Ts$               | $\frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{lbm}}$ or $\frac{\text{kJ}}{\text{kg}}$                                       |

For a single-phase pure component, specification of any two intensive, independent properties is sufficient to fix all the rest.

Specific Heat (Heat Capacity) at Constant Pressure,

$$c_p = \left( \frac{\partial h}{\partial T} \right)_p \quad [\text{Btu}/(\text{lbm} \cdot ^{\circ}\text{R}) \text{ or } \text{kJ}/(\text{kg} \cdot \text{K})]$$

Specific Heat (Heat Capacity) at Constant Volume,

$$c_v = \left( \frac{\partial u}{\partial T} \right)_v \quad [\text{Btu}/(\text{lbm} \cdot ^{\circ}\text{R}) \text{ or } \text{kJ}/(\text{kg} \cdot \text{K})]$$

The steam tables in this section provide  $T$ ,  $P$ ,  $v$ ,  $u$ ,  $h$ , and  $s$  data for saturated and superheated water.

$P$ - $h$  diagrams and tables for Refrigerant 134A and 410A, providing  $T$ ,  $P$ ,  $v$ ,  $h$ , and  $s$  data, are included in this section.

Thermal and physical property tables for selected gases, liquids, and solids are included in this section.

## Properties for Two-Phase (vapor-liquid) Systems

Quality  $x$  (for liquid-vapor systems at saturation) is defined as the mass fraction of the vapor phase:

$$x = m_g / (m_g + m_f)$$

where

$m_g$  = mass of vapor

$m_f$  = mass of liquid

Specific volume of a two-phase system can be written:

$$v = xv_g + (1 - x)v_f \text{ or } v = v_f + xv_{fg}$$

where

$v_f$  = specific volume of saturated liquid

$v_g$  = specific volume of saturated vapor

$v_{fg}$  = specific volume change upon vaporization  
 $= v_g - v_f$

Similar expressions exist for  $u$ ,  $h$ , and  $s$ :

$$u = xu_g + (1 - x)u_f \text{ or } u = u_f + xu_{fg}$$

$$h = xh_g + (1 - x)h_f \text{ or } h = h_f + xh_{fg}$$

$$s = xs_g + (1 - x)s_f \text{ or } s = s_f + xs_{fg}$$

## PVT Behavior

### Ideal Gas

For an ideal gas

$$Pv = RT \text{ or } PV = mRT, \text{ and}$$

$$P_1v_1/T_1 = P_2v_2/T_2$$

where

$P$  = absolute pressure

$v$  = specific volume

$m$  = mass of gas

$R$  = gas constant

$T$  = absolute temperature

$V$  = volume

$R$  is specific to each gas but can be found from

$$R_i = \frac{\bar{R}}{(\text{mol. wt})_i}$$

where

$\bar{R}$  = universal gas constant

$$= 1,545 \text{ ft-lbf/(lbmol}\cdot^\circ\text{R)} = 8,314 \text{ J/(kmol}\cdot\text{K)}$$

$$= 8.314 \text{ kPa}\cdot\text{m}^3/(\text{kmol}\cdot\text{K}) = 0.08206 \text{ L}\cdot\text{atm}/(\text{mole}\cdot\text{K})$$

For ideal gases,  $c_p - c_v = R$

Ideal gas behavior is characterized by:

- no intermolecular interactions
- molecules occupy zero volume

The properties of an ideal gas reflect those of a single molecule and are attributable entirely to the structure of the molecule and the system  $T$ .

For *ideal gases*:

$$\left(\frac{\partial h}{\partial P}\right)_T = 0 \quad \left(\frac{\partial u}{\partial v}\right)_T = 0$$

For cold air standard, *heat capacities are assumed to be constant* at their room temperature values. In that case, the following are true:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta u &= c_v \Delta T; \quad \Delta h = c_p \Delta T \\ \Delta s &= c_p \ln (T_2/T_1) - R \ln (P_2/P_1) \\ \Delta s &= c_v \ln (T_2/T_1) + R \ln (v_2/v_1)\end{aligned}$$

Also, for *constant entropy* processes:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{P_2}{P_1} &= \left(\frac{v_1}{v_2}\right)^k; \quad \frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left(\frac{P_2}{P_1}\right)^{\frac{k-1}{k}} \\ \frac{T_2}{T_1} &= \left(\frac{v_1}{v_2}\right)^{k-1}, \text{ where } k = c_p/c_v\end{aligned}$$

### Ideal Gas Mixtures

$i = 1, 2, \dots, n$  constituents. Each constituent is an ideal gas.

Mole Fraction:

$$x_i = N_i/N; \quad N = \sum N_i; \quad \sum x_i = 1$$

where  $N_i$  = number of moles of component  $i$

$N$  = total moles in the mixture

Mass Fraction:  $y_i = m_i/m; \quad m = \sum m_i; \quad \sum y_i = 1$

Molecular Weight:  $M = m/N = \sum x_i M_i$

To convert *mole fractions*  $x_i$  to *mass fractions*  $y_i$ :

$$y_i = \frac{x_i M_i}{\sum (x_i M_i)}$$

To convert *mass fractions* to *mole fractions*:

$$x_i = \frac{y_i/M_i}{\sum (y_i/M_i)}$$

Partial Pressures:  $P_i = \frac{m_i R_i T}{V}$  and  $P = \sum P_i$

Partial Volumes:  $V_i = \frac{m_i R_i T}{P}$  and  $V = \sum V_i$

where  $P, V, T$  = pressure, volume, and temperature of the mixture and  $R_i = \bar{R}/M_i$

Combining the above generates the following additional expressions for mole fraction.

$$x_i = P_i/P = V_i/V$$

Other Properties:

$$c_p = \sum (y_i c_{p_i})$$

$$c_v = \sum (y_i c_{v_i})$$

$$u = \sum (y_i u_i); \quad h = \sum (y_i h_i); \quad s = \sum (y_i s_i)$$

$u_i$  and  $h_i$  are evaluated at  $T$

$s_i$  is evaluated at  $T$  and  $P_i$

## Real Gas

Most gases exhibit ideal gas behavior when the system pressure is less than 3 atm since the distance between molecules is large enough to produce negligible molecular interactions. The behavior of a real gas deviates from that of an ideal gas at higher pressures due to molecular interactions.

For a real gas,  $Pv = ZRT$

where

$Z$  = compressibility factor

$Z = 1$  for an ideal gas

$Z \neq 1$  for a real gas

## Equations of State (EOS)

EOS are used to quantify  $PvT$  behavior

Ideal Gas EOS (applicable only to ideal gases)

$$P = \left( \frac{RT}{v} \right)$$

Generalized Compressibility EOS (applicable to all systems as gases, liquids, and/or solids)

$$P = \left( \frac{RT}{v} \right) Z$$

Virial EOS (applicable only to gases)

$$P = \left( \frac{RT}{v} \right) \left( 1 + \frac{B}{v} + \frac{C}{v^2} + \dots \right)$$

where  $B$ ,  $C$ , ... are virial coefficients obtained from  $PvT$  measurements or statistical mechanics.

Cubic EOS (theoretically motivated with intent to predict gas and liquid thermodynamic properties)

$$P = \frac{RT}{v-b} - \frac{a(T)}{(v+c_1b)(v+c_2b)}$$

where  $a(T)$ ,  $b$ , and  $c_1$  and  $c_2$  are species specific.

An example of a cubic EOS is the Van der Waals equation with constants based on the critical point:

$$\left( P + \frac{a}{\bar{v}^2} \right) (\bar{v} - b) = \bar{R}T$$

where  $a = \left( \frac{27}{64} \right) \left( \frac{\bar{R}^2 T_c^2}{P_c} \right)$ ,  $b = \frac{\bar{R}T_c}{8P_c}$

where  $P_c$  and  $T_c$  are the pressure and temperature at the critical point, respectively, and  $\bar{v}$  is the molar specific volume.

EOS are used to predict:

- $P$ ,  $v$ , or  $T$  when two of the three are specified
- other thermodynamic properties based on analytic manipulation of the EOS
- mixture properties using appropriate mixing rules to create a pseudo-component that mimics the mixture properties

The Theorem of Corresponding States asserts that all normal fluids have the same value of  $Z$  at the same reduced temperature  $T_r$  and pressure  $P_r$ .

$$T_r = \frac{T}{T_c} \quad P_r = \frac{P}{P_c}$$

where  $T_c$  and  $P_c$  are the critical temperature and pressure, respectively, expressed in absolute units.

## First Law of Thermodynamics

The *First Law of Thermodynamics* is a statement of conservation of energy in a thermodynamic system. The net energy crossing the system boundary is equal to the change in energy inside the system.

Heat  $Q$  ( $q = Q/m$ ) is *energy transferred* due to temperature difference and is considered positive if it is inward or added to the system.

Work  $W$  ( $w = W/m$ ) is considered *positive if it is outward* or *work done* by the system.

## Closed Thermodynamic System

No mass crosses system boundary

$$Q - W = \Delta U + \Delta KE + \Delta PE$$

where

$\Delta U$  = change in internal energy

$\Delta KE$  = change in kinetic energy

$\Delta PE$  = change in potential energy

Energy can cross the boundary only in the form of heat or work. Work can be boundary work,  $w_b$ , or other work forms (electrical work, etc.)

*Reversible boundary work* is given by  $w_b = \int P dv$ .

Special Cases of Closed Systems (with no change in kinetic or potential energy)

Constant System Pressure process (**Charles' Law**):

$$w_b = P\Delta v$$

(ideal gas)  $T/v = \text{constant}$

Constant Volume process:

$$w_b = 0$$

(ideal gas)  $T/P = \text{constant}$

Isentropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^k = \text{constant, where } k = c_p/c_v$$

$$w = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - k)$$

$$= R(T_2 - T_1)/(1 - k)$$

Constant Temperature process (**Boyle's Law**): (ideal gas)  $Pv = \text{constant}$

$$w_b = RT \ln(v_2/v_1) = RT \ln(P_1/P_2)$$

Polytropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^n = \text{constant}$$

$$w = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n), n \neq 1$$

## Open Thermodynamic System

Mass crosses the system boundary.

There is flow work ( $Pv$ ) done by mass entering the system.

The reversible flow work is given by:

$$w_{\text{rev}} = - \int v dP + \Delta KE + \Delta PE$$

First Law applies whether or not processes are reversible.

Open System First Law (energy balance)

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i \left[ h_i + V_i^2/2 + gZ_i \right] - \Sigma \dot{m}_e \left[ h_e + V_e^2/2 + gZ_e \right] + \dot{Q}_{\text{in}} - \dot{W}_{\text{net}} = d(m_s u_s)/dt$$

where

$\dot{W}_{net}$  = rate of net or shaft work

$\dot{m}$  = mass flow rate (subscripts  $i$  and  $e$  refer to inlet and exit states of system)

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

$Z$  = elevation

$V$  = velocity

$m_s$  = mass of fluid within the system

$u_s$  = specific internal energy of system

$\dot{Q}_{in}$  = rate of heat transfer (neglecting kinetic and potential energy of the system)

#### Special Cases of Open Systems (with no change in kinetic or potential energy)

Constant Volume process:

$$w_{rev} = -v(P_2 - P_1)$$

Constant System Pressure process:

$$w_{rev} = 0$$

Constant Temperature process: (ideal gas)  $Pv = \text{constant}$

$$w_{rev} = RT \ln(v_2/v_1) = RT \ln(P_1/P_2)$$

Isentropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^k = \text{constant}$$

$$w_{rev} = k(P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - k) \\ = kR(T_2 - T_1)/(1 - k)$$

$$w_{rev} = \frac{k}{k-1}RT_1 \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)^{(k-1)/k} \right]$$

Polytropic process (ideal gas):

$$Pv^n = \text{constant}$$

Closed system

$$w_{rev} = (P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n)$$

One-inlet, one-exit control volume

$$w_{rev} = n(P_2v_2 - P_1v_1)/(1 - n)$$

### **Steady-Flow Systems**

The system does not change state with time. This assumption is valid for steady operation of turbines, pumps, compressors, throttling valves, nozzles, and heat exchangers, including boilers and condensers.

$$\sum \dot{m}_i \left( h_i + V_i^2/2 + gZ_i \right) - \sum \dot{m}_e \left( h_e + V_e^2/2 + gZ_e \right) + \dot{Q}_{in} - \dot{W}_{out} = 0$$

and

$$\sum \dot{m}_i = \sum \dot{m}_e$$

where

$\dot{m}$  = mass flow rate (subscripts  $i$  and  $e$  refer to inlet and exit states of system)

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

$Z$  = elevation

$V$  = velocity

$\dot{Q}_{in}$  = net rate of heat transfer into the system

$\dot{W}_{out}$  = net rate of work out of the system

### Special Cases of Steady-Flow Energy Equation

Nozzles, Diffusers: Velocity terms are significant. No elevation change, no heat transfer, and no work. Single-mass stream.

$$h_i + V_i^2/2 = h_e + V_e^2/2$$

$$\text{Isentropic Efficiency (nozzle)} = \frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2(h_i - h_{es})}$$

where  $h_{es}$  = enthalpy at isentropic exit state.

Turbines, Pumps, Compressors: Often considered adiabatic (no heat transfer). Velocity terms usually can be ignored. There are significant work terms and a single-mass stream.

$$h_i = h_e + w$$

$$\text{Isentropic Efficiency (turbine)} = \frac{h_i - h_e}{h_i - h_{es}}$$

$$\text{Isentropic Efficiency (compressor, pump)} = \frac{h_{es} - h_i}{h_e - h_i}$$

For pump only,  $h_{es} - h_i = v_i(P_e - P_i)$

Throttling Valves and Throttling Processes: No work, no heat transfer, and single-mass stream. Velocity terms are often insignificant.

$$h_i = h_e$$

Boilers, Condensers, Evaporators, One Side in a Heat

Exchanger: Heat transfer terms are significant. For a single-mass stream, the following applies:

$$h_i + q = h_e$$

Heat Exchangers: No heat loss to the surroundings or work. Two separate flow rates  $\dot{m}_1$  and  $\dot{m}_2$ :

$$\dot{m}_1(h_{1i} - h_{1e}) = \dot{m}_2(h_{2e} - h_{2i})$$

Mixers, Separators, Open or Closed Feedwater Heaters:

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i h_i = \Sigma \dot{m}_e h_e \quad \text{and}$$

$$\Sigma \dot{m}_i = \Sigma \dot{m}_e$$

## Basic Cycles

Heat engines take in heat  $Q_H$  at a high temperature  $T_H$ , produce a net amount of work  $W$ , and reject heat  $Q_L$  at a low temperature  $T_L$ . The efficiency  $\eta$  of a heat engine is given by:

$$\eta = W/Q_H = (Q_H - Q_L)/Q_H$$

The most efficient engine possible is the *Carnot Cycle*. Its efficiency is given by:

$$\eta_c = (T_H - T_L)/T_H$$

where  $T_H$  and  $T_L$  = absolute temperatures (Kelvin or Rankine).

The following heat-engine cycles are plotted on  $P$ - $v$  and  $T$ - $s$  diagrams in this section:

Carnot, Otto, Rankine

Refrigeration cycles are the reverse of heat-engine cycles. Heat is moved from low to high temperature requiring work,  $W$ . Cycles can be used either for refrigeration or as heat pumps.

*Coefficient of Performance* (COP) is defined as:

$$\text{COP} = Q_H/W \text{ for heat pumps, and as}$$

$$\text{COP} = Q_L/W \text{ for refrigerators and air conditioners.}$$

Upper limit of COP is based on reversed Carnot Cycle:

$$\text{COP}_c = T_H / (T_H - T_L) \text{ for heat pumps and}$$

$$\text{COP}_c = T_L / (T_H - T_L) \text{ for refrigeration.}$$

$$1 \text{ ton refrigeration} = 12,000 \text{ Btu/hr} = 3,516 \text{ W}$$

The following refrigeration cycles are plotted on  $T$ - $s$  diagrams in this section: reversed rankine, two-stage refrigeration, air refrigeration

## Psychrometrics

Properties of an air-water vapor mixture at a fixed pressure are given in graphical form on a psychrometric chart as provided in this section. When the system pressure is 1 atm, an ideal-gas mixture is assumed.

The definitions that follow use subscript  $a$  for dry air and  $v$  for water vapor.

$P$  = pressure of the air-water mixture, normally 1 atm

$T$  = dry-bulb temp (air/water mixture temperature)

$P_a$  = partial pressure of dry air

$P_v$  = partial pressure of water vapor

$$P = P_a + P_v$$

*Specific Humidity* (absolute humidity, humidity ratio)  $\omega$ :

$$\omega = m_v / m_a$$

where

$m_v$  = mass of water vapor

$m_a$  = mass of dry air

$$\omega = 0.622 P_v / P_a = 0.622 P_v / (P - P_v)$$

*Relative Humidity* (rh)  $\phi$ :

$$\phi = P_v / P_g$$

where  $P_g$  = saturation pressure of water at  $T$ .

*Enthalpy*  $h$ :

$$h = h_a + \omega h_v$$

*Dew-Point Temperature*  $T_{dp}$ :

$$T_{dp} = T_{\text{sat}} \text{ at } P_g = P_v$$

*Wet-bulb temperature*  $T_{wb}$  is the temperature indicated by a thermometer covered by a wick saturated with liquid water and in contact with moving air.

*Humid Volume*: Volume of moist air/mass of dry air.

## Second Law of Thermodynamics

Thermal Energy Reservoirs

$$\Delta S_{\text{reservoir}} = Q / T_{\text{reservoir}}$$

where  $Q$  is measured with respect to the reservoir.

### Kelvin-Planck Statement of Second Law

No heat engine can operate in a cycle while transferring heat with a single heat reservoir.

*COROLLARY* to Kelvin-Planck: No heat engine can have a higher efficiency than a Carnot Cycle operating between the same reservoirs.

## Clausius' Statement of Second Law

No refrigeration or heat pump cycle can operate without a net work input.

*COROLLARY:* No refrigerator or heat pump can have a higher COP than a Carnot Cycle refrigerator or heat pump.

## Entropy

$$ds = (1/T) \delta q_{\text{rev}}$$

$$s_2 - s_1 = \int_1^2 (1/T) \delta q_{\text{rev}}$$

Inequality of Clausius

$$\oint (1/T) \delta q_{\text{rev}} \leq 0$$

$$\int_1^2 (1/T) \delta q \leq s_2 - s_1$$

Isothermal, Reversible Process

$$\Delta s = s_2 - s_1 = q/T$$

Isentropic Process

$$\Delta s = 0; ds = 0$$

A reversible adiabatic process is isentropic.

Adiabatic Process

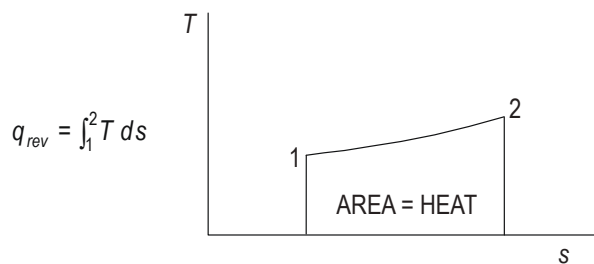
$$\delta q = 0; \Delta s \geq 0$$

Increase of Entropy Principle

$$\Delta s_{\text{total}} = \Delta s_{\text{system}} + \Delta s_{\text{surroundings}} \geq 0$$

$$\Delta \dot{s}_{\text{total}} = \Sigma \dot{m}_{\text{out}} s_{\text{out}} - \Sigma \dot{m}_{\text{in}} s_{\text{in}} - \Sigma (\dot{q}_{\text{external}}/T_{\text{external}}) \geq 0$$

Temperature-Entropy ( $T$ - $s$ ) Diagram



Entropy Change for Solids and Liquids

$$ds = c (dT/T)$$

$$s_2 - s_1 = \int c (dT/T) = c_{\text{mean}} \ln (T_2/T_1)$$

where  $c$  equals the heat capacity of the solid or liquid.

## Exergy (Availability)

Exergy (also known as availability) is the maximum possible work that can be obtained from a cycle of a heat engine. The maximum possible work is obtained in a reversible process.

### Closed-System Exergy (Availability)

(no chemical reactions)

$$\phi = (u - u_L) - T_L(s - s_L) + p_L(v - v_L)$$

where the subscript  $L$  designates environmental conditions and  $\phi$  is availability function.

$$w_{\max} = w_{\text{rev}} = \phi_1 - \phi_2$$

### Open-System Exergy (Availability)

$$\Psi = (h - h_L) - T_L(s - s_L) + V^2/2 + gZ$$

where  $V$  is velocity,  $g$  is acceleration of gravity,  $Z$  is elevation and  $\Psi$  is availability function.

$$w_{\max} = w_{\text{rev}} = \Psi_1 - \Psi_2$$

### Gibbs Free Energy, $\Delta G$

Energy released or absorbed in a reaction occurring reversibly at constant pressure and temperature.

### Helmholtz Free Energy, $\Delta A$

Energy released or absorbed in a reaction occurring reversibly at constant volume and temperature.

### Irreversibility, $I$

$$I = w_{\text{rev}} - w_{\text{actual}} = T_L \Delta s_{\text{total}}$$

### Heats of Reaction

For a chemical reaction the associated energy can be defined in terms of heats of formation of the individual species  $\Delta H_f^\circ$  at the standard state

$$(\Delta H_r^\circ) = \sum_{\text{products}} \nu_i (\Delta H_f^\circ)_i - \sum_{\text{reactants}} \nu_i (\Delta H_f^\circ)_i$$

$\nu_i$  = stoichiometric coefficient for species " $i$ "

The standard state is 25°C and 1 bar.

The heat of formation is defined as the enthalpy change associated with the formation of a compound from its atomic species as they normally occur in nature [i.e.,  $\text{O}_2(\text{g})$ ,  $\text{H}_2(\text{g})$ ,  $\text{C}(\text{solid})$ , etc.]

The heat of reaction varies with the temperature as follows:

$$\Delta H_r^\circ(T) = \Delta H_r^\circ(T_{\text{ref}}) + \int_{T_{\text{ref}}}^T \Delta c_p dT$$

where  $T_{\text{ref}}$  is some reference temperature (typically 25°C or 298 K), and:

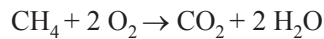
$$\Delta c_p = \sum_{\text{products}} \nu_i c_{p,i} - \sum_{\text{reactants}} \nu_i c_{p,i}$$

and  $c_{p,i}$  is the molar heat capacity of component  $i$ .

The heat of reaction for a combustion process using oxygen is also known as the heat of combustion. The principal products are  $\text{CO}_2(\text{g})$  and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}(\text{l})$ .

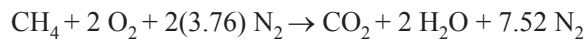
## Combustion Processes

First, the combustion equation should be written and balanced. For example, for the stoichiometric combustion of methane in oxygen:



### Combustion in Air

For each mole of oxygen, there will be 3.76 moles of nitrogen and other gases that compose air. For stoichiometric combustion of methane in air:



### Combustion in Excess Air

The excess oxygen appears as oxygen on the right side of the combustion equation.

### Incomplete Combustion

Some carbon is burned to create carbon monoxide (CO).

$$\text{Molar Air-Fuel Ratio, } \overline{A/F} = \frac{\text{No. of moles of air}}{\text{No. of moles of fuel}}$$

$$\text{Air-Fuel Ratio, } A/F = \frac{\text{Mass of air}}{\text{Mass of fuel}} = (\overline{A/F}) \left( \frac{M_{\text{air}}}{M_{\text{fuel}}} \right)$$

*Stoichiometric* (theoretical) air-fuel ratio is the air-fuel ratio calculated from the stoichiometric combustion equation.

$$\text{Percent Theoretical Air} = \frac{(A/F)_{\text{actual}}}{(A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}} \times 100$$

$$\text{Percent Excess Air} = \frac{(A/F)_{\text{actual}} - (A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}}{(A/F)_{\text{stoichiometric}}} \times 100$$

## Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium (VLE)

### Henry's Law at Constant Temperature

At equilibrium, the partial pressure of a gas is proportional to its concentration in a liquid. Henry's Law is valid for low concentrations; i.e.,  $x \approx 0$ .

$$P_i = Py_i = hx_i$$

where

$h$  = Henry's Law constant

$P_i$  = partial pressure of a gas in contact with a liquid

$x_i$  = mol fraction of the gas in the liquid

$y_i$  = mol fraction of the gas in the vapor

$P$  = total pressure

### Raoult's Law for Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium

Valid for concentrations near 1; i.e.,  $x_i \approx 1$  at low pressure (ideal gas behavior)

$$P_i = x_i P_i^*$$

where

$P_i$  = partial pressure of component  $i$

$x_i$  = mol fraction of component  $i$  in the liquid

$P_i^*$  = vapor pressure of pure component  $i$  at the temperature of the mixture

## Rigorous Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium

For a multicomponent mixture at equilibrium

$$\hat{f}_i^V = \hat{f}_i^L$$

where

$\hat{f}_i^V$  = fugacity of component  $i$  in the vapor phase

$\hat{f}_i^L$  = fugacity of component  $i$  in the liquid phase

Fugacities of component  $i$  in a mixture are commonly calculated in the following ways:

For a liquid  $\hat{f}_i^L = x_i \gamma_i f_i^L$

where

$x_i$  = mole fraction of component  $i$

$\gamma_i$  = activity coefficient of component  $i$

$f_i^L$  = fugacity of pure liquid component  $i$

For a vapor  $\hat{f}_i^V = y_i \hat{\Phi}_i P$

where

$y_i$  = mole fraction of component  $i$  in the vapor

$\hat{\Phi}_i$  = fugacity coefficient of component  $i$  in the vapor

$P$  = system pressure

The activity coefficient  $\gamma_i$  is a correction for liquid phase nonideality. Many models have been proposed for  $\gamma_i$  such as the Van Laar model:

$$\ln \gamma_1 = A_{12} \left( 1 + \frac{A_{12} x_1}{A_{21} x_2} \right)^{-2}$$

$$\ln \gamma_2 = A_{21} \left( 1 + \frac{A_{21} x_2}{A_{12} x_1} \right)^{-2}$$

where

$\gamma_1$  = activity coefficient of component 1 in a two-component system

$\gamma_2$  = activity coefficient of component 2 in a two-component system

$A_{12}, A_{21}$  = constants, typically fitted from experimental data

The pure component fugacity is calculated as:

$$f_i^L = \Phi_i^{\text{sat}} P_i^{\text{sat}} \exp \left\{ v_i^L (P - P_i^{\text{sat}}) / (RT) \right\}$$

where

$\Phi_i^{\text{sat}}$  = fugacity coefficient of pure saturated  $i$

$P_i^{\text{sat}}$  = saturation pressure of pure  $i$

$v_i^L$  = specific volume of pure liquid  $i$

$R$  = Ideal Gas Law Constant

$T$  = absolute temperature

Often at system pressures close to atmospheric:

$$f_i^L \cong P_i^{\text{sat}}$$

The fugacity coefficient  $\hat{\Phi}_i$  for component  $i$  in the vapor is calculated from an equation of state (e.g., Virial).

Sometimes it is approximated by a pure component value from a correlation. Often at pressures close to atmospheric,  $\hat{\Phi}_i = 1$ .

The fugacity coefficient is a correction for vapor phase nonideality.

For sparingly soluble gases the liquid phase is sometimes represented as:

$$\hat{f}_i^L = x_i k_i$$

where  $k_i$  is a constant set by experiment (Henry's constant). Sometimes other concentration units are used besides mole fraction with a corresponding change in  $k_i$ .

## Phase Relations

*Clapeyron Equation* for phase transitions:

$$\left(\frac{dP}{dT}\right)_{\text{sat}} = \frac{h_{fg}}{T v_{fg}} = \frac{s_{fg}}{v_{fg}}$$

where

$h_{fg}$  = enthalpy change for phase transitions

$v_{fg}$  = volume change

$s_{fg}$  = entropy change

$T$  = absolute temperature

$(dP/dT)_{\text{sat}}$  = slope of phase transition (e.g., vapor-liquid) saturation line

*Clausius-Clapeyron Equation*

This equation results if it is assumed that (1) the volume change ( $v_{fg}$ ) can be replaced with the vapor volume ( $v_g$ ), (2) the latter can be replaced with  $\frac{RT}{P}$  from the ideal gas law, and (3)  $h_{fg}$  is independent of the temperature ( $T$ ).

$$\ln_e \left( \frac{P_2}{P_1} \right) = \frac{h_{fg}}{R} \cdot \frac{T_2 - T_1}{T_1 T_2}$$

*Gibbs Phase Rule (non-reacting systems)*

$$P + F = C + 2$$

where

$P$  = number of phases making up a system

$F$  = degrees of freedom

$C$  = number of components in a system

## Chemical Reaction Equilibria

### Definitions

*Conversion* – moles reacted/moles fed

*Extent* – For each species in a reaction, the mole balance may be written:

$$\text{moles}_{i,\text{out}} = \text{moles}_{i,\text{in}} + v_i \xi$$

where  $\xi$  is the extent in moles and  $v_i$  is the stoichiometric coefficient of the  $i$ th species, the sign of which is negative for reactants and positive for products.

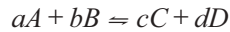
*Limiting reactant* – Reactant that would be consumed first if the reaction proceeded to completion. Other reactants are excess reactants.

*Selectivity* – Moles of desired product formed/moles of undesired product formed.

*Yield* – Moles of desired product formed/moles that would have been formed if there were no side reactions and the limiting reactant had reacted completely.

## Chemical Reaction Equilibrium

For the reaction



$$\Delta G_{\text{r}} = -RT \ln K_a$$

$$K_a = \frac{(\hat{a}_C^c)(\hat{a}_D^d)}{(\hat{a}_A^a)(\hat{a}_B^b)} = \prod_i (\hat{a}_i)^{\nu_i}$$

where

$$\hat{a}_i = \text{activity of component } i = \frac{\hat{f}_i}{f_i^\circ}$$

$f_i^\circ$  = fugacity of pure  $i$  in its standard state at the equilibrium reaction temperature  $T$

$\nu_i$  = stoichiometric coefficient of component  $i$

$\Delta G^\circ$  = standard Gibbs energy change of reaction

$K_a$  = chemical equilibrium constant

For mixtures of ideal gases:

$f_i^\circ$  = unit pressure, often 1 bar

$$\hat{f}_i = y_i P = p_i$$

where  $p_i$  = partial pressure of component  $i$

$$\text{Then } K_a = K_p = \frac{(p_C^c)(p_D^d)}{(p_A^a)(p_B^b)} = P^{c+d-a-b} \frac{(y_C^c)(y_D^d)}{(y_A^a)(y_B^b)}$$

For solids  $\hat{a}_i = 1$

For liquids  $\hat{a}_i = x_i \gamma_i$

The effect of temperature on the equilibrium constant is

$$\frac{d \ln K}{dT} = \frac{\Delta H^\circ}{RT^2}$$

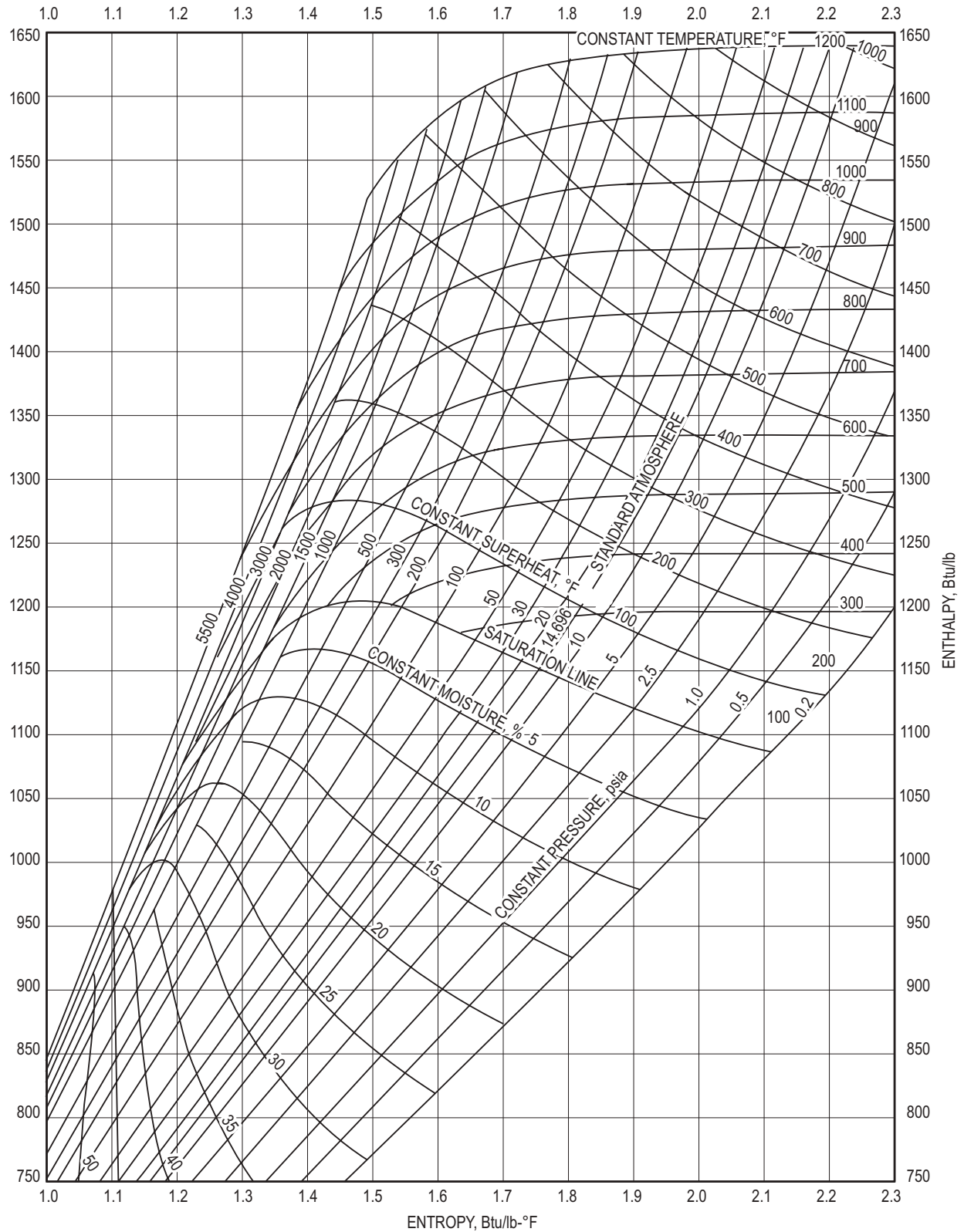
where  $\Delta H^\circ$  = standard enthalpy change of reaction

# Thermodynamics

| STEAM TABLES                        |                                    |                                       |                        |                          |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------|------------------------|
| Saturated Water - Temperature Table |                                    |                                       |                        |                          |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |
| Temp.<br>°C<br>$T$                  | Sat.<br>Press.<br>kPa<br>$P_{sat}$ | Specific Volume<br>m <sup>3</sup> /kg |                        | Internal Energy<br>kJ/kg |                   |                        | Enthalpy<br>kJ/kg       |                   |                        | Entropy<br>kJ/(kg·K)    |                   |                        |
|                                     |                                    | Sat.<br>liquid<br>$v_f$               | Sat.<br>vapor<br>$v_g$ | Sat.<br>liquid<br>$u_f$  | Evap.<br>$u_{fg}$ | Sat.<br>vapor<br>$u_g$ | Sat.<br>liquid<br>$h_f$ | Evap.<br>$h_{fg}$ | Sat.<br>vapor<br>$h_g$ | Sat.<br>liquid<br>$s_f$ | Evap.<br>$s_{fg}$ | Sat.<br>vapor<br>$s_g$ |
| 0.01                                | 0.6113                             | 0.001 000                             | 206.14                 | 0.00                     | 2375.3            | 2375.3                 | 0.01                    | 2501.3            | 2501.4                 | 0.0000                  | 9.1562            | 9.1562                 |
| 5                                   | 0.8721                             | 0.001 000                             | 147.12                 | 20.97                    | 2361.3            | 2382.3                 | 20.98                   | 2489.6            | 2510.6                 | 0.0761                  | 8.9496            | 9.0257                 |
| 10                                  | 1.2276                             | 0.001 000                             | 106.38                 | 42.00                    | 2347.2            | 2389.2                 | 42.01                   | 2477.7            | 2519.8                 | 0.1510                  | 8.7498            | 8.9008                 |
| 15                                  | 1.7051                             | 0.001 001                             | 77.93                  | 62.99                    | 2333.1            | 2396.1                 | 62.99                   | 2465.9            | 2528.9                 | 0.2245                  | 8.5569            | 8.7814                 |
| 20                                  | 2.339                              | 0.001 002                             | 57.79                  | 83.95                    | 2319.0            | 2402.9                 | 83.96                   | 2454.1            | 2538.1                 | 0.2966                  | 8.3706            | 8.6672                 |
| 25                                  | 3.169                              | 0.001 003                             | 43.36                  | 104.88                   | 2304.9            | 2409.8                 | 104.89                  | 2442.3            | 2547.2                 | 0.3674                  | 8.1905            | 8.5580                 |
| 30                                  | 4.246                              | 0.001 004                             | 32.89                  | 125.78                   | 2290.8            | 2416.6                 | 125.79                  | 2430.5            | 2556.3                 | 0.4369                  | 8.0164            | 8.4533                 |
| 35                                  | 5.628                              | 0.001 006                             | 25.22                  | 146.67                   | 2276.7            | 2423.4                 | 146.68                  | 2418.6            | 2565.3                 | 0.5053                  | 7.8478            | 8.3531                 |
| 40                                  | 7.384                              | 0.001 008                             | 19.52                  | 167.56                   | 2262.6            | 2430.1                 | 167.57                  | 2406.7            | 2574.3                 | 0.5725                  | 7.6845            | 8.2570                 |
| 45                                  | 9.593                              | 0.001 010                             | 15.26                  | 188.44                   | 2248.4            | 2436.8                 | 188.45                  | 2394.8            | 2583.2                 | 0.6387                  | 7.5261            | 8.1648                 |
| 50                                  | 12.349                             | 0.001 012                             | 12.03                  | 209.32                   | 2234.2            | 2443.5                 | 209.33                  | 2382.7            | 2592.1                 | 0.7038                  | 7.3725            | 8.0763                 |
| 55                                  | 15.758                             | 0.001 015                             | 9.568                  | 230.21                   | 2219.9            | 2450.1                 | 230.23                  | 2370.7            | 2600.9                 | 0.7679                  | 7.2234            | 7.9913                 |
| 60                                  | 19.940                             | 0.001 017                             | 7.671                  | 251.11                   | 2205.5            | 2456.6                 | 251.13                  | 2358.5            | 2609.6                 | 0.8312                  | 7.0784            | 7.9096                 |
| 65                                  | 25.03                              | 0.001 020                             | 6.197                  | 272.02                   | 2191.1            | 2463.1                 | 272.06                  | 2346.2            | 2618.3                 | 0.8935                  | 6.9375            | 7.8310                 |
| 70                                  | 31.19                              | 0.001 023                             | 5.042                  | 292.95                   | 2176.6            | 2569.6                 | 292.98                  | 2333.8            | 2626.8                 | 0.9549                  | 6.8004            | 7.7553                 |
| 75                                  | 38.58                              | 0.001 026                             | 4.131                  | 313.90                   | 2162.0            | 2475.9                 | 313.93                  | 2321.4            | 2635.3                 | 1.0155                  | 6.6669            | 7.6824                 |
| 80                                  | 47.39                              | 0.001 029                             | 3.407                  | 334.86                   | 2147.4            | 2482.2                 | 334.91                  | 2308.8            | 2643.7                 | 1.0753                  | 6.5369            | 7.6122                 |
| 85                                  | 57.83                              | 0.001 033                             | 2.828                  | 355.84                   | 2132.6            | 2488.4                 | 355.90                  | 2296.0            | 2651.9                 | 1.1343                  | 6.4102            | 7.5445                 |
| 90                                  | 70.14                              | 0.001 036                             | 2.361                  | 376.85                   | 2117.7            | 2494.5                 | 376.92                  | 2283.2            | 2660.1                 | 1.1925                  | 6.2866            | 7.4791                 |
| 95                                  | 84.55                              | 0.001 040                             | 1.982                  | 397.88                   | 2102.7            | 2500.6                 | 397.96                  | 2270.2            | 2668.1                 | 1.2500                  | 6.1659            | 7.4159                 |
|                                     | MPa                                |                                       |                        |                          |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |                         |                   |                        |
| 100                                 | 0.101 35                           | 0.001 044                             | 1.6729                 | 418.94                   | 2087.6            | 2506.5                 | 419.04                  | 2257.0            | 2676.1                 | 1.3069                  | 6.0480            | 7.3549                 |
| 105                                 | 0.120 82                           | 0.001 048                             | 1.4194                 | 440.02                   | 2072.3            | 2512.4                 | 440.15                  | 2243.7            | 2683.8                 | 1.3630                  | 5.9328            | 7.2958                 |
| 110                                 | 0.143 27                           | 0.001 052                             | 1.2102                 | 461.14                   | 2057.0            | 2518.1                 | 461.30                  | 2230.2            | 2691.5                 | 1.4185                  | 5.8202            | 7.2387                 |
| 115                                 | 0.169 06                           | 0.001 056                             | 1.0366                 | 482.30                   | 2041.4            | 2523.7                 | 482.48                  | 2216.5            | 2699.0                 | 1.4734                  | 5.7100            | 7.1833                 |
| 120                                 | 0.198 53                           | 0.001 060                             | 0.8919                 | 503.50                   | 2025.8            | 2529.3                 | 503.71                  | 2202.6            | 2706.3                 | 1.5276                  | 5.6020            | 7.1296                 |
| 125                                 | 0.2321                             | 0.001 065                             | 0.7706                 | 524.74                   | 2009.9            | 2534.6                 | 524.99                  | 2188.5            | 2713.5                 | 1.5813                  | 5.4962            | 7.0775                 |
| 130                                 | 0.2701                             | 0.001 070                             | 0.6685                 | 546.02                   | 1993.9            | 2539.9                 | 546.31                  | 2174.2            | 2720.5                 | 1.6344                  | 5.3925            | 7.0269                 |
| 135                                 | 0.3130                             | 0.001 075                             | 0.5822                 | 567.35                   | 1977.7            | 2545.0                 | 567.69                  | 2159.6            | 2727.3                 | 1.6870                  | 5.2907            | 6.9777                 |
| 140                                 | 0.3613                             | 0.001 080                             | 0.5089                 | 588.74                   | 1961.3            | 2550.0                 | 589.13                  | 2144.7            | 2733.9                 | 1.7391                  | 5.1908            | 6.9299                 |
| 145                                 | 0.4154                             | 0.001 085                             | 0.4463                 | 610.18                   | 1944.7            | 2554.9                 | 610.63                  | 2129.6            | 2740.3                 | 1.7907                  | 5.0926            | 6.8833                 |
| 150                                 | 0.4758                             | 0.001 091                             | 0.3928                 | 631.68                   | 1927.9            | 2559.5                 | 632.20                  | 2114.3            | 2746.5                 | 1.8418                  | 4.9960            | 6.8379                 |
| 155                                 | 0.5431                             | 0.001 096                             | 0.3468                 | 653.24                   | 1910.8            | 2564.1                 | 653.84                  | 2098.6            | 2752.4                 | 1.8925                  | 4.9010            | 6.7935                 |
| 160                                 | 0.6178                             | 0.001 102                             | 0.3071                 | 674.87                   | 1893.5            | 2568.4                 | 675.55                  | 2082.6            | 2758.1                 | 1.9427                  | 4.8075            | 6.7502                 |
| 165                                 | 0.7005                             | 0.001 108                             | 0.2727                 | 696.56                   | 1876.0            | 2572.5                 | 697.34                  | 2066.2            | 2763.5                 | 1.9925                  | 4.7153            | 6.7078                 |
| 170                                 | 0.7917                             | 0.001 114                             | 0.2428                 | 718.33                   | 1858.1            | 2576.5                 | 719.21                  | 2049.5            | 2768.7                 | 2.0419                  | 4.6244            | 6.6663                 |
| 175                                 | 0.8920                             | 0.001 121                             | 0.2168                 | 740.17                   | 1840.0            | 2580.2                 | 741.17                  | 2032.4            | 2773.6                 | 2.0909                  | 4.5347            | 6.6256                 |
| 180                                 | 1.0021                             | 0.001 127                             | 0.194 05               | 762.09                   | 1821.6            | 2583.7                 | 763.22                  | 2015.0            | 2778.2                 | 2.1396                  | 4.4461            | 6.5857                 |
| 185                                 | 1.1227                             | 0.001 134                             | 0.174 09               | 784.10                   | 1802.9            | 2587.0                 | 785.37                  | 1997.1            | 2782.4                 | 2.1879                  | 4.3586            | 6.5465                 |
| 190                                 | 1.2544                             | 0.001 141                             | 0.156 54               | 806.19                   | 1783.8            | 2590.0                 | 807.62                  | 1978.8            | 2786.4                 | 2.2359                  | 4.2720            | 6.5079                 |
| 195                                 | 1.3978                             | 0.001 149                             | 0.141 05               | 828.37                   | 1764.4            | 2592.8                 | 829.98                  | 1960.0            | 2790.0                 | 2.2835                  | 4.1863            | 6.4698                 |
| 200                                 | 1.5538                             | 0.001 157                             | 0.127 36               | 850.65                   | 1744.7            | 2595.3                 | 852.45                  | 1940.7            | 2793.2                 | 2.3309                  | 4.1014            | 6.4323                 |
| 205                                 | 1.7230                             | 0.001 164                             | 0.115 21               | 873.04                   | 1724.5            | 2597.5                 | 875.04                  | 1921.0            | 2796.0                 | 2.3780                  | 4.0172            | 6.3952                 |
| 210                                 | 1.9062                             | 0.001 173                             | 0.104 41               | 895.53                   | 1703.9            | 2599.5                 | 897.76                  | 1900.7            | 2798.5                 | 2.4248                  | 3.9337            | 6.3585                 |
| 215                                 | 2.104                              | 0.001 181                             | 0.094 79               | 918.14                   | 1682.9            | 2601.1                 | 920.62                  | 1879.9            | 2800.5                 | 2.4714                  | 3.8507            | 6.3221                 |
| 220                                 | 2.318                              | 0.001 190                             | 0.086 19               | 940.87                   | 1661.5            | 2602.4                 | 943.62                  | 1858.5            | 2802.1                 | 2.5178                  | 3.7683            | 6.2861                 |
| 225                                 | 2.548                              | 0.001 199                             | 0.078 49               | 963.73                   | 1639.6            | 2603.3                 | 966.78                  | 1836.5            | 2803.3                 | 2.5639                  | 3.6863            | 6.2503                 |
| 230                                 | 2.795                              | 0.001 209                             | 0.071 58               | 986.74                   | 1617.2            | 2603.9                 | 990.12                  | 1813.8            | 2804.0                 | 2.6099                  | 3.6047            | 6.2146                 |
| 235                                 | 3.060                              | 0.001 219                             | 0.065 37               | 1009.89                  | 1594.2            | 2604.1                 | 1013.62                 | 1790.5            | 2804.2                 | 2.6558                  | 3.5233            | 6.1791                 |
| 240                                 | 3.344                              | 0.001 229                             | 0.059 76               | 1033.21                  | 1570.8            | 2604.0                 | 1037.32                 | 1766.5            | 2803.8                 | 2.7015                  | 3.4422            | 6.1437                 |
| 245                                 | 3.648                              | 0.001 240                             | 0.054 71               | 1056.71                  | 1546.7            | 2603.4                 | 1061.23                 | 1741.7            | 2803.0                 | 2.7472                  | 3.3612            | 6.1083                 |
| 250                                 | 3.973                              | 0.001 251                             | 0.050 13               | 1080.39                  | 1522.0            | 2602.4                 | 1085.36                 | 1716.2            | 2801.5                 | 2.7927                  | 3.2802            | 6.0730                 |
| 255                                 | 4.319                              | 0.001 263                             | 0.045 98               | 1104.28                  | 1506.7            | 2600.9                 | 1109.73                 | 1689.8            | 2799.5                 | 2.8383                  | 3.1992            | 6.0375                 |
| 260                                 | 4.688                              | 0.001 276                             | 0.042 21               | 1128.39                  | 1470.6            | 2599.0                 | 1134.37                 | 1662.5            | 2796.9                 | 2.8838                  | 3.1181            | 6.0019                 |
| 265                                 | 5.081                              | 0.001 289                             | 0.038 77               | 1152.74                  | 1443.9            | 2596.6                 | 1159.28                 | 1634.4            | 2793.6                 | 2.9294                  | 3.0368            | 5.9662                 |
| 270                                 | 5.499                              | 0.001 302                             | 0.035 64               | 1177.36                  | 1416.3            | 2593.7                 | 1184.51                 | 1605.2            | 2789.7                 | 2.9751                  | 2.9551            | 5.9301                 |
| 275                                 | 5.942                              | 0.001 317                             | 0.032 79               | 1202.25                  | 1387.9            | 2590.2                 | 1210.07                 | 1574.9            | 2785.0                 | 3.0208                  | 2.8730            | 5.8938                 |
| 280                                 | 6.412                              | 0.001 332                             | 0.030 17               | 1227.46                  | 1358.7            | 2586.1                 | 1235.99                 | 1543.6            | 2779.6                 | 3.0668                  | 2.7903            | 5.8571                 |
| 285                                 | 6.909                              | 0.001 348                             | 0.027 77               | 1253.00                  | 1328.4            | 2581.4                 | 1262.31                 | 1511.0            | 2773.3                 | 3.1130                  | 2.7070            | 5.8199                 |
| 290                                 | 7.436                              | 0.001 366                             | 0.025 57               | 1278.92                  | 1297.1            | 2576.0                 | 1289.07                 | 1477.1            | 2766.2                 | 3.1594                  | 2.6227            | 5.7821                 |
| 295                                 | 7.993                              | 0.001 384                             | 0.023 54               | 1305.2                   | 1264.7            | 2569.9                 | 1316.3                  | 1441.8            | 2758.1                 | 3.2062                  | 2.5375            | 5.7437                 |
| 300                                 | 8.581                              | 0.001 404                             | 0.021 67               | 1332.0                   | 1231.0            | 2563.0                 | 1344.0                  | 1404.9            | 2749.0                 | 3.2534                  | 2.4511            | 5.7045                 |
| 305                                 | 9.202                              | 0.001 425                             | 0.019 948              | 1359.3                   | 1195.9            | 2555.2                 | 1372.4                  | 1366.4            | 2738.7                 | 3.3010                  | 2.3633            | 5.6643                 |
| 310                                 | 9.856                              | 0.001 447                             | 0.018 350              | 1387.1                   | 1159.4            | 2546.4                 | 1401.3                  | 1326.0            | 2727.3                 | 3.3493                  | 2.2737            | 5.6230                 |
| 315                                 | 10.547                             | 0.001 472                             | 0.016 867              | 1415.5                   | 1121.1            | 2536.6                 | 1431.0                  | 1283.5            | 2714.5                 | 3.3982                  | 2.1821            | 5.5804                 |
| 320                                 | 11.274                             | 0.001 499                             | 0.015 488              | 1444.6                   | 1080.9            | 2525.5                 | 1461.5                  | 1238.6            | 2700.1                 | 3.4480                  | 2.0882            | 5.5362                 |
| 330                                 | 12.845                             | 0.001 561                             | 0.012 996              | 1505.3                   | 993.7             | 2498.9                 | 1525.3                  | 1140.6            | 2665.9                 | 3.5507                  | 1.8909            | 5.4417                 |
| 340                                 | 14.586                             | 0.001 638                             | 0.010 797              | 1570.3                   | 894.3             | 2464.6                 | 1594.2                  | 1027.9            | 2622.0                 | 3.6594                  | 1.6763            | 5.3357                 |
| 350                                 | 16.513                             | 0.001 740                             | 0.008 813              | 1641.9                   | 776.6             | 2418.4                 | 1670.6                  | 893.4             | 2563.9                 | 3.7777                  | 1.4335            | 5.2112                 |
| 360                                 | 18.651                             | 0.001 893                             | 0.006 945              | 1725.2                   | 626.3             | 2351.5                 | 1760.5                  | 720.3             | 2481.0                 | 3.9147                  | 1.1379            | 5.0526                 |
| 370                                 | 21.03                              | 0.002 213                             | 0.004 925              | 1844.0                   | 384.5             | 2228.5                 | 1890.5                  | 441.6             | 2332.1                 | 4.1106                  | 0.6865            | 4.7971                 |
| 374.14                              | 22.09                              | 0.003 155                             | 0.003 155              | 2029.6                   | 0                 | 2029.6                 | 2099.3                  | 0                 | 2099.3                 | 4.4298                  | 0                 | 4.4298                 |

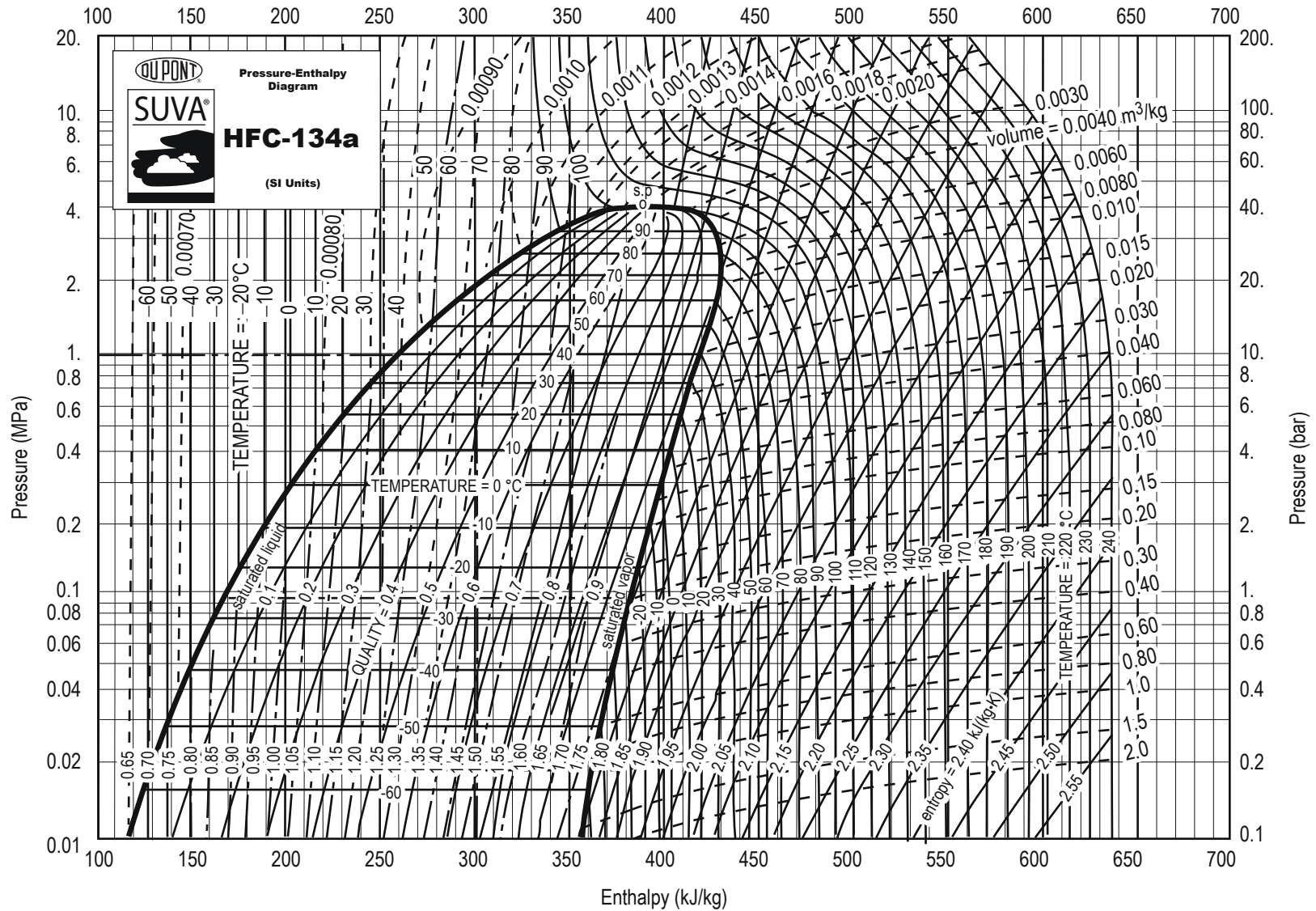
| Superheated Water Tables          |                           |               |               |                  |                                   |               |               |                  |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------|---------------|------------------|
| $T$<br>Temp.<br>°C                | $v$<br>m <sup>3</sup> /kg | $u$<br>kJ/kg  | $h$<br>kJ/kg  | $s$<br>kJ/(kg·K) | $v$<br>m <sup>3</sup> /kg         | $u$<br>kJ/kg  | $h$<br>kJ/kg  | $s$<br>kJ/(kg·K) |
| $p = 0.01 \text{ MPa (45.81°C)}$  |                           |               |               |                  | $p = 0.05 \text{ MPa (81.33°C)}$  |               |               |                  |
| Sat.                              | 14.674                    | 2437.9        | 2584.7        | 8.1502           | 3.240                             | 2483.9        | 2645.9        | 7.5939           |
| 50                                | 14.869                    | 2443.9        | 2592.6        | 8.1749           |                                   |               |               |                  |
| 100                               | 17.196                    | 2515.5        | 2687.5        | 8.4479           | 3.418                             | 2511.6        | 2682.5        | 7.6947           |
| 150                               | 19.512                    | 2587.9        | 2783.0        | 8.6882           | 3.889                             | 2585.6        | 2780.1        | 7.9401           |
| <b>200</b>                        | <b>21.825</b>             | <b>2661.3</b> | <b>2879.5</b> | <b>8.9038</b>    | <b>4.356</b>                      | <b>2659.9</b> | <b>2877.7</b> | <b>8.1580</b>    |
| 250                               | 24.136                    | 2736.0        | 2977.3        | 9.1002           | 4.820                             | 2735.0        | 2976.0        | 8.3556           |
| 300                               | 26.445                    | 2812.1        | 3076.5        | 9.2813           | 5.284                             | 2811.3        | 3075.5        | 8.5373           |
| 400                               | 31.063                    | 2968.9        | 3279.6        | 9.6077           | 6.209                             | 2968.5        | 3278.9        | 8.8642           |
| 500                               | 35.679                    | 3132.3        | 3489.1        | 9.8978           | 7.134                             | 3132.0        | 3488.7        | 9.1546           |
| <b>600</b>                        | <b>40.295</b>             | <b>3302.5</b> | <b>3705.4</b> | <b>10.1608</b>   | <b>8.057</b>                      | <b>3302.2</b> | <b>3705.1</b> | <b>9.4178</b>    |
| 700                               | 44.911                    | 3479.6        | 3928.7        | 10.4028          | 8.981                             | 3479.4        | 3928.5        | 9.6599           |
| 800                               | 49.526                    | 3663.8        | 4159.0        | 10.6281          | 9.904                             | 3663.6        | 4158.9        | 9.8852           |
| 900                               | 54.141                    | 3855.0        | 4396.4        | 10.8396          | 10.828                            | 3854.9        | 4396.3        | 10.0967          |
| 1000                              | 58.757                    | 4053.0        | 4640.6        | 11.0393          | 11.751                            | 4052.9        | 4640.5        | 10.2964          |
| <b>1100</b>                       | <b>63.372</b>             | <b>4257.5</b> | <b>4891.2</b> | <b>11.2287</b>   | <b>12.674</b>                     | <b>4257.4</b> | <b>4891.1</b> | <b>10.4859</b>   |
| 1200                              | 67.987                    | 4467.9        | 5147.8        | 11.4091          | 13.597                            | 4467.8        | 5147.7        | 10.6662          |
| 1300                              | 72.602                    | 4683.7        | 5409.7        | 11.5811          | 14.521                            | 4683.6        | 5409.6        | 10.8382          |
| $p = 0.10 \text{ MPa (99.63°C)}$  |                           |               |               |                  | $p = 0.20 \text{ MPa (120.23°C)}$ |               |               |                  |
| Sat.                              | 1.6940                    | 2506.1        | 2675.5        | 7.3594           | 0.8857                            | 2529.5        | 2706.7        | 7.1272           |
| 100                               | 1.6958                    | 2506.7        | 2676.2        | 7.3614           |                                   |               |               |                  |
| 150                               | 1.9364                    | 2582.8        | 2776.4        | 7.6134           | 0.9596                            | 2576.9        | 2768.8        | 7.2795           |
| 200                               | 2.172                     | 2658.1        | 2875.3        | 7.8343           | 1.0803                            | 2654.4        | 2870.5        | 7.5066           |
| <b>250</b>                        | <b>2.406</b>              | <b>2733.7</b> | <b>2974.3</b> | <b>8.0333</b>    | <b>1.1988</b>                     | <b>2731.2</b> | <b>2971.0</b> | <b>7.7086</b>    |
| 300                               | 2.639                     | 2810.4        | 3074.3        | 8.2158           | 1.3162                            | 2808.6        | 3071.8        | 7.8926           |
| 400                               | 3.103                     | 2967.9        | 3278.2        | 8.5435           | 1.5493                            | 2966.7        | 3276.6        | 8.2218           |
| 500                               | 3.565                     | 3131.6        | 3488.1        | 8.8342           | 1.7814                            | 3130.8        | 3487.1        | 8.5133           |
| 600                               | 4.028                     | 3301.9        | 3704.4        | 9.0976           | 2.013                             | 3301.4        | 3704.0        | 8.7770           |
| <b>700</b>                        | <b>4.490</b>              | <b>3479.2</b> | <b>3928.2</b> | <b>9.3398</b>    | <b>2.244</b>                      | <b>3478.8</b> | <b>3927.6</b> | <b>9.0194</b>    |
| 800                               | 4.952                     | 3663.5        | 4158.6        | 9.5652           | 2.475                             | 3663.1        | 4158.2        | 9.2449           |
| 900                               | 5.414                     | 3854.8        | 4396.1        | 9.7767           | 2.705                             | 3854.5        | 4395.8        | 9.4566           |
| 1000                              | 5.875                     | 4052.8        | 4640.3        | 9.9764           | 2.937                             | 4052.5        | 4640.0        | 9.6563           |
| 1100                              | 6.337                     | 4257.3        | 4891.0        | 10.1659          | 3.168                             | 4257.0        | 4890.7        | 9.8458           |
| <b>1200</b>                       | <b>6.799</b>              | <b>4467.7</b> | <b>5147.6</b> | <b>10.3463</b>   | <b>3.399</b>                      | <b>4467.5</b> | <b>5147.5</b> | <b>10.0262</b>   |
| 1300                              | 7.260                     | 4683.5        | 5409.5        | 10.5183          | 3.630                             | 4683.2        | 5409.3        | 10.1982          |
| $p = 0.40 \text{ MPa (143.63°C)}$ |                           |               |               |                  | $p = 0.60 \text{ MPa (158.85°C)}$ |               |               |                  |
| Sat.                              | 0.4625                    | 2553.6        | 2738.6        | 6.8959           | 0.3157                            | 2567.4        | 2756.8        | 6.7600           |
| 150                               | 0.4708                    | 2564.5        | 2752.8        | 6.9299           |                                   |               |               |                  |
| 200                               | 0.5342                    | 2646.8        | 2860.5        | 7.1706           | 0.3520                            | 2638.9        | 2850.1        | 6.9665           |
| 250                               | 0.5951                    | 2726.1        | 2964.2        | 7.3789           | 0.3938                            | 2720.9        | 2957.2        | 7.1816           |
| <b>300</b>                        | <b>0.6548</b>             | <b>2804.8</b> | <b>3066.8</b> | <b>7.5662</b>    | <b>0.4344</b>                     | <b>2801.0</b> | <b>3061.6</b> | <b>7.3724</b>    |
| 350                               | 0.7137                    | 2884.6        | 3170.1        | 7.7324           | 0.4742                            | 2881.2        | 3165.7        | 7.5464           |
| 400                               | 0.7726                    | 2964.4        | 3273.4        | 7.8985           | 0.5137                            | 2962.1        | 3270.3        | 7.7079           |
| 500                               | 0.8893                    | 3129.2        | 3484.9        | 8.1913           | 0.5920                            | 3127.6        | 3482.8        | 8.0021           |
| 600                               | 1.0055                    | 3300.2        | 3702.4        | 8.4558           | 0.6697                            | 3299.1        | 3700.9        | 8.2674           |
| <b>700</b>                        | <b>1.1215</b>             | <b>3477.9</b> | <b>3926.5</b> | <b>8.6987</b>    | <b>0.7472</b>                     | <b>3477.0</b> | <b>3925.3</b> | <b>8.5107</b>    |
| 800                               | 1.2372                    | 3662.4        | 4157.3        | 8.9244           | 0.8245                            | 3661.8        | 4156.5        | 8.7367           |
| 900                               | 1.3529                    | 3853.9        | 4395.1        | 9.1362           | 0.9017                            | 3853.4        | 4394.4        | 8.9486           |
| 1000                              | 1.4685                    | 4052.0        | 4639.4        | 9.3360           | 0.9788                            | 4051.5        | 4638.8        | 9.1485           |
| 1100                              | 1.5840                    | 4256.5        | 4890.2        | 9.5256           | 1.0559                            | 4256.1        | 4889.6        | 9.3381           |
| <b>1200</b>                       | <b>1.6996</b>             | <b>4467.0</b> | <b>5146.8</b> | <b>9.7060</b>    | <b>1.1330</b>                     | <b>4466.5</b> | <b>5146.3</b> | <b>9.5185</b>    |
| 1300                              | 1.8151                    | 4682.8        | 5408.8        | 9.8780           | 1.2101                            | 4682.3        | 5408.3        | 9.6906           |
| $p = 0.80 \text{ MPa (170.43°C)}$ |                           |               |               |                  | $p = 1.00 \text{ MPa (179.91°C)}$ |               |               |                  |
| Sat.                              | 0.2404                    | 2576.8        | 2769.1        | 6.6628           | 0.194 44                          | 2583.6        | 2778.1        | 6.5865           |
| 200                               | 0.2608                    | 2630.6        | 2839.3        | 6.8158           | 0.2060                            | 2621.9        | 2827.9        | 6.6940           |
| 250                               | 0.2931                    | 2715.5        | 2950.0        | 7.0384           | 0.2327                            | 2709.9        | 2942.6        | 6.9247           |
| 300                               | 0.3241                    | 2797.2        | 3056.5        | 7.2328           | 0.2579                            | 2793.2        | 3051.2        | 7.1229           |
| <b>350</b>                        | <b>0.3544</b>             | <b>2878.2</b> | <b>3161.7</b> | <b>7.4089</b>    | <b>0.2825</b>                     | <b>2875.2</b> | <b>3157.7</b> | <b>7.3011</b>    |
| 400                               | 0.3843                    | 2959.7        | 3267.1        | 7.5716           | 0.3066                            | 2957.3        | 3263.9        | 7.4651           |
| 500                               | 0.4433                    | 3126.0        | 3480.6        | 7.8673           | 0.3541                            | 3124.4        | 3478.5        | 7.7622           |
| 600                               | 0.5018                    | 3297.9        | 3699.4        | 8.1333           | 0.4011                            | 3296.8        | 3697.9        | 8.0290           |
| 700                               | 0.5601                    | 3476.2        | 3924.2        | 8.3770           | 0.4478                            | 3475.3        | 3923.1        | 8.2731           |
| <b>800</b>                        | <b>0.6181</b>             | <b>3661.1</b> | <b>4155.6</b> | <b>8.6033</b>    | <b>0.4943</b>                     | <b>3660.4</b> | <b>4154.7</b> | <b>8.4996</b>    |
| 900                               | 0.6761                    | 3852.8        | 4393.7        | 8.8153           | 0.5407                            | 3852.2        | 4392.9        | 8.7118           |
| 1000                              | 0.7340                    | 4051.0        | 4638.2        | 9.0153           | 0.5871                            | 4050.5        | 4637.6        | 8.9119           |
| 1100                              | 0.7919                    | 4255.6        | 4889.1        | 9.2050           | 0.6335                            | 4255.1        | 4888.6        | 9.1017           |
| 1200                              | 0.8497                    | 4466.1        | 5145.9        | 9.3855           | 0.6798                            | 4465.6        | 5145.4        | 9.2822           |
| <b>1300</b>                       | <b>0.9076</b>             | <b>4681.8</b> | <b>5407.9</b> | <b>9.5575</b>    | <b>0.7261</b>                     | <b>4681.3</b> | <b>5407.4</b> | <b>9.4543</b>    |

Mollier (h, s) Diagram for Steam

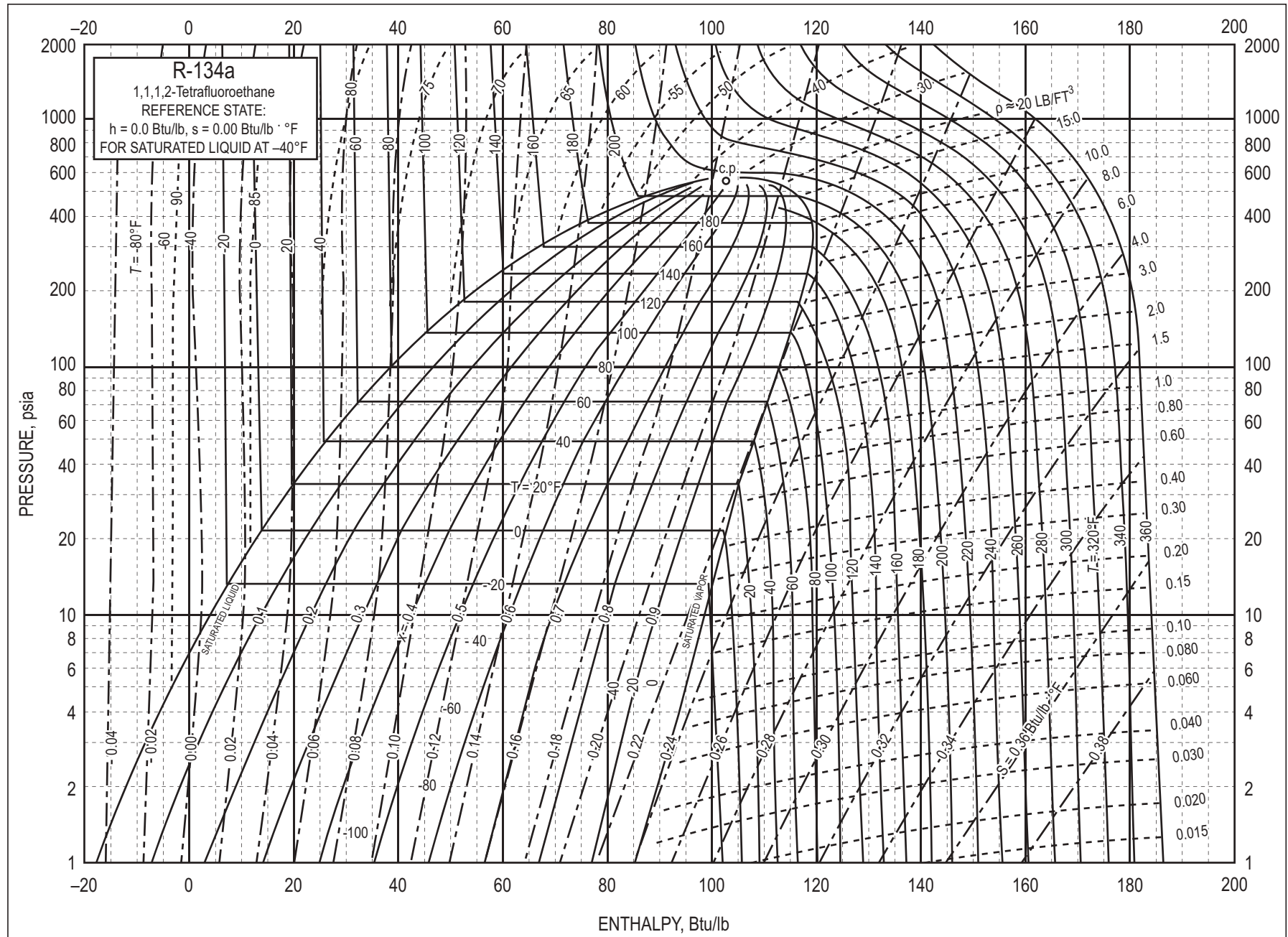


Source: Howell, Ronald, H., William J. Coad, Harry J. Sauer, Jr., *Principles of Heating, Ventilating and Air Conditioning*, 6th ed., American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, 2009, p. 21.

**P-h Diagram for Refrigerant HFC-134a**  
(metric units)



# Pressure Versus Enthalpy Curves for Refrigerant 134a (USCS units)



Refrigerant 134a (1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane) Properties of Saturated Liquid and Saturated Vapor

| Temp.,*<br>°F        | Pressure,<br>psia | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |         | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Temp.,*<br>°F        |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|----------------------|
|                      |                   | Liquid                         | Vapor                          | Liquid              | Vapor   | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  | Vapor                          | Liquid                               | Vapor   |                      |
| -153.94 <sup>a</sup> | 0.057             | 99.33                          | 568.59                         | -32.992             | 80.362  | -0.09154              | 0.27923 | 0.2829                                    | 0.1399 | 1.1637                         | 0.0840                               | 0.00178 | -153.94 <sup>a</sup> |
| -150.00              | 0.072             | 98.97                          | 452.12                         | -31.878             | 80.907  | -0.08791              | 0.27629 | 0.2830                                    | 0.1411 | 1.1623                         | 0.0832                               | 0.00188 | -150.00              |
| -140.00              | 0.129             | 98.05                          | 260.63                         | -29.046             | 82.304  | -0.07891              | 0.26941 | 0.2834                                    | 0.1443 | 1.1589                         | 0.0813                               | 0.00214 | -140.00              |
| -130.00              | 0.221             | 97.13                          | 156.50                         | -26.208             | 83.725  | -0.07017              | 0.26329 | 0.2842                                    | 0.1475 | 1.1559                         | 0.0794                               | 0.00240 | -130.00              |
| -120.00              | 0.365             | 96.20                          | 97.48                          | -23.360             | 85.168  | -0.06166              | 0.25784 | 0.2853                                    | 0.1508 | 1.1532                         | 0.0775                               | 0.00265 | -120.00              |
|                      |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                      |
| -110.00              | 0.583             | 95.27                          | 62.763                         | -20.500             | 86.629  | -0.05337              | 0.25300 | 0.2866                                    | 0.1540 | 1.1509                         | 0.0757                               | 0.00291 | -110.00              |
| -100.00              | 0.903             | 94.33                          | 41.637                         | -17.626             | 88.107  | -0.04527              | 0.24871 | 0.2881                                    | 0.1573 | 1.1490                         | 0.0739                               | 0.00317 | -100.00              |
| -90.00               | 1.359             | 93.38                          | 28.381                         | -14.736             | 89.599  | -0.03734              | 0.24490 | 0.2898                                    | 0.1607 | 1.1475                         | 0.0722                               | 0.00343 | -90.00               |
| -80.00               | 1.993             | 92.42                          | 19.825                         | -11.829             | 91.103  | -0.02959              | 0.24152 | 0.2916                                    | 0.1641 | 1.1465                         | 0.0705                               | 0.00369 | -80.00               |
| -75.00               | 2.392             | 91.94                          | 16.711                         | -10.368             | 91.858  | -0.02577              | 0.23998 | 0.2925                                    | 0.1658 | 1.1462                         | 0.0696                               | 0.00382 | -75.00               |
|                      |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                      |
| -70.00               | 2.854             | 91.46                          | 14.161                         | -8.903              | 92.614  | -0.02198              | 0.23854 | 0.2935                                    | 0.1676 | 1.1460                         | 0.0688                               | 0.00395 | -70.00               |
| -65.00               | 3.389             | 90.97                          | 12.060                         | -7.432              | 93.372  | -0.01824              | 0.23718 | 0.2945                                    | 0.1694 | 1.1459                         | 0.0680                               | 0.00408 | -65.00               |
| -60.00               | 4.002             | 90.49                          | 10.321                         | -5.957              | 94.131  | -0.01452              | 0.23590 | 0.2955                                    | 0.1713 | 1.1460                         | 0.0671                               | 0.00420 | -60.00               |
| -55.00               | 4.703             | 90.00                          | 8.873                          | -4.476              | 94.890  | -0.01085              | 0.23470 | 0.2965                                    | 0.1731 | 1.1462                         | 0.0663                               | 0.00433 | -55.00               |
| -50.00               | 5.501             | 89.50                          | 7.662                          | -2.989              | 95.650  | -0.00720              | 0.23358 | 0.2976                                    | 0.1751 | 1.1466                         | 0.0655                               | 0.00446 | -50.00               |
|                      |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                      |
| -45.00               | 6.406             | 89.00                          | 6.6438                         | -1.498              | 96.409  | -0.00358              | 0.23252 | 0.2987                                    | 0.1770 | 1.1471                         | 0.0647                               | 0.00460 | -45.00               |
| -40.00               | 7.427             | 88.50                          | 5.7839                         | 0.000               | 97.167  | 0.00000               | 0.23153 | 0.2999                                    | 0.1790 | 1.1478                         | 0.0639                               | 0.00473 | -40.00               |
| -35.00               | 8.576             | 88.00                          | 5.0544                         | 1.503               | 97.924  | 0.00356               | 0.23060 | 0.3010                                    | 0.1811 | 1.1486                         | 0.0632                               | 0.00486 | -35.00               |
| -30.00               | 9.862             | 87.49                          | 4.4330                         | 3.013               | 98.679  | 0.00708               | 0.22973 | 0.3022                                    | 0.1832 | 1.1496                         | 0.0624                               | 0.00499 | -30.00               |
| -25.00               | 11.299            | 86.98                          | 3.9014                         | 4.529               | 99.433  | 0.01058               | 0.22892 | 0.3035                                    | 0.1853 | 1.1508                         | 0.0616                               | 0.00512 | -25.00               |
|                      |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                      |
| -20.00               | 12.898            | 86.47                          | 3.4449                         | 6.051               | 100.184 | 0.01406               | 0.22816 | 0.3047                                    | 0.1875 | 1.1521                         | 0.0608                               | 0.00525 | -20.00               |
| -15.00               | 14.671            | 85.95                          | 3.0514                         | 7.580               | 100.932 | 0.01751               | 0.22744 | 0.3060                                    | 0.1898 | 1.1537                         | 0.0601                               | 0.00538 | -15.00               |
| -14.93 <sup>b</sup>  | 14.696            | 85.94                          | 3.0465                         | 7.600               | 100.942 | 0.01755               | 0.22743 | 0.3061                                    | 0.1898 | 1.1537                         | 0.0601                               | 0.00538 | -14.93 <sup>b</sup>  |
| -10.00               | 16.632            | 85.43                          | 2.7109                         | 9.115               | 101.677 | 0.02093               | 0.22678 | 0.3074                                    | 0.1921 | 1.1554                         | 0.0593                               | 0.00552 | -10.00               |
| -5.00                | 18.794            | 84.90                          | 2.4154                         | 10.657              | 102.419 | 0.02433               | 0.22615 | 0.3088                                    | 0.1945 | 1.1573                         | 0.0586                               | 0.00565 | -5.00                |

## Refrigerant 134a (1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane) Properties of Saturated Liquid and Saturated Vapor (cont'd)

| Temp.,*<br>°F | Pressure,<br>psia | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |         | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Temp.,*<br>°F |
|---------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|---------------|
|               |                   | Liquid                         | Vapor                          | Liquid              | Vapor   | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  |                                | Liquid                               | Vapor   |               |
| 0.00          | 21.171            | 84.37                          | 2.1579                         | 12.207              | 103.156 | 0.02771               | 0.22557 | 0.3102                                    | 0.1969 | 1.1595                         | 0.0578                               | 0.00578 | 0.00          |
| 5.00          | 23.777            | 83.83                          | 1.9330                         | 13.764              | 103.889 | 0.03107               | 0.22502 | 0.3117                                    | 0.1995 | 1.1619                         | 0.0571                               | 0.00592 | 5.00          |
| 10.00         | 26.628            | 83.29                          | 1.7357                         | 15.328              | 104.617 | 0.03440               | 0.22451 | 0.3132                                    | 0.2021 | 1.1645                         | 0.0564                               | 0.00605 | 10.00         |
| 15.00         | 29.739            | 82.74                          | 1.5623                         | 16.901              | 105.339 | 0.03772               | 0.22403 | 0.3147                                    | 0.2047 | 1.1674                         | 0.0556                               | 0.00619 | 15.00         |
| 20.00         | 33.124            | 82.19                          | 1.4094                         | 18.481              | 106.056 | 0.04101               | 0.22359 | 0.3164                                    | 0.2075 | 1.1705                         | 0.0549                               | 0.00632 | 20.00         |
|               |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |               |
| 25.00         | 36.800            | 81.63                          | 1.2742                         | 20.070              | 106.767 | 0.04429               | 0.22317 | 0.3181                                    | 0.2103 | 1.1740                         | 0.0542                               | 0.00646 | 25.00         |
| 30.00         | 40.784            | 81.06                          | 1.1543                         | 21.667              | 107.471 | 0.04755               | 0.22278 | 0.3198                                    | 0.2132 | 1.1777                         | 0.0535                               | 0.00660 | 30.00         |
| 35.00         | 45.092            | 80.49                          | 1.0478                         | 23.274              | 108.167 | 0.05079               | 0.22241 | 0.3216                                    | 0.2163 | 1.1818                         | 0.0528                               | 0.00674 | 35.00         |
| 40.00         | 49.741            | 79.90                          | 0.9528                         | 24.890              | 108.856 | 0.05402               | 0.22207 | 0.3235                                    | 0.2194 | 1.1862                         | 0.0521                               | 0.00688 | 40.00         |
| 45.00         | 54.749            | 79.32                          | 0.8680                         | 26.515              | 109.537 | 0.05724               | 0.22174 | 0.3255                                    | 0.2226 | 1.1910                         | 0.0514                               | 0.00703 | 45.00         |
|               |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |               |
| 50.00         | 60.134            | 78.72                          | 0.7920                         | 28.150              | 110.209 | 0.06044               | 0.22144 | 0.3275                                    | 0.2260 | 1.1961                         | 0.0507                               | 0.00717 | 50.00         |
| 55.00         | 65.913            | 78.11                          | 0.7238                         | 29.796              | 110.871 | 0.06362               | 0.22115 | 0.3297                                    | 0.2294 | 1.2018                         | 0.0500                               | 0.00732 | 55.00         |
| 60.00         | 72.105            | 77.50                          | 0.6625                         | 31.452              | 111.524 | 0.06680               | 0.22088 | 0.3319                                    | 0.2331 | 1.2079                         | 0.0493                               | 0.00747 | 60.00         |
| 65.00         | 78.729            | 76.87                          | 0.6072                         | 33.120              | 112.165 | 0.06996               | 0.22062 | 0.3343                                    | 0.2368 | 1.2145                         | 0.0486                               | 0.00762 | 65.00         |
| 70.00         | 85.805            | 76.24                          | 0.5572                         | 34.799              | 112.796 | 0.07311               | 0.22037 | 0.3368                                    | 0.2408 | 1.2217                         | 0.0479                               | 0.00777 | 70.00         |
|               |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |               |
| 75.00         | 93.351            | 75.59                          | 0.5120                         | 36.491              | 113.414 | 0.07626               | 0.22013 | 0.3394                                    | 0.2449 | 1.2296                         | 0.0472                               | 0.00793 | 75.00         |
| 80.00         | 101.390           | 74.94                          | 0.4710                         | 38.195              | 114.019 | 0.07939               | 0.21989 | 0.3422                                    | 0.2492 | 1.2382                         | 0.0465                               | 0.00809 | 80.00         |
| 85.00         | 109.930           | 74.27                          | 0.4338                         | 39.913              | 114.610 | 0.08252               | 0.21966 | 0.3451                                    | 0.2537 | 1.2475                         | 0.0458                               | 0.00825 | 85.00         |
| 90.00         | 119.010           | 73.58                          | 0.3999                         | 41.645              | 115.186 | 0.08565               | 0.21944 | 0.3482                                    | 0.2585 | 1.2578                         | 0.0451                               | 0.00842 | 90.00         |
| 95.00         | 128.650           | 72.88                          | 0.3690                         | 43.392              | 115.746 | 0.08877               | 0.21921 | 0.3515                                    | 0.2636 | 1.2690                         | 0.0444                               | 0.00860 | 95.00         |
|               |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |               |
| 100.00        | 138.850           | 72.17                          | 0.3407                         | 45.155              | 116.289 | 0.09188               | 0.21898 | 0.3551                                    | 0.2690 | 1.2813                         | 0.0437                               | 0.00878 | 100.00        |
| 105.00        | 149.650           | 71.44                          | 0.3148                         | 46.934              | 116.813 | 0.09500               | 0.21875 | 0.3589                                    | 0.2747 | 1.2950                         | 0.0431                               | 0.00897 | 105.00        |
| 110.00        | 161.070           | 70.69                          | 0.2911                         | 48.731              | 117.317 | 0.09811               | 0.21851 | 0.3630                                    | 0.2809 | 1.3101                         | 0.0424                               | 0.00916 | 110.00        |
| 115.00        | 173.140           | 69.93                          | 0.2693                         | 50.546              | 117.799 | 0.10123               | 0.21826 | 0.3675                                    | 0.2875 | 1.3268                         | 0.0417                               | 0.00936 | 115.00        |
| 120.00        | 185.860           | 69.14                          | 0.2493                         | 52.382              | 118.258 | 0.10435               | 0.21800 | 0.3723                                    | 0.2948 | 1.3456                         | 0.0410                               | 0.00958 | 120.00        |

## Refrigerant 134a (1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane) Properties of Saturated Liquid and Saturated Vapor (cont'd)

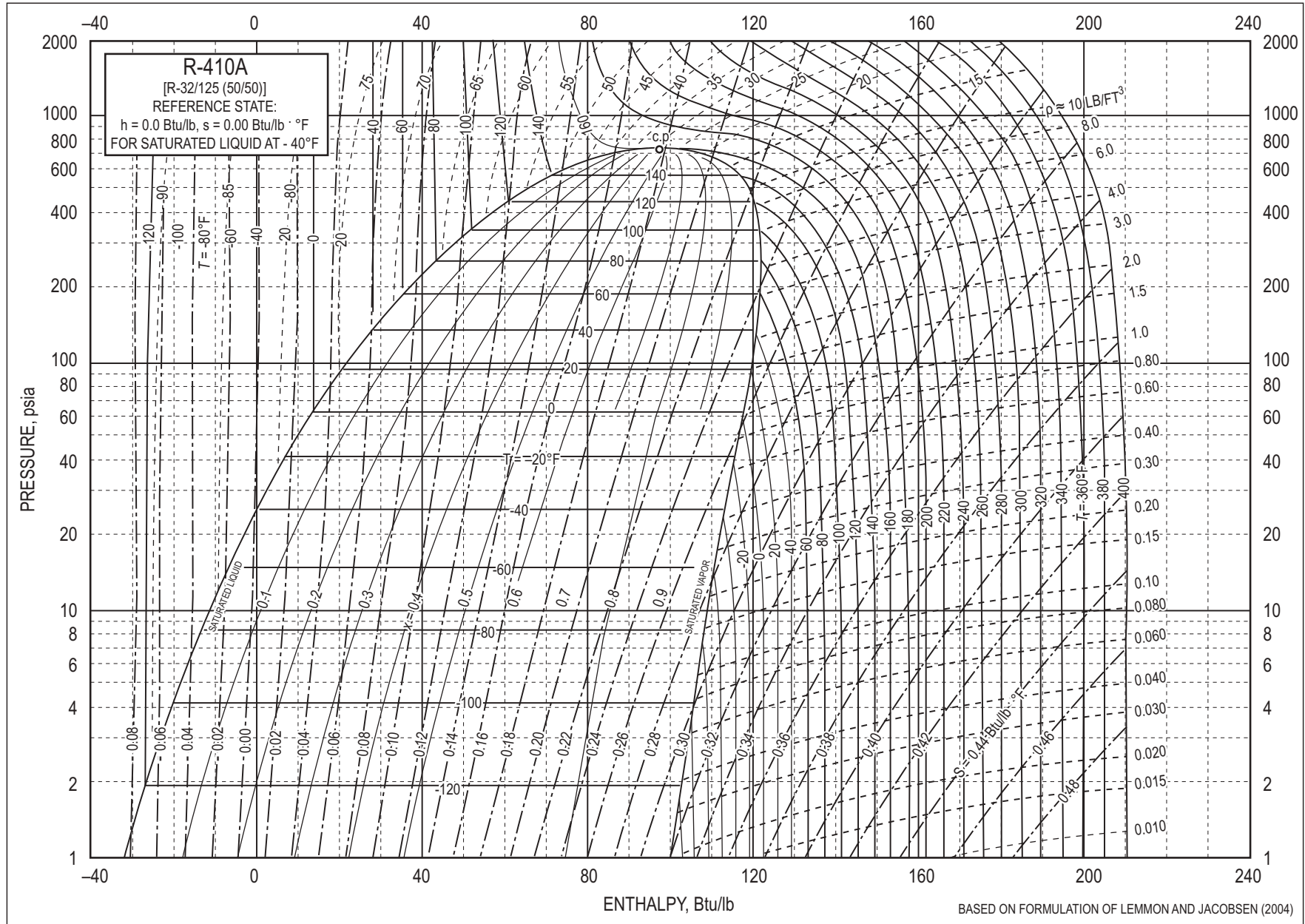
| Temp.,*<br>°F       | Pressure,<br>psia | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |         | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Temp.,*<br>°F       |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|---------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|---------------------|
|                     |                   | Liquid                         | Vapor                          | Liquid              | Vapor   | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  | Vapor                          | Liquid                               | Vapor   |                     |
| 125.00              | 199.280           | 68.32                          | 0.2308                         | 54.239              | 118.690 | 0.10748               | 0.21772 | 0.3775                                    | 0.3026 | 1.3666                         | 0.0403                               | 0.00981 | 125.00              |
| 130.00              | 213.410           | 67.49                          | 0.2137                         | 56.119              | 119.095 | 0.11062               | 0.21742 | 0.3833                                    | 0.3112 | 1.3903                         | 0.0396                               | 0.01005 | 130.00              |
| 135.00              | 228.280           | 66.62                          | 0.1980                         | 58.023              | 119.468 | 0.11376               | 0.21709 | 0.3897                                    | 0.3208 | 1.4173                         | 0.0389                               | 0.01031 | 135.00              |
| 140.00              | 243.920           | 65.73                          | 0.1833                         | 59.954              | 119.807 | 0.11692               | 0.21673 | 0.3968                                    | 0.3315 | 1.4481                         | 0.0382                               | 0.01058 | 140.00              |
| 145.00              | 260.360           | 64.80                          | 0.1697                         | 61.915              | 120.108 | 0.12010               | 0.21634 | 0.4048                                    | 0.3435 | 1.4837                         | 0.0375                               | 0.01089 | 145.00              |
|                     |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 150.00              | 277.610           | 63.83                          | 0.1571                         | 63.908              | 120.366 | 0.12330               | 0.21591 | 0.4138                                    | 0.3571 | 1.5250                         | 0.0368                               | 0.01122 | 150.00              |
| 155.00              | 295.730           | 62.82                          | 0.1453                         | 65.936              | 120.576 | 0.12653               | 0.21542 | 0.4242                                    | 0.3729 | 1.5738                         | 0.0361                               | 0.01158 | 155.00              |
| 160.00              | 314.730           | 61.76                          | 0.1343                         | 68.005              | 120.731 | 0.12979               | 0.21488 | 0.4362                                    | 0.3914 | 1.6318                         | 0.0354                               | 0.01199 | 160.00              |
| 165.00              | 334.650           | 60.65                          | 0.1239                         | 70.118              | 120.823 | 0.13309               | 0.21426 | 0.4504                                    | 0.4133 | 1.7022                         | 0.0346                               | 0.01245 | 165.00              |
| 170.00              | 355.530           | 59.47                          | 0.1142                         | 72.283              | 120.842 | 0.13644               | 0.21356 | 0.4675                                    | 0.4400 | 1.7889                         | 0.0339                               | 0.01297 | 170.00              |
|                     |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 175.00              | 377.410           | 58.21                          | 0.1051                         | 74.509              | 120.773 | 0.13985               | 0.21274 | 0.4887                                    | 0.4733 | 1.8984                         | 0.0332                               | 0.01358 | 175.00              |
| 180.00              | 400.340           | 56.86                          | 0.0964                         | 76.807              | 120.598 | 0.14334               | 0.21180 | 0.5156                                    | 0.5159 | 2.0405                         | 0.0325                               | 0.01430 | 180.00              |
| 185.00              | 424.360           | 55.38                          | 0.0881                         | 79.193              | 120.294 | 0.14693               | 0.21069 | 0.5512                                    | 0.5729 | 2.2321                         | 0.0318                               | 0.01516 | 185.00              |
| 190.00              | 449.520           | 53.76                          | 0.0801                         | 81.692              | 119.822 | 0.15066               | 0.20935 | 0.6012                                    | 0.6532 | 2.5041                         | 0.0311                               | 0.01623 | 190.00              |
| 195.00              | 475.910           | 51.91                          | 0.0724                         | 84.343              | 119.123 | 0.15459               | 0.20771 | 0.6768                                    | 0.7751 | 2.9192                         | 0.0304                               | 0.01760 | 195.00              |
|                     |                   |                                |                                |                     |         |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 200.00              | 503.590           | 49.76                          | 0.0647                         | 87.214              | 118.097 | 0.15880               | 0.20562 | 0.8062                                    | 0.9835 | 3.6309                         | 0.0300                               | 0.01949 | 200.00              |
| 205.00              | 532.680           | 47.08                          | 0.0567                         | 90.454              | 116.526 | 0.16353               | 0.20275 | 1.0830                                    | 1.4250 | 5.1360                         | 0.0300                               | 0.02240 | 205.00              |
| 210.00              | 563.350           | 43.20                          | 0.0477                         | 94.530              | 113.746 | 0.16945               | 0.19814 | 2.1130                                    | 3.0080 | 10.5120                        | 0.0316                               | 0.02848 | 210.00              |
| 213.91 <sup>c</sup> | 588.750           | 31.96                          | 0.0313                         | 103.894             | 103.894 | 0.18320               | 0.18320 | ∞                                         | ∞      | ∞                              | ∞                                    | ∞       | 213.91 <sup>c</sup> |

\* Temperature on ITS-90 scale

<sup>a</sup> Triple point<sup>b</sup> Normal boiling point<sup>c</sup> Critical point

Source: Reprinted with permission from 2013 ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, ASHRAE: 2013.

# Pressure Versus Enthalpy Curves for Refrigerant 410A (USCS units)



Source: Reprinted with permission from 2013 ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, ASHRAE: 2013.

# Refrigerant 410A [R-32/125 (50/50)] Properties of Liquid on Bubble Line and Vapor on Dew Line

| Pressure,<br>psia  | Temp., * °F |         | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |        | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Pressure,<br>psia  |
|--------------------|-------------|---------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|--------------------|
|                    | Bubble      | Dew     | Liquid                         | Vapor                          | Liquid              | Vapor  | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  | Vapor                          | Liquid                               | Vapor   |                    |
| 1                  | -135.16     | -134.98 | 92.02                          | 47.6458                        | -30.90              | 100.62 | -0.08330              | 0.32188 | 0.3215                                    | 0.1568 | 1.228                          | 0.1043                               | 0.00421 | 1                  |
| 1.5                | -126.03     | -125.87 | 91.10                          | 32.5774                        | -27.97              | 101.90 | -0.07439              | 0.31477 | 0.3212                                    | 0.1600 | 1.227                          | 0.1023                               | 0.00431 | 1.5                |
| 2                  | -119.18     | -119.02 | 90.41                          | 24.8810                        | -25.76              | 102.86 | -0.06786              | 0.30981 | 0.3213                                    | 0.1626 | 1.227                          | 0.1008                               | 0.00439 | 2                  |
| 2.5                | -113.63     | -113.48 | 89.84                          | 20.1891                        | -23.98              | 103.63 | -0.06267              | 0.30602 | 0.3214                                    | 0.1648 | 1.228                          | 0.0996                               | 0.00446 | 2.5                |
| 3                  | -108.94     | -108.78 | 89.36                          | 17.0211                        | -22.47              | 104.27 | -0.05834              | 0.30296 | 0.3216                                    | 0.1668 | 1.228                          | 0.0985                               | 0.00451 | 3                  |
|                    |             |         |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                    |
| 4                  | -101.22     | -101.07 | 88.57                          | 13.0027                        | -19.98              | 105.33 | -0.05133              | 0.29820 | 0.3221                                    | 0.1703 | 1.229                          | 0.0968                               | 0.00461 | 4                  |
| 5                  | -94.94      | -94.80  | 87.92                          | 10.5514                        | -17.96              | 106.18 | -0.04574              | 0.29455 | 0.3226                                    | 0.1733 | 1.230                          | 0.0954                               | 0.00469 | 5                  |
| 6                  | -89.63      | -89.48  | 87.36                          | 8.8953                         | -16.24              | 106.89 | -0.04107              | 0.29162 | 0.3231                                    | 0.1760 | 1.232                          | 0.0942                               | 0.00476 | 6                  |
| 7                  | -84.98      | -84.84  | 86.87                          | 7.6992                         | -14.74              | 107.50 | -0.03704              | 0.28916 | 0.3236                                    | 0.1785 | 1.233                          | 0.0931                               | 0.00482 | 7                  |
| 8                  | -80.85      | -80.71  | 86.44                          | 6.7935                         | -13.40              | 108.05 | -0.03349              | 0.28705 | 0.3241                                    | 0.1807 | 1.234                          | 0.0922                               | 0.00488 | 8                  |
|                    |             |         |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                    |
| 10                 | -73.70      | -73.56  | 85.67                          | 5.5105                         | -11.08              | 108.97 | -0.02743              | 0.28356 | 0.3251                                    | 0.1848 | 1.237                          | 0.0905                               | 0.00498 | 10                 |
| 12                 | -67.62      | -67.48  | 85.02                          | 4.6434                         | -9.10               | 109.75 | -0.02235              | 0.28075 | 0.3261                                    | 0.1884 | 1.240                          | 0.0891                               | 0.00507 | 12                 |
| 14                 | -62.31      | -62.16  | 84.44                          | 4.0168                         | -7.36               | 110.42 | -0.01795              | 0.27840 | 0.3270                                    | 0.1917 | 1.243                          | 0.0879                               | 0.00515 | 14                 |
| 14.70 <sup>b</sup> | -60.60      | -60.46  | 84.26                          | 3.8375                         | -6.80               | 110.63 | -0.01655              | 0.27766 | 0.3274                                    | 0.1928 | 1.244                          | 0.0875                               | 0.00517 | 14.70 <sup>b</sup> |
| 16                 | -57.56      | -57.42  | 83.93                          | 3.5423                         | -5.80               | 111.01 | -0.01407              | 0.27638 | 0.3279                                    | 0.1947 | 1.245                          | 0.0868                               | 0.00522 | 16                 |
|                    |             |         |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                    |
| 18                 | -53.27      | -53.13  | 83.45                          | 3.1699                         | -4.39               | 111.54 | -0.01059              | 0.27461 | 0.3288                                    | 0.1975 | 1.248                          | 0.0858                               | 0.00528 | 18                 |
| 20                 | -49.34      | -49.19  | 83.02                          | 2.8698                         | -3.09               | 112.01 | -0.00743              | 0.27305 | 0.3297                                    | 0.2002 | 1.251                          | 0.0849                               | 0.00535 | 20                 |
| 22                 | -45.70      | -45.56  | 82.61                          | 2.6225                         | -1.89               | 112.45 | -0.00452              | 0.27164 | 0.3305                                    | 0.2027 | 1.254                          | 0.0841                               | 0.00540 | 22                 |
| 24                 | -42.32      | -42.18  | 82.23                          | 2.4151                         | -0.77               | 112.85 | -0.00184              | 0.27036 | 0.3313                                    | 0.2050 | 1.256                          | 0.0833                               | 0.00546 | 24                 |
| 26                 | -39.15      | -39.01  | 81.87                          | 2.2386                         | 0.28                | 113.22 | 0.0007                | 0.26919 | 0.3321                                    | 0.2073 | 1.259                          | 0.0826                               | 0.00551 | 26                 |
|                    |             |         |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                    |
| 28                 | -36.17      | -36.02  | 81.54                          | 2.0865                         | 1.27                | 113.56 | 0.0030                | 0.26811 | 0.3329                                    | 0.2094 | 1.261                          | 0.0819                               | 0.00556 | 28                 |
| 30                 | -33.35      | -33.20  | 81.21                          | 1.9540                         | 2.22                | 113.88 | 0.0052                | 0.26711 | 0.3337                                    | 0.2115 | 1.264                          | 0.0813                               | 0.00561 | 30                 |
| 32                 | -30.68      | -30.53  | 80.90                          | 1.8375                         | 3.11                | 114.19 | 0.0073                | 0.26617 | 0.3345                                    | 0.2135 | 1.267                          | 0.0806                               | 0.00565 | 32                 |
| 34                 | -28.13      | -27.98  | 80.61                          | 1.7343                         | 3.97                | 114.47 | 0.0093                | 0.26530 | 0.3352                                    | 0.2154 | 1.269                          | 0.0801                               | 0.00570 | 34                 |
| 36                 | -25.69      | -25.54  | 80.33                          | 1.6422                         | 4.79                | 114.74 | 0.0112                | 0.26448 | 0.3360                                    | 0.2173 | 1.272                          | 0.0795                               | 0.00574 | 36                 |

## Refrigerant 410A [R-32/125 (50/50)] Properties of Liquid on Bubble Line and Vapor on Dew Line (con't)

| Pressure,<br>psia | Temp., * °F |        | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |        | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Pressure,<br>psia |
|-------------------|-------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|-------------------|
|                   | Bubble      | Dew    |                                |                                | Liquid              | Vapor  | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  |                                | Liquid                               | Vapor   |                   |
| 38                | -23.36      | -23.20 | 80.05                          | 1.5594                         | 5.57                | 115.00 | 0.0130                | 0.26371 | 0.3367                                    | 0.2191 | 1.274                          | 0.0790                               | 0.00578 | 38                |
| 40                | -21.12      | -20.96 | 79.79                          | 1.4847                         | 6.33                | 115.24 | 0.0147                | 0.26297 | 0.3374                                    | 0.2208 | 1.277                          | 0.0785                               | 0.00582 | 40                |
| 42                | -18.96      | -18.81 | 79.54                          | 1.4168                         | 7.06                | 115.47 | 0.0163                | 0.26228 | 0.3382                                    | 0.2226 | 1.279                          | 0.0780                               | 0.00586 | 42                |
| 44                | -16.89      | -16.73 | 79.29                          | 1.3549                         | 7.76                | 115.69 | 0.0179                | 0.26162 | 0.3389                                    | 0.2242 | 1.282                          | 0.0775                               | 0.00589 | 44                |
| 46                | -14.88      | -14.73 | 79.05                          | 1.2982                         | 8.45                | 115.90 | 0.0194                | 0.26098 | 0.3396                                    | 0.2259 | 1.284                          | 0.0771                               | 0.00593 | 46                |
|                   |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                   |
| 48                | -12.94      | -12.79 | 78.82                          | 1.2460                         | 9.11                | 116.10 | 0.0209                | 0.26038 | 0.3403                                    | 0.2275 | 1.287                          | 0.0766                               | 0.00597 | 48                |
| 50                | -11.07      | -10.91 | 78.59                          | 1.1979                         | 9.75                | 116.30 | 0.0223                | 0.25980 | 0.3410                                    | 0.2290 | 1.289                          | 0.0762                               | 0.00600 | 50                |
| 55                | -6.62       | -6.45  | 78.05                          | 1.0925                         | 11.27               | 116.75 | 0.0257                | 0.25845 | 0.3427                                    | 0.2328 | 1.295                          | 0.0752                               | 0.00610 | 55                |
| 60                | -2.46       | -2.30  | 77.54                          | 1.0040                         | 12.70               | 117.16 | 0.0288                | 0.25722 | 0.3445                                    | 0.2365 | 1.301                          | 0.0743                               | 0.00619 | 60                |
| 65                | 1.43        | 1.60   | 77.06                          | 0.9287                         | 14.05               | 117.53 | 0.0317                | 0.25610 | 0.3462                                    | 0.2400 | 1.308                          | 0.0734                               | 0.00628 | 65                |
|                   |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                   |
| 70                | 5.10        | 5.27   | 76.60                          | 0.8638                         | 15.33               | 117.88 | 0.0344                | 0.25505 | 0.3478                                    | 0.2434 | 1.314                          | 0.0726                               | 0.00636 | 70                |
| 75                | 8.58        | 8.75   | 76.15                          | 0.8073                         | 16.54               | 118.20 | 0.0370                | 0.25408 | 0.3495                                    | 0.2467 | 1.320                          | 0.0719                               | 0.00645 | 75                |
| 80                | 11.88       | 12.06  | 75.73                          | 0.7576                         | 17.70               | 118.49 | 0.0395                | 0.25316 | 0.3512                                    | 0.2499 | 1.326                          | 0.0711                               | 0.00653 | 80                |
| 85                | 15.03       | 15.21  | 75.32                          | 0.7135                         | 18.81               | 118.77 | 0.0418                | 0.25231 | 0.3528                                    | 0.2531 | 1.333                          | 0.0704                               | 0.00661 | 85                |
| 90                | 18.05       | 18.22  | 74.93                          | 0.6742                         | 19.88               | 119.02 | 0.0440                | 0.25149 | 0.3545                                    | 0.2562 | 1.339                          | 0.0698                               | 0.00669 | 90                |
|                   |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                   |
| 95                | 20.93       | 21.11  | 74.54                          | 0.6389                         | 20.91               | 119.26 | 0.0461                | 0.25072 | 0.3561                                    | 0.2592 | 1.345                          | 0.0692                               | 0.00677 | 95                |
| 100               | 23.71       | 23.89  | 74.17                          | 0.6070                         | 21.90               | 119.48 | 0.0482                | 0.24999 | 0.3578                                    | 0.2622 | 1.352                          | 0.0685                               | 0.00684 | 100               |
| 110               | 28.96       | 29.14  | 73.46                          | 0.5515                         | 23.79               | 119.89 | 0.0520                | 0.24862 | 0.3611                                    | 0.2681 | 1.365                          | 0.0674                               | 0.00700 | 110               |
| 120               | 33.86       | 34.05  | 72.78                          | 0.5051                         | 25.57               | 120.24 | 0.0556                | 0.24736 | 0.3644                                    | 0.2738 | 1.378                          | 0.0664                               | 0.00715 | 120               |
| 130               | 38.46       | 38.65  | 72.13                          | 0.4655                         | 27.25               | 120.56 | 0.0589                | 0.24618 | 0.3678                                    | 0.2795 | 1.392                          | 0.0654                               | 0.00730 | 130               |
|                   |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                   |
| 140               | 42.80       | 42.99  | 71.51                          | 0.4314                         | 28.85               | 120.83 | 0.0621                | 0.24508 | 0.3712                                    | 0.2852 | 1.406                          | 0.0645                               | 0.00745 | 140               |
| 150               | 46.91       | 47.11  | 70.90                          | 0.4016                         | 30.38               | 121.08 | 0.0650                | 0.24403 | 0.3746                                    | 0.2908 | 1.420                          | 0.0636                               | 0.00760 | 150               |
| 160               | 50.82       | 51.02  | 70.32                          | 0.3755                         | 31.85               | 121.29 | 0.0679                | 0.24304 | 0.3781                                    | 0.2965 | 1.435                          | 0.0628                               | 0.00775 | 160               |
| 170               | 54.56       | 54.76  | 69.75                          | 0.3523                         | 33.27               | 121.48 | 0.0706                | 0.24210 | 0.3816                                    | 0.3022 | 1.451                          | 0.0620                               | 0.00791 | 170               |
| 180               | 58.13       | 58.33  | 69.20                          | 0.3316                         | 34.63               | 121.65 | 0.0732                | 0.24119 | 0.3851                                    | 0.3080 | 1.467                          | 0.0612                               | 0.00807 | 180               |

# Refrigerant 410A [R-32/125 (50/50)] Properties of Liquid on Bubble Line and Vapor on Dew Line (con't)

| Pressure,<br>psia   | Temp., * °F |        | Density,<br>lb/ft <sup>3</sup> | Volume,<br>ft <sup>3</sup> /lb | Enthalpy,<br>Btu/lb |        | Entropy,<br>Btu/lb-°F |         | Specific Heat c <sub>p</sub><br>Btu/lb-°F |        | C <sub>p</sub> /C <sub>v</sub> | Thermal Conductivity<br>Btu/hr-ft-°F |         | Pressure,<br>psia   |
|---------------------|-------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------|-----------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------|--------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------|---------------------|
|                     | Bubble      | Dew    | Liquid                         | Vapor                          | Liquid              | Vapor  | Liquid                | Vapor   | Liquid                                    | Vapor  | Vapor                          | Liquid                               | Vapor   |                     |
| 190                 | 61.55       | 61.76  | 68.66                          | 0.3130                         | 35.95               | 121.79 | 0.0757                | 0.24031 | 0.3888                                    | 0.3139 | 1.483                          | 0.0605                               | 0.00823 | 190                 |
| 200                 | 64.84       | 65.05  | 68.13                          | 0.2962                         | 37.22               | 121.91 | 0.0780                | 0.23946 | 0.3925                                    | 0.3200 | 1.500                          | 0.0598                               | 0.00839 | 200                 |
| 220                 | 71.07       | 71.28  | 67.10                          | 0.2669                         | 39.67               | 122.09 | 0.0826                | 0.23783 | 0.4001                                    | 0.3325 | 1.537                          | 0.0585                               | 0.00873 | 220                 |
| 240                 | 76.89       | 77.10  | 66.11                          | 0.2424                         | 41.99               | 122.20 | 0.0868                | 0.23628 | 0.4081                                    | 0.3457 | 1.576                          | 0.0573                               | 0.00908 | 240                 |
| 260                 | 82.35       | 82.57  | 65.14                          | 0.2215                         | 44.21               | 122.25 | 0.0908                | 0.23478 | 0.4165                                    | 0.3599 | 1.619                          | 0.0562                               | 0.00945 | 260                 |
|                     |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 280                 | 87.51       | 87.73  | 64.19                          | 0.2034                         | 46.34               | 122.24 | 0.0946                | 0.23333 | 0.4255                                    | 0.3751 | 1.665                          | 0.0552                               | 0.00983 | 280                 |
| 300                 | 92.40       | 92.61  | 63.26                          | 0.1876                         | 48.40               | 122.18 | 0.0983                | 0.23190 | 0.4350                                    | 0.3915 | 1.716                          | 0.0542                               | 0.01024 | 300                 |
| 320                 | 97.04       | 97.26  | 62.34                          | 0.1736                         | 50.38               | 122.07 | 0.1018                | 0.23049 | 0.4452                                    | 0.4094 | 1.772                          | 0.0533                               | 0.01067 | 320                 |
| 340                 | 101.48      | 101.69 | 61.42                          | 0.1613                         | 52.31               | 121.91 | 0.1051                | 0.22909 | 0.4564                                    | 0.4290 | 1.833                          | 0.0524                               | 0.01113 | 340                 |
| 360                 | 105.71      | 105.93 | 60.52                          | 0.1501                         | 54.19               | 121.70 | 0.1083                | 0.22769 | 0.4685                                    | 0.4507 | 1.901                          | 0.0515                               | 0.01162 | 360                 |
|                     |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 380                 | 109.78      | 109.99 | 59.61                          | 0.1401                         | 56.03               | 121.44 | 0.1115                | 0.22629 | 0.4820                                    | 0.4747 | 1.977                          | 0.0507                               | 0.01214 | 380                 |
| 400                 | 113.68      | 113.89 | 58.70                          | 0.1310                         | 57.83               | 121.13 | 0.1145                | 0.22488 | 0.4971                                    | 0.5016 | 2.063                          | 0.0499                               | 0.01271 | 400                 |
| 450                 | 122.82      | 123.01 | 56.39                          | 0.1114                         | 62.23               | 120.14 | 0.1218                | 0.22124 | 0.5443                                    | 0.5857 | 2.333                          | 0.0481                               | 0.01433 | 450                 |
| 500                 | 131.19      | 131.38 | 53.97                          | 0.0952                         | 66.54               | 118.80 | 0.1289                | 0.21732 | 0.6143                                    | 0.7083 | 2.728                          | 0.0465                               | 0.01636 | 500                 |
| 550                 | 138.93      | 139.09 | 51.32                          | 0.0814                         | 70.89               | 117.02 | 0.1359                | 0.21295 | 0.7303                                    | 0.9059 | 3.367                          | 0.0451                               | 0.01902 | 550                 |
|                     |             |        |                                |                                |                     |        |                       |         |                                           |        |                                |                                      |         |                     |
| 600                 | 146.12      | 146.25 | 48.24                          | 0.0690                         | 75.47               | 114.59 | 0.1432                | 0.20777 | 0.9603                                    | 1.2829 | 4.579                          | 0.0440                               | 0.02275 | 600                 |
| 692.78 <sup>c</sup> | 158.40      | 158.40 | 34.18                          | 0.0293                         | 90.97               | 90.97  | 0.1678                | 0.16781 | —                                         | —      | —                              | —                                    | —       | 692.78 <sup>c</sup> |

\* Temperature on ITS-90 scale

<sup>b</sup> Bubble and dew point at one standard atmosphere

<sup>c</sup> Critical point

Source: Reprinted with permission from 2013 ASHRAE Handbook — Fundamentals, ASHRAE: 2013.

Thermal and Physical Property Tables  
(at room temperature)

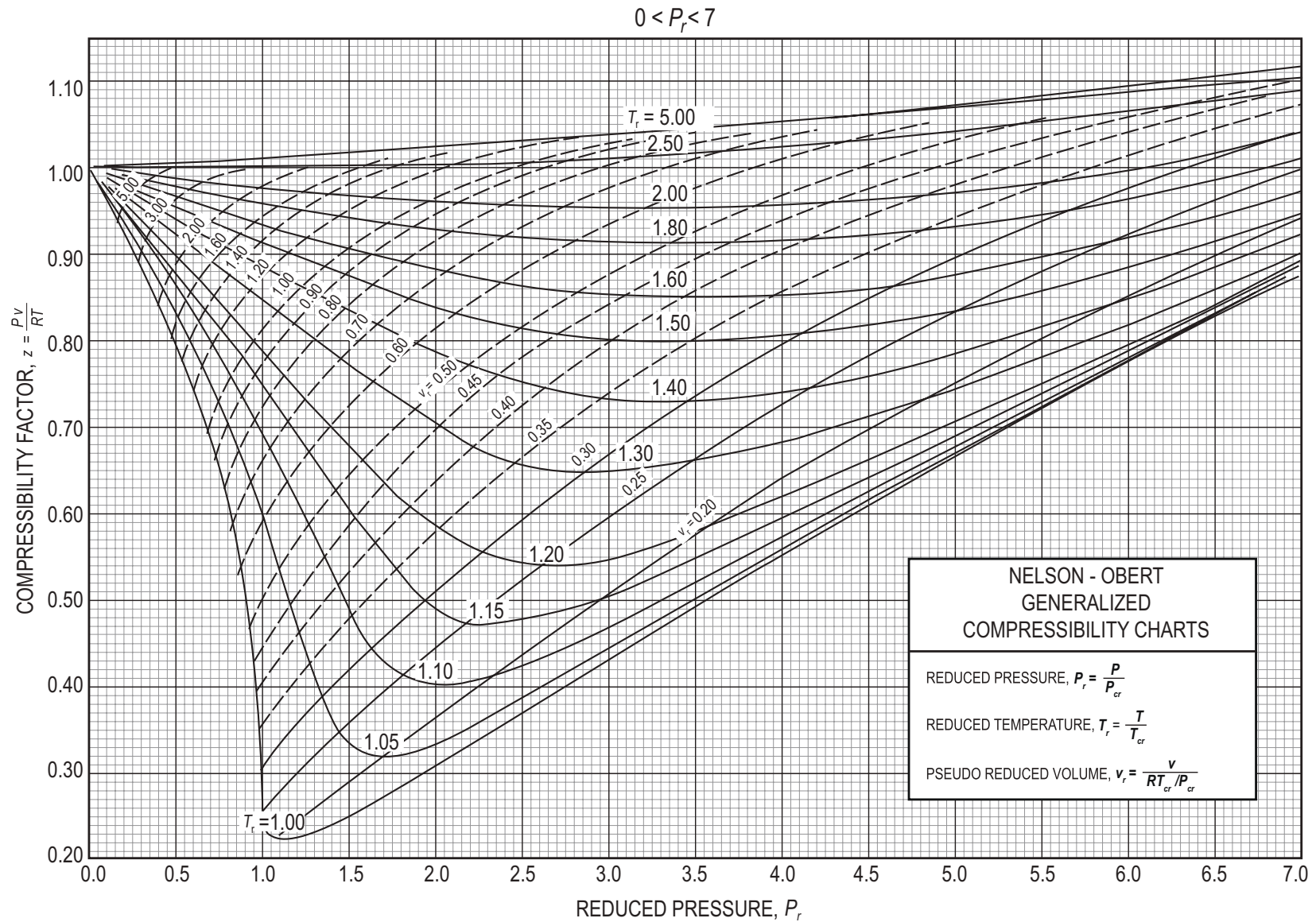
| GASES           |        |           |              |           |              |      |           |                 |
|-----------------|--------|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|------|-----------|-----------------|
| Substance       | Mol wt | $c_p$     |              | $c_v$     |              | $k$  | R         |                 |
|                 |        | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) |      | kJ/(kg·K) | ft-lbf/(lbm·°R) |
| Gases           |        |           |              |           |              |      |           |                 |
| Air             | 29     | 1.00      | 0.240        | 0.718     | 0.171        | 1.40 | 0.2870    | 53.34           |
| Argon           | 40     | 0.520     | 0.125        | 0.312     | 0.0756       | 1.67 | 0.2081    | 38.68           |
| Butane          | 58     | 1.72      | 0.415        | 1.57      | 0.381        | 1.09 | 0.1430    | 26.58           |
| Carbon dioxide  | 44     | 0.846     | 0.203        | 0.657     | 0.158        | 1.29 | 0.1889    | 35.10           |
| Carbon monoxide | 28     | 1.04      | 0.249        | 0.744     | 0.178        | 1.40 | 0.2968    | 55.16           |
| Ethane          | 30     | 1.77      | 0.427        | 1.49      | 0.361        | 1.18 | 0.2765    | 51.38           |
| Helium          | 4      | 5.19      | 1.25         | 3.12      | 0.753        | 1.67 | 2.0769    | 386.0           |
| Hydrogen        | 2      | 14.3      | 3.43         | 10.2      | 2.44         | 1.40 | 4.1240    | 766.4           |
| Methane         | 16     | 2.25      | 0.532        | 1.74      | 0.403        | 1.30 | 0.5182    | 96.35           |
| Neon            | 20     | 1.03      | 0.246        | 0.618     | 0.148        | 1.67 | 0.4119    | 76.55           |
| Nitrogen        | 28     | 1.04      | 0.248        | 0.743     | 0.177        | 1.40 | 0.2968    | 55.15           |
| Octane vapor    | 114    | 1.71      | 0.409        | 1.64      | 0.392        | 1.04 | 0.0729    | 13.53           |
| Oxygen          | 32     | 0.918     | 0.219        | 0.658     | 0.157        | 1.40 | 0.2598    | 48.28           |
| Propane         | 44     | 1.68      | 0.407        | 1.49      | 0.362        | 1.12 | 0.1885    | 35.04           |
| Steam           | 18     | 1.87      | 0.445        | 1.41      | 0.335        | 1.33 | 0.4615    | 85.76           |

| GASES           |                                |                  |                             |       |                           |                            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------|-------|---------------------------|----------------------------|
| Substance       | Critical Temperature, $T_{cr}$ |                  | Critical Pressure, $P_{cr}$ |       | Critical Volume, $V_{cr}$ |                            |
|                 | K                              | $^\circ\text{R}$ | MPa                         | atm   | $\text{m}^3/\text{kmol}$  | $\text{ft}^3/\text{lbmol}$ |
| Air             | 132.5                          | 238.5            | 3.77                        | 37.2  | —                         | —                          |
| Argon           | 150.8                          | 271.4            | 4.87                        | 48.1  | 0.0749                    | 1.20                       |
| Butane          | 425.0                          | 765.4            | 3.80                        | 37.5  | 0.255                     | 4.08                       |
| Carbon dioxide  | 304.1                          | 547.4            | 7.38                        | 72.8  | 0.0939                    | 1.50                       |
| Carbon monoxide | 132.9                          | 239.2            | 3.50                        | 34.5  | 0.09325                   | 1.49                       |
| Ethane          | 305.4                          | 549.7            | 4.88                        | 48.2  | 0.1483                    | 2.376                      |
| Helium          | 5.19                           | 9.34             | 0.227                       | 2.24  | 0.0574                    | 0.9195                     |
| Hydrogen        | 33.2                           | 59.8             | 1.30                        | 12.8  | 0.0651                    | 1.043                      |
| Methane         | 190.4                          | 342.7            | 4.60                        | 45.4  | 0.0992                    | 1.59                       |
| Neon            | 44.4                           | 79.9             | 2.76                        | 27.2  | 0.0416                    | 0.666                      |
| Nitrogen        | 126.2                          | 227.2            | 3.39                        | 33.5  | 0.0898                    | 1.44                       |
| Octane vapor    | 568.8                          | 1024.0           | 2.49                        | 24.6  | 0.492                     | 7.88                       |
| Oxygen          | 154.6                          | 278.3            | 5.04                        | 49.7  | 0.0734                    | 1.18                       |
| Propane         | 369.8                          | 665.6            | 4.25                        | 41.9  | 0.203                     | 3.25                       |
| Steam           | 647.1                          | 1165.0           | 22.06                       | 217.7 | 0.0560                    | 0.8971                     |

Source: Howell, John R., and Richard O. Buckius, *Fundamentals of Engineering Thermodynamics*, 2nd ed., 1992, McGraw Hill, adapted from Table C.4 Critical Constants, pp. 870-872.

| SELECTED LIQUIDS AND SOLIDS |           |              |                   |                     |
|-----------------------------|-----------|--------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| Substance                   | $c_p$     |              | Density           |                     |
|                             | kJ/(kg·K) | Btu/(lbm·°R) | kg/m <sup>3</sup> | lbm/ft <sup>3</sup> |
| <b>Liquids</b>              |           |              |                   |                     |
| Ammonia                     | 4.80      | 1.146        | 602               | 38                  |
| Mercury                     | 0.139     | 0.033        | 13,560            | 847                 |
| Water                       | 4.18      | 1.000        | 997               | 62.4                |
| <b>Solids</b>               |           |              |                   |                     |
| Aluminum                    | 0.900     | 0.215        | 2,700             | 170                 |
| Copper                      | 0.386     | 0.092        | 8,900             | 555                 |
| Ice (0°C; 32°F)             | 2.11      | 0.502        | 917               | 57.2                |
| Iron                        | 0.450     | 0.107        | 7,840             | 490                 |
| Lead                        | 0.128     | 0.030        | 11,310            | 705                 |

Source: Howell, John, R. and Richard O. Bukins, *Fundamentals of Engineering Thermodynamics*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1992, p. 896.

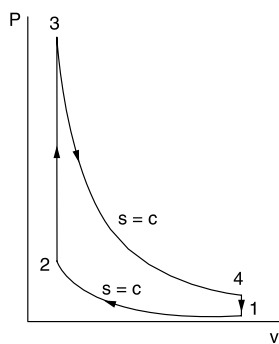
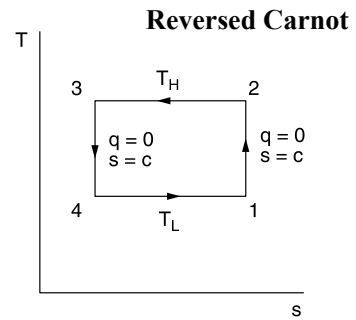
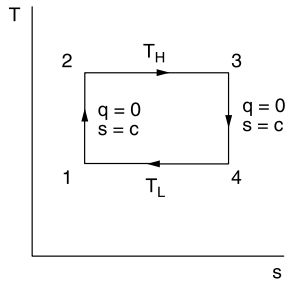
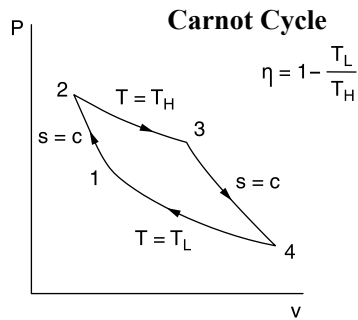


### Definition of Compressibility Factor

The compressibility factor  $z$  is the ratio of the volume actually occupied by a gas at given temperature and pressure to the volume the gas would occupy if it behaved like an ideal gas at the same temperature and pressure. The compressibility factor is not a constant but varies with changes in gas composition, temperature, and pressure. It must be determined experimentally.

$$z = \frac{V_{\text{actual}}}{V_{\text{ideal}}}$$

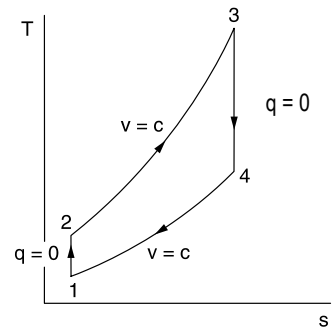
COMMON THERMODYNAMIC CYCLES



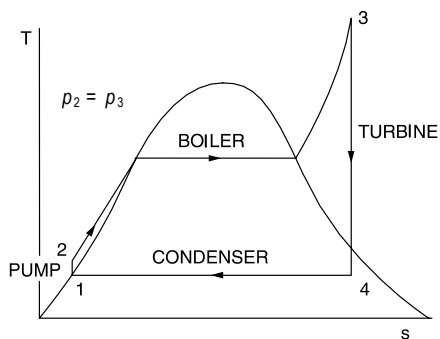
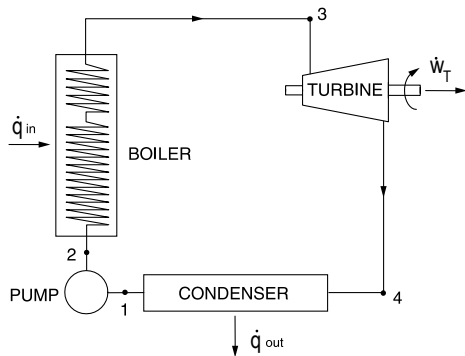
**Otto Cycle**  
(Gasoline Engine)

$$\eta = 1 - r^{1-k}$$

$$r = v_1/v_2$$

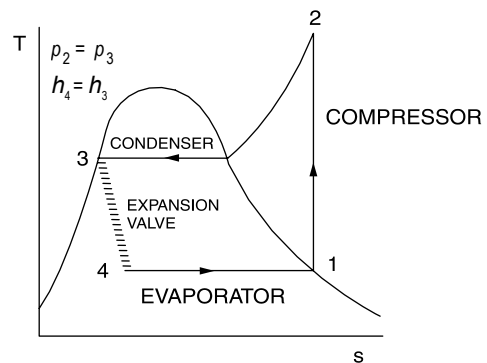
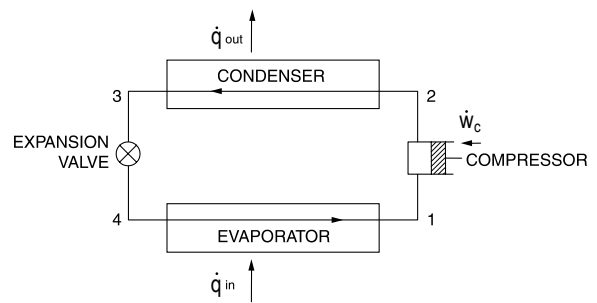


**Rankine Cycle**



$$\eta = \frac{(h_3 - h_4) - (h_2 - h_1)}{h_3 - h_2}$$

**Refrigeration**



$$COP_{ref} = \frac{h_1 - h_4}{h_2 - h_1}$$

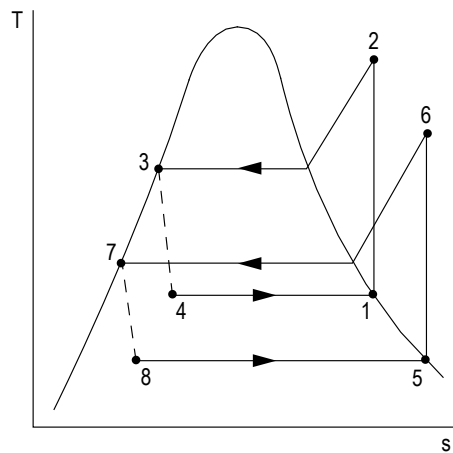
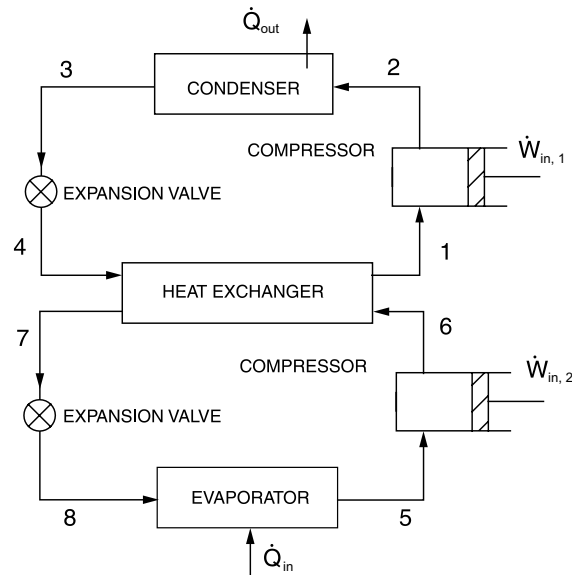
$$COP_{HP} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{h_2 - h_1}$$

## Refrigeration and HVAC

### Cycles

#### Refrigeration and HVAC

##### Two-Stage Cycle

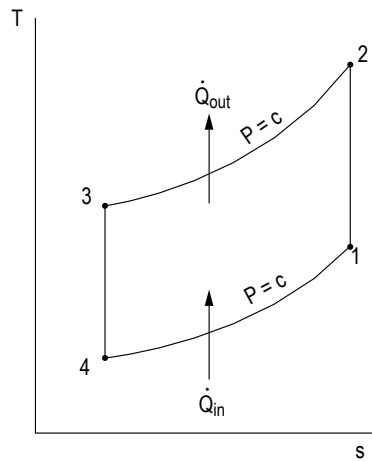
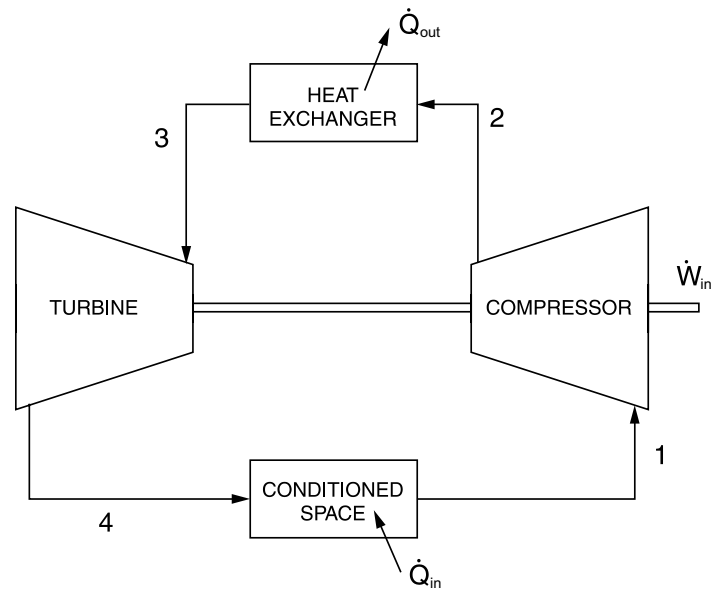


The following equations are valid if the mass flows are the same in each stage.

$$COP_{\text{ref}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{\text{in}}}{\dot{W}_{\text{in},1} + \dot{W}_{\text{in},2}} = \frac{h_5 - h_8}{h_2 - h_1 + h_6 - h_5}$$

$$COP_{\text{HP}} = \frac{\dot{Q}_{\text{out}}}{\dot{W}_{\text{in},1} + \dot{W}_{\text{in},2}} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{h_2 - h_1 + h_6 - h_5}$$

Air Refrigeration Cycle



$$COP_{ref} = \frac{h_1 - h_4}{(h_2 - h_1) - (h_3 - h_4)}$$

$$COP_{HP} = \frac{h_2 - h_3}{(h_2 - h_1) - (h_3 - h_4)}$$



# ASHRAE PSYCHROMETRIC CHART NO.1

NORMAL TEMPERATURE

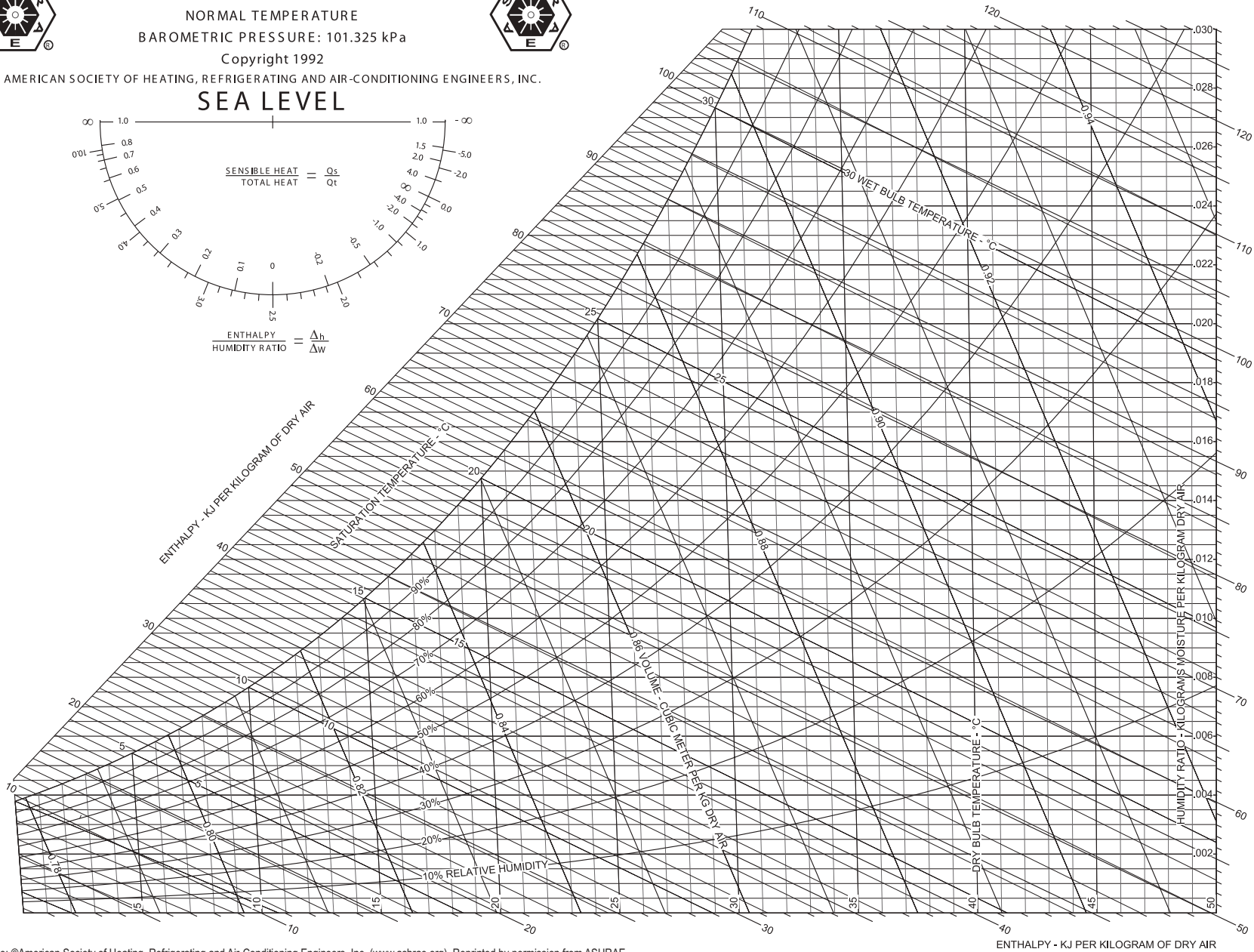
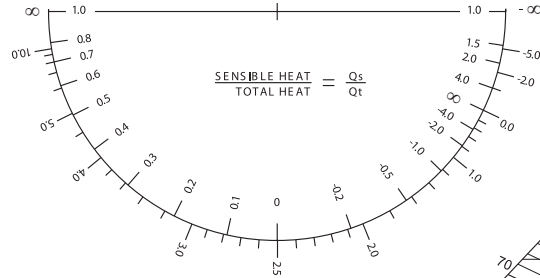
BAROMETRIC PRESSURE: 101.325 kPa

Copyright 1992

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS, INC.



SEA LEVEL



ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1  
(metric units)



# ASHRAE PSYCHROMETRIC CHART NO.1

NORMAL TEMPERATURE

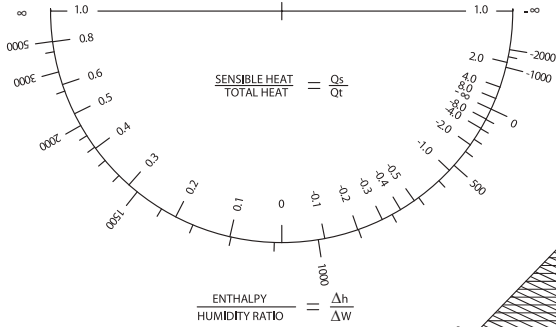
BAROMETRIC PRESSURE: 29.921 INCHES OF MERCURY

Copyright 1992

AMERICAN SOCIETY OF HEATING, REFRIGERATING AND AIR-CONDITIONING ENGINEERS, INC.

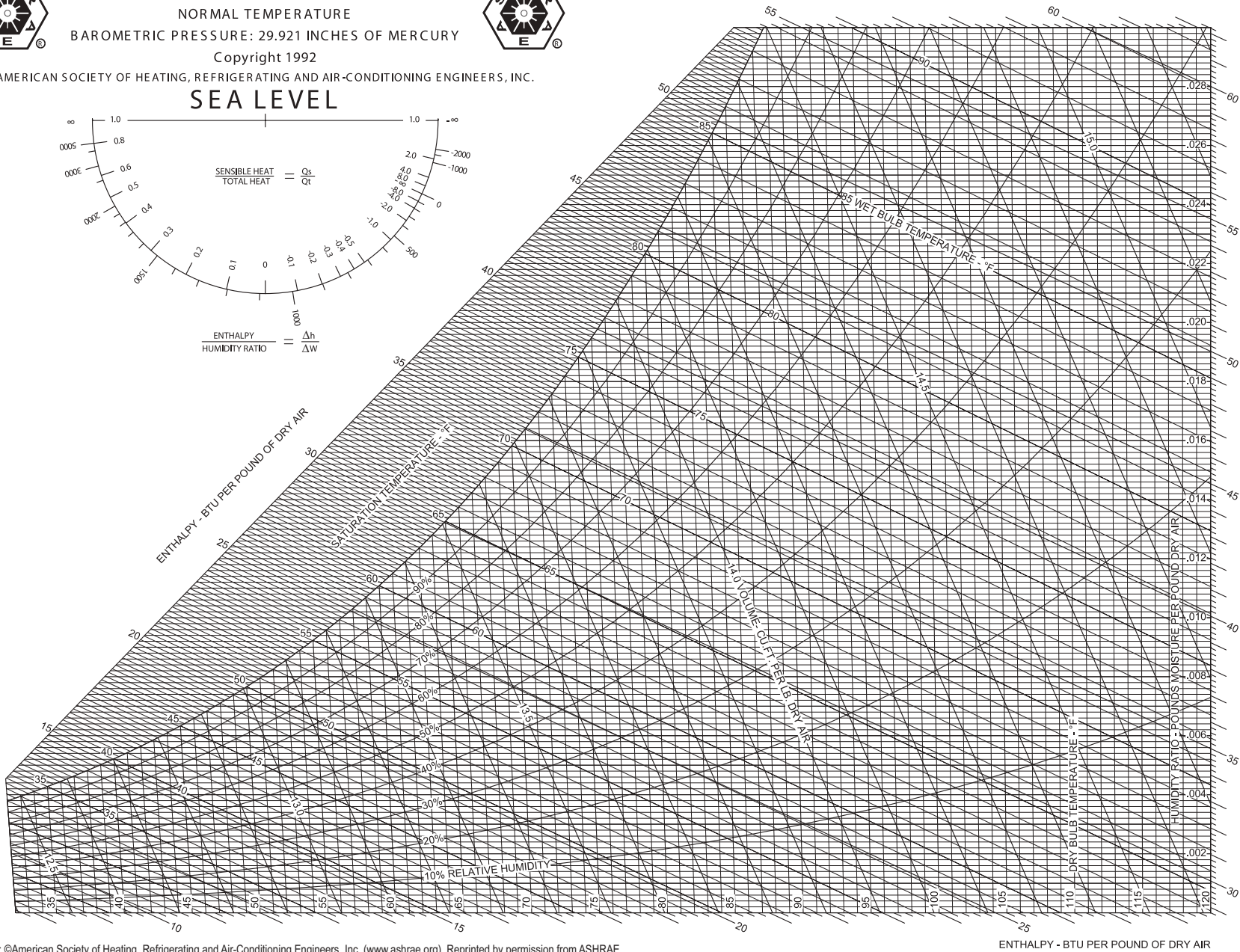


SEA LEVEL



ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1  
(English units)

Thermodynamics



Source: ©American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air-Conditioning Engineers, Inc. (www.ashrae.org). Reprinted by permission from ASHRAE.  
This chart may not be copied or distributed in either paper or digital form without ASHRAE's permission.

ENTHALPY - BTU PER POUND OF DRY AIR

# Fluid Mechanics

## Definitions

### Density, Specific Volume, Specific Weight, and Specific Gravity

The definitions of density, specific weight, and specific gravity follow:

$$\rho = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} \Delta m / \Delta V$$

$$\gamma = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} \Delta W / \Delta V$$

$$\gamma = \lim_{\Delta V \rightarrow 0} g \cdot \Delta m / \Delta V = \rho g$$

also

$$SG = \gamma / \gamma_w = \rho / \rho_w$$

where

$\rho$  = density (also called *mass density*)

$\Delta m$  = mass of infinitesimal volume

$\Delta V$  = volume of infinitesimal object considered

$\gamma$  = specific weight

$$= \rho g$$

$\Delta W$  = weight of an infinitesimal volume

$SG$  = specific gravity

$\rho_w$  = density of water at standard conditions

$$= 1,000 \text{ kg/m}^3 \text{ (62.4 lbm/ft}^3\text{)}$$

$\gamma_w$  = specific weight of water at standard conditions

$$= 9,810 \text{ N/m}^3 \text{ (62.4 lbf/ft}^3\text{)}$$

$$= 9,810 \text{ kg/(m}^2 \cdot \text{s}^2\text{)}$$

### Stress, Pressure, and Viscosity

Stress is defined as

$$\tau(1) = \lim_{\Delta A \rightarrow 0} \Delta F / \Delta A$$

where

$\tau(1)$  = surface stress vector at Point 1

$\Delta F$  = force acting on infinitesimal area  $\Delta A$

$\Delta A$  = infinitesimal area at Point 1

$$\tau_n = -P$$

$$\tau_t = \mu(dv/dy) \text{ (one-dimensional; i.e., } y\text{)}$$

where

$\tau_n$  and  $\tau_t$  = normal and tangential stress components at Point 1, respectively

$P$  = pressure at Point 1

$\mu$  = absolute dynamic viscosity of the fluid

$$\text{N}\cdot\text{s/m}^2 \text{ [lbm/(ft}\cdot\text{sec)]}$$

$dv$  = differential velocity

$dy$  = differential distance, normal to boundary

$v$  = velocity at boundary condition

$y$  = normal distance, measured from boundary

$\nu$  = kinematic viscosity ( $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$  or  $\text{ft}^2/\text{sec}$ )

where  $\nu = \frac{\mu}{\rho}$

For a thin Newtonian fluid film and a linear velocity profile,

$$v(y) = \nu y / \delta; \quad dv/dy = \nu / \delta$$

where

$\nu$  = velocity of plate on film  
 $\delta$  = thickness of fluid film

For a power law (non-Newtonian) fluid

$$\tau_t = K (dv/dy)^n$$

where

$K$  = consistency index  
 $n$  = power law index  
 $n < 1 \equiv$  pseudo plastic  
 $n > 1 \equiv$  dilatant

## Surface Tension and Capillarity

Surface tension  $\sigma$  is the force per unit contact length

$$\sigma = F/L$$

where

$\sigma$  = surface tension, force/length  
 $F$  = surface force at the interface  
 $L$  = length of interface

The capillary rise  $h$  is approximated by

$$h = (4\sigma \cos \beta) / (\gamma d)$$

where

$h$  = height of the liquid in the vertical tube  
 $\sigma$  = surface tension  
 $\beta$  = angle made by the liquid with the wetted tube wall  
 $\gamma$  = specific weight of the liquid  
 $d$  = diameter of the capillary tube

## Characteristics of a Static Liquid

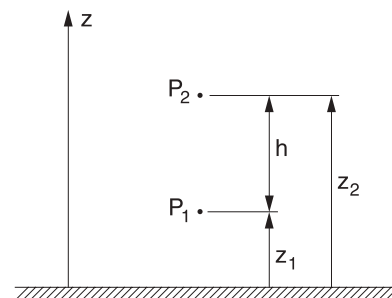
### The Pressure Field in a Static Liquid

The difference in pressure between two different points is

$$P_2 - P_1 = -\gamma (z_2 - z_1) = -\gamma h = -\rho gh$$

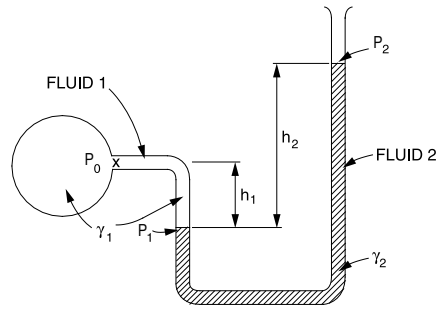
Absolute pressure = atmospheric pressure + gauge pressure reading

Absolute pressure = atmospheric pressure – vacuum gauge pressure reading



Source: Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

## Manometers



Source: Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

For a simple manometer,

$$P_0 = P_2 + \gamma_2 h_2 - \gamma_1 h_1 = P_2 + g (\rho_2 h_2 - \rho_1 h_1)$$

$$\text{If } h_1 = h_2 = h$$

$$P_0 = P_2 + (\gamma_2 - \gamma_1)h = P_2 + (\rho_2 - \rho_1)gh$$

Note that the difference between the two densities is used.

$P$  = pressure

$\gamma$  = specific weight of fluid

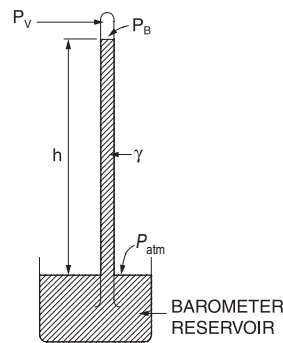
$h$  = height

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

$\rho$  = fluid density

Another device that works on the same principle as the manometer is the simple barometer.

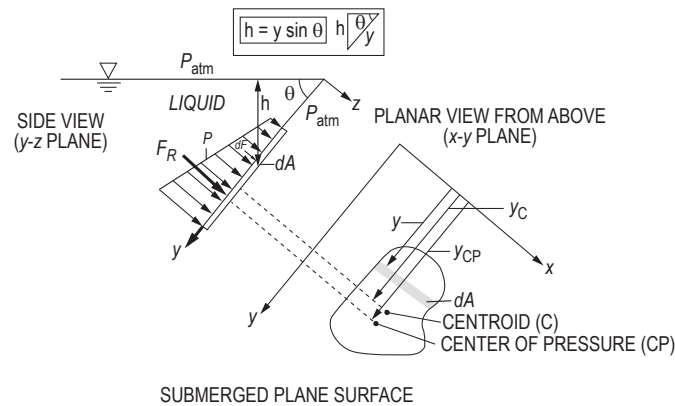
$$P_{\text{atm}} = P_A = P_v + \gamma h = P_B + \gamma h = P_B + \rho gh$$



$P_v$  = vapor pressure of the barometer fluid

Source: Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

## Forces on Submerged Surfaces and the Center of Pressure



Source: Elger, Donald F., et al, *Engineering Fluid Mechanics*, 10th ed., 2012. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

The pressure on a point at a vertical distance  $h$  below the surface is:

$$P = P_{\text{atm}} + \rho gh, \text{ for } h \geq 0$$

where

$P$  = pressure

$P_{\text{atm}}$  = atmospheric pressure

$P_C$  = pressure at the centroid of area

$P_{\text{CP}}$  = pressure at center of pressure

$y_C$  = slant distance from liquid surface to the centroid of area

$y_C = h_C / \sin \theta$

$h_C$  = vertical distance from liquid surface to centroid of area

$y_{\text{CP}}$  = slant distance from liquid surface to center of pressure

$h_{\text{CP}}$  = vertical distance from liquid surface to center of pressure

$\theta$  = angle between liquid surface and edge of submerged surface

$I_{xC}$  = moment of inertia about the centroidal x-axis

If atmospheric pressure acts above the liquid surface and on the non-wetted side of the submerged surface:

$$y_{\text{CP}} = y_C + I_{xC} / y_C A$$

$$y_{\text{CP}} = y_C + \rho g \sin \theta I_{xC} / P_C A$$

$$\text{Wetted side: } F_R = (P_{\text{atm}} + \rho g y_C \sin \theta) A$$

$$P_{\text{atm}} \text{ acting both sides: } F_{R_{\text{net}}} = (\rho g y_C \sin \theta) A$$

## Archimedes Principle and Buoyancy

1. The buoyant force exerted on a submerged or floating body is equal to the weight of the fluid displaced by the body.
2. A floating body displaces a weight of fluid equal to its own weight; i.e., a floating body is in equilibrium.

The *center of buoyancy* is located at the centroid of the displaced fluid volume.

In the case of a body lying at the *interface of two immiscible fluids*, the buoyant force equals the sum of the weights of the fluids displaced by the body.

## Principles of One-Dimensional Fluid Flow

### The Continuity Equation (Conservation of Mass)

So long as the mass flow rate ( $\dot{m}$ ) is continuous, the *continuity equation*, as applied to one-dimensional flows, states that the flow passing two points (1 and 2) in a stream is equal at each point,  $\dot{m}_1 = \dot{m}_2$ .

$$Q = Av$$

$$\dot{m} = \rho Q = \rho Av$$

where

$Q$  = volumetric flow rate

$\dot{m}$  = mass flow rate

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow

$v$  = average flow velocity

$\rho$  = fluid density

For steady, one-dimensional flow,  $\dot{m}$  is a constant. If, in addition, the density is constant, then  $Q$  is constant.

### Energy Equation

The energy equation for steady incompressible flow with no energy input (e.g., no pump) is:

$$\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\gamma} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f \quad \text{or}$$

$$\frac{P_1}{\rho g} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\rho g} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f$$

where  $h_f$  = the head loss, considered a friction effect, and all remaining terms are defined above.

If the cross-sectional area and the elevation of the pipe are the same at both sections (1 and 2), then  $z_1 = z_2$  and  $v_1 = v_2$ .

The pressure drop  $P_1 - P_2$  is given by the following:

$$P_1 - P_2 = \gamma h_f = \rho g h_f$$

### Bernoulli Equation

The Bernoulli equation is derived when the energy equation is applied to one-dimensional flows. Assuming no friction losses and that no pump or turbine exists between sections 1 and 2 in the system,

$$\frac{P_2}{\gamma} + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + z_2 = \frac{P_1}{\gamma} + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} + z_1 \quad \text{or}$$

$$\frac{P_2}{\rho} + \frac{v_2^2}{2} + z_2 g = \frac{P_1}{\rho} + \frac{v_1^2}{2} + z_1 g$$

where

$P_1, P_2$  = pressure at sections 1 and 2

$v_1, v_2$  = average velocity of the fluid at the sections

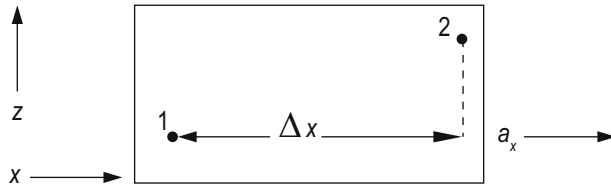
$z_1, z_2$  = vertical distance from a datum to the sections (the potential energy)

$\gamma$  = specific weight of the fluid ( $\rho g$ )

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

$\rho$  = fluid density

## Euler's Equation



For unsteady flow due to local acceleration (i.e., temporal acceleration) in the  $x$ -direction, the change in pressure between two points in a fluid can be determined by Euler's equation:

$$(P_2 + \gamma \cdot z_2) - (P_1 + \gamma \cdot z_1) = -\Delta x \cdot \rho \cdot a_x$$

where

$P_1, P_2$  = pressure at Locations 1 and 2

$\gamma$  = specific weight of the fluid ( $\rho g$ )

$z_1, z_2$  = elevation at Locations 1 and 2

$\rho$  = fluid density

$a_x$  = local (temporal) acceleration of fluid in the  $x$ -direction

$\Delta x$  = distance between Locations 1 and 2 in the  $x$ -direction

Source: Crowe, Clayton T., *Engineering Fluid Mechanics*, 2nd ed., New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1980, p. 144.

## Hydraulic Gradient (Grade Line)

Hydraulic grade line is the line connecting the sum of pressure and elevation heads at different points in conveyance systems. If a row of piezometers were placed at intervals along the pipe, the grade line would join the water levels in the piezometer water columns.

## Energy Line (Bernoulli Equation)

The Bernoulli equation states that the sum of the pressure, velocity, and elevation heads is constant. The energy line is this sum or the "total head line" above a horizontal datum. The difference between the hydraulic grade line and the energy line is the  $v^2/2g$  term.

## Fluid flow characterization

### Reynolds Number

$$Re = \frac{vD\rho}{\mu} = \frac{vD}{\nu}$$

$$Re' = \frac{v^{(2-n)} D^n \rho}{K \left( \frac{3n+1}{4n} \right)^n 8^{(n-1)}}$$

where

$v$  = fluid velocity

$\rho$  = mass density

$D$  = diameter of the pipe, dimension of the fluid streamline, or characteristic length

$\mu$  = dynamic viscosity

$\nu$  = kinematic viscosity

$Re$  = Reynolds number (Newtonian fluid)

$Re'$  = Reynolds number (Power law fluid)

$K$  and  $n$  are defined in the Stress, Pressure, and Viscosity section.

The critical Reynolds number  $(Re)_c$  is defined to be the minimum Reynolds number at which a flow will turn turbulent.

Flow through a pipe is generally characterized as laminar for  $Re < 2,100$  and fully turbulent for  $Re > 10,000$ , and transitional flow for  $2,100 < Re < 10,000$ .

The velocity distribution for *laminar flow* in circular tubes or between planes is

$$v(r) = v_{\max} \left[ 1 - \left( \frac{r}{R} \right)^2 \right]$$

where

$r$  = distance (m) from the centerline

$R$  = radius (m) of the tube or half the distance between the parallel planes

$v$  = local velocity (m/s) at  $r$

$v_{\max}$  = velocity (m/s) at the centerline of the duct

$v_{\max} = 1.18 \bar{v}$ , for fully turbulent flow

$v_{\max} = 2 \bar{v}$ , for circular tubes in laminar flow and

$v_{\max} = 1.5 \bar{v}$ , for parallel planes in laminar flow, where

$\bar{v}$  = average velocity (m/s) in the duct

The shear stress distribution is

$$\frac{\tau}{\tau_w} = \frac{r}{R}$$

where  $\tau$  and  $\tau_w$  are the shear stresses at radii  $r$  and  $R$ , respectively.

## Consequences of Fluid Flow

### Head Loss Due to Flow

The *Darcy-Weisbach equation* is

$$h_f = f \frac{L}{D} \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

where

$f$  =  $f(\text{Re}, \varepsilon/D)$ , the Moody, Darcy, or Stanton friction factor

$D$  = diameter of the pipe

$L$  = length over which the pressure drop occurs

$\varepsilon$  = roughness factor for the pipe, and other symbols are defined as before

An alternative formulation employed by chemical engineers is

$$h_f = \left( 4f_{\text{Fanning}} \right) \frac{Lv^2}{D2g} = \frac{2f_{\text{Fanning}} Lv^2}{Dg}$$

$$\text{Fanning friction factor, } f_{\text{Fanning}} = \frac{f}{4}$$

A chart that gives  $f$  versus  $\text{Re}$  for various values of  $\varepsilon/D$ , known as a *Moody, Darcy, or Stanton diagram*, is available in this section.

### Minor Losses in Pipe Fittings, Contractions, and Expansions

Head losses also occur as the fluid flows through pipe fittings (i.e., elbows, valves, couplings, etc.) and sudden pipe contractions and expansions.

$$\frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\gamma} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f + h_{f, \text{fitting}}$$

$$\frac{P_1}{\rho g} + z_1 + \frac{v_1^2}{2g} = \frac{P_2}{\rho g} + z_2 + \frac{v_2^2}{2g} + h_f + h_{f, \text{fitting}}$$

where

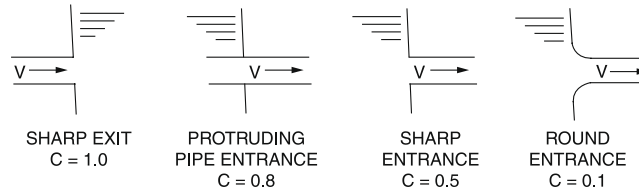
$$h_{f, \text{fitting}} = C \frac{v^2}{2g}$$

$$\frac{v^2}{2g} = 1 \text{ velocity head}$$

Specific fittings have characteristic values of  $C$ , which will be provided in the problem statement. A generally accepted *nominal value* for head loss in *well-streamlined gradual contractions* is

$$h_{f, \text{fitting}} = 0.04 v^2 / 2g$$

The *head loss* at either an *entrance* or *exit* of a pipe from or to a reservoir is also given by the  $h_{f, \text{fitting}}$  equation. Values for  $C$  for various cases are shown as follows.



Source: Bober, W., and R.A. Kenyon, *Fluid Mechanics*, Wiley, 1980. Diagrams reprinted by permission of William Bober and Richard A. Kenyon.

### Pressure Drop for Laminar Flow

The equation for  $Q$  in terms of the pressure drop  $\Delta P_f$  is the Hagen-Poiseuille equation. This relation is valid only for flow in the laminar region.

$$Q = \frac{\pi R^4 \Delta P_f}{8\mu L} = \frac{\pi D^4 \Delta P_f}{128\mu L}$$

### Flow in Noncircular Conduits

Analysis of flow in conduits having a noncircular cross section uses the *hydraulic radius*  $R_H$ , or the *hydraulic diameter*  $D_H$ , as follows:

$$R_H = \frac{\text{cross-sectional area}}{\text{wetted perimeter}} = \frac{D_H}{4}$$

### Drag Force

The *drag force*  $F_D$  on objects immersed in a large body of flowing fluid or objects moving through a stagnant fluid is

$$F_D = \frac{C_D \rho v^2 A}{2}$$

where

$C_D$  = drag coefficient

$v$  = velocity (m/s) of the flowing fluid or moving object

$A$  = projected area ( $\text{m}^2$ ) of blunt objects such as spheres, ellipsoids, disks, and plates, cylinders, ellipses, and air foils with axes perpendicular to the flow

$\rho$  = fluid density

For flat plates placed parallel with the flow:

$$C_D = 1.33/\text{Re}^{0.5} \quad (10^4 < \text{Re} < 5 \times 10^5)$$

$$C_D = 0.031/\text{Re}^{1/7} \quad (10^6 < \text{Re} < 10^9)$$

The characteristic length in the Reynolds Number ( $\text{Re}$ ) is the length of the plate parallel with the flow. For blunt objects, the characteristic length is the largest linear dimension (diameter of cylinder, sphere, disk, etc.) that is perpendicular to the flow.

## Characteristics of Selected Flow Configurations

### Open-Channel Flow and/or Pipe Flow of Water

#### Manning's Equation

$$Q = \frac{K}{n} A R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

$$v = \frac{K}{n} R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

where

$Q$  = discharge (ft<sup>3</sup>/sec or m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$v$  = velocity (ft/sec or m/s)

$K$  = 1.486 for USCS units, 1.0 for SI units

$n$  = roughness coefficient

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow (ft<sup>2</sup> or m<sup>2</sup>)

$R_H$  = hydraulic radius (ft or m) =  $\frac{A}{P}$

$P$  = wetted perimeter (ft or m)

$S$  = slope (ft/ft or m/m)

#### Hazen-Williams Equation

$$v = k_1 C R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

$$Q = k_1 C A R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

where

$k_1$  = 0.849 for SI units, 1.318 for USCS units

$C$  = roughness coefficient, as tabulated in the Civil Engineering section. Other symbols are defined as before.

### Flow Through a Packed Bed

A porous, fixed bed of solid particles can be characterized by

$L$  = length of particle bed (m)

$D_p$  = average particle diameter (m)

$\Phi_s$  = sphericity of particles, dimensionless (0–1)

$\varepsilon$  = porosity or void fraction of the particle bed, dimensionless (0–1)

The Ergun equation can be used to estimate pressure loss through a packed bed under laminar and turbulent flow conditions.

$$\frac{\Delta P}{L} = \frac{150 v_o \mu (1 - \varepsilon)^2}{\Phi_s^2 D_p^2 \varepsilon^3} + \frac{1.75 \rho v_o^2 (1 - \varepsilon)}{\Phi_s D_p \varepsilon^3}$$

where

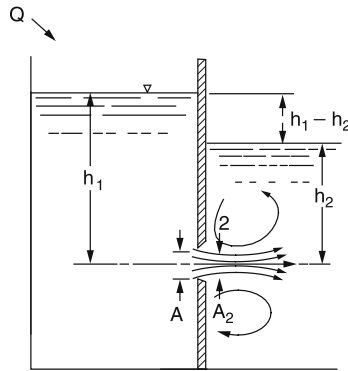
$\Delta P$  = pressure loss across packed bed (Pa)

$v_o$  = superficial (flow through empty vessel) fluid velocity (m/s)

$\rho$  = fluid density (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$\mu$  = fluid viscosity [kg/(m•s)]

### Submerged Orifice Operating under Steady-Flow Conditions:



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

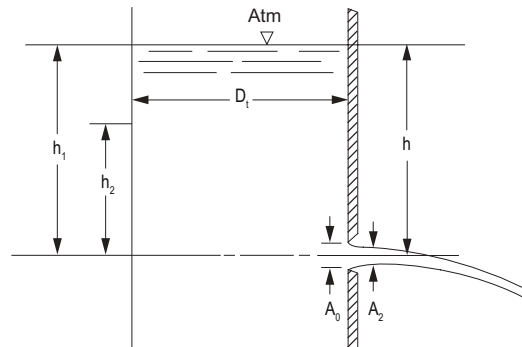
$$Q = A_2 v_2 = C_c C_v A \sqrt{2g(h_1 - h_2)} = CA \sqrt{2g(h_1 - h_2)}$$

in which the product of  $C_c$  and  $C_v$  is defined as the *coefficient of discharge* of the orifice.

where

$v_2$  = velocity of fluid exiting orifice

### Orifice Discharging Freely into Atmosphere



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$Q = CA_0 \sqrt{2gh}$$

in which  $h$  is measured from the liquid surface to the centroid of the orifice opening.

$Q$  = volumetric flow

$A_0$  = cross-sectional area of flow

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

$h$  = height of fluid above orifice

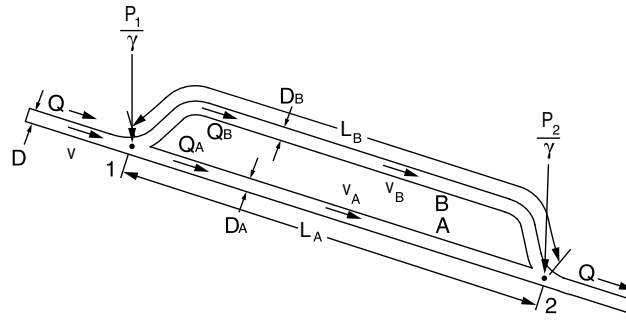
Time required to drain a tank

$$\Delta t = \frac{2(A_t / A_0)}{\sqrt{2g}} (h_1^{1/2} - h_2^{1/2})$$

where

$$A_t = \text{cross-sectional area of tank} = \frac{\pi D_t^2}{4}$$

## Multipath Pipeline Problems



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

For pipes in parallel, the head loss is the same in each pipe.

$$h_L = f_A \frac{L_A}{D_A} \frac{v_A^2}{2g} = f_B \frac{L_B}{D_B} \frac{v_B^2}{2g}$$

$$(\pi D^2/4)v = (\pi D_A^2/4)v_A + (\pi D_B^2/4)v_B$$

The total flow rate  $Q$  is the sum of the flow rates in the parallel pipes.

## The Impulse-Momentum Principle

The resultant force in a given direction acting on the fluid equals the rate of change of momentum of the fluid.

$$\Sigma F = \Sigma Q_2 \rho_2 v_2 - \Sigma Q_1 \rho_1 v_1$$

where

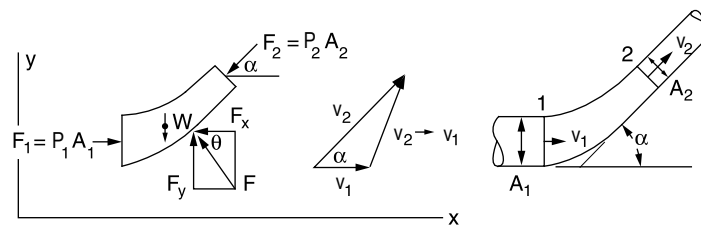
$\Sigma F$  = resultant of all external forces acting on the control volume

$\Sigma Q_1 \rho_1 v_1$  = rate of momentum of the fluid flow entering the control volume in the same direction of the force

$\Sigma Q_2 \rho_2 v_2$  = rate of momentum of the fluid flow leaving the control volume in the same direction of the force

## Pipe Bends, Enlargements, and Contractions

The force exerted by a flowing fluid on a bend, enlargement, or contraction in a pipeline may be computed using the impulse-momentum principle.



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$P_1 A_1 - P_2 A_2 \cos \alpha - F_x = Q \rho (v_2 \cos \alpha - v_1)$$

$$F_y - W - P_2 A_2 \sin \alpha = Q \rho (v_2 \sin \alpha - 0)$$

where

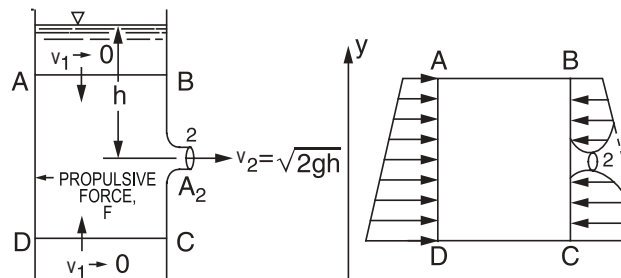
$F$  = force exerted by the bend on the fluid (the force exerted by the fluid on the bend is equal in magnitude and opposite in sign),  $F_x$  and  $F_y$  are the x-component and y-component of the force  $F = \sqrt{F_x^2 + F_y^2}$  and

$$\theta = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{F_y}{F_x} \right)$$

where

- $P$  = internal pressure in the pipe line  
 $A$  = cross-sectional area of the pipe line  
 $W$  = weight of the fluid  
 $v$  = velocity of the fluid flow  
 $\alpha$  = angle the pipe bend makes with the horizontal  
 $\rho$  = density of the fluid  
 $Q$  = fluid volumetric flow rate

## Jet Propulsion



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$F = Q\rho(v_2 - 0)$$

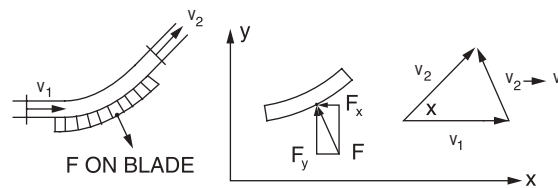
$$F = 2\gamma h A_2$$

where

- $F$  = propulsive force  
 $\gamma$  = specific weight of the fluid  
 $h$  = height of the fluid above the outlet  
 $A_2$  = area of the nozzle tip  
 $Q = A_2 \sqrt{2gh}$   
 $v_2 = \sqrt{2gh}$

## Deflectors and Blades

### Fixed Blade

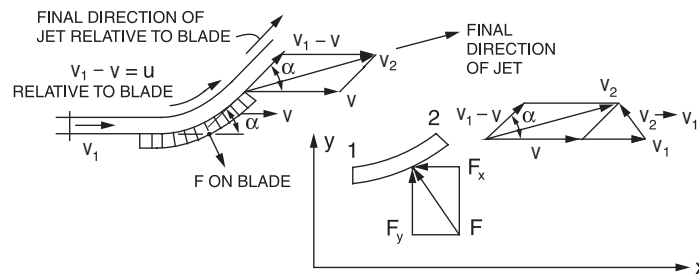


Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$-F_x = Q\rho(v_2 \cos \alpha - v_1)$$

$$F_y = Q\rho(v_2 \sin \alpha - 0)$$

## Moving Blade

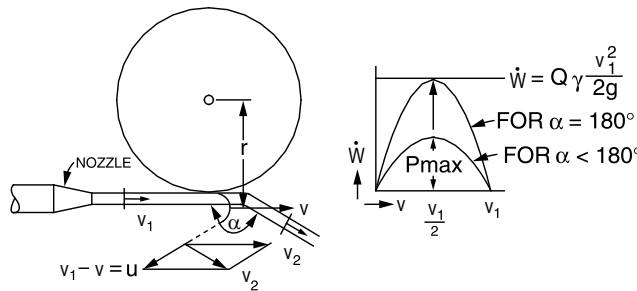


$$\begin{aligned}
 -F_x &= Q\rho(v_{2x} - v_{1x}) \\
 &= -Q\rho(v_1 - v)(1 - \cos \alpha) \\
 F_y &= Q\rho(v_{2y} - v_{1y}) \\
 &= +Q\rho(v_1 - v) \sin \alpha
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $v$  = velocity of the blade

Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

## Impulse Turbine



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$\dot{W} = Q\rho(v_1 - v)(1 - \cos \alpha)v$$

$\dot{W}$  = power of the turbine

where  $\dot{W}_{\max} = Q\rho(v_1^2/4)(1 - \cos \alpha)$

When  $\alpha = 180^\circ$ ,

$$\dot{W}_{\max} = (Q\rho v_1^2)/2 = (Q\gamma v_1^2)/2g$$

## Compressible Flow

### Mach Number

The local *speed of sound* in an ideal gas is given by:

$$c = \sqrt{kRT}$$

where

$c$   $\equiv$  local speed of sound

$k$   $\equiv$  ratio of specific heats =  $\frac{c_p}{c_v}$

$R$   $\equiv$  specific gas constant =  $\bar{R}/(\text{molecular weight})$

$T$   $\equiv$  absolute temperature

Example: speed of sound in dry air at 1 atm 20°C is 343.2 m/s.

This shows that the acoustic velocity in an ideal gas depends only on its temperature. The *Mach number* (Ma) is the ratio of the fluid velocity to the speed of sound.

$$\text{Ma} \equiv \frac{V}{c}$$

$V$   $\equiv$  mean fluid velocity

### Isentropic Flow Relationships

In an ideal gas for an isentropic process, the following relationships exist between static properties at any two points in the flow.

$$\frac{P_2}{P_1} = \left( \frac{T_2}{T_1} \right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}} = \left( \frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1} \right)^k$$

The stagnation temperature,  $T_0$ , at a point in the flow is related to the static temperature as follows:

$$T_0 = T + \frac{V^2}{2 \cdot c_p}$$

Energy relation between two points:

$$h_1 + \frac{V_1^2}{2} = h_2 + \frac{V_2^2}{2}$$

Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

The relationship between the static and stagnation properties ( $T_0$ ,  $P_0$ , and  $\rho_0$ ) at any point in the flow can be expressed as a function of the Mach number as follows:

$$\frac{T_0}{T} = 1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2$$

$$\frac{P_0}{P} = \left( \frac{T_0}{T} \right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}} = \left( 1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2 \right)^{\frac{k}{k-1}}$$

$$\frac{\rho_0}{\rho} = \left( \frac{T_0}{T} \right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}} = \left( 1 + \frac{k-1}{2} \cdot \text{Ma}^2 \right)^{\frac{1}{k-1}}$$

Compressible flows are often accelerated or decelerated through a nozzle or diffuser. For subsonic flows, the velocity decreases as the flow cross-sectional area increases and vice versa. For supersonic flows, the velocity increases as the flow cross-sectional area increases and decreases as the flow cross-sectional area decreases. The point at which the Mach number is sonic is called the *throat* and its area is represented by the variable,  $A^*$ . The following area ratio holds for any Mach number.

$$\frac{A}{A^*} = \frac{1}{\text{Ma}} \left[ \frac{1 + \frac{1}{2}(k-1)\text{Ma}^2}{\frac{1}{2}(k+1)} \right]^{\frac{(k+1)}{2(k-1)}}$$

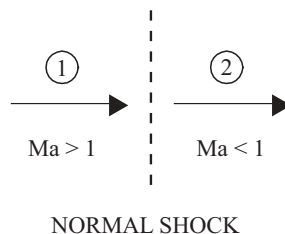
where

$A$   $\equiv$  area [length<sup>2</sup>]

$A^*$   $\equiv$  area at the sonic point (Ma = 1.0)

### Normal Shock Relationships

A normal shock wave is a physical mechanism that slows a flow from supersonic to subsonic. It occurs over an infinitesimal distance. The flow upstream of a normal shock wave is always supersonic and the flow downstream is always subsonic as depicted in the figure.



The following equations relate downstream flow conditions to upstream flow conditions for a normal shock wave.

$$Ma_2 = \sqrt{\frac{(k-1)Ma_1^2 + 2}{2k Ma_1^2 - (k-1)}}$$

$$\frac{T_2}{T_1} = \left[2 + (k-1)Ma_1^2\right] \frac{2k Ma_1^2 - (k-1)}{(k+1)^2 Ma_1^2}$$

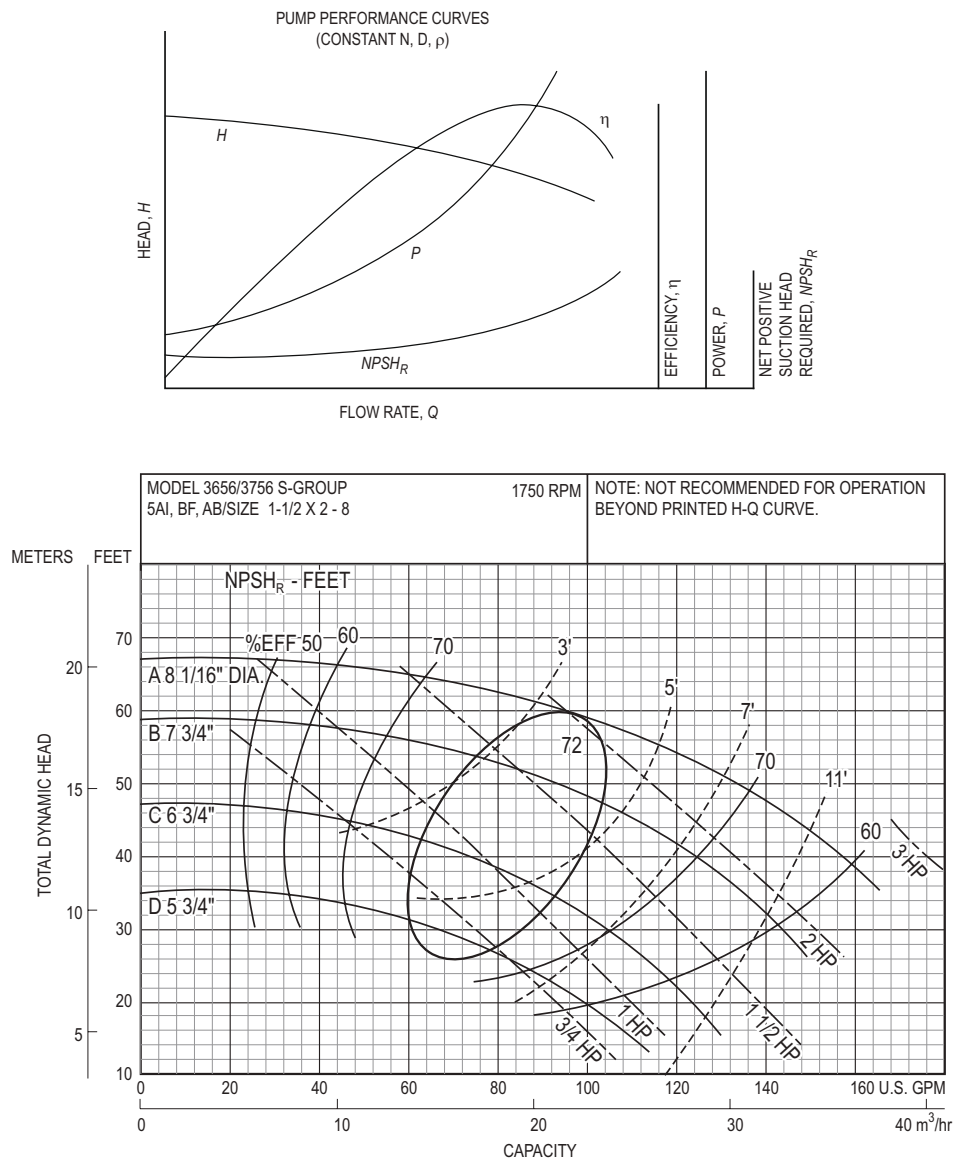
$$\frac{P_2}{P_1} = \frac{1}{k+1} [2k Ma_1^2 - (k-1)]$$

$$\frac{\rho_2}{\rho_1} = \frac{V_1}{V_2} = \frac{(k+1)Ma_1^2}{(k-1)Ma_1^2 + 2}$$

$$T_{01} = T_{02}$$

## Fluid Flow Machinery

### Centrifugal Pump Characteristics



CENTRIFUGAL PUMP CURVE FOR A GOULD MODEL 3656/3756 PUMP

### Net Positive Suction Head Available ( $NPSH_A$ )

$$NPSH_A = H_{pa} + H_s - \sum h_L - H_{vp} = \frac{P_{inlet}}{\rho g} + \frac{v_{inlet}^2}{2g} - \frac{P_{vapor}}{\rho g}$$

where

- $H_{pa}$  = atmospheric pressure head on the surface of the liquid in the sump (ft or m)
- $H_s$  = static suction head of liquid. This is the height of the surface of the liquid above the centerline of the pump impeller (ft or m).
- $\sum h_L$  = total friction losses in the suction line (ft or m)
- $H_{vp}$  = vapor pressure head of the liquid at the operating temperature (ft or m)
- $P_{inlet}$  = pressure at pump inlet
- $v_{inlet}$  = fluid velocity at pump inlet
- $P_{vapor}$  = fluid vapor pressure at pump inlet
- $\rho$  = fluid density
- $g$  = acceleration due to gravity

$$\text{Fluid power } \dot{W}_{fluid} = \rho g H Q$$

$$\text{Pump (brake)power } \dot{W} = \frac{\rho g H Q}{\eta_{pump}}$$

$$\text{Purchased power } \dot{W}_{purchased} = \frac{\dot{W}}{\eta_{motor}}$$

where

- $\eta_{pump}$  = pump efficiency (0 to 1)
- $\eta_{motor}$  = motor efficiency (0 to 1)
- $H$  = head increase provided by pump

### Pump Power Equation

$$\dot{W} = Q \gamma h / \eta_t = Q \rho g h / \eta_t$$

where

- $Q$  = volumetric flow ( $m^3/s$  or cfs)
- $h$  = head (m or ft) the fluid has to be lifted
- $\eta_t$  = total efficiency ( $\eta_{pump} \times \eta_{motor}$ )
- $\dot{W}$  = power ( $kg \cdot m^2/sec^3$  or ft-lbf/sec)

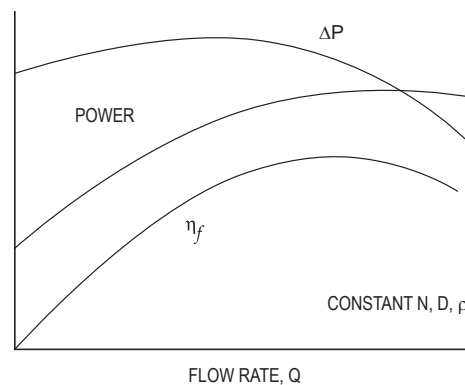
### Fan Characteristics

#### Typical Backward Curved Fans

$$\dot{W} = \frac{\Delta P Q}{\eta_f}$$

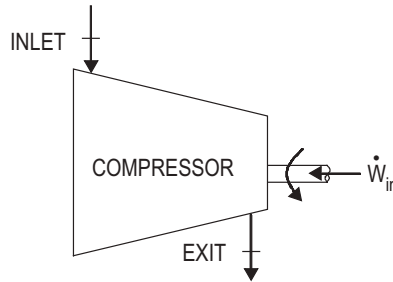
where

- $\dot{W}$  = fan power
- $\Delta P$  = pressure rise
- $\eta_f$  = fan efficiency



## Compressors

Compressors consume power to add energy to the working fluid. This energy addition results in an increase in fluid pressure (head).



For an adiabatic compressor with  $\Delta PE = 0$  and negligible  $\Delta KE$ :

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = -\dot{m}(h_e - h_i)$$

For an ideal gas with constant specific heats:

$$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} = -\dot{m}c_p(T_e - T_i)$$

Per unit mass:

$$w_{\text{comp}} = -c_p(T_e - T_i)$$

Compressor Isentropic Efficiency

$$\eta_C = \frac{w_s}{w_a} = \frac{T_{es} - T_i}{T_e - T_i}$$

where

$w_a \equiv$  actual compressor work per unit mass

$w_s \equiv$  isentropic compressor work per unit mass

$T_{es} \equiv$  isentropic exit temperature

For a compressor where  $\Delta KE$  is included:

$$\begin{aligned} \dot{W}_{\text{comp}} &= -\dot{m} \left( h_e - h_i + \frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2} \right) \\ &= -\dot{m} \left( c_p(T_e - T_i) + \frac{V_e^2 - V_i^2}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Adiabatic Compression

$$\left| \dot{W}_{\text{comp}} \right| = \frac{\dot{m} P_i k}{(k-1)\rho_i \eta_c} \left[ \left( \frac{P_e}{P_i} \right)^{1-\frac{1}{k}} - 1 \right]$$

where

$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}} =$  fluid or gas power (W)

$P_i =$  inlet or suction pressure (N/m<sup>2</sup>)

$P_e =$  exit or discharge pressure (N/m<sup>2</sup>)

$k =$  ratio of specific heats  $= c_p/c_v$

$\rho_i =$  inlet gas density (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$\eta_c =$  isentropic compressor efficiency

### Isothermal Compression

$$\left| \dot{W}_{\text{comp}} \right| = \frac{\bar{R}T_i}{M\eta_c} \ln \frac{P_e}{P_i} (\dot{m})$$

where

$\dot{W}_{\text{comp}}$ ,  $P_i$ ,  $P_e$ , and  $\eta_c$  as defined for adiabatic compression

$\bar{R}$  = universal gas constant

$T_i$  = inlet temperature of gas (K)

$M$  = molecular weight of gas (kg/kmol)

### Blowers

$$P_w = \frac{WRT_1}{Cne} \left[ \left( \frac{P_2}{P_1} \right)^{0.283} - 1 \right]$$

where

$C$  = 29.7 (constant for SI unit conversion)

= 550 ft-lbf/(sec-hp) (U.S. Customary Units)

$P_w$  = power requirement (hp)

$W$  = weight of flow of air (lb/sec)

$R$  = engineering gas constant for air = 53.3 ft-lbf/(lb air-°R)

$T_1$  = absolute inlet temperature (°R)

$P_1$  = absolute inlet pressure (lbf/in<sup>2</sup>)

$P_2$  = absolute outlet pressure (lbf/in<sup>2</sup>)

$n$  =  $(k - 1)/k = 0.283$  for air

$e$  = efficiency (usually  $0.70 < e < 0.90$ )

Source: Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment, Disposal, and Reuse*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1991.

### Turbines

Turbines produce power by extracting energy from a working fluid. The energy loss shows up as a decrease in fluid pressure (head).

For an adiabatic turbine with  $\Delta PE = 0$  and negligible  $\Delta KE$ :

$$\dot{W}_{\text{turb}} = \dot{m}(h_i - h_e)$$

For an ideal gas with constant specific heats:

$$\dot{W}_{\text{turb}} = \dot{m}c_p(T_i - T_e)$$

Per unit mass:

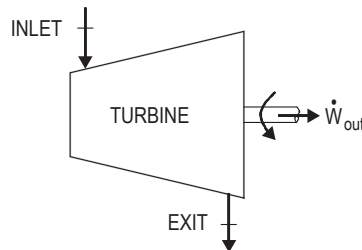
$$w_{\text{turb}} = c_p(T_i - T_e)$$

Turbine Isentropic Efficiency

$$\eta_T = \frac{w_a}{w_s} = \frac{T_i - T_e}{T_i - T_{es}}$$

For a turbine where  $\Delta KE$  is included:

$$\dot{W}_{\text{turb}} = \dot{m} \left( h_i - h_e + \frac{V_i^2 - V_e^2}{2} \right) = \dot{m} \left( c_p(T_i - T_e) + \frac{V_i^2 - V_e^2}{2} \right)$$



## Performance of Components

### Fans, Pumps, and Compressors

#### Scaling Laws; Affinity Laws

$$\begin{aligned}\left(\frac{Q}{ND^3}\right)_2 &= \left(\frac{Q}{ND^3}\right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{\dot{m}}{\rho ND^3}\right)_2 &= \left(\frac{\dot{m}}{\rho ND^3}\right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{H}{N^2 D^2}\right)_2 &= \left(\frac{H}{N^2 D^2}\right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{P}{\rho N^2 D^2}\right)_2 &= \left(\frac{P}{\rho N^2 D^2}\right)_1 \\ \left(\frac{\dot{W}}{\rho N^3 D^5}\right)_2 &= \left(\frac{\dot{W}}{\rho N^3 D^5}\right)_1\end{aligned}$$

where

$Q$  = volumetric flow rate

$\dot{m}$  = mass flow rate

$H$  = head

$P$  = pressure rise

$\dot{W}$  = power

$\rho$  = fluid density

$N$  = rotational speed

$D$  = impeller diameter

Subscripts 1 and 2 refer to different but similar machines or to different operating conditions of the same machine.

## Fluid Flow Measurement

### Pitot Tubes

From the stagnation pressure equation for an incompressible fluid,

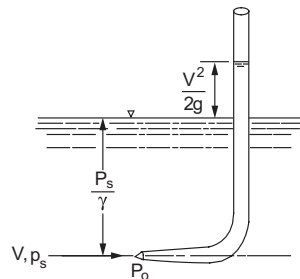
$$v = \sqrt{(2/\rho)(P_0 - P_s)} = \sqrt{2g(P_0 - P_s)/\gamma}$$

where

$v$  = velocity of the fluid

$P_0$  = stagnation pressure

$P_s$  = static pressure of the fluid at the elevation where the measurement is taken



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

For a *compressible fluid*, use the above incompressible fluid equation if the Mach number  $\leq 0.3$ .

## Venturi Meters

$$Q = \frac{C_v A_2}{\sqrt{1 - (A_2/A_1)^2}} \sqrt{2g \left( \frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 - \frac{P_2}{\gamma} - z_2 \right)}$$

where

$Q$  = volumetric flow rate

$C_v$  = coefficient of velocity

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow

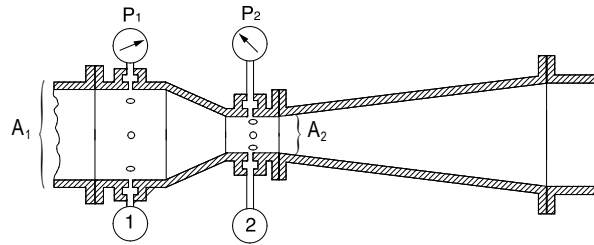
$P$  = pressure

$\gamma$  =  $\rho g$

$z_1$  = elevation of venturi entrance

$z_2$  = elevation of venturi throat

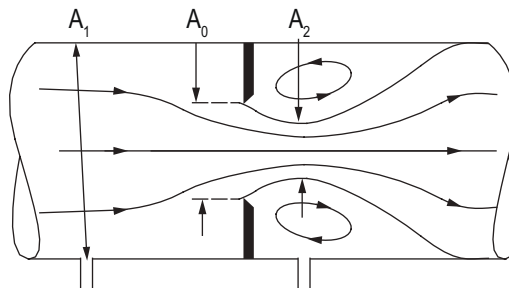
The above equation is for *incompressible fluids*.



Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

## Orifices

The cross-sectional area at the vena contracta  $A_2$  is characterized by a *coefficient of contraction*  $C_c$  and given by  $C_c A_0$ .

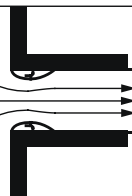


Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

$$Q = C A_0 \sqrt{2g \left( \frac{P_1}{\gamma} + z_1 - \frac{P_2}{\gamma} - z_2 \right)}$$

where  $C$ , the *coefficient of the meter (orifice coefficient)*, is given by

$$C = \frac{C_v C_c}{\sqrt{1 - C_c^2 (A_0/A_1)^2}}$$

| ORIFICES AND THEIR NOMINAL COEFFICIENTS |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                         | SHARP<br>EDGED                                                                    | ROUNDED                                                                           | SHORT TUBE                                                                        | BORDA                                                                              |
|                                         |  |  |  |  |
| C                                       | 0.61                                                                              | 0.98                                                                              | 0.80                                                                              | 0.51                                                                               |
| C <sub>C</sub>                          | 0.62                                                                              | 1.00                                                                              | 1.00                                                                              | 0.52                                                                               |
| C <sub>V</sub>                          | 0.98                                                                              | 0.98                                                                              | 0.80                                                                              | 0.98                                                                               |

Source: Vennard, J.K., *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 1982.

For incompressible flow through a horizontal orifice meter installation

$$Q = CA_0 \sqrt{\frac{2}{\rho} (P_1 - P_2)}$$

## Dimensional Homogeneity

### Dimensional Analysis

A dimensionally homogeneous equation has the same dimensions on the left and right sides of the equation. Dimensional analysis involves the development of equations that relate dimensionless groups of variables to describe physical phenomena.

Buckingham Pi Theorem: The *number of independent dimensionless groups* that may be employed to describe a phenomenon known to involve  $n$  variables is equal to the number  $(n - \bar{r})$ , where  $\bar{r}$  is the number of basic dimensions (e.g., M, L, T) needed to express the variables dimensionally.

### Similitude

In order to use a model to simulate the conditions of the prototype, the model must be *geometrically*, *kinematically*, and *dynamically similar* to the prototype system.

To obtain dynamic similarity between two flow pictures, all independent force ratios that can be written must be the same in both the model and the prototype. Thus, dynamic similarity between two flow pictures (when all possible forces are acting) is expressed in the five simultaneous equations below.

$$\begin{aligned} \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_P} \right]_p &= \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_P} \right]_m = \left[ \frac{\rho v^2}{P} \right]_p = \left[ \frac{\rho v^2}{P} \right]_m \\ \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_V} \right]_p &= \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_V} \right]_m = \left[ \frac{vl\rho}{\mu} \right]_p = \left[ \frac{vl\rho}{\mu} \right]_m = [\text{Re}]_p = [\text{Re}]_m \\ \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_G} \right]_p &= \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_G} \right]_m = \left[ \frac{v^2}{lg} \right]_p = \left[ \frac{v^2}{lg} \right]_m = [\text{Fr}]_p = [\text{Fr}]_m \\ \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_E} \right]_p &= \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_E} \right]_m = \left[ \frac{\rho v^2}{E_v} \right]_p = \left[ \frac{\rho v^2}{E_v} \right]_m = [\text{Ca}]_p = [\text{Ca}]_m \\ \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_T} \right]_p &= \left[ \frac{F_I}{F_T} \right]_m = \left[ \frac{\rho lv^2}{\sigma} \right]_p = \left[ \frac{\rho lv^2}{\sigma} \right]_m = [\text{We}]_p = [\text{We}]_m \end{aligned}$$

where the subscripts  $p$  and  $m$  stand for *prototype* and *model* respectively, and

$F_I$  = inertia force

$F_P$  = pressure force

$F_V$  = viscous force

$F_G$  = gravity force

$F_E$  = elastic force

$F_T$  = surface tension force

Re = Reynolds number

We = Weber number

Ca = Cauchy number

Fr = Froude number

$l$  = characteristic length

$v$  = velocity

$\rho$  = density

$\sigma$  = surface tension

$E_v$  = bulk modulus

$\mu$  = dynamic viscosity

$P$  = pressure

$g$  = acceleration of gravity

## Aerodynamics

### Airfoil/Wing Theory

The lift force on a wing,  $F_L$ , is given by

$$F_L = \frac{C_L \rho v^2 A_P}{2}$$

where

$C_L$  = lift coefficient

$\rho$  = fluid density

$v$  = velocity (m/s) of the undisturbed fluid and

$A_P$  = projected area of the wing as seen from above (plan area). This same area is used in defining the drag coefficient for an airfoil.

The lift coefficient  $C_L$  can be approximated by the equation

$$C_L = 2\pi k_1 \sin(\alpha + \beta), \text{ which is valid for small values of } \alpha \text{ and } \beta$$

where

$k_1$  = constant of proportionality

$\alpha$  = angle of attack (angle between chord of airfoil and direction of flow)

$\beta$  = negative of angle of attack for zero lift

The drag coefficient  $C_D$  may be approximated by

$$C_D = C_{D\infty} + \frac{C_L^2}{\pi AR}$$

where  $C_{D\infty}$  = infinite span drag coefficient

The drag force on a wing,  $F_D$ , is given by

$$F_D = \frac{C_D \rho v^2 A_P}{2}$$

The aspect ratio  $AR$  is defined

$$AR = \frac{b^2}{A_p} = \frac{A_p}{\bar{c}^2}$$

where

$b$  = span length

$A_p$  = plan area

$\bar{c}$  = average chord length

The aerodynamic moment  $M$  is given by

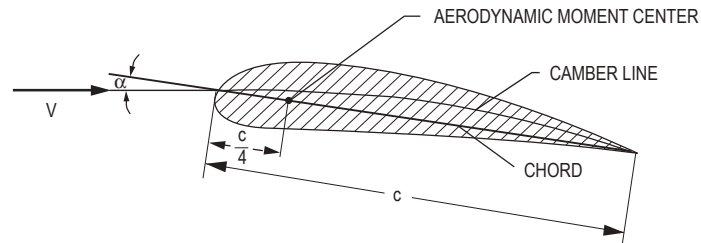
$$M = \frac{C_M \rho v^2 A_p \bar{c}}{2}$$

where the moment is taken about the front quarter point of the airfoil.

$C_M$  = moment coefficient

$\rho$  = fluid density

$v$  = velocity



### Properties of Water (SI Metric Units)

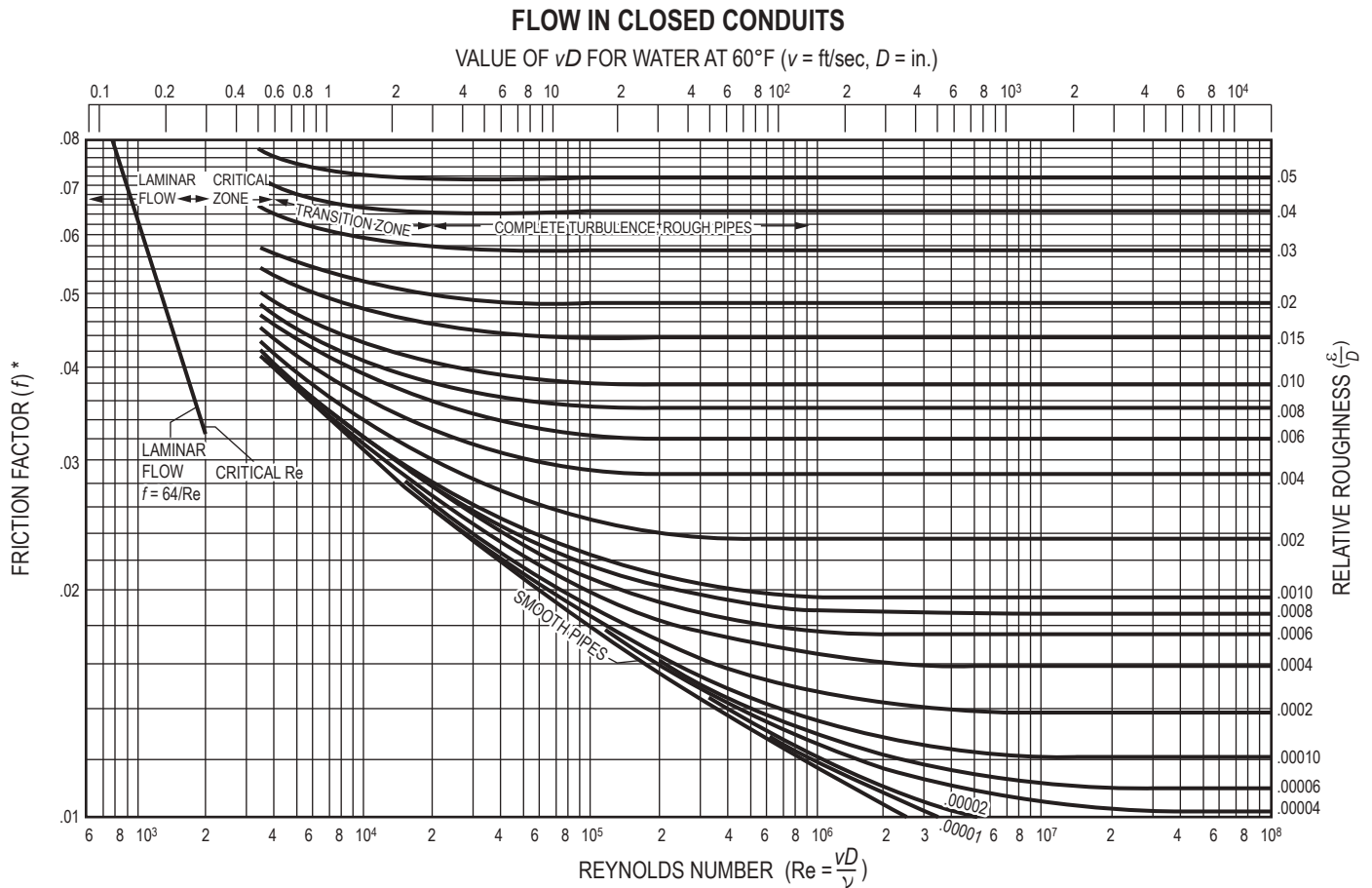
| Temperature<br>(°C) | Specific Weight<br>$\gamma$<br>(kN/m <sup>3</sup> ) | Density<br>$\rho$<br>(kg/m <sup>3</sup> ) | Absolute Dynamic<br>Viscosity<br>$\mu$<br>(Pa·s) | Kinematic<br>Viscosity<br>$\nu$<br>(m <sup>2</sup> /s) | Vapor Pressure<br>$P_v$<br>(kPa) |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 0                   | 9.805                                               | 999.8                                     | 0.001781                                         | 0.000001785                                            | 0.61                             |
| 5                   | 9.807                                               | 1000.0                                    | 0.001518                                         | 0.000001518                                            | 0.87                             |
| 10                  | 9.804                                               | 999.7                                     | 0.001307                                         | 0.000001306                                            | 1.23                             |
| 15                  | 9.798                                               | 999.1                                     | 0.001139                                         | 0.000001139                                            | 1.70                             |
| 20                  | 9.789                                               | 998.2                                     | 0.001002                                         | 0.000001003                                            | 2.34                             |
| 25                  | 9.777                                               | 997.0                                     | 0.000890                                         | 0.000000893                                            | 3.17                             |
| 30                  | 9.764                                               | 995.7                                     | 0.000798                                         | 0.000000800                                            | 4.24                             |
| 40                  | 9.730                                               | 992.2                                     | 0.000653                                         | 0.000000658                                            | 7.38                             |
| 50                  | 9.689                                               | 988.0                                     | 0.000547                                         | 0.000000553                                            | 12.33                            |
| 60                  | 9.642                                               | 983.2                                     | 0.000466                                         | 0.000000474                                            | 19.92                            |
| 70                  | 9.589                                               | 977.8                                     | 0.000404                                         | 0.000000413                                            | 31.16                            |
| 80                  | 9.530                                               | 971.8                                     | 0.000354                                         | 0.000000364                                            | 47.34                            |
| 90                  | 9.466                                               | 965.3                                     | 0.000315                                         | 0.000000326                                            | 70.10                            |
| 100                 | 9.399                                               | 958.4                                     | 0.000282                                         | 0.000000294                                            | 101.33                           |

Properties of Water (English Units)

| Temperature<br>(°F) | Specific Weight<br>$\gamma$<br>(lbf/ft <sup>3</sup> ) | Mass Density<br>$\rho$<br>(lbf-sec <sup>2</sup> /ft <sup>4</sup> ) | Absolute Dynamic<br>Viscosity<br>$\mu$<br>( $\times 10^{-5}$ lbf-sec/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | Kinematic<br>Viscosity<br>$\nu$<br>( $\times 10^{-5}$ ft <sup>2</sup> /sec) | Vapor Pressure<br>$P_v$<br>(psi) |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 32                  | 62.42                                                 | 1.940                                                              | 3.746                                                                                  | 1.931                                                                       | 0.09                             |
| 40                  | 62.43                                                 | 1.940                                                              | 3.229                                                                                  | 1.664                                                                       | 0.12                             |
| 50                  | 62.41                                                 | 1.940                                                              | 2.735                                                                                  | 1.410                                                                       | 0.18                             |
| 60                  | 62.37                                                 | 1.938                                                              | 2.359                                                                                  | 1.217                                                                       | 0.26                             |
| 70                  | 62.30                                                 | 1.936                                                              | 2.050                                                                                  | 1.059                                                                       | 0.36                             |
| 80                  | 62.22                                                 | 1.934                                                              | 1.799                                                                                  | 0.930                                                                       | 0.51                             |
| 90                  | 62.11                                                 | 1.931                                                              | 1.595                                                                                  | 0.826                                                                       | 0.70                             |
| 100                 | 62.00                                                 | 1.927                                                              | 1.424                                                                                  | 0.739                                                                       | 0.95                             |
| 110                 | 61.86                                                 | 1.923                                                              | 1.284                                                                                  | 0.667                                                                       | 1.24                             |
| 120                 | 61.71                                                 | 1.918                                                              | 1.168                                                                                  | 0.609                                                                       | 1.69                             |
| 130                 | 61.55                                                 | 1.913                                                              | 1.069                                                                                  | 0.558                                                                       | 2.22                             |
| 140                 | 61.38                                                 | 1.908                                                              | 0.981                                                                                  | 0.514                                                                       | 2.89                             |
| 150                 | 61.20                                                 | 1.902                                                              | 0.905                                                                                  | 0.476                                                                       | 3.72                             |
| 160                 | 61.00                                                 | 1.896                                                              | 0.838                                                                                  | 0.442                                                                       | 4.74                             |
| 170                 | 60.80                                                 | 1.890                                                              | 0.780                                                                                  | 0.413                                                                       | 5.99                             |
| 180                 | 60.58                                                 | 1.883                                                              | 0.726                                                                                  | 0.385                                                                       | 7.51                             |
| 190                 | 60.36                                                 | 1.876                                                              | 0.678                                                                                  | 0.362                                                                       | 9.34                             |
| 200                 | 60.12                                                 | 1.868                                                              | 0.637                                                                                  | 0.341                                                                       | 11.52                            |
| 212                 | 59.83                                                 | 1.860                                                              | 0.593                                                                                  | 0.319                                                                       | 14.70                            |

Source: Vennard, John K., and Robert L. Street, *Elementary Fluid Mechanics*, 6th ed., New York: Wiley, 1982, p. 663. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

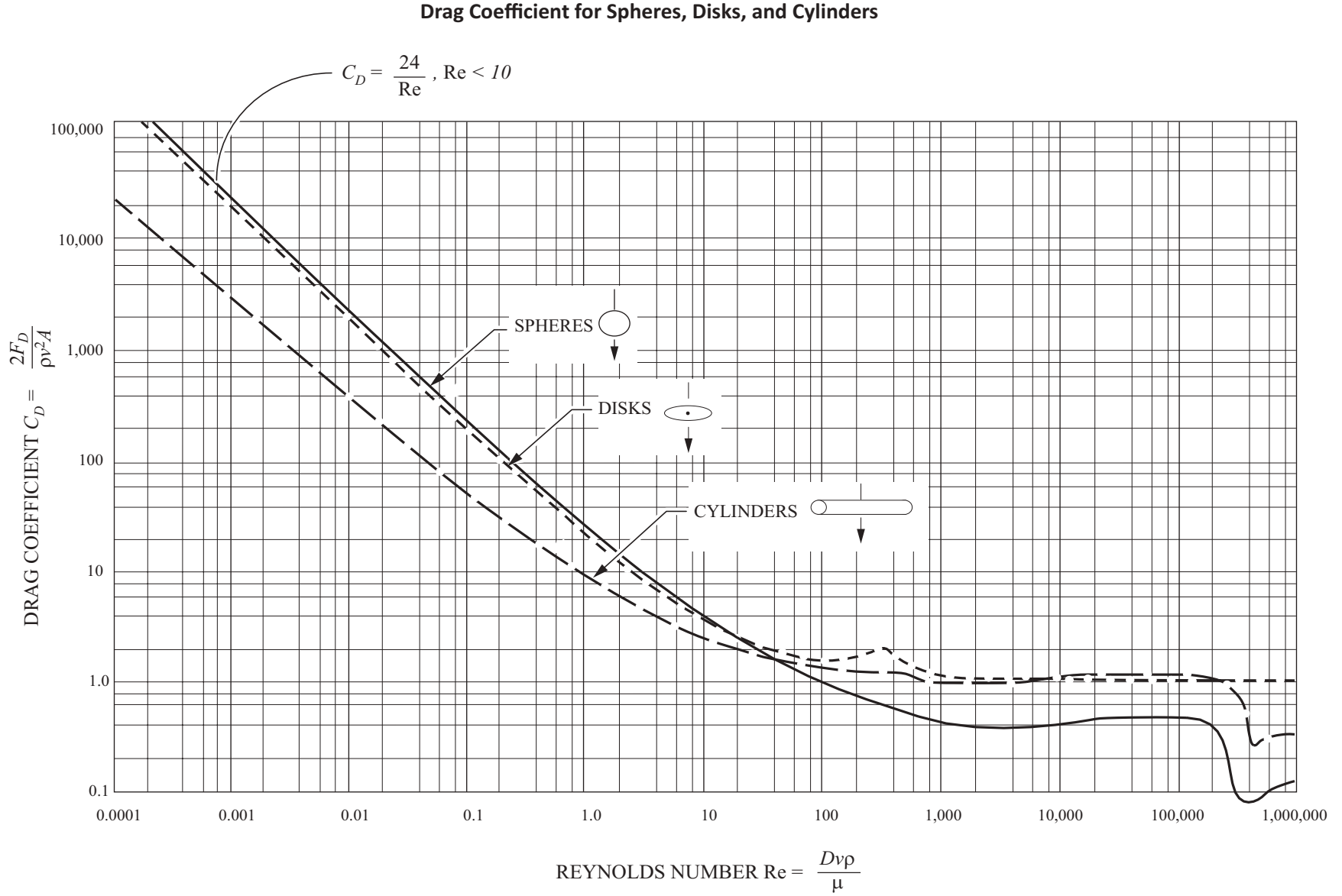
Moody, Darcy, or Stanton Friction Factor Diagram



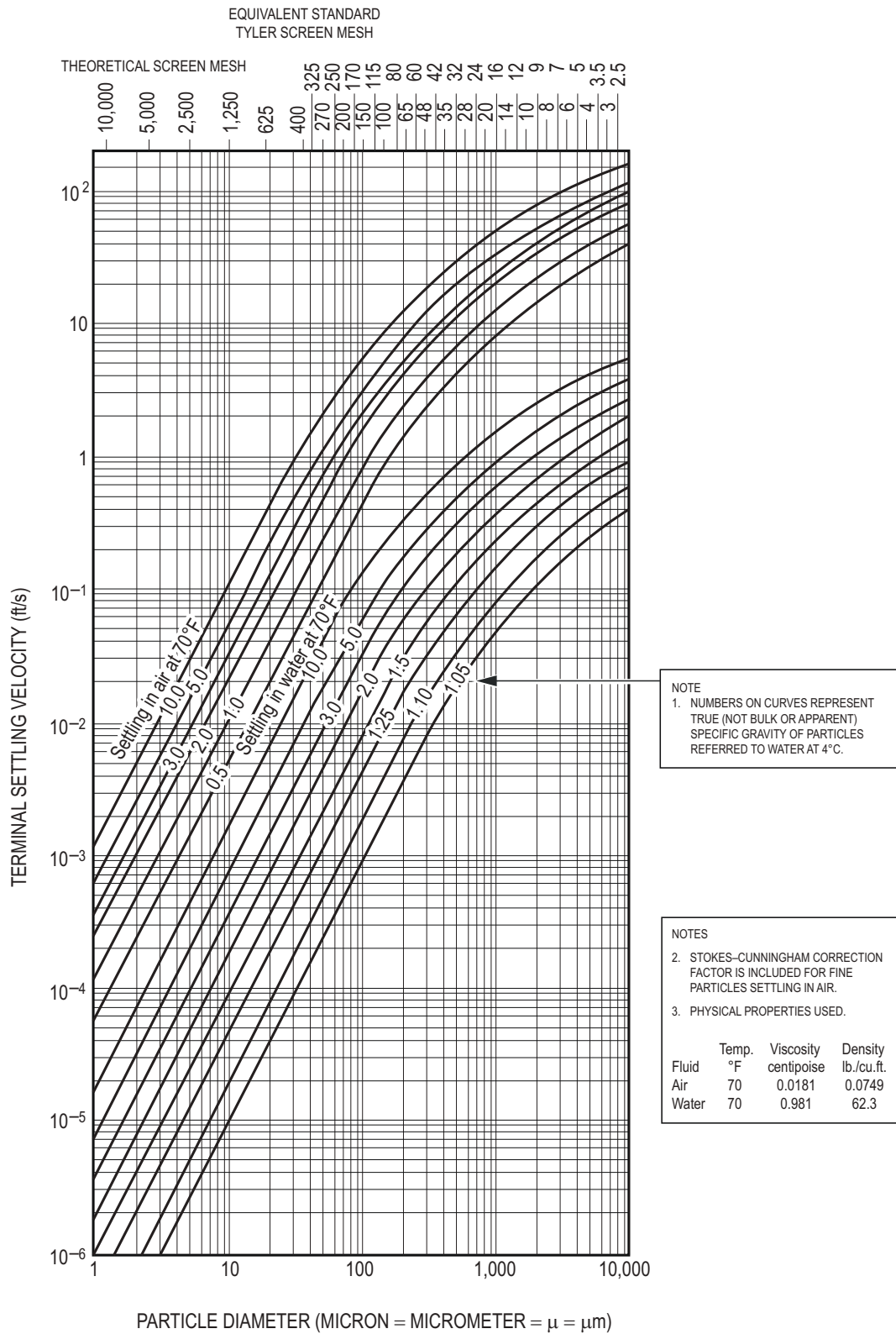
\* The Fanning Friction is this factor divided by 4.

|                                       | $\epsilon$ (ft) | $\epsilon$ (mm) |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| GLASS, DRAWN BRASS, COPPER, LEAD      | SMOOTH          | SMOOTH          |
| COMMERCIAL STEEL, WROUGHT IRON        | 0.0001–0.0003   | 0.03–0.09       |
| ASPHALTED CAST IRON                   | 0.0002–0.0006   | 0.06–0.18       |
| GALVANIZED IRON                       | 0.0002–0.0008   | 0.06–0.24       |
| CAST IRON                             | 0.0006–0.003    | 0.18–0.91       |
| CONCRETE                              | 0.001–0.01      | 0.30–3.0        |
| RIVETED STEEL                         | 0.003–0.03      | 0.91–9.1        |
| CORRUGATED METAL PIPE                 | 0.1–0.2         | 30–61           |
| LARGE TUNNEL, CONCRETE OR STEEL LINED | 0.002–0.004     | 0.61–1.2        |
| BLASTED ROCK TUNNEL                   | 1.0–2.0         | 300–610         |

Source: Chow, Ven Te, *Handbook of Applied Hydrology*, McGraw-Hill, 1964.



# Terminal Velocities of Spherical Particles of Different Densities



Source: De Nevers, Noel, *Fluid Mechanics for Chemical Engineers*, 3rd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2004, p. 225.

# Heat Transfer

There are three modes of heat transfer: conduction, convection, and radiation.

## Basic Heat-Transfer Rate Equations

### Conduction

Fourier's Law of Conduction

$$\dot{Q} = -kA \frac{dT}{dx}$$

where

$\dot{Q}$  = rate of heat transfer (W)

$k$  = thermal conductivity [W/(m•K)]

$A$  = surface area perpendicular to direction of heat transfer (m<sup>2</sup>)

### Convection

Newton's Law of Cooling

$$\dot{Q} = hA(T_w - T_\infty)$$

where

$h$  = convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]

$A$  = convection surface area (m<sup>2</sup>)

$T_w$  = wall surface temperature (K)

$T_\infty$  = bulk fluid temperature (K)

### Radiation

The radiation emitted by a body is given by

$$\dot{Q} = \varepsilon \sigma AT^4$$

where

$\varepsilon$  = emissivity of the body

$\sigma$  = Stefan-Boltzmann constant  
=  $5.67 \times 10^{-8}$  W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K<sup>4</sup>)

$A$  = body surface area (m<sup>2</sup>)

$T$  = absolute temperature (K)

## Conduction

### Conduction Through a Plane Wall

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{-kA(T_2 - T_1)}{L}$$

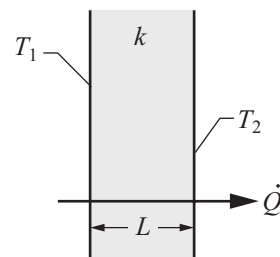
where

$A$  = wall surface area normal to heat flow (m<sup>2</sup>)

$L$  = wall thickness (m)

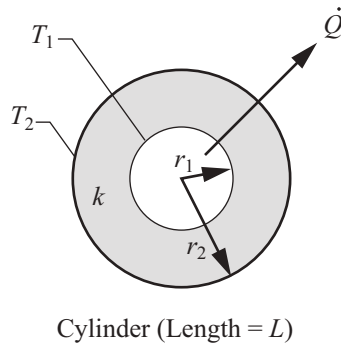
$T_1$  = temperature of one surface of the wall (K)

$T_2$  = temperature of the other surface of the wall (K)



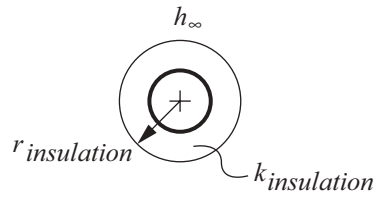
## Conduction Through a Cylindrical Wall

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{2\pi kL(T_1 - T_2)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}$$



## Critical Insulation Radius

$$r_{cr} = \frac{k_{insulation}}{h_{\infty}}$$



## Thermal Resistance (R)

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{\Delta T}{R_{total}}$$

Resistances in series are added:

$$R_{total} = \Sigma R$$

where

Plane Wall Conduction Resistance (K/W):

$$R = \frac{L}{kA}$$

where  $L$  = wall thickness

Cylindrical Wall Conduction Resistance (K/W):

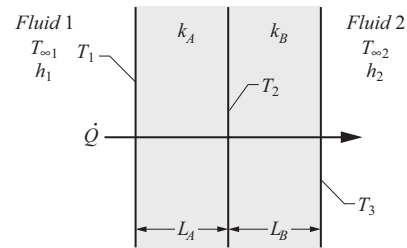
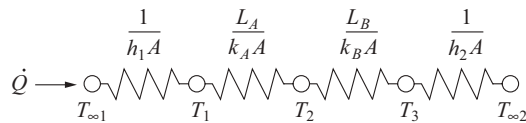
$$R = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}{2\pi kL}$$

where  $L$  = cylinder length

Convection Resistance (K/W) :

$$R = \frac{1}{hA}$$

### Composite Plane Wall



To evaluate surface or intermediate temperatures:

$$\dot{Q} = \frac{T_1 - T_2}{R_A} = \frac{T_2 - T_3}{R_B}$$

### Transient Conduction Using the Lumped Capacitance Model

The lumped capacitance model is valid if

$$\text{Biot number, } Bi = \frac{hV}{kA_s} < 0.1$$

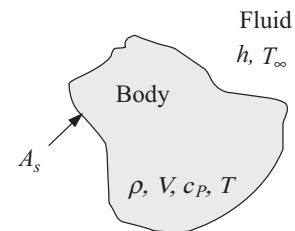
where

$h$  = convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]

$V$  = volume of the body (m<sup>3</sup>)

$k$  = thermal conductivity of the body [W/(m•K)]

$A_s$  = surface area of the body (m<sup>2</sup>)



#### Constant Fluid Temperature

If the temperature may be considered uniform within the body at any time, the heat-transfer rate at the body surface is given by

$$\dot{Q} = hA_s(T - T_\infty) = -\rho V(c_P) \left( \frac{dT}{dt} \right)$$

where

$T$  = body temperature (K)

$T_\infty$  = fluid temperature (K)

$\rho$  = density of the body (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$c_P$  = heat capacity of the body [J/(kg•K)]

$t$  = time (s)

The temperature variation of the body with time is

$$T - T_\infty = (T_i - T_\infty)e^{-\beta t}$$

$$\beta = \frac{hA_s}{\rho V c_P}$$

where

$$\beta = \frac{1}{\tau}$$

$\tau$  = time constant (s)

The total heat transferred ( $Q_{\text{total}}$ ) up to time  $t$  is

$$Q_{\text{total}} = \rho V c_P (T_i - T)$$

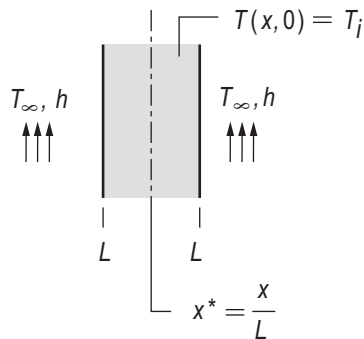
where  $T_i$  = initial body temperature (K)

### Approximate Solution for Solid with Sudden Convection

The time dependence of the temperature at any location within the solid is the same as that of the midplane/centerline/centerpoint temperature  $T_o$ .

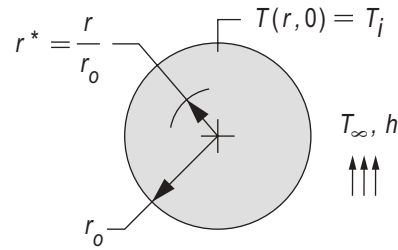
#### PLANE WALL

$$\text{For } Fo = \frac{\alpha t}{L^2} > 0.2$$



#### INFINITE CYLINDER AND SPHERE

$$\text{For } Fo = \frac{\alpha t}{r_o^2} > 0.2$$



where

$T_\infty$  = bulk fluid temperature

$T_i$  = initial uniform temperature of solid

$T_o$  = temperature at midplane of wall, centerline of cylinder, centerpoint of sphere at time  $t$

$L$  = half-thickness of plane wall

$x$  = distance from midplane of wall

$r_o$  = radius of cylinder/sphere

$r$  = radial distance from centerline of cylinder/centerpoint of sphere

$h$  = convective heat transfer coefficient

$t$  = time

$\alpha$  = thermal diffusivity =  $\frac{k}{\rho c}$  (This equation is valid only if the specific heat is based on mass.)

$k$  = thermal conductivity of solid

$\rho$  = density of solid

$c$  = specific heat of solid

$$\frac{(T_o - T_\infty)}{(T_i - T_\infty)} = C_1 \exp(-\zeta_1^2 Fo)$$

where  $C_1$  and  $\zeta$  are obtained from the following table

| Coefficients used in the one-term approximation to the series solutions for transient one-dimensional conduction |                    |        |                    |        |                    |        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------|--------------------|--------|--------------------|--------|
| Plane Wall                                                                                                       |                    |        | Infinite Cylinder  |        | Sphere             |        |
| $Bi^*$                                                                                                           | $\zeta_1$<br>(rad) | $C_1$  | $\zeta_1$<br>(rad) | $C_1$  | $\zeta_1$<br>(rad) | $C_1$  |
| 0.01                                                                                                             | 0.0998             | 1.0017 | 0.1412             | 1.0025 | 0.1730             | 1.0030 |
| 0.02                                                                                                             | 0.1410             | 1.0033 | 0.1995             | 1.0050 | 0.2445             | 1.0060 |
| 0.03                                                                                                             | 0.1732             | 1.0049 | 0.2439             | 1.0075 | 0.2989             | 1.0090 |
| 0.04                                                                                                             | 0.1987             | 1.0066 | 0.2814             | 1.0099 | 0.3450             | 1.0120 |
| 0.05                                                                                                             | 0.2217             | 1.0082 | 0.3142             | 1.0124 | 0.3852             | 1.0149 |
| 0.06                                                                                                             | 0.2425             | 1.0098 | 0.3438             | 1.0148 | 0.4217             | 1.0179 |
| 0.07                                                                                                             | 0.2615             | 1.0114 | 0.3708             | 1.0173 | 0.4550             | 1.0209 |
| 0.08                                                                                                             | 0.2791             | 1.0130 | 0.3960             | 1.0197 | 0.4860             | 1.0239 |
| 0.09                                                                                                             | 0.2956             | 1.0145 | 0.4195             | 1.0222 | 0.5150             | 1.0268 |
| 0.10                                                                                                             | 0.3111             | 1.0160 | 0.4417             | 1.0246 | 0.5423             | 1.0298 |
| 0.15                                                                                                             | 0.3779             | 1.0237 | 0.5376             | 1.0365 | 0.6608             | 1.0445 |
| 0.20                                                                                                             | 0.4328             | 1.0311 | 0.6170             | 1.0483 | 0.7593             | 1.0592 |
| 0.25                                                                                                             | 0.4801             | 1.0382 | 0.6856             | 1.0598 | 0.8448             | 1.0737 |
| 0.30                                                                                                             | 0.5218             | 1.0450 | 0.7465             | 1.0712 | 0.9208             | 1.0880 |
| 0.40                                                                                                             | 0.5932             | 1.0580 | 0.8516             | 1.0932 | 1.0528             | 1.1164 |
| 0.50                                                                                                             | 0.6533             | 1.0701 | 0.9408             | 1.1143 | 1.1656             | 1.1441 |
| 0.60                                                                                                             | 0.7051             | 1.0814 | 1.0185             | 1.1346 | 1.2644             | 1.1713 |
| 0.70                                                                                                             | 0.7506             | 1.0919 | 1.0873             | 1.1539 | 1.3525             | 1.1978 |
| 0.80                                                                                                             | 0.7910             | 1.1016 | 1.1490             | 1.1725 | 1.4320             | 1.2236 |
| 0.90                                                                                                             | 0.8274             | 1.1107 | 1.2048             | 1.1902 | 1.5044             | 1.2488 |
| 1.0                                                                                                              | 0.8603             | 1.1191 | 1.2558             | 1.2071 | 1.5708             | 1.2732 |
| 2.0                                                                                                              | 1.0769             | 1.1795 | 1.5995             | 1.3384 | 2.0288             | 1.4793 |
| 3.0                                                                                                              | 1.1925             | 1.2102 | 1.7887             | 1.4191 | 2.2889             | 1.6227 |
| 4.0                                                                                                              | 1.2646             | 1.2287 | 1.9081             | 1.4698 | 2.4556             | 1.7201 |
| 5.0                                                                                                              | 1.3138             | 1.2402 | 1.9898             | 1.5029 | 2.5704             | 1.7870 |
| 6.0                                                                                                              | 1.3496             | 1.2479 | 2.0490             | 1.5253 | 2.6537             | 1.8338 |
| 7.0                                                                                                              | 1.3766             | 1.2532 | 2.0937             | 1.5411 | 2.7165             | 1.8674 |
| 8.0                                                                                                              | 1.3978             | 1.2570 | 2.1286             | 1.5526 | 1.7654             | 1.8921 |
| 9.0                                                                                                              | 1.4149             | 1.2598 | 2.1566             | 1.5611 | 2.8044             | 1.9106 |
| 10.0                                                                                                             | 1.4289             | 1.2620 | 2.1795             | 1.5677 | 2.8363             | 1.9249 |
| 20.0                                                                                                             | 1.4961             | 1.2699 | 2.2881             | 1.5919 | 2.9857             | 1.9781 |
| 30.0                                                                                                             | 1.5202             | 1.2717 | 2.3261             | 1.5973 | 3.0372             | 1.9898 |
| 40.0                                                                                                             | 1.5325             | 1.2723 | 2.3455             | 1.5993 | 3.0632             | 1.9942 |
| 50.0                                                                                                             | 1.5400             | 1.2727 | 2.3572             | 1.6002 | 3.0788             | 1.9962 |
| 100.0                                                                                                            | 1.5552             | 1.2731 | 2.3809             | 1.6015 | 3.1102             | 1.9990 |
| $\infty$                                                                                                         | 1.5707             | 1.2733 | 2.4050             | 1.6018 | 3.1415             | 2.0000 |
| * $Bi = hL/k$ for the plane wall and $hr_o/k$ for the infinite cylinder and sphere.                              |                    |        |                    |        |                    |        |

Source: Incropera, Frank P. and David P. DeWitt, *Introduction to Heat Transfer*, 4th ed., John Wiley and Sons, 2002, pp. 256–261.

## Fins

For a straight fin with uniform cross section (assuming negligible heat transfer from tip),

$$\dot{Q} = \sqrt{hPkA_c}(T_b - T_\infty)\tanh(mL_c)$$

where

$h$  = convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]

$P$  = perimeter of exposed fin cross section (m)

$k$  = fin thermal conductivity [W/(m•K)]

$A_c$  = fin cross-sectional area (m<sup>2</sup>)

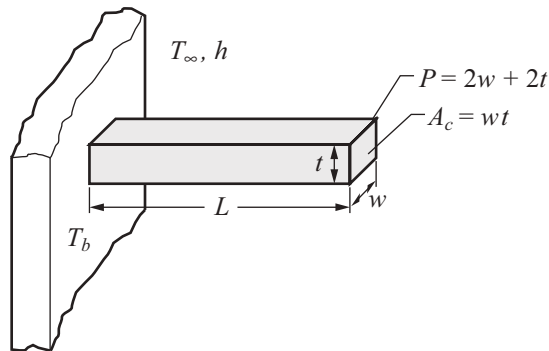
$T_b$  = temperature at base of fin (K)

$T_\infty$  = fluid temperature (K)

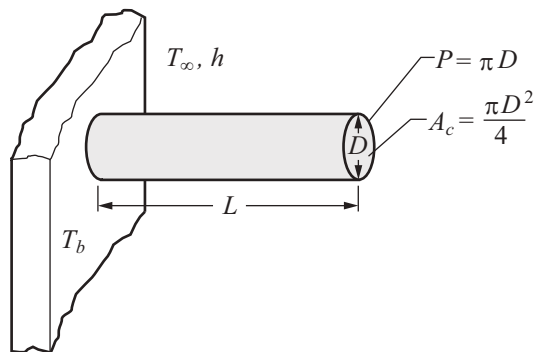
$$m = \sqrt{\frac{hP}{kA_c}}$$

$$L_c = L + \frac{A_c}{P}, \text{ corrected length of fin (m)}$$

### Rectangular Fin



### Pin Fin



## Convection

### Terms

$D$  = diameter (m)

$\bar{h}$  = average convection heat-transfer coefficient of the fluid [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]

$L$  = length (m)

$\overline{Nu}$  = average Nusselt number

$Pr$  = Prandtl number =  $\frac{c_P \mu}{k}$

$u_m$  = mean velocity of fluid (m/s)

$u_{\infty}$  = free stream velocity of fluid (m/s)

$\mu$  = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(m•s)]

$\rho$  = density of fluid (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

### External Flow

In all cases, evaluate fluid properties at average temperature between that of the body and that of the flowing fluid.

#### Flat Plate of Length $L$ in Parallel Flow

$$\text{Re}_L = \frac{\rho u_{\infty} L}{\mu}$$

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k} = 0.6640 \text{Re}_L^{1/2} \text{Pr}^{1/3} \quad (\text{Re}_L < 10^5)$$

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k} = 0.0366 \text{Re}_L^{0.8} \text{Pr}^{1/3} \quad (\text{Re}_L > 10^5)$$

#### Cylinder of Diameter $D$ in Cross Flow

$$\text{Re}_D = \frac{\rho u_{\infty} D}{\mu}$$

where  $\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\bar{h}D}{k} = C \text{Re}_D^n \text{Pr}^{1/3}$

| $\text{Re}_D$    | $C$    | $n$   |
|------------------|--------|-------|
| 1 – 4            | 0.989  | 0.330 |
| 4 – 40           | 0.911  | 0.385 |
| 40 – 4,000       | 0.683  | 0.466 |
| 4,000 – 40,000   | 0.193  | 0.618 |
| 40,000 – 250,000 | 0.0266 | 0.805 |

#### Flow Over a Sphere of Diameter, $D$

$$\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\bar{h}D}{k} = 2.0 + 0.60 \text{Re}_D^{1/2} \text{Pr}^{1/3}$$

$$(1 < \text{Re}_D < 70,000; 0.6 < \text{Pr} < 400)$$

### Internal Flow

$$\text{Re}_D = \frac{\rho u_m D}{\mu}$$

#### Laminar Flow in Circular Tubes

For laminar flow ( $\text{Re}_D < 2300$ ), fully developed conditions

$$\text{Nu}_D = 4.36 \quad (\text{uniform heat flux})$$

$$\text{Nu}_D = 3.66 \quad (\text{constant surface temperature})$$

For laminar flow ( $\text{Re}_D < 2300$ ), combined entry length with constant surface temperature

$$\text{Nu}_D = 1.86 \left( \frac{\text{Re}_D \text{Pr}}{L/D} \right)^{1/3} \left( \frac{\mu_b}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14}$$

where

$L$  = length of tube (m)

$D$  = tube diameter (m)

$\mu_b$  = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(m•s)] at bulk temperature of fluid  $T_b$

$\mu_s$  = dynamic viscosity of fluid [kg/(m•s)] at inside surface temperature of the tube  $T_s$

### Turbulent Flow in Circular Tubes

**Dittus-Boelter Equation**

$$Nu_D = 0.023 Re_D^{4/5} Pr^n \quad \text{where} \quad \left[ \begin{array}{l} 0.7 \leq Pr \leq 160 \\ Re_D \geq 10,000 \\ \frac{L}{D} \geq 10 \end{array} \right]$$

where

$n = 0.4$  for heating

$n = 0.3$  for cooling

should be used for small to moderate temperature differences

**Sieder-Tate Equation**

$$Nu_D = 0.027 Re_D^{4/5} Pr^{1/3} \left( \frac{\mu}{\mu_s} \right)^{0.14} \quad \text{where} \quad \left[ \begin{array}{l} 0.7 \leq Pr \leq 16,700 \\ Re_D \geq 10,000 \\ \frac{L}{D} \geq 10 \end{array} \right]$$

should be used for flows characterized by large property variations.

Source: Incropera, Frank P. and David P. DeWitt, *Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer*, 3rd ed., Wiley, 1990, p. 496.

### Noncircular Ducts

In place of the diameter,  $D$ , use the equivalent (hydraulic) diameter ( $D_H$ ) defined as

$$D_H = \frac{4 \times \text{cross-sectional area}}{\text{wetted perimeter}}$$

### Circular Annulus ( $D_o > D_i$ )

In place of the diameter,  $D$ , use the equivalent (hydraulic) diameter ( $D_H$ ) defined as

$$D_H = D_o - D_i$$

### Liquid Metals ( $0.003 < Pr < 0.05$ )

$$Nu_D = 6.3 + 0.0167 Re_D^{0.85} Pr^{0.93} \quad (\text{uniform heat flux})$$

$$Nu_D = 7.0 + 0.025 Re_D^{0.8} Pr^{0.8} \quad (\text{constant wall temperature})$$

## **Boiling**

Evaporation occurring at a solid-liquid interface when

$$T_{\text{solid}} > T_{\text{sat, liquid}}$$

$$q'' = h(T_s - T_{\text{sat}}) = h\Delta T_e$$

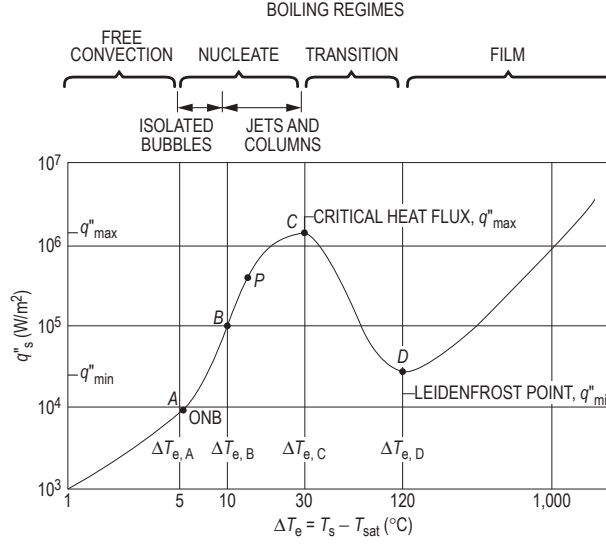
where  $\Delta T_e$  = excess temperature

*Pool Boiling* – Liquid is quiescent; motion near solid surface is due to free convection and mixing induced by bubble growth and detachment.

*Forced Convection Boiling* – Fluid motion is induced by external means in addition to free convection and bubble-induced mixing.

*Sub-Cooled Boiling* – Temperature of liquid is below saturation temperature; bubbles forming at surface may condense in the liquid.

*Saturated Boiling* – Liquid temperature slightly exceeds the saturation temperature; bubbles forming at the surface are propelled through liquid by buoyancy forces.



Source: Incropera, Frank P. and David P. DeWitt, *Fundamentals of Heat and Mass Transfer*, 3rd ed., Wiley, 1990. Reproduced with permission of John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

Typical boiling curve for water at one atmosphere: surface heat flux  $q''_s$  as a function of excess temperature,  $\Delta T_e = T_s - T_{\text{sat}}$   
**Free Convection Boiling** – Insufficient vapor is in contact with the liquid phase to cause boiling at the saturation temperature.  
**Nucleate Boiling** – Isolated bubbles form at nucleation sites and separate from surface; vapor escapes as jets or columns.

For nucleate boiling a widely used correlation was proposed in 1952 by Rohsenow:

$$\dot{q}_{\text{nucleate}} = \mu_l h_{fg} \left[ \frac{g(\rho_l - \rho_v)}{\sigma} \right]^{1/2} \left[ \frac{c_{pl}(T_s - T_{\text{sat}})}{C_{sf} h_{fg} Pr_l^n} \right]^3$$

where

$\dot{q}_{\text{nucleate}}$  = nucleate boiling heat flux (W/m<sup>2</sup>)

$\mu_l$  = viscosity of the liquid [kg/(m·s)]

$h_{fg}$  = enthalpy of vaporization (J/kg)

$g$  = gravitational acceleration (m/s<sup>2</sup>)

$\rho_l$  = density of the liquid (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$\rho_v$  = density of the vapor (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$\sigma$  = surface tension of liquid–vapor interface (N/m)

$c_{pl}$  = specific heat of the liquid [J/(kg·°C)]

$T_s$  = surface temperature of the heater (°C)

$T_{\text{sat}}$  = saturation temperature of the fluid (°C)

$C_{sf}$  = experimental constant that depends on surface–fluid combination

$Pr_l$  = Prandtl number of the liquid

$n$  = experimental constant that depends on the fluid

Source: Çengel, Yunus A., *Heat and Mass Transfer: A Practical Approach*, 3rd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.

## Peak Heat Flux

The maximum (or critical) heat flux (CHF) in nucleate pool boiling:

$$\dot{q}_{\text{max}} = C_{cr} h_{fg} \left[ \sigma g \rho_v^2 (\rho_l - \rho_v) \right]^{1/4}$$

$C_{cr}$  is a constant whose value depends on the heater geometry, but generally is about 0.15.

The CHF is independent of the fluid–heating surface combination, as well as the viscosity, thermal conductivity, and specific heat of the liquid.

The CHF increases with pressure up to about one-third of the critical pressure, and then starts to decrease and becomes zero at the critical pressure.

The CHF is proportional to  $h_{fg}$ , and large maximum heat fluxes can be obtained using fluids with a large enthalpy of vaporization, such as water.

**Values of the coefficient  $C_{cr}$  for maximum heat flux (dimensionless parameter  $L^* = L[g(\rho_l - \rho_v)/\sigma]^{1/2}$ )**

| Heater Geometry                           | $C_{cr}$          | Charac. Dimension of Heater, $L$ | Range of $L^*$      |
|-------------------------------------------|-------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|
| Large horizontal flat heater              | 0.149             | Width or diameter                | $L^* > 27$          |
| Small horizontal flat heater <sup>1</sup> | $18.9 K_1$        | Width or diameter                | $9 < L^* < 20$      |
| Large horizontal cylinder                 | 0.12              | Radius                           | $L^* > 1.2$         |
| Small horizontal cylinder                 | $0.12 L^{*-0.25}$ | Radius                           | $0.15 < L^* < 1.2$  |
| Large sphere                              | 0.11              | Radius                           | $L^* > 4.26$        |
| Small sphere                              | $0.227 L^{*-0.5}$ | Radius                           | $0.15 < L^* < 4.26$ |

$$^1K_1 = \sigma/[g(\rho_l - \rho_v)A_{\text{heater}}]$$

Source: Çengel, Yunus A., *Heat and Mass Transfer: A Practical Approach*, 3rd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.

### Minimum Heat Flux

Minimum heat flux, which occurs at the Leidenfrost point, it represents the lower limit for the heat flux in the film boiling regime.

Zuber derived the following expression for the minimum heat flux for a large horizontal plate

$$\dot{q}_{\min} = 0.09 \rho_v h_{fg} \left[ \frac{\sigma g (\rho_l - \rho_v)}{(\rho_l + \rho_v)^2} \right]^{1/4}$$

The relation above can be in error by 50% or more.

*Transition Boiling* – Rapid bubble formation results in vapor film on surface and oscillation between film and nucleate boiling.

*Film Boiling* – Surface completely covered by vapor blanket; includes significant radiation through vapor film.

Source: Çengel, Yunus A., *Heat and Mass Transfer: A Practical Approach*, 3rd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.

### Film Boiling

The heat flux for film boiling on a horizontal cylinder or sphere of diameter  $D$  is given by

$$\dot{q}_{\text{film}} = C_{\text{film}} \left[ \frac{g k_v^3 \rho_v (\rho_l - \rho_v) [h_{fg} + 0.4 c_{pv} (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})]}{\mu_v D (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})} \right]^{1/4} (T_s - T_{\text{sat}})$$

$$C_{\text{film}} = \begin{cases} 0.62 & \text{for horizontal cylinders} \\ 0.67 & \text{for spheres} \end{cases}$$

Source: Çengel, Yunus A., *Heat and Mass Transfer: A Practical Approach*, 3rd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2007.

## Film Condensation of a Pure Vapor

### On a Vertical Surface

$$\overline{Nu}_L = \frac{\bar{h}L}{k_l} = 0.943 \left[ \frac{\rho_l^2 g h_{fg} L^3}{\mu_l k_l (T_{\text{sat}} - T_s)} \right]^{0.25}$$

where

- $\rho_l$  = density of liquid phase of fluid (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)
- $g$  = gravitational acceleration (9.81 m/s<sup>2</sup>)
- $h_{fg}$  = latent heat of vaporization (J/kg)
- $L$  = length of surface (m)
- $\mu_l$  = dynamic viscosity of liquid phase of fluid [kg/(s•m)]
- $k_l$  = thermal conductivity of liquid phase of fluid [W/(m•K)]
- $T_{\text{sat}}$  = saturation temperature of fluid (K)
- $T_s$  = temperature of vertical surface (K)

Note: Evaluate all liquid properties at the average temperature between the saturated temperature  $T_{\text{sat}}$  and the surface temperature  $T_s$ .

### Outside Horizontal Tubes

$$\overline{Nu}_D = \frac{\bar{h}D}{k} = 0.729 \left[ \frac{\rho_l^2 g h_{fg} D^3}{\mu_l k_l (T_{\text{sat}} - T_s)} \right]^{0.25}$$

where  $D$  = tube outside diameter (m)

Note: Evaluate all liquid properties at the average temperature between the saturated temperature  $T_{\text{sat}}$  and the surface temperature  $T_s$ .

## Natural (Free) Convection

### Vertical Flat Plate in Large Body of Stationary Fluid

Equation also can apply to vertical cylinder of sufficiently large diameter in large body of stationary fluid.

$$\bar{h} = C \left( \frac{k}{L} \right) \text{Ra}_L^n$$

where

$L$  = length of the plate (cylinder) in the vertical direction

$$\text{Ra}_L = \text{Rayleigh Number} = \frac{g\beta(T_s - T_\infty)L^3}{\nu^2} \text{Pr}$$

$T_s$  = surface temperature (K)

$T_\infty$  = fluid temperature (K)

$\beta$  = coefficient of thermal expansion (1/K)

(For an ideal gas:  $\beta = \frac{2}{T_s + T_\infty}$  with  $T$  in absolute temperature)

$\nu$  = kinematic viscosity (m<sup>2</sup>/s)

| Range of $\text{Ra}_L$ | $C$  | $n$ |
|------------------------|------|-----|
| $10^4 - 10^9$          | 0.59 | 1/4 |
| $10^9 - 10^{13}$       | 0.10 | 1/3 |

### Long Horizontal Cylinder in Large Body of Stationary Fluid

$$\bar{h} = C \left( \frac{k}{D} \right) \text{Ra}_D^n$$

$$\text{Ra}_D = \frac{g\beta(T_s - T_\infty)D^3}{\nu^2} \text{Pr}$$

| $\text{Ra}_D$    | $C$   | $n$   |
|------------------|-------|-------|
| $10^{-3} - 10^2$ | 1.02  | 0.148 |
| $10^2 - 10^4$    | 0.850 | 0.188 |
| $10^4 - 10^7$    | 0.480 | 0.250 |
| $10^7 - 10^{12}$ | 0.125 | 0.333 |

### Heat Exchangers

The rate of heat transfer associated with either stream in a heat exchanger in which incompressible fluid or ideal gas with constant specific heats flows is

$$\dot{Q} = \dot{m}c_p(T_{\text{exit}} - T_{\text{inlet}})$$

where

$c_p$  = specific heat (at constant pressure)

$\dot{m}$  = mass flow rate

The rate of heat transfer in a heat exchanger is

$$\dot{Q} = UAF\Delta T_{lm}$$

where

$A$  = any convenient reference area ( $\text{m}^2$ )

$F$  = correction factor for log-mean temperature difference for more complex heat exchangers (shell and tube arrangements with several tube or shell passes or cross-flow exchangers with mixed and unmixed flow); otherwise  $F = 1$ .

$U$  = overall heat-transfer coefficient based on area  $A$  and the log-mean temperature difference [ $\text{W}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K})$ ]

$\Delta T_{lm}$  = log-mean temperature difference (K)

### Log-Mean Temperature Difference (LMTD)

For *counterflow* in heat exchangers:

$$\Delta T_{lm} = \frac{(T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}) - (T_{Hi} - T_{Co})}{\ln \left( \frac{T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}}{T_{Hi} - T_{Co}} \right)}$$

If  $(T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}) = (T_{Hi} - T_{Co})$ , then

$$\Delta T_{lm} = (T_{Ho} - T_{Ci}) = (T_{Hi} - T_{Co})$$

For *parallel flow* in heat exchangers:

$$\Delta T_{lm} = \frac{(T_{Ho} - T_{Co}) - (T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})}{\ln \left( \frac{T_{Ho} - T_{Co}}{T_{Hi} - T_{Ci}} \right)}$$

where

$\Delta T_{lm}$  = log-mean temperature difference (K)

$T_{Hi}$  = inlet temperature of the hot fluid (K)

$T_{Ho}$  = outlet temperature of the hot fluid (K)

$T_{Ci}$  = inlet temperature of the cold fluid (K)

$T_{Co}$  = outlet temperature of the cold fluid (K)

#### Heat Exchanger Effectiveness, $\epsilon$

$$\epsilon = \frac{\dot{Q}}{\dot{Q}_{\max}} = \frac{\text{actual heat transfer rate}}{\text{maximum possible heat transfer rate}}$$

$$\epsilon = \frac{C_H(T_{Hi} - T_{Ho})}{C_{\min}(T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})} \quad \text{or} \quad \epsilon = \frac{C_C(T_{Co} - T_{Ci})}{C_{\min}(T_{Hi} - T_{Ci})}$$

where

$$C_H = (\dot{m}c_p)_H = \text{hot fluid capacity rate} \left( \frac{\text{W}}{\text{K}} \text{ or } \frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{hr} \cdot ^\circ\text{F}} \right)$$

$$C_C = (\dot{m}c_p)_C = \text{cold fluid capacity rate} \left( \frac{\text{W}}{\text{K}} \text{ or } \frac{\text{Btu}}{\text{hr} \cdot ^\circ\text{F}} \right)$$

$$C_{\min} = \text{smaller of } C_C \text{ or } C_H$$

#### Number of Transfer Units (NTU)

$$NTU = \frac{UA}{C_{\min}}$$

#### Effectiveness-NTU Relations

$$C_r = \frac{C_{\min}}{C_{\max}} = \text{heat capacity ratio}$$

For *parallel flow concentric tube* heat exchanger

$$\epsilon = \frac{1 - \exp[-NTU(1 + C_r)]}{1 + C_r}$$

$$NTU = - \frac{\ln[1 - \epsilon(1 + C_r)]}{1 + C_r}$$

For *counterflow concentric tube* heat exchanger

$$\epsilon = \frac{1 - \exp[-NTU(1 - C_r)]}{1 - C_r \exp[-NTU(1 - C_r)]} \quad (C_r < 1)$$

$$\epsilon = \frac{NTU}{1 + NTU} \quad (C_r = 1)$$

$$NTU = \frac{1}{C_r - 1} \ln \left( \frac{\epsilon - 1}{\epsilon C_r - 1} \right) \quad (C_r < 1)$$

$$NTU = \frac{\epsilon}{1 - \epsilon} \quad (C_r = 1)$$

#### Overall Heat-Transfer Coefficient for Concentric Tube and Shell-and-Tube Heat Exchangers

$$\frac{1}{UA} = \frac{1}{h_i A_i} + \frac{R_{fi}}{A_i} + \frac{\ln \left( \frac{D_o}{D_i} \right)}{2\pi k L} + \frac{R_{fo}}{A_o} + \frac{1}{h_o A_o}$$

where

$$A_i = \text{inside area of tubes (m}^2\text{)}$$

$$A_o = \text{outside area of tubes (m}^2\text{)}$$

$$D_i = \text{inside diameter of tubes (m)}$$

$$D_o = \text{outside diameter of tubes (m)}$$

- $h_i$  = convection heat-transfer coefficient for inside of tubes [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]  
 $h_o$  = convection heat-transfer coefficient for outside of tubes [W/(m<sup>2</sup>•K)]  
 $k$  = thermal conductivity of tube material [W/(m•K)]  
 $R_{fi}$  = fouling factor for inside of tube [(m<sup>2</sup>•K)/W]  
 $R_{fo}$  = fouling factor for outside of tube [(m<sup>2</sup>•K)/W]

## Radiation

### Types of Bodies

#### Any Body

For any body

$$\alpha + \rho + \tau = 1$$

where

- $\alpha$  = absorptivity (ratio of energy absorbed to incident energy)  
 $\rho$  = reflectivity (ratio of energy reflected to incident energy)  
 $\tau$  = transmissivity (ratio of energy transmitted to incident energy)

#### Opaque Body

For an opaque body

$$\alpha + \rho = 1$$

#### Gray Body

A gray body is one for which

$$\alpha = \varepsilon, (0 < \alpha < 1; 0 < \varepsilon < 1)$$

where

$\varepsilon$  = the emissivity of the body

For a gray body

$$\varepsilon + \rho = 1$$

*Real bodies* are frequently approximated as gray bodies.

#### Black body

A black body is defined as one that absorbs all energy incident upon it. It also emits radiation at the maximum rate for a body of a particular size at a particular temperature. For such a body

$$\alpha = \varepsilon = 1$$

## Shape Factor (View Factor, Configuration Factor) Relations

### Reciprocity Relations

$$A_i F_{ij} = A_j F_{ji}$$

where

$A_i$  = surface area (m<sup>2</sup>) of surface  $i$

$F_{ij}$  = shape factor (view factor, configuration factor); fraction of the radiation leaving surface  $i$  that is intercepted by surface  $j$ ;  $0 \leq F_{ij} \leq 1$

### Summation Rule for $N$ Surfaces

$$\sum_{j=1}^N F_{ij} = 1$$

## Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Bodies

### Body Small Compared to its Surroundings

$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \varepsilon \sigma A (T_1^4 - T_2^4)$$

where

$\dot{Q}_{12}$  = net heat-transfer rate from the body (W)

$\varepsilon$  = emissivity of the body

$\sigma$  = Stefan-Boltzmann constant [ $\sigma = 5.67 \times 10^{-8} \text{ W}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{K}^4)$ ]

$A$  = body surface area ( $\text{m}^2$ )

$T_1$  = absolute temperature (K) of the body surface

$T_2$  = absolute temperature (K) of the surroundings

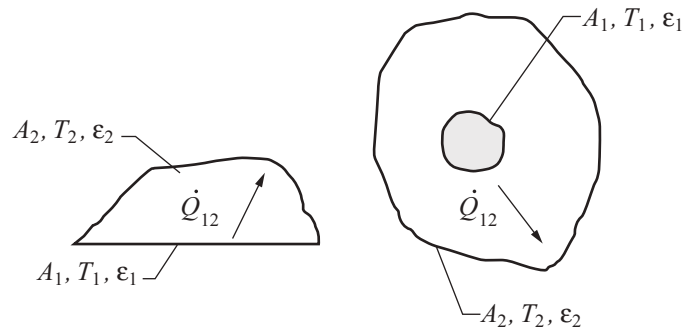
### Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Black Bodies

The net energy exchange by radiation between two black bodies that see each other is given by

$$\dot{Q}_{12} = A_1 F_{12} \sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)$$

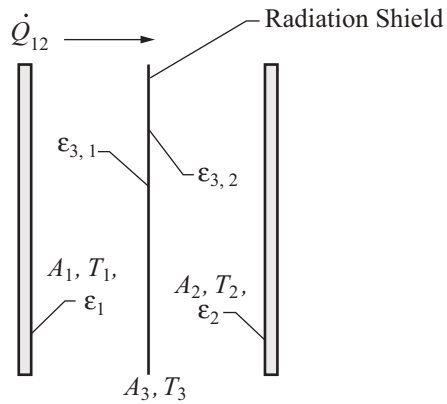
### Net Energy Exchange by Radiation between Two Diffuse-Gray Surfaces that Form an Enclosure

*Generalized Cases*



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma (T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1 - \varepsilon_1}{\varepsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{12}} + \frac{1 - \varepsilon_2}{\varepsilon_2 A_2}}$$

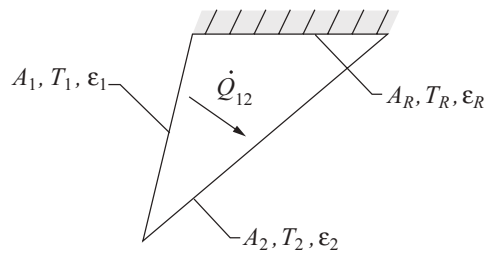
## One-Dimensional Geometry with Thin Low-Emissivity Shield Inserted between Two Parallel Plates



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma(T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1-\epsilon_1}{\epsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{13}} + \frac{1-\epsilon_{3,1}}{\epsilon_{3,1} A_3} + \frac{1-\epsilon_{3,2}}{\epsilon_{3,2} A_3} + \frac{1}{A_3 F_{32}} + \frac{1-\epsilon_2}{\epsilon_2 A_2}}$$

### Reradiating Surface

Reradiating Surfaces are considered to be insulated or adiabatic ( $\dot{Q}_R = 0$ ).



$$\dot{Q}_{12} = \frac{\sigma(T_1^4 - T_2^4)}{\frac{1-\epsilon_1}{\epsilon_1 A_1} + \frac{1}{A_1 F_{12} + \left[ \left( \frac{1}{A_1 F_{1R}} \right) + \left( \frac{1}{A_2 F_{2R}} \right) \right]^{-1}} + \frac{1-\epsilon_2}{\epsilon_2 A_2}}$$

# Instrumentation, Measurement, and Control

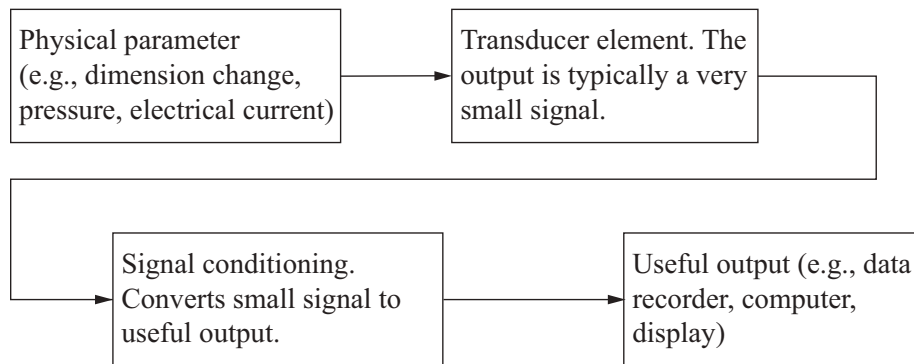
## Measurement

### Definitions

*Calibration* – the comparison of an instrument's output to accepted input reference values (for example, using a different instrument with known accuracy), including an evaluation of all the associated uncertainties. The formal definition of calibration is published in ISO/JCGM 200:2012.

*Transducer* – a device used to convert a physical parameter such as temperature, pressure, flow, light intensity, etc. into an electrical signal (also called a *sensor*).

*Transducer Sensitivity* – the ratio of change in electrical signal magnitude to the change in magnitude of the physical parameter being measured.



### Temperature Sensors

*Resistance Temperature Detector (RTD)* – a device used to relate change in resistance to change in temperature. Typically made from platinum, the controlling equation for an RTD is given by:

$$R_T = R_0[1 + \alpha(T - T_0)]$$

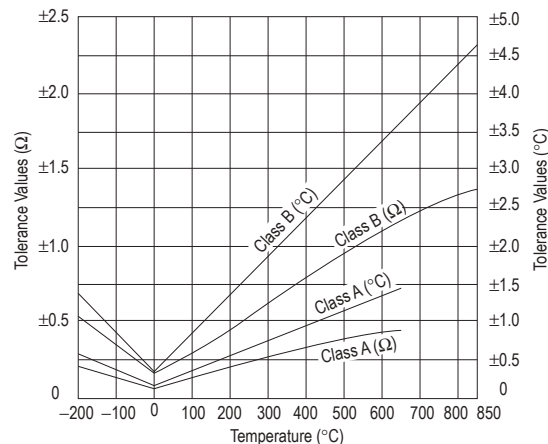
where

$R_T$  = resistance of the RTD at temperature  $T$  ( $^{\circ}\text{C}$ )

$R_0$  = resistance of the RTD at the reference temperature  $T_0$  (usually  $0^{\circ}\text{C}$ )

$\alpha$  = resistance temperature coefficient of the RTD (typically  $0.00385 \Omega/\Omega$  per  $^{\circ}\text{C}$  for platinum)

The following graph shows tolerance values as a function of temperature for 100- $\Omega$  RTDs.



Source: From Tempco Manufactured Products, as posted on [www.tempco.com](http://www.tempco.com), July 2013.

**Thermistors** – Typically manufactured from a semiconductor, with a negative temperature coefficient.

The thermistor resistance is:

$$R_T = R_0 e^{\beta \left( \frac{1}{T} - \frac{1}{T_0} \right)}$$

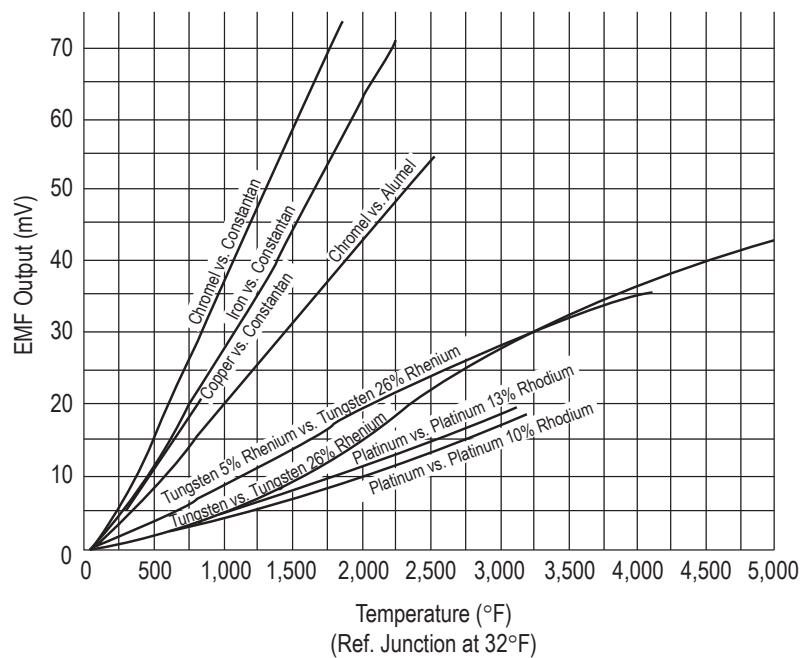
where  $\beta$  is a material dependent value and  $T$  is in Kelvin.

The Steinhart-Hart equation is often provided as a more precise model for thermistors:

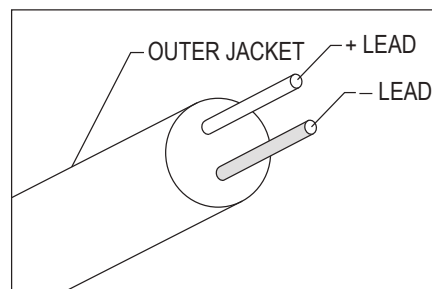
$$\frac{1}{T} = A + B \ln(R) + C (\ln(R))^3$$

Where the thermistor manufacturer will provide the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ . When  $R$  is in  $\Omega$  and  $T$  is in Kelvin, a typical thermistor might have  $A = 1.403 \times 10^{-3}$ ;  $B = 2.373 \times 10^{-4}$ ;  $C = 9.827 \times 10^{-8}$ .

**Thermocouple (TC)** – a device using the Seebeck effect to sense temperature differences. A thermocouple consists of two dissimilar conductors in electrical contact a measured point and also at a reference junction; the voltage output is proportional to the difference in temperature between the measured point and the reference junction.



Source: From Convectronics Inc., as posted on [www.convectronics.com](http://www.convectronics.com), July 2013.



Typical Thermocouple (TC) Cable

Source: From Convectronics Inc., as posted on [www.convectronics.com](http://www.convectronics.com), July 2013.

| ANSI Code | Alloy Combination and Color       |                                               | Outer Jacket Color |                 | Maximum Thermocouple Temperature Range | Environment                                                                                                        |
|-----------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|           | + Lead                            | – Lead                                        | Thermocouple Leads | Extension Cable |                                        |                                                                                                                    |
| J         | IRON<br>Fe<br>(magnetic)<br>White | CONSTANTAN<br>COPPER-NICKEL<br>Cu-Ni<br>Red   | Brown              | Black           | –346 to 2,193°F<br>–210 to 1,200°C     | Reducing, Vacuum, Inert.<br>Limited Use in Oxidizing at High Temperatures.<br>Not Recommended for Low Temperatures |
| K         | NICKELCHROMIUM<br>Ni-Cr<br>Yellow | NICKEL-ALUMINUM<br>Ni-Al<br>(magnetic)<br>Red | Brown              | Yellow          | –454 to 2,501°F<br>–270 to 1,372°C     | Clean Oxidizing and Inert.<br>Limited Use in Vacuum or Reducing.                                                   |
| T         | COPPER<br>Cu<br>Blue              | CONSTANTAN<br>COPPER-NICKEL<br>Cu-Ni<br>Red   | Brown              | Blue            | –454 to 752°F<br>–270 to 400°C         | Mild Oxidizing, Reducing Vacuum or Inert. Good where moisture is present.                                          |
| E         | NICKELCHROMIUM<br>Ni-Cr<br>Purple | CONSTANTAN<br>COPPER-NICKEL<br>Cu-Ni<br>Red   | Brown              | Purple          | –454 to 1,832°F<br>–270 to 1,000°C     | Oxidizing or Inert. Limited Use in Vacuum or Reducing.                                                             |

## Strain Transducers

*Strain Gauge* – a device whose electrical resistance varies in proportion to the amount of strain in the device.

*Gauge Factor (GF)* – the ratio of fractional change in electrical resistance to the fractional change in length (strain):

$$GF = \frac{\Delta R/R}{\Delta L/L} = \frac{\Delta R/R}{\varepsilon}$$

where

$R$  = nominal resistance of the strain gauge at nominal length  $L$

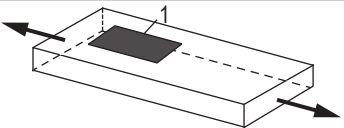
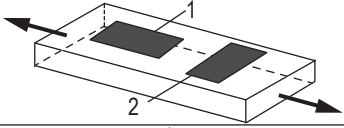
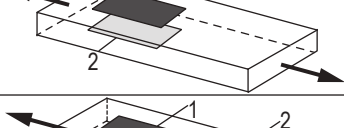
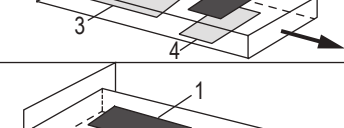
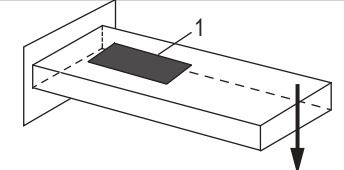
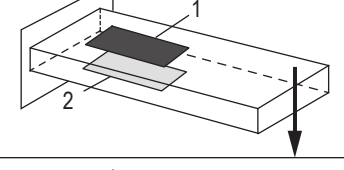
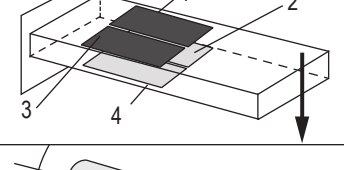
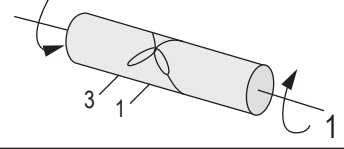
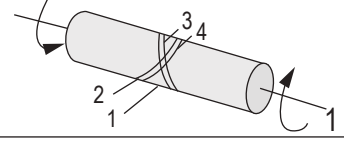
$\Delta R$  = change in resistance due the change in length  $\Delta L$

$\varepsilon$  = normal strain sensed by the gauge

For metals, the change in resistance is due primarily to geometry. The gauge factor for metallic strain gauges is typically around 2.

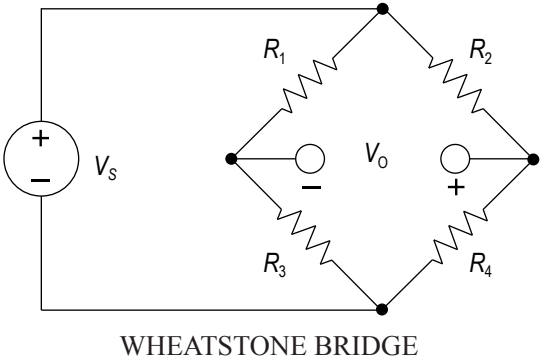
*Piezoresistive effect* – a change in the intrinsic electrical conductivity of a material due to a mechanical strain. For many semiconductors, this leads to a gauge factor between 30 and 200 in strain transducers.

*Piezoelectric effect* – many crystalline or special ceramic materials convert mechanical energy to electrical energy. When a mechanical force is applied, the material changes dimension and an electric field is produced. Piezoelectric transducers can have many different geometries, including using multiple layers to increase gain. A simple peizoelectric transducer generates electrical charge that is proportional to the change in its ceramic's volume or will change volume proportional to an applied electric field. Dimensional changes are usually very small and can be predominantly in one dimension.

| Strain              | Gauge Setup                                                                         | Bridge Type | Sensitivity<br>mV/V<br>@ 1,000 $\mu\epsilon$ | Details                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Axial               |    | 1/4         | 0.5                                          | Good: Simplest to implement, but must use a dummy gauge if compensating for temperature. Also responds to bending strain.  |
|                     |    | 1/2         | 0.65                                         | Better: Temperature compensated, but it is sensitive to bending strain.                                                    |
|                     |    | 1/2         | 1.0                                          | Better: Rejects bending strain, but not temperature. Must use dummy gauges if compensating for temperature.                |
|                     |    | Full        | 1.3                                          | Best: More sensitive and compensates for both temperature and bending strain.                                              |
| Bending             |   | 1/4         | 0.5                                          | Good: Simplest to implement, but must use a dummy gauge if compensating for temperature. Responds equally to axial strain. |
|                     |  | 1/2         | 1.0                                          | Better: Rejects axial strain and is temperature compensated.                                                               |
|                     |  | Full        | 2.0                                          | Best: Rejects axial strain and is temperature compensated. Most sensitive to bending strain.                               |
| Torsional and Shear |  | 1/2         | 1.0                                          | Good: Gauges must be mounted at 45 degrees from centerline.                                                                |
|                     |  | Full        | 2.0                                          | Best: Most sensitive full-bridge version of previous setup. Rejects both axial and bending strains.                        |

Source: From National Instruments Corporation, as posted on [www.ni.com](http://www.ni.com), July 2013.

*Wheatstone Bridge* – an electrical circuit used to measure changes in resistance.



If  $\frac{R_1}{R_3} = \frac{R_2}{R_4}$  then  $V_0 = 0\text{ V}$  and the bridge is said to be balanced.

If  $R_1 = R_2 = R_3 = R$  and  $R_4 = R + \Delta R$ , where  $\Delta R \ll R$ , then

$$V_0 \approx \frac{\Delta R}{4R} \cdot V_s$$

**Pressure Sensors**

*Pressure Sensors* – can alternatively be called *pressure transducers*, *pressure transmitters*, *pressure senders*, *pressure indicators*, *piezometers*, and *manometers*. They are typically based on measuring the strain on a thin membrane due to an applied pressure.

| Pressure Relative Measurement Types | Comparison                                 |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Absolute                            | Relative to 0 Pa, the pressure in a vacuum |
| Gauge                               | Relative to local atmospheric pressure     |
| Differential                        | Relative to another pressurized source     |

Source: From National Instruments Corporation, as posted on [www.ni.com](http://www.ni.com), July 2013.

**pH Sensors**

*pH Sensor* – a typical pH meter consists of a special measuring probe connected to an electronic meter that measures and displays the pH reading.

$$E_{el} = E^0 - S(\text{pH}_a - \text{pH}_i)$$

where

$E_{el}$  = electrode potential

$E^0$  = zero potential

$S$  = slope (mV per pH unit)

$\text{pH}_a$  = pH value of the measured solution

$\text{pH}_i$  = pH value of the internal buffer

Source: From Alliance Technical Sales, Inc., as posted on [www.alliancets.com](http://www.alliancets.com), July 2013.

## Examples of Common Chemical Sensors

| Sensor Type                                 | Principle                      | Materials                                                                           | Analyte                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Semiconducting oxide sensor                 | Conductivity impedance         | SnO <sub>2</sub> , TiO <sub>2</sub> , ZnO <sub>2</sub> , WO <sub>3</sub> , polymers | O <sub>2</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> , CO, SO <sub>x</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , combustible hydrocarbons, alcohol, H <sub>2</sub> S, NH <sub>3</sub>                                                                                                 |
| Electrochemical sensor (liquid electrolyte) | Amperimetric                   | composite Pt, Au catalyst                                                           | H <sub>2</sub> , O <sub>2</sub> , O <sub>3</sub> , CO, H <sub>2</sub> S, SO <sub>2</sub> , NO <sub>x</sub> , NH <sub>3</sub> , glucose, hydrazine                                                                                              |
| Ion-selective electrode (ISE)               | Potentiometric                 | glass, LaF <sub>3</sub> , CaF <sub>2</sub>                                          | pH, K <sup>+</sup> , Na <sup>+</sup> , Cl <sup>-</sup> , Ca <sup>2+</sup> , Mg <sup>2+</sup> , F <sup>-</sup> , Ag <sup>+</sup>                                                                                                                |
| Solid electrode sensor                      | Amperimetric<br>Potentiometric | YSZ, H <sup>+</sup> -conductor<br>YSZ, $\beta$ -alumina, Nasion, Nafion             | O <sub>2</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> , CO, combustible hydrocarbons,<br>O <sub>2</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> , CO <sub>2</sub> , CO, NO <sub>x</sub> , SO <sub>x</sub> , H <sub>2</sub> S, Cl <sub>2</sub><br>H <sub>2</sub> O, combustible hydrocarbons |
| Piezoelectric sensor                        | Mechanical w/<br>polymer film  | quartz                                                                              | combustible hydrocarbons, VOCs                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Catalytic combustion sensor                 | Calorimetric                   | Pt/Al <sub>2</sub> O <sub>3</sub> , Pt-wire                                         | H <sub>2</sub> , CO, combustible hydrocarbons                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| Pyroelectric sensor                         | Calorimetric                   | Pyroelectric + film                                                                 | Vapors                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Optical sensors                             | Colorimetric<br>fluorescence   | optical fiber/indicator dye                                                         | Acids, bases, combustible hydrocarbons, biologicals                                                                                                                                                                                            |

Source: Reprinted with permission from *Journal of The Electrochemical Society*, 150 (2), ©2003, The Electrochemical Society.

## Sampling

When a continuous-time or analog signal is sampled using a discrete-time method, certain basic concepts should be considered. The sampling rate or frequency is given by

$$f_s = \frac{1}{\Delta t}$$

Nyquist's (Shannon's) sampling theorem states that in order to accurately reconstruct the analog signal from the discrete sample points, the sample rate must be larger than twice the highest frequency contained in the measured signal. Denoting this frequency, which is called the *Nyquist frequency*, as  $f_N$ , the sampling theorem requires that

$$f_s > 2f_N$$

When the above condition is not met, the higher frequencies in the measured signal will not be accurately represented and will appear as lower frequencies in the sampled data. These are known as alias frequencies.

## Analog-to-Digital Conversion

When converting an analog signal to digital form, the resolution of the conversion is an important factor. For a measured analog signal over the nominal range  $[V_L, V_H]$ , where  $V_L$  is the low end of the voltage range and  $V_H$  is the nominal high end of the voltage range, the voltage resolution is given by

$$\epsilon_V = \frac{V_H - V_L}{2^n}$$

where  $n$  is the number of conversion bits of the A/D converter with typical values of 4, 8, 10, 12, or 16. This number is a key design parameter. After converting an analog signal, the A/D converter produces an integer number of  $n$  bits. Call this number  $N$ . Note that the range of  $N$  is  $[0, 2^n - 1]$ . When calculating the discrete voltage,  $V$ , using the reading,  $N$ , from the A/D converter the following equation is used.

$$V = \epsilon_V N + V_L$$

Note that with this strategy, the highest measurable voltage is one voltage resolution less than  $V_H$ , or  $V_H - \epsilon_V$ .

## Signal Conditioning

Signal conditioning of the measured analog signal is often required to prevent alias frequencies from being measured, and to reduce measurement errors.

## Measurement Uncertainty

Measurement Accuracy is defined as "closeness of agreement between a measured quantity value and a true quantity value of a measurand." [cite ISO JCGM 200:2012, definition 2.13]

Measurement Precision is defined as "closeness of agreement between indications or measured quantity values obtained by replicate measurements on the same or similar objects under specified conditions." [cite ISO JCGM 200:2012, definition 2.15]

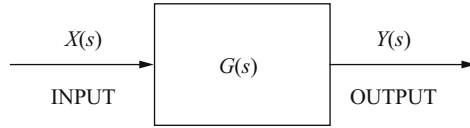
It is critical to always consider the measurement uncertainty of your instrumentation and processes when performing measurements. When reporting measurement results, it is necessary to provide an associated uncertainty so that those who use it may assess its reliability. The Engineering Probability and Statistics section provides a high-level overview of measurement uncertainty.

Suppose that a calculated result  $R$  depends on measurements whose values are  $x_1 \pm w_1, x_2 \pm w_2, x_3 \pm w_3$ , etc., where  $R = f(x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n)$ ,  $x_i$  is the measured value, and  $w_i$  is the uncertainty in that value. The uncertainty in  $R$ ,  $w_R$ , can be estimated using the Kline-McClintock equation:

$$w_R = \sqrt{\left(w_1 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_1}\right)^2 + \left(w_2 \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_2}\right)^2 + \dots + \left(w_n \frac{\partial f}{\partial x_n}\right)^2}$$

## Control Systems

The linear time-invariant transfer function model represented by the block diagram

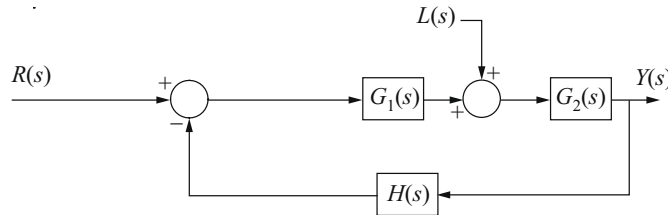


can be expressed as the ratio of two polynomials in the form

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = G(s) = \frac{N(s)}{D(s)} = K \frac{\prod_{m=1}^M (s - z_m)}{\prod_{n=1}^N (s - p_n)}$$

where the  $M$  zeros,  $z_m$ , and the  $N$  poles,  $p_n$ , are the roots of the numerator polynomial,  $N(s)$ , and the denominator polynomial,  $D(s)$ , respectively.

One classical negative feedback control system model block diagram is



where  $G_1(s)$  is a controller or compensator,  $G_2(s)$  represents a plant model, and  $H(s)$  represents the measurement dynamics.  $Y(s)$  represents the controlled variable,  $R(s)$  represents the reference input, and  $L(s)$  represents a disturbance.  $Y(s)$  is related to  $R(s)$  and  $L(s)$  by

$$Y(s) = \frac{G_1(s)G_2(s)}{1 + G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s)}R(s) + \frac{G_2(s)}{1 + G_1(s)G_2(s)H(s)}L(s)$$

$G_1(s) G_2(s) H(s)$  is the open-loop transfer function. The closed-loop characteristic equation is

$$1 + G_1(s) G_2(s) H(s) = 0$$

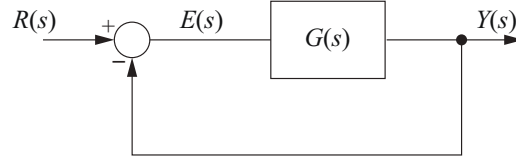
System performance studies normally include

1. Steady-state analysis using constant inputs based on the Final Value Theorem. If all poles of a  $G(s)$  function have negative real parts, then

$$\text{dc gain} = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} G(s)$$

Note that  $G(s)$  could refer to either an open-loop or a closed-loop transfer function.

For the unity feedback control system model



with the open-loop transfer function defined by

$$G(s) = \frac{K_B}{s^T} \times \frac{\prod_{m=1}^M (1 + s/\omega_m)}{\prod_{n=1}^N (1 + s/\omega_n)}$$

The following steady-state error analysis table can be constructed where  $T$  denotes the type of system, i.e., type 0, type 1, etc.

| Steady-State Error $e_{ss}$ |               |          |         |  |
|-----------------------------|---------------|----------|---------|--|
| Input \ Type                | $T = 0$       | $T = 1$  | $T = 2$ |  |
| Unit Step                   | $1/(K_B + 1)$ | 0        | 0       |  |
| Ramp                        | $\infty$      | $1/K_B$  | 0       |  |
| Acceleration                | $\infty$      | $\infty$ | $1/K_B$ |  |

2. Frequency response evaluations to determine dynamic performance and stability. For example, relative stability can be quantified in terms of

- a. Gain margin (GM), which is the additional gain required to produce instability in the unity gain feedback control system.

If at  $\omega = \omega_{180}$ ,

$$\angle G(j\omega_{180}) = -180^\circ; \text{ then}$$

$$\text{GM} = -20 \log_{10} (|G(j\omega_{180})|)$$

- b. Phase margin (PM), which is the additional phase required to produce instability. Thus,

$$\text{PM} = 180^\circ + \angle G(j\omega_{0dB})$$

where  $\omega_{0dB}$  is the  $\omega$  that satisfies  $|G(j\omega)| = 1$ .

3. Transient responses are obtained by using Laplace transforms or computer solutions with numerical integration.

Common Compensator/Controller forms are

$$\text{PID Controller } G_C(s) = K \left( 1 + \frac{1}{T_I s} + T_D s \right)$$

$$\text{Lag or Lead Compensator } G_C(s) = K \left( \frac{1 + sT_1}{1 + sT_2} \right) \text{ depending on the ratio of } T_1/T_2.$$

### First-Order Control System Models

The transfer function model for a first-order system is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K}{\tau s + 1}$$

where

$K$  = steady-state gain

$\tau$  = time constant

The step response of a first-order system to a step input of magnitude  $M$  is

$$y(t) = y_0 e^{-t/\tau} + KM(1 - e^{-t/\tau})$$

In the chemical process industry,  $y_0$  is typically taken to be zero, and  $y(t)$  is referred to as a deviation variable.

For systems with time delay (dead time or transport lag)  $\theta$ , the transfer function is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K e^{-\theta s}}{\tau s + 1}$$

The step response for  $t \geq \theta$  to a step of magnitude  $M$  is

where

$$y(t) = \left[ y_0 e^{-(t-\theta)/\tau} + KM(1 - e^{-(t-\theta)/\tau}) \right] u(t - \theta)$$

$u(t)$  is the unit step function.

### Second-Order Control System Models

One standard second-order control system model is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K \omega_n^2}{s^2 + 2\zeta \omega_n s + \omega_n^2},$$

where

$K$  = steady-state gain

$\zeta$  = damping ratio

$\omega_n$  = undamped natural ( $\zeta = 0$ ) frequency

$\omega_d = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}$ , the damped natural frequency

$\omega_r = \omega_n \sqrt{1 - 2\zeta^2}$ , the damped resonant frequency

If the damping ratio  $\zeta$  is less than unity, the system is said to be underdamped; if  $\zeta$  is equal to unity, it is said to be critically damped; and if  $\zeta$  is greater than unity, the system is said to be overdamped.

For a unit step input to a normalized underdamped second-order control system, the time required to reach a peak value  $t_p$  and the value of that peak  $M_p$  are given by

$$t_p = \pi / (\omega_n \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2})$$

$$M_p = 1 + e^{-\pi \zeta / \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

The percent overshoot (% OS) of the response is given by

$$\% \text{ OS} = 100 e^{-\pi \zeta / \sqrt{1 - \zeta^2}}$$

For an underdamped second-order system, the logarithmic decrement is

$$\delta = \frac{1}{m} \ln \left( \frac{x_k}{x_{k+m}} \right) = \frac{2\pi\zeta}{\sqrt{1-\zeta^2}}$$

where  $x_k$  and  $x_{k+m}$  are the amplitudes of oscillation at cycles  $k$  and  $k+m$ , respectively. The period of oscillation  $\tau$  is related to  $\omega_d$  by

$$\omega_d \tau = 2\pi$$

The time required for the output of a second-order system to settle to within 2% of its final value (2% settling time) is defined to be

$$T_s = \frac{4}{\zeta\omega_n}$$

An alternative form commonly employed in the chemical process industry is

$$\frac{Y(s)}{R(s)} = \frac{K}{\tau^2 s^2 + 2\zeta\tau s + 1}$$

where

$K$  = steady-state gain

$\zeta$  = the damping ratio

$\tau$  = the inverse natural frequency

## Engineering Economics

| Factor Name                     | Converts         | Symbol          | Formula                                                     |
|---------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| Single Payment Compound Amount  | to $F$ given $P$ | $(F/P, i\%, n)$ | $(1 + i)^n$                                                 |
| Single Payment Present Worth    | to $P$ given $F$ | $(P/F, i\%, n)$ | $(1 + i)^{-n}$                                              |
| Uniform Series Sinking Fund     | to $A$ given $F$ | $(A/F, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{i}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$                                   |
| Capital Recovery                | to $A$ given $P$ | $(A/P, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{i(1 + i)^n}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$                          |
| Uniform Series Compound Amount  | to $F$ given $A$ | $(F/A, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i}$                                   |
| Uniform Series Present Worth    | to $P$ given $A$ | $(P/A, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i(1 + i)^n}$                          |
| Uniform Gradient Present Worth  | to $P$ given $G$ | $(P/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i^2(1 + i)^n} - \frac{n}{i(1 + i)^n}$ |
| Uniform Gradient † Future Worth | to $F$ given $G$ | $(F/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{(1 + i)^n - 1}{i^2} - \frac{n}{i}$                   |
| Uniform Gradient Uniform Series | to $A$ given $G$ | $(A/G, i\%, n)$ | $\frac{1}{i} - \frac{n}{(1 + i)^n - 1}$                     |

### Nomenclature and Definitions

$A$  ..... Uniform amount per interest period  
 $B$  ..... Benefit  
 $BV$  ..... Book value  
 $C$  ..... Cost  
 $d$  ..... Inflation adjusted interest rate per interest period  
 $D_j$  ..... Depreciation in year  $j$   
 $EV$  ..... Expected value  
 $F$  ..... Future worth, value, or amount  
 $f$  ..... General inflation rate per interest period  
 $G$  ..... Uniform gradient amount per interest period  
 $i$  ..... Interest rate per interest period  
 $i_e$  ..... Annual effective interest rate  
 $MARR$  ..... Minimum acceptable/attractive rate of return  
 $m$  ..... Number of compounding periods per year  
 $n$  ..... Number of compounding periods; or the expected life of an asset  
 $P$  ..... Present worth, value, or amount  
 $r$  ..... Nominal annual interest rate  
 $S_n$  ..... Expected salvage value in year  $n$

### Subscripts

$j$  ..... at time  $j$   
 $n$  ..... at time  $n$   
 $\dagger$  .....  $F/G = (F/A - n)/i = (F/A) \times (A/G)$

## Non-Annual Compounding

$$i_e = \left(1 + \frac{r}{m}\right)^m - 1$$

## Breakeven Analysis

By altering the value of any one of the variables in a situation, holding all of the other values constant, it is possible to find a value for that variable that makes the two alternatives equally economical. This value is the breakeven point.

Breakeven analysis is used to describe the percentage of capacity of operation for a manufacturing plant at which income will just cover expenses.

The payback period is the period of time required for the profit or other benefits of an investment to equal the cost of the investment.

## Inflation

To account for inflation, the dollars are deflated by the general inflation rate per interest period  $f$ , and then they are shifted over the time scale using the interest rate per interest period  $i$ . Use an inflation adjusted interest rate per interest period  $d$  for computing present worth values  $P$ . The formula for  $d$  is  $d = i + f + (i \times f)$

## Depreciation

### Straight Line

$$D_j = \frac{C - S_n}{n}$$

### Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS)

$$D_j = (\text{factor}) C$$

A table of MACRS factors is provided below.

### Book Value

$$BV = \text{initial cost} - \sum D_j$$

## Taxation

Income taxes are paid at a specific rate on taxable income. Taxable income is total income less depreciation and ordinary expenses. Expenses do not include capital items, which should be depreciated.

## Capitalized Costs

Capitalized costs are present worth values using an assumed perpetual period of time.

$$\text{Capitalized Costs} = P = \frac{A}{i}$$

## Bonds

Bond value equals the present worth of the payments the purchaser (or holder of the bond) receives during the life of the bond at some interest rate  $i$ .

Bond yield equals the computed interest rate of the bond value when compared with the bond cost.

## Rate-of-Return

The minimum acceptable rate-of-return (MARR) is that interest rate that one is willing to accept, or the rate one desires to earn on investments. The rate-of-return on an investment is the interest rate that makes the benefits and costs equal.

## Benefit-Cost Analysis

In a benefit-cost analysis, the benefits  $B$  of a project should exceed the estimated costs  $C$ .

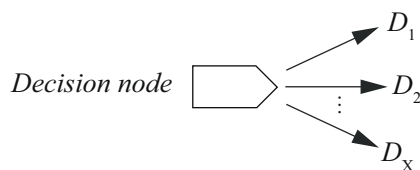
$$B - C \geq 0, \text{ or } B/C \geq 1$$

### Modified Accelerated Cost Recovery System (MACRS)

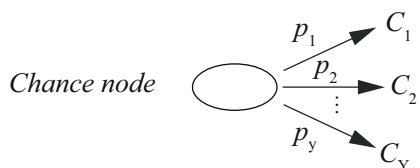
| MACRS FACTORS |                         |       |       |       |
|---------------|-------------------------|-------|-------|-------|
| Year          | Recovery Period (Years) |       |       |       |
|               | 3                       | 5     | 7     | 10    |
|               | Recovery Rate (Percent) |       |       |       |
| 1             | 33.33                   | 20.00 | 14.29 | 10.00 |
| 2             | 44.45                   | 32.00 | 24.49 | 18.00 |
| 3             | 14.81                   | 19.20 | 17.49 | 14.40 |
| 4             | 7.41                    | 11.52 | 12.49 | 11.52 |
| 5             |                         | 11.52 | 8.93  | 9.22  |
| 6             |                         | 5.76  | 8.92  | 7.37  |
| 7             |                         |       | 8.93  | 6.55  |
| 8             |                         |       | 4.46  | 6.55  |
| 9             |                         |       |       | 6.56  |
| 10            |                         |       |       | 6.55  |
| 11            |                         |       |       | 3.28  |

### Economic Decision Trees

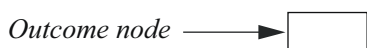
The following symbols are used to model decisions with decision trees:



Decision maker chooses 1 of the available paths.



Represents a probabilistic (chance) event. Each possible outcome ( $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_Y$ ) has a probability ( $p_1, p_2, \dots, p_Y$ ) associated with it.



Shows result for a particular path through the decision tree.

Expected Value:  $EV = (C_1)(p_1) + (C_2)(p_2) + \dots$

Cost Estimation: (see Cost Estimation section in Chemical Engineering chapter)

**Interest Rate Tables**  
**Factor Table -  $i = 0.50\%$**

| <i>n</i>   | <i>P/F</i>    | <i>P/A</i>     | <i>P/G</i>        | <i>F/P</i>    | <i>F/A</i>      | <i>A/P</i>    | <i>A/F</i>    | <i>A/G</i>     |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1          | 0.9950        | 0.9950         | 0.0000            | 1.0050        | 1.0000          | 1.0050        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2          | 0.9901        | 1.9851         | 0.9901            | 1.0100        | 2.0050          | 0.5038        | 0.4988        | 0.4988         |
| 3          | 0.9851        | 2.9702         | 2.9604            | 1.0151        | 3.0150          | 0.3367        | 0.3317        | 0.9967         |
| 4          | 0.9802        | 3.9505         | 5.9011            | 1.0202        | 4.0301          | 0.2531        | 0.2481        | 1.4938         |
| <b>5</b>   | <b>0.9754</b> | <b>4.9259</b>  | <b>9.8026</b>     | <b>1.0253</b> | <b>5.0503</b>   | <b>0.2030</b> | <b>0.1980</b> | <b>1.9900</b>  |
| 6          | 0.9705        | 5.8964         | 14.6552           | 1.0304        | 6.0755          | 0.1696        | 0.1646        | 2.4855         |
| 7          | 0.9657        | 6.8621         | 20.4493           | 1.0355        | 7.1059          | 0.1457        | 0.1407        | 2.9801         |
| 8          | 0.9609        | 7.8230         | 27.1755           | 1.0407        | 8.1414          | 0.1278        | 0.1228        | 3.4738         |
| 9          | 0.9561        | 8.7791         | 34.8244           | 1.0459        | 9.1821          | 0.1139        | 0.1089        | 3.9668         |
| <b>10</b>  | <b>0.9513</b> | <b>9.7304</b>  | <b>43.3865</b>    | <b>1.0511</b> | <b>10.2280</b>  | <b>0.1028</b> | <b>0.0978</b> | <b>4.4589</b>  |
| 11         | 0.9466        | 10.6770        | 52.8526           | 1.0564        | 11.2792         | 0.0937        | 0.0887        | 4.9501         |
| 12         | 0.9419        | 11.6189        | 63.2136           | 1.0617        | 12.3356         | 0.0861        | 0.0811        | 5.4406         |
| 13         | 0.9372        | 12.5562        | 74.4602           | 1.0670        | 13.3972         | 0.0796        | 0.0746        | 5.9302         |
| 14         | 0.9326        | 13.4887        | 86.5835           | 1.0723        | 14.4642         | 0.0741        | 0.0691        | 6.4190         |
| <b>15</b>  | <b>0.9279</b> | <b>14.4166</b> | <b>99.5743</b>    | <b>1.0777</b> | <b>15.5365</b>  | <b>0.0694</b> | <b>0.0644</b> | <b>6.9069</b>  |
| 16         | 0.9233        | 15.3399        | 113.4238          | 1.0831        | 16.6142         | 0.0652        | 0.0602        | 7.3940         |
| 17         | 0.9187        | 16.2586        | 128.1231          | 1.0885        | 17.6973         | 0.0615        | 0.0565        | 7.8803         |
| 18         | 0.9141        | 17.1728        | 143.6634          | 1.0939        | 18.7858         | 0.0582        | 0.0532        | 8.3658         |
| 19         | 0.9096        | 18.0824        | 160.0360          | 1.0994        | 19.8797         | 0.0553        | 0.0503        | 8.8504         |
| <b>20</b>  | <b>0.9051</b> | <b>18.9874</b> | <b>177.2322</b>   | <b>1.1049</b> | <b>20.9791</b>  | <b>0.0527</b> | <b>0.0477</b> | <b>9.3342</b>  |
| 21         | 0.9006        | 19.8880        | 195.2434          | 1.1104        | 22.0840         | 0.0503        | 0.0453        | 9.8172         |
| 22         | 0.8961        | 20.7841        | 214.0611          | 1.1160        | 23.1944         | 0.0481        | 0.0431        | 10.2993        |
| 23         | 0.8916        | 21.6757        | 233.6768          | 1.1216        | 24.3104         | 0.0461        | 0.0411        | 10.7806        |
| 24         | 0.8872        | 22.5629        | 254.0820          | 1.1272        | 25.4320         | 0.0443        | 0.0393        | 11.2611        |
| <b>25</b>  | <b>0.8828</b> | <b>23.4456</b> | <b>275.2686</b>   | <b>1.1328</b> | <b>26.5591</b>  | <b>0.0427</b> | <b>0.0377</b> | <b>11.7407</b> |
| 30         | 0.8610        | 27.7941        | 392.6324          | 1.1614        | 32.2800         | 0.0360        | 0.0310        | 14.1265        |
| 40         | 0.8191        | 36.1722        | 681.3347          | 1.2208        | 44.1588         | 0.0276        | 0.0226        | 18.8359        |
| 50         | 0.7793        | 44.1428        | 1,035.6966        | 1.2832        | 56.6452         | 0.0227        | 0.0177        | 23.4624        |
| 60         | 0.7414        | 51.7256        | 1,448.6458        | 1.3489        | 69.7700         | 0.0193        | 0.0143        | 28.0064        |
| <b>100</b> | <b>0.6073</b> | <b>78.5426</b> | <b>3,562.7934</b> | <b>1.6467</b> | <b>129.3337</b> | <b>0.0127</b> | <b>0.0077</b> | <b>45.3613</b> |

**Factor Table -  $i = 1.00\%$**

| <i>n</i>   | <i>P/F</i>    | <i>P/A</i>     | <i>P/G</i>        | <i>F/P</i>    | <i>F/A</i>      | <i>A/P</i>    | <i>A/F</i>    | <i>A/G</i>     |
|------------|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1          | 0.9901        | 0.9901         | 0.0000            | 1.0100        | 1.0000          | 1.0100        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2          | 0.9803        | 1.9704         | 0.9803            | 1.0201        | 2.0100          | 0.5075        | 0.4975        | 0.4975         |
| 3          | 0.9706        | 2.9410         | 2.9215            | 1.0303        | 3.0301          | 0.3400        | 0.3300        | 0.9934         |
| 4          | 0.9610        | 3.9020         | 5.8044            | 1.0406        | 4.0604          | 0.2563        | 0.2463        | 1.4876         |
| <b>5</b>   | <b>0.9515</b> | <b>4.8534</b>  | <b>9.6103</b>     | <b>1.0510</b> | <b>5.1010</b>   | <b>0.2060</b> | <b>0.1960</b> | <b>1.9801</b>  |
| 6          | 0.9420        | 5.7955         | 14.3205           | 1.0615        | 6.1520          | 0.1725        | 0.1625        | 2.4710         |
| 7          | 0.9327        | 6.7282         | 19.9168           | 1.0721        | 7.2135          | 0.1486        | 0.1386        | 2.9602         |
| 8          | 0.9235        | 7.6517         | 26.3812           | 1.0829        | 8.2857          | 0.1307        | 0.1207        | 3.4478         |
| 9          | 0.9143        | 8.5650         | 33.6959           | 1.0937        | 9.3685          | 0.1167        | 0.1067        | 3.9337         |
| <b>10</b>  | <b>0.9053</b> | <b>9.4713</b>  | <b>41.8435</b>    | <b>1.1046</b> | <b>10.4622</b>  | <b>0.1056</b> | <b>0.0956</b> | <b>4.4179</b>  |
| 11         | 0.8963        | 10.3676        | 50.8067           | 1.1157        | 11.5668         | 0.0965        | 0.0865        | 4.9005         |
| 12         | 0.8874        | 11.2551        | 60.5687           | 1.1268        | 12.6825         | 0.0888        | 0.0788        | 5.3815         |
| 13         | 0.8787        | 12.1337        | 71.1126           | 1.1381        | 13.8093         | 0.0824        | 0.0724        | 5.8607         |
| 14         | 0.8700        | 13.0037        | 82.4221           | 1.1495        | 14.9474         | 0.0769        | 0.0669        | 6.3384         |
| <b>15</b>  | <b>0.8613</b> | <b>13.8651</b> | <b>94.4810</b>    | <b>1.1610</b> | <b>16.0969</b>  | <b>0.0721</b> | <b>0.0621</b> | <b>6.8143</b>  |
| 16         | 0.8528        | 14.7179        | 107.2734          | 1.1726        | 17.2579         | 0.0679        | 0.0579        | 7.2886         |
| 17         | 0.8444        | 15.5623        | 120.7834          | 1.1843        | 18.4304         | 0.0643        | 0.0543        | 7.7613         |
| 18         | 0.8360        | 16.3983        | 134.9957          | 1.1961        | 19.6147         | 0.0610        | 0.0510        | 8.2323         |
| 19         | 0.8277        | 17.2260        | 149.8950          | 1.2081        | 20.8109         | 0.0581        | 0.0481        | 8.7017         |
| <b>20</b>  | <b>0.8195</b> | <b>18.0456</b> | <b>165.4664</b>   | <b>1.2202</b> | <b>22.0190</b>  | <b>0.0554</b> | <b>0.0454</b> | <b>9.1694</b>  |
| 21         | 0.8114        | 18.8570        | 181.6950          | 1.2324        | 23.2392         | 0.0530        | 0.0430        | 9.6354         |
| 22         | 0.8034        | 19.6604        | 198.5663          | 1.2447        | 24.4716         | 0.0509        | 0.0409        | 10.0998        |
| 23         | 0.7954        | 20.4558        | 216.0660          | 1.2572        | 25.7163         | 0.0489        | 0.0389        | 10.5626        |
| 24         | 0.7876        | 21.2434        | 234.1800          | 1.2697        | 26.9735         | 0.0471        | 0.0371        | 11.0237        |
| <b>25</b>  | <b>0.7798</b> | <b>22.0232</b> | <b>252.8945</b>   | <b>1.2824</b> | <b>28.2432</b>  | <b>0.0454</b> | <b>0.0354</b> | <b>11.4831</b> |
| 30         | 0.7419        | 25.8077        | 355.0021          | 1.3478        | 34.7849         | 0.0387        | 0.0277        | 13.7557        |
| 40         | 0.6717        | 32.8347        | 596.8561          | 1.4889        | 48.8864         | 0.0305        | 0.0205        | 18.1776        |
| 50         | 0.6080        | 39.1961        | 879.4176          | 1.6446        | 64.4632         | 0.0255        | 0.0155        | 22.4363        |
| 60         | 0.5504        | 44.9550        | 1,192.8061        | 1.8167        | 81.6697         | 0.0222        | 0.0122        | 26.5333        |
| <b>100</b> | <b>0.3697</b> | <b>63.0289</b> | <b>2,605.7758</b> | <b>2.7048</b> | <b>170.4814</b> | <b>0.0159</b> | <b>0.0059</b> | <b>41.3426</b> |

**Interest Rate Tables**  
**Factor Table -  $i = 1.50\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$          | $P/G$             | $F/P$         | $F/A$           | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$          |
|-----|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1   | 0.9852        | 0.9852         | 0.0000            | 1.0150        | 1.0000          | 1.0150        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2   | 0.9707        | 1.9559         | 0.9707            | 1.0302        | 2.0150          | 0.5113        | 0.4963        | 0.4963         |
| 3   | 0.9563        | 2.9122         | 2.8833            | 1.0457        | 3.0452          | 0.3434        | 0.3284        | 0.9901         |
| 4   | 0.9422        | 3.8544         | 5.7098            | 1.0614        | 4.0909          | 0.2594        | 0.2444        | 1.4814         |
| 5   | <b>0.9283</b> | <b>4.7826</b>  | <b>9.4229</b>     | <b>1.0773</b> | <b>5.1523</b>   | <b>0.2091</b> | <b>0.1941</b> | <b>1.9702</b>  |
| 6   | 0.9145        | 5.6972         | 13.9956           | 1.0934        | 6.2296          | 0.1755        | 0.1605        | 2.4566         |
| 7   | 0.9010        | 6.5982         | 19.4018           | 1.1098        | 7.3230          | 0.1516        | 0.1366        | 2.9405         |
| 8   | 0.8877        | 7.4859         | 26.6157           | 1.1265        | 8.4328          | 0.1336        | 0.1186        | 3.4219         |
| 9   | 0.8746        | 8.3605         | 32.6125           | 1.1434        | 9.5593          | 0.1196        | 0.1046        | 3.9008         |
| 10  | <b>0.8617</b> | <b>9.2222</b>  | <b>40.3675</b>    | <b>1.1605</b> | <b>10.7027</b>  | <b>0.1084</b> | <b>0.0934</b> | <b>4.3772</b>  |
| 11  | 0.8489        | 10.0711        | 48.8568           | 1.1779        | 11.8633         | 0.0993        | 0.0843        | 4.8512         |
| 12  | 0.8364        | 10.9075        | 58.0571           | 1.1956        | 13.0412         | 0.0917        | 0.0767        | 5.3227         |
| 13  | 0.8240        | 11.7315        | 67.9454           | 1.2136        | 14.2368         | 0.0852        | 0.0702        | 5.7917         |
| 14  | 0.8118        | 12.5434        | 78.4994           | 1.2318        | 15.4504         | 0.0797        | 0.0647        | 6.2582         |
| 15  | <b>0.7999</b> | <b>13.3432</b> | <b>89.6974</b>    | <b>1.2502</b> | <b>16.6821</b>  | <b>0.0749</b> | <b>0.0599</b> | <b>6.7223</b>  |
| 16  | 0.7880        | 14.1313        | 101.5178          | 1.2690        | 17.9324         | 0.0708        | 0.0558        | 7.1839         |
| 17  | 0.7764        | 14.9076        | 113.9400          | 1.2880        | 19.2014         | 0.0671        | 0.0521        | 7.6431         |
| 18  | 0.7649        | 15.6726        | 126.9435          | 1.3073        | 20.4894         | 0.0638        | 0.0488        | 8.0997         |
| 19  | 0.7536        | 16.4262        | 140.5084          | 1.3270        | 21.7967         | 0.0609        | 0.0459        | 8.5539         |
| 20  | <b>0.7425</b> | <b>17.1686</b> | <b>154.6154</b>   | <b>1.3469</b> | <b>23.1237</b>  | <b>0.0582</b> | <b>0.0432</b> | <b>9.0057</b>  |
| 21  | 0.7315        | 17.9001        | 169.2453          | 1.3671        | 24.4705         | 0.0559        | 0.0409        | 9.4550         |
| 22  | 0.7207        | 18.6208        | 184.3798          | 1.3876        | 25.8376         | 0.0537        | 0.0387        | 9.9018         |
| 23  | 0.7100        | 19.3309        | 200.0006          | 1.4084        | 27.2251         | 0.0517        | 0.0367        | 10.3462        |
| 24  | 0.6995        | 20.0304        | 216.0901          | 1.4295        | 28.6335         | 0.0499        | 0.0349        | 10.7881        |
| 25  | <b>0.6892</b> | <b>20.7196</b> | <b>232.6310</b>   | <b>1.4509</b> | <b>30.0630</b>  | <b>0.0483</b> | <b>0.0333</b> | <b>11.2276</b> |
| 30  | 0.6398        | 24.0158        | 321.5310          | 1.5631        | 37.5387         | 0.0416        | 0.0266        | 13.3883        |
| 40  | 0.5513        | 29.9158        | 524.3568          | 1.8140        | 54.2679         | 0.0334        | 0.0184        | 17.5277        |
| 50  | 0.4750        | 34.9997        | 749.9636          | 2.1052        | 73.6828         | 0.0286        | 0.0136        | 21.4277        |
| 60  | 0.4093        | 39.3803        | 988.1674          | 2.4432        | 96.2147         | 0.0254        | 0.0104        | 25.0930        |
| 100 | <b>0.2256</b> | <b>51.6247</b> | <b>1,937.4506</b> | <b>4.4320</b> | <b>228.8030</b> | <b>0.0194</b> | <b>0.0044</b> | <b>37.5295</b> |

**Factor Table -  $i = 2.00\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$          | $P/G$             | $F/P$         | $F/A$           | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$          |
|-----|---------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1   | 0.9804        | 0.9804         | 0.0000            | 1.0200        | 1.0000          | 1.0200        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2   | 0.9612        | 1.9416         | 0.9612            | 1.0404        | 2.0200          | 0.5150        | 0.4950        | 0.4950         |
| 3   | 0.9423        | 2.8839         | 2.8458            | 1.0612        | 3.0604          | 0.3468        | 0.3268        | 0.9868         |
| 4   | 0.9238        | 3.8077         | 5.6173            | 1.0824        | 4.1216          | 0.2626        | 0.2426        | 1.4752         |
| 5   | <b>0.9057</b> | <b>4.7135</b>  | <b>9.2403</b>     | <b>1.1041</b> | <b>5.2040</b>   | <b>0.2122</b> | <b>0.1922</b> | <b>1.9604</b>  |
| 6   | 0.8880        | 5.6014         | 13.6801           | 1.1262        | 6.3081          | 0.1785        | 0.1585        | 2.4423         |
| 7   | 0.8706        | 6.4720         | 18.9035           | 1.1487        | 7.4343          | 0.1545        | 0.1345        | 2.9208         |
| 8   | 0.8535        | 7.3255         | 24.8779           | 1.1717        | 8.5830          | 0.1365        | 0.1165        | 3.3961         |
| 9   | 0.8368        | 8.1622         | 31.5720           | 1.1951        | 9.7546          | 0.1225        | 0.1025        | 3.8681         |
| 10  | <b>0.8203</b> | <b>8.9826</b>  | <b>38.9551</b>    | <b>1.2190</b> | <b>10.9497</b>  | <b>0.1113</b> | <b>0.0913</b> | <b>4.3367</b>  |
| 11  | 0.8043        | 9.7868         | 46.9977           | 1.2434        | 12.1687         | 0.1022        | 0.0822        | 4.8021         |
| 12  | 0.7885        | 10.5753        | 55.6712           | 1.2682        | 13.4121         | 0.0946        | 0.0746        | 5.2642         |
| 13  | 0.7730        | 11.3484        | 64.9475           | 1.2936        | 14.6803         | 0.0881        | 0.0681        | 5.7231         |
| 14  | 0.7579        | 12.1062        | 74.7999           | 1.3195        | 15.9739         | 0.0826        | 0.0626        | 6.1786         |
| 15  | <b>0.7430</b> | <b>12.8493</b> | <b>85.2021</b>    | <b>1.3459</b> | <b>17.2934</b>  | <b>0.0778</b> | <b>0.0578</b> | <b>6.6309</b>  |
| 16  | 0.7284        | 13.5777        | 96.1288           | 1.3728        | 18.6393         | 0.0737        | 0.0537        | 7.0799         |
| 17  | 0.7142        | 14.2919        | 107.5554          | 1.4002        | 20.0121         | 0.0700        | 0.0500        | 7.5256         |
| 18  | 0.7002        | 14.9920        | 119.4581          | 1.4282        | 21.4123         | 0.0667        | 0.0467        | 7.9681         |
| 19  | 0.6864        | 15.6785        | 131.8139          | 1.4568        | 22.8406         | 0.0638        | 0.0438        | 8.4073         |
| 20  | <b>0.6730</b> | <b>16.3514</b> | <b>144.6003</b>   | <b>1.4859</b> | <b>24.2974</b>  | <b>0.0612</b> | <b>0.0412</b> | <b>8.8433</b>  |
| 21  | 0.6598        | 17.0112        | 157.7959          | 1.5157        | 25.7833         | 0.0588        | 0.0388        | 9.2760         |
| 22  | 0.6468        | 17.6580        | 171.3795          | 1.5460        | 27.2990         | 0.0566        | 0.0366        | 9.7055         |
| 23  | 0.6342        | 18.2922        | 185.3309          | 1.5769        | 28.8450         | 0.0547        | 0.0347        | 10.1317        |
| 24  | 0.6217        | 18.9139        | 199.6305          | 1.6084        | 30.4219         | 0.0529        | 0.0329        | 10.5547        |
| 25  | <b>0.6095</b> | <b>19.5235</b> | <b>214.2592</b>   | <b>1.6406</b> | <b>32.0303</b>  | <b>0.0512</b> | <b>0.0312</b> | <b>10.9745</b> |
| 30  | 0.5521        | 22.3965        | 291.7164          | 1.8114        | 40.5681         | 0.0446        | 0.0246        | 13.0251        |
| 40  | 0.4529        | 27.3555        | 461.9931          | 2.2080        | 60.4020         | 0.0366        | 0.0166        | 16.8885        |
| 50  | 0.3715        | 31.4236        | 642.3606          | 2.6916        | 84.5794         | 0.0318        | 0.0118        | 20.4420        |
| 60  | 0.3048        | 34.7609        | 823.6975          | 3.2810        | 114.0515        | 0.0288        | 0.0088        | 23.6961        |
| 100 | <b>0.1380</b> | <b>43.0984</b> | <b>1,464.7527</b> | <b>7.2446</b> | <b>312.2323</b> | <b>0.0232</b> | <b>0.0032</b> | <b>33.9863</b> |

**Interest Rate Tables**  
**Factor Table -  $i = 4.00\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$          | $P/G$           | $F/P$          | $F/A$             | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$          |
|-----|---------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1   | 0.9615        | 0.9615         | 0.0000          | 1.0400         | 1.0000            | 1.0400        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2   | 0.9246        | 1.8861         | 0.9246          | 1.0816         | 2.0400            | 0.5302        | 0.4902        | 0.4902         |
| 3   | 0.8890        | 2.7751         | 2.7025          | 1.1249         | 3.1216            | 0.3603        | 0.3203        | 0.9739         |
| 4   | 0.8548        | 3.6299         | 5.2670          | 1.1699         | 4.2465            | 0.2755        | 0.2355        | 1.4510         |
| 5   | <b>0.8219</b> | <b>4.4518</b>  | <b>8.5547</b>   | <b>1.2167</b>  | <b>5.4163</b>     | <b>0.2246</b> | <b>0.1846</b> | <b>1.9216</b>  |
| 6   | 0.7903        | 5.2421         | 12.5062         | 1.2653         | 6.6330            | 0.1908        | 0.1508        | 2.3857         |
| 7   | 0.7599        | 6.0021         | 17.0657         | 1.3159         | 7.8983            | 0.1666        | 0.1266        | 2.8433         |
| 8   | 0.7307        | 6.7327         | 22.1806         | 1.3686         | 9.2142            | 0.1485        | 0.1085        | 3.2944         |
| 9   | 0.7026        | 7.4353         | 27.8013         | 1.4233         | 10.5828           | 0.1345        | 0.0945        | 3.7391         |
| 10  | <b>0.6756</b> | <b>8.1109</b>  | <b>33.8814</b>  | <b>1.4802</b>  | <b>12.0061</b>    | <b>0.1233</b> | <b>0.0833</b> | <b>4.1773</b>  |
| 11  | 0.6496        | 8.7605         | 40.3772         | 1.5395         | 13.4864           | 0.1141        | 0.0741        | 4.6090         |
| 12  | 0.6246        | 9.3851         | 47.2477         | 1.6010         | 15.0258           | 0.1066        | 0.0666        | 5.0343         |
| 13  | 0.6006        | 9.9856         | 54.4546         | 1.6651         | 16.6268           | 0.1001        | 0.0601        | 5.4533         |
| 14  | 0.5775        | 10.5631        | 61.9618         | 1.7317         | 18.2919           | 0.0947        | 0.0547        | 5.8659         |
| 15  | <b>0.5553</b> | <b>11.1184</b> | <b>69.7355</b>  | <b>1.8009</b>  | <b>20.0236</b>    | <b>0.0899</b> | <b>0.0499</b> | <b>6.2721</b>  |
| 16  | 0.5339        | 11.6523        | 77.7441         | 1.8730         | 21.8245           | 0.0858        | 0.0458        | 6.6720         |
| 17  | 0.5134        | 12.1657        | 85.9581         | 1.9479         | 23.6975           | 0.0822        | 0.0422        | 7.0656         |
| 18  | 0.4936        | 12.6593        | 94.3498         | 2.0258         | 25.6454           | 0.0790        | 0.0390        | 7.4530         |
| 19  | 0.4746        | 13.1339        | 102.8933        | 2.1068         | 27.6712           | 0.0761        | 0.0361        | 7.8342         |
| 20  | <b>0.4564</b> | <b>13.5903</b> | <b>111.5647</b> | <b>2.1911</b>  | <b>29.7781</b>    | <b>0.0736</b> | <b>0.0336</b> | <b>8.2091</b>  |
| 21  | 0.4388        | 14.0292        | 120.3414        | 2.2788         | 31.9692           | 0.0713        | 0.0313        | 8.5779         |
| 22  | 0.4220        | 14.4511        | 129.2024        | 2.3699         | 34.2480           | 0.0692        | 0.0292        | 8.9407         |
| 23  | 0.4057        | 14.8568        | 138.1284        | 2.4647         | 36.6179           | 0.0673        | 0.0273        | 9.2973         |
| 24  | 0.3901        | 15.2470        | 147.1012        | 2.5633         | 39.0826           | 0.0656        | 0.0256        | 9.6479         |
| 25  | <b>0.3751</b> | <b>15.6221</b> | <b>156.1040</b> | <b>2.6658</b>  | <b>41.6459</b>    | <b>0.0640</b> | <b>0.0240</b> | <b>9.9925</b>  |
| 30  | 0.3083        | 17.2920        | 201.0618        | 3.2434         | 56.0849           | 0.0578        | 0.0178        | 11.6274        |
| 40  | 0.2083        | 19.7928        | 286.5303        | 4.8010         | 95.0255           | 0.0505        | 0.0105        | 14.4765        |
| 50  | 0.1407        | 21.4822        | 361.1638        | 7.1067         | 152.6671          | 0.0466        | 0.0066        | 16.8122        |
| 60  | 0.0951        | 22.6235        | 422.9966        | 10.5196        | 237.9907          | 0.0442        | 0.0042        | 18.6972        |
| 100 | <b>0.0198</b> | <b>24.5050</b> | <b>563.1249</b> | <b>50.5049</b> | <b>1,237.6237</b> | <b>0.0408</b> | <b>0.0008</b> | <b>22.9800</b> |

**Factor Table -  $i = 6.00\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$          | $P/G$           | $F/P$           | $F/A$             | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$          |
|-----|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1   | 0.9434        | 0.9434         | 0.0000          | 1.0600          | 1.0000            | 1.0600        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2   | 0.8900        | 1.8334         | 0.8900          | 1.1236          | 2.0600            | 0.5454        | 0.4854        | 0.4854         |
| 3   | 0.8396        | 2.6730         | 2.5692          | 1.1910          | 3.1836            | 0.3741        | 0.3141        | 0.9612         |
| 4   | 0.7921        | 3.4651         | 4.9455          | 1.2625          | 4.3746            | 0.2886        | 0.2286        | 1.4272         |
| 5   | <b>0.7473</b> | <b>4.2124</b>  | <b>7.9345</b>   | <b>1.3382</b>   | <b>5.6371</b>     | <b>0.2374</b> | <b>0.1774</b> | <b>1.8836</b>  |
| 6   | 0.7050        | 4.9173         | 11.4594         | 1.4185          | 6.9753            | 0.2034        | 0.1434        | 2.3304         |
| 7   | 0.6651        | 5.5824         | 15.4497         | 1.5036          | 8.3938            | 0.1791        | 0.1191        | 2.7676         |
| 8   | 0.6274        | 6.2098         | 19.8416         | 1.5938          | 9.8975            | 0.1610        | 0.1010        | 3.1952         |
| 9   | 0.5919        | 6.8017         | 24.5768         | 1.6895          | 11.4913           | 0.1470        | 0.0870        | 3.6133         |
| 10  | <b>0.5584</b> | <b>7.3601</b>  | <b>29.6023</b>  | <b>1.7908</b>   | <b>13.1808</b>    | <b>0.1359</b> | <b>0.0759</b> | <b>4.0220</b>  |
| 11  | 0.5268        | 7.8869         | 34.8702         | 1.8983          | 14.9716           | 0.1268        | 0.0668        | 4.4213         |
| 12  | 0.4970        | 8.3838         | 40.3369         | 2.0122          | 16.8699           | 0.1193        | 0.0593        | 4.8113         |
| 13  | 0.4688        | 8.8527         | 45.9629         | 2.1329          | 18.8821           | 0.1130        | 0.0530        | 5.1920         |
| 14  | 0.4423        | 9.2950         | 51.7128         | 2.2609          | 21.0151           | 0.1076        | 0.0476        | 5.5635         |
| 15  | <b>0.4173</b> | <b>9.7122</b>  | <b>57.5546</b>  | <b>2.3966</b>   | <b>23.2760</b>    | <b>0.1030</b> | <b>0.0430</b> | <b>5.9260</b>  |
| 16  | 0.3936        | 10.1059        | 63.4592         | 2.5404          | 25.6725           | 0.0990        | 0.0390        | 6.2794         |
| 17  | 0.3714        | 10.4773        | 69.4011         | 2.6928          | 28.2129           | 0.0954        | 0.0354        | 6.6240         |
| 18  | 0.3505        | 10.8276        | 75.3569         | 2.8543          | 30.9057           | 0.0924        | 0.0324        | 6.9597         |
| 19  | 0.3305        | 11.1581        | 81.3062         | 3.0256          | 33.7600           | 0.0896        | 0.0296        | 7.2867         |
| 20  | <b>0.3118</b> | <b>11.4699</b> | <b>87.2304</b>  | <b>3.2071</b>   | <b>36.7856</b>    | <b>0.0872</b> | <b>0.0272</b> | <b>7.6051</b>  |
| 21  | 0.2942        | 11.7641        | 93.1136         | 3.3996          | 39.9927           | 0.0850        | 0.0250        | 7.9151         |
| 22  | 0.2775        | 12.0416        | 98.9412         | 3.6035          | 43.3923           | 0.0830        | 0.0230        | 8.2166         |
| 23  | 0.2618        | 12.3034        | 104.7007        | 3.8197          | 46.9958           | 0.0813        | 0.0213        | 8.5099         |
| 24  | 0.2470        | 12.5504        | 110.3812        | 4.0489          | 50.8156           | 0.0797        | 0.0197        | 8.7951         |
| 25  | <b>0.2330</b> | <b>12.7834</b> | <b>115.9732</b> | <b>4.2919</b>   | <b>54.8645</b>    | <b>0.0782</b> | <b>0.0182</b> | <b>9.0722</b>  |
| 30  | 0.1741        | 13.7648        | 142.3588        | 5.7435          | 79.0582           | 0.0726        | 0.0126        | 10.3422        |
| 40  | 0.0972        | 15.0463        | 185.9568        | 10.2857         | 154.7620          | 0.0665        | 0.0065        | 12.3590        |
| 50  | 0.0543        | 15.7619        | 217.4574        | 18.4202         | 290.3359          | 0.0634        | 0.0034        | 13.7964        |
| 60  | 0.0303        | 16.1614        | 239.0428        | 32.9877         | 533.1282          | 0.0619        | 0.0019        | 14.7909        |
| 100 | <b>0.0029</b> | <b>16.6175</b> | <b>272.0471</b> | <b>339.3021</b> | <b>5,638.3681</b> | <b>0.0602</b> | <b>0.0002</b> | <b>16.3711</b> |

**Interest Rate Tables**  
**Factor Table -  $i = 8.00\%$**

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i>    | <i>P/A</i>     | <i>P/G</i>      | <i>F/P</i>        | <i>F/A</i>         | <i>A/P</i>    | <i>A/F</i>    | <i>A/G</i>     |
|----------|---------------|----------------|-----------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1        | 0.9259        | 0.9259         | 0.0000          | 1.0800            | 1.0000             | 1.0800        | 1.0000        | 0.0000         |
| 2        | 0.8573        | 1.7833         | 0.8573          | 1.1664            | 2.0800             | 0.5608        | 0.4808        | 0.4808         |
| 3        | 0.7938        | 2.5771         | 2.4450          | 1.2597            | 3.2464             | 0.3880        | 0.3080        | 0.9487         |
| 4        | 0.7350        | 3.3121         | 4.6501          | 1.3605            | 4.5061             | 0.3019        | 0.2219        | 1.4040         |
| 5        | <b>0.6806</b> | <b>3.9927</b>  | <b>7.3724</b>   | <b>1.4693</b>     | <b>5.8666</b>      | <b>0.2505</b> | <b>0.1705</b> | <b>1.8465</b>  |
| 6        | 0.6302        | 4.6229         | 10.5233         | 1.5869            | 7.3359             | 0.2163        | 0.1363        | 2.2763         |
| 7        | 0.5835        | 5.2064         | 14.0242         | 1.7138            | 8.9228             | 0.1921        | 0.1121        | 2.6937         |
| 8        | 0.5403        | 5.7466         | 17.8061         | 1.8509            | 10.6366            | 0.1740        | 0.0940        | 3.0985         |
| 9        | 0.5002        | 6.2469         | 21.8081         | 1.9990            | 12.4876            | 0.1601        | 0.0801        | 3.4910         |
| 10       | <b>0.4632</b> | <b>6.7101</b>  | <b>25.9768</b>  | <b>2.1589</b>     | <b>14.4866</b>     | <b>0.1490</b> | <b>0.0690</b> | <b>3.8713</b>  |
| 11       | 0.4289        | 7.1390         | 30.2657         | 2.3316            | 16.6455            | 0.1401        | 0.0601        | 4.2395         |
| 12       | 0.3971        | 7.5361         | 34.6339         | 2.5182            | 18.9771            | 0.1327        | 0.0527        | 4.5957         |
| 13       | 0.3677        | 7.9038         | 39.0463         | 2.7196            | 21.4953            | 0.1265        | 0.0465        | 4.9402         |
| 14       | 0.3405        | 8.2442         | 43.4723         | 2.9372            | 24.2149            | 0.1213        | 0.0413        | 5.2731         |
| 15       | <b>0.3152</b> | <b>8.5595</b>  | <b>47.8857</b>  | <b>3.1722</b>     | <b>27.1521</b>     | <b>0.1168</b> | <b>0.0368</b> | <b>5.5945</b>  |
| 16       | 0.2919        | 8.8514         | 52.2640         | 3.4259            | 30.3243            | 0.1130        | 0.0330        | 5.9046         |
| 17       | 0.2703        | 9.1216         | 56.5883         | 3.7000            | 33.7502            | 0.1096        | 0.0296        | 6.2037         |
| 18       | 0.2502        | 9.3719         | 60.8426         | 3.9960            | 37.4502            | 0.1067        | 0.0267        | 6.4920         |
| 19       | 0.2317        | 9.6036         | 65.0134         | 4.3157            | 41.4463            | 0.1041        | 0.0241        | 6.7697         |
| 20       | <b>0.2145</b> | <b>9.8181</b>  | <b>69.0898</b>  | <b>4.6610</b>     | <b>45.7620</b>     | <b>0.1019</b> | <b>0.0219</b> | <b>7.0369</b>  |
| 21       | 0.1987        | 10.0168        | 73.0629         | 5.0338            | 50.4229            | 0.0998        | 0.0198        | 7.2940         |
| 22       | 0.1839        | 10.2007        | 76.9257         | 5.4365            | 55.4568            | 0.0980        | 0.0180        | 7.5412         |
| 23       | 0.1703        | 10.3711        | 80.6726         | 5.8715            | 60.8933            | 0.0964        | 0.0164        | 7.7786         |
| 24       | 0.1577        | 10.5288        | 84.2997         | 6.3412            | 66.7648            | 0.0950        | 0.0150        | 8.0066         |
| 25       | <b>0.1460</b> | <b>10.6748</b> | <b>87.8041</b>  | <b>6.8485</b>     | <b>73.1059</b>     | <b>0.0937</b> | <b>0.0137</b> | <b>8.2254</b>  |
| 30       | 0.0994        | 11.2578        | 103.4558        | 10.0627           | 113.2832           | 0.0888        | 0.0088        | 9.1897         |
| 40       | 0.0460        | 11.9246        | 126.0422        | 21.7245           | 259.0565           | 0.0839        | 0.0039        | 10.5699        |
| 50       | 0.0213        | 12.2335        | 139.5928        | 46.9016           | 573.7702           | 0.0817        | 0.0017        | 11.4107        |
| 60       | 0.0099        | 12.3766        | 147.3000        | 101.2571          | 1,253.2133         | 0.0808        | 0.0008        | 11.9015        |
| 100      | <b>0.0005</b> | <b>12.4943</b> | <b>155.6107</b> | <b>2,199.7613</b> | <b>27,484.5157</b> | <b>0.0800</b> |               | <b>12.4545</b> |

**Factor Table -  $i = 10.00\%$**

| <i>n</i> | <i>P/F</i>    | <i>P/A</i>    | <i>P/G</i>     | <i>F/P</i>         | <i>F/A</i>          | <i>A/P</i>    | <i>A/F</i>    | <i>A/G</i>    |
|----------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1        | 0.9091        | 0.9091        | 0.0000         | 1.1000             | 1.0000              | 1.1000        | 1.0000        | 0.0000        |
| 2        | 0.8264        | 1.7355        | 0.8264         | 1.2100             | 2.1000              | 0.5762        | 0.4762        | 0.4762        |
| 3        | 0.7513        | 2.4869        | 2.3291         | 1.3310             | 3.3100              | 0.4021        | 0.3021        | 0.9366        |
| 4        | 0.6830        | 3.1699        | 4.3781         | 1.4641             | 4.6410              | 0.3155        | 0.2155        | 1.3812        |
| 5        | <b>0.6209</b> | <b>3.7908</b> | <b>6.8618</b>  | <b>1.6105</b>      | <b>6.1051</b>       | <b>0.2638</b> | <b>0.1638</b> | <b>1.8101</b> |
| 6        | 0.5645        | 4.3553        | 9.6842         | 1.7716             | 7.7156              | 0.2296        | 0.1296        | 2.2236        |
| 7        | 0.5132        | 4.8684        | 12.7631        | 1.9487             | 9.4872              | 0.2054        | 0.1054        | 2.6216        |
| 8        | 0.4665        | 5.3349        | 16.0287        | 2.1436             | 11.4359             | 0.1874        | 0.0874        | 3.0045        |
| 9        | 0.4241        | 5.7590        | 19.4215        | 2.3579             | 13.5735             | 0.1736        | 0.0736        | 3.3724        |
| 10       | <b>0.3855</b> | <b>6.1446</b> | <b>22.8913</b> | <b>2.5937</b>      | <b>15.9374</b>      | <b>0.1627</b> | <b>0.0627</b> | <b>3.7255</b> |
| 11       | 0.3505        | 6.4951        | 26.3962        | 2.8531             | 18.5312             | 0.1540        | 0.0540        | 4.0641        |
| 12       | 0.3186        | 6.8137        | 29.9012        | 3.1384             | 21.3843             | 0.1468        | 0.0468        | 4.3884        |
| 13       | 0.2897        | 7.1034        | 33.3772        | 3.4523             | 24.5227             | 0.1408        | 0.0408        | 4.6988        |
| 14       | 0.2633        | 7.3667        | 36.8005        | 3.7975             | 27.9750             | 0.1357        | 0.0357        | 4.9955        |
| 15       | <b>0.2394</b> | <b>7.6061</b> | <b>40.1520</b> | <b>4.1772</b>      | <b>31.7725</b>      | <b>0.1315</b> | <b>0.0315</b> | <b>5.2789</b> |
| 16       | 0.2176        | 7.8237        | 43.4164        | 4.5950             | 35.9497             | 0.1278        | 0.0278        | 5.5493        |
| 17       | 0.1978        | 8.0216        | 46.5819        | 5.0545             | 40.5447             | 0.1247        | 0.0247        | 5.8071        |
| 18       | 0.1799        | 8.2014        | 49.6395        | 5.5599             | 45.5992             | 0.1219        | 0.0219        | 6.0526        |
| 19       | 0.1635        | 8.3649        | 52.5827        | 6.1159             | 51.1591             | 0.1195        | 0.0195        | 6.2861        |
| 20       | <b>0.1486</b> | <b>8.5136</b> | <b>55.4069</b> | <b>6.7275</b>      | <b>57.2750</b>      | <b>0.1175</b> | <b>0.0175</b> | <b>6.5081</b> |
| 21       | 0.1351        | 8.6487        | 58.1095        | 7.4002             | 64.0025             | 0.1156        | 0.0156        | 6.7189        |
| 22       | 0.1228        | 8.7715        | 60.6893        | 8.1403             | 71.4027             | 0.1140        | 0.0140        | 6.9189        |
| 23       | 0.1117        | 8.8832        | 63.1462        | 8.9543             | 79.5430             | 0.1126        | 0.0126        | 7.1085        |
| 24       | 0.1015        | 8.9847        | 65.4813        | 9.8497             | 88.4973             | 0.1113        | 0.0113        | 7.2881        |
| 25       | <b>0.0923</b> | <b>9.0770</b> | <b>67.6964</b> | <b>10.8347</b>     | <b>98.3471</b>      | <b>0.1102</b> | <b>0.0102</b> | <b>7.4580</b> |
| 30       | 0.0573        | 9.4269        | 77.0766        | 17.4494            | 164.4940            | 0.1061        | 0.0061        | 8.1762        |
| 40       | 0.0221        | 9.7791        | 88.9525        | 45.2593            | 442.5926            | 0.1023        | 0.0023        | 9.0962        |
| 50       | 0.0085        | 9.9148        | 94.8889        | 117.3909           | 1,163.9085          | 0.1009        | 0.0009        | 9.5704        |
| 60       | 0.0033        | 9.9672        | 97.7010        | 304.4816           | 3,034.8164          | 0.1003        | 0.0003        | 9.8023        |
| 100      | <b>0.0001</b> | <b>9.9993</b> | <b>99.9202</b> | <b>13,780.6123</b> | <b>137,796.1234</b> | <b>0.1000</b> |               | <b>9.9927</b> |

**Interest Rate Tables**  
**Factor Table -  $i = 12.00\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$         | $P/G$          | $F/P$              | $F/A$               | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$         |
|-----|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1   | 0.8929        | 0.8929        | 0.0000         | 1.1200             | 1.0000              | 1.1200        | 1.0000        | 0.0000        |
| 2   | 0.7972        | 1.6901        | 0.7972         | 1.2544             | 2.1200              | 0.5917        | 0.4717        | 0.4717        |
| 3   | 0.7118        | 2.4018        | 2.2208         | 1.4049             | 3.3744              | 0.4163        | 0.2963        | 0.9246        |
| 4   | 0.6355        | 3.0373        | 4.1273         | 1.5735             | 4.7793              | 0.3292        | 0.2092        | 1.3589        |
| 5   | <b>0.5674</b> | <b>3.6048</b> | <b>6.3970</b>  | <b>1.7623</b>      | <b>6.3528</b>       | <b>0.2774</b> | <b>0.1574</b> | <b>1.7746</b> |
| 6   | 0.5066        | 4.1114        | 8.9302         | 1.9738             | 8.1152              | 0.2432        | 0.1232        | 2.1720        |
| 7   | 0.4523        | 4.5638        | 11.6443        | 2.2107             | 10.0890             | 0.2191        | 0.0991        | 2.5515        |
| 8   | 0.4039        | 4.9676        | 14.4714        | 2.4760             | 12.2997             | 0.2013        | 0.0813        | 2.9131        |
| 9   | 0.3606        | 5.3282        | 17.3563        | 2.7731             | 14.7757             | 0.1877        | 0.0677        | 3.2574        |
| 10  | <b>0.3220</b> | <b>5.6502</b> | <b>20.2541</b> | <b>3.1058</b>      | <b>17.5487</b>      | <b>0.1770</b> | <b>0.0570</b> | <b>3.5847</b> |
| 11  | 0.2875        | 5.9377        | 23.1288        | 3.4785             | 20.6546             | 0.1684        | 0.0484        | 3.8953        |
| 12  | 0.2567        | 6.1944        | 25.9523        | 3.8960             | 24.1331             | 0.1614        | 0.0414        | 4.1897        |
| 13  | 0.2292        | 6.4235        | 28.7024        | 4.3635             | 28.0291             | 0.1557        | 0.0357        | 4.4683        |
| 14  | 0.2046        | 6.6282        | 31.3624        | 4.8871             | 32.3926             | 0.1509        | 0.0309        | 4.7317        |
| 15  | <b>0.1827</b> | <b>6.8109</b> | <b>33.9202</b> | <b>5.4736</b>      | <b>37.2797</b>      | <b>0.1468</b> | <b>0.0268</b> | <b>4.9803</b> |
| 16  | 0.1631        | 6.9740        | 36.3670        | 6.1304             | 42.7533             | 0.1434        | 0.0234        | 5.2147        |
| 17  | 0.1456        | 7.1196        | 38.6973        | 6.8660             | 48.8837             | 0.1405        | 0.0205        | 5.4353        |
| 18  | 0.1300        | 7.2497        | 40.9080        | 7.6900             | 55.7497             | 0.1379        | 0.0179        | 5.6427        |
| 19  | 0.1161        | 7.3658        | 42.9979        | 8.6128             | 63.4397             | 0.1358        | 0.0158        | 5.8375        |
| 20  | <b>0.1037</b> | <b>7.4694</b> | <b>44.9676</b> | <b>9.6463</b>      | <b>72.0524</b>      | <b>0.1339</b> | <b>0.0139</b> | <b>6.0202</b> |
| 21  | 0.0926        | 7.5620        | 46.8188        | 10.8038            | 81.6987             | 0.1322        | 0.0122        | 6.1913        |
| 22  | 0.0826        | 7.6446        | 48.5543        | 12.1003            | 92.5026             | 0.1308        | 0.0108        | 6.3514        |
| 23  | 0.0738        | 7.7184        | 50.1776        | 13.5523            | 104.6029            | 0.1296        | 0.0096        | 6.5010        |
| 24  | 0.0659        | 7.7843        | 51.6929        | 15.1786            | 118.1552            | 0.1285        | 0.0085        | 6.6406        |
| 25  | <b>0.0588</b> | <b>7.8431</b> | <b>53.1046</b> | <b>17.0001</b>     | <b>133.3339</b>     | <b>0.1275</b> | <b>0.0075</b> | <b>6.7708</b> |
| 30  | 0.0334        | 8.0552        | 58.7821        | 29.9599            | 241.3327            | 0.1241        | 0.0041        | 7.2974        |
| 40  | 0.0107        | 8.2438        | 65.1159        | 93.0510            | 767.0914            | 0.1213        | 0.0013        | 7.8988        |
| 50  | 0.0035        | 8.3045        | 67.7624        | 289.0022           | 2,400.0182          | 0.1204        | 0.0004        | 8.1597        |
| 60  | 0.0011        | 8.3240        | 68.8100        | 897.5969           | 7,471.6411          | 0.1201        | 0.0001        | 8.2664        |
| 100 |               | <b>8.3332</b> | <b>69.4336</b> | <b>83,522.2657</b> | <b>696,010.5477</b> | <b>0.1200</b> |               | <b>8.3321</b> |

**Factor Table -  $i = 18.00\%$**

| $n$ | $P/F$         | $P/A$         | $P/G$          | $F/P$                | $F/A$                | $A/P$         | $A/F$         | $A/G$         |
|-----|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1   | 0.8475        | 0.8475        | 0.0000         | 1.1800               | 1.0000               | 1.1800        | 1.0000        | 0.0000        |
| 2   | 0.7182        | 1.5656        | 0.7182         | 1.3924               | 2.1800               | 0.6387        | 0.4587        | 0.4587        |
| 3   | 0.6086        | 2.1743        | 1.9354         | 1.6430               | 3.5724               | 0.4599        | 0.2799        | 0.8902        |
| 4   | 0.5158        | 2.6901        | 3.4828         | 1.9388               | 5.2154               | 0.3717        | 0.1917        | 1.2947        |
| 5   | <b>0.4371</b> | <b>3.1272</b> | <b>5.2312</b>  | <b>2.2878</b>        | <b>7.1542</b>        | <b>0.3198</b> | <b>0.1398</b> | <b>1.6728</b> |
| 6   | 0.3704        | 3.4976        | 7.0834         | 2.6996               | 9.4423               | 0.2859        | 0.1059        | 2.0252        |
| 7   | 0.3139        | 3.8115        | 8.9670         | 3.1855               | 12.1415              | 0.2624        | 0.0824        | 2.3526        |
| 8   | 0.2660        | 4.0776        | 10.8292        | 3.7589               | 15.3270              | 0.2452        | 0.0652        | 2.6558        |
| 9   | 0.2255        | 4.3030        | 12.6329        | 4.4355               | 19.0859              | 0.2324        | 0.0524        | 2.9358        |
| 10  | <b>0.1911</b> | <b>4.4941</b> | <b>14.3525</b> | <b>5.2338</b>        | <b>23.5213</b>       | <b>0.2225</b> | <b>0.0425</b> | <b>3.1936</b> |
| 11  | 0.1619        | 4.6560        | 15.9716        | 6.1759               | 28.7551              | 0.2148        | 0.0348        | 3.4303        |
| 12  | 0.1372        | 4.7932        | 17.4811        | 7.2876               | 34.9311              | 0.2086        | 0.0286        | 3.6470        |
| 13  | 0.1163        | 4.9095        | 18.8765        | 8.5994               | 42.2187              | 0.2037        | 0.0237        | 3.8449        |
| 14  | 0.0985        | 5.0081        | 20.1576        | 10.1472              | 50.8180              | 0.1997        | 0.0197        | 4.0250        |
| 15  | <b>0.0835</b> | <b>5.0916</b> | <b>21.3269</b> | <b>11.9737</b>       | <b>60.9653</b>       | <b>0.1964</b> | <b>0.0164</b> | <b>4.1887</b> |
| 16  | 0.0708        | 5.1624        | 22.3885        | 14.1290              | 72.9390              | 0.1937        | 0.0137        | 4.3369        |
| 17  | 0.0600        | 5.2223        | 23.3482        | 16.6722              | 87.0680              | 0.1915        | 0.0115        | 4.4708        |
| 18  | 0.0508        | 5.2732        | 24.2123        | 19.6731              | 103.7403             | 0.1896        | 0.0096        | 4.5916        |
| 19  | 0.0431        | 5.3162        | 24.9877        | 23.2144              | 123.4135             | 0.1881        | 0.0081        | 4.7003        |
| 20  | <b>0.0365</b> | <b>5.3527</b> | <b>25.6813</b> | <b>27.3930</b>       | <b>146.6280</b>      | <b>0.1868</b> | <b>0.0068</b> | <b>4.7978</b> |
| 21  | 0.0309        | 5.3837        | 26.3000        | 32.3238              | 174.0210             | 0.1857        | 0.0057        | 4.8851        |
| 22  | 0.0262        | 5.4099        | 26.8506        | 38.1421              | 206.3448             | 0.1848        | 0.0048        | 4.9632        |
| 23  | 0.0222        | 5.4321        | 27.3394        | 45.0076              | 244.4868             | 0.1841        | 0.0041        | 5.0329        |
| 24  | 0.0188        | 5.4509        | 27.7725        | 53.1090              | 289.4944             | 0.1835        | 0.0035        | 5.0950        |
| 25  | <b>0.0159</b> | <b>5.4669</b> | <b>28.1555</b> | <b>62.6686</b>       | <b>342.6035</b>      | <b>0.1829</b> | <b>0.0029</b> | <b>5.1502</b> |
| 30  | 0.0070        | 5.5168        | 29.4864        | 143.3706             | 790.9480             | 0.1813        | 0.0013        | 5.3448        |
| 40  | 0.0013        | 5.5482        | 30.5269        | 750.3783             | 4,163.2130           | 0.1802        | 0.0002        | 5.5022        |
| 50  | 0.0003        | 5.5541        | 30.7856        | 3,927.3569           | 21,813.0937          | 0.1800        |               | 5.5428        |
| 60  | 0.0001        | 5.5553        | 30.8465        | 20,555.1400          | 114,189.6665         | 0.1800        |               | 5.5526        |
| 100 |               | <b>5.5556</b> | <b>30.8642</b> | <b>15,424,131.91</b> | <b>85,689,616.17</b> | <b>0.1800</b> |               | <b>5.5555</b> |

# Chemical Engineering

## Chemical Reaction Engineering

### Nomenclature

A chemical reaction may be expressed by the general equation



The rate of reaction of any component is defined as the moles of that component formed per unit time per unit volume.

$$-r_A = -\frac{1}{V} \frac{dN_A}{dt} \quad (\text{negative because A disappears})$$

$$-r_A = \frac{-dC_A}{dt} \quad \text{if } V \text{ is constant}$$

The rate of reaction is frequently expressed by

$$-r_A = k_f(C_A, C_B, \dots)$$

where

$k$  = reaction rate constant

$C_I$  = concentration of component I

In the conversion of A, the fractional conversion  $X_A$  is defined as the moles of A reacted per mole of A fed.

$$X_A = (C_{A0} - C_A)/C_{A0} \quad \text{if } V \text{ is constant}$$

The Arrhenius equation gives the dependence of  $k$  on temperature

$$k = Ae^{-E_a/RT}$$

where

$A$  = pre-exponential or frequency factor

$E_a$  = activation energy (J/mol, cal/mol)

$T$  = temperature (K)

$\bar{R}$  = gas law constant = 8.314 J/(mol•K)

For values of rate constant ( $k_i$ ) at two temperatures ( $T_i$ ),

$$E_a = \frac{RT_1T_2}{(T_1 - T_2)} \ln \left( \frac{k_1}{k_2} \right)$$

### Reaction Order

$$\text{If } -r_A = kC_A^x C_B^y$$

the reaction is  $x$  order with respect to reactant A and  $y$  order with respect to reactant B. The overall order is

$$n = x + y$$

### Batch Reactor, Constant Volume

For a well-mixed, constant-volume batch reactor

$$-r_A = -dC_A/dt$$

$$t = C_{A0} \int_0^{X_A} dX_A / (-r_A)$$

### Zero-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$\begin{aligned} -r_A &= kC_A^0 = k(1) \\ -dC_A/dt &= k & \text{or} \\ C_A &= C_{A0} - kt \\ dX_A/dt &= k/C_{A0} & \text{or} \\ C_{A0}X_A &= kt \end{aligned}$$

### First-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$\begin{aligned} -r_A &= kC_A \\ -dC_A/dt &= kC_A & \text{or} \\ \ln(C_A/C_{A0}) &= -kt \\ dX_A/dt &= k(1 - X_A) & \text{or} \\ \ln(1 - X_A) &= -kt \end{aligned}$$

### Second-Order Irreversible Reaction

$$\begin{aligned} -r_A &= kC_A^2 \\ -dC_A/dt &= kC_A^2 & \text{or} \\ 1/C_A - 1/C_{A0} &= kt \\ dX_A/dt &= kC_{A0}(1 - X_A)^2 & \text{or} \\ X_A/[C_{A0}(1 - X_A)] &= kt \end{aligned}$$

### First-Order Reversible Reactions

$$\begin{aligned} A &\xrightleftharpoons[k_2]{k_1} R \\ -r_A &= -\frac{dC_A}{dt} = k_1 C_A - k_2 C_R \\ K_c &= k_1/k_2 = \hat{C}_R/\hat{C}_A \\ M &= C_{R0}/C_{A0} \\ \frac{dX_A}{dt} &= \frac{k_1(M+1)}{M+\hat{X}_A}(\hat{X}_A - X_A) \\ -\ln\left(1 - \frac{X_A}{\hat{X}_A}\right) &= -\ln \frac{C_A - \hat{C}_A}{C_{A0} - \hat{C}_A} \\ &= \frac{(M+1)}{(M+\hat{X}_A)} k_1 t \\ \hat{X}_A &\text{ is the equilibrium conversion.} \end{aligned}$$

### Reactions of Shifting Order

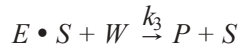
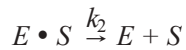
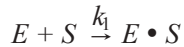
$$-r_A = \frac{k_1 C_A}{1 + k_2 C_A}$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{C_{A_0}}{C_A}\right) + k_2(C_{A_0} - C_A) = k_1 t$$

$$\frac{\ln(C_{A_0}/C_A)}{C_{A_0} - C_A} = -k_2 + \frac{k_1 t}{C_{A_0} - C_A}$$

This form of the rate equation is used for elementary enzyme-catalyzed reactions and for elementary surfaced-catalyzed reactions.

### Elementary enzyme-catalyzed reactions



where  $E$ ,  $S$ ,  $W$ ,  $P$  are the enzyme, substrate, water, product ( $P$  can be multiple products) are often described by the Michaelis-Menten equation:

$$-r_s = \frac{V_{\max} C_s}{K_m + C_s}$$

where

$V_{\max}$  = maximum rate of reaction for a given enzyme concentration =  $k_3 C_w C_{E_t}$  (moles/volume time)

$K_m$  = Michaelis constant (moles/volume)

$$C_{E_t} = C_E + C_{ES}$$

For batch reactor calculations, the time to reach a given conversion

$$t = \frac{K_m}{V_{\max}} \ln \frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{C_{s0} x}{V_{\max}}$$

### Batch Reactor, Variable Volume

If the volume of the reacting mass varies with the conversion (such as a variable-volume batch reactor) according to

$$V = V_{X_A=0} (1 + \varepsilon_A X_A)$$

(i.e., at constant pressure)

where

$$\varepsilon_A = \frac{V_{X_A=1} - V_{X_A=0}}{V_{X_A=0}} = \frac{\Delta V}{V_{X_A=0}}$$

then at any time

$$C_A = C_{A0} \left[ \frac{1 - X_A}{1 + \varepsilon_A X_A} \right]$$

and

$$t = -C_{A0} \int_0^{X_A} dX_A / [(1 + \varepsilon_A X_A)(-r_A)]$$

For a first-order irreversible reaction,

$$kt = -\ln(1 - X_A) = -\ln\left(1 - \frac{\Delta V}{\varepsilon_A V_{X_A=0}}\right)$$

## Flow Reactors, Steady State

Space-time  $\tau$  is defined as the reactor volume divided by the inlet volumetric feed rate. Space-velocity  $SV$  is the reciprocal of space-time,  $SV = 1/\tau$ .

### Plug-Flow Reactor (PFR)

$$\tau = \frac{C_{A0}V_{PFR}}{F_{A0}} = C_{A0} \int_0^{X_A} \frac{dX_A}{(-r_A)}$$

where  $F_{A0}$  = moles of  $A$  fed per unit time

### Continuous-Stirred Tank Reactor (CSTR)

For a constant-volume, well-mixed CSTR

$$\frac{\tau}{C_{A0}} = \frac{V_{CSTR}}{F_{A0}} = \frac{X_A}{-r_A}$$

where  $-r_A$  is evaluated at exit stream conditions.

### Continuous-Stirred Tank Reactors in Series

With a first-order reaction  $A \rightarrow R$ , no change in volume.

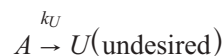
$$\begin{aligned} \tau_{N\text{-reactors}} &= N\tau_{\text{individual}} \\ &= \frac{N}{k} \left[ \left( \frac{C_{A0}}{C_{AN}} \right)^{1/N} - 1 \right] \end{aligned}$$

where

$N$  = number of CSTRs (equal volume) in series

$C_{AN}$  = concentration of  $A$  leaving the  $N$ th CSTR

## Two Irreversible Reactions in Parallel



$$-r_A = -dc_A/dt = k_D C_A^x + k_U C_A^y$$

$$r_D = dc_D/dt = k_D C_A^x$$

$$r_U = dc_U/dt = k_U C_A^y$$

$Y_D$  = instantaneous fractional yield of  $D$

$$= dC_D/(-dC_A)$$

$\bar{Y}_D$  = overall fractional yield of  $D$

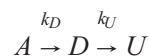
$$= N_{Df}/(N_{A0} - N_{Af})$$

where  $N_{Af}$  and  $N_{Df}$  are measured at the outlet of the flow reactor.

$S_{DU}$  = overall selectivity to  $D$

$$= N_{Df}/N_{Uf}$$

## Two First-Order Irreversible Reactions in Series



$$r_A = -dC_A/dt = k_D C_A$$

$$r_D = dC_D/dt = k_D C_A - k_U C_D$$

$$r_U = dC_U/dt = k_U C_D$$

Yield and selectivity definitions are identical to those for two irreversible reactions in parallel. The optimal yield of D in a PFR is

$$\frac{C_{D,\max}}{C_{A_0}} = \left( \frac{k_D}{k_U} \right)^{k_U/(k_U - k_D)}$$

at time

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{1}{k_{\log \text{ mean}}} = \frac{\ln(k_U/k_D)}{(k_U - k_D)}$$

The optimal yield of D in a CSTR is

$$\frac{C_{D,\max}}{C_{A_0}} = \frac{1}{\left[ (k_U/k_D)^{1/2} + 1 \right]^2}$$

at time

$$\tau_{\max} = 1/\sqrt{k_D k_U}$$

## Mass Transfer

### Diffusion

#### Fick's First Law

$$J = -D \frac{dC}{dx}$$

where

$J$  = diffusion flux  $\left( \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{area} \cdot \text{time}} \right)$

$D$  = diffusion coefficient  $\left( \frac{\text{area}}{\text{time}} \right)$  at a specific temperature

$C$  = concentration  $\left( \frac{\text{mass}}{\text{volume}} \right)$

$x$  = distance (length)

#### Fick's Second Law

$$\frac{\partial C}{\partial t} = D \frac{\partial^2 C}{\partial x^2}$$

Solving Fick's Second Law with the boundary conditions equal to:

For  $t = 0$ ,  $C = C_0$  at  $0 \leq x \leq \infty$

For  $t > 0$ ,  $C = C_S$  (surface concentration) at  $x = 0$

$C = C_0$  at  $x = \infty$

$$\frac{C_x - C_0}{C_S - C_0} = 1 - \operatorname{erf} \left( \frac{x}{2\sqrt{Dt}} \right)$$

where  $\operatorname{erf}$  = error function

Table of Error Function Values

| $z$   | $\text{erf}(z)$ | $z$  | $\text{erf}(z)$ | $z$ | $\text{erf}(z)$ |
|-------|-----------------|------|-----------------|-----|-----------------|
| 0     | 0               | 0.55 | 0.5633          | 1.3 | 0.9340          |
| 0.025 | 0.0282          | 0.60 | 0.6039          | 1.4 | 0.9523          |
| 0.05  | 0.0564          | 0.65 | 0.6420          | 1.5 | 0.9661          |
| 0.10  | 0.1125          | 0.70 | 0.6778          | 1.6 | 0.9763          |
| 0.15  | 0.1680          | 0.75 | 0.7112          | 1.7 | 0.9838          |
| 0.20  | 0.2227          | 0.80 | 0.7421          | 1.8 | 0.9891          |
| 0.25  | 0.2763          | 0.85 | 0.7707          | 1.9 | 0.9928          |
| 0.30  | 0.3286          | 0.90 | 0.7970          | 2.0 | 0.9953          |
| 0.35  | 0.3794          | 0.95 | 0.8209          | 2.2 | 0.9981          |
| 0.40  | 0.4284          | 1.0  | 0.8427          | 2.4 | 0.9993          |
| 0.45  | 0.4755          | 1.1  | 0.8802          | 2.6 | 0.9998          |
| 0.50  | 0.5205          | 1.2  | 0.9103          | 2.8 | 0.9999          |

Callister, William D. Jr., *Materials Science and Engineering: An Introduction*, 7th ed., New York: John Wiley & Sons, 2007.

### Molecular Diffusion

$$\text{Gas: } N_A = \frac{P_A}{P}(N_A + N_B) - \frac{D_m}{RT} \frac{\partial p_A}{\partial z}$$

$$\text{Liquid: } N_A = x_A(N_A + N_B) - CD_m \frac{\partial x_A}{\partial z}$$

where

$N_i$  = molar flux of component  $i$

$P$  = pressure

$p_i$  = partial pressure of component  $i$

$D_m$  = mass diffusivity

$R$  = universal gas constant

$T$  = temperature

$z$  = length

### Unidirectional Diffusion of a Gas A Through a Second Stagnant Gas B ( $N_b = 0$ )

$$N_A = \frac{D_m P}{RT(p_B)_{lm}} \times \frac{(p_{A2} - p_{A1})}{z_2 - z_1}$$

in which  $(p_B)_{lm}$  is the log mean of  $p_{B2}$  and  $p_{B1}$

$$(p_{BM})_{lm} = \frac{p_{B2} - p_{B1}}{\ln\left(\frac{p_{B2}}{p_{B1}}\right)}$$

where

$N_i$  = diffusive flux [mole/(time  $\times$  area)] of component  $i$  through area  $A$ , in  $z$  direction

$D_m$  = mass diffusivity

$p_I$  = partial pressure of species  $I$

$C$  = concentration (mole/volume)

$(z_2 - z_1)$  = diffusion flow path length

### Equimolar Counter-Diffusion (Gases)

$$(N_B = -N_A)$$

$$N_A = D_m / (RT) \times [(p_{A1} - p_{A2}) / (\Delta z)]$$

$$N_A = D_m (C_{A1} - C_{A2}) / \Delta z$$

### **Convection**

#### Two-Film Theory (for Equimolar Counter-Diffusion)

$$\begin{aligned} N_A &= k'_G (p_{AG} - p_{Ai}) \\ &= k'_L (C_{Ai} - C_{AL}) \\ &= K'_G (p_{AG} - p_A^*) \\ &= K'_L (C_A^* - C_{AL}) \end{aligned}$$

where

$N_A$  = molar flux of component A

$k'_G$  = gas phase mass-transfer coefficient

$k'_L$  = liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient

$K'_G$  = overall gas phase mass-transfer coefficient

$K'_L$  = overall liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient

$p_{AG}$  = partial pressure in component A in the bulk gas phase

$p_{Ai}$  = partial pressure at component A at the gas-liquid interface

$C_{Ai}$  = concentration (mole/volume) of component A in the liquid phase at the gas-liquid interface

$C_{AL}$  = concentration of component A in the bulk liquid phase

$p_A^*$  = partial pressure of component A in equilibrium with  $C_{AL}$

$C_A^*$  = concentration of component A in equilibrium with the bulk gas vapor composition of A

#### Overall Coefficients

$$1/K'_G = 1/k'_G + H/k'_L$$

$$1/K'_L = 1/Hk'_G + 1/k'_L$$

$H$  = Henry's Law constant where  $p_A^* = H C_{AL}$  and  $C_A^* = p_{AG}/H$

#### Dimensionless Group Equation (Sherwood)

For the turbulent flow inside a tube the Sherwood number

$$Sh = \left( \frac{k_m D}{D_m} \right) = 0.023 \left( \frac{DV\rho}{\mu} \right)^{0.8} \left( \frac{\mu}{\rho D_m} \right)^{1/3}$$

where

$D$  = inside diameter

$D_m$  = diffusion coefficient

$V$  = average velocity in the tube

$\rho$  = fluid density

$\mu$  = fluid viscosity

$k_m$  = mass-transfer coefficient

## Distillation

Definitions:

- $\alpha$  = relative volatility
- $B$  = molar bottoms-product rate
- $D$  = molar overhead-product rate
- $F$  = molar feed rate
- $L$  = molar liquid downflow rate
- $R_D$  = ratio of reflux to overhead product
- $V$  = molar vapor upflow rate
- $W$  = total moles in still pot
- $x$  = mole fraction of the more volatile component in the liquid phase
- $y$  = mole fraction of the more volatile component in the vapor phase

Subscripts:

- $B$  = bottoms product
- $D$  = overhead product
- $F$  = feed
- $m$  = any plate in stripping section of column
- $m+1$  = plate below plate  $m$
- $n$  = any plate in rectifying section of column
- $n+1$  = plate below plate  $n$
- $o$  = original charge in still pot

### Flash (or equilibrium) Distillation

Component material balance:

$$Fz_F = yV + xL$$

Overall material balance:

$$F = V + L$$

### Differential (Simple or Rayleigh) Distillation

$$\ln\left(\frac{W}{W_o}\right) = \int_{x_o}^x \frac{dx}{y-x}$$

When the relative volatility  $\alpha$  is constant,

$$y = \alpha x / [1 + (\alpha - 1)x]$$

can be substituted to give

$$\ln\left(\frac{W}{W_o}\right) = \frac{1}{(\alpha - 1)} \ln\left[\frac{x(1 - x_o)}{x_o(1 - x)}\right] + \ln\left[\frac{1 - x_o}{1 - x}\right]$$

For binary system following Raoult's Law

$$\alpha = (y/x)_a / (y/x)_b = p_a / p_b$$

where

$p_i$  = partial pressure of component  $i$ .

### Continuous Distillation (Binary System)

Constant molal overflow is assumed.

Equilibrium stages numbered from top.

### Overall Material Balances

Total Material:

$$F = D + B$$

Component A:

$$Fx_F = Dx_D + Bx_B$$

### Operating Lines

#### Rectifying section

Total Material:

$$V_{n+1} = L_n + D$$

Component A:

$$V_{n+1}y_{n+1} = L_nx_n + Dx_D$$

$$y_{n+1} = [L_n/(L_n + D)]x_n + Dx_D/(L_n + D)$$

#### Stripping section

Total Material:

$$L_m = V_{m+1} + B$$

Component A:

$$L_mx_m = V_{m+1}y_{m+1} + Bx_B$$

$$y_{m+1} = [L_m/(L_m - B)]x_m - Bx_B/(L_m - B)$$

#### Reflux ratio

Ratio of reflux to overhead product

$$R_D = L_R/D = (V_R - D)/D$$

Minimum reflux ratio is defined as that value which results in an infinite number of contact stages.

For a binary system, the equation of the operating line is

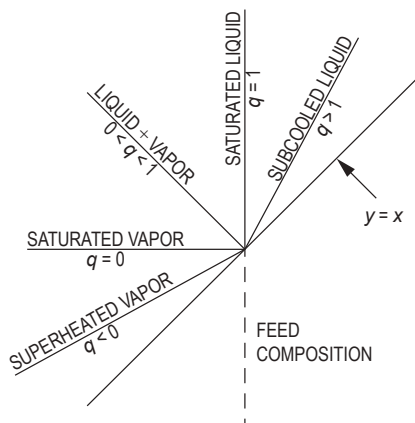
$$y = \frac{R_D}{R_D + 1}x + \frac{x_D}{R_D + 1}$$

#### Feed condition line

$$\text{slope} = q/(q - 1)$$

where

$$q = \frac{\text{heat to convert one mol of feed to saturated vapor}}{\text{molar heat of vaporization}}$$



q-LINE SLOPES

Murphree plate efficiency

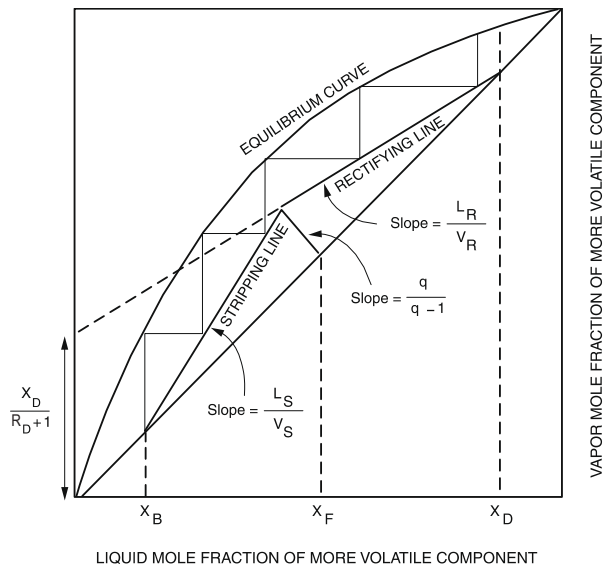
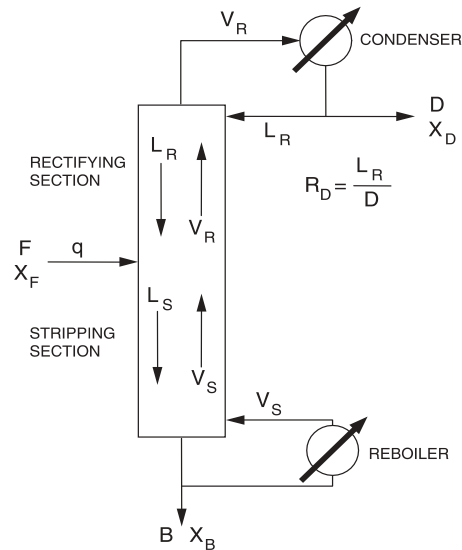
$$E_{ME} = (y_n - y_{n+1}) / (y_n^* - y_{n+1})$$

where

$y_n$  = concentration of vapor above equilibrium stage  $n$

$y_{n+1}$  = concentration of vapor entering from equilibrium stage below  $n$

$y_n^*$  = concentration of vapor in equilibrium with liquid leaving equilibrium stage  $n$



**Vapor-Liquid Equilibrium (VLE) Diagram**  
[McCabe – Thiele]

## Absorption (Packed Columns)

### Continuous Contact Columns

$$Z = NTU_G \cdot HTU_G = NTU_L \cdot HTU_L = N_{EQ} \cdot HETP$$

where

$Z$  = column height

$NTU_G$  = number of transfer units (gas phase)

$NTU_L$  = number of transfer units (liquid phase)

$N_{EQ}$  = number of equilibrium stages

$HTU_G$  = height of transfer unit (gas phase)

$HTU_L$  = height of transfer unit (liquid phase)

$HETP$  = height equivalent to theoretical plate (stage)

$$HTU_G = \frac{G}{K'_G a} \quad HTU_L = \frac{L}{K'_L a}$$

where

$G$  = gas phase mass velocity (mass or moles/flow area • time)

$L$  = liquid phase mass velocity (mass or moles/flow area • time)

$K'_G$  = overall gas phase mass-transfer coefficient (mass or moles/mass-transfer area • time)

$K'_L$  = overall liquid phase mass-transfer coefficient (mass or moles/mass-transfer area • time)

$a$  = mass-transfer area/volume of column ( $\text{length}^{-1}$ )

$$NTU_G = \int_{y_1}^{y_2} \frac{dy}{(y - y^*)} \quad NTU_L = \int_{x_1}^{x_2} \frac{dx}{(x^* - x)}$$

where

$y$  = gas phase solute mole fraction

$x$  = liquid phase solute mole fraction

$y^* = K \cdot x$

where

$K$  = equilibrium constant

$x^* = y/K$

where

$K$  = equilibrium constant

$y_2, x_2$  = mole fractions at the lean end of column

$y_1, x_1$  = mole fractions at the rich end of column

For dilute solutions (constant  $G/L$  and constant  $K$  value for entire column):

$$NTU_G = \frac{y_1 - y_2}{(y - y^*)_{LM}}$$

$$(y - y^*)_{LM} = \frac{(y_1 - y_1^*) - (y_2 - y_2^*)}{\ln \left( \frac{y_1 - y_1^*}{y_2 - y_2^*} \right)}$$

For a chemically reacting system—absorbed solute reacts in the liquid phase—the preceding relation simplifies to:

$$NTU_G = \ln \left( \frac{y_1}{y_2} \right)$$

## Transport Phenomena—Momentum, Heat, and Mass-Transfer Analogy

For the equations which apply to *turbulent flow in circular tubes*, the following definitions apply:

$$\text{Nu} = \text{Nusselt Number} = \frac{hD}{k}$$

$$\text{Pr} = \text{Prandtl Number} = \frac{c_p \mu}{k}$$

$$\text{Re} = \text{Reynolds Number} = \frac{DV\rho}{\mu}$$

$$\text{Sc} = \text{Schmidt Number} = \frac{\mu}{\rho D_m}$$

$$\text{Sh} = \text{Sherwood Number} = \frac{k_m D}{D_m}$$

$$\text{St} = \text{Stanton Number} = \frac{h}{c_p G}$$

$$c_m = \text{concentration (mol/m}^3\text{)}$$

$$c_p = \text{heat capacity of fluid [J/(kg}\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$D = \text{tube inside diameter (m)}$$

$$D_m = \text{diffusion coefficient (m}^2\text{/s)}$$

$$(dc_m/dy)_w = \text{concentration gradient at the wall (mol/m}^4\text{)}$$

$$(dT/dy)_w = \text{temperature gradient at the wall (K/m)}$$

$$(dv/dy)_w = \text{velocity gradient at the wall (s}^{-1}\text{)}$$

$$f = \text{Moody, Darcy, or Stanton friction factor}$$

$$G = \text{mass velocity [kg/(m}^2\cdot\text{s)]}$$

$$h = \text{heat-transfer coefficient at the wall [W/(m}^2\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$k = \text{thermal conductivity of fluid [W/(m}\cdot\text{K)]}$$

$$k_m = \text{mass-transfer coefficient (m/s)}$$

$$L = \text{length over which pressure drop occurs (m)}$$

$$(N/A)_w = \text{inward mass-transfer flux at the wall [mol/(m}^2\cdot\text{s)]}$$

$$(\dot{Q}/A)_w = \text{inward heat-transfer flux at the wall (W/m}^2\text{)}$$

$$y = \text{distance measured from inner wall toward centerline (m)}$$

$$\Delta c_m = \text{concentration difference between wall and bulk fluid (mol/m}^3\text{)}$$

$$\Delta T = \text{temperature difference between wall and bulk fluid (K)}$$

$$\mu = \text{absolute dynamic viscosity (N}\cdot\text{s/m}^2\text{)}$$

$$\tau_w = \text{shear stress (momentum flux) at the tube wall (N/m}^2\text{)}$$

Definitions already introduced also apply.

## Rate of Transfer as a Function of Gradients at the Wall

### *Momentum Transfer*

$$\tau_w = -\mu \left( \frac{dv}{dy} \right)_w = -\frac{f\rho V^2}{8} = \left( \frac{D}{4} \right) \left( -\frac{\Delta p}{L} \right)_f$$

### *Heat Transfer*

$$\left( \frac{\dot{Q}}{A} \right)_w = -k \left( \frac{dT}{dy} \right)_w$$

### *Mass Transfer in Dilute Solutions*

$$\left( \frac{N}{A} \right)_w = -D_m \left( \frac{dc_m}{dy} \right)_w$$

## Rate of Transfer in Terms of Coefficients

### *Momentum Transfer*

$$\tau_w = \frac{f\rho V^2}{8}$$

### *Heat Transfer*

$$\left( \frac{\dot{Q}}{A} \right)_w = h\Delta T$$

### *Mass Transfer*

$$\left( \frac{N}{A} \right)_w = k_m \Delta c_m$$

## Use of Friction Factor ( $f$ ) to Predict Heat-Transfer and Mass-Transfer Coefficients (Turbulent Flow)

### *Heat Transfer*

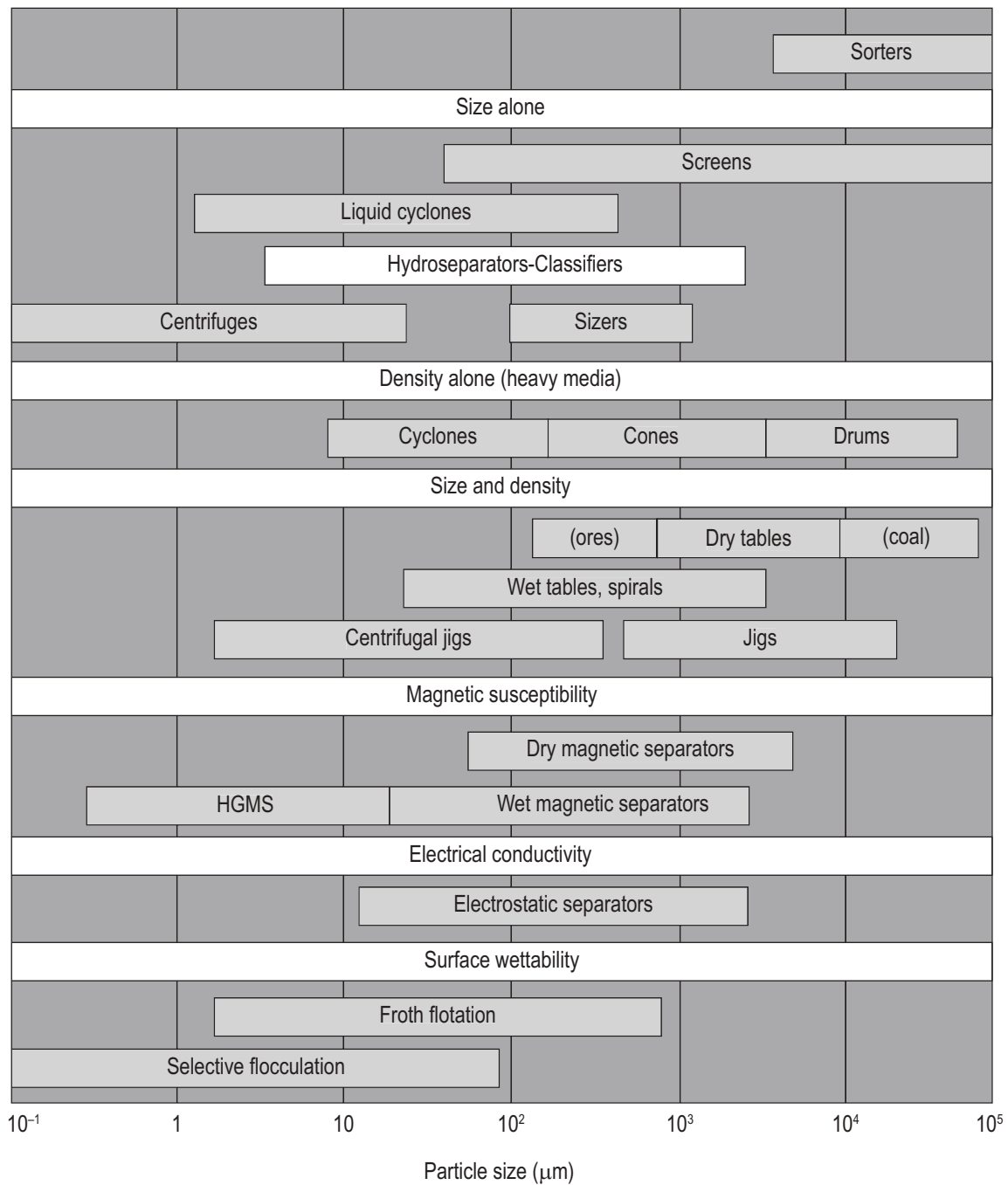
$$j_H = \left( \frac{\text{Nu}}{\text{RePr}} \right) \text{Pr}^{2/3} = \frac{f}{8}$$

### *Mass Transfer*

$$j_M = \left( \frac{\text{Sh}}{\text{ReSc}} \right) \text{Sc}^{2/3} = \frac{f}{8}$$

## Solids Handling

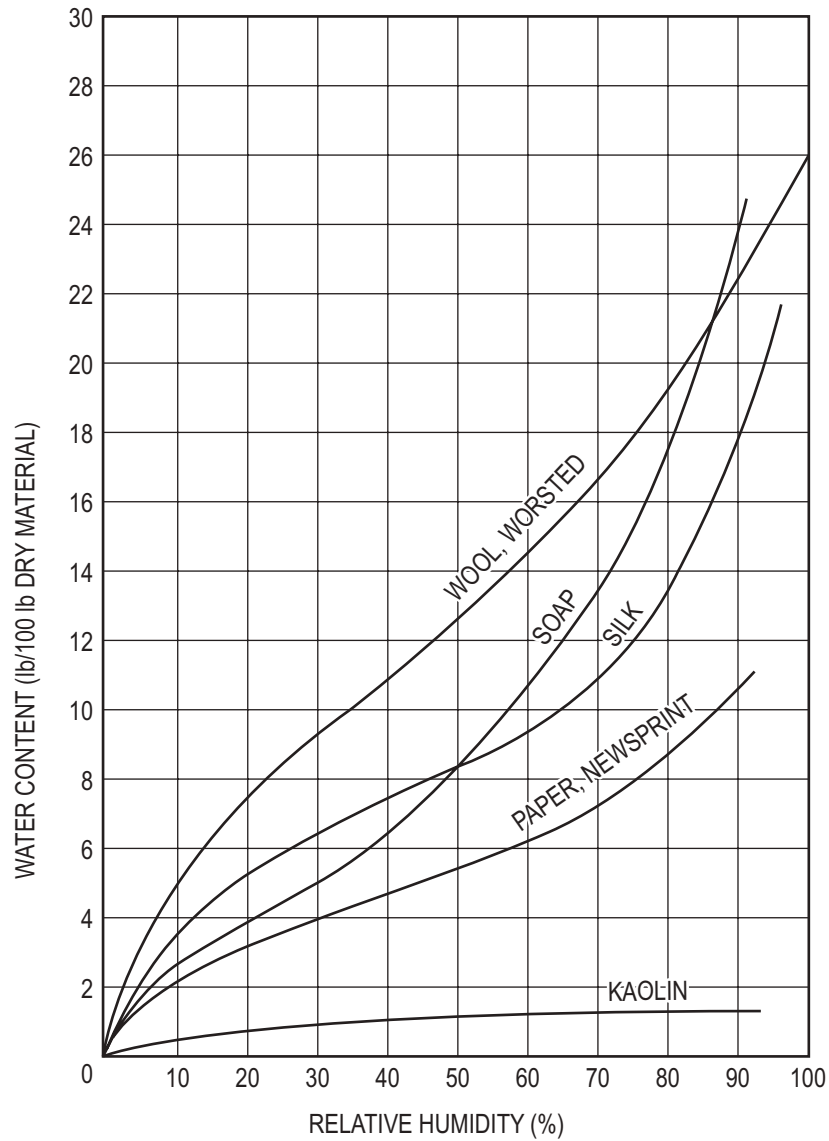
**Particle Size Range Guide for the Application of Various Solid-Solid Operations**



HGMS = High Gradient Magnetic Separation

Source: Perry, Robert H., and Don Green, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 7 ed, New York, McGraw-Hill, 1997, pp. 19-3, fig. 19.1.

Wet Solids: Equilibrium Moisture Curves at 25°C for Five Materials



Source: McCabe, Warren L.; Julian C. Smith; and Peter Harriott, *Unit Operations of Chemical Engineering*, 6 ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001, p. 780.

Sieve Conversion Table

| <b>Mesh to Micron<br/>Conversion Table</b> |         |               | INCHES  | MILLIMETERS |
|--------------------------------------------|---------|---------------|---------|-------------|
|                                            |         |               | 1 1/8   | 28.757      |
|                                            |         |               | 1       | 25.400      |
|                                            |         |               | 7/8     | 22.225      |
|                                            |         |               | 3/4     | 19.050      |
| MICRONS                                    | US MESH | TYLER<br>MESH | 5/8     | 15.875      |
|                                            |         |               | 1/2     | 12.700      |
|                                            |         |               | 7/18    | 11.113      |
|                                            |         |               | 3/8     | 9.525       |
| 8000                                       |         | 2 1/2         | 5/16    | 8.000       |
| 6730                                       |         | 3             | 0.265   | 6.730       |
| 6350                                       |         |               | 1/4     | 6.350       |
| 5813                                       |         | 3 1/2         | 0.221   | 5.813       |
| 4783                                       |         |               | 3/16    | 4.783       |
| 4899                                       | 4       | 4             | 0.185   | 4.899       |
| 4000                                       | 5       | 5             | 0.157   | 4.000       |
| 3327                                       | 6       | 6             | 0.131   | 3.327       |
| 3175                                       |         |               | 1/8     | 3.175       |
| 2794                                       | 7       | 7             | 0.110   | 2.794       |
| 2362                                       | 8       | 8             | 0.093   | 2.362       |
| 2000                                       | 10      | 9             | 0.079   | 2.000       |
| 1851                                       | 12      | 10            | 0.085   | 1.851       |
| 1588                                       |         |               | 1/18    | 1.588       |
| 1397                                       | 14      | 12            | 0.055   | 1.397       |
| 1168                                       | 16      | 14            | 0.048   | 1.168       |
| 1000                                       | 18      | 16            | 0.039   | 1.00        |
| 841                                        | 20      | 20            | 0.0331  | 0.841       |
| 707                                        | 25      | 24            | 0.0278  | 0.707       |
| 595                                        | 30      | 28            | 0.0234  | 0.595       |
| 500                                        | 35      | 32            | 0.0197  | 0.500       |
| 420                                        | 40      | 35            | 0.0165  | 0.420       |
| 354                                        | 45      | 42            | 0.0139  | 0.354       |
| 297                                        | 50      | 48            | 0.0117  | 0.297       |
| 250                                        | 60      | 60            | 0.0098  | 0.250       |
| 210                                        | 70      | 65            | 0.0083  | 0.210       |
| 177                                        | 80      | 80            | 0.0089  | 0.177       |
| 149                                        | 100     | 100           | 0.0058  | 0.149       |
| 125                                        | 120     | 115           | 0.0049  | 0.125       |
| 105                                        | 140     | 150           | 0.0041  | 0.105       |
| 88                                         | 170     | 170           | 0.0035  | 0.088       |
| 74                                         | 200     | 200           | 0.0029  | 0.074       |
| 63                                         | 230     | 250           | 0.0025  | 0.063       |
| 53                                         | 270     | 270           | 0.0021  | 0.053       |
| 44                                         | 325     | 325           | 0.0017  | 0.044       |
| 37                                         | 400     | 400           | 0.0014  | 0.037       |
| 32                                         | 450     | 450           | 0.00128 | 0.032       |
| 25                                         | 500     | 500           | 0.00098 | 0.025       |
| 20                                         | 635     | 635           | 0.00079 | 0.020       |

"+" before the sieve mesh indicates the particles are retained by the sieve;

"-" before the sieve mesh indicates the particles will pass through the sieve;

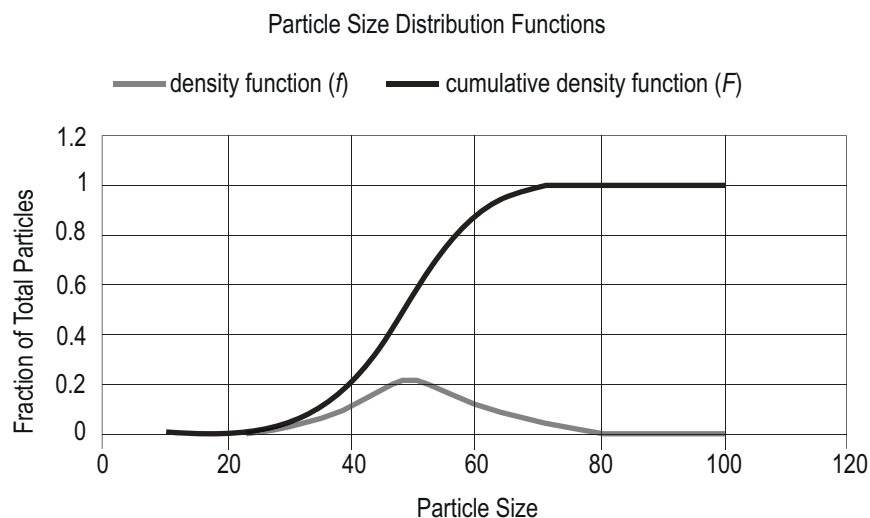
Typically 90% or more of the particles will lie within the indicated range

Source: Adapted by D. C. G. from presentation in Chemical Engineering and Mining Review, June 10, 1940.  
Original source: Ore Dressing Laboratory of University of Melbourne.

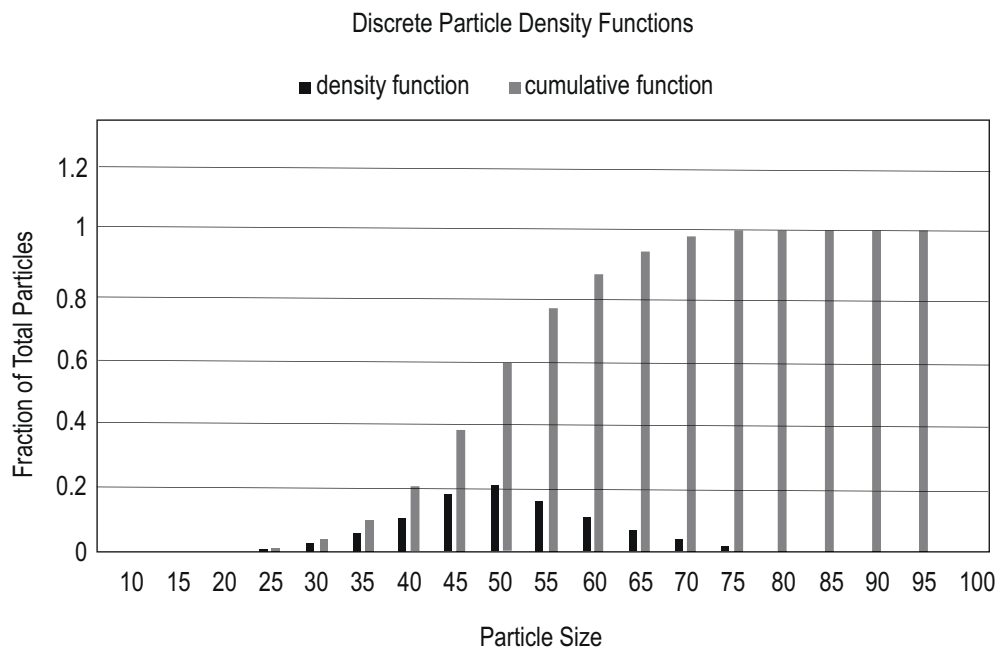
## Solids Processing

### Mean Particle Sizes Calculated from Particle Size Distributions (PSDs)

Representative particle density functions are shown in the figure below:



The density function describes the distribution of number of particles ( $f_N$ ) or volume of particles ( $f_V$ ) with respect to particle size. At each particle size the cumulative density function provides the fraction of the total particles in terms of number of particles ( $F_N$ ) and volume of particles ( $F_V$ ) that are smaller than that size. These density functions can be measured by a variety of means. These functions may also be presented in discrete form where the range of particle sizes is divided into a number ( $m$ ) of sub-ranges, with each sub-range having a mean size as shown in the following figure:



Mean Length (Number Length) Diameter ( $X_{ML}$ )

$$X_{ML} = \int_0^1 x dF_N = \sum_{i=1}^m x_i \Delta F_N = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\Delta F_v}{x_i^2}}{\sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\Delta F_v}{x_i^3}}$$

Sauter Mean (Surface-Mean) Diameter ( $X_{SM}$ )

$$X_{SM} = \frac{\int_0^1 x^3 dF_N}{\int_0^1 x^2 dF_N} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^m x^3 \Delta F_N}{\sum_{i=1}^m x^2 \Delta F_N} = \frac{1}{\int_0^1 \frac{dF_v}{x}} = \frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^m \frac{\Delta F_v}{x_i}}$$

Mean Volume Diameter ( $X_{MV}$ )

$$X_{MV} = \sqrt[3]{\int_0^1 x^3 dF_N} = \sqrt[3]{\sum_{i=1}^m x^3 \Delta F_N} = \sqrt[3]{\frac{1}{\sum_{i=1}^m x^3 \frac{\Delta F_v}{x_i}}}$$

$$f_N = \frac{dF_N}{dx} \quad \text{and} \quad f_v = \frac{dF_v}{dx}$$

where

- $f_N$  = density function, number of particles as a function of particle size  $x$
- $f_v$  = density function, mass of particles as function of particle size  $x$
- $F_N$  = cumulative density function, fraction (based on number) of particles smaller than size  $x$
- $F_v$  = cumulative density function, fraction (based on mass) of particles smaller than size  $x$
- $\Delta F_N$  = fraction of number of particles in a size sub range with mean size  $x_i$
- $\Delta F_v$  = fraction of particle mass in a size sub range with mean size  $x_i$
- $m$  = number of size sub ranges used for a discrete particle size distribution
- $x$  = particle size
- $x_i$  = mean size for a sub range of particle size

### Crushing and Grinding Equipment Selection

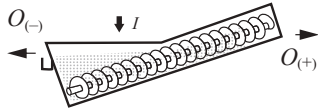
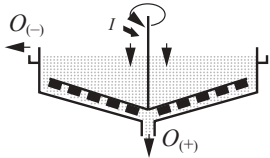
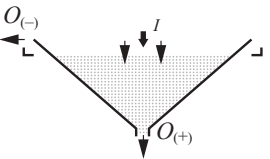
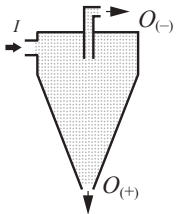
| Size-Reduction Operation         | Hardness | Range of feeds (in.) |        | Range of Products (in.) |         | Reduction Ratio | Types of Equipment |
|----------------------------------|----------|----------------------|--------|-------------------------|---------|-----------------|--------------------|
|                                  |          | Max.                 | Min.   | Max.                    | Min.    |                 |                    |
| Crushing<br>Primary<br>Secondary | Hard     | 60                   | 12     | 20                      | 4       | 3 to 1          | A to B             |
|                                  | Hard     | 5                    | 1      | 1                       | 0.2     | 5 to 1          | A to E             |
|                                  | Soft     | 60                   | 4      | 2                       | 0.4     | 10 to 1         | C to G             |
| Grinding<br>Coarse<br>Fine       | Hard     | 0.185                | 0.033  | 0.023                   | 0.003   | 10 to 1         | D to I             |
|                                  | Hard     | 0.046                | 0.0058 | 0.003                   | 0.00039 | 15 to 1         | H to K             |
| Disintegration<br>Coarse<br>Fine | Soft     | 0.5                  | 0.065  | 0.023                   | 0.003   | 20 to 1         | F, I               |
|                                  | Soft     | 0.156                | 0.0195 | 0.003                   | 0.00039 | 50 to 1         | I to K             |

Types of Size-Reduction Equipment

- A. Jaw crushers
- B. Gyratory crushers
- C. Heavy-duty impact mills
- D. Roll crushers
- E. Dry pans and chaser mills
- F. Shredders
- G. Rotary cutters and dicers
- H. Media mills
- I. Medium peripheral-speed mills
- J. High peripheral-speed mills
- K. Fluid-energy superfine mills

Source: Perry, Robert H., and Don Green, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 7 ed, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997.

## Classifiers: Wet and Dry Operations

| Classifier                                                                                                                           | (Type*) | Description                                                                                                           | Size (m)<br>Width<br>Diameter<br>Max.<br>Length | Limiting Size<br>(max. feed size)                                                 | Feed Rate<br>(ton/hr)     | Vol. % Solids<br>Feed Overflow<br>Underflow | Power<br>(kW)                                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| SLOPING TANK CLASSIFIER<br>(SPIRAL, RAKE, DRAG)<br> | (M-S)   | Classification occurs near deep end of sloping, elongated pool. Spiral, rake or drag mechanism lifts sands from pool. | 0.3 to 7.0<br>2.4 (spiral)<br>14                | 1 mm to 45 $\mu\text{m}$<br>(25 mm)                                               | 5 to 850                  | Not critical<br>2 to 20<br>45 to 65         | 0.4 to 110                                   |
| CYLINDRICAL TANK CLASSIFIER<br>                     | (M-S)   | Effectively an overloaded thickener. Rotating rake feeds sands to central underflow.                                  | —<br>3 to 45<br>—                               | 150 $\mu\text{m}$ to 45 $\mu\text{m}$<br>(6 mm)                                   | 5 to 625                  | Not critical<br>0.4 to 8<br>15 to 25        | 0.75 to 11                                   |
| CONE CLASSIFIER<br>                                | (N-S)   | Similar to cylindrical tank classifier, except tank is conical to eliminate need for rake.                            | —<br>0.6 to 3.7<br>—                            | 600 $\mu\text{m}$ to 45 $\mu\text{m}$<br>(6 mm)                                   | 2 to 100                  | Not critical<br>5 to 30<br>35 to 60         | None                                         |
| HYDROCYCLONE<br>                                  | (N-S)   | (Pumped) pressure feed generates centrifugal action to give high separating forces, and discharge.                    | —<br>0.01 to 1.2<br>—                           | 300 $\mu\text{m}$ to 5 $\mu\text{m}$<br>(1400 $\mu\text{m}$ to 45 $\mu\text{m}$ ) | to 20 m <sup>3</sup> /min | 4 to 35<br>2 to 15<br>30 to 50              | 35 to 400 kN/m <sup>2</sup><br>pressure head |

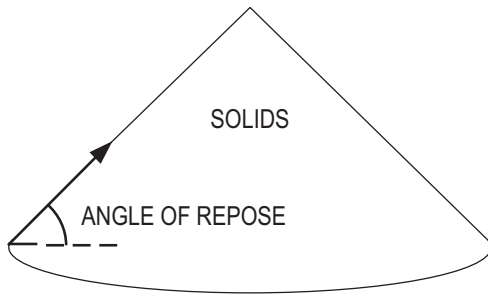
\*M: Mechanical transport of sands to discharge

N: Nonmechanical (gravity or pressure) discharge of underflow

S : Sedimentation classifier

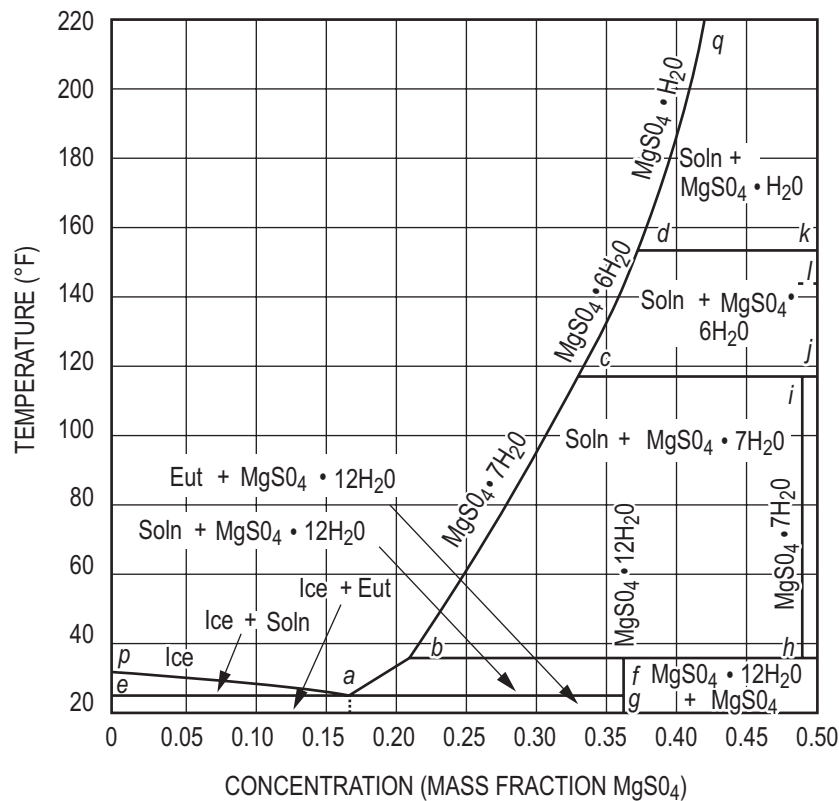
Source: Perry, Robert H., and Don Green, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 7 ed, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1997.

## Angle of Repose



## Crystallization Processes

Hydrate Formation Phase Diagram for Magnesium Sulfate-Water System



Source: McCabe, Warren L.; Julian C. Smith; and Peter Harriott, *Unit Operations of Chemical Engineering*, 6 ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2001.

## Cost Estimation

### Cost Indexes

Cost indexes are used to update historical cost data to the present. If a purchase cost is available for an item of equipment in year  $M$ , the equivalent current cost would be found by:

$$\text{Current \$} = (\text{Cost in year } M) \left( \frac{\text{Current Index}}{\text{Index in year } M} \right)$$

### Capital Cost Estimation

| Type of plant          | Lang factors             |                          |
|------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
|                        | Fixed capital investment | Total capital investment |
| Solid processing       | 4.0                      | 4.7                      |
| Solid-fluid processing | 4.3                      | 5.0                      |
| Fluid processing       | 5.0                      | 6.0                      |

Source: From Green, Don W., and Robert H. Perry, *Perry's Chemical Engineers' Handbook*, 8th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2008.  
Adapted from M. S. Peters, K. D. Timmerhaus, and R. West, *Plant Design and Economics for Chemical Engineers*, 5th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

| Component                                                                                                          | Range   |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <i>Direct costs</i>                                                                                                |         |
| Purchased equipment-delivered (including fabricated equipment and process machinery such as pumps and compressors) | 100     |
| Purchased-equipment installation                                                                                   | 39–47   |
| Instrumentation and controls (installed)                                                                           | 9–18    |
| Piping (installed)                                                                                                 | 16–66   |
| Electrical (installed)                                                                                             | 10–11   |
| Buildings (including services)                                                                                     | 18–29   |
| Yard improvements                                                                                                  | 10–13   |
| Service facilities (installed)                                                                                     | 40–70   |
| Land (if purchase is required)                                                                                     | 6       |
| Total direct plant cost                                                                                            | 264–346 |
| <i>Indirect costs</i>                                                                                              |         |
| Engineering and supervision                                                                                        | 32–33   |
| Construction expenses                                                                                              | 34–41   |
| Total direct and indirect plant costs                                                                              | 336–420 |
| Contractor's fee (about 5% of direct and indirect plant costs)                                                     | 17–21   |
| Contingency (about 10% of direct and indirect plant costs)                                                         | 36–42   |
| Fixed-capital investment                                                                                           | 387–483 |
| Working capital (about 15% of total capital investment)                                                            | 68–86   |
| Total capital investment                                                                                           | 455–569 |

### Scaling of Equipment Costs

The cost of Unit A at one capacity related to the cost of a similar Unit B with X times the capacity of Unit A is approximately  $X^n$  times the cost of Unit B.

$$\text{Cost of Unit A} = \text{Cost of Unit B} \left( \frac{\text{Capacity of Unit A}}{\text{Capacity of Unit B}} \right)^n$$

Typical Exponents (n) for Equipment Cost vs. Capacity

| Equipment                                                   | Size range                                                      | Exponent |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Dryer, drum, single vacuum                                  | 10 to 10 <sup>2</sup> ft <sup>2</sup>                           | 0.76     |
| Dryer, drum, single atmospheric                             | 10 to 10 <sup>2</sup> ft <sup>2</sup>                           | 0.40     |
| Fan, centrifugal                                            | 10 <sup>3</sup> to 10 <sup>4</sup> ft <sup>3</sup> /min         | 0.44     |
| Fan, centrifugal                                            | 2 × 10 <sup>4</sup> to 7 × 10 <sup>4</sup> ft <sup>3</sup> /min | 1.17     |
| Heat exchanger, shell and tube, floating head, c.s.         | 100 to 400 ft <sup>2</sup>                                      | 0.60     |
| Heat exchanger, shell and tube, fixed sheet, c.s.           | 100 to 400 ft <sup>2</sup>                                      | 0.44     |
| Motor, squirrel cage, induction, 440 volts, explosion proof | 5 to 20 hp                                                      | 0.69     |
| Motor, squirrel cage, induction, 440 volts, explosion proof | 20 to 200 hp                                                    | 0.99     |
| Tray, bubble cup, c.s.                                      | 3- to 10-ft diameter                                            | 1.20     |
| Tray, sieve, c.s.                                           | 3- to 10-ft diameter                                            | 0.86     |

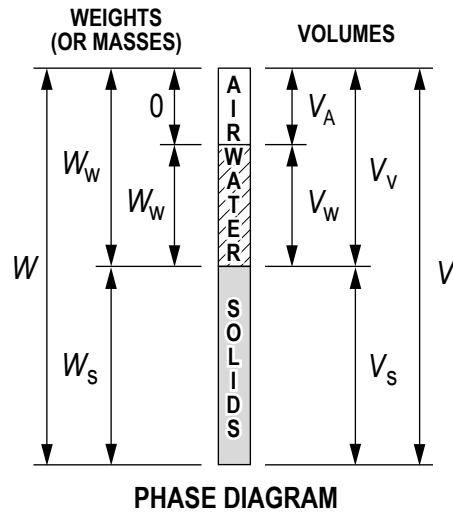
#### Classification of Cost Estimates

| Class of Estimate                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | Level of Project Definition (as % of Complete Definition) | Typical Purpose of Estimate       | Methodology (Estimating Method) | Expected Accuracy Range (+/- Range Relative to Best Index of 1) | Preparation Effort (Relative to Lowest Cost Index of 1) |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| Class 5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 0% to 2%                                                  | Screening or Feasibility          | Stochastic or Judgement         | 4 to 20                                                         | 1                                                       |
| Class 4                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 1% to 15%                                                 | Concept Study or Feasibility      | Primarily Stochastic            | 3 to 12                                                         | 2 to 4                                                  |
| Class 3                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 10% to 40%                                                | Budget, Authorization, or Control | Mixed but Primarily Stochastic  | 2 to 6                                                          | 3 to 10                                                 |
| Class 2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 30% to 70%                                                | Control or Bid/Tender             | Primarily Deterministic         | 1 to 3                                                          | 5 to 20                                                 |
| Class 1                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | 50% to 100%                                               | Check Estimate or Bid/Tender      | Deterministic                   | 1                                                               | 10 to 100                                               |
| Source: (From AACE Recommended Practice No. 17R-97 [4], AACE International, 209 Prairie Ave., Morgantown, WV; <a href="http://www.aacei.org">http://www.aacei.org</a> )<br>Whiting, Wallace B., Turton, Richard, Shaeiwitz, Joseph A., Bhattacharyya, Debansu, and Bailie, Richard C., <i>Analysis, Synthesis and Design of Chemical Processes</i> , 4th ed., Prentice Hall, 2012, p. 165. |                                                           |                                   |                                 |                                                                 |                                                         |

# Civil Engineering

## Geotechnical

### Phase Relationships



Volume of voids

$$V_v = V_a + V_w$$

Total unit weight

$$\gamma = \frac{W}{V}$$

Saturated unit weight

$$\gamma_{\text{sat}} = \frac{(G_s + e)\gamma_w}{1 + e}$$

$$\gamma_w = 62.4 \text{ lb/ft}^3 \text{ or } 9.81 \text{ kN/m}^3$$

Effective (submerged) unit weight

$$\gamma' = \gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_w$$

Unit weight of solids

$$\gamma_s = \frac{W_s}{V_s}$$

Dry unit weight

$$\gamma_D = \frac{W_s}{V}$$

Water content (%)

$$\omega = \frac{W_w}{W_s} \times 100$$

Specific gravity of soil solids

$$G_s = (W_s/V_s)/\gamma_w$$

Void ratio

$$e = \frac{V_v}{V_s}$$

Porosity

$$n = \frac{V_v}{V} = \frac{e}{1 + e}$$

Degree of saturation (%)

$$S = \frac{V_W}{V_V} \times 100$$

$$S = \frac{\omega G_s}{e}$$

Relative density

$$D_r = [(e_{\max} - e)/(e_{\max} - e_{\min})] \times 100$$

$$= [(\gamma_{D \text{ field}} - \gamma_{D \text{ min}})/(\gamma_{D \text{ max}} - \gamma_{D \text{ min}})][\gamma_{D \text{ max}}/\gamma_{D \text{ field}}] \times 100$$

Relative compaction (%)

$$RC = (\gamma_{D \text{ field}}/\gamma_{D \text{ max}}) \times 100$$

Plasticity index

$$PI = LL - PL$$

LL = liquid limit

PL = plastic limit

Coefficient of uniformity

$$C_U = D_{60}/D_{10}$$

Coefficient of concavity (or curvature)

$$C_C = (D_{30})^2/(D_{10} \times D_{60})$$

where

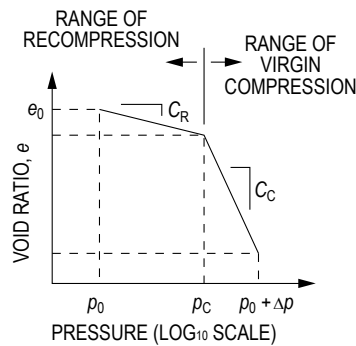
$D_{\#\#}$  = grain diameter (mm) corresponding to  $\#\%$  passing by weight

Factor of safety against seepage liquefaction

$$FS_s = i_c/i_e$$

$$i_c = (\gamma_{\text{sat}} - \gamma_w)/\gamma_w$$

$i_e$  = seepage exit gradient



SOIL CONSOLIDATION CURVE OVER CONSOLIDATED CLAY

where

$e_0$  = initial void ratio (prior to consolidation)

$\Delta e$  = change in void ratio

$p_0$  = initial effective consolidation stress  $\sigma'_0$

$p_c$  = past maximum consolidation stress  $\sigma'_c$

$\Delta p$  = induced change in consolidation stress at center of consolidating stratum

$$\Delta p = I q_s$$

where

$I$  = Stress influence value at center of consolidating stratum

$q_s$  = applied surface stress causing consolidation

If  $(p_o < p_c \text{ and } p_o + \Delta p < p_c)$ , then  $\Delta H = \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \left[ C_R \log \frac{p_o + \Delta p}{p_o} \right]$

If  $(p_o \geq p_c \text{ and } p_o + \Delta p \geq p_c)$ , then  $\Delta H = \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \left[ C_C \log \frac{p_o + \Delta p}{p_o} \right]$

If  $p_o < p_c < (p_o + \Delta p)$ , then  $\Delta H = \frac{H_o}{1 + e_o} \left[ C_R \log \frac{p_c}{p_o} + C_C \log \frac{p_o + \Delta p}{p_c} \right]$

$\Delta H$  = change in thickness of soil layer

Compression index

In virgin compression range:  $C_C = \Delta e / \Delta \log p$

By correlation to liquid limit:  $C_C = 0.009 (LL - 10)$

Recompression index

In recompression range:  $C_R = \Delta e / \Delta \log p$

By correlation to compression index,  $C_C$ :  $C_R = C_C / 6$

Ultimate consolidation settlement in soil layer

$$S_{ULT} = \epsilon_v H_s$$

where  $H_s$  = thickness of soil layer

$$\epsilon_v = \Delta e_{TOT} / (1 + e_o)$$

where  $\Delta e_{TOT}$  = total change in void ratio due to recompression and virgin compression

Approximate settlement (at time  $t = t_C$ )

$$S_T = U_{AV} S_{ULT}$$

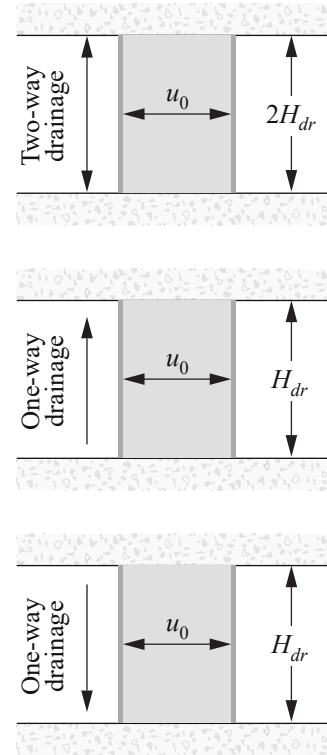
where

$U_{AV}$  = average degree of consolidation

$t_C$  = elapsed time since application of consolidation load

Variation of time factor with degree of consolidation\*

| $U$ (%) | $T_v$   | $U$ (%) | $T_v$  | $U$ (%) | $T_v$    |
|---------|---------|---------|--------|---------|----------|
| 0       | 0       | 34      | 0.0907 | 68      | 0.377    |
| 1       | 0.00008 | 35      | 0.0962 | 69      | 0.390    |
| 2       | 0.0003  | 36      | 0.102  | 70      | 0.403    |
| 3       | 0.00071 | 37      | 0.107  | 71      | 0.417    |
| 4       | 0.00126 | 38      | 0.113  | 72      | 0.431    |
| 5       | 0.00196 | 39      | 0.119  | 73      | 0.446    |
| 6       | 0.00283 | 40      | 0.126  | 74      | 0.461    |
| 7       | 0.00385 | 41      | 0.132  | 75      | 0.477    |
| 8       | 0.00502 | 42      | 0.138  | 76      | 0.493    |
| 9       | 0.00636 | 43      | 0.145  | 77      | 0.511    |
| 10      | 0.00785 | 44      | 0.152  | 78      | 0.529    |
| 11      | 0.0095  | 45      | 0.159  | 79      | 0.547    |
| 12      | 0.0113  | 46      | 0.166  | 80      | 0.567    |
| 13      | 0.0133  | 47      | 0.173  | 81      | 0.588    |
| 14      | 0.0154  | 48      | 0.181  | 82      | 0.610    |
| 15      | 0.0177  | 49      | 0.188  | 83      | 0.633    |
| 16      | 0.0201  | 50      | 0.197  | 84      | 0.658    |
| 17      | 0.0227  | 51      | 0.204  | 85      | 0.684    |
| 18      | 0.0254  | 52      | 0.212  | 86      | 0.712    |
| 19      | 0.0283  | 53      | 0.221  | 87      | 0.742    |
| 20      | 0.0314  | 54      | 0.230  | 88      | 0.774    |
| 21      | 0.0346  | 55      | 0.239  | 89      | 0.809    |
| 22      | 0.0380  | 56      | 0.248  | 90      | 0.848    |
| 23      | 0.0415  | 57      | 0.257  | 91      | 0.891    |
| 24      | 0.0452  | 58      | 0.267  | 92      | 0.938    |
| 25      | 0.0491  | 59      | 0.276  | 93      | 0.993    |
| 26      | 0.0531  | 60      | 0.286  | 94      | 1.055    |
| 27      | 0.0572  | 61      | 0.297  | 95      | 1.129    |
| 28      | 0.0615  | 62      | 0.307  | 96      | 1.219    |
| 29      | 0.0660  | 63      | 0.318  | 97      | 1.336    |
| 30      | 0.0707  | 64      | 0.329  | 98      | 1.500    |
| 31      | 0.0754  | 65      | 0.340  | 99      | 1.781    |
| 32      | 0.0803  | 66      | 0.352  | 100     | $\infty$ |
| 33      | 0.0855  | 67      | 0.364  |         |          |

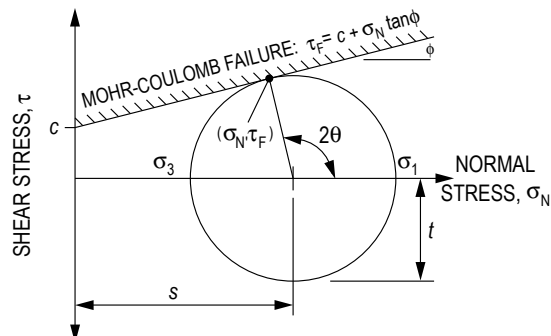


Different types of drainage with  $u_0$  constant

\* $u_0$  constant with depth.

where time factor is  $T_v = \frac{c_v t}{H_{dr}^2}$

Source: Das, Braja M., *Fundamentals of Geotechnical Engineering*, Cengage Learning (formerly Brooks/Cole), 2000.



where

$s$  = mean normal stress

$t$  = maximum shear stress

$\sigma_1$  = major principal stress

$\sigma_3$  = minor principal stress

$\theta$  = orientation angle between plane of existing normal stress and plane of major principal stress

Total normal stress

$$\sigma_N = P/A$$

where

$P$  = normal force

$A$  = cross-sectional area over which force acts

Effective stress

$$\sigma' = \sigma - u$$

$$u = h_u \gamma_w$$

where  $h_u$  = uplift or pressure head

Shear stress

$$\tau = T/A$$

where  $T$  = shearing force

Shear stress at failure

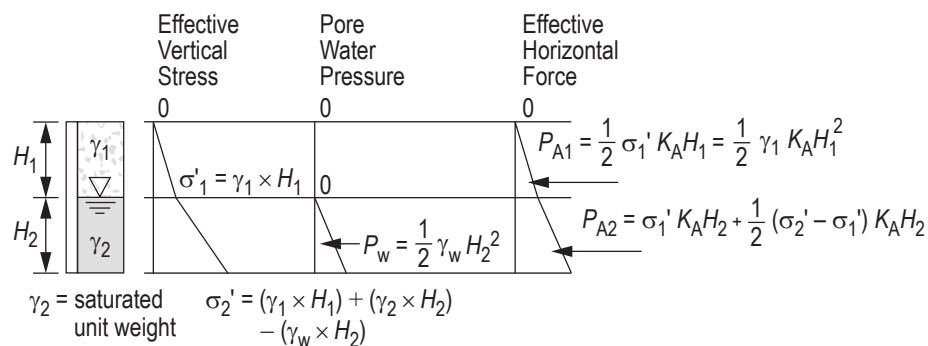
$$\tau_F = c + \sigma_N \tan \phi$$

where

$c$  = cohesion

$\phi$  = angle of internal friction

## Horizontal Stress Profiles and Forces



Active forces on retaining wall per unit wall length (as shown):

$$K_A = \text{Rankine active earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, } c = 0, \text{ level backfill)} = \tan^2 (45^\circ - \phi/2)$$

Passive forces on retaining wall per unit wall length (similar to the active forces shown):

$$K_p = \text{Rankine passive earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, } c = 0, \text{ level backfill)} = \tan^2 (45^\circ + \phi/2)$$

At-rest forces on wall per unit length of wall

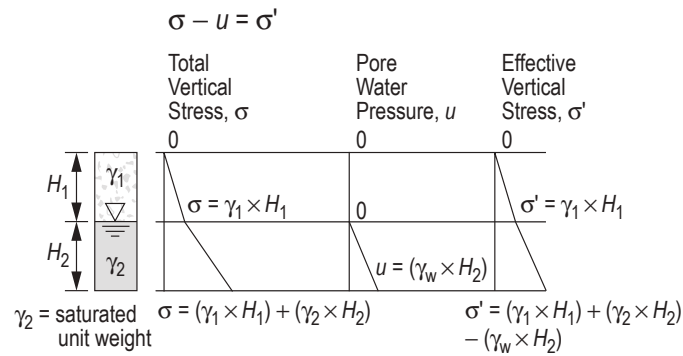
$$K_0 = \text{at-rest earth pressure coefficient (smooth wall, } c = 0, \text{ level backfill)}$$

$$K_0 \approx 1 - \sin \phi \text{ for normally consolidated soil}$$

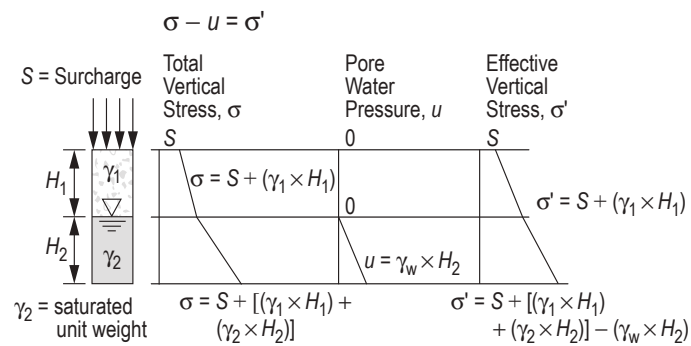
$$K_0 = (1 - \sin \phi) \text{OCR}^{\sin \phi} \text{ for overconsolidated soil where}$$

OCR = overconsolidation ratio

## Vertical Stress Profiles



## Vertical Stress Profiles with Surcharge



## Ultimate Bearing Capacity

$$q_{ULT} = cN_c + \gamma' D_f N_q + \frac{1}{2} \gamma' B N_\gamma$$

where

$N_c$  = bearing capacity factor for cohesion

$N_q$  = bearing capacity factor for depth

$N_\gamma$  = bearing capacity factor for unit weight

$D_f$  = depth of footing below ground surface

$B$  = width of strip footing

## Retaining Walls

$$FS_{\text{overturning}} = \frac{\sum M_R}{M_O}$$

$$FS_{\text{sliding}} = \frac{\sum F_R}{\sum F_D}$$

$$FS_{\text{sliding}} = \frac{(\sum V) \tan \delta + BC_a + P_p}{P_a \cos \alpha}$$

$$FS_{\text{bearing capacity}} = \frac{q_{ULT}}{q_{toe}}$$

$$q_{toe} = \frac{\sum V}{B} \left( 1 + \frac{6e}{B} \right)$$

$$e = \frac{B}{2} - \left( \frac{\sum M_R - M_O}{\sum V} \right)$$

where

$e$  = eccentricity

$B$  = width of base

$M_R$  = resisting moment

$M_O$  = overturning moment

$F_R$  = resisting forces

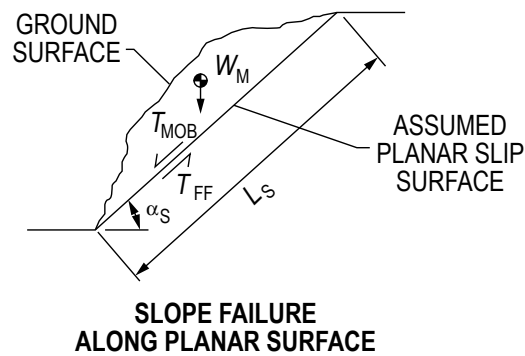
$F_D$  = driving forces

$V$  = vertical forces

$\delta = k_1 \phi_2$

$C_a = k_2 C_2$

$k_1$  and  $k_2$  are given, ranging from 1/2 to 2/3



where

$FS$  = factor of safety against slope instability

$$= T_{FF}/T_{MOB}$$

$T_{FF}$  = available shearing resistance along slip surface

$$= cL_S + W_M \cos \alpha_S \tan \phi$$

where

$c$  = cohesion

$\phi$  = angle of internal friction

$T_{MOB}$  = mobilized shear force along slip surface

$$= W_M \sin \alpha_S$$

$L_S$  = length of assumed planar slip surface

$W_M$  = weight of soil above slip surface

$\alpha_S$  = angle of assumed slip surface with respect to horizontal

**AASHTO Soil Classification**

| GENERAL CLASSIFICATION                                                                             | GRANULAR MATERIALS ( 35% OR LESS PASSING 0.075 SIEVE ) |                   |                   |                                 |                |                |                | SILT-CLAY MATERIALS<br>( MORE THAN 35% PASSING 0.075 SIEVE ) |                |                |                |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| GROUP CLASSIFICATION                                                                               | A-1                                                    |                   | A-3               | A-2                             |                |                |                | A-4                                                          | A-5            | A-6            | A-7-5<br>A-7-6 |
|                                                                                                    | A-1-a                                                  | A-1-b             |                   | A-2-4                           | A-2-5          | A-2-6          | A-2-7          |                                                              |                |                |                |
| SIEVE ANALYSIS, PERCENT PASSING:<br>2.00 mm (No. 10)<br>0.425 mm (No. 40)<br>0.075 mm (No. 200)    | ≤ 50<br>≤ 30<br>≤ 15                                   | —<br>≤ 50<br>≤ 25 | —<br>≥ 51<br>≤ 10 | —<br>—<br>≤ 35                  | —<br>—<br>≤ 35 | —<br>—<br>≤ 35 | —<br>—<br>≤ 35 | —<br>—<br>≥ 36                                               | —<br>—<br>≥ 36 | —<br>—<br>≥ 36 | —<br>—<br>≥ 36 |
| CHARACTERISTICS OF FRACTION PASSING<br>0.425 SIEVE (No. 40):<br>LIQUID LIMIT<br>PLASTICITY INDEX * | —<br>6 max                                             |                   | —<br>NP           | ≤ 40<br>≤ 10                    | ≥ 41<br>≤ 10   | ≤ 40<br>≥ 11   | ≥ 41<br>≥ 11   | ≤ 40<br>≤ 10                                                 | ≥ 41<br>≤ 10   | ≤ 40<br>≥ 11   | ≥ 41<br>≥ 11   |
| USUAL TYPES OF CONSTITUENT MATERIALS                                                               | STONE FRAGM'TS,<br>GRAVEL, SAND                        |                   | FINE<br>SAND      | SILTY OR CLAYEY GRAVEL AND SAND |                |                |                | SILTY SOILS                                                  |                | CLAYEY SOILS   |                |
| GENERAL RATING AS A SUBGRADE                                                                       | EXCELLENT TO GOOD                                      |                   |                   |                                 |                |                |                | FAIR TO POOR                                                 |                |                |                |

\*Plasticity index of A-7-5 subgroup is equal to or less than  $LL - 30$ . Plasticity index of A-7-6 subgroup is greater than  $LL - 30$ .  
NP = Non-plastic (use "0"). Symbol "—" means that the particular sieve analysis is not considered for that classification.

If the soil classification is A4-A7, then calculate the group index (GI) as shown below and report with classification. The higher the GI, the less suitable the soil. Example: A-6 with GI = 15 is less suitable than A-6 with GI = 10.

$$GI = (F - 35) [ 0.2 + 0.005 (LL - 40) ] + 0.01 (F - 15) (PI - 10)$$

where: F = Percent passing No. 200 sieve, expressed as a whole number. This percentage is based only on the material passing the No. 200 sieve.

LL = Liquid limit

PI = Plasticity index

If the computed value of GI < 0, then use GI = 0.

ASTM D2487-11 Standard Practice for Classification of Soils for Engineering Purposes (Unified Soil Classification System)

| Criteria for Assigning Group Symbols and Group Names Using Laboratory Tests <sup>A</sup> |                                                                    |                                                           |                                                             | Soil Classification |                                                                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           |                                                             | Group Symbol        | Group Name <sup>B</sup>                                                  |
| COARSE-GRAINED SOILS                                                                     | Gravels (more than 50% of coarse fraction retained on No. 4 sieve) | Clean Gravels (Less than 5% fines <sup>C</sup> )          | $Cu \geq 4$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^D$                        | GW                  | Well-graded gravel <sup>E</sup>                                          |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           | $Cu < 4$ and/or $[Cc < 1 \text{ or } Cc > 3]^D$             | GP                  | Poorly graded gravel <sup>E</sup>                                        |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    | Gravels with Fines (More than 12% fines <sup>C</sup> )    | Fines classify as ML or MH                                  | GM                  | Silty gravel <sup>E, F, G</sup>                                          |
|                                                                                          | More than 50% retained on No. 200 sieve                            |                                                           | Fines classify as CL or CH                                  | GC                  | Clayey gravel <sup>E, F, G</sup>                                         |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    | Sands (50% or more of coarse fraction passes No. 4 sieve) | $Cu \geq 6$ and $1 \leq Cc \leq 3^D$                        | SW                  | Well-graded sand <sup>I</sup>                                            |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           | $Cu < 6$ and/or $[Cc < 1 \text{ or } Cc > 3]^D$             | SP                  | Poorly graded sand <sup>I</sup>                                          |
| FINE-GRAINED SOILS                                                                       | Silts and Clays                                                    | inorganic                                                 | $PI > 7$ and plots on or above "A" line <sup>J</sup>        | CL                  | Lean clay <sup>K, L, M</sup>                                             |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           | $PI < 4$ or plots below "A" line <sup>J</sup>               | ML                  | Silt <sup>K, L, M</sup>                                                  |
|                                                                                          | Liquid limit less than 50                                          | organic                                                   | Liquid limit – oven dried/Liquid <sup>&amp;#10</sup> < 0.75 | OL                  | Organic clay <sup>K, L, M, N</sup><br>Organic silt <sup>K, L, M, O</sup> |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           |                                                             |                     |                                                                          |
|                                                                                          | 50% or more passes the No. 200 sieve                               | inorganic                                                 | $PI$ plots on or above "A" line                             | CH                  | Fat clay <sup>K, L, M</sup>                                              |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           | $PI$ plots below "A" line                                   | MH                  | Elastic silt <sup>K, L, M</sup>                                          |
|                                                                                          | Liquid limit 50 or more                                            | organic                                                   | Liquid limit – oven dried/Liquid <sup>&amp;#10</sup> < 0.75 | OH                  | Organic clay <sup>K, L, M, P</sup><br>Organic silt <sup>K, L, M, Q</sup> |
|                                                                                          |                                                                    |                                                           |                                                             |                     |                                                                          |
| HIGHLY ORGANIC SOILS                                                                     | Primarily organic matter, dark in color, and organic odor          |                                                           |                                                             | PT                  | Peat                                                                     |

<sup>A</sup>Based on the material passing the 3-in. (75-mm) sieve.

<sup>B</sup>If field sample contained cobbles or boulders, or both, add "with cobbles or boulders, or both" to group name.

<sup>C</sup>Gravels with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols:

GW-GM well-graded gravel with silt

GW-GC well-graded gravel with clay

GP-GM poorly graded gravel with silt

GP-GC poorly graded gravel with clay

$$^D Cu = D_{60}/D_{10} \quad Cc = \frac{(D_{30})^2}{D_{10} \times D_{60}}$$

<sup>E</sup>If soil contains  $\geq 15\%$  sand, add "with sand" to group name.

<sup>F</sup>If fines classify as CL-ML, use dual symbol GC-GM, or SC-SM.

<sup>G</sup>If fines are organic, add "with organic fines" to group name.

<sup>H</sup>Sands with 5 to 12% fines require dual symbols:

SW-SM well-graded sand with silt

SW-SC well-graded sand with clay

SP-SM poorly graded sand with silt

SP-SC poorly graded sand with clay

<sup>I</sup>If soil contains  $\geq 15\%$  gravel, add "with gravel" to group name.

<sup>J</sup>If Atterberg limits plot in hatched area, soil is a CL-ML, silty clay.

<sup>K</sup>If soil contains 15 to 30% plus No. 200, add "with sand" or "with gravel", whichever is predominant.

<sup>L</sup>If soil contains  $\geq 30\%$  plus No. 200, predominantly sand, add "sandy" to group name.

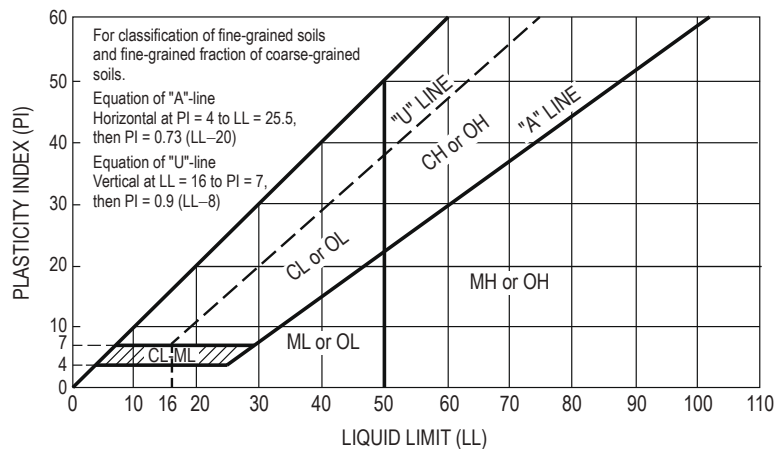
<sup>M</sup>If soil contains  $\geq 30\%$  plus No. 200, predominantly gravel, add "gravelly" to group name.

<sup>N</sup> $PI \geq 4$  and plots on or above "A" line.

<sup>O</sup> $PI < 4$  or plots below "A" line.

<sup>P</sup> $PI$  plots on or above "A" line.

<sup>Q</sup> $PI$  plots below "A" line.

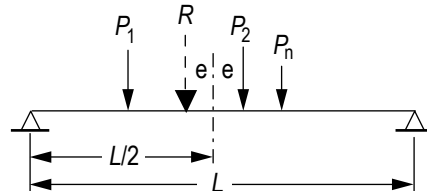


## Structural Analysis

### Influence Lines for Beams and Trusses

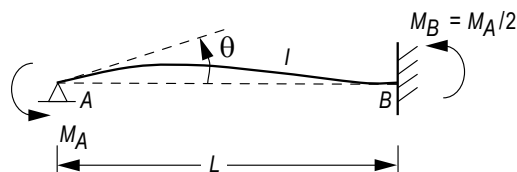
An influence line shows the variation of an effect (reaction, shear and moment in beams, bar force in a truss) caused by moving a unit load across the structure. An influence line is used to determine the position of a moveable set of loads that causes the maximum value of the effect.

### Moving Concentrated Load Sets



The **absolute maximum moment** produced in a beam by a set of "n" moving loads occurs when the resultant "R" of the load set and an adjacent load are equal distance from the centerline of the beam. In general, two possible load set positions must be considered, one for each adjacent load.

### Beam Stiffness and Moment Carryover



The rotations  $\theta$  at end A due to an applied moment,  $M_A$  is:

$$\theta = \frac{M_A L}{4EI} \Rightarrow M_A = \left( \frac{4EI}{L} \right) \theta = k_{AB} \theta$$

$k_{AB}$  = flexural stiffness

$M_B = M_A/2$ , i.e., the carryover factor from A to B is 1/2.

### Truss Deflection by Unit Load Method

The displacement of a truss joint caused by external effects (truss loads, member temperature change, member misfit) is found by applying a unit load at the point that corresponds to the desired displacement.

$$\Delta_{\text{joint}} = \sum_{i=1}^{\text{members}} f_i (\Delta L)_i$$

where

$\Delta_{\text{joint}}$  = joint displacement at point of application of unit load ( + in direction of unit load )

$f_i$  = force in member  $i$  caused by unit load ( + tension )

$(\Delta L)_i$  = change in length caused by external effect ( + for increase in member length ):

=  $\left( \frac{FL}{AE} \right)_i$  for bar force  $F$  caused by external load

=  $\alpha L_i (\Delta T)_i$  for temperature change in member

( $\alpha$  = coefficient of thermal expansion)

= member misfit

$L, A$  = member length and cross-sectional area

$E$  = member elastic modulus

### Frame Deflection by Unit Load Method

The displacement of any point on a frame caused by external loads is found by applying a unit load at that point that corresponds to the desired displacement:

$$\Delta = \sum_{i=1}^{\text{members}} \int_{x=0}^{x=L_i} \frac{m_i M_i}{EI_i} dx$$

where

$\Delta$  = displacement at point of application of unit load (+ in direction of unit load)

$m_i$  = moment equation in member  $i$  caused by the unit load

$M_i$  = moment equation in member  $i$  caused by loads applied to frame

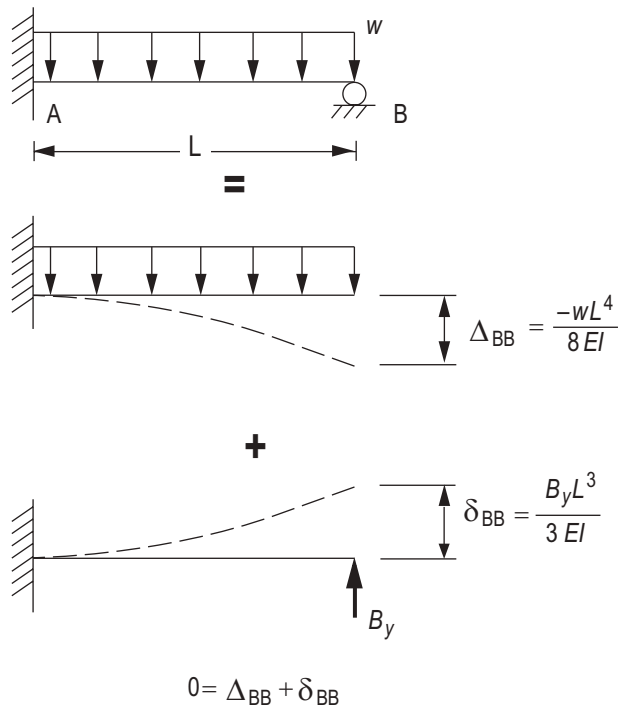
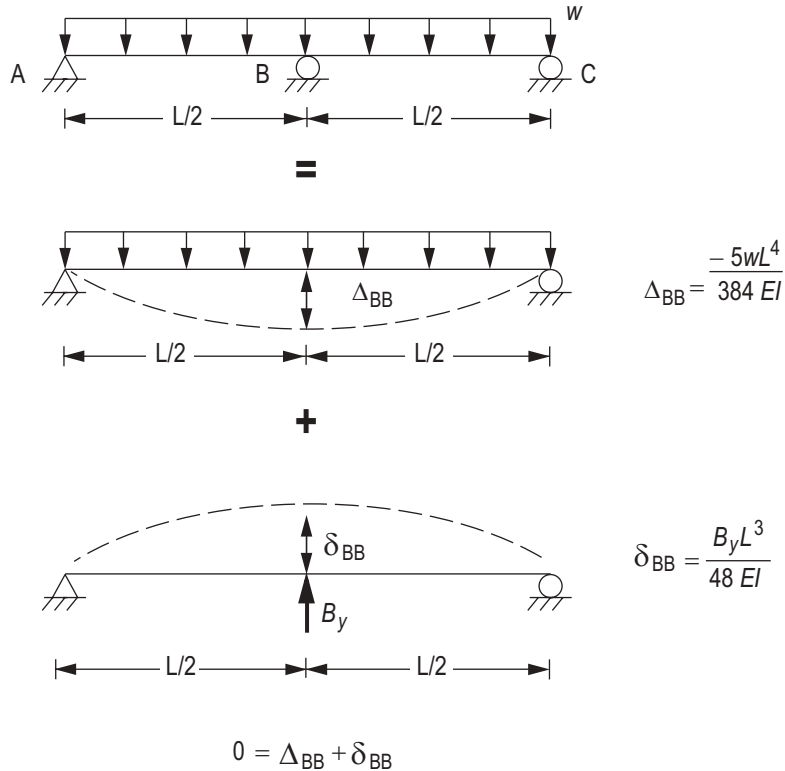
$L_i$  = length of member  $i$

$I_i$  = moment of inertia of member  $i$

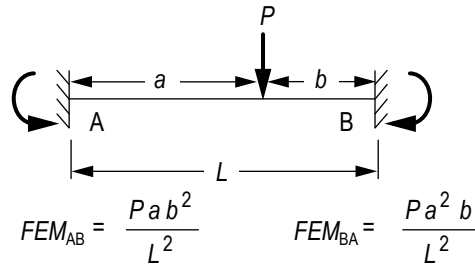
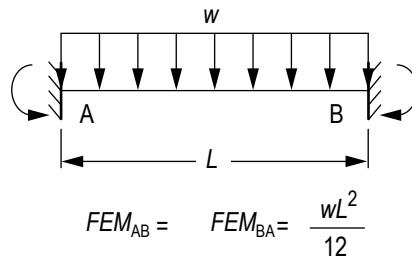
If either the real loads or the unit load cause no moment in a member, that member can be omitted from the summation.

## Elementary Statically Indeterminate Structures by Force Method of Analysis

The force method is typically used to solve for elements or structures with a single degree of indeterminacy. The method states that the deflection resulting from the removal of a redundant support is equal and opposite to the deflection that the redundant reaction causes, resulting in a net zero deflection.



### Member Fixed-End Moments (Magnitudes)



### Stability, Determinacy, and Classification of Structures

$m$  = number of members

$r$  = number of independent reaction components

$j$  = number of joints

$c$  = number of condition equations based on known internal moments or forces, such as internal moment of zero at a hinge

#### Plane Truss

| Static Analysis | Classification                      |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| $m + r < 2j$    | Unstable                            |
| $m + r = 2j$    | Stable and statically determinate   |
| $m + r > 2j$    | Stable and statically indeterminate |

#### Plane Frame

| Static Analysis   | Classification                      |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------|
| $3m + r < 3j + c$ | Unstable                            |
| $3m + r = 3j + c$ | Stable and statically determinate   |
| $3m + r > 3j + c$ | Stable and statically indeterminate |

Stability also requires an appropriate arrangement of members and reaction components.

## Structural Design

### Loads (ASCE 7-16)

#### Nominal Loads used in LRFD and ASD Load Combinations

$D$  = dead loads

$E$  = earthquake loads

$L$  = live loads (floor)

$L_r$  = live loads (roof)

$R$  = rain load

$S$  = snow load

$W$  = wind load

#### Load Combinations using Strength Design (LRFD)

##### Basic combinations

$(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) = \text{largest of } L_r, S, R$

$(L \text{ or } 0.5W) = \text{larger of } L, 0.5W$

Nominal loads used in the following combinations

$$1.4D$$

$$1.2D + 1.6L + 0.5(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$$

$$1.2D + 1.6(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R) + (L \text{ or } 0.5W)$$

$$1.2D + 1.0W + L + 0.5(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$$

$$1.2D + 1.0E + L + 0.2S$$

$$0.9D + 1.0W$$

$$0.9D + 1.0E$$

#### Load Combinations using Allowable Stress Design (ASD)

Nominal loads used in the following combinations

$$D$$

$$D + L$$

$$D + (L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$$

$$D + 0.75L + 0.75(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$$

$$D + (0.6W \text{ or } 0.7E)$$

$$D + 0.75L + 0.75(0.6W) + 0.75(L_r \text{ or } S \text{ or } R)$$

$$D + 0.75L + 0.75(0.7E) + 0.75S$$

$$0.6D + 0.6W$$

$$0.6D + 0.7E$$

#### Live Load Reduction

The effect on a building member of nominal occupancy live loads may often be reduced based on the loaded floor area supported by the member. A typical model used for computing reduced live load (as found in ASCE 7 and many building codes) is:

For members supporting one floor

$$L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL} A_T}} \right)$$

and

$$L \geq 0.5 L_o$$

For members supporting two or more floors

$$L = L_o \left( 0.25 + \frac{15}{\sqrt{K_{LL} A_T}} \right)$$

and

$$L \geq 0.4 L_o$$

where

$L$  = reduced design live load per ft<sup>2</sup> (m<sup>2</sup>) of area supported by the member

$L_o$  = unreduced design live load per ft<sup>2</sup> (m<sup>2</sup>) of area supported by the member

$K_{LL}$  = live load element factor

$K_{LL} = 4$  for typical columns

$K_{LL} = 2$  for typical beams and girders

$A_T$  = tributary area (ft<sup>2</sup> or m<sup>2</sup>)

### Flat Roof Snow Loads

$$P_f = 0.7 C_e C_t I_s P_g$$

where

$C_e$  = exposure factor

$C_t$  = thermal factor

$I_s$  = importance factor

$P_g$  = ground snow load (lb/ft<sup>2</sup>)

#### Exposure Factor, $C_e$

| Terrain Category | Roof Exposure |                   |           |
|------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------|
|                  | Fully Exposed | Partially Exposed | Sheltered |
| B – Suburban     | 0.9           | 1.0               | 1.2       |
| C – Open Terrain | 0.9           | 1.0               | 1.1       |
| D – Open Water   | 0.8           | 0.9               | 1.0       |

Fully Exposed = Roofs exposed on all sides with no shelter afforded by terrain, higher structures or trees

Sheltered = Roofs located tight in among conifers that qualify as obstructions

Partially Exposed = all others

#### Thermal Factor, $C_t$

|                                              |     |
|----------------------------------------------|-----|
| All structures except as indicated below     | 1.0 |
| Unheated and open air structures             | 1.2 |
| Structures intentionally kept below freezing | 1.3 |

#### Importance Factor, $I_s$

| Risk Category |                      | Importance Factors |                |
|---------------|----------------------|--------------------|----------------|
|               |                      | Snow, $I_s$        | Seismic, $I_e$ |
| I             | Low Risk             | 0.8                | 1.0            |
| II            | All Others           | 1.0                | 1.0            |
| III           | Assembly Buildings   | 1.1                | 1.25           |
| IV            | Essential Facilities | 1.2                | 1.5            |

## Wind Loads

Velocity pressure at height  $z$

$$q_z = 0.00256 K_z K_{zt} K_d V^2 \text{ (lb/ft}^2\text{)}$$

where

$K_d$  = wind directionality factor = 0.85 for most structures

$K_z$  = velocity pressure exposure coefficient

$K_{zt}$  = topographic factor = 1.0 for flat ground

$V$  = basic wind speed (mph)

**Velocity Pressure Exposure Coefficient,  $K_z$**

| Height above Ground (ft) | Exposure      |                   |                 |
|--------------------------|---------------|-------------------|-----------------|
|                          | B<br>Suburban | C<br>Open Terrain | D<br>Open Water |
| 0–15                     | 0.57          | 0.85              | 1.03            |
| 20                       | 0.62          | 0.90              | 1.08            |
| 25                       | 0.66          | 0.94              | 1.12            |

## Design of Reinforced Concrete Components (ACI 318-14)

U.S. Customary units

### Definitions

$a$  = depth of equivalent rectangular stress block (in.)

$A_g$  = gross area of concrete section (in<sup>2</sup>)

$A_s$  = area of longitudinal tension reinforcement (in<sup>2</sup>)

$A_{st}$  = total area of longitudinal reinforcement (in<sup>2</sup>)

$A_v$  = area of shear reinforcement within a distance  $s$  (in.)

$b$  = width of compression face of member (in.)

$\beta_1$  = ratio of depth of rectangular stress block  $a$  to depth to neutral axis  $c$

| $f'_c$ (psi)               | $\beta_1$                               |     |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----|
| $2500 \leq f'_c \leq 4000$ | 0.85                                    | (a) |
| $4000 < f'_c < 8000$       | $0.85 - \frac{0.05(f'_c - 4000)}{1000}$ | (b) |
| $f'_c \geq 8000$           | 0.65                                    | (c) |

- $c$  = distance from extreme compression fiber to neutral axis (in.)  
 $d$  = distance from extreme compression fiber to centroid of longitudinal tension reinforcement (in.)  
 $d_t$  = distance from extreme compression fiber to extreme tension steel (in.)  
 $E_c$  = modulus of elasticity (psi)  
 $= 33w_c^{1.5} \sqrt{f'_c}$   
 $\epsilon_t$  = net tensile strain in extreme layer of longitudinal tension reinforcement  
 $f'_c$  = compressive strength of concrete (psi)  
 $f_y$  = yield strength of steel reinforcement (psi)  
 $M_n$  = nominal flexural strength at section (in.-lb)  
 $\phi M_n$  = design flexural strength at section (in.-lb)  
 $M_u$  = factored moment at section (in.-lb)  
 $P_n$  = nominal axial compressive load strength of member (lb)  
 $\phi P_n$  = design axial compressive load strength of member (lb)  
 $P_u$  = factored axial force: to be taken as positive for compression and negative for tension (lb)  
 $\rho_g$  = ratio of total reinforcement area to cross-sectional area of column =  $A_{st}/A_g$   
 $s$  = center to center spacing of longitudinal shear or torsional reinforcement (in.)  
 $V_c$  = nominal shear strength provided by concrete (lb)  
 $V_n$  = nominal shear strength at section (lb)  
 $\phi V_n$  = design shear strength at section (lb)  
 $V_s$  = nominal shear strength provided by reinforcement (lb)  
 $V_u$  = factored shear force at section (lb)  
 $w_c$  = weight of concrete (lb/ft<sup>3</sup>)

## Resistance Factors, $\phi$

|                                                              |                              |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Tension-controlled sections ( $\epsilon_t \geq 0.005$ ):     | $\phi = 0.9$                 |
| Compression-controlled sections ( $\epsilon_t \leq 0.002$ ): |                              |
| Members with tied reinforcement                              | $\phi = 0.65$                |
| Transition sections ( $0.002 < \epsilon_t < 0.005$ ):        |                              |
| Members with tied reinforcement                              | $\phi = 0.48 + 83\epsilon_t$ |
| Shear and torsion                                            | $\phi = 0.75$                |
| Bearing on concrete                                          | $\phi = 0.65$                |

## Beams—Flexure

$$\phi M_n \geq M_u$$

### For All Beams

Net tensile strain:  $a = \beta_1 c$

$$\epsilon_t = \frac{0.003(d_t - c)}{c} = \frac{0.003(\beta_1 d_t - a)}{a}$$

### Singly-Reinforced Beams

$$a = \frac{A_s f_y}{0.85 f'_c b}$$

$$M_n = 0.85 f'_c a b \left( d - \frac{a}{2} \right) = A_s f_y \left( d - \frac{a}{2} \right)$$

## Beams—Shear

$$\phi V_n \geq V_u$$

Nominal shear strength:

$$V_n = V_c + V_s$$

$$V_c = 2\lambda\sqrt{f'_c} b_w d$$

where

$\lambda = 1.0$  for normal weight concrete (NWC)

$\lambda = 0.75$  for lightweight concrete

$$V_s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{s} \text{ (may not exceed } 8 b_w d \sqrt{f'_c} \text{)}$$

Required and maximum-permitted stirrup spacing  $s$

$$V_u \leq \frac{\phi V_c}{2}: \text{ No stirrups required}$$

$$V_u > \frac{\phi V_c}{2}: \text{ Use the following table (} A_v \text{ given)}$$

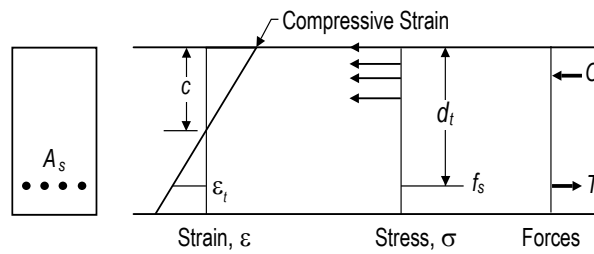
|                           | $\frac{\phi V_c}{2} < V_u \leq \phi V_c$                                                   | $V_u > \phi V_c$                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Required spacing          | <p>Smaller of:</p> $s = \frac{A_v f_y}{50 b_w}$ $s = \frac{A_v f_y}{0.75 b_w \sqrt{f'_c}}$ | $V_s = \frac{V_u}{\phi} - V_c$ $s = \frac{A_v f_y d}{V_s}$                                                                                                                                                            |
| Maximum permitted spacing | <p>Smaller of:</p> $s = \frac{d}{2}$ <p>OR</p> $s = 24"$                                   | <p><math>V_s \leq 4 b_w d \sqrt{f'_c}</math></p> <p>Smaller of:</p> $s = \frac{d}{2} \quad \text{OR}$ $s = 24"$ <hr/> <p><math>V_s &gt; 4 b_w d \sqrt{f'_c}</math></p> <p>Smaller of:</p> $s = \frac{d}{4}$ $s = 12"$ |

### ASTM STANDARD REINFORCEMENT BARS

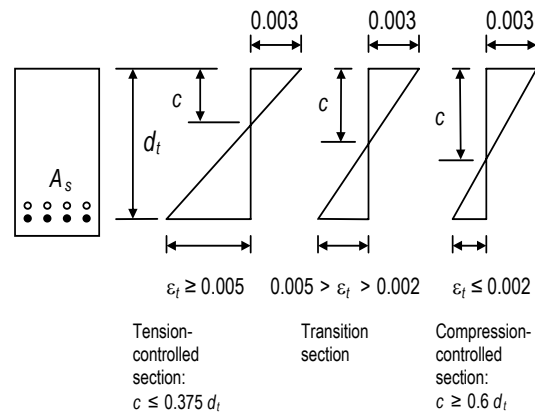
| BAR SIZE | DIAMETER, IN. | AREA, IN <sup>2</sup> | WEIGHT, LB/FT |
|----------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|
| #3       | 0.375         | 0.11                  | 0.376         |
| #4       | 0.500         | 0.20                  | 0.668         |
| #5       | 0.625         | 0.31                  | 1.043         |
| #6       | 0.750         | 0.44                  | 1.502         |
| #7       | 0.875         | 0.60                  | 2.044         |
| #8       | 1.000         | 0.79                  | 2.670         |
| #9       | 1.128         | 1.00                  | 3.400         |
| #10      | 1.270         | 1.27                  | 4.303         |
| #11      | 1.410         | 1.56                  | 5.313         |
| #14      | 1.693         | 2.25                  | 7.650         |
| #18      | 2.257         | 4.00                  | 13.60         |

## Unified Design Provisions

### Internal Stress, Strain, and Forces due to Positive Moment Loading



### Strain Conditions



## Short Columns

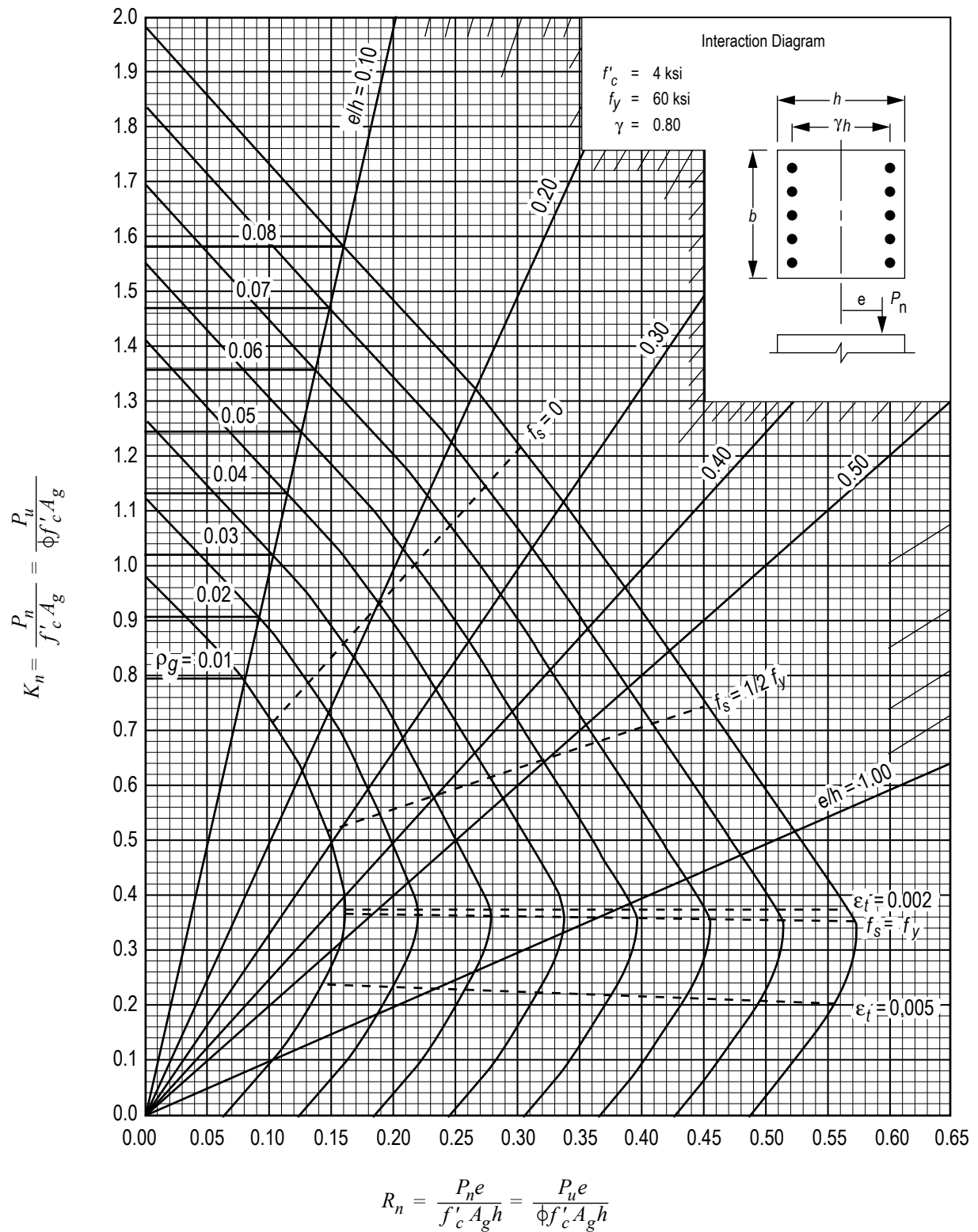
### Limits for Longitudinal Reinforcements

$$\rho_g = \frac{A_{st}}{A_g}$$
$$0.01 \leq \rho_g \leq 0.08$$

### Design Column Strength, Tied Columns

$$P_u \leq \phi P_n$$
$$\phi P_n = 0.80\phi[0.85 f'_c (A_g - A_{st}) + A_{st} f_y]$$

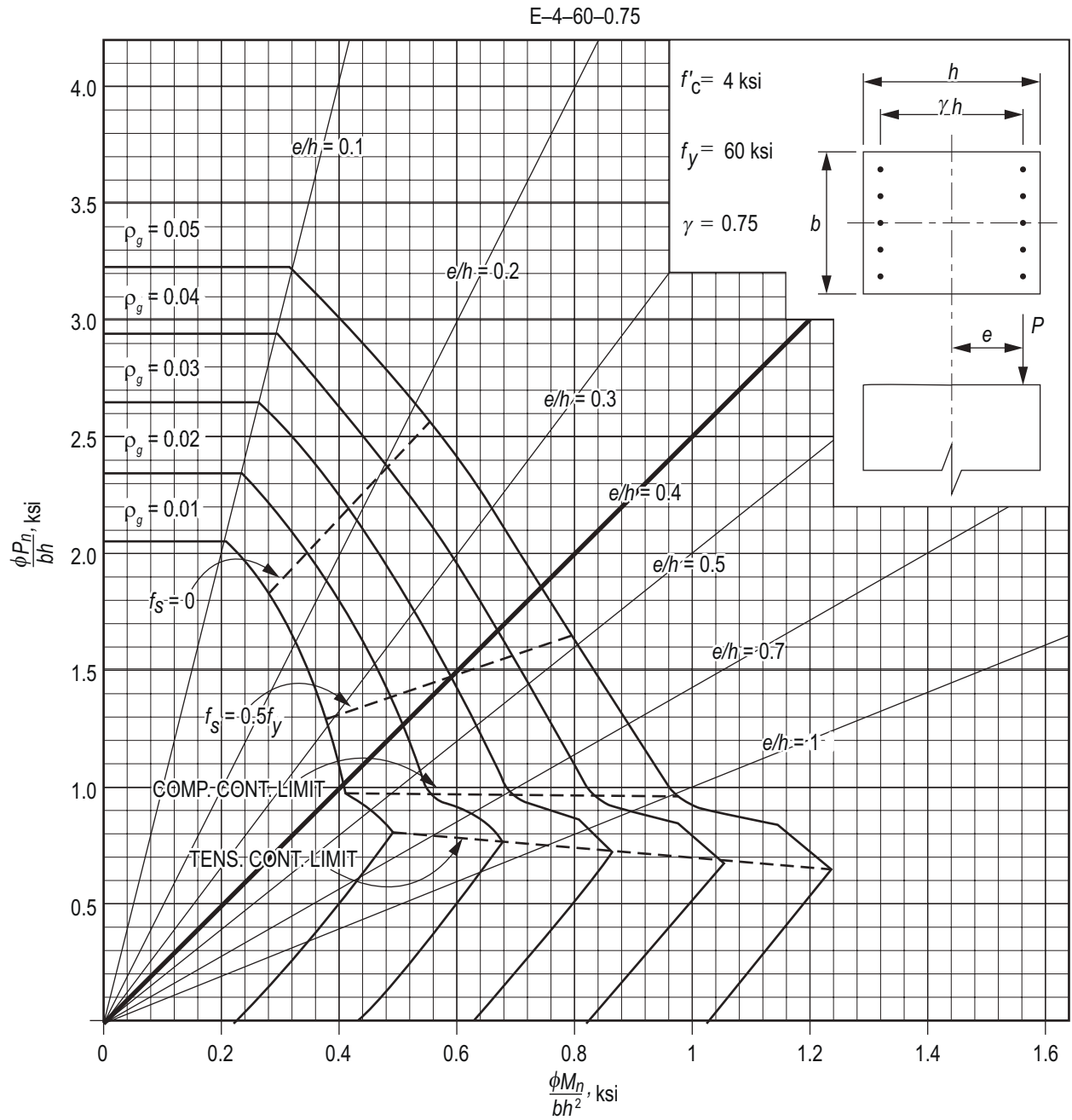
Nominal Column Strength Interaction Diagram for Rectangular Section  
with Bars on End Faces and  $\gamma = 0.80$  (for instructional use only).



GRAPH A.11

Source: Nilson, Arthur H., David Darwin, and Charles W. Dolan, *Design of Concrete Structures*, 13th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

Factored Strength Interaction Diagram for Rectangular Section with Bars on End Faces and  $\gamma = 0.75$



Source: Wight, James K., and James G. MacGregor, *Reinforced Concrete, Mechanics and Design*, 6th ed., Pearson, 2012.

## Design of Steel Components

(ANSI/AISC 360-16) LRFD, ASD       $E = 29,000 \text{ ksi}$

### Beams

For doubly symmetric compact I-shaped members bent about their major axis, the *design flexural strength*  $\phi_b M_n$  is determined with  $\phi_b = 0.90$  and  $\Omega = 1.67$  as follows:

#### Yielding

$$M_n = M_p = F_y Z_x$$

where

$F_y$  = specified minimum yield stress

$Z_x$  = plastic section modulus about the x-axis

#### Lateral-Torsional Buckling

Based on bracing where  $L_b$  is the length between points that are either braced against lateral displacement of the compression flange or braced against twist of the cross section with respect to the length limits  $L_p$  and  $L_r$ :

When  $L_b \leq L_p$ , the limit state of lateral-torsional buckling does not apply.

When  $L_p < L_b \leq L_r$

$$M_n = C_b \left[ M_p - (M_p - 0.7 F_y S_x) \left( \frac{L_b - L_p}{L_r - L_p} \right) \right] \leq M_p$$

where

$$C_b = \frac{12.5 M_{\max}}{2.5 M_{\max} + 3 M_A + 4 M_B + 3 M_C}$$

$M_{\max}$  = absolute value of maximum moment in the unbraced segment

$M_A$  = absolute value of maximum moment at quarter point of the unbraced segment

$M_B$  = absolute value of maximum moment at centerline of the unbraced segment

$M_C$  = absolute value of maximum moment at three-quarter of the unbraced segment

### Shear

The *design shear strength*  $\phi_v V_n$  is determined with

$\phi_v = 1.00$  for webs of rolled I-shaped members and is determined as follows:

$\Omega = 1.50$

$V_n = 0.6 F_y A_w C_{vl}$

$C_{vl} = 1.0$

$A_w$  = area of web, the overall depth times the web thickness  $dt_w$  (in<sup>2</sup> or mm<sup>2</sup>)

### Columns

The *design compressive strength*  $\phi_c P_n$  is determined with  $\phi_c = 0.90$  and  $\Omega = 1.67$  for flexural buckling of members without slender elements and is determined as follows:

$$P_n = F_{cr} A_g$$

where the critical stress  $F_{cr}$  is determined as follows:

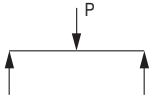
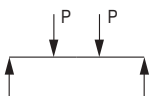
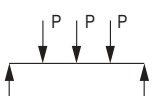
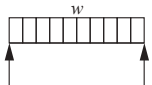
$$(a) \text{ When } \frac{L_c}{r} \leq 4.71 \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}, F_{cr} = [0.658^{F_y/E}] F_y$$

$$(b) \text{ When } \frac{L_c}{r} > 4.71 \sqrt{\frac{E}{F_y}}, F_{cr} = 0.877 F_e$$

where

$L_c = KL =$  effective length of member (in.)

$F_e =$  elastic buckling stress  $= \pi^2 E / (KL/r)^2$

| VALUES OF $C_b$ FOR SIMPLY SUPPORTED BEAMS                                                           |                                              |                          |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| LOAD                                                                                                 | LATERAL BRACING ALONG SPAN                   | $C_b$                    |
|                     | NONE<br>LOAD AT MIDPOINT                     | 1.32                     |
|                                                                                                      | AT LOAD POINT                                | 1.67                     |
|                     | NONE<br>LOADS AT THIRD POINTS                | 1.14                     |
|                                                                                                      | AT LOAD POINTS<br>LOADS SYMMETRICALLY PLACED | 1.67 1.00 1.67           |
|                     | NONE<br>LOADS AT QUARTER POINTS              | 1.14                     |
|                                                                                                      | AT LOAD POINTS<br>LOADS AT QUARTER POINTS    | 1.67 1.11 1.11 1.67      |
|                    | NONE                                         | 1.14                     |
|                                                                                                      | AT MIDPOINT                                  | 1.30                     |
|                                                                                                      | AT THIRD POINTS                              | 1.45 1.01 1.45           |
|                                                                                                      | AT QUARTER POINTS                            | 1.52 1.06 1.06 1.52      |
|                                                                                                      | AT FIFTH POINTS                              | 1.56 1.12 1.00 1.12 1.56 |
| NOTE: LATERAL BRACING MUST ALWAYS BE PROVIDED AT POINTS OF SUPPORT PER AISC SPECIFICATION CHAPTER F. |                                              |                          |

Source: Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

## Tension Members

### Flat Bars or Angles, Bolted or Welded

#### Definitions

Bolt diameter:  $d_b$

Nominal hole diameter:  $d_h = d_b + \frac{1}{16}$ "

Gross width of member:  $b_g$

Member thickness:  $t$

Connection eccentricity:  $\bar{x}$

Gross area:  $A_g = b_g t$  (use tabulated areas for angles)

Net area (parallel holes):  $A_n = \left[ b_g - \Sigma \left( d_h + \frac{1}{16} \right) \right] t = \left[ b_g - \Sigma \left( d_b + \frac{1}{8} \right) \right] t$

Net area (staggered holes):

$A_n = \left[ b_g - \Sigma \left( d_h + \frac{1}{16} \right) + \Sigma \frac{s^2}{4g} \right] t$

$s$  = longitudinal spacing of consecutive holes

$g$  = transverse spacing between lines of holes

Effective area (bolted members):

$$A_e = UA_n \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Flat bars: } U = 1.0 \\ U = 1 - \bar{x}/L \text{ All tension members where the tension load is} \\ \text{transmitted to some but not all the elements by fasteners or welds} \end{array} \right.$$

Effective area (welded members):

$$A_e = UA_n \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{Flat bars or angles with transverse welds: } U = 1.0 \\ \text{Flat bars of width "w", longitudinal welds of length "L" only:} \\ \quad U = 1.0 \quad (L \geq 2w) \\ \quad U = 0.87 \quad (2w > L \geq 1.5w) \\ \quad U = 0.75 \quad (1.5w > L > w) \\ \text{Angles with longitudinal welds only} \\ \quad U = 1 - \bar{x}/L \end{array} \right.$$

#### Limit States and Available Strengths

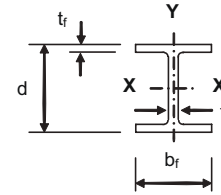
Yielding:  $\phi_y = 0.90$   
 $\bar{P}_n = F_y A_g$   
 $\Omega = 1.67$

Rupture:  $\phi_r = 0.75$   
 $\bar{P}_n = F_u A_e$   
 $\Omega = 2.00$

Block shear:  $\phi = 0.75$   
 $\Omega = 2.00$   
 $U_{bs} = 1.0$  (flat bars and angles)  
 $A_{gv}$  = gross area for shear  
 $A_{nv}$  = net area for shear  
 $A_{nt}$  = net area for tension  
 $R_n = \text{Smaller} \left\{ \begin{array}{l} F_u [0.6A_{nv} + U_{bs}A_{nt}] \\ [0.6F_y A_{gv} + U_{bs}F_u A_{nt}] \end{array} \right.$

Table 1-1: W Shapes Dimensions and Properties

| Shape                 | Area             | Depth | Web            | Flange         |                | Axis X-X         |                  |      |                  | Axis Y-Y         |      |
|-----------------------|------------------|-------|----------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|------------------|------|------------------|------------------|------|
|                       | A                | d     | t <sub>w</sub> | b <sub>f</sub> | t <sub>f</sub> | I                | S                | r    | Z                | I                | r    |
|                       | in. <sup>2</sup> | in.   | in.            | in.            | in.            | in. <sup>4</sup> | in. <sup>3</sup> | in.  | in. <sup>3</sup> | in. <sup>4</sup> | in.  |
| W24X68 <sup>c</sup>   | 20.1             | 23.7  | 0.415          | 8.97           | 0.585          | 1830             | 154              | 9.55 | 177              | 70.4             | 1.87 |
| W24X62 <sup>c</sup>   | 18.2             | 23.7  | 0.430          | 7.04           | 0.590          | 1550             | 131              | 9.23 | 153              | 34.5             | 1.38 |
| W24X55 <sup>c,v</sup> | 16.3             | 23.6  | 0.395          | 7.01           | 0.505          | 1350             | 114              | 9.11 | 134              | 29.1             | 1.34 |
| W21X73 <sup>c</sup>   | 21.5             | 21.2  | 0.455          | 8.30           | 0.740          | 1600             | 151              | 8.64 | 172              | 70.6             | 1.81 |
| W21X68 <sup>c</sup>   | 20.0             | 21.1  | 0.430          | 8.27           | 0.685          | 1480             | 140              | 8.60 | 160              | 64.7             | 1.80 |
| W21X62 <sup>c</sup>   | 18.3             | 21.0  | 0.400          | 8.24           | 0.615          | 1330             | 127              | 8.54 | 144              | 57.5             | 1.77 |
| W21X55 <sup>c</sup>   | 16.2             | 20.8  | 0.375          | 8.22           | 0.522          | 1140             | 110              | 8.40 | 126              | 48.4             | 1.73 |
| W21X57 <sup>c</sup>   | 16.7             | 21.1  | 0.405          | 6.56           | 0.650          | 1170             | 111              | 8.36 | 129              | 30.6             | 1.35 |
| W21X50 <sup>c</sup>   | 14.7             | 20.8  | 0.380          | 6.53           | 0.535          | 984              | 94.5             | 8.18 | 110              | 24.9             | 1.30 |
| W21X48 <sup>c,f</sup> | 14.1             | 20.6  | 0.350          | 8.14           | 0.430          | 959              | 93.0             | 8.24 | 107              | 38.7             | 1.66 |
| W21X44 <sup>c</sup>   | 13.0             | 20.7  | 0.350          | 6.50           | 0.450          | 843              | 81.6             | 8.06 | 95.4             | 20.7             | 1.26 |
| W18X71                | 20.8             | 18.5  | 0.495          | 7.64           | 0.810          | 1170             | 127              | 7.50 | 146              | 60.3             | 1.70 |
| W18X65                | 19.1             | 18.4  | 0.450          | 7.59           | 0.750          | 1070             | 117              | 7.49 | 133              | 54.8             | 1.69 |
| W18X60 <sup>c</sup>   | 17.6             | 18.2  | 0.415          | 7.56           | 0.695          | 984              | 108              | 7.47 | 123              | 50.1             | 1.68 |
| W18X55 <sup>c</sup>   | 16.2             | 18.1  | 0.390          | 7.53           | 0.630          | 890              | 98.3             | 7.41 | 112              | 44.9             | 1.67 |
| W18X50 <sup>c</sup>   | 14.7             | 18.0  | 0.355          | 7.50           | 0.570          | 800              | 88.9             | 7.38 | 101              | 40.1             | 1.65 |
| W18X46 <sup>c</sup>   | 13.5             | 18.1  | 0.360          | 6.06           | 0.605          | 712              | 78.8             | 7.25 | 90.7             | 22.5             | 1.29 |
| W18X40 <sup>c</sup>   | 11.8             | 17.9  | 0.315          | 6.02           | 0.525          | 612              | 68.4             | 7.21 | 78.4             | 19.1             | 1.27 |
| W16X67 <sup>c</sup>   | 19.7             | 16.3  | 0.395          | 10.2           | 0.67           | 954              | 117              | 6.96 | 130              | 119              | 2.46 |
| W16X57                | 16.8             | 16.4  | 0.430          | 7.12           | 0.715          | 758              | 92.2             | 6.72 | 105              | 43.1             | 1.60 |
| W16X50 <sup>c</sup>   | 14.7             | 16.3  | 0.380          | 7.07           | 0.630          | 659              | 81.0             | 6.68 | 92.0             | 37.2             | 1.59 |
| W16X45 <sup>c</sup>   | 13.3             | 16.1  | 0.345          | 7.04           | 0.565          | 586              | 72.7             | 6.65 | 82.3             | 32.8             | 1.57 |
| W16X40 <sup>c</sup>   | 11.8             | 16.0  | 0.305          | 7.00           | 0.505          | 518              | 64.7             | 6.63 | 73.0             | 28.9             | 1.57 |
| W16X36 <sup>c</sup>   | 10.6             | 15.9  | 0.295          | 6.99           | 0.430          | 448              | 56.5             | 6.51 | 64.0             | 24.5             | 1.52 |
| W14X74                | 21.8             | 14.2  | 0.450          | 10.1           | 0.785          | 795              | 112              | 6.04 | 126              | 134              | 2.48 |
| W14X68                | 20.0             | 14.0  | 0.415          | 10.0           | 0.720          | 722              | 103              | 6.01 | 115              | 121              | 2.46 |
| W14X61                | 17.9             | 13.9  | 0.375          | 9.99           | 0.645          | 640              | 92.1             | 5.98 | 102              | 107              | 2.45 |
| W14X53                | 15.6             | 13.9  | 0.370          | 8.06           | 0.660          | 541              | 77.8             | 5.89 | 87.1             | 57.7             | 1.92 |
| W14X48                | 14.1             | 13.8  | 0.340          | 8.03           | 0.595          | 484              | 70.2             | 5.85 | 78.4             | 51.4             | 1.91 |
| W12X79                | 23.2             | 12.4  | 0.470          | 12.1           | 0.735          | 662              | 107              | 5.34 | 119              | 216              | 3.05 |
| W12X72                | 21.1             | 12.3  | 0.430          | 12.0           | 0.670          | 597              | 97.4             | 5.31 | 108              | 195              | 3.04 |
| W12X65 <sup>f</sup>   | 19.1             | 12.1  | 0.390          | 12.0           | 0.605          | 533              | 87.9             | 5.28 | 96.8             | 174              | 3.02 |
| W12X58                | 17.0             | 12.2  | 0.360          | 10.0           | 0.640          | 475              | 78.0             | 5.28 | 86.4             | 107              | 2.51 |
| W12X53                | 15.6             | 12.1  | 0.345          | 9.99           | 0.575          | 425              | 70.6             | 5.23 | 77.9             | 95.8             | 2.48 |
| W12X50                | 14.6             | 12.2  | 0.370          | 8.08           | 0.640          | 391              | 64.2             | 5.18 | 71.9             | 56.3             | 1.96 |
| W12X45                | 13.1             | 12.1  | 0.335          | 8.05           | 0.575          | 348              | 57.7             | 5.15 | 64.2             | 50.0             | 1.95 |
| W12X40                | 11.7             | 11.9  | 0.295          | 8.01           | 0.515          | 307              | 51.5             | 5.13 | 57.0             | 44.1             | 1.94 |
| W10x60                | 17.6             | 10.2  | 0.420          | 10.1           | 0.680          | 341              | 66.7             | 4.39 | 74.6             | 116              | 2.57 |
| W10x54                | 15.8             | 10.1  | 0.370          | 10.0           | 0.615          | 303              | 60.0             | 4.37 | 66.6             | 103              | 2.56 |
| W10x49                | 14.4             | 10.0  | 0.340          | 10.0           | 0.560          | 272              | 54.6             | 4.35 | 60.4             | 93.4             | 2.54 |
| W10x45                | 13.3             | 10.1  | 0.350          | 8.02           | 0.620          | 248              | 49.1             | 4.32 | 54.9             | 53.4             | 2.01 |
| W10x39                | 11.5             | 9.92  | 0.315          | 7.99           | 0.530          | 209              | 42.1             | 4.27 | 46.8             | 45.0             | 1.98 |



Notes:

c Shape is slender for compression with  $F_y = 50$  ksi.

f Shape exceeds compact limit for flexure with  $F_y = 50$  ksi.

v Shape does not meet the  $h/t_w$  limit for shear in AISC Specifications Section G2.1(a) with  $F_y = 50$  ksi.

Source: Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

| Z <sub>x</sub>        | AISC Table 3-2                         |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       | F <sub>y</sub> = 50 ksi            |                         |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------|
|                       | W Shapes – Selection by Z <sub>x</sub> |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       | $\phi_b = 0.90$<br>$\phi_v = 1.00$ |                         |
| Shape                 | Z <sub>x</sub><br>in. <sup>3</sup>     | $\phi_b M_{px}$<br>kip-ft | $\phi_b M_{rx}$<br>kip-ft | $\phi_b BF$<br>kips | L <sub>p</sub><br>ft. | L <sub>r</sub><br>ft. | I <sub>x</sub><br>in. <sup>4</sup> | $\phi_v V_{nx}$<br>kips |
| W24 x 55 <sup>v</sup> | 134                                    | 503                       | 299                       | 22.2                | 4.73                  | 13.9                  | 1350                               | 251                     |
| W18 x 65              | 133                                    | 499                       | 307                       | 14.9                | 5.97                  | 18.8                  | 1070                               | 248                     |
| W12 x 87              | 132                                    | 495                       | 310                       | 5.76                | 10.8                  | 43.0                  | 740                                | 194                     |
| W16 x 67              | 130                                    | 488                       | 307                       | 10.4                | 8.69                  | 26.1                  | 954                                | 194                     |
| W10 x 100             | 130                                    | 488                       | 294                       | 4.01                | 9.36                  | 57.7                  | 623                                | 226                     |
| W21 x 57              | 129                                    | 484                       | 291                       | 20.1                | 4.77                  | 14.3                  | 1170                               | 256                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W21 x 55              | 126                                    | 473                       | 289                       | 16.3                | 6.11                  | 17.4                  | 1140                               | 234                     |
| W14 x 74              | 126                                    | 473                       | 294                       | 8.03                | 8.76                  | 31.0                  | 795                                | 191                     |
| W18 x 60              | 123                                    | 461                       | 284                       | 14.5                | 5.93                  | 18.2                  | 984                                | 227                     |
| W12 x 79              | 119                                    | 446                       | 281                       | 5.67                | 10.8                  | 39.9                  | 662                                | 175                     |
| W14 x 68              | 115                                    | 431                       | 270                       | 7.81                | 8.69                  | 29.3                  | 722                                | 175                     |
| W10 x 88              | 113                                    | 424                       | 259                       | 3.95                | 9.29                  | 51.1                  | 534                                | 197                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W18 x 55              | 112                                    | 420                       | 258                       | 13.9                | 5.90                  | 17.5                  | 890                                | 212                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W21 x 50              | 110                                    | 413                       | 248                       | 18.3                | 4.59                  | 13.6                  | 984                                | 237                     |
| W12 x 72              | 108                                    | 405                       | 256                       | 5.59                | 10.7                  | 37.4                  | 597                                | 158                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W21 x 48              | 107                                    | 398                       | 244                       | 14.7                | 6.09                  | 16.6                  | 959                                | 217                     |
| W16 x 57              | 105                                    | 394                       | 242                       | 12.0                | 5.56                  | 18.3                  | 758                                | 212                     |
| W14 x 61              | 102                                    | 383                       | 242                       | 7.46                | 8.65                  | 27.5                  | 640                                | 156                     |
| W18 x 50              | 101                                    | 379                       | 233                       | 13.1                | 5.83                  | 17.0                  | 800                                | 192                     |
| W10 x 77              | 97.6                                   | 366                       | 225                       | 3.90                | 9.18                  | 45.2                  | 455                                | 169                     |
| W12 x 65 <sup>l</sup> | 96.8                                   | 356                       | 231                       | 5.41                | 11.9                  | 35.1                  | 533                                | 142                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W21 x 44              | 95.4                                   | 358                       | 214                       | 16.8                | 4.45                  | 13.0                  | 843                                | 217                     |
| W16 x 50              | 92.0                                   | 345                       | 213                       | 11.4                | 5.62                  | 17.2                  | 659                                | 185                     |
| W18 x 46              | 90.7                                   | 340                       | 207                       | 14.6                | 4.56                  | 13.7                  | 712                                | 195                     |
| W14 x 53              | 87.1                                   | 327                       | 204                       | 7.93                | 6.78                  | 22.2                  | 541                                | 155                     |
| W12 x 58              | 86.4                                   | 324                       | 205                       | 5.66                | 8.87                  | 29.9                  | 475                                | 132                     |
| W10 x 68              | 85.3                                   | 320                       | 199                       | 3.86                | 9.15                  | 40.6                  | 394                                | 147                     |
| W16 x 45              | 82.3                                   | 309                       | 191                       | 10.8                | 5.55                  | 16.5                  | 586                                | 167                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W18 x 40              | 78.4                                   | 294                       | 180                       | 13.3                | 4.49                  | 13.1                  | 612                                | 169                     |
| W14 x 48              | 78.4                                   | 294                       | 184                       | 7.66                | 6.75                  | 21.1                  | 484                                | 141                     |
| W12 x 53              | 77.9                                   | 292                       | 185                       | 5.48                | 8.76                  | 28.2                  | 425                                | 125                     |
| W10 x 60              | 74.6                                   | 280                       | 175                       | 3.80                | 9.08                  | 36.6                  | 341                                | 129                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W16 x 40              | 73.0                                   | 274                       | 170                       | 10.1                | 5.55                  | 15.9                  | 518                                | 146                     |
| W12 x 50              | 71.9                                   | 270                       | 169                       | 5.97                | 6.92                  | 23.9                  | 391                                | 135                     |
| W8 x 67               | 70.1                                   | 263                       | 159                       | 2.60                | 7.49                  | 47.7                  | 272                                | 154                     |
| W14 x 43              | 69.6                                   | 261                       | 164                       | 7.24                | 6.68                  | 20.0                  | 428                                | 125                     |
| W10 x 54              | 66.6                                   | 250                       | 158                       | 3.74                | 9.04                  | 33.7                  | 303                                | 112                     |
|                       |                                        |                           |                           |                     |                       |                       |                                    |                         |
| W18 x 35              | 66.5                                   | 249                       | 151                       | 12.3                | 4.31                  | 12.4                  | 510                                | 159                     |
| W12 x 45              | 64.2                                   | 241                       | 151                       | 5.75                | 6.89                  | 22.4                  | 348                                | 121                     |
| W16 x 36              | 64.0                                   | 240                       | 148                       | 9.31                | 5.37                  | 15.2                  | 448                                | 140                     |
| W14 x 38              | 61.5                                   | 231                       | 143                       | 8.10                | 5.47                  | 16.2                  | 385                                | 131                     |
| W10 x 49              | 60.4                                   | 227                       | 143                       | 3.67                | 8.97                  | 31.6                  | 272                                | 102                     |
| W8 x 58               | 59.8                                   | 224                       | 137                       | 2.56                | 7.42                  | 41.7                  | 228                                | 134                     |
| W12 x 40              | 57.0                                   | 214                       | 135                       | 5.50                | 6.85                  | 21.1                  | 307                                | 106                     |
| W10 x 45              | 54.9                                   | 206                       | 129                       | 3.89                | 7.10                  | 26.9                  | 248                                | 106                     |

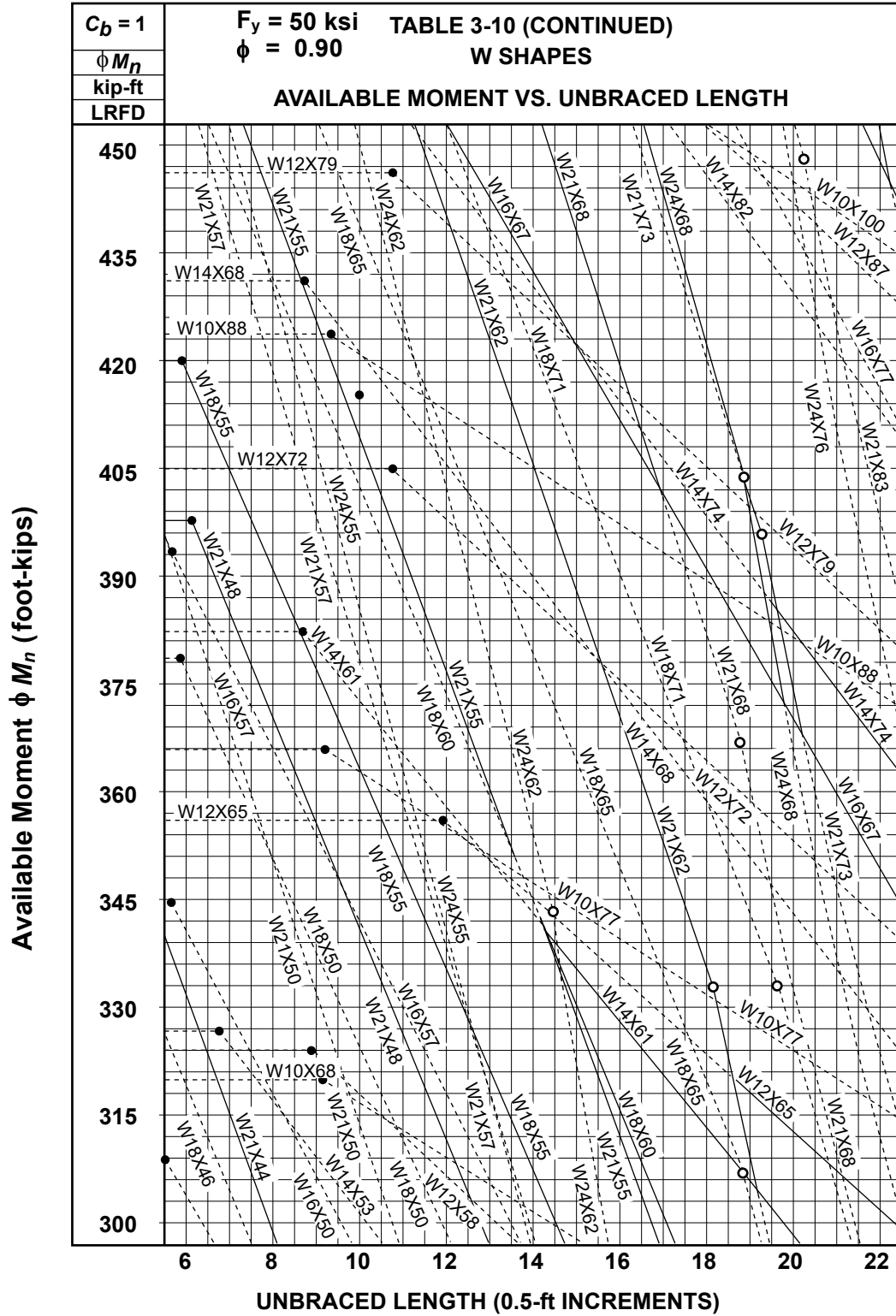
$$M_{rx} = (0.7F_y)S_x \quad BF = \frac{M_{px} - M_{rx}}{L_r - L_p}$$

Notes:

f shape exceeds compact limit for flexure with  $F_y = 50$  ksi.

v shape does not meet the  $h/t_w$  limit for shear in AISC Specification Section G2.1 (a) with  $F_y = 50$  ksi; therefore,  $\phi_v = 0.90$  and  $\Omega_v = 1.67$ .

Source: Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.



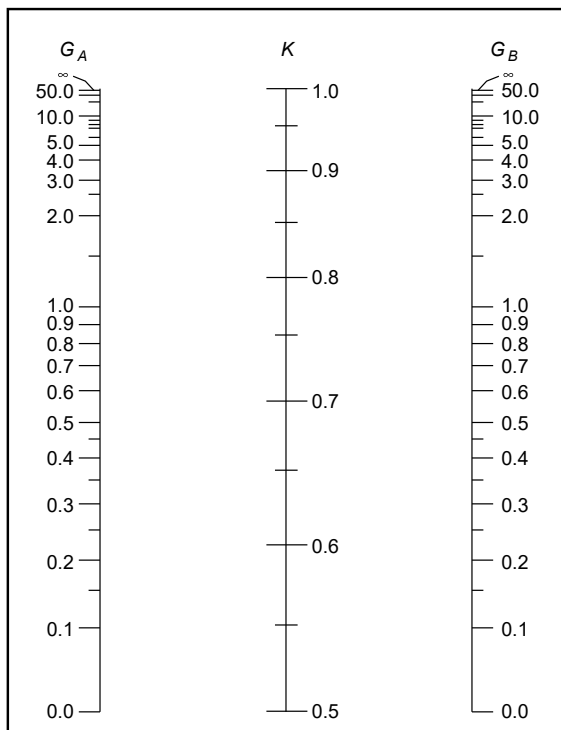
Source: *Steel Construction Manual*, 14th ed., AISC, 2011.

| TABLE C-A-7.1<br>AISC APPROXIMATE VALUES OF EFFECTIVE LENGTH FACTOR, $K$ |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |      |     |     |      |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------|-----|-----|------|-----|
| BUCKLED SHAPE OF COLUMN IS SHOWN BY DASHED LINE.                         | (a)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | (b)  | (c) | (d) | (e)  | (f) |
| THEORETICAL $K$ VALUE                                                    | 0.5                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | 0.7  | 1.0 | 1.0 | 2.0  | 2.0 |
| AISC-RECOMMENDED DESIGN VALUE WHEN IDEAL CONDITIONS ARE APPROXIMATED     | 0.65                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | 0.80 | 1.2 | 1.0 | 2.10 | 2.0 |
| END CONDITION CODE                                                       |  ROTATION FIXED AND TRANSLATION FIXED<br> ROTATION FREE AND TRANSLATION FIXED<br> ROTATION FIXED AND TRANSLATION FREE<br> ROTATION FREE AND TRANSLATION FREE |      |     |     |      |     |

FOR COLUMN ENDS SUPPORTED BY, BUT NOT RIGIDLY CONNECTED TO, A FOOTING OR FOUNDATION,  $G$  IS THEORETICALLY INFINITY BUT UNLESS DESIGNED AS A TRUE FRICTION-FREE PIN, MAY BE TAKEN AS 10 FOR PRACTICAL DESIGNS. IF THE COLUMN END IS RIGIDLY ATTACHED TO A PROPERLY DESIGNED FOOTING,  $G$  MAY BE TAKEN AS 1.0. SMALLER VALUES MAY BE USED IF JUSTIFIED BY ANALYSIS.

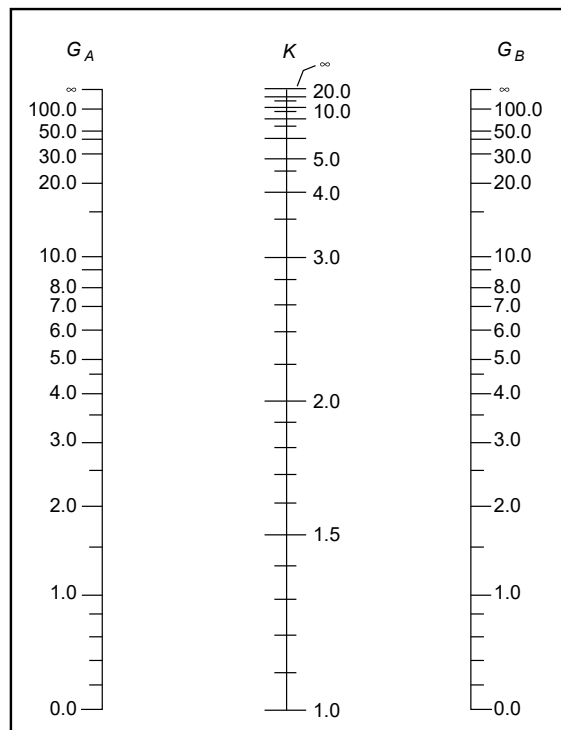
AISC Figure C-A-7.1

Alignment chart, sidesway inhibited (braced frame)



AISC Figure C-A-7.2

Alignment chart, sidesway uninhibited (moment frame)



AISC Table 4-14  
Available Critical Stress  $\phi_c F_{cr}$  for Compression Members  
 $F_y = 50$  ksi  $\phi_c = 0.90$

| $\frac{KL}{r}$ | $\phi F_{cr}$<br>ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | $\phi F_{cr}$<br>ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | $\phi F_{cr}$<br>ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | $\phi F_{cr}$<br>ksi | $\frac{KL}{r}$ | $\phi F_{cr}$<br>ksi |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1              | 45.0                 | 41             | 39.8                 | 81             | 27.9                 | 121            | 15.4                 | 161            | 8.72                 |
| 2              | 45.0                 | 42             | 39.5                 | 82             | 27.5                 | 122            | 15.2                 | 162            | 8.61                 |
| 3              | 45.0                 | 43             | 39.3                 | 83             | 27.2                 | 123            | 14.9                 | 163            | 8.50                 |
| 4              | 44.9                 | 44             | 39.1                 | 84             | 26.9                 | 124            | 14.7                 | 164            | 8.40                 |
| 5              | 44.9                 | 45             | 38.8                 | 85             | 26.5                 | 125            | 14.5                 | 165            | 8.30                 |
| 6              | 44.9                 | 46             | 38.5                 | 86             | 26.2                 | 126            | 14.2                 | 166            | 8.20                 |
| 7              | 44.8                 | 47             | 38.3                 | 87             | 25.9                 | 127            | 14.0                 | 167            | 8.10                 |
| 8              | 44.8                 | 48             | 38.0                 | 88             | 25.5                 | 128            | 13.8                 | 168            | 8.00                 |
| 9              | 44.7                 | 49             | 37.7                 | 89             | 25.2                 | 129            | 13.6                 | 169            | 7.89                 |
| 10             | 44.7                 | 50             | 37.5                 | 90             | 24.9                 | 130            | 13.4                 | 170            | 7.82                 |
| 11             | 44.6                 | 51             | 37.2                 | 91             | 24.6                 | 131            | 13.2                 | 171            | 7.73                 |
| 12             | 44.5                 | 52             | 36.9                 | 92             | 24.2                 | 132            | 13.0                 | 172            | 7.64                 |
| 13             | 44.4                 | 53             | 36.7                 | 93             | 23.9                 | 133            | 12.8                 | 173            | 7.55                 |
| 14             | 44.4                 | 54             | 36.4                 | 94             | 23.6                 | 134            | 12.6                 | 174            | 7.46                 |
| 15             | 44.3                 | 55             | 36.1                 | 95             | 23.3                 | 135            | 12.4                 | 175            | 7.38                 |
| 16             | 44.2                 | 56             | 35.8                 | 96             | 22.9                 | 136            | 12.2                 | 176            | 7.29                 |
| 17             | 44.1                 | 57             | 35.5                 | 97             | 22.6                 | 137            | 12.0                 | 177            | 7.21                 |
| 18             | 43.9                 | 58             | 35.2                 | 98             | 22.3                 | 138            | 11.9                 | 178            | 7.13                 |
| 19             | 43.8                 | 59             | 34.9                 | 99             | 22.0                 | 139            | 11.7                 | 179            | 7.05                 |
| 20             | 43.7                 | 60             | 34.6                 | 100            | 21.7                 | 140            | 11.5                 | 180            | 6.97                 |
| 21             | 43.6                 | 61             | 34.3                 | 101            | 21.3                 | 141            | 11.4                 | 181            | 6.90                 |
| 22             | 43.4                 | 62             | 34.0                 | 102            | 21.0                 | 142            | 11.2                 | 182            | 6.82                 |
| 23             | 43.3                 | 63             | 33.7                 | 103            | 20.7                 | 143            | 11.0                 | 183            | 6.75                 |
| 24             | 43.1                 | 64             | 33.4                 | 104            | 20.4                 | 144            | 10.9                 | 184            | 6.67                 |
| 25             | 43.0                 | 65             | 33.0                 | 105            | 20.1                 | 145            | 10.7                 | 185            | 6.60                 |
| 26             | 42.8                 | 66             | 32.7                 | 106            | 19.8                 | 146            | 10.6                 | 186            | 6.53                 |
| 27             | 42.7                 | 67             | 32.4                 | 107            | 19.5                 | 147            | 10.5                 | 187            | 6.46                 |
| 28             | 42.5                 | 68             | 32.1                 | 108            | 19.2                 | 148            | 10.3                 | 188            | 6.39                 |
| 29             | 42.3                 | 69             | 31.8                 | 109            | 18.9                 | 149            | 10.2                 | 189            | 6.32                 |
| 30             | 42.1                 | 70             | 31.4                 | 110            | 18.6                 | 150            | 10.0                 | 190            | 6.26                 |
| 31             | 41.9                 | 71             | 31.1                 | 111            | 18.3                 | 151            | 9.91                 | 191            | 6.19                 |
| 32             | 41.8                 | 72             | 30.8                 | 112            | 18.0                 | 152            | 9.78                 | 192            | 6.13                 |
| 33             | 41.6                 | 73             | 30.5                 | 113            | 17.7                 | 153            | 9.65                 | 193            | 6.06                 |
| 34             | 41.4                 | 74             | 30.2                 | 114            | 17.4                 | 154            | 9.53                 | 194            | 6.00                 |
| 35             | 41.2                 | 75             | 29.8                 | 115            | 17.1                 | 155            | 9.40                 | 195            | 5.94                 |
| 36             | 40.9                 | 76             | 29.5                 | 116            | 16.8                 | 156            | 9.28                 | 196            | 5.88                 |
| 37             | 40.7                 | 77             | 29.2                 | 117            | 16.5                 | 157            | 9.17                 | 197            | 5.82                 |
| 38             | 40.5                 | 78             | 28.8                 | 118            | 16.2                 | 158            | 9.05                 | 198            | 5.76                 |
| 39             | 40.3                 | 79             | 28.5                 | 119            | 16.0                 | 159            | 8.94                 | 199            | 5.70                 |
| 40             | 40.0                 | 80             | 28.2                 | 120            | 15.7                 | 160            | 8.82                 | 200            | 5.65                 |

Source: Adapted from *Steel Construction Manual*, 15th ed., AISC 2017.

| <div></div> <div>Selected W14, W12, W10</div> |     |     | AISC Table 4–1<br>Available Strength in Axial Compression, kips—W shapes<br>LRFD: $\phi P_n$ |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      | $F_y = 50 \text{ ksi}$<br>$\phi_c = 0.90$ |      |      |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----|------|------|------|-----|------|------|------|-----|------|-------------------------------------------|------|------|
| Shape<br>wt/ft                                                                                                                 |     | W14 |                                                                                              |     |      |      | W12  |     |      |      |      | W10 |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                |     | 74  | 68                                                                                           | 61  | 53   | 48   | 58   | 53  | 50   | 45   | 40   | 60  | 54   | 49                                        | 45   | 39   |
| Effective length KL (ft) with respect to least radius of gyration $r_y$                                                        | 0   | 980 | 899                                                                                          | 806 | 702  | 636  | 767  | 701 | 657  | 590  | 526  | 794 | 712  | 649                                       | 597  | 516  |
|                                                                                                                                |     |     |                                                                                              |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                | 6   | 922 | 844                                                                                          | 757 | 633  | 573  | 722  | 659 | 595  | 534  | 475  | 750 | 672  | 612                                       | 543  | 469  |
|                                                                                                                                | 7   | 901 | 826                                                                                          | 740 | 610  | 552  | 707  | 644 | 574  | 516  | 458  | 734 | 658  | 599                                       | 525  | 452  |
|                                                                                                                                | 8   | 878 | 804                                                                                          | 721 | 585  | 529  | 689  | 628 | 551  | 495  | 439  | 717 | 643  | 585                                       | 505  | 435  |
|                                                                                                                                | 9   | 853 | 781                                                                                          | 700 | 557  | 504  | 670  | 610 | 526  | 472  | 419  | 698 | 625  | 569                                       | 483  | 415  |
|                                                                                                                                | 10  | 826 | 755                                                                                          | 677 | 528  | 477  | 649  | 590 | 499  | 448  | 397  | 677 | 607  | 551                                       | 460  | 395  |
|                                                                                                                                |     |     |                                                                                              |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                | 11  | 797 | 728                                                                                          | 652 | 497  | 449  | 627  | 569 | 471  | 422  | 375  | 655 | 586  | 533                                       | 435  | 373  |
|                                                                                                                                | 12  | 766 | 700                                                                                          | 626 | 465  | 420  | 603  | 547 | 443  | 396  | 351  | 631 | 565  | 513                                       | 410  | 351  |
|                                                                                                                                | 13  | 734 | 670                                                                                          | 599 | 433  | 391  | 578  | 525 | 413  | 370  | 328  | 606 | 543  | 493                                       | 384  | 328  |
|                                                                                                                                | 14  | 701 | 639                                                                                          | 572 | 401  | 361  | 553  | 501 | 384  | 343  | 304  | 581 | 520  | 471                                       | 358  | 305  |
|                                                                                                                                | 15  | 667 | 608                                                                                          | 543 | 369  | 332  | 527  | 477 | 354  | 317  | 280  | 555 | 496  | 450                                       | 332  | 282  |
|                                                                                                                                |     |     |                                                                                              |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                | 16  | 632 | 576                                                                                          | 515 | 338  | 304  | 500  | 452 | 326  | 291  | 257  | 528 | 472  | 428                                       | 306  | 260  |
|                                                                                                                                | 17  | 598 | 544                                                                                          | 486 | 308  | 276  | 473  | 427 | 297  | 265  | 234  | 501 | 448  | 405                                       | 281  | 238  |
|                                                                                                                                | 18  | 563 | 512                                                                                          | 457 | 278  | 250  | 446  | 402 | 270  | 241  | 212  | 474 | 423  | 383                                       | 256  | 216  |
|                                                                                                                                | 19  | 528 | 480                                                                                          | 428 | 250  | 224  | 420  | 378 | 244  | 217  | 191  | 447 | 399  | 360                                       | 233  | 195  |
|                                                                                                                                | 20  | 494 | 448                                                                                          | 400 | 226  | 202  | 393  | 353 | 220  | 196  | 172  | 420 | 375  | 338                                       | 210  | 176  |
|                                                                                                                                |     |     |                                                                                              |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                | 22  | 428 | 387                                                                                          | 345 | 186  | 167  | 342  | 306 | 182  | 162  | 142  | 367 | 327  | 295                                       | 174  | 146  |
|                                                                                                                                | 24  | 365 | 329                                                                                          | 293 | 157  | 140  | 293  | 261 | 153  | 136  | 120  | 317 | 282  | 254                                       | 146  | 122  |
|                                                                                                                                | 26  | 311 | 281                                                                                          | 250 | 133  | 120  | 249  | 222 | 130  | 116  | 102  | 270 | 241  | 216                                       | 124  | 104  |
|                                                                                                                                | 28  | 268 | 242                                                                                          | 215 | 115  | 103  | 215  | 192 | 112  | 99.8 | 88.0 | 233 | 208  | 186                                       | 107  | 90.0 |
|                                                                                                                                | 30  | 234 | 211                                                                                          | 187 | 100  | 89.9 | 187  | 167 | 97.7 | 87.0 | 76.6 | 203 | 181  | 162                                       | 93.4 | 78.4 |
|                                                                                                                                |     |     |                                                                                              |     |      |      |      |     |      |      |      |     |      |                                           |      |      |
|                                                                                                                                | 32  | 205 | 185                                                                                          | 165 | 88.1 |      | 165  | 147 | 82.9 | 76.4 | 67.3 | 179 | 159  | 143                                       | 82.1 | 68.9 |
|                                                                                                                                | 34  | 182 | 164                                                                                          | 146 |      |      | 146  | 130 |      |      |      | 158 | 141  | 126                                       |      |      |
| 36                                                                                                                             | 162 | 146 | 130                                                                                          |     |      | 130  | 116  |     |      |      | 141  | 126 | 113  |                                           |      |      |
| 38                                                                                                                             | 146 | 131 | 117                                                                                          |     |      | 117  | 104  |     |      |      | 127  | 113 | 101  |                                           |      |      |
| 40                                                                                                                             | 131 | 119 | 105                                                                                          |     |      | 105  | 93.9 |     |      |      | 114  | 102 | 91.3 |                                           |      |      |

## Environmental Engineering

For information about environmental engineering, refer to the **Environmental Engineering** section.

## Hydrology/Water Resources

### Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS)/Soil Conservation Service (SCS) Rainfall-Runoff

$$Q = \frac{(P - 0.2S)^2}{P + 0.8S}$$

$$S = \frac{1,000}{CN} - 10$$

$$CN = \frac{1,000}{S + 10}$$

where

$P$  = precipitation (inches)

$S$  = maximum basin retention (inches)

$Q$  = runoff (inches)

$CN$  = curve number

### Rational Formula

$$Q = CIA$$

where

$A$  = watershed area (acres)

$C$  = runoff coefficient

$I$  = rainfall intensity (in./hr)

$Q$  = peak discharge (cfs)

### Hydrologic Mass Balance (Budget)

#### Surface Water System Hydrologic Budget

$$P + Q_{\text{in}} - Q_{\text{out}} + Q_g - E_s - T_s - I = \Delta S_s$$

$P$  = precipitation

$Q_{\text{in}}$  = surface water into the system

$Q_{\text{out}}$  = surface water out of the system

$Q_g$  = groundwater into the stream

$E_s$  = surface evaporation

$T_s$  = transpiration

$I$  = Infiltration

$\Delta S_s$  = change in water storage of surface water system

#### Pan Evaporation

The lake evaporation  $E_L$  is related to the pan evaporation  $E_p$  by the expression:

$$E_L = P_c E_p$$

where  $P_c$  = pan coefficient ( $P_c$  ranges from 0.3 to 0.85; common  $P_c = 0.7$ )

## Evapotranspiration Rates for Grasses

### Grass-Reference Evapotranspiration Rates

| Range (mm/day) | Classification |
|----------------|----------------|
| 0–2.5          | Low            |
| 2.5–5.0        | Moderate       |
| 5.0–7.5        | High           |
| >7.5           | Very High      |

Source: Allen et al. (1998)

Source: Chin, David, *Water-Resources Engineering*, 2nd ed., Pearson, 2006, p. 542.

## Lake Classification

### Lake Classification Based on Productivity

| Lake Classification |         | Chlorophyll <i>a</i><br>Concentration (µg/L) | Secchi Depth<br>(m) | Total Phosphorus<br>Concentration (µg/L) |
|---------------------|---------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------------------------|
| Oligotrophic        | Average | 1.7                                          | 9.9                 | 8                                        |
|                     | Range   | 0.3–4.5                                      | 5.4–28.3            | 3.0–17.7                                 |
| Mesotrophic         | Average | 4.7                                          | 4.2                 | 26.7                                     |
|                     | Range   | 3–11                                         | 1.5–8.1             | 10.9–95.6                                |
| Eutrophic           | Average | 14.3                                         | 2.5                 | 84.4                                     |
|                     | Range   | 3–78                                         | 0.0–7.0             | 15–386                                   |

Source: Wetzel, 1983

Source: Davis, MacKenzie and David Cornwell, *Introduction to Environmental Engineering*, 4th ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008, p. 394.

## Hydraulic Conductivity/Permeability

From constant head test:

$$K = Q/(iAt_e) \text{ (ft/sec or m/s)}$$

$$i = dh/dx \text{ (ft/ft or m/m)}$$

$$Q = \text{total quantity of water (ft}^3 \text{ or m}^3\text{)}$$

From falling head test:

$$K = 2.303[(aL)/(At_e)]\log_{10}(h_1/h_2) \text{ (ft/sec or m/s)}$$

where

$$A = \text{cross-sectional area of test specimen perpendicular to flow (ft}^2 \text{ or m}^2\text{)}$$

$$a = \text{cross-sectional area of reservoir tube (ft}^2 \text{ or m}^2\text{)}$$

$$t_e = \text{elapsed time (s)}$$

$$h_1 = \text{head at time } t = 0 \text{ (ft or m)}$$

$$h_2 = \text{head at time } t = t_e \text{ (ft or m)}$$

$$x = \text{length of soil column (ft or m)}$$

Discharge velocity

$$v = Ki \text{ (ft/sec or m/s)}$$

## Darcy's Law

$$Q = -KA \frac{dh}{dx}$$

where

$Q$  = discharge rate (ft<sup>3</sup>/sec or m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$K$  = hydraulic conductivity (ft/sec or m/s)

$h$  = hydraulic head (ft or m)

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow (ft<sup>2</sup> or m<sup>2</sup>)

$$q = -K \frac{dh}{dx}$$

where

$q$  = specific discharge (also called *Darcy velocity* or *superficial velocity*)

$$v = \frac{q}{n} = \frac{-K}{n} \frac{dh}{dx}$$

where

$v$  = average seepage velocity

$n$  = effective porosity

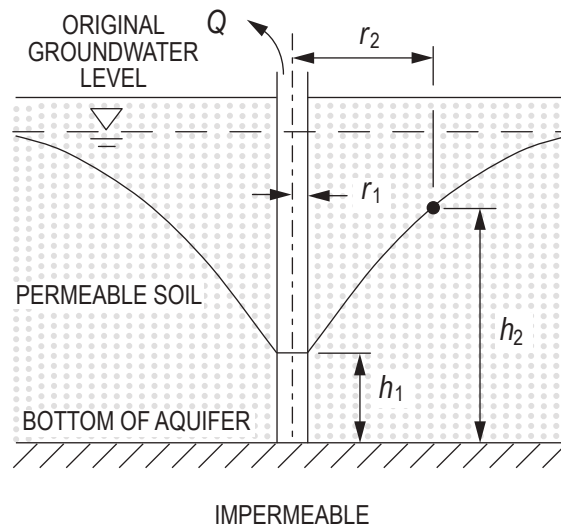
*Unit hydrograph*: The direct runoff hydrograph that would result from one unit of rainfall occurring uniformly in space and time over a specified period of time.

*Transmissivity, T*: The product of hydraulic conductivity and thickness,  $b$ , of the aquifer ( $L^2T^{-1}$ ).

*Storativity or storage coefficient of an aquifer, S*: The volume of water taken into or released from storage per unit surface area per unit change in potentiometric (piezometric) head.

## Well Drawdown

*Unconfined aquifer*



## Dupuit's Formula

$$Q = \frac{\pi K (h_2^2 - h_1^2)}{\ln \left( \frac{r_2}{r_1} \right)}$$

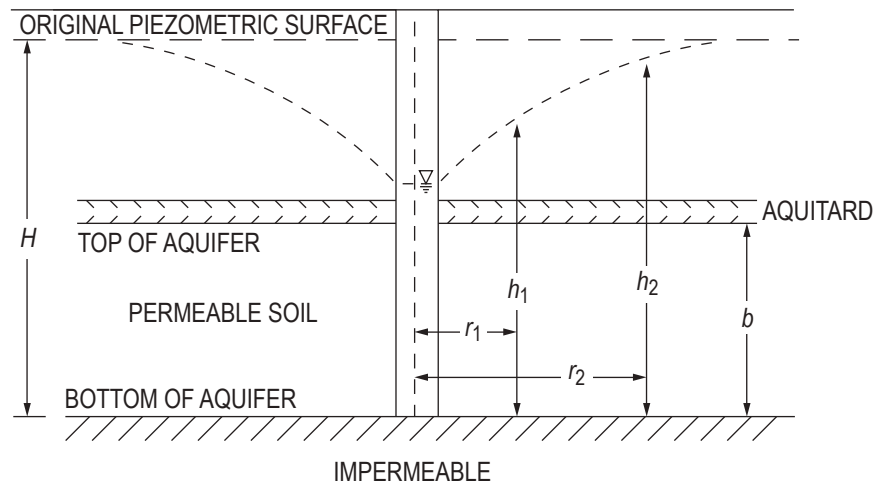
where

$Q$  = flow rate of water drawn from well (cfs)

$K$  = coefficient of permeability of soil; hydraulic conductivity (ft/sec)

- $h_1$  = height of water surface above bottom of aquifer at perimeter of well (ft)  
 $h_2$  = height of water surface above bottom of aquifer at distance  $r_2$  from well centerline (ft)  
 $r_1$  = radius to water surface at perimeter of well, i.e., radius of well (ft)  
 $r_2$  = radius to water surface whose height is  $h_2$  above bottom of aquifer (ft)  
 $\ln$  = natural logarithm  
 $Q/D_w$  = specific capacity  
 $D_w$  = well drawdown (ft)

*Confined aquifer*



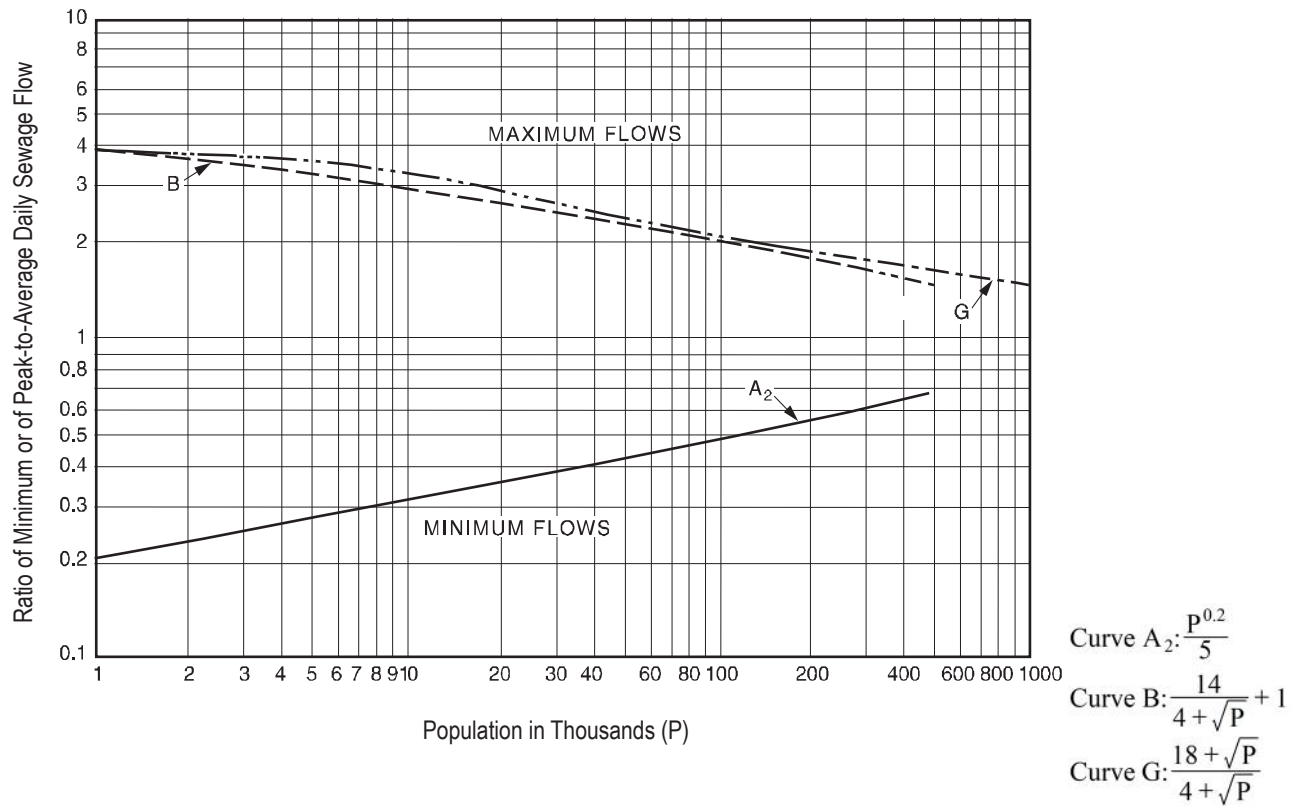
### Thiem Equation

$$Q = \frac{2\pi T(h_2 - h_1)}{\ln\left(\frac{r_2}{r_1}\right)}$$

where

- $T = Kb$  = transmissivity (ft<sup>2</sup>/sec)  
 $b$  = thickness of confined aquifer (ft)  
 $h_1, h_2$  = heights of piezometric surface above bottom of aquifer (ft)  
 $r_1, r_2$  = radii from pumping well (ft)  
 $\ln$  = natural logarithm  
 $H$  = height of peizometric surface prior to pumping (ft)

## Sewage Flow Ratio Curves

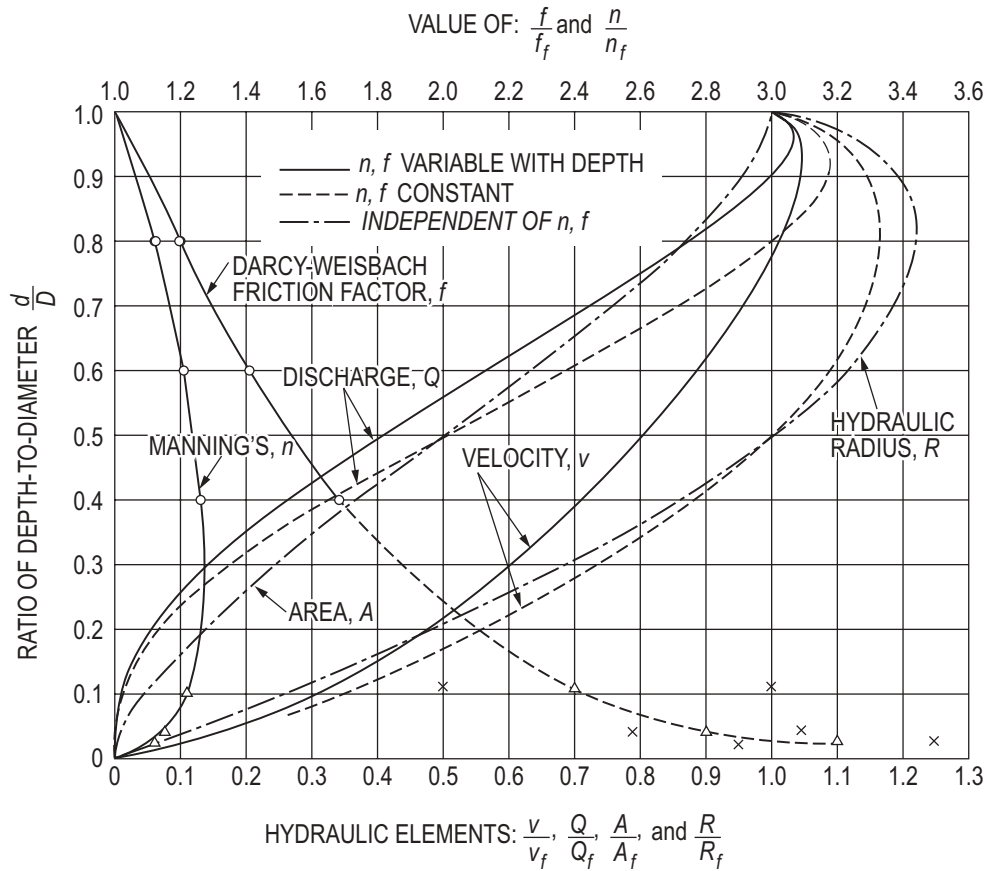


Source: *Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers*, Water Pollution Control Federation and American Society of Civil Engineers, 1970.

Reprinted with permission from ASCE.

This material may be downloaded from [neces.org](http://neces.org) for personal use only. Any other use requires prior permission of ASCE.

## Hydraulic-Element (Partial Flow) Graph for Circular Sewers



Source: *Design and Construction of Sanitary and Storm Sewers*, Water Pollution Control Federation and American Society of Civil Engineers, 1970.

Reprinted with permission from ASCE.

This material may be downloaded from [ncees.org](http://ncees.org) for personal use only. Any other use requires prior permission of ASCE.

## Specific Energy

$$E = \alpha \frac{v^2}{2g} + y = \frac{\alpha Q^2}{2gA^2} + y$$

where

$E$  = specific energy

$Q$  = discharge

$v$  = velocity

$y$  = depth of flow

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow

$\alpha$  = kinetic energy correction factor, usually 1.0

Critical Depth = that depth in a channel at minimum specific energy

$$\frac{Q^2}{g} = \frac{A^3}{T}$$

where  $Q$  and  $A$  are as defined above,

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity

$T$  = width of the water surface

For rectangular channels

$$y_c = \left( \frac{q^2}{g} \right)^{1/3}$$

where

$y_c$  = critical depth

$q$  = unit discharge =  $\frac{Q}{B}$

$B$  = channel width

$g$  = acceleration due to gravity

Froude number = ratio of inertial forces to gravity forces

$$Fr = \frac{V}{\sqrt{gy_h}} = \sqrt{\frac{Q^2 T}{gA^3}}$$

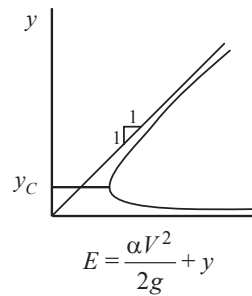
where  $y_h$  = hydraulic depth =  $\frac{A}{T}$

Supercritical flow:  $Fr > 1$

Subcritical flow:  $Fr < 1$

Critical flow:  $Fr = 1$

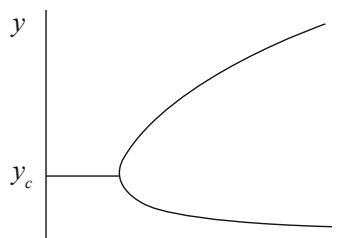
### Specific Energy Diagram



*Alternate depths*: depths with the same specific energy

*Uniform flow*: a flow condition where depth and velocity do not change along a channel

### Momentum Depth Diagram



$$M = \frac{Q^2}{gA} + Ah_c$$

where  $h_c$  = vertical distance from liquid surface to centroid of area

*Sequent (conjugate) depths*: depths with the same momentum

## Hydraulic Jump

$$y_2 = \frac{y_1}{2} \left( -1 + \sqrt{1 + 8Fr_1^2} \right)$$

where

$y_1$  = flow depth at upstream supercritical flow location

$y_2$  = flow depth at downstream subcritical flow location

$Fr_1$  = Froude number at upstream supercritical flow location

## Manning's Equation

$$Q = \frac{K}{n} A R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

$$v = \frac{K}{n} R_H^{2/3} S^{1/2}$$

where

$Q$  = discharge (ft<sup>3</sup>/sec or m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$v$  = velocity (ft/sec or m/s)

$K$  = 1.486 for USCS units, 1.0 for SI units

$n$  = roughness coefficient

$A$  = cross-sectional area of flow (ft<sup>2</sup> or m<sup>2</sup>)

$R_H$  = hydraulic radius (ft or m) =  $\frac{A}{P}$

$P$  = wetted perimeter (ft or m)

$S$  = slope (ft/ft or m/m)

## Weir Formulas

### Rectangular

Free discharge suppressed

$$Q = CLH^{3/2}$$

Free discharge contracted

$$Q = C(L - 0.2H)H^{3/2}$$

### V-Notch

$$Q = CH^{5/2}$$

where

$Q$  = discharge (ft<sup>3</sup>/sec or m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$C$  = 3.33 for rectangular weir (USCS units)

$C$  = 1.84 for rectangular weir (SI units)

$C$  = 2.54 for 90° V-notch weir (USCS units)

$C$  = 1.40 for 90° V-notch weir (SI units)

$L$  = weir length (ft or m)

$H$  = head (depth of discharge over weir) ft or m

## Hazen-Williams Equation

$$v = k_1 C R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

where

$$Q = k_1 C A R_H^{0.63} S^{0.54}$$

where

$C$  = roughness coefficient

$k_1$  = 0.849 for SI units

$k_1$  = 1.318 for USCS units

$R_H$  = hydraulic radius (ft or m)

$$S = \text{slope of energy grade line (ft/ft or m/m)} = \frac{h_f}{L}$$

$$v = \text{velocity (ft/sec or m/s)}$$

$$Q = \text{discharge (ft}^3\text{/sec or m}^3\text{/s)}$$

### Circular Pipe Head Loss Equation (Head Loss Expressed in Feet)

$$h_f = \frac{4.73 L}{C^{1.852} D^{4.87}} Q^{1.852}$$

where

$$h_f = \text{head loss (ft)}$$

$$L = \text{pipe length (ft)}$$

$$D = \text{pipe diameter (ft)}$$

$$Q = \text{flow (cfs)}$$

$$C = \text{Hazen-Williams coefficient}$$

### Circular Pipe Head Loss Equation (Head Loss Expressed as Pressure)

#### U.S. Customary Units

$$P = \frac{4.52 Q^{1.85}}{C^{1.85} D^{4.87}}$$

where

$$P = \text{pressure loss (psi per foot of pipe)}$$

$$Q = \text{flow (gpm)}$$

$$D = \text{pipe diameter (inches)}$$

$$C = \text{Hazen-Williams coefficient}$$

#### SI Units

$$P = \frac{6.05 Q^{1.85}}{C^{1.85} D^{4.87}} \times 10^5$$

where

$$P = \text{pressure loss (bars per meter of pipe)}$$

$$Q = \text{flow (liters/minute)}$$

$$D = \text{pipe diameter (mm)}$$

| Values of Hazen-Williams Coefficient <i>C</i> |          |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------|
| Pipe Material                                 | <i>C</i> |
| Ductile iron                                  | 140      |
| Concrete (regardless of age)                  | 130      |
| Cast iron:                                    |          |
| New                                           | 130      |
| 5 yr old                                      | 120      |
| 20 yr old                                     | 100      |
| Welded steel, new                             | 120      |
| Wood stave (regardless of age)                | 120      |
| Vitrified clay                                | 110      |
| Riveted steel, new                            | 110      |
| Brick sewers                                  | 100      |
| Asbestos-cement                               | 140      |
| Plastic                                       | 150      |

## Formula for Calculating Rated Capacity at 20 psi from Fire Hydrant

$$Q_R = Q_F \times (H_R/H_F)^{0.54}$$

where

$Q_R$  = rated capacity (gpm) at 20 psi

$Q_F$  = total test flow

$H_R$  =  $P_S - 20$  psi

$H_F$  =  $P_S - P_R$

$P_S$  = static pressure

$P_R$  = residual pressure

Source: NFPA Standard 291, *Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants*, Section 4.10.1.2

## Fire Hydrant Discharging to Atmosphere

$$Q = 29.8 D^2 C_d P^{1/2}$$

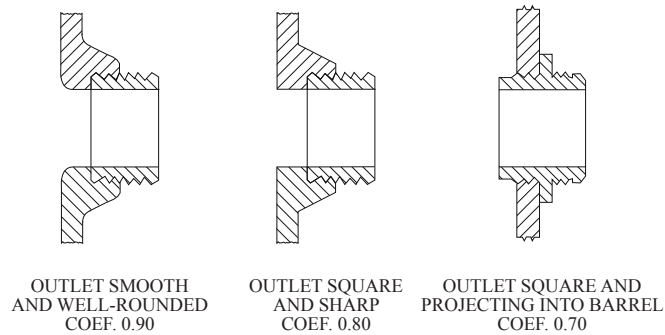
where

$Q$  = discharge (gpm)

$D$  = outlet diameter (in.)

$P$  = pressure detected by pitot gauge (psi)

$C_d$  = hydrant coefficient based on hydrant outlet geometry



Source: NFPA Standard 291, *Recommended Practice for Fire Flow Testing and Marking of Hydrants*, Section 4.10.1.2

## Fire Sprinkler Discharge

$$Q = KP^{1/2}$$

where

$Q$  = flow (gpm)

$K$  = measure of the ease of getting water out of the orifice, related to size and shape of the orifice in units of gpm per (psi)<sup>1/2</sup>

$P$  = pressure (psi)

## Sprinkler K Factors

| Orifice Size | Name        | K Factor |
|--------------|-------------|----------|
| 1/2"         | Standard    | 5.6      |
| 17/32"       | Large       | 8.0      |
| 5/8"         | Extra large | 11.2     |

## Transportation

Queueing models are found in the Industrial Engineering section.

### Traffic Signal Timing

$$y = t + \frac{v}{2a \pm 64.4 G}$$

$$r = \frac{W + l}{v}$$

$$G_p = 3.2 + \frac{L}{S_p} + 0.27 N_{\text{ped}}$$

where

$t$  = driver reaction time (sec)

$v$  = vehicle approach speed (ft/sec)

$W$  = width of intersection, curb-to-curb (ft)

$l$  = length of vehicle (ft)

$y$  = length of yellow interval to nearest 0.1 sec (sec)

$r$  = length of red clearance interval to nearest 0.1 sec (sec)

$G_p$  = minimum green time for pedestrians (sec)

$L$  = crosswalk length (ft)

$S_p$  = pedestrian speed (ft/sec), default 3.5 ft/sec

$N_{\text{ped}}$  = number of pedestrian in interval

$a$  = deceleration (ft/sec<sup>2</sup>)

$\pm G$  = percent grade divided by 100 (uphill grade "+")

### Stopping Sight Distance

$$SSD = 1.47 Vt + \frac{V^2}{30 \left( \left( \frac{a}{32.2} \right) \pm G \right)}$$

$$ISD = 1.47 V_{\text{major}} t_g$$

where

$a$  = deceleration (ft/sec<sup>2</sup>)

$\pm G$  = percent grade divided by 100 (uphill grade "+")

$SSD$  = stopping sight distance (ft)

$ISD$  = intersection sight distance (ft)

$t$  = driver reaction time (sec)

$t_g$  = time gap for vehicle entering roadway (sec)

$V$  = design speed (mph)

$V_{\text{major}}$  = design speed of major road (mph)

### Peak Hour Factor

$$PHF = \frac{\text{Hourly Volume}}{\text{Hourly Flow Rate}} = \frac{V}{4 * V_{15}}$$

where

$PHF$  = peak hour factor

$V$  = hourly volume (veh/hr)

$V_{15}$  = peak 15-min. volume (veh/15 min)

## Vertical Curves

$$y = ax^2$$

$$A = |g_2 - g_1| \times 100$$

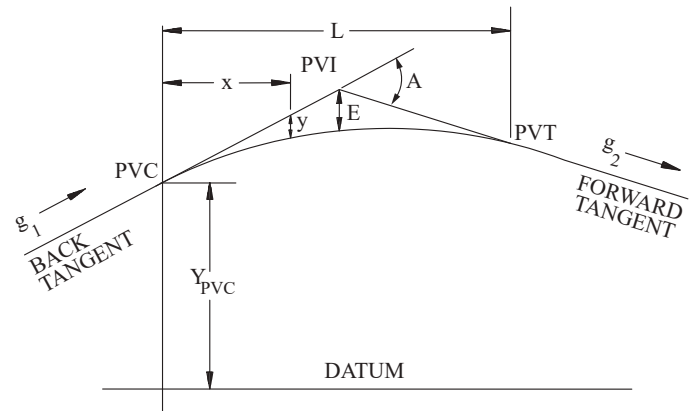
$$a = \frac{g_2 - g_1}{2L}$$

$$E = a\left(\frac{L}{2}\right)^2$$

$$r = \frac{g_2 - g_1}{L}$$

$$K = \frac{L}{A}$$

$$x_m = -\frac{g_1}{2a} = \frac{g_1 L}{g_1 - g_2}$$



Source: Compiled from AASHTO, *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, 6th ed., 2011.

$$\text{Tangent elevation} = Y_{PVC} + g_1 x = Y_{PVI} + g_2 (x - L/2)$$

$$\text{Curve elevation} = Y_{PVC} + g_1 x + ax^2 = Y_{PVC} + g_1 x + [(g_2 - g_1)/(2L)]x^2$$

where

PVC= point of vertical curvature, or beginning of curve

PVI = point of vertical intersection, or vertex

PVT= point of vertical tangency, or end of curve

A = algebraic difference in grades (percentage)

a = parabola constant

E = tangent offset at PVI

$g_1$  = percent grade of back tangent divided by 100

$g_2$  = percent grade of forward tangent divided by 100

$h_1$  = height of driver's eyes above the roadway surface (ft)

$h_2$  = height of object above the roadway surface (ft)

K = rate of vertical curvature

L = length of curve (ft)

r = rate of change of grade

S = sight distance (ft)

x = horizontal distance from PVC to point on curve (ft)

$x_m$  = horizontal distance to min/max elevation on curve (ft)

y = tangent offset

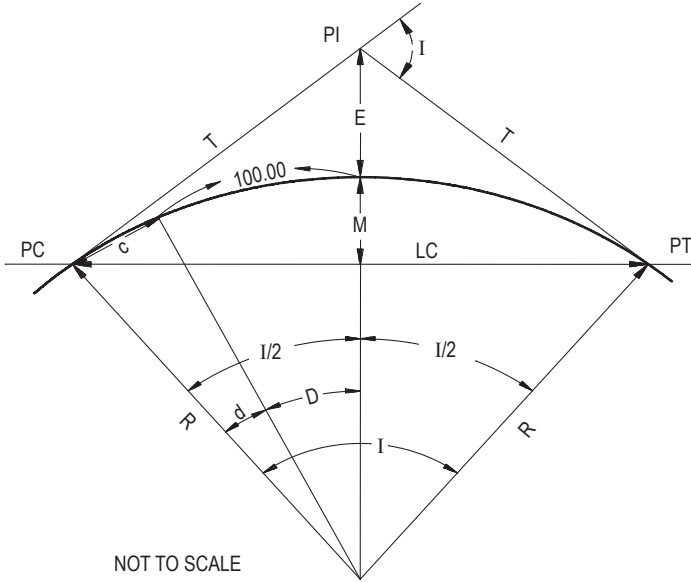
V = design speed (mph)

Y = elevation (ft)

| Vertical Curves: Sight Distance Related to Curve Length                                                                           |                                                                                                                 |                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
|                                                                                                                                   | $S \leq L$                                                                                                      | $S > L$                                                         |
| Crest Vertical Curve<br>General equation:                                                                                         | $L = \frac{AS^2}{100(\sqrt{2h_1} + \sqrt{2h_2})^2}$                                                             | $L = 2S - \frac{200(\sqrt{h_1} + \sqrt{h_2})^2}{A}$             |
| Standard Criteria:<br>$h_1 = 3.50$ ft and $h_2 = 2.0$ ft:                                                                         | $L = \frac{AS^2}{2,158}$                                                                                        | $L = 2S - \frac{2,158}{A}$                                      |
| Sag Vertical Curve<br>(based on standard headlight criteria)                                                                      | $L = \frac{AS^2}{400 + 3.5S}$                                                                                   | $L = 2S - \left( \frac{400 + 3.5S}{A} \right)$                  |
| Sag Vertical Curve<br>(based on riding comfort)                                                                                   | $L = \frac{AV^2}{46.5}$                                                                                         |                                                                 |
| Sag Vertical Curve<br>(based on adequate sight distance under an overhead structure to see an object beyond a sag vertical curve) | $L = \frac{AS^2}{800 \left( C - \frac{h_1 + h_2}{2} \right)}$                                                   | $L = 2S - \frac{800}{A} \left( C - \frac{h_1 + h_2}{2} \right)$ |
|                                                                                                                                   | $C$ = vertical clearance for overhead structure (overpass) located within 200 feet of the midpoint of the curve |                                                                 |

Source: Compiled from AASHTO, *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, 6th ed., 2011.

## Horizontal Curves



$$R = \frac{5729.58}{D}$$

$$R = \frac{LC}{2 \sin(I/2)}$$

$$T = R \tan(I/2) = \frac{LC}{2 \cos(I/2)}$$

$$L = RI \frac{\pi}{180} = \frac{I}{D} 100$$

$$M = R[1 - \cos(I/2)]$$

$$\frac{R}{E + R} = \cos(I/2)$$

$$\frac{R - M}{R} = \cos(I/2)$$

$$c = 2R \sin(d/2)$$

$$l = Rd\left(\frac{\pi}{180}\right)$$

$$E = R\left[\frac{1}{\cos(I/2)} - 1\right]$$

where

- $c$  = length of sub-chord
- $d$  = angle of sub-chord
- $D$  = degree of curve, arc definition
- $e$  = superelevation (%)
- $E$  = external distance
- $f$  = side friction factor
- $I$  = intersection angle (also called  $\Delta$ ); angle between two tangents
- $l$  = curve length for sub-chord
- $L$  = length of curve, from  $PC$  to  $PT$
- $LC$  = length of long chord
- $M$  = length of middle ordinate
- $PC$  = point of curve (also called  $BC$ )
- $PI$  = point of intersection
- $PT$  = point of tangent (also called  $EC$ )
- $R$  = radius
- $S$  = sight distance (ft)
- $T$  = tangent distance
- $V$  = design speed (mph)

| Horizontal Curves                              |                                                                                                                                                    |
|------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Side friction factor (based on superelevation) | $0.01e + f = \frac{V^2}{15R}$                                                                                                                      |
| Spiral Transition Length                       | $L_s = \frac{3.15V^3}{RC}$ <p><math>C</math> = rate of increase of lateral acceleration<br/>[use 1 ft/sec<sup>3</sup> unless otherwise stated]</p> |
| Sight Distance (to see around obstruction)     | $HSO = R \left[ 1 - \cos\left(\frac{28.65S}{R}\right) \right]$ <p>HSO = Horizontal sight line offset</p>                                           |

## Basic Freeway Segment Highway Capacity

### Parameters for Speed-Flow Curves for Basic Freeway Segments

| Parameter   | Definition and Units                     | Basic Freeway Segments                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| $FFS$       | Base segment free-flow speed (mph)       | Measured <i>or</i> predicted with equation                            |
| $FFS_{adj}$ | Adjusted free-flow speed (mph)           | $FFS_{adj} = FFS \times SAF$                                          |
| $SAF$       | Speed adjustment factor (decimal)        | $SAF = 1.00$ for base conditions                                      |
| $c$         | Base segment capacity (pc/h/ln)          | $c = 2,200 + 10(FFS - 50)$<br>$c \leq 2,400$<br>$55 \leq FFS \leq 75$ |
| $c_{adj}$   | Adjusted segment capacity (pc/h/ln)      | $c_{adj} = c \times CAF$                                              |
| $CAF$       | Capacity adjustment factor (decimal)     | $CAF = 1.00$ for base conditions                                      |
| $D_c$       | Density at capacity (pc/mi/ln)           | 45                                                                    |
| $BP$        | Breakpoint (pc/h/ln)                     | $BP_{adj} = [1,000 + 40 \times (75 - FFS_{adj})] \times CAF^2$        |
| $a$         | Exponent calibration parameter (decimal) | 2.00                                                                  |

Source: Adapted from *HCM: Highway Capacity Manual, 6th ed., A Guide for Multimodal Mobility Analysis*, Transportation Research Board of the National Academies, Washington, DC, 2016.

where

pc/h/ln = passenger cars per hour per lane

$$S = FFS_{adj}$$

$$v_p \leq BP$$

$$S = FFS_{adj} - \frac{\left( FFS_{adj} - \frac{c_{adj}}{D_c} \right) (v_p - BP)^a}{(c_{adj} - BP)^a}$$

$$BP < v_p \leq c$$

$$FFS = BFFS - f_{LW} - f_{RLC} - 3.22 TRD^{0.84}$$

where

$FFS$  = free flow speed of basic freeway segment (mph)

$BFFS$  = base free flow speed of basic freeway segment (mph); default is 75.4 mph

$f_{LW}$  = adjustment for lane width (mph)

$f_{RLC}$  = adjustment for right-side lateral clearance (mph)

$TRD$  = total ramp density (ramps/mi)

#### Adjustment to FFS for Average Lane Width for Basic Freeway and Multilane Highway Segments

| Average Lane Width (ft) | Reduction in FFS, $f_{LW}$ (mph) |
|-------------------------|----------------------------------|
| $\geq 12$               | 0.0                              |
| $\geq 11 - 12$          | 1.9                              |
| $\geq 10 - 11$          | 6.6                              |

Source: *HCM: Highway Capacity Manual, 6th ed., A Guide for Multimodal Mobility Analysis*, Transportation Research Board of the National Academies, Washington, DC, 2016, Exhibit 12-20, p. 12-29.

**Adjustment to FFS for Right-Side Lateral Clearance,  $f_{RLC}$  (mph), for Basic Freeway Segments**

| Right-Side Lateral Clearance (ft) | Lanes in One Direction |     |     |     |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|
|                                   | 2                      | 3   | 4   | ≥5  |
| ≥6                                | 0.0                    | 0.0 | 0.0 | 0.0 |
| 5                                 | 0.6                    | 0.4 | 0.2 | 0.1 |
| 4                                 | 1.2                    | 0.8 | 0.4 | 0.2 |
| 3                                 | 1.8                    | 1.2 | 0.6 | 0.3 |
| 2                                 | 2.4                    | 1.6 | 0.8 | 0.4 |
| 1                                 | 3.0                    | 2.0 | 1.0 | 0.5 |
| 0                                 | 3.6                    | 2.4 | 1.2 | 0.6 |

Source: HCM: Highway Capacity Manual, 6th ed., A Guide for Multimodal Mobility Analysis, Transportation Research Board of the National Academies, Washington, DC, 2016, Exhibit 12-21, p. 12-29.

$$v_p = \frac{V}{PHF \times N \times f_{HV}}$$

where

$v_p$  = demand flow rate under equivalent base conditions (pc/h/ln)

$V$  = demand volume under prevailing conditions (veh/h)

$PHF$  = peak-hour factor

$N$  = number of lanes in analysis direction

$f_{HV}$  = adjustment factor for presence of heavy vehicles in traffic stream, calculated with

$$f_{HV} = \frac{1}{1 + P_T(E_T - 1)}$$

where

$f_{HV}$  = heavy-vehicle adjustment factor

$P_T$  = proportion of single unit trucks and tractor trailers in traffic stream

$E_T$  = passenger-car equivalent (PCE) of single unit truck or tractor trailer in traffic stream

| Vehicle | PCE by Type of Terrain |         |
|---------|------------------------|---------|
|         | Level                  | Rolling |
| $E_T$   | 2.0                    | 3.0     |

$$D = \frac{v_p}{S}$$

where

$D$  = density(pc/mi/ln)

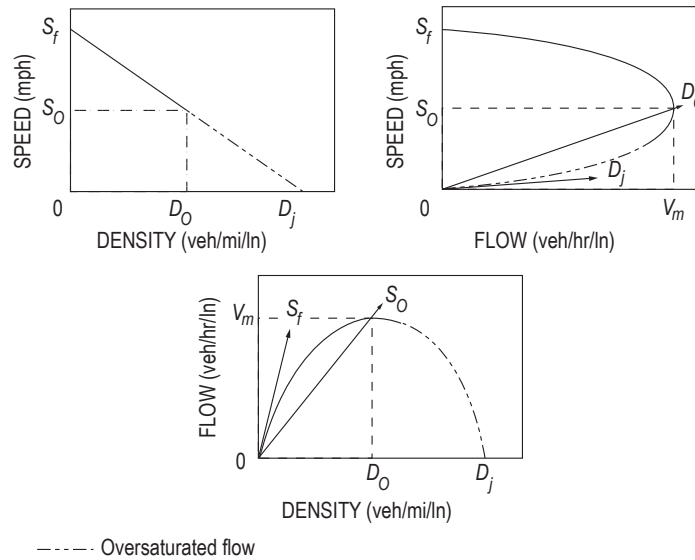
$v_p$  = demand flow rate (pc/h/ln)

$S$  = mean speed of traffic stream under base conditions (mph)

| Level of Service (LOS) | Density (pc/mi/ln)             |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| A                      | ≤11                            |
| B                      | >11 – 18                       |
| C                      | >18 – 26                       |
| D                      | >26 – 35                       |
| E                      | >35 – 45                       |
| F                      | Demand exceeds capacity<br>>45 |

## Traffic Flow Relationships

### Greenshields Model



$$S = S_f - \frac{S_f}{D_j} D$$

$$V = S_f D - \frac{S_f}{D_j} D^2$$

$$V_m = \frac{D_j S_f}{4}$$

$$D_o = \frac{D_j}{2}$$

Source: AASHTO, *A Policy on Geometric Design of Highways and Streets*, 6th ed., 2011. Used by permission.

where

$D$  = density (veh/mi/ln)

$S$  = speed (mph)

$V$  = flow (veh/hr/ln)

$V_m$  = maximum flow (veh/hr/ln)

$D_o$  = optimum density (sometimes called *critical density*) (veh/mi/ln)

$D_j$  = jam density (veh/mi/ln)

$S_o$  = optimum speed (often called *critical speed*) (mph)

$S_f$  = theoretical speed selected by the first driver entering a facility (i.e., under zero density and zero flow rate conditions) (mph)

### Gravity Model

$$T_{ij} = P_i \left[ \frac{A_j F_{ij} K_{ij}}{\sum_j A_j F_{ij} K_{ij}} \right]$$

where

$T_{ij}$  = number of trips that are produced in Zone  $i$  and attracted to Zone  $j$

$P_i$  = total number of trips produced in Zone  $i$

$A_j$  = number of trips attracted to Zone  $j$

$F_{ij}$  = friction factor that is an inverse function of travel time between Zones  $i$  and  $j$

$K_{ij}$  = socioeconomic adjustment factor for travel between Zones  $i$  and  $j$

## Logit Models

$$U_x = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i X_i$$

where

$U_x$  = utility of Mode  $x$

$n$  = number of attributes

$X_i$  = attribute value (time, cost, and so forth)

$a_i$  = coefficient value for attributes  $i$  (negative, since the values are disutilities)

If two modes, auto ( $A$ ) and transit ( $T$ ), are being considered, the probability of selecting the auto Mode  $A$  can be written as

$$P(A) = \frac{e^{U_A}}{e^{U_A} + e^{U_T}}$$

If  $n$  modes of travel are being considered, the probability of selecting Mode  $x$  can be written as:

$$P(x) = \frac{e^{U_x}}{\sum_{x=1}^n e^{U_x}}$$

## Traffic Safety Equations

### Crash Rates at Intersections

$$RMEV = \frac{A \times 1,000,000}{V}$$

where

$RMEV$  = crash rate per million entering vehicles

$A$  = number of crashes, total or by type occurring in a single year at the location

$V$  =  $ADT \times 365$

$ADT$  = average daily traffic entering intersection

### Crash Rates for Roadway Segments

$$RMVM = \frac{A \times 1,000,000}{VMT}$$

where

$RMVM$  = crash rate per million vehicle miles

$A$  = number of crashes, total or by type at the study location, during a given period

$VMT$  = vehicle miles of travel during the given period;  
=  $ADT \times (\text{number of days in study period}) \times (\text{length of road})$

$ADT$  = average daily traffic on the roadway segment

### Crash Reduction

$$\text{Crashes prevented} = N \times CR \frac{(\text{ADT after improvement})}{(\text{ADT before improvement})}$$

where

$N$  = expected number of crashes if countermeasure is not implemented and if the traffic volume remains the same

$CR = CR_1 + (1 - CR_1)CR_2 + (1 - CR_1)(1 - CR_2)CR_3 + \dots + (1 - CR_1) \dots (1 - CR_{m-1}) CR_m$

overall crash reduction factor for multiple mutually exclusive improvements at a single site

$CR_i$  = crash reduction factor for a specific countermeasure  $i$

$m$  = number of countermeasures at the site

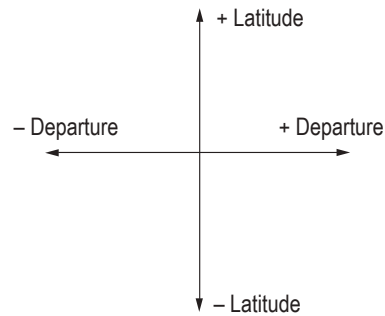
Source: Garber, Nicholas J., and Lester A. Hoel, *Traffic and Highway Engineering*, 4th ed., Cengage Learning, 2009.

Highway Pavement Design

| AASHTO Structural Number Equation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |  |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--|
| $SN = a_1 D_1 + a_2 D_2 m_2 + a_3 D_3 m_3 + \dots + a_n D_n m_n$ <p>where</p> <p><math>SN</math> = structural number for the pavement</p> <p><math>a_i</math> = layer coefficient</p> <p><math>D_i</math> = thickness of layer (inches)</p> <p><math>m_i</math> = drainage coefficient (assume <math>m</math> equals 1.0 unless otherwise given)</p> |  |

| Gross Axle Load                                             |               | Load Equivalency Factors |               | Gross Axle Load |               | Load Equivalency Factors |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------------------|--------------|
| kN                                                          | lb            | Single Axles             | Tandem Axles  | kN              | lb            | Single Axles             | Tandem Axles |
| 4.45                                                        | 1,000         | 0.00002                  |               | 187.0           | 42,000        | 25.64                    | 2.51         |
| 8.9                                                         | 2,000         | 0.00018                  |               | 195.7           | 44,000        | 31.00                    | 3.00         |
| 17.8                                                        | 4,000         | 0.00209                  |               | 200.0           | 45,000        | 34.00                    | 3.27         |
| 22.25                                                       | 5,000         | 0.00500                  |               | 204.5           | 46,000        | 37.24                    | 3.55         |
| <b>26.7</b>                                                 | <b>6,000</b>  | <b>0.01043</b>           |               | <b>213.5</b>    | <b>48,000</b> | <b>44.50</b>             | <b>4.17</b>  |
| 35.6                                                        | 8,000         | 0.0343                   |               | 222.4           | 50,000        | 52.88                    | 4.86         |
| 44.5                                                        | 10,000        | 0.0877                   | 0.00688       | 231.3           | 52,000        |                          | 5.63         |
| 53.4                                                        | 12,000        | 0.189                    | 0.0144        | 240.2           | 54,000        |                          | 6.47         |
| 62.3                                                        | 14,000        | 0.360                    | 0.0270        | 244.6           | 55,000        |                          | 6.93         |
| <b>66.7</b>                                                 | <b>15,000</b> | <b>0.478</b>             | <b>0.0360</b> | <b>249.0</b>    | <b>56,000</b> |                          | <b>7.41</b>  |
| 71.2                                                        | 16,000        | 0.623                    | 0.0472        | 258.0           | 58,000        |                          | 8.45         |
| 80.0                                                        | 18,000        | 1.000                    | 0.0773        | 267.0           | 60,000        |                          | 9.59         |
| 89.0                                                        | 20,000        | 1.51                     | 0.1206        | 275.8           | 62,000        |                          | 10.84        |
| 97.8                                                        | 22,000        | 2.18                     | 0.180         | 284.5           | 64,000        |                          | 12.22        |
| <b>106.8</b>                                                | <b>24,000</b> | <b>3.03</b>              | <b>0.260</b>  | <b>289.0</b>    | <b>65,000</b> |                          | <b>12.96</b> |
| 111.2                                                       | 25,000        | 3.53                     | 0.308         | 293.5           | 66,000        |                          | 13.73        |
| 115.6                                                       | 26,000        | 4.09                     | 0.364         | 302.5           | 68,000        |                          | 15.38        |
| 124.5                                                       | 28,000        | 5.39                     | 0.495         | 311.5           | 70,000        |                          | 17.19        |
| 133.5                                                       | 30,000        | 6.97                     | 0.658         | 320.0           | 72,000        |                          | 19.16        |
| <b>142.3</b>                                                | <b>32,000</b> | <b>8.88</b>              | <b>0.857</b>  | <b>329.0</b>    | <b>74,000</b> |                          | <b>21.32</b> |
| 151.2                                                       | 34,000        | 11.18                    | 1.095         | 333.5           | 75,000        |                          | 22.47        |
| 155.7                                                       | 35,000        | 12.50                    | 1.23          | 338.0           | 76,000        |                          | 23.66        |
| 160.0                                                       | 36,000        | 13.93                    | 1.38          | 347.0           | 78,000        |                          | 26.22        |
| 169.0                                                       | 38,000        | 17.20                    | 1.70          | 356.0           | 80,000        |                          | 28.99        |
| <b>178.0</b>                                                | <b>40,000</b> | <b>21.08</b>             | <b>2.08</b>   |                 |               |                          |              |
| Note: kN converted to lb are within 0.1 percent of lb shown |               |                          |               |                 |               |                          |              |

## Latitudes and Departures



## Earthwork formulas

Average End Area Formula

$$V = L(A_1 + A_2)/2$$

Prismoidal Formula

$$V = L (A_1 + 4A_m + A_2)/6$$

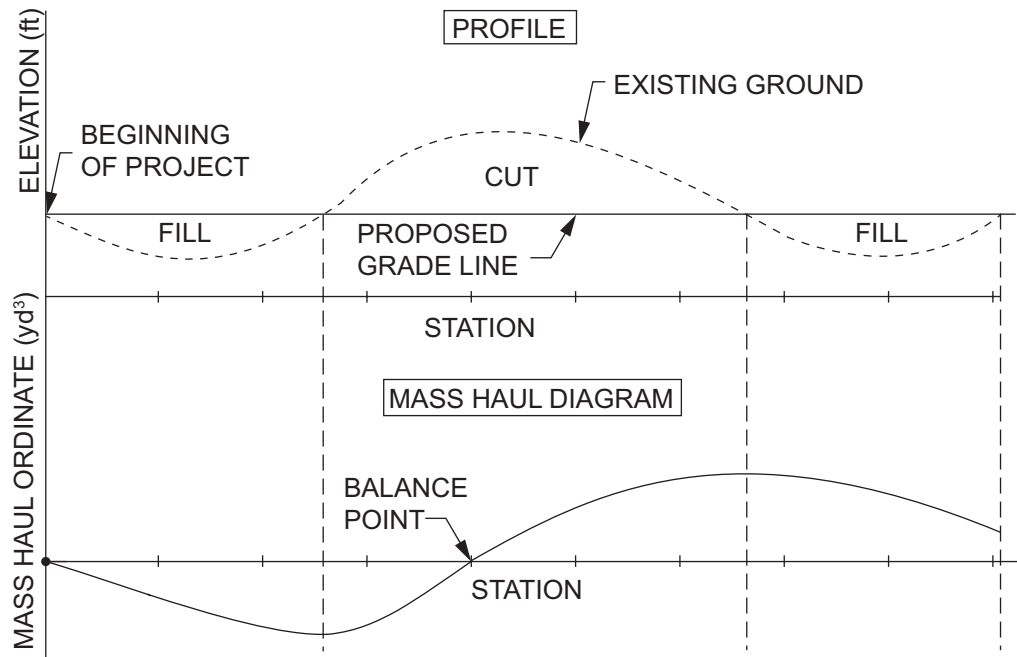
where

$A_m$  = area of mid-section

$L$  = distance between  $A_1$  and  $A_2$

Pyramid or Cone

$$V = h (\text{area of base})/3$$



Mass haul ordinate is the cumulative total of excavation and embankment at a given station.

Earthwork may be adjusted to account for shrinkage by increasing fill at each station by the shrinkage factor.

## Area formulas

Area by Coordinates:  $\text{Area} = [X_A(Y_B - Y_N) + X_B(Y_C - Y_A) + X_C(Y_D - Y_B) + \dots + X_N(Y_A - Y_{N-1})] / 2$

Trapezoidal Rule:  $\text{Area} = w \left( \frac{h_1 + h_n}{2} + h_2 + h_3 + h_4 + \dots + h_{n-1} \right)$   $w = \text{common interval}$

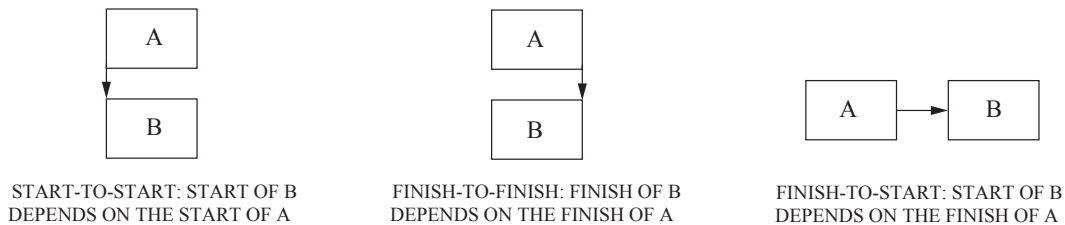
Simpson's 1/3 Rule:  $\text{Area} = w \left[ h_1 + 2 \left( \sum_{k=3,5,\dots}^{n-2} h_k \right) + 4 \left( \sum_{k=2,4,\dots}^{n-1} h_k \right) + h_n \right] / 3$   $n$  must be odd number of measurements (only for Simpson's 1/3 Rule)

## Construction

Construction project scheduling and analysis questions may be based on either the activity-on-node method or the activity-on-arrow method.

### CPM Precedence Relationships

#### ACTIVITY-ON-NODE



#### ACTIVITY-ON-ARROW ANNOTATION



#### ACTIVITY-ON-NODE ANNOTATION

|                      |                 |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| EARLY<br>START       | EARLY<br>FINISH |
| ACTIVITY DESCRIPTION |                 |
| DURATION             | FLOAT           |
| LATE<br>START        | LATE<br>FINISH  |

## Nomenclature

$ES$  = Early start = Latest  $EF$  of predecessors

$EF$  = Early finish =  $ES + \text{duration}$

$LS$  = Late start =  $LF - \text{duration}$

$LF$  = Late finish = Earliest  $LS$  of successors

$D$  = Duration

Float =  $LS - ES$  or  $LF - EF$

## Earned-Value Analysis

$BCWS$  = Budgeted cost of work scheduled (Planned)

$ACWP$  = Actual cost of work performed (Actual)

$BCWP$  = Budgeted cost of work performed (Earned)

## Variances

$CV = BCWP - ACWP$  (Cost variance = Earned – Actual)

$SV = BCWP - BCWS$  (Schedule variance = Earned – Planned)

### Indices

$$CPI = \frac{BCWP}{ACWP} \quad \left( \text{Cost Performance Index} = \frac{\text{Earned}}{\text{Actual}} \right)$$

$$SPI = \frac{BCWP}{BCWS} \quad \left( \text{Schedule Performance Index} = \frac{\text{Earned}}{\text{Planned}} \right)$$

### Forecasting

$BAC$  = Original project estimate (Budget at completion)

$$ETC = \frac{BAC - BCWP}{CPI} \quad (\text{Estimate to complete})$$

$$EAC = (ACWP + ETC) \quad (\text{Estimate at completion})$$

# Environmental Engineering

## Air pollution

### Nomenclature

$$\frac{\mu\text{g}}{\text{m}^3} = \text{ppb} \times \frac{P(\text{MW})}{RT}$$

where

ppb = parts per billion

$P$  = pressure (atm)

$R$  = ideal gas law constant  
= 0.0821 L•atm/(mole•K)

$T$  = absolute temperature (K)  
= 273.15 + °C

MW = molecular weight (g/mole)

### Atmospheric Dispersion Modeling (Gaussian)

$\sigma_y$  and  $\sigma_z$  as a function of downwind distance and stability class, see following figures.

$$C = \frac{Q}{2\pi u \sigma_y \sigma_z} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{y^2}{\sigma_y^2}\right) \left[ \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(z-H)^2}{\sigma_z^2}\right) + \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(z+H)^2}{\sigma_z^2}\right) \right]$$

where

$C$  = steady-state concentration at a point ( $x, y, z$ ) ( $\mu\text{g}/\text{m}^3$ )

$Q$  = emissions rate ( $\mu\text{g}/\text{s}$ )

$\sigma_y$  = horizontal dispersion parameter (m)

$\sigma_z$  = vertical dispersion parameter (m)

$u$  = average wind speed at stack height (m/s)

$y$  = horizontal distance from plume centerline (m)

$z$  = vertical distance from ground level (m)

$H$  = effective stack height (m) =  $h + \Delta h$

where

$h$  = physical stack height

$\Delta h$  = plume rise

$x$  = downwind distance along plume centerline (m)

Maximum concentration at ground level and directly downwind from an elevated source.

$$C_{\max} = \frac{Q}{\pi u \sigma_y \sigma_z} \exp\left(-\frac{1}{2} \frac{(H^2)}{\sigma_z^2}\right)$$

where variables are as above except

$C_{\max}$  = maximum ground-level concentration

$\sigma_z = \frac{H}{\sqrt{2}}$  for neutral atmospheric conditions

### Selected Properties of Air

|                                      |                            |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| Nitrogen (N <sub>2</sub> ) by volume | 78.09%                     |
| Oxygen (O <sub>2</sub> ) by volume   | 20.94%                     |
| Argon (Ar) by volume                 | 0.93%                      |
| Molecular weight of air              | 28.966 g/mol               |
| Absolute viscosity, $\mu$            |                            |
| at 80°F                              | 0.045 lbm/(hr-ft)          |
| at 100°F                             | 0.047 lbm/(hr-ft)          |
| Density                              |                            |
| at 80°F                              | 0.0734 lbm/ft <sup>3</sup> |
| at 100°F                             | 0.0708 lbm/ft <sup>3</sup> |

The dry adiabatic lapse rate  $\Gamma_{AD}$  is 0.98°C per 100 m (5.4°F per 1,000 ft). This is the rate at which dry air cools adiabatically with altitude.

$$\text{Lapse rate} = \Gamma = -\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta z}$$

where

$\Delta T$  = change in temperature

$\Delta z$  = change in elevation

The actual (environmental) lapse rate  $\Gamma$  is compared to  $\Gamma_{AD}$  to determine stability as follows:

| Lapse Rate             | Stability Condition |
|------------------------|---------------------|
| $\Gamma > \Gamma_{AD}$ | Unstable            |
| $\Gamma = \Gamma_{AD}$ | Neutral             |
| $\Gamma < \Gamma_{AD}$ | Stable              |

### Atmospheric Stability Under Various Conditions

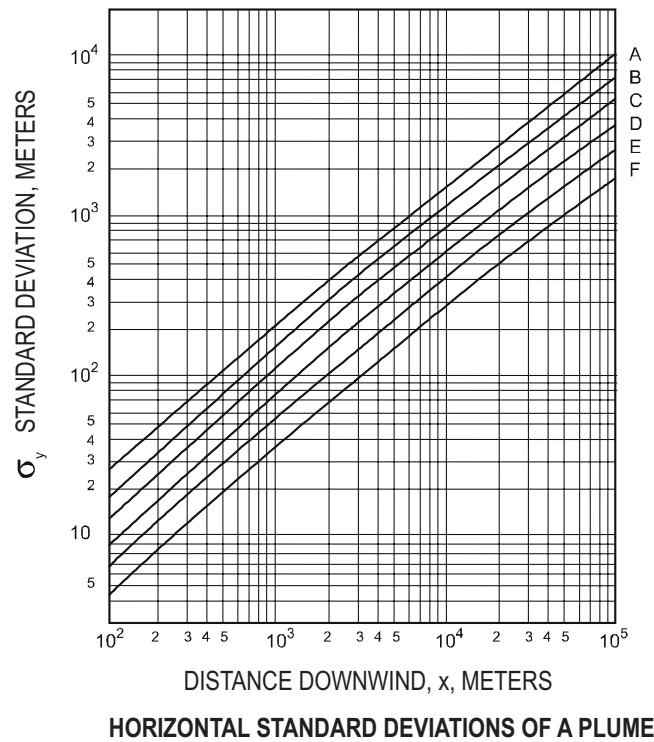
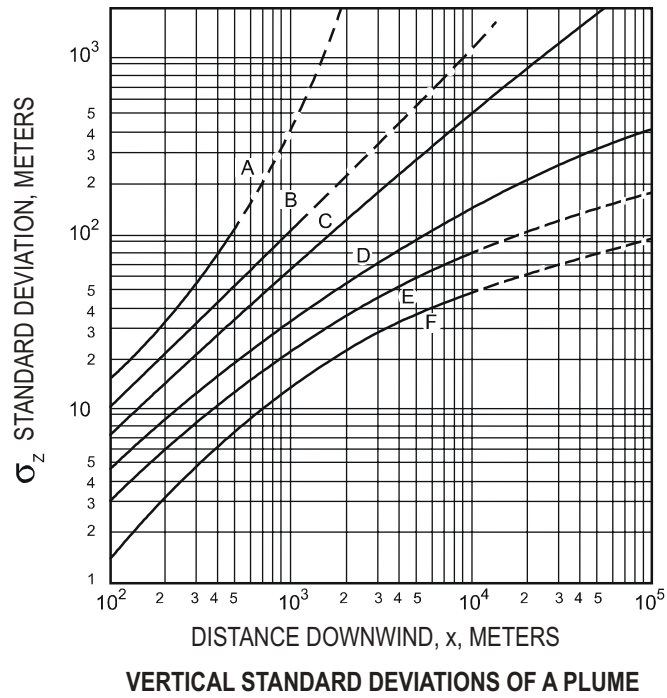
| Surface Wind Speed <sup>a</sup> (m/s) | Day<br>Solar Insolation |                       |                     | Night<br>Cloudiness <sup>c</sup> |                         |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                       | Strong <sup>b</sup>     | Moderate <sup>c</sup> | Slight <sup>d</sup> | Cloudy<br>( $\geq 4/8$ )         | Clear<br>( $\leq 3/8$ ) |
| <2                                    | A                       | A-B <sup>f</sup>      | B                   | E                                | F                       |
| 2-3                                   | A-B                     | B                     | C                   | E                                | F                       |
| 3-5                                   | B                       | B-C                   | C                   | D                                | E                       |
| 5-6                                   | C                       | C-D                   | D                   | D                                | D                       |
| >6                                    | C                       | D                     | D                   | D                                | D                       |

Notes:

- Surface wind speed is measured at 10 m above the ground.
  - Corresponds to clear summer day with sun higher than 60° above the horizon.
  - Corresponds to a summer day with a few broken clouds, or a clear day with sun 35-60° above the horizon.
  - Corresponds to a fall afternoon, or a cloudy summer day, or clear summer day with the sun 15-35°.
  - Cloudiness is defined as the fraction of sky covered by the clouds.
  - For A-B, B-C, or C-D conditions, average the values obtained for each.
- \* A = Very unstable                      D = Neutral  
 B = Moderately unstable              E = Slightly stable  
 C = Slightly unstable                  F = Stable

Regardless of wind speed, Class D should be assumed for overcast conditions, day or night.

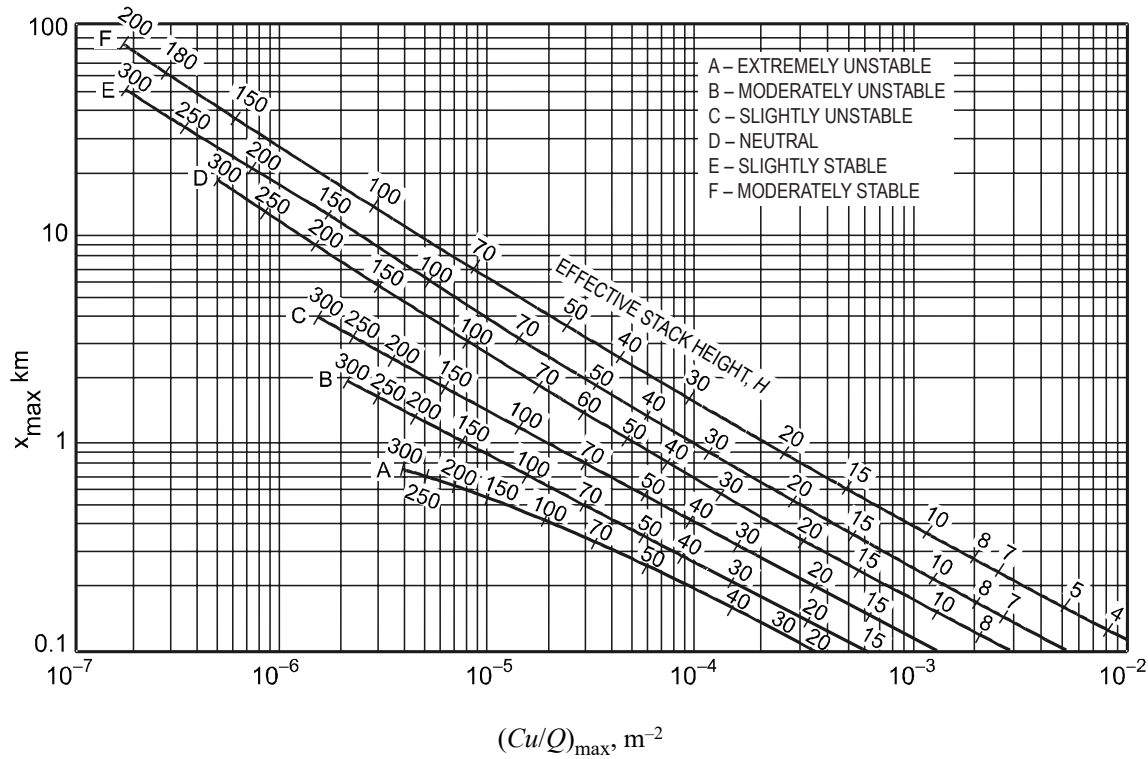
Source: Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates: An Introduction to Dispersion Modeling," 2nd ed., Lewis Publishing/CRC Press, Florida, 1994.



- A – EXTREMELY UNSTABLE
- B – MODERATELY UNSTABLE
- C – SLIGHTLY UNSTABLE
- D – NEUTRAL
- E – SLIGHTLY STABLE
- F – MODERATELY STABLE

Source: Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates," U.S. Department of Health, Education, and Welfare, Washington, DC, 1970.

Downwind distance where the maximum concentration occurs,  $x_{\max}$ , versus  $(Cu/Q)_{\max}$  as a function of stability class



**NOTES:** Effective stack height shown on curves numerically.

$x_{\max}$  = distance along plume centerline to the point of maximum concentration

$$(Cu/Q)_{\max} = e^{[a + b \ln H + c (\ln H)^2 + d (\ln H)^3]}$$

$H$  = effective stack height = stack height + plume rise (m)

Source: Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates: An Introduction to Dispersion Modeling," 2nd ed., Lewis Publishing/CRC Press, Florida, 1994.

**Values of Curve-Fit Constants for Estimating  $(Cu/Q)_{\max}$  from  $H$  as a Function of Atmospheric Stability**

| Stability | Constants |         |         |         |
|-----------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|
|           | $a$       | $b$     | $c$     | $d$     |
| A         | -1.0563   | -2.7153 | 0.1261  | 0       |
| B         | -1.8060   | -2.1912 | 0.0389  | 0       |
| C         | -1.9748   | -1.9980 | 0       | 0       |
| D         | -2.5302   | -1.5610 | -0.0934 | 0       |
| E         | -1.4496   | -2.5910 | 0.2181  | -0.0343 |
| F         | -1.0488   | -3.2252 | 0.4977  | -0.0765 |

Source: Adapted from Ranchoux, R.J.P., 1976.

Source: Turner, D.B., "Workbook of Atmospheric Dispersion Estimates: An Introduction to Dispersion Modeling," 2nd ed., Lewis Publishing/CRC Press, Florida, 1994.

## Cyclone

### Cyclone Collection (Particle Removal) Efficiency

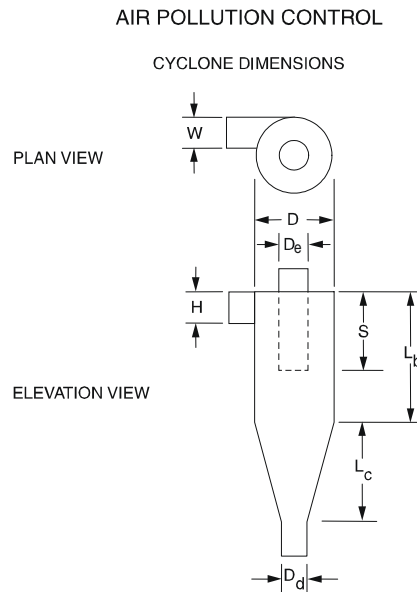
$$\eta = \frac{1}{1 + (d_{pc}/d_p)^2}$$

where

$d_{pc}$  = diameter of particle collected with 50% efficiency

$d_p$  = diameter of particle of interest

$\eta$  = fractional particle collection efficiency



Source: Adapted from Cooper, David C., and F.C. Alley, *Air Pollution Control: A Design Approach*, 2nd ed., Waveland Press, Illinois, 1986.

### Cyclone Effective Number of Turns Approximation

$$N_e = \frac{1}{H} \left[ L_b + \frac{L_c}{2} \right]$$

where

$N_e$  = number of effective turns gas makes in cyclone

$H$  = inlet height of cyclone (m)

$L_b$  = length of body cyclone (m)

$L_c$  = length of cone of cyclone (m)

**Cyclone Ratio of Dimensions to Body Diameter**

| Dimension                   | High Efficiency | Conventional | High Throughput |
|-----------------------------|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| Inlet height, $H$           | 0.44            | 0.50         | 0.80            |
| Inlet width, $W$            | 0.21            | 0.25         | 0.35            |
| Body length, $L_b$          | 1.40            | 1.75         | 1.70            |
| Cone length, $L_c$          | 2.50            | 2.00         | 2.00            |
| Vortex finder length, $S$   | 0.50            | 0.60         | 0.85            |
| Gas exit diameter, $D_e$    | 0.40            | 0.50         | 0.75            |
| Dust outlet diameter, $D_d$ | 0.40            | 0.40         | 0.40            |

Source: Adapted from Cooper, David C., and F.C. Alley, *Air Pollution Control: A Design Approach*, 2nd ed., Waveland Press, Illinois, 1986.

Cyclone 50% Collection Efficiency for Particle Diameter

$$d_{pc} = \left[ \frac{9\mu W}{2\pi N_e V_i (\rho_p - \rho_g)} \right]^{0.5}$$

where

$d_{pc}$  = diameter of particle that is collected with 50% efficiency (m)

$\mu$  = dynamic viscosity of gas (kg/m•s)

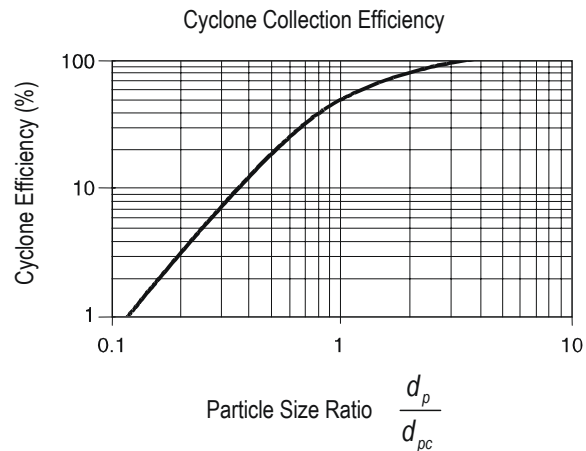
$W$  = inlet width of cyclone (m)

$N_e$  = number of effective turns gas makes in cyclone

$V_i$  = inlet velocity into cyclone (m/s)

$\rho_p$  = density of particle (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$\rho_g$  = density of gas (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)



Source: Adapted from Cooper, David C., and F.C. Alley, *Air Pollution Control: A Design Approach*, 2nd ed., Waveland Press, Illinois, 1986.

## Baghouse

**Air-to-Cloth Ratio for Baghouses**

| Dust            | Shaker/Woven                                                    | Pulse                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
|                 | Reverse<br>Air/Woven<br>[m <sup>3</sup> /(min•m <sup>2</sup> )] | Jet/Felt<br>[m <sup>3</sup> /(min•m <sup>2</sup> )] |
| alumina         | 0.8                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| asbestos        | 0.9                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| bauxite         | 0.8                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| carbon black    | 0.5                                                             | 1.5                                                 |
| coal            | 0.8                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| cocoa           | 0.8                                                             | 3.7                                                 |
| clay            | 0.8                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| cement          | 0.6                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| cosmetics       | 0.5                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| enamel frit     | 0.8                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| feeds, grain    | 1.1                                                             | 4.3                                                 |
| feldspar        | 0.7                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| fertilizer      | 0.9                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| flour           | 0.9                                                             | 3.7                                                 |
| fly ash         | 0.8                                                             | 1.5                                                 |
| graphite        | 0.6                                                             | 1.5                                                 |
| gypsum          | 0.6                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| iron ore        | 0.9                                                             | 3.4                                                 |
| iron oxide      | 0.8                                                             | 2.1                                                 |
| iron sulfate    | 0.6                                                             | 1.8                                                 |
| lead oxide      | 0.6                                                             | 1.8                                                 |
| leather dust    | 1.1                                                             | 3.7                                                 |
| lime            | 0.8                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| limestone       | 0.8                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| mica            | 0.8                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| paint pigments  | 0.8                                                             | 2.1                                                 |
| paper           | 1.1                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| plastics        | 0.8                                                             | 2.1                                                 |
| quartz          | 0.9                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| rock dust       | 0.9                                                             | 2.7                                                 |
| sand            | 0.8                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| sawdust (wood)  | 1.1                                                             | 3.7                                                 |
| silica          | 0.8                                                             | 2.1                                                 |
| slate           | 1.1                                                             | 3.7                                                 |
| soap detergents | 0.6                                                             | 1.5                                                 |
| spices          | 0.8                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| starch          | 0.9                                                             | 2.4                                                 |
| sugar           | 0.6                                                             | 2.1                                                 |
| talc            | 0.8                                                             | 3.0                                                 |
| tobacco         | 1.1                                                             | 4.0                                                 |

Source: U.S. EPA OAQPS Control Cost Manual, 4th ed., EPA 450/3-90-006 (NTIS PB 90-169954), January 1990.

## Electrostatic Precipitator Efficiency

Deutsch-Anderson equation:

$$\eta = 1 - e^{(-WA/Q)}$$

where

$\eta$  = fractional collection efficiency

$W$  = terminal drift velocity

$A$  = total collection area

$Q$  = volumetric gas flow rate

Note that any consistent set of units can be used for  $W$ ,  $A$ , and  $Q$  (e.g., ft/min, ft<sup>2</sup>, and ft<sup>3</sup>/min).

## Incineration

$$DRE = \frac{W_{in} - W_{out}}{W_{in}} \times 100\%$$

where

$DRE$  = destruction and removal efficiency (%)

$W_{in}$  = mass feed rate of a particular POHC (kg/h or lb/h)

$W_{out}$  = mass emission rate of the same POHC (kg/h or lb/h)

POHC = principal organic hazardous contaminant

$$CE = \frac{CO_2}{CO_2 + CO} \times 100\%$$

where

$CO_2$  = volume concentration (dry) of  $CO_2$  (parts per million; volume, ppm<sub>v</sub>)

$CO$  = volume concentration (dry) of  $CO$  (ppm<sub>v</sub>)

$CE$  = combustion efficiency

## Kiln Formula

$$t = \frac{2.28 L/D}{SN}$$

where

$t$  = mean residence time (min)

$L/D$  = internal length-to-diameter ratio

$S$  = kiln rake slope (in./ft of length)

$N$  = rotational speed (rev/min)

## Indoor Air Quality

### Material Balance

$$V \frac{dC_i}{dt} = QC_o + S - QC_i - kC_iV$$

where

$V$  = volume of the room (m<sup>3</sup>)

$C_i$  = indoor concentration of this pollutant  $\left(\frac{\mu g}{m^3}\right)$

$C_o$  = concentration of the pollutant in the outside air  $\left(\frac{\mu g}{m^3}\right)$

$Q$  = ventilation rate  $\left(\frac{m^3}{hr}\right)$

- $S$  = source emission rate inside the room  $\left(\frac{\mu\text{g}}{\text{hr}}\right)$   
 $k$  = removal reaction rate constant (assumed here to be first order)  $(\text{hr}^{-1})$   
 $C_i$  = indoor concentration of pollutant  $= C_{iss}(1 - e^{-t/\tau}) + C_o e^{-t/\tau}$

where

- $C_{iss}$  = steady-state concentration of indoor pollutant  $= \tau \left( AC_o + \frac{S}{V} \right)$   
 $\tau$  = time constant  $= (A + k)^{-1}$   
 $A$  = air exchange rate  $= \frac{Q}{V}$ , air changes per hour (ach)

### Air Infiltration Rates into Homes with Windows Closed

| Layout of Room                           | Air Exchange Rate<br>(air changes per hour, ach) |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| No windows or exterior doors             | 0.5                                              |
| Windows or exterior doors on one wall    | 1.0                                              |
| Windows or exterior doors on two walls   | 1.5                                              |
| Windows or exterior doors on three walls | 2.0                                              |

### Approximate Volume Flow Rate of Outdoor Air

$$Q_{OA} \approx \frac{13,000 n}{C_{\text{indoors}} - C_{OA}}$$

where

- $Q_{OA}$  = approximate volume flow rate of outdoor air (cfm)  
 $n$  = number of people working in an office complex  
 $C_{\text{indoors}}$  = measured concentration of tracer gas (e.g.,  $\text{CO}_2$ ) in the space after a long period of time (e.g., 4 or more hours) of human occupation (ppm)  
 $C_{OA}$  = concentration of the tracer gas (e.g.,  $\text{CO}_2$ ) in the outdoor air (ppm)

### Percent of Outdoor Air

$$\% \text{ Outdoor Air} = \frac{C_{RA} - C_{SA}}{C_{RA} - C_{OA}} \times 100$$

where

- $C_{RA}$  =  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration in return air  
 $C_{SA}$  =  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration in supply air  
 $C_{OA}$  =  $\text{CO}_2$  concentration in outdoor air

### Outdoor Air Changes per Hour

$$N = \frac{\ln(C_i - C_o) - \ln(C_a - C_o)}{h}$$

where

- $N$  = air changes per hour of outdoor air  
 $C_i$  = concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  at start of test

$C_o$  = outdoor concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$   
 $C_a$  = concentration of  $\text{CO}_2$  at end of test  
 $h$  = time elapse between start and end of test (hour)

## Fate and Transport

### Mass Calculations

$$\text{Mass balance: } \frac{dM}{dt} = \frac{dM_{\text{in}}}{dt} - \frac{dM_{\text{out}}}{dt} \pm rV$$

$$\text{Continuity equation} = Q = vA$$

where

$$M = \text{mass} = CV$$

$$M_{\text{in}} = \text{mass in and } \frac{dM_{\text{in}}}{dt} = C_{\text{in}}Q_{\text{in}}$$

$$M_{\text{out}} = \text{mass out and } \frac{dM_{\text{out}}}{dt} = C_{\text{out}}Q_{\text{out}}$$

$$r = \text{reaction rate} = kC^n$$

$$k = \text{reaction rate constant} \left( \frac{1}{(\text{concentration units})^{n-1} \cdot \text{time}} \right)$$

$$n = \text{order of reaction}$$

$$C = \text{concentration (mass/volume)}$$

$$Q = \text{flow rate}$$

$$V = \text{volume}$$

$$v = \text{velocity}$$

$$A = \text{cross-sectional area of flow}$$

$$M (\text{lb/day}) = C (\text{mg/L}) \times Q (\text{MGD}) \times 8.34 [\text{lb-L}/(\text{mg-MG})]$$

where

$$\text{MGD} = \text{million gallons per day}$$

$$\text{MG} = \text{million gallons}$$

### Microbial Kinetics

#### BOD Exertion

$$\text{BOD}_t = L_o (1 - e^{-kt})$$

where

$$k = \text{BOD decay rate constant (base e, days}^{-1}\text{)}$$

$$L_o = \text{ultimate BOD (mg/L)}$$

$$t = \text{time (days)}$$

$$\text{BOD}_t = \text{the amount of BOD exerted at time } t \text{ (mg/L)}$$

#### Stream Modeling

##### Streeter Phelps

$$D = \frac{k_d L_a}{k_r - k_d} [\exp(-k_d t) - \exp(-k_r t)] + D_a \exp(-k_r t)$$

$$t_c = \frac{1}{k_r - k_d} \ln \left[ \frac{k_r}{k_d} \left( 1 - D_a \frac{(k_r - k_d)}{k_d L_a} \right) \right]$$

$$DO = DO_{\text{sat}} - D$$

where

- $D$  = dissolved oxygen deficit (mg/L)
- $DO$  = dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/L)
- $D_a$  = initial dissolved oxygen deficit in mixing zone (mg/L)
- $DO_{\text{sat}}$  = saturated dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/L)
- $k_d$  = deoxygenation rate constant, base e (days<sup>-1</sup>)
- $k_r$  = reaeration rate constant, base e (days<sup>-1</sup>)
- $L_a$  = initial ultimate BOD in mixing zone (mg/L)
- $t$  = time (days)
- $t_c$  = time at which minimum dissolved oxygen occurs (days)

Source: Davis, MacKenzie and David Cornwell, *Introduction to Environmental Engineering*, 4th ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

### Monod Kinetics—Substrate Limited Growth

Continuous flow systems where growth is limited by one substrate (chemostat):

$$\mu = \frac{Yk_m S}{K_s + S} - k_d = \mu_{\text{max}} \frac{S}{K_s + S} - k_d$$

### Multiple Limiting Substrates

$$\frac{\mu}{\mu_{\text{max}}} = [\mu_1(S_1)][\mu_2(S_2)][\mu_3(S_3)] \dots [\mu_n(S_n)]$$

$$\text{where } \mu_i = \frac{S_i}{K_{s_i} + S_i} \text{ for } i = 1 \text{ to } n$$

Nonsteady-State Continuous Flow

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = Dx_0 + (\mu - k_d - D)x$$

Steady-State Continuous Flow

$$\mu = D \text{ with } k_d \ll \mu$$

where

- $k_d$  = microbial death rate or endogenous decay rate constant (time<sup>-1</sup>)
- $k_m$  = maximum growth rate constant (time<sup>-1</sup>)
- $K_s$  = saturation constant or half-velocity constant = concentration at  $\mu_{\text{max}}/2$
- $S$  = concentration of substrate in solution (mass/unit volume)
- $Y$  = yield coefficient [(mass/L product)/(mass/L food used)]
- $\mu$  = specific growth rate (time<sup>-1</sup>)
- $\mu_{\text{max}}$  = maximum specific growth rate (time<sup>-1</sup>) =  $Yk_m$

### Kinetic Temperature Corrections

$$k_T = k_{20} (\theta)^{T - 20}$$

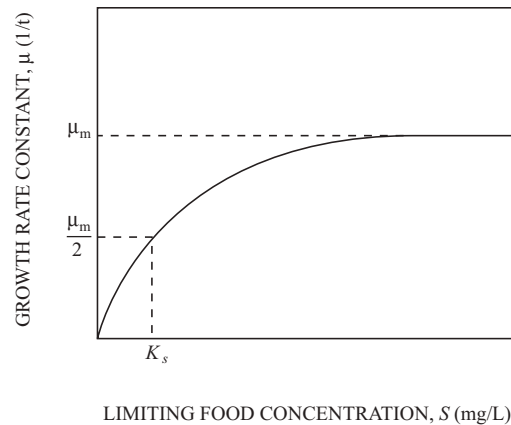
$$\begin{aligned} \text{BOD } (k): \quad & \theta = 1.135 \text{ (T = 4–20°C)} \\ & \theta = 1.056 \text{ (T = 21–30°C)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Reaeration } (k_r) \quad \theta = 1.024$$

$$\text{Bio Towers} \quad \theta = 1.035$$

$$\text{Trickling Filters} \quad \theta = 1.072$$

Monod growth rate constant as a function of limiting food concentration.



Source: Davis, M.L., and D. Cornwell, *Introduction to Environmental Engineering*, 4th ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008.

Product production at steady state, single substrate limiting

$$X_i = Y_{P/S}(S_0 - S_i)$$

where

$X_i$  = product (mg/L)

$V_r$  = volume (L)

$D$  = dilution rate (flow  $f$ /reactor volume  $V_r$ ;  $\text{hr}^{-1}$ )

$f$  = flow rate (L/hr)

$\mu_i$  = growth rate with one or multiple limiting substrates ( $\text{hr}^{-1}$ )

$S_i$  = substrate i concentration (mass/unit volume)

$S_0$  = initial substrate concentration (mass/unit volume)

$Y_{P/S}$  = product yield per unit of substrate (mass/mass)

$p$  = product concentration (mass/unit volume)

$x$  = cell concentration (mass/unit volume)

$x_0$  = initial cell concentration (mass/unit volume)

$t$  = time (time)

## Partition Coefficients

### Bioconcentration Factor $BCF$

The amount of a chemical to accumulate in aquatic organisms.

$$BCF = C_{\text{org}}/C$$

where

$C_{\text{org}}$  = equilibrium concentration in organism (mg/kg or ppm)

$C$  = concentration in water (ppm)

Source: LaGrega, Michael D., et al, *Hazardous Waste Management*, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, 2001.

**Octanol-Water Partition Coefficient**

The ratio of a chemical's concentration in the octanol phase to its concentration in the aqueous phase of a two-phase octanol-water system.

$$K_{ow} = C_o / C_w$$

where

$C_o$  = concentration of chemical in octanol phase (mg/L or  $\mu\text{g/L}$ )

$C_w$  = concentration of chemical in aqueous phase (mg/L or  $\mu\text{g/L}$ )

Source: LaGrega, Michael D., et al, *Hazardous Waste Management*, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, 2001.

**Organic Carbon Partition Coefficient  $K_{oc}$** 

$$K_{oc} = C_{\text{soil}} / C_{\text{water}}$$

where

$C_{\text{soil}}$  = concentration of chemical in organic carbon component of soil ( $\mu\text{g}$  adsorbed/kg organic C, or ppb)

$C_{\text{water}}$  = concentration of chemical in water (ppb or  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ )

Source: LaGrega, Michael D., et al, *Hazardous Waste Management*, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, 2001.

**Retardation Factor  $R$** 

$$R = 1 + (\rho_b / n_e) K_d$$

where

$\rho_b$  = bulk density (mass/length<sup>3</sup>)

$n_e$  = effective porosity of the media at saturation

$K_d$  = partition or distribution coefficient

$$= K_{oc} f_{oc}$$

Source: USEPA 402-R-99-004B, 1999, Understanding variations in partition coefficient,  $K_d$ , values.

**Soil-Water Partition Coefficient  $K_{sw} = K_p$** 

$$K_{sw} = X / C$$

where

$X$  = concentration of chemical in soil (ppb or  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ )

$C$  = concentration of chemical in water (ppb or  $\mu\text{g/kg}$ )

$$K_{sw} = K_{oc} f_{oc}$$

where

$K_p$  = partition coefficient

$f_{oc}$  = fraction of organic carbon in the soil (dimensionless)

Source: LaGrega, Michael D., et al, *Hazardous Waste Management*, 2nd ed, McGraw-Hill, 2001.

**Vadose Zone Penetration**

$$D = \frac{RvV}{A}$$

where

$D$  = maximum depth of penetration (m)

$V$  = volume of infiltrating hydrocarbon (m<sup>3</sup>)

$A$  = area of spill (m<sup>2</sup>)

$Rv$  = a constant reflecting the retention capacity of the soil and the viscosity of the product (see following table)

Typical Values of Rv

| Soil                                                                     | Rv <sup>†</sup> |          |                |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------|----------|----------------|
|                                                                          | Gasoline        | Kerosene | Light Fuel Oil |
| Coarse Gravel                                                            | 400             | 200      | 100            |
| Gravel to Coarse Sand                                                    | 250             | 125      | 62             |
| Coarse to Medium Sand                                                    | 130             | 66       | 33             |
| Medium to Fine Sand                                                      | 80              | 40       | 20             |
| Fine Sand to Silt                                                        | 50              | 25       | 12             |
| †A constant value representing capacity of soil and viscosity of product |                 |          |                |

Source: Data from Shepherd, W. D. No date. *Practical Geohydrological Aspects of Groundwater Contamination*. Dept. of Environmental Affairs, Houston: Shell Oil, as published in *Underground Storage Tank Corrective Action Technologies*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1987, pp. 3-8 and 3-9, epa.gov.

## Steady-State Reactor Parameters (Constant Density Systems)

Comparison of Steady-State Retention Times ( $\theta$ ) for Decay Reactions of Different Order <sup>a</sup>

| Reaction Order    | r       | Equations for Mean Retention Times ( $\theta$ ) |                              |                              |
|-------------------|---------|-------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|------------------------------|
|                   |         | Ideal Batch                                     | Ideal Plug Flow              | Ideal CMFR                   |
| Zero <sup>b</sup> | $-k$    | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$                         | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$      | $\frac{(C_o - C_t)}{k}$      |
| First             | $-kC$   | $\frac{\ln(C_o/C_t)}{k}$                        | $\frac{\ln(C_o/C_t)}{k}$     | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{k}$    |
| Second            | $-kC^2$ | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_o}$                    | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_o}$ | $\frac{(C_o/C_t) - 1}{kC_t}$ |

<sup>a</sup> $C_o$  = initial concentration or influent concentration;  $C_t$  = final condition or effluent concentration.

<sup>b</sup>Expressions are valid for  $k\theta \leq C_o$ ; otherwise  $C_t = 0$ .

Comparison of Steady-State Performance for Decay Reactions of Different Order <sup>a</sup>

| Reaction Order                   | r       | Equations for $C_t$     |                               |                                                 |
|----------------------------------|---------|-------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
|                                  |         | Ideal Batch             | Ideal Plug Flow               | Ideal CMFR                                      |
| Zero <sup>b</sup> $t \leq C_o/k$ | $-k$    | $C_o - kt$              | $C_o - k\theta$               | $C_o - k\theta$                                 |
| $t > C_o/k$                      |         | 0                       |                               |                                                 |
| First                            | $-kC$   | $C_o[\exp(-kt)]$        | $C_o[\exp(-k\theta)]$         | $\frac{C_o}{1 + k\theta}$                       |
| Second                           | $-kC^2$ | $\frac{C_o}{1 + ktC_o}$ | $\frac{C_o}{1 + k\theta C_o}$ | $\frac{(4k\theta C_o + 1)^{1/2} - 1}{2k\theta}$ |

<sup>a</sup> $C_o$  = initial concentration or influent concentration;  $C_t$  = final condition or effluent concentration.

<sup>b</sup>Time conditions are for ideal batch reactor only.

Source: Davis, M.L., and S.J. Masten, *Principles of Environmental Engineering and Science*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 2004.

## Landfill

**Typical Densities of As-Received Source-Separated Materials**

| Material                           | Typical density,<br>lb/yd <sup>3</sup> | Baled density,*<br>lb/yd <sup>3</sup> |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Paper                              |                                        |                                       |
| Newspaper                          | 475                                    | 950                                   |
| Corrugated cardboard               | 350                                    | 800                                   |
| High grades                        | 300–400                                |                                       |
| Glass—whole bottles                |                                        |                                       |
| Clear                              | 500                                    |                                       |
| Green or amber                     | 550                                    |                                       |
| Glass—crushed                      |                                        |                                       |
| Semicrushed                        | 1,000                                  |                                       |
| 1 1/2-in. mechanically crushed     | 1,800                                  |                                       |
| 1/4-in. furnace ready              | 2,700                                  |                                       |
| Aluminum Cans                      |                                        |                                       |
| Whole                              | 50                                     | 950                                   |
| Flattened                          | 175                                    |                                       |
| Tin plated steel cans ("tin cans") |                                        |                                       |
| Whole                              | 150                                    | 1,400                                 |
| Flattened                          | 850                                    |                                       |
| Plastics                           |                                        |                                       |
| PET, whole                         | 34                                     | 750                                   |
| PET, flattened                     | 75                                     |                                       |
| HDPE (natural), whole              | 30                                     |                                       |
| HDPE (natural), flattened          | 65                                     |                                       |
| HDPE (colored), whole              | 45                                     |                                       |
| HDPE (colored), flattened          | 90                                     |                                       |

\*Based on bale size of 45 × 30 × 62 in.

Source: Tchobanoglous, George, and Frank Kreith, *Handbook of Solid Waste Management*, 2nd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002, p. 8.68.

**Typical Moisture Content of Municipal Solid Waste (MSW) Components**

| Component                | Moisture, percent |         |
|--------------------------|-------------------|---------|
|                          | Range             | Typical |
| Food wastes              | 50–80             | 70      |
| Paper                    | 4–10              | 6       |
| Cardboard                | 4–8               | 5       |
| Plastics                 | 1–4               | 2       |
| Textiles                 | 6–15              | 10      |
| Rubber                   | 1–4               | 2       |
| Leather                  | 8–12              | 10      |
| Garden trimmings         | 30–80             | 60      |
| Wood                     | 15–40             | 20      |
| Glass                    | 1–4               | 2       |
| Tin cans                 | 2–4               | 3       |
| Nonferrous metals        | 2–4               | 2       |
| Ferrous metals           | 2–6               | 3       |
| Dirt, ashes, brick, etc. | 6–12              | 8       |
| Municipal solid waste    | 15–40             | 20      |

Source: Tchobanoglous, George, Hilary Theisen, and Rolf Eliassen, *Solid Wastes: Engineering Principles and Management Issues*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1977.

### Break-Through Time for Leachate to Penetrate a Clay Liner

$$t = \frac{d^2 \eta}{K(d + h)}$$

where

- $t$  = breakthrough time (yr)
- $d$  = thickness of clay liner (ft)
- $\eta$  = porosity
- $K$  = hydraulic conductivity (ft/yr)
- $h$  = hydraulic head (ft)

Typical porosity values for clays with a coefficient of permeability in the range of  $10^{-6}$  to  $10^{-8}$  cm/s vary from 0.1 to 0.3.

### Effect of Overburden Pressure

$$SW_p = SW_i + \frac{p}{a + bp}$$

where

- $SW_p$  = specific weight of the waste material at pressure  $p$  (lb/yd<sup>3</sup>) (typical 1,750 to 2,150)
- $SW_i$  = initial compacted specific weight of waste (lb/yd<sup>3</sup>) (typical 1,000)
- $p$  = overburden pressure (lb/in<sup>2</sup>)
- $a$  = empirical constant (yd<sup>3</sup>/in<sup>2</sup>)
- $b$  = empirical constant (yd<sup>3</sup>/lb)

Source: Tchobanoglous, George, and Frank Kreith, *Handbook of Solid Waste Management*, 2nd ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2002.

### Gas Flux

$$N_A = \frac{D\eta^{4/3}(C_{A_{atm}} - C_{A_{fill}})}{L}$$

where

- $N_A$  = gas flux of compound A, g/(cm<sup>2</sup>•s) [lb-mol/(ft<sup>2</sup>-d)]
- $C_{A_{atm}}$  = concentration of compound A at the surface of the landfill cover, g/cm<sup>3</sup> (lb-mol/ft<sup>3</sup>)
- $C_{A_{fill}}$  = concentration of compound A at the bottom of the landfill cover, g/cm<sup>3</sup> (lb-mol/ft<sup>3</sup>)
- $L$  = depth of the landfill cover, cm (ft)

Typical values for the coefficient of diffusion for methane and carbon dioxide are 0.20 cm<sup>2</sup>/s (18.6 ft<sup>2</sup>/d) and 0.13 cm<sup>2</sup>/s (12.1 ft<sup>2</sup>/d), respectively.

- $D$  = diffusion coefficient, cm<sup>2</sup>/s (ft<sup>2</sup>/d)
- $\eta_{gas}$  = gas-filled porosity, cm<sup>3</sup>/cm<sup>3</sup> (ft<sup>3</sup>/ft<sup>3</sup>)
- $\eta$  = porosity, cm<sup>3</sup>/cm<sup>3</sup> (ft<sup>3</sup>/ft<sup>3</sup>)

### Soil Landfill Cover Water Balance

$$\Delta S_{LC} = P - R - ET - PER_{sw}$$

where

- $\Delta S_{LC}$  = change in the amount of water held in storage in a unit volume of landfill cover (in.)
- $P$  = amount of precipitation per unit area (in.)
- $R$  = amount of runoff per unit area (in.)
- $ET$  = amount of water lost through evapotranspiration per unit area (in.)
- $PER_{sw}$  = amount of water percolating through the unit area of landfill cover into compacted solid waste (in.)

Source: Tchobanoglous and Kreith, *Handbook of Solid Waste Management*, 2nd ed., McGraw-Hill, 2002.

## Compaction

$$\text{Volume Reduction (\%)} = \frac{V_i - V_f}{V_i} \times 100$$

where

$V_i$  = initial volume of wastes before compaction (yd<sup>3</sup>)

$V_f$  = final volume of wastes after compaction (yd<sup>3</sup>)

## Population Modeling

### Population Projection Equations

Linear Projection = Algebraic Projection

$$P_t = P_0 + k\Delta t$$

where

$P_t$  = population at time  $t$

$P_0$  = population at time zero

$k$  = growth rate

$\Delta t$  = elapsed time in years relative to time zero

Log Growth = Exponential Growth = Geometric Growth

$$P_t = P_0 e^{k\Delta t}$$

$$\ln P_t = \ln P_0 + k\Delta t$$

where

$P_t$  = population at time  $t$

$P_0$  = population at time zero

$k$  = growth rate

$\Delta t$  = elapsed time in years relative to time zero

Percent Growth

$$P_t = P_0(1 + k)^n$$

where

$P_t$  = population at time  $t$

$P_0$  = population at time zero

$k$  = growth rate

$n$  = number of periods

Ratio and Correlation Growth

$$\frac{P_2}{P_{2R}} = \frac{P_1}{P_{1R}} = k$$

where

$P_2$  = projected population

$P_{2R}$  = projected population of a larger region

$P_1$  = population at last census

$P_{1R}$  = population of larger region at last census

$k$  = growth ratio constant

### Decreasing-Rate-of-Increase Growth

$$P_t = P_0 + (S - P_0)(1 - e^{-k(t-t_0)})$$

where

$P_t$  = population at time  $t$

$P_0$  = population at time zero

$k$  = growth rate constant

$S$  = saturation population

$t, t_0$  = future time, initial time

## Radiation

### Effective Half-Life

Effective half-life  $\tau_e$  is the combined radioactive and biological half-life.

$$\frac{1}{\tau_e} = \frac{1}{\tau_r} + \frac{1}{\tau_b}$$

where

$\tau_r$  = radioactive half-life

$\tau_b$  = biological half-life

### Half-Life

$$N = N_0 e^{-0.693 t/\tau}$$

where

$N_0$  = original number of atoms

$N$  = final number of atoms

$t$  = time

$\tau$  = half-life

Flux at distance 2 = (Flux at distance 1)  $(r_1/r_2)^2$

where  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are distances from source.

The half-life of a biologically degraded contaminant assuming a first-order rate constant is given by:

$$t_{1/2} = \frac{0.693}{k}$$

where

$k$  = rate constant (time<sup>-1</sup>)

$t_{1/2}$  = half-life (time)

### *Daughter Product Activity*

$$N_2 = \frac{\lambda_1 N_{10}}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1} (e^{-\lambda_1 t} - e^{-\lambda_2 t})$$

where

$\lambda_{1,2}$  = decay constants (time<sup>-1</sup>)

$N_{10}$  = initial activity (curies) of parent nuclei

$t$  = time

### *Daughter Product Maximum Activity Time*

$$t' = \frac{\ln \lambda_2 - \ln \lambda_1}{\lambda_2 - \lambda_1}$$

### Inverse Square Law

$$\frac{I_1}{I_2} = \frac{(R_2)^2}{(R_1)^2}$$

where

$I_{1,2}$  = Radiation intensity at locations 1 and 2

$R_{1,2}$  = Distance from the source at locations 1 and 2

## Sampling and Monitoring

### Data Quality Objectives (DQO) for Sampling Soils and Solids

| Investigation Type                               | Confidence Level (1- $\alpha$ ) (%) | Power (1- $\beta$ ) (%) | Minimum Detectable Relative Difference (%) |
|--------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| Preliminary site investigation                   | 70–80                               | 90–95                   | 10–30                                      |
| Emergency cleanup                                | 80–90                               | 90–95                   | 10–20                                      |
| Planned removal and remedial response operations | 90–95                               | 90–95                   | 10–20                                      |

Confidence level: 1– (Probability of a Type I error) = 1 –  $\alpha$  = size probability of not making a Type I error.

Power = 1– (Probability of a Type II error) = 1 –  $\beta$  = probability of not making a Type II error.

Source: EPA Document "EPA/600/8–89/046" *Soil Sampling Quality Assurance User's Guide*, Chapter 7.

$$CV = (100 * s) / \bar{x}$$

where

CV = coefficient of variation

$s$  = standard deviation of sample

$\bar{x}$  = sample average

Minimum Detectable Relative Difference = Relative increase over background  $[100 (\mu_s - \mu_B) / \mu_B]$  to be detectable with a probability (1 –  $\beta$ )

where

$\mu_s$  = mean of pollutant concentration of the site of the contamination

$\mu_B$  = mean of pollutant concentration of the site before contamination or the noncontaminated area (background)

**Number of Samples Required in a One-Sided One-Sample t-Test to Achieve a Minimum Detectable Relative Difference at Confidence Level (1- $\alpha$ ) and Power (1- $\beta$ )**

| Coefficient of Variation (%) | Power (%) | Confidence Level (%) | Minimum Detectable Relative Difference (%) |     |    |    |    |
|------------------------------|-----------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----|----|----|----|
|                              |           |                      | 5                                          | 10  | 20 | 30 | 40 |
| 15                           | 95        | 99                   | 145                                        | 39  | 12 | 7  | 5  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 99                                         | 26  | 8  | 5  | 3  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 78                                         | 21  | 6  | 3  | 3  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 57                                         | 15  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
|                              | 90        | 99                   | 120                                        | 32  | 11 | 6  | 5  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 79                                         | 21  | 7  | 4  | 3  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 60                                         | 16  | 5  | 3  | 2  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 41                                         | 11  | 3  | 2  | 1  |
|                              | 80        | 99                   | 94                                         | 26  | 9  | 6  | 5  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 58                                         | 16  | 5  | 3  | 3  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 42                                         | 11  | 4  | 2  | 2  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 26                                         | 7   | 2  | 2  | 1  |
| 25                           | 95        | 99                   | 397                                        | 102 | 28 | 14 | 9  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 272                                        | 69  | 19 | 9  | 6  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 216                                        | 55  | 15 | 7  | 5  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 155                                        | 40  | 11 | 5  | 3  |
|                              | 90        | 99                   | 329                                        | 85  | 24 | 12 | 8  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 272                                        | 70  | 19 | 9  | 6  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 166                                        | 42  | 12 | 6  | 4  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 114                                        | 29  | 8  | 4  | 3  |
|                              | 80        | 99                   | 254                                        | 66  | 19 | 10 | 7  |
|                              |           | 95                   | 156                                        | 41  | 12 | 6  | 4  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 114                                        | 30  | 8  | 4  | 3  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 72                                         | 19  | 5  | 3  | 2  |
| 35                           | 95        | 99                   | 775                                        | 196 | 42 | 25 | 15 |
|                              |           | 95                   | 532                                        | 134 | 35 | 17 | 10 |
|                              |           | 90                   | 421                                        | 106 | 28 | 13 | 8  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 304                                        | 77  | 20 | 9  | 6  |
|                              | 90        | 99                   | 641                                        | 163 | 43 | 21 | 13 |
|                              |           | 95                   | 421                                        | 107 | 28 | 14 | 8  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 323                                        | 82  | 21 | 10 | 6  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 222                                        | 56  | 15 | 7  | 4  |
|                              | 80        | 99                   | 495                                        | 126 | 34 | 17 | 11 |
|                              |           | 95                   | 305                                        | 78  | 21 | 10 | 7  |
|                              |           | 90                   | 222                                        | 57  | 15 | 7  | 5  |
|                              |           | 80                   | 140                                        | 36  | 10 | 5  | 3  |

## Wastewater Treatment and Technologies

### Specific Gravity for a Solids Slurry

$$S = \frac{W_w + W_s}{(W_w/1.00) + (W_s/S_s)}$$

where

$S$  = specific gravity of wet sludge

$W_w$  = weight of water (lb)

$W_s$  = weight of dry solids (lb)

$S_s$  = specific gravity of dry solids

The volume of waste sludge for a given amount of dry matter and concentration of solids is given by

$$V = \frac{W_s}{(s/100)\gamma S} = \frac{W_s}{[(100 - p)/100]\gamma S}$$

where

$V$  = volume of sludge, ft<sup>3</sup> (gal) [m<sup>3</sup>]

$W_s$  = weight of dry solids (lb or kg)

$s$  = solids content (%)

$\gamma$  = unit weight of water, 62.4 lb/ft<sup>3</sup> (8.34 lb/gal) [1,000 kg/m<sup>3</sup>]

$S$  = specific gravity of wet sludge

$p$  = water content (%)

### BOD<sub>5</sub> for Mixed Lagoons in Series

$$\frac{S}{S^0} = \frac{1}{1 + k_p \theta}$$

where

$S^0$  = Inlet total BOD<sub>5</sub>

$S$  = Outlet total BOD<sub>5</sub>

$\theta$  = Fresh-feed residence time

$k_p$  = Kinetic constant (time<sup>-1</sup>)

### National Research Council (NRC) Trickling Filter Performance

For a single-stage or first-stage rock filter, the equation is

$$E_1 = \frac{100}{1 + 0.0561 \sqrt{\frac{W}{VF}}}$$

where

$E_1$  = efficiency of BOD removal for process at 20°C, including recirculation and sedimentation, percent

$W$  = BOD loading to filter (lb/day)

$V$  = volume of filter media (10<sup>3</sup> ft<sup>3</sup>)

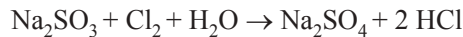
$F$  = recirculation factor

The recirculation factor is calculated using

$$F = \frac{1 + R}{(1 + R/10)^2}$$

## Dechlorination of Sulfite Compounds

Reaction between sodium sulfite and free chlorine residual and combined chlorine residual, as represented by monochloramine:



## Methanol Requirement for Biologically Treated Wastewater

$$C_m = 2.47N_o + 1.53N_1 + 0.87D_o$$

where

$C_m$  = required methanol concentration (mg/L)

$N_o$  = initial nitrate-nitrogen concentration (mg/L)

$N_1$  = initial nitrite-nitrogen concentration (mg/L)

$D_o$  = initial dissolved-oxygen concentration (mg/L)

## BOD Test Solution and Seeding Procedures

When the dilution of water is not seeded:

$$\text{BOD, mg/L} = \frac{D_1 - D_2}{P}$$

When the dilution of water is seeded:

$$\text{BOD, mg/L} = \frac{(D_1 - D_2) - (B_1 - B_2)f}{P}$$

where

$D_1$  = dissolved oxygen of diluted sample immediately after preparation (mg/L)

$D_2$  = dissolved oxygen of diluted sample after 5-day incubation at 20°C (mg/L)

$B_1$  = dissolved oxygen of seed control before incubation (mg/L)

$B_2$  = dissolved oxygen of seed control after incubation (mg/L)

$f$  = fraction of seeded dilution water volume in sample to volume of seeded dilution water in seed control

$P$  = fraction of wastewater sample volume to total combined volume

## Activated Sludge

$$X_A = \frac{\theta_c Y(S_0 - S_e)}{\theta(1 + k_d \theta_c)}$$

Steady-State Mass Balance around Secondary Clarifier:

$$(Q_0 + Q_R)X_A = Q_e X_e + Q_R X_r + Q_w X_w$$

$$\theta_c = \text{Solids residence time} = \frac{V(X_A)}{Q_w X_w + Q_e X_e}$$

$$\text{Sludge volume/day: } Q_s = \frac{M(100)}{\rho_s (\% \text{ solids})}$$

$$\text{SVI} = \frac{\text{Sludge volume after settling (mL/L)} \times 1,000}{\text{MLSS (mg/L)}}$$

where

$k_d$  = microbial death ratio; kinetic constant; day<sup>-1</sup>; typical range 0.1–0.01, typical domestic wastewater value = 0.05 day<sup>-1</sup>

$S_e$  = effluent BOD or COD concentration (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$S_0$  = influent BOD or COD concentration (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$X_A$  = biomass concentration in aeration tank (MLSS or MLVSS kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$Y$  = yield coefficient (kg biomass/kg BOD or COD consumed); range 0.4–1.2

$\theta$  = hydraulic residence time =  $V/Q$

For clarifier design, solids loading rate (SLR) =  $\frac{(Q_0 + Q_R)X_A}{A}$

Organic loading rate (volumetric) =  $Q_0 S_0 / \text{Vol}$

Organic loading rate (F:M) =  $Q_0 S_0 / (\text{Vol } X_A)$

Organic loading rate (surface area) =  $Q_0 S_0 / A_M$

$\rho_s$  = density of solids

$A$  = surface area of unit

$A_M$  = surface area of media in fixed-film reactor

$A_x$  = cross-sectional area of channel

$M$  = sludge production rate (dry weight basis)

$Q_0$  = influent flow rate

$Q_e$  = effluent flow rate

$Q_w$  = waste sludge flow rate

$\rho_s$  = wet sludge density

$R$  = recycle ratio =  $Q_R / Q_0$

$Q_R$  = recycle flow rate =  $Q_0 R$

$X_e$  = effluent suspended solids concentration

$X_w$  = waste sludge suspended solids concentration

$V$  = aeration basin volume

$Q$  = flow rate

$X_r$  = recycled sludge suspended solids concentration

**Design and Operational Parameters for Activated-Sludge  
Treatment of Municipal Wastewater**

| Type of Process       | Mean cell residence time ( $\theta_c$ , d) | Food-to-mass ratio [(kg BOD <sub>5</sub> /day·kg MLSS)] | Volumetric loading (kg BOD <sub>5</sub> /m <sup>3</sup> ) | Hydraulic residence time in aeration basin ( $\theta$ , h) | Mixed liquor suspended solids (MLSS, mg/L) | Recycle ratio ( $Q_r / Q$ ) | Flow regime* | BOD <sub>5</sub> removal efficiency (%) | Air supplied (m <sup>3</sup> /kg BOD <sub>5</sub> ) |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| Tapered aeration      | 5–15                                       | 0.2–0.4                                                 | 0.3–0.6                                                   | 4–8                                                        | 1,500–3,000                                | 0.25–0.5                    | PF           | 85–95                                   | 45–90                                               |
| Conventional          | 4–15                                       | 0.2–0.4                                                 | 0.3–0.6                                                   | 4–8                                                        | 1,500–3,000                                | 0.25–0.5                    | PF           | 85–95                                   | 45–90                                               |
| Step aeration         | 4–15                                       | 0.2–0.4                                                 | 0.6–1.0                                                   | 3–5                                                        | 2,000–3,500                                | 0.25–0.75                   | PF           | 85–95                                   | 45–90                                               |
| Completely mixed      | 4–15                                       | 0.2–0.4                                                 | 0.8–2.0                                                   | 3–5                                                        | 3,000–6,000                                | 0.25–1.0                    | CM           | 85–95                                   | 45–90                                               |
| Contact stabilization | 4–15                                       | 0.2–0.6                                                 | 1.0–1.2                                                   |                                                            |                                            | 0.25–1.0                    |              |                                         | 45–90                                               |
| Contact basin         |                                            |                                                         |                                                           | 0.5–1.0                                                    | 1,000–3,000                                |                             | PF           | 80–90                                   |                                                     |
| Stabilization basin   |                                            |                                                         |                                                           | 4–6                                                        | 4,000–10,000                               |                             | PF           |                                         |                                                     |
| High-rate aeration    | 4–15                                       | 0.4–1.5                                                 | 1.6–16                                                    | 0.5–2.0                                                    | 4,000–10,000                               | 1.0–5.0                     | CM           | 75–90                                   | 25–45                                               |
| Pure oxygen           | 8–20                                       | 0.2–1.0                                                 | 1.6–4                                                     | 1–3                                                        | 6,000–8,000                                | 0.25–0.5                    | CM           | 85–95                                   |                                                     |
| Extended aeration     | 20–30                                      | 0.05–0.15                                               | 0.16–0.40                                                 | 18–24                                                      | 3,000–6,000                                | 0.75–1.50                   | CM           | 75–90                                   | 90–125                                              |

\*PF = plug flow, CM = completely mixed.

Source: Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment, Disposal, and Reuse*, 3rd ed., McGraw-Hill, 1991.

### Facultative Pond

BOD Loading Total System  $\leq 35$  pounds BOD<sub>5</sub>/(acre·day)

Minimum = 3 ponds

Depth = 3–8 ft

Minimum  $t$  = 90–120 days

## Biotower

### Fixed-Film Equation without Recycle

$$\frac{S_e}{S_0} = e^{-kD/q^n}$$

### Fixed-Film Equation with Recycle

$$\frac{S_e}{S_a} = \frac{e^{-kD/q^n}}{(1 + R) - R(e^{-kD/q^n})}$$

where

$S_e$  = effluent BOD<sub>5</sub> (mg/L)

$S_0$  = influent BOD<sub>5</sub> (mg/L)

$R$  = recycle ratio =  $Q_R/Q_0$

$Q_R$  = recycle flow rate

$S_a = \frac{S_0 + RS_e}{1 + R}$

$D$  = depth of biotower media (m)

$q$  = hydraulic loading [ $\text{m}^3/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{min})$ ] ( $(Q_0 + RQ_0)/A_{\text{plan}}$  (with recycle))

$k$  = treatability constant; functions of wastewater and medium ( $\text{min}^{-1}$ ); range 0.01–0.1; for municipal wastewater and modular plastic media  $0.06 \text{ min}^{-1}$  @  $20^\circ\text{C}$

$k_T = k_{20}(1.035)^{T-20}$

$n$  = coefficient relating to media characteristics; modular plastic,  $n = 0.5$

## Aerobic Digestion

### Design criteria for aerobic digesters<sup>a</sup>

| Parameter                                                    | Value    |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|----------|
| Sludge retention time (day)                                  |          |
| At $20^\circ\text{C}$                                        | 40       |
| At $15^\circ\text{C}$                                        | 60       |
| Solids loading (lb volatile solids/ $\text{ft}^3$ -day)      | 0.1–0.3  |
| Oxygen requirements (lb O <sub>2</sub> /lb solids destroyed) |          |
| Cell tissue                                                  | ~2.3     |
| BOD <sub>5</sub> in primary sludge                           | 1.6–1.9  |
| Energy requirements for mixing                               |          |
| Mechanical aerators (hp/ $10^3 \text{ ft}^3$ )               | 0.7–1.50 |
| Diffused-air mixing ( $\text{ft}^3/10^3 \text{ ft}^3$ -min)  | 20–40    |
| Dissolved-oxygen residual in liquid (mg/L)                   | 1–2      |
| Reduction in volatile suspended solids (VSS) (%)             | 40–50    |

### Tank Volume

$$V = \frac{Q_i(X_i + FS_i)}{X_d(k_d P_v + 1/\theta_c)}$$

where

$V$  = volume of aerobic digester ( $\text{ft}^3$ )

$Q_i$  = influent average flow rate to digester ( $\text{ft}^3/\text{day}$ )

$X_i$  = influent suspended solids (mg/L)

$F$  = fraction of the influent BOD<sub>5</sub> consisting of raw primary sludge (expressed as a decimal)

$S_i$  = influent BOD<sub>5</sub> (mg/L)

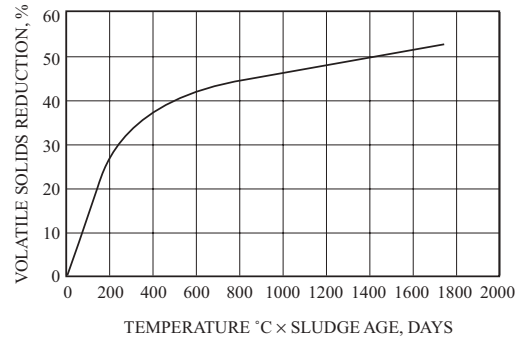
$X_d$  = digester suspended solids (mg/L); typically  $X_d = (0.7)X_i$

$k_d$  = reaction-rate constant (day<sup>-1</sup>)

$P_v$  = volatile fraction of digester suspended solids (expressed as a decimal)

$\theta_c$  = solids residence time (sludge age) (day)

$FS_i$  can be neglected if primary sludge is not included on the sludge flow to the digester.



VOLATILE SOLIDS REDUCTION IN AN AEROBIC DIGESTER AS A FUNCTION OF DIGESTER LIQUID TEMPERATURE AND DIGESTER SLUDGE AGE

Source: Tchobanoglous, G., and Metcalf and Eddy, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment and Reuse*, 4th ed., McGraw-Hill, 2003.

## Anaerobic Digestion

Design parameters for anaerobic digesters

| Parameter                                        | Standard-rate | High-rate |
|--------------------------------------------------|---------------|-----------|
| Solids residence time (day)                      | 30–90         | 10–20     |
| Volatile solids loading (kg/m <sup>3</sup> /day) | 0.5–1.6       | 1.6–6.4   |
| Digested solids concentration (%)                | 4–6           | 4–6       |
| Volatile solids reduction (%)                    | 35–50         | 45–55     |
| Gas production (m <sup>3</sup> /kg VSS added)    | 0.5–0.55      | 0.6–0.65  |
| Methane content (%)                              | 65            | 65        |

### Standard-Rate

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = \frac{V_1 + V_2}{2} t_r + V_2 t_s$$

### High-Rate

First stage

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = V_1 t_r$$

Second Stage

$$\text{Reactor Volume} = \frac{V_1 + V_2}{2} t_t + V_2 t_s$$

where

$V_1$  = raw sludge input (volume/day)

$V_2$  = digested sludge accumulation (volume/day)

$t_r$  = time to react in a high-rate digester = time to react and thicken in a standard-rate digester

$t_t$  = time to thicken in a high-rate digester

$t_s$  = storage time

Source: Peavy, HS, D.R. Rowe, and G. Tchobanoglous, *Environmental Engineering*, New York, McGraw-Hill, 1985.

## Water Treatment Technologies

### Activated Carbon Adsorption

#### Freundlich Isotherm

$$\frac{x}{m} = X = KC_e^{1/n}$$

where

$x$  = mass of solute adsorbed

$m$  = mass of adsorbent

$X$  = mass ratio of the solid phase—that is, the mass of adsorbed solute per mass of adsorbent

$C_e$  = equilibrium concentration of solute, mass/volume

$K, n$  = experimental constants

Linearized Form

$$\ln \frac{x}{m} = \frac{1}{n} \ln C_e + \ln K$$

For linear isotherm,  $n = 1$

#### Langmuir Isotherm

$$\frac{x}{m} = X = \frac{aKC_e}{1 + KC_e}$$

where

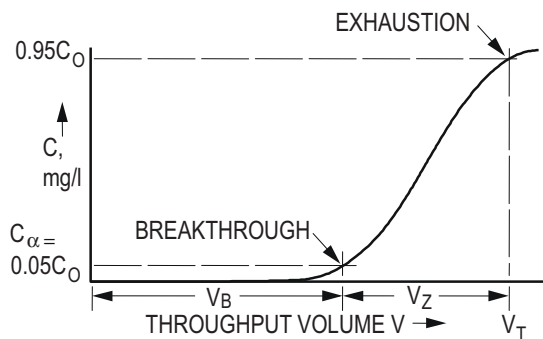
$a$  = mass of adsorbed solute required to saturate completely a unit mass of adsorbent

$K$  = experimental constant

Linearized Form

$$\frac{m}{x} = \frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{aK} \frac{1}{C_e}$$

#### Depth of Sorption Zone



$$Z_s = Z \left[ \frac{V_Z}{V_T - 0.5V_Z} \right]$$

where

$$V_Z = V_T - V_B$$

$Z_s$  = depth of sorption zone

$Z$  = total carbon depth

$V_T$  = total volume treated at exhaustion ( $C = 0.95 C_0$ )

$V_B$  = total volume at breakthrough ( $C = C_\alpha = 0.05 C_0$ )

$C_0$  = concentration of contaminant in influent

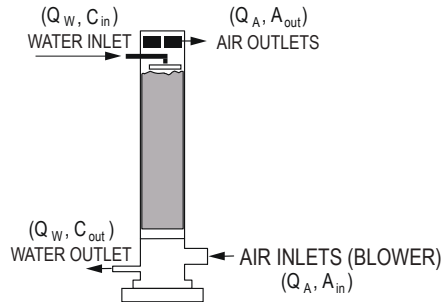
## Air Stripping

$P_i = HC_i$  = Henry's Law

$P_i$  = partial pressure of component  $i$  (atm)

$H$  = Henry's Law constant (atm·m<sup>3</sup>/kmol)

$C_i$  = concentration of component  $i$  in solvent (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)



$$A_{out} = H' C_{in}$$

$$Q_W \cdot C_{in} = Q_A H' C_{in}$$

$$Q_W = Q_A H'$$

$$H' (Q_A / Q_W) = 1$$

where

$A_{out}$  = concentration in the effluent air (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>); in this formulation of the equation  $A_{in}$  and  $C_{out}$  are assumed to be negligible for simplicity.

$Q_W$  = water flow rate (m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$Q_A$  = airflow rate (m<sup>3</sup>/s)

$A_{in}$  = concentration of contaminant in air (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)

$C_{out}$  = concentration of contaminants in effluent water (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)

$C_{in}$  = concentration of contaminants in influent water (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)

## Stripper Packing Height = $Z$

$$Z = HTU \times NTU$$

Assuming rapid equilibrium:

$$NTU = \left( \frac{R_S}{R_S - 1} \right) \ln \left( \frac{(C_{in}/C_{out})(R_S - 1) + 1}{R_S} \right)$$

where

$NTU$  = number of transfer units

$H$  = Henry's Law constant

$H'$  =  $H/RT$  = dimensionless Henry's Law constant

$T$  = temperature in units consistent with  $K$

$R$  = universal gas constant [atm·m<sup>3</sup>/(kmol·K)]

$R_S$  = stripping factor  $H'(Q_A/Q_W)$

$C_{in}$  = concentration in the influent water (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)

$C_{out}$  = concentration in the effluent water (kmol/m<sup>3</sup>)

$HTU$  = Height of Transfer Units =  $\frac{L}{M_w K_L a}$

where

$L$  = liquid molar loading rate [kmol/(s•m<sup>2</sup>)]

$M_w$  = molar density of water (55.6 kmol/m<sup>3</sup>) = 3.47 lbmol/ft<sup>3</sup>

$K_L a$  = overall transfer rate constant (s<sup>-1</sup>)

### Clarifier

Overflow rate = Hydraulic loading rate =  $v_o = Q/A_{\text{surface}}$

$v_o$  = critical settling velocity; terminal settling velocity of smallest particle that is 100% removed

Weir loading = weir overflow rate, WOR =  $Q/\text{Weir Length}$

Horizontal velocity = approach velocity =  $v_h = Q/A_{\text{cross-section}} = Q/A_x$

Hydraulic residence time =  $V/Q = \theta$

where

$Q$  = flow rate

$A_x$  = cross-sectional area

$A$  = surface area, plan view

$V$  = tank volume

**Typical Primary Clarifier Efficiency Percent Removal**

|                  | Overflow rates         |                        |                        |                        |
|------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
|                  | 1,200                  | 1,000                  | 800                    | 600                    |
|                  | (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) |
|                  | 48.9                   | 40.7                   | 32.6                   | 24.4                   |
| Suspended Solids | (m/d)                  | (m/d)                  | (m/d)                  | (m/d)                  |
|                  | 54%                    | 58%                    | 64%                    | 68%                    |
| BOD <sub>5</sub> | 30%                    | 32%                    | 34%                    | 36%                    |

where gpd = gallons per day

**Design Criteria for Sedimentation Basins**

| Type of Basin                                            | Overflow Rate                  |                                          |                                |                                          | Solids Loading Rate             |                             |                                 |                             | Hydraulic Residence Time (hr) | Depth (ft) |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|------------|
|                                                          | Average (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | Peak (m <sup>3</sup> /m <sup>2</sup> •d) | Average (gpd/ft <sup>2</sup> ) | Peak (m <sup>3</sup> /m <sup>2</sup> •d) | Average (lb/ft <sup>2</sup> •d) | Peak (kg/m <sup>2</sup> •h) | Average (lb/ft <sup>2</sup> •h) | Peak (kg/m <sup>2</sup> •h) |                               |            |
| <b>Water Treatment</b>                                   |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Clarification following coagulation and flocculation:    |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Alum coagulation                                         | 350–550                        | 14–22                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 4–8                           | 12–16      |
| Ferric coagulation                                       | 550–700                        | 22–28                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 4–8                           | 12–16      |
| Upflow clarifiers                                        |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Groundwater                                              | 1,500–2,200                    | 61–90                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 1                             |            |
| Surface water                                            | 1,000–1,500                    | 41–61                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 4                             |            |
| Clarification following lime-soda softening              |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Conventional                                             | 550–1,000                      | 22–41                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 2–4                           |            |
| Upflow clarifiers                                        |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Groundwater                                              | 1,000–2,500                    | 41–102                                   |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 1                             |            |
| Surface water                                            | 1,000–1,800                    | 41–73                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 4                             |            |
| <b>Wastewater Treatment</b>                              |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| Primary clarifiers                                       | 800–1,200                      | 32–49                                    | 1,200–2,000                    | 50–80                                    |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 2                             | 10–12      |
| Settling basins following fixed film reactors            | 400–800                        | 16–33                                    |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 2                             |            |
| Settling basins following air-activated sludge reactors  |                                |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             |                               |            |
| All configurations EXCEPT extended aeration              | 400–700                        | 16–28                                    | 1,000–1,200                    | 40–64                                    | 19–29                           | 4–6                         | 38                              | 8                           | 2                             | 12–15      |
| Extended aeration                                        | 200–400                        | 8–16                                     | 600–800                        | 24–32                                    | 5–24                            | 1–5                         | 34                              | 7                           | 2                             | 12–15      |
| Settling basins following chemical flocculation reactors | 800–1,200                      |                                          |                                |                                          |                                 |                             |                                 |                             | 2                             |            |

### Weir Loadings

1. Water Treatment—weir overflow rates should not exceed 20,000 gpd/ft
2. Wastewater Treatment
  - a. Flow  $\leq 1$  MGD: weir overflow rates should not exceed 10,000 gpd/ft
  - b. Flow  $> 1$  MGD: weir overflow rates should not exceed 15,000 gpd/ft

### Horizontal Velocities

1. Water Treatment—horizontal velocities should not exceed 0.5 fpm
2. Wastewater Treatment—no specific requirements (use the same criteria as for water)

### Dimensions

1. Rectangular Tanks
  - a. Length:Width ratio = 3:1 to 5:1
  - b. Basin width is determined by the scraper width (or multiples of the scraper width)
  - c. Bottom slope is set at 1%
2. Circular Tanks
  - a. Diameters up to 200 ft
  - b. Diameters must match the dimensions of the sludge scraping mechanism
  - c. Bottom slope is less than 8%

## Settling Equations

### General Spherical

$$v_t = \sqrt{\frac{4g(\rho_p - \rho_f)d}{3C_D\rho_f}}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} C_D &= \text{drag coefficient} \\ &= 24/\text{Re} \quad (\text{Laminar; } \text{Re} \leq 1.0) \\ &= 24/\text{Re} + 3/(\text{Re}^{1/2}) + 0.34 \quad (\text{Transitional}) \\ &= 0.4 \quad (\text{Turbulent; } \text{Re} \geq 10^4) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Re} = \text{Reynolds number} = \frac{v_t \rho d}{\mu}$$

$g$  = gravitational constant

$\rho_p$  = density of particle

$\rho_f$  = density of fluid

$d$  = diameter of sphere

$\mu$  = bulk viscosity of liquid = absolute viscosity

$v_t$  = terminal settling velocity

### Stokes' Law

$$v_t = \frac{g(\rho_p - \rho_f)d^2}{18\mu} = \frac{g\rho_f(S.G. - 1)d^2}{18\mu} \quad [\text{Second equation is valid when fluid is at standard conditions.}]$$

Approach velocity = horizontal velocity =  $Q/A_x$

Hydraulic loading rate =  $Q/A$

Hydraulic residence time =  $V/Q = \theta$

where

$Q$  = flow rate

$A_x$  = cross-sectional area

$A$  = surface area, plan view

$V$  = tank volume

$\rho_f$  = fluid mass density

$S.G.$  = specific gravity

## Filtration Equations

Filter bay length-to-width ratio = 1.2:1 to 1.5:1

Effective size =  $d_{10}$

Uniformity coefficient =  $d_{60}/d_{10}$

$d_x$  = diameter of particle class for which  $x\%$  of sample is less than (m or ft)

Filter equations can be used with any consistent set of units.

### Head Loss Through Clean Bed

*Rose Equation*

Monosized Media

$$h_f = \frac{1.067(v_s)^2 L C_D}{g \eta^4 d}$$

Multisized Media

$$h_f = \frac{1.067(v_s)^2 L}{g \eta^4} \sum \frac{C_{D_{ij}} x_{ij}}{d_{ij}}$$

*Carmen-Kozeny Equation*

Monosized Media

$$h_f = \frac{f' L (1 - \eta) v_s^2}{\eta^3 g d}$$

Multisized Media

$$h_f = \frac{L (1 - \eta) v_s^2}{\eta^3 g} \sum \frac{f'_{ij} x_{ij}}{d_{ij}}$$

$$f' = \text{friction factor} = 150 \left( \frac{1 - \eta}{\text{Re}} \right) + 1.75$$

where

$h_f$  = head loss through the clean bed (m of H<sub>2</sub>O)

$L$  = depth of filter media (m)

$\eta$  = porosity of bed = void volume/total volume

$v_s$  = filtration rate = empty bed approach velocity (m/s) =  $Q/A_{\text{plan}}$

$g$  = gravitational acceleration (m/s<sup>2</sup>)

$\text{Re}$  = Reynolds number =  $\frac{v_s \rho d}{\mu}$

$d_{ij}$ ,  $d$  = diameter of filter media particles; arithmetic average of adjacent screen openings (m)

$i$  = filter media (sand, anthracite, garnet)

$j$  = filter media particle size

$x_{ij}$  = mass fraction of media retained between adjacent sieves

$f'_{ij}$  = friction factors for each media fraction

$C_D$  = drag coefficient as defined in settling velocity equations

### Bed Expansion

Monosized

$$L_f = \frac{L_o (1 - \eta_o)}{1 - \left( \frac{v_B}{v_t} \right)^{0.22}}$$

Multisized

$$L_f = L_o (1 - \eta_o) \sum \frac{x_{ij}}{1 - \left( \frac{v_B}{v_{t,ij}} \right)^{0.22}}$$

$$\eta_f = \left( \frac{v_B}{v_t} \right)^{0.22}$$

where

$L_f$  = depth of fluidized filter media (m)

$v_B$  = backwash velocity (m/s) =  $\frac{Q_B}{A_{\text{plan}}}$

- $Q_B$  = backwash flow rate  
 $v_t$  = terminal setting velocity  
 $\eta_f$  = porosity of fluidized bed  
 $L_o$  = initial bed depth  
 $\eta_o$  = initial bed porosity

### Lime-Soda Softening Equations

- |                                             |                                                                                                                                                              |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. Carbon dioxide removal                   | $\text{CO}_2 + \text{Ca(OH)}_2 \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + \text{H}_2\text{O}$                                                                     |
| 2. Calcium carbonate hardness removal       | $\text{Ca (HCO}_3)_2 + \text{Ca(OH)}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$                                                           |
| 3. Calcium non-carbonate hardness removal   | $\text{CaSO}_4 + \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + 2\text{Na}^+ + \text{SO}_4^{2-}$                                               |
| 4. Magnesium carbonate hardness removal     | $\text{Mg(HCO}_3)_2 + 2\text{Ca(OH)}_2 \rightarrow 2\text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + \text{Mg(OH)}_2(\text{s}) + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$                               |
| 5. Magnesium non-carbonate hardness removal | $\text{MgSO}_4 + \text{Ca(OH)}_2 + \text{Na}_2\text{CO}_3 \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + \text{Mg(OH)}_2(\text{s}) + 2\text{Na}^+ + \text{SO}_4^{2-}$ |
| 6. Destruction of excess alkalinity         | $2\text{HCO}_3^- + \text{Ca(OH)}_2 \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + \text{CO}_3^{2-} + 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$                                             |
| 7. Recarbonation                            | $\text{Ca}^{2+} + 2\text{OH}^- + \text{CO}_2 \rightarrow \text{CaCO}_3(\text{s}) + \text{H}_2\text{O}$                                                       |

### Coagulation Equations

Insoluble products are shown in italics.

- Aluminum sulfate in natural alkaline water
 
$$\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 + 3 \text{Ca (HCO}_3)_2 \Leftrightarrow 2 \text{Al(OH)}_3 + 3 \text{CaSO}_4 + 6 \text{CO}_2$$
- Aluminum sulfate plus soda ash
 
$$\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 + 3 \text{NaCO}_3 + 3 \text{H}_2\text{O} \Leftrightarrow 2 \text{Al(OH)}_3 + 3 \text{NaSO}_4 + 3 \text{CO}_2$$
- Ferric sulfate
 
$$\text{Fe}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 + 3 \text{Ca(HCO}_3)_2 \Leftrightarrow 2 \text{Fe(OH)}_3 + 3 \text{CaSO}_4 + 6 \text{CO}_2$$
- Ferric chloride
 
$$2 \text{FeCl}_3 + 3 \text{Ca(HCO}_3)_2 \Leftrightarrow 2 \text{Fe(OH)}_3 + 3 \text{CaCl}_2 + 6 \text{CO}_2$$

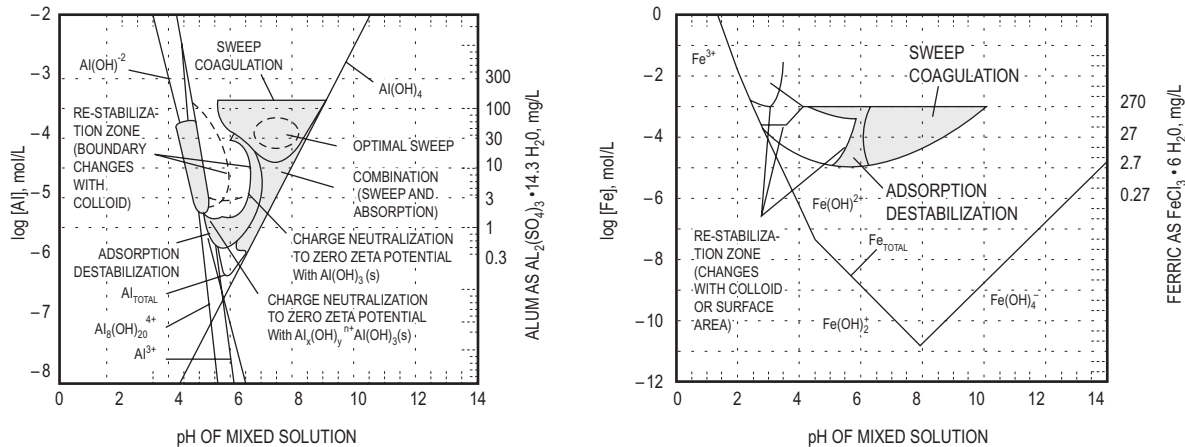
### Phosphorus Removal Equations

- Ferric chloride
 
$$\text{FeCl}_3 + \text{PO}_4^{3-} \rightarrow \text{FePO}_4(\downarrow) + 3 \text{Cl}^-$$
- Ferrous chloride
 
$$3 \text{FeCl}_2 + 2 \text{PO}_4^{3-} \rightarrow \text{Fe}_3(\text{PO}_4)_2(\downarrow) + 6 \text{Cl}^-$$
- Aluminum sulfate (alum)
 
$$\text{Al}_2(\text{SO}_4)_3 \cdot 14 \text{H}_2\text{O} + 2 \text{PO}_4^{3-} \rightarrow 2 \text{AlPO}_4(\downarrow) + 3 \text{SO}_4^{2-} + 14 \text{H}_2\text{O}$$

### Common Radicals in Water

| Molecular Formulas                 | Molecular Weight | <i>n</i>         | Equivalent Weight |
|------------------------------------|------------------|------------------|-------------------|
|                                    |                  | # Equiv per mole |                   |
| CO <sub>3</sub> <sup>2-</sup>      | 60.0             | 2                | 30.0              |
| CO <sub>2</sub>                    | 44.0             | 2                | 22.0              |
| Ca(OH) <sub>2</sub>                | 74.1             | 2                | 37.1              |
| CaCO <sub>3</sub>                  | 100.1            | 2                | 50.0              |
| Ca(HCO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> | 162.1            | 2                | 81.1              |
| CaSO <sub>4</sub>                  | 136.1            | 2                | 68.1              |
| Ca <sup>2+</sup>                   | 40.1             | 2                | 20.0              |
| H <sup>+</sup>                     | 1.0              | 1                | 1.0               |
| HCO <sub>3</sub> <sup>-</sup>      | 61.0             | 1                | 61.0              |
| Mg(HCO <sub>3</sub> ) <sub>2</sub> | 146.3            | 2                | 73.2              |
| Mg(OH) <sub>2</sub>                | 58.3             | 2                | 29.2              |
| MgSO <sub>4</sub>                  | 120.4            | 2                | 60.2              |
| Mg <sup>2+</sup>                   | 24.3             | 2                | 12.2              |
| Na <sup>+</sup>                    | 23.0             | 1                | 23.0              |
| Na <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>3</sub>    | 106.0            | 2                | 53.0              |
| OH <sup>-</sup>                    | 17.0             | 1                | 17.0              |
| SO <sub>4</sub> <sup>2-</sup>      | 96.1             | 2                | 48.0              |

### Typical Operating Ranges for Coagulation with Alum and Ferric Chloride



Source: Metcalf and Eddy; AECOM, *Wastewater Engineering: Treatment and Resource Recovery*, 5th ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2014, p. 473.

### Rapid Mix and Flocculator Design

$$G = \sqrt{\frac{P}{\mu V}} = \sqrt{\frac{\gamma H_L}{t \mu}}$$

$$Gt = 10^4 \text{ to } 10^5$$

where

$G$  = root mean square velocity gradient (mixing intensity) [ft/(sec-ft) or m/(s•m)]

$P$  = power to the fluid (ft-lb/sec or N•m/s)

$V$  = volume (ft<sup>3</sup> or m<sup>3</sup>)

$\mu$  = dynamic viscosity [lb/(ft-sec) or Pa•s]

$\gamma$  = specific weight of water (lb/ft<sup>3</sup> or N/m<sup>3</sup>)

$H_L$  = head loss (ft or m)

$t$  = time (sec or s)

### Reel and Paddle

$$P = \frac{C_D A_p \rho_f v_r^3}{2}$$

where

$C_D$  = drag coefficient = 1.8 for flat blade with a L:W > 20:1

$A_p$  = area of blade (m<sup>2</sup>) perpendicular to the direction of travel through the water

$\rho_f$  = density of H<sub>2</sub>O (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

$v_p$  = velocity of paddle (m/s)

$v_r$  = relative or effective paddle velocity

=  $v_p$  • slip coefficient

slip coefficient = 0.5 to 0.75

### Turbulent Flow Impeller Mixer

$$P = K_T (n)^3 (D_i)^5 \rho_f$$

where

$K_T$  = impeller constant (see table)

$n$  = rotational speed (rev/sec)

$D_i$  = impeller diameter (m)

**Values of the Impeller Constant  $K_T$**   
(Assume Turbulent Flow)

| Type of Impeller                          | $K_T$ |
|-------------------------------------------|-------|
| Propeller, pitch of 1, 3 blades           | 0.32  |
| Propeller, pitch of 2, 3 blades           | 1.00  |
| Turbine, 6 flat blades, vaned disc        | 6.30  |
| Turbine, 6 curved blades                  | 4.80  |
| Fan turbine, 6 blades at 45°              | 1.65  |
| Shrouded turbine, 6 curved blades         | 1.08  |
| Shrouded turbine, with stator, no baffles | 1.12  |

*Note:* Constant assumes baffled tanks having four baffles at the tank wall with a width equal to 10% of the tank diameter.

Source: Reprinted with permission from *Industrial & Engineering Chemistry*,  
"Mixing of Liquids in Chemical Processing," J. Henry Rushton, 1952,  
v. 44, no. 12, p. 2934, American Chemical Society.

### Reverse Osmosis

#### Osmotic Pressure of Solutions of Electrolytes

$$\Pi = \phi v \frac{n}{V} RT$$

where

$\Pi$  = osmotic pressure (Pa)

$\phi$  = osmotic coefficient

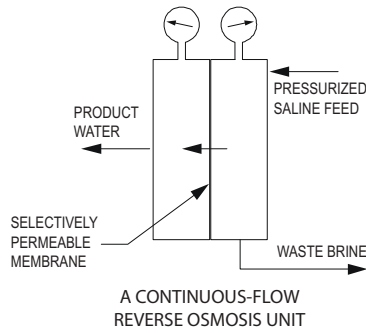
$v$  = number of ions formed from one molecule of electrolyte

$n$  = number of moles of electrolyte

$V$  = specific volume of solvent (m<sup>3</sup>/kmol)

$R$  = universal gas constant [Pa • m<sup>3</sup>/(kmol • K)]

$T$  = absolute temperature (K)



### Salt Flux through the Membrane

$$J_s = (D_s K_s / \Delta Z)(C_{in} - C_{out})$$

where

$J_s$  = salt flux through the membrane [ $\text{kmol}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s})$ ]

$D_s$  = diffusivity of the solute in the membrane ( $\text{m}^2/\text{s}$ )

$K_s$  = solute distribution coefficient (dimensionless)

$C$  = concentration ( $\text{kmol}/\text{m}^3$ )

$\Delta Z$  = membrane thickness (m)

$$J_s = K_p (C_{in} - C_{out})$$

$K_p$  = membrane solute mass-transfer coefficient

$$= \frac{D_s K_s}{\Delta Z} (L/t, \text{m/s})$$

### Water Flux

$$J_w = W_p (\Delta P - \Delta \pi)$$

where

$J_w$  = water flux through the membrane [ $\text{kmol}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s})$ ]

$W_p$  = coefficient of water permeation, a characteristic of the particular membrane [ $\text{kmol}/(\text{m}^2 \cdot \text{s} \cdot \text{Pa})$ ]

$\Delta P$  = pressure differential across membrane =  $P_{in} - P_{out}$  (Pa)

$\Delta \pi$  = osmotic pressure differential across membrane  $\pi_{in} - \pi_{out}$  (Pa)

### **Ultrafiltration**

$$J_w = \frac{\varepsilon r^2 \int \Delta P}{8 \mu \delta}$$

where

$\varepsilon$  = membrane porosity

$r$  = membrane pore size

$\Delta P$  = net transmembrane pressure

$\mu$  = viscosity

$\delta$  = membrane thickness

$J_w$  = volumetric flux (m/s)

## Disinfection

Chlorine contact chamber length-to-width ratio = 20:1 to 50:1

$$CT_{\text{calc}} = C \times t_{10}$$

where

$CT_{\text{calc}}$  = calculated  $CT$  value (mg • min/L)

$C$  = residual disinfectant concentration measured during peak hourly flow (mg/L)

$t_{10}$  = time it takes 10% of the water to flow through the reactor measured during peak hourly flow (min)  
= can be determined from traces study data or the following relationship,  $t_{10(\text{approx})} = \theta \times BF$

$\theta$  = hydraulic residence time (min)

$BF$  = baffling factor

Source: Adapted from *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

### Baffling Factors

| Baffling Condition     | Baffling Factor | Baffling Description                                                                                       |
|------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unbaffled (mixed flow) | 0.1             | None, agitated basin, very low length to width ratio, high inlet and outlet flow velocities.               |
| Poor                   | 0.3             | Single or multiple unbaffled inlets and outlets, no intra-basin baffles.                                   |
| Average                | 0.5             | Baffled inlet or outlet with some intra-basin baffles.                                                     |
| Superior               | 0.7             | Perforated inlet baffle, serpentine or perforated intra-basin baffles, outlet weir or perforated launders. |
| Perfect (plug flow)    | 1.0             | Very high length to width ratio (pipeline flow), perforated inlet, outlet, and intra-basin baffles.        |

Source: *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

## Removal and Inactivation Requirements

| Microorganism          | Required Log Reduction | Treatment                   |
|------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>Giardia</i>         | 3-log (99.9%)          | Removal and/or inactivation |
| Viruses                | 4-log (99.99%)         | Removal and/or inactivation |
| <i>Cryptosporidium</i> | 2-log (99%)            | Removal                     |

Source: *Guidance Manual LT1ESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

## Typical Removal Credits and Inactivation Requirements for Various Treatment Technologies

| Process                       | Typical Log Removal Credits |         | Resulting Disinfection Log Inactivation Requirements |         |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------|------------------------------------------------------|---------|
|                               | <i>Giardia</i>              | Viruses | <i>Giardia</i>                                       | Viruses |
| Conventional Treatment        | 2.5                         | 2.0     | 0.5                                                  | 2.0     |
| Direct Filtration             | 2.0                         | 1.0     | 1.0                                                  | 3.0     |
| Slow Sand Filtration          | 2.0                         | 2.0     | 1.0                                                  | 2.0     |
| Diatomaceous Earth Filtration | 2.0                         | 1.0     | 1.0                                                  | 3.0     |
| Unfiltered                    | 0                           | 0       | 3.0                                                  | 4.0     |

Source: *Guidance Manual LTIESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

### CT Values\* For 3-LOG Inactivation Of Giardia Cysts By Free Chlorine

| Chlorine Concentration<br>(mg/L) | Temperature <= 0.5°C |     |     |     |     |     |     |       | Temperature = 5°C  |     |     |     |     |     |       |     | Temperature = 10°C |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|-------|-----|--------------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|--|--|--|
|                                  | pH                   |     |     |     |     |     |     |       | pH                 |     |     |     |     |     |       |     | pH                 |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|                                  | <=6.0                | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5                | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0                | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 |  |  |  |
| <=0.4                            | 137                  | 163 | 195 | 237 | 277 | 329 | 390 | 97    | 117                | 139 | 166 | 198 | 236 | 279 | 73    | 88  | 104                | 125 | 149 | 177 | 209 |  |  |  |
| 0.6                              | 141                  | 168 | 200 | 239 | 286 | 342 | 407 | 100   | 120                | 143 | 171 | 204 | 244 | 291 | 75    | 90  | 107                | 128 | 153 | 183 | 218 |  |  |  |
| 0.8                              | 145                  | 172 | 205 | 246 | 295 | 354 | 422 | 103   | 122                | 146 | 175 | 210 | 252 | 301 | 78    | 92  | 110                | 131 | 158 | 189 | 222 |  |  |  |
| 1.0                              | 148                  | 176 | 210 | 253 | 304 | 365 | 437 | 105   | 125                | 149 | 179 | 216 | 260 | 312 | 79    | 94  | 112                | 134 | 162 | 195 | 234 |  |  |  |
| 1.2                              | 152                  | 180 | 215 | 259 | 313 | 376 | 451 | 107   | 127                | 152 | 183 | 221 | 267 | 320 | 80    | 95  | 114                | 137 | 166 | 200 | 240 |  |  |  |
| 1.4                              | 155                  | 184 | 221 | 266 | 321 | 387 | 464 | 109   | 130                | 155 | 187 | 227 | 274 | 329 | 82    | 98  | 116                | 140 | 170 | 206 | 247 |  |  |  |
| 1.6                              | 157                  | 189 | 226 | 273 | 329 | 397 | 477 | 111   | 132                | 158 | 192 | 232 | 281 | 337 | 83    | 99  | 119                | 144 | 174 | 211 | 253 |  |  |  |
| 1.8                              | 162                  | 193 | 231 | 279 | 338 | 407 | 489 | 114   | 135                | 162 | 196 | 238 | 287 | 345 | 86    | 101 | 122                | 147 | 179 | 215 | 259 |  |  |  |
| 2.0                              | 165                  | 197 | 236 | 286 | 346 | 417 | 500 | 116   | 138                | 165 | 200 | 243 | 294 | 353 | 87    | 104 | 124                | 150 | 182 | 221 | 265 |  |  |  |
| 2.2                              | 169                  | 201 | 242 | 297 | 353 | 426 | 511 | 118   | 140                | 169 | 204 | 248 | 300 | 361 | 89    | 105 | 127                | 153 | 186 | 225 | 271 |  |  |  |
| 2.4                              | 172                  | 205 | 247 | 298 | 361 | 435 | 522 | 120   | 143                | 172 | 209 | 253 | 306 | 368 | 90    | 107 | 129                | 157 | 190 | 230 | 276 |  |  |  |
| 2.6                              | 175                  | 209 | 252 | 304 | 368 | 444 | 533 | 122   | 146                | 175 | 213 | 258 | 312 | 375 | 92    | 110 | 131                | 160 | 194 | 234 | 281 |  |  |  |
| 2.8                              | 178                  | 213 | 257 | 310 | 375 | 452 | 543 | 124   | 148                | 178 | 217 | 263 | 318 | 382 | 93    | 111 | 134                | 163 | 197 | 239 | 287 |  |  |  |
| 3.0                              | 181                  | 217 | 261 | 316 | 382 | 460 | 552 | 126   | 151                | 182 | 221 | 268 | 324 | 389 | 95    | 113 | 137                | 166 | 201 | 243 | 292 |  |  |  |
| Chlorine Concentration<br>(mg/L) | Temperature = 15°C   |     |     |     |     |     |     |       | Temperature = 20°C |     |     |     |     |     |       |     | Temperature = 25°C |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|                                  | pH                   |     |     |     |     |     |     |       | pH                 |     |     |     |     |     |       |     | pH                 |     |     |     |     |  |  |  |
|                                  | <=6.0                | 6.5 | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5                | 7.0 | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 | <=6.0 | 6.5 | 7.0                | 7.5 | 8.0 | 8.5 | 9.0 |  |  |  |
| <=0.4                            | 49                   | 59  | 70  | 83  | 99  | 118 | 140 | 36    | 44                 | 52  | 62  | 74  | 89  | 105 | 24    | 29  | 35                 | 42  | 50  | 59  | 70  |  |  |  |
| 0.6                              | 50                   | 60  | 72  | 86  | 102 | 122 | 146 | 38    | 45                 | 54  | 64  | 77  | 92  | 109 | 25    | 30  | 36                 | 43  | 51  | 61  | 73  |  |  |  |
| 0.8                              | 52                   | 61  | 73  | 88  | 105 | 126 | 151 | 39    | 46                 | 55  | 66  | 79  | 95  | 113 | 26    | 31  | 37                 | 44  | 53  | 63  | 75  |  |  |  |
| 1.0                              | 53                   | 63  | 75  | 90  | 108 | 130 | 156 | 39    | 47                 | 56  | 67  | 81  | 98  | 117 | 26    | 31  | 37                 | 45  | 54  | 65  | 78  |  |  |  |
| 1.2                              | 54                   | 64  | 76  | 92  | 111 | 134 | 160 | 40    | 48                 | 57  | 69  | 83  | 100 | 120 | 27    | 32  | 38                 | 46  | 55  | 67  | 80  |  |  |  |
| 1.4                              | 55                   | 65  | 78  | 94  | 114 | 137 | 165 | 41    | 49                 | 58  | 70  | 85  | 103 | 123 | 27    | 33  | 39                 | 47  | 57  | 69  | 82  |  |  |  |
| 1.6                              | 56                   | 66  | 79  | 96  | 116 | 141 | 169 | 42    | 50                 | 59  | 72  | 87  | 105 | 126 | 28    | 33  | 40                 | 48  | 58  | 70  | 84  |  |  |  |
| 1.8                              | 57                   | 68  | 81  | 98  | 119 | 144 | 173 | 43    | 51                 | 61  | 74  | 89  | 106 | 129 | 29    | 34  | 41                 | 49  | 60  | 72  | 86  |  |  |  |
| 2.0                              | 58                   | 69  | 83  | 100 | 122 | 147 | 177 | 44    | 52                 | 62  | 75  | 91  | 110 | 132 | 29    | 35  | 41                 | 50  | 61  | 74  | 88  |  |  |  |
| 2.2                              | 59                   | 70  | 85  | 102 | 124 | 150 | 181 | 44    | 53                 | 63  | 77  | 93  | 113 | 135 | 30    | 35  | 42                 | 51  | 62  | 75  | 90  |  |  |  |
| 2.4                              | 60                   | 72  | 86  | 105 | 127 | 153 | 184 | 45    | 54                 | 65  | 78  | 95  | 115 | 138 | 30    | 36  | 43                 | 52  | 63  | 77  | 92  |  |  |  |
| 2.6                              | 61                   | 73  | 88  | 107 | 129 | 156 | 188 | 46    | 55                 | 66  | 80  | 97  | 117 | 141 | 31    | 37  | 44                 | 53  | 65  | 78  | 94  |  |  |  |
| 2.8                              | 62                   | 74  | 89  | 109 | 132 | 159 | 191 | 47    | 56                 | 67  | 81  | 99  | 119 | 143 | 31    | 37  | 45                 | 54  | 66  | 80  | 96  |  |  |  |
| 3.0                              | 63                   | 76  | 91  | 111 | 134 | 162 | 195 | 47    | 57                 | 68  | 83  | 101 | 122 | 146 | 32    | 38  | 46                 | 55  | 67  | 81  | 97  |  |  |  |

\*Although units did not appear in the original tables, units are min-mg/L

Source: *Guidance Manual LTIESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

CT VALUES\* FOR  
4-LOG INACTIVATION OF VIRUSES BY FREE CHLORINE

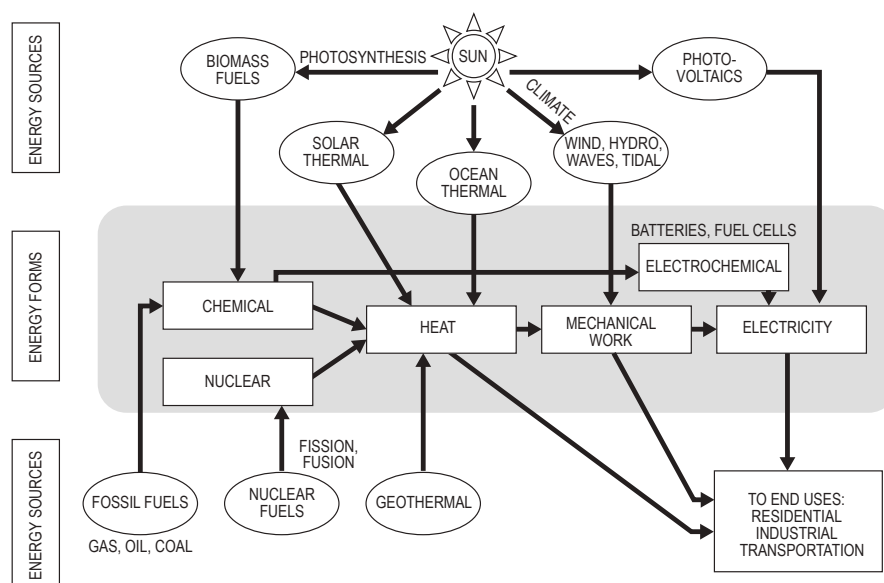
| Temperature (°C) | pH  |    |
|------------------|-----|----|
|                  | 6–9 | 10 |
| 0.5              | 12  | 90 |
| 5                | 8   | 60 |
| 10               | 6   | 45 |
| 15               | 4   | 30 |
| 20               | 3   | 22 |
| 25               | 2   | 15 |

\*Although units did not appear in the original tables, units are min-mg/L

Source: *Guidance Manual LTIESWTR Disinfection Profiling and Benchmarking*, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 2003.

## Energy

### Energy Sources and Conversion Processes



Source: Tester, Jefferson W., Elizabeth M. Drake, Michael J. Driscoll, Michael W. Golay, and William A. Peters, *Sustainable Energy: Choosing Among Options*, MIT Press, 2012, p.12.

## Combustion

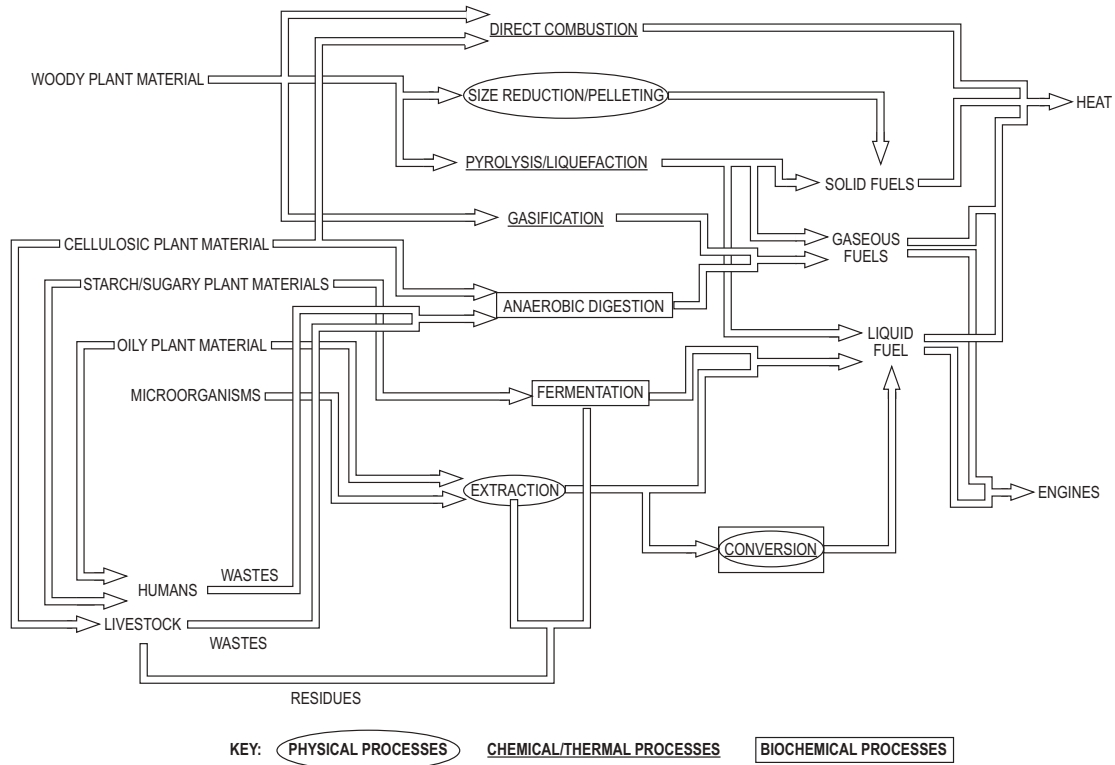
| Combustible Substance             | Reaction                              | Mols               | lb (kg)*              |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| Carbon to carbon monoxide         | $C + 1/2O_2 = CO$                     | $1 + 1/2 = 1$      | $12 + 16 = 28$        |
| Carbon to carbon dioxide          | $C + O_2 = CO_2$                      | $1 + 1 = 1$        | $12 + 32 = 44$        |
| Carbon monoxide to carbon dioxide | $CO + 1/2O_2 = CO_2$                  | $1 + 1/2 = 1$      | $28 + 16 = 44$        |
| Hydrogen                          | $H_2 + 1/2O_2 = H_2O$                 | $1 + 1/2 = 1$      | $2 + 16 = 18$         |
| Sulfur to sulfur dioxide          | $S + O_2 = SO_2$                      | $1 + 1 = 1$        | $32 + 32 = 64$        |
| Sulfur to sulfur trioxide         | $S + 3/2O_2 = SO_3$                   | $1 + 2/2 = 1$      | $32 + 48 = 80$        |
| Methane                           | $CH_4 + 2O_2 = CO_2 + 2H_2O$          | $1 + 2 = 1 + 2$    | $16 + 64 = 44 + 36$   |
| Ethane                            | $C_2H_6 + 7/2O_2 = 2CO_2 + 3H_2O$     | $1 + 7/2 = 2 + 3$  | $30 + 112 = 88 + 54$  |
| Propane                           | $C_3H_8 + 5O_2 = 3CO_2 + 4H_2O$       | $1 + 5 = 3 + 4$    | $44 + 160 = 132 + 72$ |
| Butane                            | $C_4H_{10} + 13/2O_2 = 4CO_2 + 5H_2O$ | $1 + 13/2 = 4 + 5$ | $58 + 208 = 176 + 90$ |
| Acetylene                         | $C_2H_2 + 5/2O_2 = 2CO_2 + H_2O$      | $1 + 5/2 = 2 + 2$  | $26 + 80 = 88 + 18$   |
| Ethylene                          | $C_2H_4 + 3O_2 = 2CO_2 + 2H_2O$       | $1 + 3 = 2 + 2$    | $28 + 96 = 88 + 36$   |

\*Substitute the molecular weights in the reaction equation to secure lb (kg). The lb (kg) on each side of the equation must balance.

Source: Hicks, Tyler G., *Handbook of Energy Engineering Calculations*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012.

## Biomass as an Energy Source

Some, but not all, possible combinations of inputs and processes:



Source: Adapted from Boyle, Godfrey, ed., *Renewable Energy: Power for a Sustainable Future*, 3rd ed., Oxford University Press, 2012, p. 127.

## Hydropower

$$P = 10 \times Q \times H$$

where

$P$  = power delivered by water (kW)

$H$  = effective head (height in meters through which water falls)

$Q$  = flow rate ( $\text{m}^3/\text{sec}$  through plant)

## Nuclear

**Nuclear Power Reactor Characteristics**

| Reactor Type      | Typical Thermal Efficiency, % | Typical Power Density, Thermal kW/ft <sup>3</sup> (MW/m <sup>3</sup> ) | Typical Reactor Pressure, lb/in <sup>2</sup> (gauge) (kPa) |                | Average Heat Flux, Btu/(h-ft <sup>2</sup> ) (MW/m <sup>2</sup> ) | Typical Fuel Enrichment, % | Reactor Coolant             |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| Pressurized-water | 36                            | 1,600 (56.5)                                                           | 1,500                                                      | (10,341)       | 300,000 (945.6)                                                  | 1.5–30                     | Light water                 |
| Boiling-water     | 22–30                         | 800 (28.3)                                                             | 1,000                                                      | (6,894)        | 100,000 (315.2)                                                  | 1.5                        | Light water                 |
| Gas-cooled        | 30                            | 200 (7.1)                                                              | 600–1,000                                                  | (4,136–6,894)  | —                                                                | 0.70–2.5                   | Carbon dioxide              |
| Liquid-metal      | 33                            | 300 (10.6)                                                             | 100                                                        | (689.4)        | —                                                                | —                          | Sodium, bismuth, lead, etc. |
| Fast-breeder      | 32                            | 20,000 (706.5)                                                         | 100                                                        | (689.4)        | 650,000 (2,049)                                                  | —                          | Sodium                      |
| Fluid-fueled      | 30                            | 400 (14.1)                                                             | 1,000–2,000                                                | (6,894–13,788) | Varies (varies)                                                  | Varies                     | Reactor fuel solution       |

Source: Hicks, Tyler G., *Handbook of Energy Engineering Calculations*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012, Section 1.9.

## Wind

The energy contained in the wind is its kinetic energy:

$$\text{Kinetic energy} = \frac{1}{2}mv^2$$

where

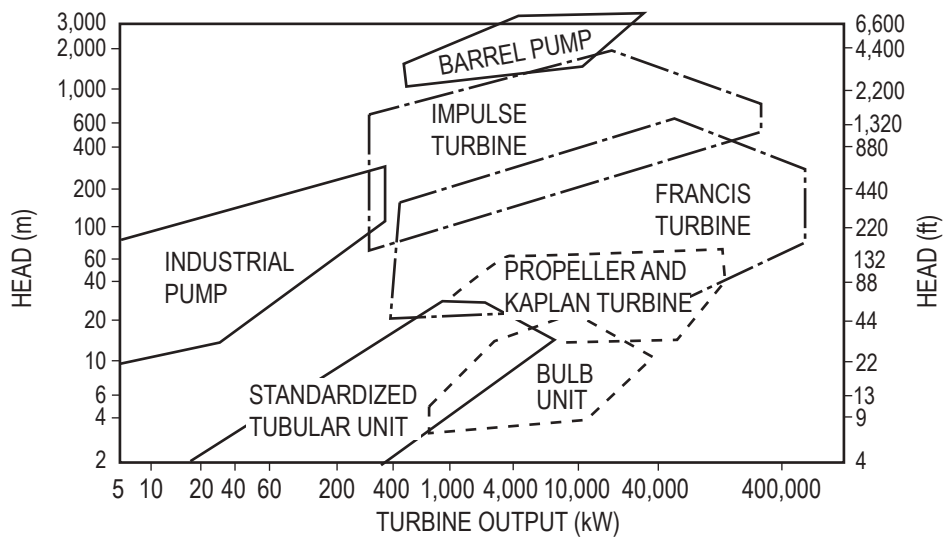
$m$  = mass (kilograms)

$v$  = wind speed (meters/second)

### Noise of Different Activities Compared with Wind Turbines

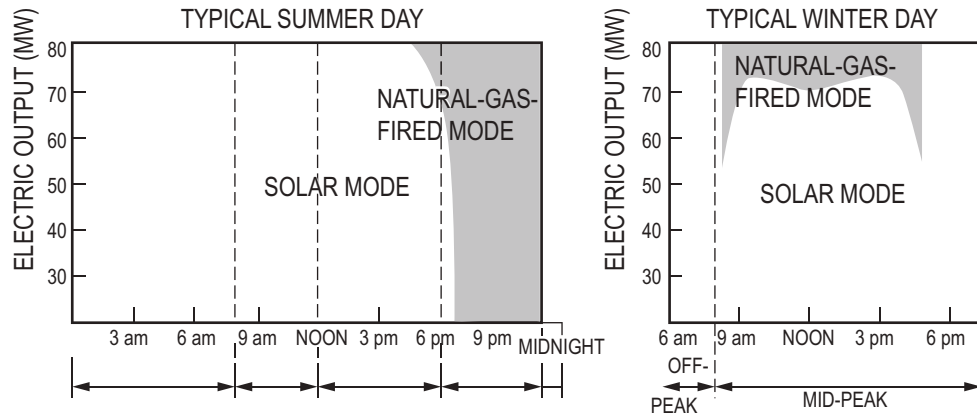
| Source/Activity                                                                                                              | Noise Level in dB(A)* |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| Threshold of pain                                                                                                            | 140                   |
| Jet aircraft at 250 m                                                                                                        | 105                   |
| Pneumatic drill at 7 m                                                                                                       | 95                    |
| Truck at $48 \text{ km}\cdot\text{h}^{-1}$ (30 mph) at 100 m                                                                 | 65                    |
| Busy general office                                                                                                          | 60                    |
| Car at $64 \text{ km}\cdot\text{h}^{-1}$ (40 mph) at 100 m                                                                   | 55                    |
| Wind farm at 350 m                                                                                                           | 35–45                 |
| Quiet bedroom                                                                                                                | 20                    |
| Rural night-time background                                                                                                  | 20–40                 |
| Threshold of hearing                                                                                                         | 0                     |
| *dB(A): decibels (acoustically weighted to take into account that the human ear is not equally sensitive to all frequencies) |                       |

### Hydraulic Turbine Operating Regimes



Source: Hicks, Tyler G., *Handbook of Energy Engineering Calculations*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012, Section 6.3.

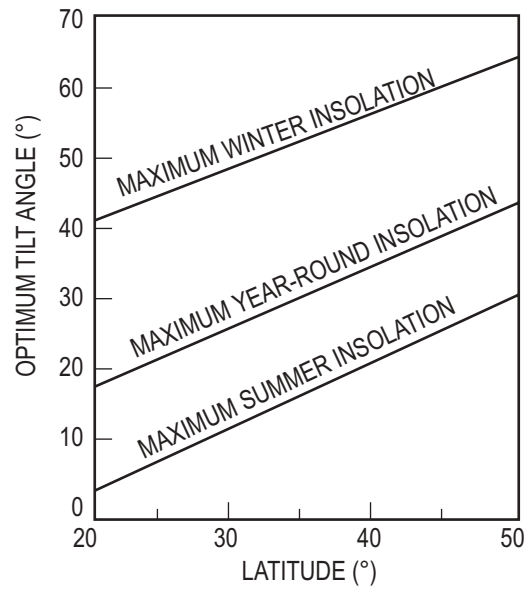
## Solar



Note: Correlation of solar generation to peaking power requirements

Source: Hicks, Tyler G., *Handbook of Energy Engineering Calculations*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012, Section 8.4.

## Spacing of Solar Flat-Plate Collectors to Avoid Shadowing



Source: Hicks, Tyler G., *Handbook of Energy Engineering Calculations*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 2012, Section 8.9.

## Wastes with Fuel Value

### Industrial Wastes

|                        | Average Heating Value (as fired) |               |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------|
|                        | Btu/lb                           | kJ/kg         |
| Waste gases:           |                                  |               |
| Coke-oven              | 19,700                           | 45,900        |
| Blast-furnace          | 1,139                            | 2,654         |
| Carbon monoxide        | 579                              | 1,349         |
| Liquids:               |                                  |               |
| Refinery               | 21,800                           | 50,794        |
| Industrial sludge      | 3,700–4,200                      | 8,621–9,786   |
| Black liquor           | 4,400                            | 10,252        |
| Sulfite liquor         | 4,200                            | 9,786         |
| Dirty solvents         | 10,000–16,000                    | 23,300–37,280 |
| Spent lubricants       | 10,000–14,000                    | 23,300–32,620 |
| Paints and resins      | 6,000–10,000                     | 13,980–23,300 |
| Oily waste and residue | 18,000                           | 41,940        |
| Solids:                |                                  |               |
| Bagasse                | 3,600–6,500                      | 8,388–15,145  |
| Bark                   | 4,500–5,200                      | 10,485–12,116 |
| General wood waste     | 4,500–6,500                      | 10,485–15,145 |
| Sawdust and shavings   | 4,500–7,500                      | 10,485–17,475 |
| Coffee grounds         | 4,900–6,500                      | 11,417–15,145 |
| Nut hulls              | 7,700                            | 17,941        |
| Rice hulls             | 5,200–6,500                      | 12,116–15,145 |
| Corn cobs              | 8,000–8,300                      | 18,640–19,339 |

## Municipal Solid Wastes (MSW)

### Typical Heating Value of MSW Components

| Component                | Energy (Btu/lb) |         |
|--------------------------|-----------------|---------|
|                          | Range           | Typical |
| Food wastes              | 1,500–3,000     | 2,000   |
| Paper                    | 5,000–8,000     | 7,200   |
| Cardboard                | 6,000–7,500     | 7,000   |
| Plastics                 | 12,000–16,000   | 14,000  |
| Textiles                 | 6,500–8,000     | 7,500   |
| Rubber                   | 9,000–12,000    | 10,000  |
| Leather                  | 6,500–8,500     | 7,500   |
| Garden trimmings         | 1,000–8,000     | 2,800   |
| Wood                     | 7,500–8,500     | 8,000   |
| Glass                    | 50–100          | 60      |
| Tin cans                 | 100–500         | 300     |
| Nonferrous metals        | —               | —       |
| Ferrous metals           | 100–500         | 300     |
| Dirt, ashes, brick, etc. | 1,000–5,000     | 3,000   |
| Municipal solid wastes   | 4,000–6,500     | 4,500   |

Source: Tchobanoglous, George, Hilary Theisen, and Rolf Eliassen, *Solid Wastes: Engineering Principles and Management Issues*, New York: McGraw-Hill, 1977, p. 62.

Energy Content of Waste

| Typical Waste Values | Moisture, % | Energy, Btu/lb |
|----------------------|-------------|----------------|
| Food Waste           | 70          | 2,000          |
| Paper                | 6           | 7,200          |
| Cardboard            | 5           | 7,000          |
| Plastics             | 2           | 14,000         |
| Wood                 | 20          | 8,000          |
| Glass                | 2           | 60             |
| Bi-metallic Cans     | 3           | 300            |

Greenhouse Gases: Global Warming Potential

| Species              | Chemical Formula                             | Global Warming Potential (100 yr) |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| CO <sub>2</sub>      | CO <sub>2</sub>                              | 1                                 |
| Methane              | CH <sub>4</sub>                              | 25 <sup>a</sup>                   |
| Nitrous Oxide        | N <sub>2</sub> O                             | 298 <sup>a</sup>                  |
| HFC-23               | CHF <sub>3</sub>                             | 14,800 <sup>a</sup>               |
| HFC-32               | CH <sub>2</sub> F <sub>2</sub>               | 675 <sup>a</sup>                  |
| HFC-41               | CH <sub>3</sub> F                            | 92 <sup>a</sup>                   |
| HFC-125              | C <sub>2</sub> HF <sub>5</sub>               | 3,500 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-134              | C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>2</sub> F <sub>4</sub> | 1,100 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-134a             | CH <sub>2</sub> FCF <sub>3</sub>             | 1,430 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-143              | C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>3</sub> F <sub>3</sub> | 353 <sup>a</sup>                  |
| HFC-143a             | C <sub>2</sub> H <sub>3</sub> F <sub>3</sub> | 4,470 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-227ea            | C <sub>3</sub> HF <sub>7</sub>               | 3,220 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-236fa            | C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>2</sub> F <sub>6</sub> | 9,810 <sup>a</sup>                |
| HFC-245ca            | C <sub>3</sub> H <sub>3</sub> F <sub>5</sub> | 693 <sup>a</sup>                  |
| Sulfur hexafluoride  | SF <sub>6</sub>                              | 22,800 <sup>a</sup>               |
| Perfluoromethane     | CF <sub>4</sub>                              | 7,390 <sup>a</sup>                |
| Perfluoroethane      | C <sub>2</sub> F <sub>6</sub>                | 12,200 <sup>a</sup>               |
| Perfluoropropane     | C <sub>3</sub> F <sub>8</sub>                | 8,830 <sup>a</sup>                |
| Perfluorobutane      | C <sub>4</sub> F <sub>10</sub>               | 8,860 <sup>a</sup>                |
| Perfluorocyclobutane | c-C <sub>4</sub> F <sub>8</sub>              | 10,300 <sup>a</sup>               |
| Perfluoropentane     | C <sub>5</sub> F <sub>12</sub>               | 9,160 <sup>a</sup>                |
| Perfluorohexane      | C <sub>6</sub> F <sub>14</sub>               | 9,300 <sup>a</sup>                |

<sup>a</sup>The GWP for this compound was updated in the final rule published on November 29, 2013 [78 FR 71904] and effective on January 1, 2014.

## Sustainability

Carbon emission factors

$$\frac{GDP}{P} = \text{per capita gross domestic product (\$/person-yr)}$$

$$\frac{E}{GDP} = \text{energy consumption per GDP; energy intensity (Btu/\$)}$$

$$\frac{CO_2}{E} = \text{carbon emission per unit of energy} \left( \frac{CO_2 \text{ emitted}}{\text{Btu}} \right)$$

where  $P$  = population (persons)

Sustainability Impact (SI)

$$SI = P \times \frac{GDP}{P} \times \frac{E}{GDP}$$

Kaya's Emission Equation

$$E_{\text{carbon}} = P \times \frac{GDP}{P} \times \frac{E}{GDP} \times \frac{CO_2}{E}$$

# Electrical and Computer Engineering

## Units

The basic electrical units are coulombs for charge, volts for voltage, amperes for current, ohms for resistance and impedance, and siemens for conductance and admittance.

## Electrostatics

$$\mathbf{F}_2 = \frac{Q_1 Q_2}{4\pi\epsilon r^2} \mathbf{a}_{r12}$$

where

$\mathbf{F}_2$  = force on charge 2 due to charge 1

$Q_i$  = the  $i$ th point charge

$r$  = distance between charges 1 and 2

$\mathbf{a}_{r12}$  = a unit vector directed from 1 to 2

$\epsilon$  = permittivity of the medium

For free space or air:

$$\epsilon = \epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12} \text{ farads/meter}$$

## Electrostatic Fields

Electric field intensity  $\mathbf{E}$  (volts/meter) at point 2 due to a point charge  $Q_1$  at point 1 is

$$\mathbf{E} = \frac{Q_1}{4\pi\epsilon r^2} \mathbf{a}_{r12}$$

For a line charge of density  $\rho_L$  coulombs/meter on the  $z$ -axis, the radial electric field is

$$\mathbf{E}_L = \frac{\rho_L}{2\pi\epsilon r} \mathbf{a}_r$$

For a sheet charge of density  $\rho_s$  coulombs/meter<sup>2</sup> in the  $x$ - $y$  plane:

$$\mathbf{E}_s = \frac{\rho_s}{2\epsilon} \mathbf{a}_z, z > 0$$

Gauss' law states that the integral of the electric flux density  $\mathbf{D} = \epsilon\mathbf{E}$  over a closed surface is equal to the charge enclosed or

$$Q_{encl} = \oint_S \epsilon \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

The force on a point charge  $Q$  in an electric field with intensity  $\mathbf{E}$  is  $\mathbf{F} = Q\mathbf{E}$ .

The work done by an external agent in moving a charge  $Q$  in an electric field from point  $p_1$  to point  $p_2$  is

$$W = -Q \int_{p_1}^{p_2} \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{r}$$

The energy  $W_E$  stored in an electric field  $\mathbf{E}$  is

$$W_E = (1/2) \iiint_V \epsilon |\mathbf{E}|^2 dV$$

## Voltage

The potential difference  $V$  between two points is the work per unit charge required to move the charge between the points.

For two parallel plates with potential difference  $V$ , separated by distance  $d$ , the strength of the  $E$  field between the plates is

$$E = \frac{V}{d}$$

directed from the + plate to the – plate.

## Current

Electric current  $i(t)$  through a surface is defined as the rate of charge transport through that surface or

$$i(t) = dq(t)/dt, \text{ which is a function of time } t$$

since  $q(t)$  denotes instantaneous charge.

A constant current  $i(t)$  is written as  $I$ , and the vector current density in amperes/m<sup>2</sup> is defined as  $\mathbf{J}$ .

## Magnetic Fields

For a current-carrying wire on the  $z$ -axis

$$\mathbf{H} = \frac{\mathbf{B}}{\mu} = \frac{I\mathbf{a}_\phi}{2\pi r}$$

where

$\mathbf{H}$  = magnetic field strength (amperes/meter)

$\mathbf{B}$  = magnetic flux density (tesla)

$\mathbf{a}_\phi$  = unit vector in positive  $\phi$  direction in cylindrical coordinates

$I$  = current

$\mu$  = permeability of the medium

For air:  $\mu = \mu_0 = 4\pi \times 10^{-7} \text{ H/m}$

Force on a current-carrying conductor in a uniform magnetic field is

$$\mathbf{F} = I\mathbf{L} \times \mathbf{B}$$

where  $\mathbf{L}$  = length vector of a conductor

The energy stored  $W_H$  in a magnetic field  $\mathbf{H}$  is

$$W_H = (1/2) \iiint_V \mu |\mathbf{H}|^2 dv$$

## Induced Voltage

Faraday's Law states for a coil of  $N$  turns enclosing flux  $\phi$ :

$$v = -N d\phi/dt$$

where

$v$  = induced voltage

$\phi$  = average flux (webers) enclosed by each turn

$$\phi = \int_S \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

## Resistivity

For a conductor of length  $L$ , electrical resistivity  $\rho$ , and cross-sectional area  $A$ , the resistance is

$$R = \frac{\rho L}{A}$$

For metallic conductors, the resistivity and resistance vary linearly with changes in temperature according to the following relationships:

$$\rho = \rho_0 [1 + \alpha(T - T_0)]$$

and

$$R = R_0 [1 + \alpha(T - T_0)]$$

where

$\rho_0$  = resistivity at  $T_0$

$R_0$  = resistance at  $T_0$

$\alpha$  = temperature coefficient

Ohm's Law:  $V = IR$ ;  $v(t) = i(t) R$

## Resistors in Series and Parallel

For series connections, the current in all resistors is the same and the equivalent resistance for  $n$  resistors in series is

$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 + \dots + R_n$$

For parallel connections of resistors, the voltage drop across each resistor is the same and the equivalent resistance for  $n$  resistors in parallel is

$$R_P = 1 / (1/R_1 + 1/R_2 + \dots + 1/R_n)$$

For two resistors  $R_1$  and  $R_2$  in parallel

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2}$$

## Power Absorbed by a Resistive Element

$$P = VI = \frac{V^2}{R} = I^2 R$$

## Kirchhoff's Laws

Kirchhoff's voltage law for a closed path is expressed by

$$\sum V_{\text{rises}} = \sum V_{\text{drops}}$$

Kirchhoff's current law for a closed surface is

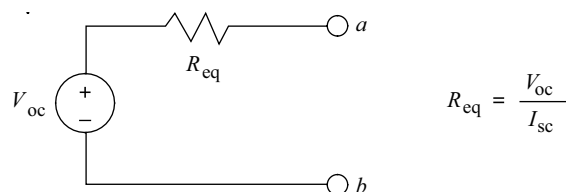
$$\sum I_{\text{in}} = \sum I_{\text{out}}$$

## Source Equivalents

For an arbitrary circuit



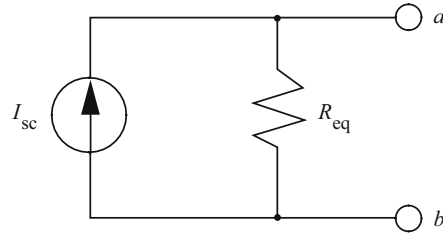
The Thévenin equivalent is



$$R_{eq} = \frac{V_{oc}}{I_{sc}}$$

The open circuit voltage  $V_{oc}$  is  $V_a - V_b$ , and the short circuit current is  $I_{sc}$  from  $a$  to  $b$ .

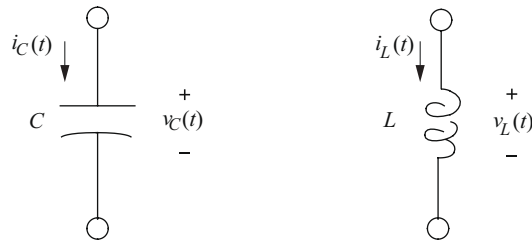
The Norton equivalent circuit is



where  $I_{sc}$  and  $R_{eq}$  are defined above.

A load resistor  $R_L$  connected across terminals  $a$  and  $b$  will draw maximum power when  $R_L = R_{eq}$ .

## Capacitors and Inductors



The charge  $q_C(t)$  and voltage  $v_C(t)$  relationship for a capacitor  $C$  in farads is

$$C = q_C(t)/v_C(t) \quad \text{or} \quad q_C(t) = Cv_C(t)$$

A parallel plate capacitor of area  $A$  with plates separated a distance  $d$  by an insulator with a permittivity  $\epsilon$  has a capacitance

$$C = \frac{\epsilon A}{d}$$

$\epsilon$  is often given as  $\epsilon = \epsilon_r (\epsilon_0)$  where  $\epsilon_r$  is the relative permittivity or dielectric constant and  $\epsilon_0 = 8.85 \times 10^{-12}$  F/m.

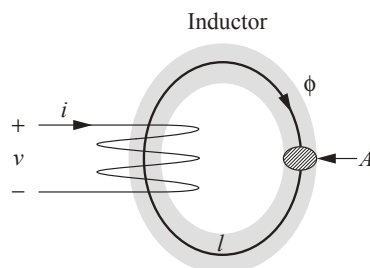
The current-voltage relationships for a capacitor are

$$v_C(t) = v_C(0) + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i_C(\tau) d\tau$$

$$\text{and } i_C(t) = C (dv_C/dt)$$

The energy stored in a capacitor is expressed in joules and given by

$$\text{Energy} = Cv_C^2/2 = q_C^2/2C = q_C v_C/2$$



The inductance  $L$  (henrys) of a coil of  $N$  turns wound on a core with cross-sectional area  $A$  (m<sup>2</sup>), permeability  $\mu$  and flux  $\phi$  with a mean path of  $l$  (m) is given as:

$$L = N^2 \mu A / l = N^2 / \mathfrak{R}$$

$$N\phi = Li$$

where  $\mathfrak{R}$  = reluctance =  $l/\mu A$  (H<sup>-1</sup>).

$\mu$  is sometimes given as  $\mu = \mu_r \cdot \mu_o$  where  $\mu_r$  is the relative permeability and  $\mu_o = 4\pi \times 10^{-7}$  H/m.

Using Faraday's law, the voltage-current relations for an inductor are

$$v_L(t) = L (di_L/dt)$$

$$i_L(t) = i_L(0) + \frac{1}{L} \int_0^t v_L(\tau) d\tau$$

where

$v_L$  = inductor voltage

$L$  = inductance (henrys)

$i_L$  = inductor current (amperes)

The energy stored in an inductor is expressed in joules and given by

$$\text{Energy} = Li_L^2/2$$

## Capacitors and Inductors in Parallel and Series

Capacitors in Parallel

$$C_P = C_1 + C_2 + \dots + C_n$$

Capacitors in Series

$$C_S = \frac{1}{1/C_1 + 1/C_2 + \dots + 1/C_n}$$

Inductors in Parallel

$$L_P = \frac{1}{1/L_1 + 1/L_2 + \dots + 1/L_n}$$

Inductors in Series

$$L_S = L_1 + L_2 + \dots + L_n$$

## AC Circuits

For a sinusoidal voltage or current of frequency  $f$  (Hz) and period  $T$  (seconds),

$$f = 1/T = \omega/(2\pi)$$

where  $\omega$  = the angular frequency in radians/s

## Average Value

For a periodic waveform (either voltage or current) with period  $T$ ,

$$X_{\text{ave}} = (1/T) \int_0^T x(t) dt$$

The average value of a full-wave rectified sinusoid is

$$X_{\text{ave}} = (2X_{\text{max}})/\pi$$

and half this for half-wave rectification, where

$X_{\text{max}}$  = the peak amplitude of the sinusoid.

### Effective or RMS Values

For a periodic waveform with period  $T$ , the rms or effective value is

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = \left[ \left(1/T\right) \int_0^T x^2(t) dt \right]^{1/2}$$

For a sinusoidal waveform and full-wave rectified sine wave,

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = X_{\text{max}}/\sqrt{2}$$

For a half-wave rectified sine wave,

$$X_{\text{eff}} = X_{\text{rms}} = X_{\text{max}}/2$$

For a periodic signal,

$$X_{\text{rms}} = \sqrt{X_{\text{dc}}^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} X_n^2}$$

where

$X_{\text{dc}}$  = dc component of  $x(t)$

$X_n$  = rms value of the  $n$ th harmonic

### Sine-Cosine Relations and Trigonometric Identities

$$\cos(\omega t) = \sin(\omega t + \pi/2) = -\sin(\omega t - \pi/2)$$

$$\sin(\omega t) = \cos(\omega t - \pi/2) = -\cos(\omega t + \pi/2)$$

Other trigonometric identities for sinusoids are given in the section on Trigonometry.

### Phasor Transforms of Sinusoids

$$P[V_{\text{max}} \cos(\omega t + \phi)] = V_{\text{rms}} \angle \phi \text{ or } V_{\text{max}} \angle \phi \text{ (depending on the context)} = \mathbf{V}$$

$$P[I_{\text{max}} \cos(\omega t + \theta)] = I_{\text{rms}} \angle \theta \text{ or } I_{\text{max}} \angle \theta \text{ (depending on the context)} = \mathbf{I}$$

For a circuit element, the impedance is defined as the ratio of phasor voltage to phasor current.

$$\mathbf{Z} = \frac{\mathbf{V}}{\mathbf{I}} = R + jX$$

where

$R$  = resistance

$X$  = reactance

The admittance is defined as the ratio of phasor current to phasor voltage or the inverse of impedance.

$$\mathbf{Y} = \frac{\mathbf{I}}{\mathbf{V}} = \frac{1}{\mathbf{Z}} = G + jB$$

where

$G$  = conductance

$B$  = susceptance

| Circuit Element | Impedance             | Resistance | Reactance             | Admittance            | Conductance   | Susceptance           |
|-----------------|-----------------------|------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| Resistor        | $R$                   | $R$        | 0                     | $\frac{1}{R}$         | $\frac{1}{R}$ | 0                     |
| Capacitor       | $\frac{1}{j\omega C}$ | 0          | $-\frac{1}{\omega C}$ | $j\omega C$           | 0             | $\omega C$            |
| Inductor        | $j\omega L$           | 0          | $\omega L$            | $\frac{1}{j\omega L}$ | 0             | $-\frac{1}{\omega L}$ |

Impedances in series combine additively while those in parallel combine as the reciprocal of the sum of reciprocals, just as in the case of resistors.

Admittances in series combine as the reciprocal of the sum of reciprocals while those in parallel combine additively.

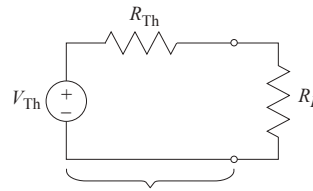
### Maximum Power-Transfer Theorem

#### DC Circuits

Maximum power transfer to the load  $R_L$  occurs when  $R_L = R_{Th}$ .

$$P_{\max} = \frac{V_{Th}^2}{4 R_{Th}}$$

$$\text{Efficiency: } \eta = \frac{P_L}{P_S} = \frac{R_L}{R_L + R_{Th}}$$

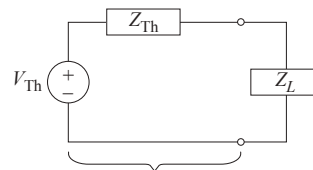


Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

#### AC Circuits

In an ac circuit maximum power transfer to the load impedance  $Z_L$  occurs when the load impedance equals the complex conjugate of the Thevenin equivalent impedance:

$$Z_L = Z_{Th}^*$$



Thevenin Equivalent Circuit

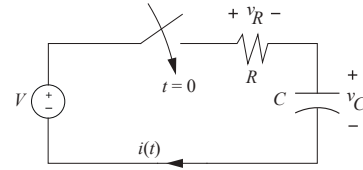
\*If the load is purely resistive ( $R_L$ ) then for maximum power transfer  $R_L = |Z_{Th}|$

## RC and RL Transients

$$t \geq 0; v_C(t) = v_C(0)e^{-t/RC} + V(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

$$i(t) = \left\{ [V - v_C(0)]/R \right\} e^{-t/RC}$$

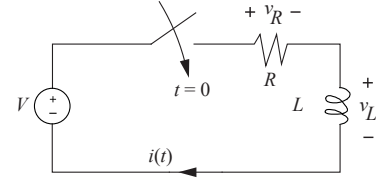
$$v_R(t) = i(t)R = [V - v_C(0)]e^{-t/RC}$$



$$t \geq 0; i(t) = i(0)e^{-Rt/L} + \frac{V}{R}(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

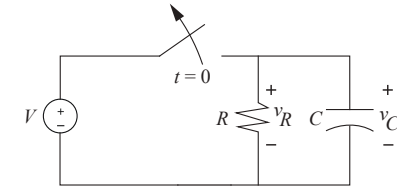
$$v_R(t) = i(t)R = i(0)Re^{-Rt/L} + V(1 - e^{-Rt/L})$$

$$v_L(t) = L(di/dt) = -i(0)Re^{-Rt/L} + Ve^{-Rt/L}$$



$$t \geq 0; v_C(t) = v_R(t) = Ve^{-t/RC}$$

$$i_R(t) = -i_C(t) = \frac{V}{R}e^{-t/RC}$$



where  $v(0)$  and  $i(0)$  denote the initial conditions and the parameters  $RC$  and  $L/R$  are termed the respective circuit time constants.

## Resonance

The radian resonant frequency for both parallel and series resonance situations is

$$\omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}} = 2\pi f_0 \text{ rad/s}$$

### Series Resonance

$$\omega_0 L = \frac{1}{\omega_0 C}$$

$$Z = R \text{ at resonance}$$

$$Q = \frac{\omega_0 L}{R} = \frac{1}{\omega_0 CR}$$

$$BW = \frac{\omega_0}{Q} \text{ rad/s}$$

### Parallel Resonance

$$\omega_0 L = \frac{1}{\omega_0 C}$$

$$Z = R \text{ at resonance}$$

$$Q = \omega_0 RC = \frac{R}{\omega_0 L}$$

$$BW = \frac{\omega_0}{Q} \text{ rad/s}$$

## AC Power

### Complex Power

Real power  $P$  (watts) is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} P &= (\tfrac{1}{2})V_{\max} I_{\max} \cos \theta \\ &= V_{\text{rms}} I_{\text{rms}} \cos \theta \end{aligned}$$

where  $\theta$  is the angle measured from  $\mathbf{V}$  to  $\mathbf{I}$ . If  $\mathbf{I}$  leads  $\mathbf{V}$ , then the power factor ( $pf$ ),

$$pf = \cos \theta$$

is said to be a leading  $pf$ .

If  $\mathbf{I}$  lags  $\mathbf{V}$ , then the power factor ( $pf$ ) is said to be a lagging  $pf$ .

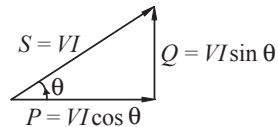
Reactive power  $Q$  (vars) is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} Q &= (\tfrac{1}{2})V_{\max} I_{\max} \sin \theta \\ &= V_{\text{rms}} I_{\text{rms}} \sin \theta \end{aligned}$$

Complex power  $\mathbf{S}$  (volt-amperes) is defined by

$$\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{V}\mathbf{I}^* = P + jQ,$$

where  $\mathbf{I}^*$  is the complex conjugate of the phasor current.



Complex Power Triangle (Inductive Load)

For resistors,  $\theta = 0$ , so the real power is

$$P = V_{\text{rms}} I_{\text{rms}} = V_{\text{rms}}^2 / R = I_{\text{rms}}^2 R$$

### Balanced Three-Phase (3- $\phi$ ) Systems

The 3-phase line-phase relations are

|                      |                                        |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------|
| for a delta          | for a wye                              |
| $V_L = V_P$          | $V_L = \sqrt{3} V_P = \sqrt{3} V_{LN}$ |
| $I_L = \sqrt{3} I_P$ | $I_L = I_P$                            |

where subscripts  $L$  and  $P$  denote line and phase respectively.

A balanced 3- $\phi$ , delta-connected load impedance can be converted to an equivalent wye-connected load impedance using the following relationship

$$\mathbf{Z}_{\Delta} = 3\mathbf{Z}_Y$$

The following formulas can be used to determine 3- $\phi$  power for balanced systems.

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{S} &= P + jQ \\ |\mathbf{S}| &= 3V_P I_P = \sqrt{3} V_L I_L \\ \mathbf{S} &= 3V_P I_P^* = \sqrt{3} V_L I_L (\cos \theta_P + j \sin \theta_P) \end{aligned}$$

For balanced 3- $\phi$ , wye- and delta-connected loads

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{V_L^2}{Z_Y^*} \quad \mathbf{S} = 3 \frac{V_L^2}{Z_\Delta^*}$$

where

$\mathbf{S}$  = total 3- $\phi$  complex power (VA)

$|\mathbf{S}|$  = total 3- $\phi$  apparent power (VA)

$P$  = total 3- $\phi$  real power (W)

$Q$  = total 3- $\phi$  reactive power (var)

$\theta_P$  = power factor angle of each phase

$V_L$  = rms value of the line-to-line voltage

$V_{LN}$  = rms value of the line-to-neutral voltage

$I_L$  = rms value of the line current

$I_P$  = rms value of the phase current

For a 3- $\phi$ , wye-connected source or load with line-to-neutral voltages and a positive phase sequence

$$\mathbf{V}_{an} = V_P \angle 0^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{bn} = V_P \angle -120^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{cn} = V_P \angle 120^\circ$$

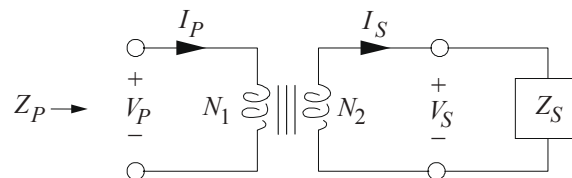
The corresponding line-to-line voltages are

$$\mathbf{V}_{ab} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle 30^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{bc} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle -90^\circ$$

$$\mathbf{V}_{ca} = \sqrt{3} V_P \angle 150^\circ$$

## Transformers (Ideal)



## Turns Ratio

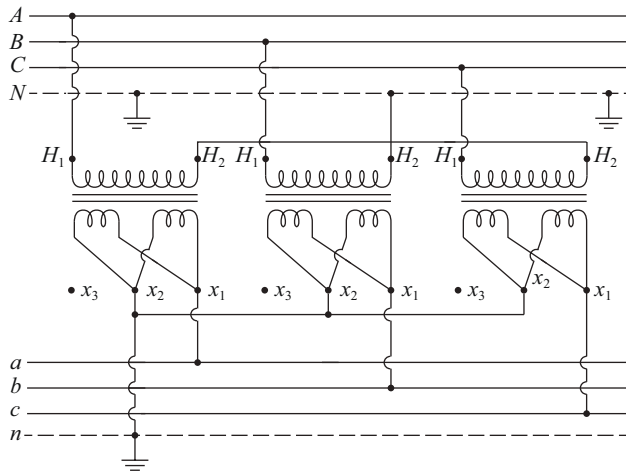
$$a = N_1/N_2$$

$$a = \left| \frac{\mathbf{V}_P}{\mathbf{V}_S} \right| = \left| \frac{\mathbf{I}_S}{\mathbf{I}_P} \right|$$

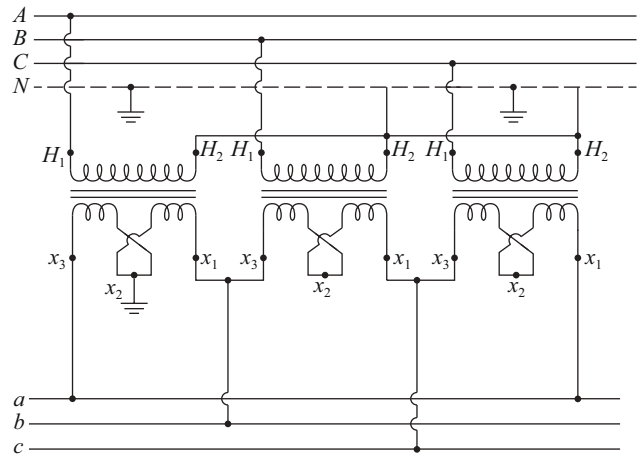
The impedance seen at the input is

$$\mathbf{Z}_P = a^2 \mathbf{Z}_S$$

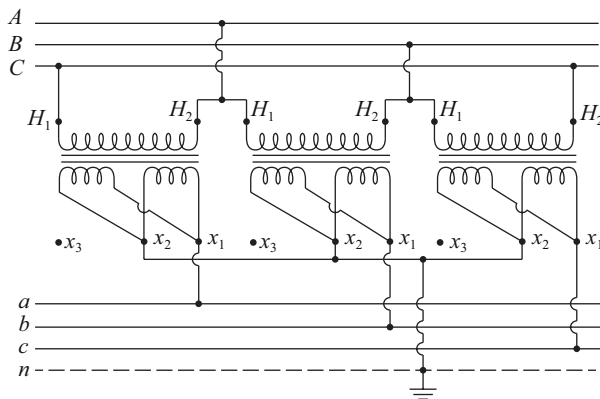
### Three-Phase Transformer Connection Diagrams



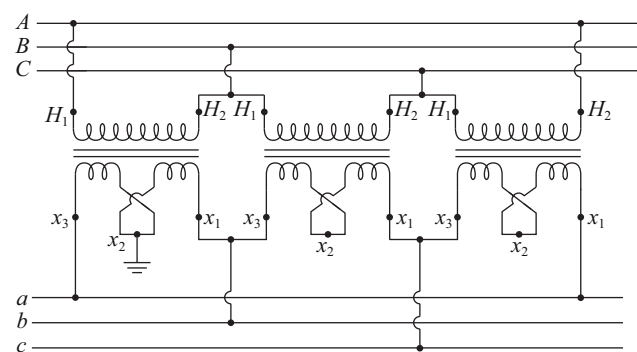
(A)  
WYE-WYE CONNECTION



(B)  
WYE-DELTA CONNECTION



(C)  
DELTA-WYE CONNECTION



(D)  
DELTA-DELTA CONNECTION

Source: Gonen, Turan, *Electric Power Distribution Engineering*, 3rd ed., Boca Raton, Florida: CRC Press, 2014.

### Rotating Machines (General)

Efficiency of a machine is defined as:

$$\eta = P_{\text{out}}/P_{\text{in}}$$

where

$P_{\text{out}}$  = power output of the machine (W)

$P_{\text{in}}$  = power input to the machine (W)

For a motor,  $P_{\text{in}}$  is the active component of the electrical input power and  $P_{\text{out}}$  is the mechanical output power. For a generator, vice versa.

The losses in a machine can be attributed to core, copper, friction and windage, and stray losses, and:

$$P_{\text{out}} = P_{\text{in}} - P_{\text{loss}}$$

Mechanical power in a rotating machine is given by:

$$P = T\omega_m$$

where

$P$  = mechanical power (W)

$T$  = mechanical torque (N•m)

$\omega_m$  = angular velocity (rad/s)

The angular velocity in rad/s is related to the speed in rpm by:

$$\omega_m = (2\pi/60)n$$

where  $n$  is the rotor's speed in rpm.

## AC Machines

The synchronous speed  $n_s$  (rpm) for ac motors is given by

$$n_s = 120f/p$$

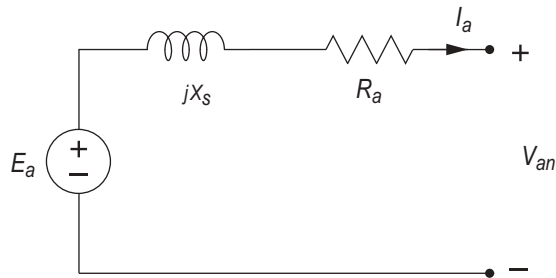
where

$f$  = the line voltage frequency (Hz)

$p$  = the number of poles

### Synchronous Machines

The single-phase equivalent circuit of a Y-connected synchronous machine is shown below. The induced voltage is  $E_a = E_a \angle \delta$  where the magnitude is proportional to the excitation (e.g., field current) and the angle  $\delta$  is the torque or power angle. The direction for the current  $I_a$  is shown for a generator in this circuit. The resistance  $R_a$  is the armature circuit resistance and the reactance  $X_s$  is the synchronous reactance.



The power developed by the synchronous machine is:

$$P_d = 3E_a I_a \cos(\delta + \theta)$$

where  $\theta$  is the power factor angle when the terminal voltage  $V_{an}$  is used as the reference.

If the armature resistance is negligible, the power developed by the synchronous machine is:

$$P_d = 3(E_a V_a / X_s) \sin \delta$$

and maximum power capability of the synchronous machine is:

$$P_d = 3(E_a V_a / X_s)$$

### Induction Machines

The slip  $s$  of an induction machine is defined as:

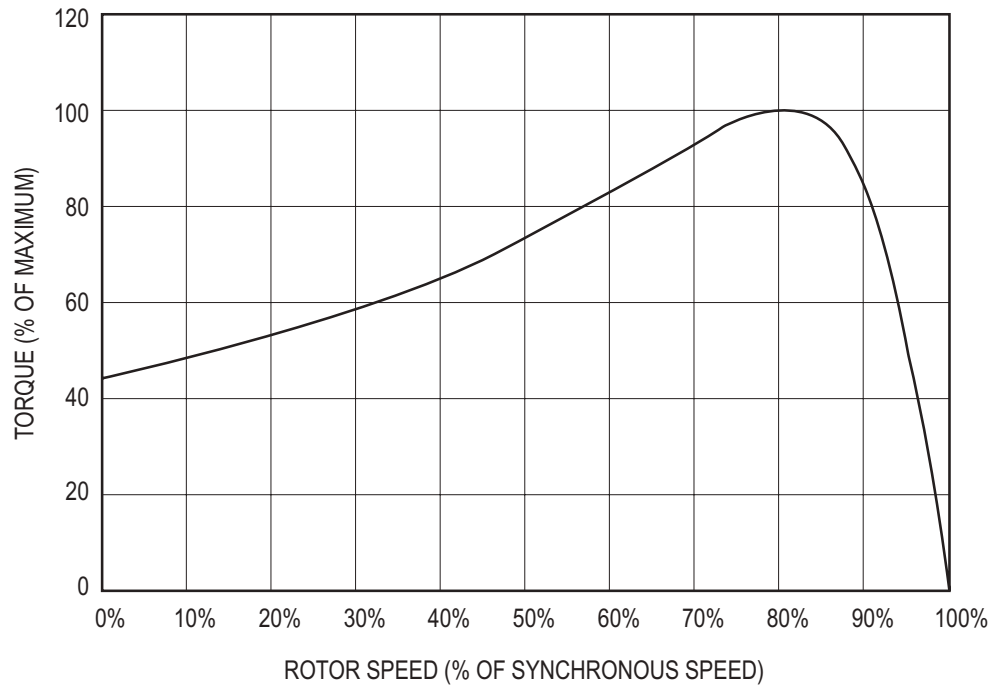
$$s = (n_s - n)/n_s$$

where

$n_s$  = synchronous speed (rpm)

$n$  = speed of the rotor (rpm)

A sample torque-speed characteristic of an induction motor is shown below, normalized to maximum (break down) torques.



## DC Machines

The electrical input power (motor) or output power (generator) of the armature circuit is given by:

$$P = V_T I_a$$

where

$V_T$  = armature circuit terminal voltage

$I_a$  = armature current

The armature circuit of a dc machine is approximated by a series connection of the armature resistance  $R_a$ , the armature inductance  $L_a$ , and a dependent voltage source of value

$$V_a = K_a n \phi \text{ volts}$$

where

$K_a$  = constant depending on the design

$n$  = armature speed (rpm)

$\phi$  = magnetic flux generated by the field

The field circuit is approximated by the field resistance  $R_f$  in series with the field inductance  $L_f$ . Neglecting saturation, the magnetic flux generated by the field current  $I_f$  is

$$\phi = K_f I_f \text{ webers}$$

The mechanical power generated by the armature is

$$P_m = V_a I_a \text{ watts}$$

where  $I_a$  is the armature current.

The mechanical torque produced is

$$T_m = (60/2\pi) K_a \phi I_a \text{ newton-meters}$$

## Servomotors and Generators

Servomotors are electrical motors tied to a feedback system to obtain precise control. Smaller servomotors typically are dc motors.

A permanent magnet dc generator can be used to convert mechanical energy to electrical energy, as in a tachometer.

DC motor suppliers may provide data sheets with speed torque curves, motor torque constants ( $K_T$ ), and motor voltage constants ( $K_E$ ). An idealized dc motor at steady state exhibits the following relationships:

$$V = IR + K_E \omega$$

$$T = K_T I$$

where

$V$  = voltage at the motor terminals

$I$  = current through the motor

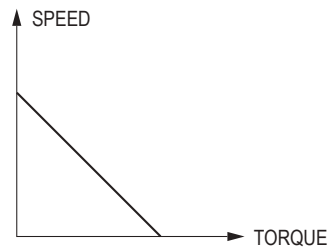
$T$  = torque applied by the motor

$R$  = resistance of the windings

$\omega$  = rotational speed

When using consistent SI units [ $\text{N}\cdot\text{m}/\text{A}$  and  $\text{V}/(\text{rad}/\text{s})$ ],  $K_T = K_E$ .

An ideal speed-torque curve for a servomotor, with constant  $V$ , would look like this:



## Voltage Regulation

The percent voltage regulation of a power supply is defined as

$$\% \text{ Regulation} = \frac{|V_{NL}| - |V_{FL}|}{|V_{FL}|} \times 100\%$$

where

$V_{NL}$  = voltage under no load conditions

$V_{FL}$  = voltage under full load conditions (assumes that the source voltage remains constant)

## Electromagnetic Dynamic Fields

The integral and point form of Maxwell's equations are

$$\oint \mathbf{E} \cdot d\mathbf{l} = - \iint_S (\partial \mathbf{B} / \partial t) \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

$$\oint \mathbf{H} \cdot d\mathbf{l} = I_{\text{enc}} + \iint_S (\partial \mathbf{D} / \partial t) \cdot d\mathbf{S}$$

$$\oiint_{S_V} \mathbf{D} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = \iiint_V \rho dv$$

$$\oiint_{S_V} \mathbf{B} \cdot d\mathbf{S} = 0$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{E} = -\partial \mathbf{B} / \partial t$$

$$\nabla \times \mathbf{H} = \mathbf{J} + \partial \mathbf{D} / \partial t$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{D} = \rho$$

$$\nabla \cdot \mathbf{B} = 0$$

## Lossless Transmission Lines

The wavelength,  $\lambda$ , of a sinusoidal signal is defined as the distance the signal will travel in one period.

$$\lambda = \frac{U}{f}$$

where

$U$  = velocity of propagation

$f$  = frequency of the sinusoid

The characteristic impedance,  $Z_0$ , of a transmission line is the input impedance of an infinite length of the line and is given by

$$Z_0 = \sqrt{L/C}$$

where  $L$  and  $C$  are the per unit length inductance and capacitance of the line.

The reflection coefficient at the load is defined as

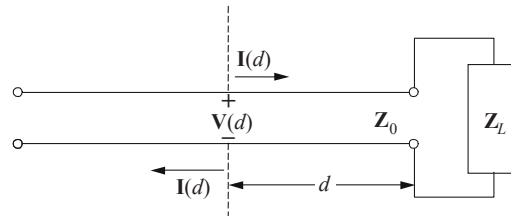
$$\Gamma = \frac{V^-}{V^+} = \frac{Z_L - Z_0}{Z_L + Z_0}$$

and the standing wave ratio SWR is

$$\text{SWR} = \frac{1 + |\Gamma|}{1 - |\Gamma|}$$

$\beta$  = Propagation constant =  $\frac{2\pi}{\lambda}$

For sinusoidal voltages and currents:



Voltage across the transmission line:

$$V(d) = V^+ e^{j\beta d} + V^- e^{-j\beta d}$$

Current along the transmission line:

$$I(d) = I^+ e^{j\beta d} + I^- e^{-j\beta d}$$

where  $I^+ = V^+/Z_0$  and  $I^- = -V^-/Z_0$

Input impedance at  $d$

$$Z_{in}(d) = Z_0 \frac{Z_L + jZ_0 \tan(\beta d)}{Z_0 + jZ_L \tan(\beta d)}$$

## Difference Equations

Difference equations are used to model discrete systems. Systems which can be described by difference equations include computer program variables iteratively evaluated in a loop, sequential circuits, cash flows, recursive processes, systems with time-delay components, etc. Any system whose input  $x(t)$  and output  $y(t)$  are defined only at the equally spaced intervals  $t = kT$  can be described by a difference equation.

## First-Order Linear Difference Equation

A first-order difference equation is

$$y[k] + a_1 y[k-1] = x[k]$$

## Second-Order Linear Difference Equation

A second-order difference equation is

$$y[k] + a_1 y[k-1] + a_2 y[k-2] = x[k]$$

## z-Transforms

The transform definition is

$$F(z) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} f[k] z^{-k}$$

The inverse transform is given by the contour integral

$$f[k] = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_{\Gamma} F(z) z^{k-1} dz$$

and it represents a powerful tool for solving linear shift-invariant difference equations. A limited unilateral list of  $z$ -transform pairs assuming zero initial conditions follows:

| $f[k]$                             | $F(z)$                                    |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| $\delta[k]$ , Impulse at $k = 0$   | 1                                         |
| $u[k]$ , Step at $k = 0$           | $1/(1 - z^{-1})$                          |
| $\beta^k$                          | $1/(1 - \beta z^{-1})$                    |
| $y[k-1]$                           | $z^{-1}Y(z)$                              |
| $y[k-2]$                           | $z^{-2}Y(z)$                              |
| $y[k+1]$                           | $zY(z) - zy[0]$                           |
| $y[k+2]$                           | $z^2Y(z) - z^2y[0] - zy[1]$               |
| $\sum_{m=0}^{\infty} x[k-m]h[m]$   | $H(z)X(z)$                                |
| $\lim_{k \rightarrow 0} f[k]$      | $\lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} F(z)$        |
| $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} f[k]$ | $\lim_{z \rightarrow 1} (1 - z^{-1})F(z)$ |

[Note: The last two transform pairs represent the Initial Value Theorem (I.V.T.) and the Final Value Theorem (F.V.T.) respectively.]

## Convolution

Continuous-time convolution:

$$v(t) = x(t) * y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) y(t - \tau) d\tau$$

Discrete-time convolution:

$$v[n] = x[n] * y[n] = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x[k] y[n - k]$$

## Digital Signal Processing

A discrete-time, linear, time-invariant (DTLTI) system with a single input  $x[n]$  and a single output  $y[n]$  can be described by a linear difference equation with constant coefficients of the form

$$y[n] + \sum_{i=1}^k b_i y[n-i] = \sum_{i=0}^l a_i x[n-i]$$

If all initial conditions are zero, taking a z-transform yields a transfer function

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{\sum_{i=0}^l a_i z^{-i}}{1 + \sum_{i=1}^k b_i z^{-i}}$$

Two common discrete inputs are the unit-step function  $u[n]$  and the unit impulse function  $\delta[n]$ , where

$$u[n] = \begin{cases} 0 & n < 0 \\ 1 & n \geq 0 \end{cases} \text{ and } \delta[n] = \begin{cases} 1 & n = 0 \\ 0 & n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The impulse response  $h[n]$  is the response of a discrete-time system to  $x[n] = \delta[n]$ .

A finite impulse response (FIR) filter is one in which the impulse response  $h[n]$  is limited to a finite number of points:

$$h[n] = \sum_{i=0}^k a_i \delta[n-i]$$

The corresponding transfer function is given by

$$H(z) = \sum_{i=0}^k a_i z^{-i}$$

where  $k$  is the order of the filter.

An infinite impulse response (IIR) filter is one in which the impulse response  $h[n]$  has an infinite number of points:

$$h[n] = \sum_{i=0}^{\infty} a_i \delta[n-i]$$

## Communication Theory and Concepts

The following concepts and definitions are useful for communications systems analysis.

### Functions

|                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unit step,<br>$u(t)$                   | $u(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & t < 0 \\ 1 & t > 0 \end{cases}$                                                                                                                                                                |
| Rectangular pulse,<br>$\Pi(t/\tau)$    | $\Pi(t/\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 &  t/\tau  < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 &  t/\tau  > \frac{1}{2} \end{cases}$                                                                                                                       |
| Triangular pulse,<br>$\Lambda(t/\tau)$ | $\Lambda(t/\tau) = \begin{cases} 1 -  t/\tau  &  t/\tau  < 1 \\ 0 &  t/\tau  > 1 \end{cases}$                                                                                                                            |
| Sinc,<br>$\text{sinc}(at)$             | $\text{sinc}(at) = \frac{\sin(a\pi t)}{a\pi t}$                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Unit impulse,<br>$\delta(t)$           | $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t+t_0)\delta(t)dt = x(t_0)$ <p>for every <math>x(t)</math> defined and continuous at <math>t = t_0</math>. This is equivalent to</p> $\int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t)\delta(t-t_0)dt = x(t_0)$ |

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) * h(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\lambda)h(t-\lambda)d\lambda \\ &= h(t) * x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} h(\lambda)x(t-\lambda)d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

In particular,

$$x(t) * \delta(t-t_0) = x(t-t_0)$$

### The Fourier Transform and its Inverse

$$\begin{aligned} X(f) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(t)e^{-j2\pi ft}dt \\ x(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} X(f)e^{j2\pi ft}df \end{aligned}$$

$x(t)$  and  $X(f)$  form a *Fourier transform pair*:

$$x(t) \leftrightarrow X(f)$$

### Frequency Response and Impulse Response

The *frequency response*  $H(f)$  of a system with input  $x(t)$  and output  $y(t)$  is given by

$$H(f) = \frac{Y(f)}{X(f)}$$

This gives

$$Y(f) = H(f)X(f)$$

The response  $h(t)$  of a linear time-invariant system to a unit-impulse input  $\delta(t)$  is called the *impulse response* of the system. The response  $y(t)$  of the system to any input  $x(t)$  is the convolution of the input  $x(t)$  with the impulse response  $h(t)$ :

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} x(\lambda) h(t - \lambda) d\lambda \\ &= h(t) * x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} h(\lambda) x(t - \lambda) d\lambda \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the impulse response  $h(t)$  and frequency response  $H(f)$  form a Fourier transform pair:

$$h(t) \leftrightarrow H(f)$$

### Parseval's Theorem

The total energy in an energy signal (finite energy)  $x(t)$  is given by

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{+\infty} |X(f)|^2 df$$

### Parseval's Theorem for Fourier Series

A periodic signal  $x(t)$  with period  $T_0$  and fundamental frequency  $f_0 = 1/T_0 = \omega_0/2\pi$  can be represented by a complex-exponential Fourier series

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} X_n e^{jn2\pi f_0 t}$$

The average power in the dc component and the first  $N$  harmonics is

$$P = \sum_{n=-N}^{n=+N} |X_n|^2 = X_0^2 + 2 \sum_{n=1}^{n=N} |X_n|^2$$

The total average power in the periodic signal  $x(t)$  is given by *Parseval's theorem*:

$$P = \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + T_0} |x(t)|^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} |X_n|^2$$

### Decibels and Bode Plots

Decibels is a technique to measure the ratio of two powers:

$$\text{dB} = 10 \log_{10} (P_2/P_1)$$

The definition can be modified to measure the ratio of two voltages:

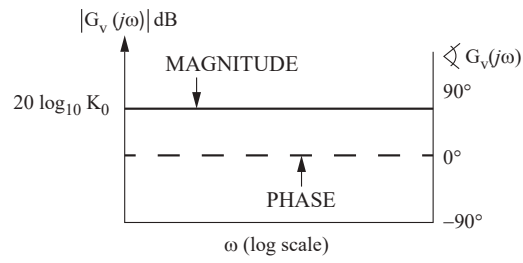
$$\text{dB} = 20 \log_{10} (V_2/V_1)$$

Bode plots use a logarithmic scale for the frequency when plotting magnitude and phase response, where the magnitude is plotted in dB using a straight-line (asymptotic) approximation.

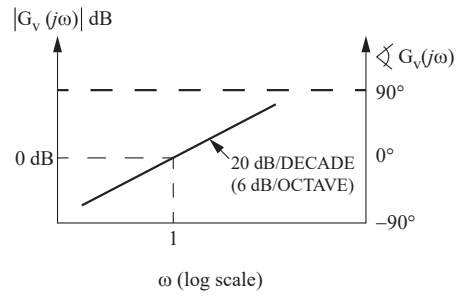
The information below summarizes Bode plots for several terms commonly encountered when determining voltage gain,  $G_v(j\omega)$ . Since logarithms are used to convert gain to decibels, the decibel response when these various terms are multiplied together can be added to determine the overall response.

| Term                             | Magnitude Response<br>$ G_v(j\omega) _{\text{dB}}$                                                                                | Phase Response<br>$\angle G_v(j\omega)$                                                                                   | Plot  |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| $K_0$                            | $20 \log_{10}(K_0)$                                                                                                               | $0^\circ$                                                                                                                 | a     |
| $(j\omega)^{\pm 1}$              | $\pm 20 \log_{10}(\omega)$                                                                                                        | $\pm 90^\circ$                                                                                                            | b & c |
| $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)^{\pm 1}$ | 0 for $\omega \ll \omega_c$<br>$\pm 3 \text{ dB}$ for $\omega = \omega_c$<br>$\pm 20 \log_{10}(\omega)$ for $\omega \gg \omega_c$ | $0^\circ$ for $\omega \ll \omega_c$<br>$\pm 45^\circ$ for $\omega = \omega_c$<br>$\pm 90^\circ$ for $\omega \gg \omega_c$ | d & e |

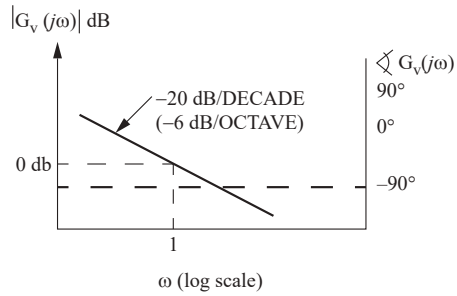
(a)  $K_o$



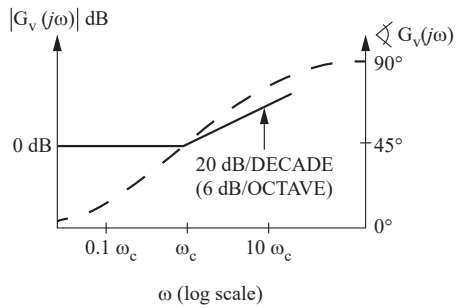
(b)  $(j\omega)$



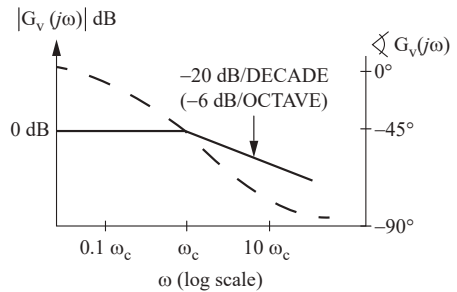
(c)  $(j\omega)^{-1}$



(d)  $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)$



(e)  $(1 + j\omega/\omega_c)^{-1}$



## Amplitude Modulation (AM)

$$\begin{aligned} x_{AM}(t) &= A_c [A + m(t)] \cos(2\pi f_c t) \\ &= A'_c [1 + am_n(t)] \cos(2\pi f_c t) \end{aligned}$$

The *modulation index* is  $a$ , and the normalized message is

$$m_n(t) = \frac{m(t)}{\max |m(t)|}$$

The *efficiency*  $\eta$  is the percent of the total transmitted power that contains the message.

$$\eta = \frac{a^2 \langle m_n^2(t) \rangle}{1 + a^2 \langle m_n^2(t) \rangle} 100 \text{ percent}$$

where the mean-squared value or normalized average power in  $m_n(t)$  is

$$\langle m_n^2(t) \rangle = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^{+T} |m_n(t)|^2 dt$$

If  $M(f) = 0$  for  $|f| > W$ , then the *bandwidth* of  $x_{AM}(t)$  is  $2W$ .

AM signals can be demodulated with an envelope detector or a synchronous demodulator.

## Double-Sideband Modulation (DSB)

$$x_{DSB}(t) = A_c m(t) \cos(2\pi f_c t)$$

If  $M(f) = 0$  for  $|f| > W$ , then the bandwidth of  $m(t)$  is  $W$  and the bandwidth of  $x_{DSB}(t)$  is  $2W$ . DSB signals must be demodulated with a synchronous demodulator. A Costas loop is often used.

## Single-Sideband Modulation (SSB)

Lower Sideband:

$$x_{LSB}(t) \leftrightarrow X_{LSB}(f) = X_{DSB}(f) \Pi\left(\frac{f}{2f_c}\right)$$

Upper Sideband:

$$x_{USB}(t) \leftrightarrow X_{USB}(f) = X_{DSB}(f) \left[1 - \Pi\left(\frac{f}{2f_c}\right)\right]$$

In either case, if  $M(f) = 0$  for  $|f| > W$ , then the bandwidth of  $x_{LSB}(t)$  or of  $x_{USB}(t)$  is  $W$ . SSB signals can be demodulated with a synchronous demodulator or by carrier reinsertion and envelope detection.

## Angle Modulation

$$x_{Ang}(t) = A_c \cos[2\pi f_c t + \phi(t)]$$

The *phase deviation*  $\phi(t)$  is a function of the message  $m(t)$ .

The *instantaneous phase* is

$$\phi_i(t) = 2\pi f_c t + \phi(t) \text{ rad}$$

The *instantaneous frequency* is

$$\omega_i(t) = \frac{d}{dt} \phi_i(t) = 2\pi f_c + \frac{d}{dt} \phi(t) \text{ rad/s}$$

The *frequency deviation* is

$$\Delta\omega(t) = \frac{d}{dt} \phi(t) \text{ rad/s}$$

The *phase deviation* is

$$\phi(t) = k_p m(t) \text{ rad}$$

The *complete* bandwidth of an angle-modulated signal is infinite.

A discriminator or a phase-lock loop can demodulate angle-modulated signals.

## Frequency Modulation (FM)

The *phase deviation* is

$$\phi(t) = k_F \int_{-\infty}^t m(\lambda) d\lambda \text{ rad}$$

The *frequency-deviation ratio* is

$$D = \frac{k_F \max |m(t)|}{2\pi W}$$

where  $W$  is the message bandwidth. If  $D \ll 1$  (narrowband FM), the 98% power bandwidth  $B$  is

$$B \cong 2W$$

If  $D > 1$ , (wideband FM) the 98% power bandwidth  $B$  is given by *Carson's rule*:

$$B \cong 2(D + 1)W$$

## Sampled Messages

A low-pass message  $m(t)$  can be exactly reconstructed from uniformly spaced samples taken at a sampling frequency of  $f_s = 1/T_s$

$$f_s > 2W \text{ where } M(f) = 0 \text{ for } f > W$$

The frequency  $2W$  is called the *Nyquist frequency*. Sampled messages are typically transmitted by some form of pulse modulation. The minimum bandwidth  $B$  required for transmission of the pulse modulated message is inversely proportional to the pulse length  $\tau$ .

$$B \propto \frac{1}{\tau}$$

Frequently, for approximate analysis

$$B \cong \frac{1}{2\tau}$$

is used as the *minimum* bandwidth of a pulse of length  $\tau$ .

## Ideal-Impulse Sampling

$$\begin{aligned} x_\delta(t) &= m(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \delta(t - nT_s) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} m(nT_s) \delta(t - nT_s) \\ X_\delta(f) &= M(f) * \left[ f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \delta(f - kf_s) \right] \\ &= f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} M(f - kf_s) \end{aligned}$$

The message  $m(t)$  can be recovered from  $x_\delta(t)$  with an ideal low-pass filter of bandwidth  $W$  if  $f_s > 2W$ .

### (PAM) Pulse-Amplitude Modulation—Natural Sampling

A PAM signal can be generated by multiplying a message by a pulse train with pulses having duration  $\tau$  and period

$$T_s = 1/f_s$$

$$x_N(t) = m(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} \Pi\left[\frac{t - nT_s}{\tau}\right] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{n=+\infty} m(t) \Pi\left[\frac{t - nT_s}{\tau}\right]$$

$$X_N(f) = \tau f_s \sum_{k=-\infty}^{k=+\infty} \text{sinc}(k\tau f_s) M(f - k f_s)$$

The message  $m(t)$  can be recovered from  $x_N(t)$  with an ideal low-pass filter of bandwidth  $W$ .

### Pulse-Code Modulation (PCM)

PCM is formed by sampling a message  $m(t)$  and digitizing the sample values with an A/D converter. For an  $n$ -bit binary word length, transmission of a pulse-code-modulated low-pass message  $m(t)$ , with  $M(f) = 0$  for  $f \geq W$ , requires the transmission of at least  $2nW$  binary pulses per second. A binary word of length  $n$  bits can represent  $q$  quantization levels:

$$q = 2^n$$

The minimum bandwidth required to transmit the PCM message will be

$$B \propto 2nW = 2W \log_2 q$$

### Error Coding

Error coding is a method of detecting and correcting errors that may have been introduced into a frame during data transmission. A system that is capable of detecting errors may be able to detect single or multiple errors at the receiver based on the error coding method. Below are a few examples of error detecting error coding methods.

*Parity* – For parity bit coding, a parity bit value is added to the transmitted frame to make the total number of ones odd (odd parity) or even (even parity). Parity bit coding can detect single bit errors.

*Cyclical Redundancy Code (CRC)* – CRC can detect multiple errors. To generate the transmitted frame from the receiver, the following equation is used:

$$T(x)/G(x) = E(x)$$

where

$$T(x) = \text{frame}$$

$$G(x) = \text{generator}$$

$$E(x) = \text{remainder}$$

The transmitted code is  $T(x) + E(x)$

On the receiver side, if

$$[T(x) + E(x)]/G(x) = 0$$

then no errors were detected.

To detect and correct errors, redundant bits need to be added to the transmitted data. Some error detecting and correcting algorithms include block code, Hamming code, and Reed Solomon.

## Delays in Computer Networks

**Transmission Delay** – The time it takes to transmit the bits in the packet on the transmission link:

$$d_{\text{trans}} = L/R$$

where

$L$  = packet size (bits/packet)

$R$  = rate of transmission (bits/sec)

**Propagation Delay** – The time taken for a bit to travel from one end of the link to the other:

$$d_{\text{prop}} = d/s$$

where

$d$  = distance or length of the link

$s$  = propagation speed

The propagation speed is usually somewhere between the speed of light  $c$  and  $2/3 c$ .

**Nodal Processing Delay** – It takes time to examine the packet's header and determine where to direct the packet to its destination.

**Queueing Delay** – The packet may experience delay as it waits to be transmitted onto the link. Ignoring nodal and queueing delays, the round-trip delay of delivering a packet from one node to another in the stop-and-wait system is

$$D = 2 d_{\text{prop}} + d_{\text{transAck}} + d_{\text{transData}}$$

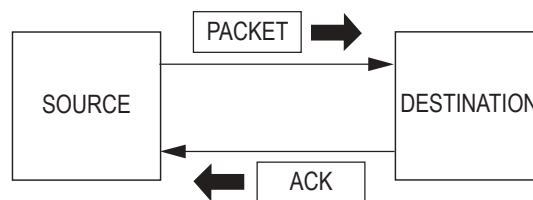
Because the sending host must wait until the ACK packet is received before sending another packet, this leads to a very poor utilization,  $U$ , of resources for stop-and-wait links with relatively large propagation delays:

$$U = d_{\text{trans}}/D$$

For this reason, for paths with large propagation delays, most computer networking systems use a pipelining system called *go-back-N*, in which  $N$  packets are transmitted in sequence before the transmitter receives an ACK for the first packet.

## Automatic Request for Retransmission (ARQ)

Links in the network are most often twisted pair, optical fiber, coaxial cable, or wireless channels. These are all subject to errors and are often unreliable. The ARQ system is designed to provide reliable communications over these unreliable links. In ARQ, each packet contains an error detection process (at the link layer). If no errors are detected in the packet, the host (or intermediate switch) transmits a positive acknowledgement (ACK) packet back to the transmitting element indicating that the packet was received correctly. If any error is detected, the receiving host (or switch) automatically discards the packet and sends a negative acknowledgement (NAK) packet back to the originating element (or stays silent, allowing the transmitter to timeout). Upon receiving the NAK packet or by the trigger of a timeout, the transmitting host (or switch) retransmits the message packet that was in error. A diagram of a simple stop-and-wait ARQ system with a positive acknowledgement is shown below.



## Transmission Algorithms

Sliding window protocol is used where delivery of data is required while maximizing channel capacity. In the sliding window protocol, each outbound frame contains a sequence number. When the transmitted frame is received, the receiver is required to transmit an ACK for each received frame before an additional frame can be transmitted. If the frame is not received, the receiver will transmit a NAK message indicating the frame was not received after an appropriate time has expired. Sliding window protocols automatically adjust the transmission speed to both the speed of the network and the rate at which the receiver sends new acknowledgements.

## Shannon Channel Capacity Formula

$$C = BW \log_2 (1+S/N)$$

where

$C$  = channel capacity in Hz (bits/sec)

$BW$  = bandwidth in Hz (bits/sec)

$S$  = power of the signal at the receiving device (watts)

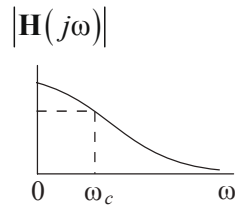
$N$  = noise power at the receiving device (watts)

$\frac{S}{N}$  = Signal-to-Noise Ratio

## Analog Filter Circuits

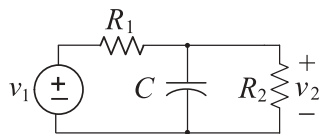
Analog filters are used to separate signals with different frequency content. The following circuits represent simple analog filters used in communications and signal processing.

### First-Order Low-Pass Filters



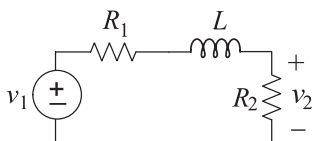
$$|H(j\omega_c)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |H(0)|$$

Frequency Response



$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + sR_P C}$$

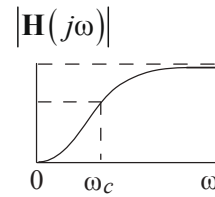
$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_c = \frac{1}{R_P C}$$



$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{1}{1 + sL/R_S}$$

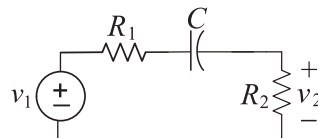
$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_c = \frac{R_S}{L}$$

### First-Order High-Pass Filters



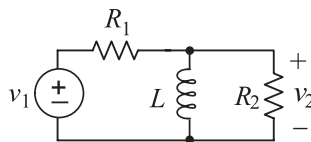
$$|H(j\omega_c)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |H(j\infty)|$$

Frequency Response



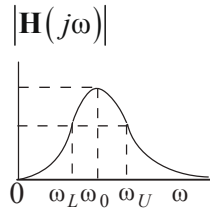
$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{sR_S C}{1 + sR_S C}$$

$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_c = \frac{1}{R_S C}$$



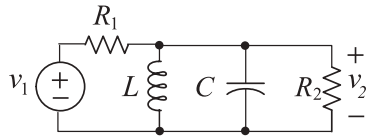
$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{sL/R_P}{1 + sL/R_P}$$

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_c = \frac{R_P}{L}$$

**Band-Pass Filters**


$$|H(j\omega_L)| = |H(j\omega_U)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} |H(j\omega_0)|$$

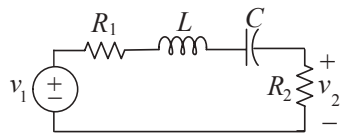
$$\text{3-dB Bandwidth} = BW = \omega_U - \omega_L$$

**Frequency Response**


$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{1}{R_1 C} \cdot \frac{s}{s^2 + s/R_P C + 1/LC}$$

$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

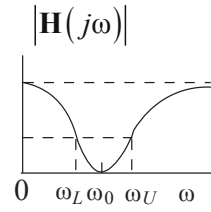
$$|H(j\omega_0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \quad BW = \frac{1}{R_P C}$$



$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_2}{L} \cdot \frac{s}{s^2 + sR_S/L + 1/LC}$$

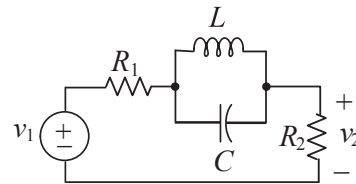
$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|H(j\omega_0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \quad BW = \frac{R_S}{L}$$

**Band-Reject Filters**


$$|H(j\omega_L)| = |H(j\omega_U)| = \left[1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right] |H(0)|$$

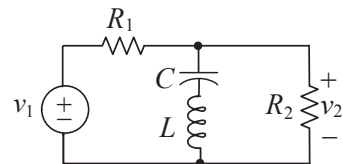
$$\text{3-dB Bandwidth} = BW = \omega_U - \omega_L$$

**Frequency Response**


$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \cdot \frac{s^2 + 1/LC}{s^2 + s/R_S C + 1/LC}$$

$$R_S = R_1 + R_2 \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|H(0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_2}{R_S} \quad BW = \frac{1}{R_S C}$$



$$H(s) = \frac{V_2}{V_1} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \cdot \frac{s^2 + 1/LC}{s^2 + sR_P/L + 1/LC}$$

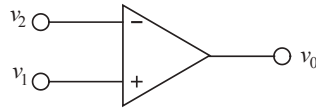
$$R_P = \frac{R_1 R_2}{R_1 + R_2} \quad \omega_0 = \frac{1}{\sqrt{LC}}$$

$$|H(0)| = \frac{R_2}{R_1 + R_2} = \frac{R_P}{R_1} \quad BW = \frac{R_P}{L}$$

## Operational Amplifiers

### Ideal

$$v_0 = A(v_1 - v_2)$$

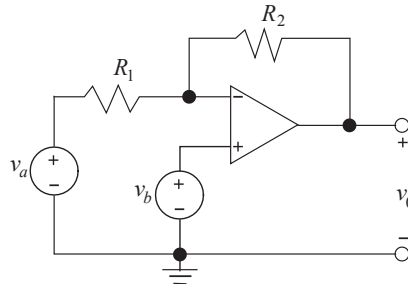


where  $A$  is large ( $> 10^4$ ), and  $v_1 - v_2$  is small enough so as not to saturate the amplifier.

For the ideal operational amplifier, assume that the input currents are zero and that the gain  $A$  is infinite so when operating linearly  $v_2 - v_1 = 0$ .

For the two-source configuration with an ideal operational amplifier,

$$v_0 = -\frac{R_2}{R_1} v_a + \left(1 + \frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) v_b$$



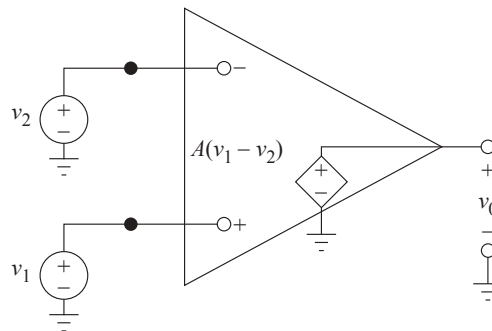
If  $v_a = 0$ , we have a non-inverting amplifier with

$$v_0 = \left(1 + \frac{R_2}{R_1}\right) v_b$$

If  $v_b = 0$ , we have an inverting amplifier with

$$v_0 = -\frac{R_2}{R_1} v_a$$

### Common Mode Rejection Ratio (CMRR)



Equivalent Circuit of an Ideal Op Amp

In the op-amp circuit shown, the differential input is defined as:

$$v_{id} = v_1 - v_2$$

The common-mode input voltage is defined as:

$$v_{icm} = (v_1 + v_2)/2$$

The output voltage is given by:

$$v_O = A v_{id} + A_{cm} v_{icm}$$

In an ideal op amp,  $A_{cm} = 0$ . In a nonideal op amp, the  $CMRR$  is used to measure the relative degree of rejection between the differential gain and common-mode gain.

$$CMRR = \frac{|A|}{|A_{cm}|}$$

$CMRR$  is usually expressed in decibels as:

$$CMRR = 20 \log_{10} \left[ \frac{|A|}{|A_{cm}|} \right]$$

## Solid-State Electronics and Devices

Conductivity of a semiconductor material:

$$\sigma = q (n\mu_n + p\mu_p)$$

where

$\mu_n$   $\equiv$  electron mobility

$\mu_p$   $\equiv$  hole mobility

$n$   $\equiv$  electron concentration

$p$   $\equiv$  hole concentration

$q$   $\equiv$  charge on an electron ( $1.6 \times 10^{-19}$  C)

Doped material:

$p$ -type material;  $p_p \approx N_a$

$n$ -type material;  $n_n \approx N_d$

Carrier concentrations at equilibrium

$$(p)(n) = n_i^2$$

where  $n_i$   $\equiv$  intrinsic concentration.

Built-in potential (contact potential) of a  $p$ - $n$  junction:

$$V_0 = \frac{kT}{q} \ln \frac{N_a N_d}{n_i^2}$$

Thermal voltage

$$V_T = \frac{kT}{q} \approx 0.026 \text{ V at } 300 \text{ K}$$

$N_a$  = acceptor concentration

$N_d$  = donor concentration

$T$  = temperature (K)

$k$  = Boltzmann's constant =  $1.38 \times 10^{-23}$  J/K

Capacitance of abrupt  $p$ - $n$  junction diode

$$C(V) = C_0 / \sqrt{1 - V/V_{bi}}$$

$C_0$  = junction capacitance at  $V = 0$

$V$  = potential of anode with respect to cathode

$V_{bi}$  = junction contact potential

Resistance of a diffused layer is  $R = R_s (L/W)$

where

$R_s$  = sheet resistance =  $\rho/d$  in ohms per square

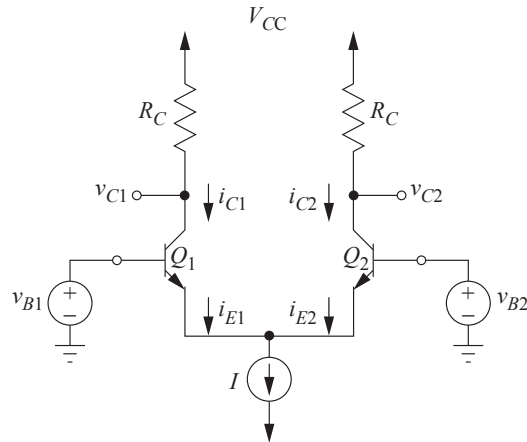
$\rho$  = resistivity

$d$  = thickness

$L$  = length of diffusion

$W$  = width of diffusion

## Differential Amplifier



A Basic BJT Differential Amplifier

Source: Sedra, Adel, and Kenneth Smith, *Microelectronic Circuits*, 3rd ed., ©1991, p. 408, Oxford University Press. Reproduced with permission of the Licensor through PLSclear.

A basic BJT differential amplifier consists of two matched transistors whose emitters are connected and that are biased by a constant-current source. The following equations govern the operation of the circuit given that neither transistor is operating in the saturation region:

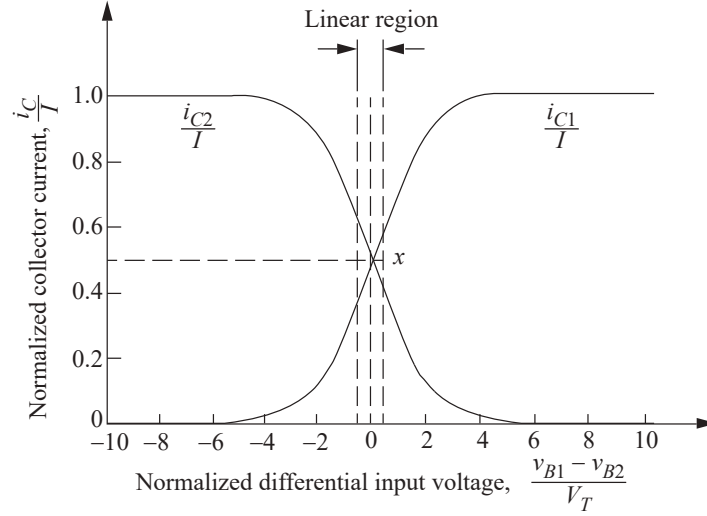
$$\frac{i_{E1}}{i_{E2}} = e^{(v_{B1} - v_{B2})/V_T}$$

$$i_{E1} + i_{E2} = I$$

$$i_{E1} = \frac{I}{1 + e^{(v_{B2} - v_{B1})/V_T}} \quad i_{E2} = \frac{I}{1 + e^{(v_{B1} - v_{B2})/V_T}}$$

$$i_{C1} = \alpha i_{E1} \quad i_{C2} = \alpha i_{E2}$$

The following figure shows a plot of two normalized collector currents versus normalized differential input voltage for a circuit using transistors with  $\alpha \cong 1$ .


 Transfer characteristics of the BJT differential amplifier with  $\alpha \cong 1$ 

Source: Sedra, Adel, and Kenneth Smith, *Microelectronic Circuits*, 3rd ed., ©1991, p. 412, Oxford University Press. Reproduced with permission of the Licensor through PLSclear.

### Power Conversion

In the following figure,  $D$  represents the duty ratio,  $f$  represents the switching frequency, and  $T$  represents the switching period. The voltage gain of an ideal switching dc-dc converter with this gate command is:

Buck Converter:  $D$

Boost Converter:  $\frac{1}{1-D}$

Buck-Boost Converter:  $-\frac{D}{1-D}$

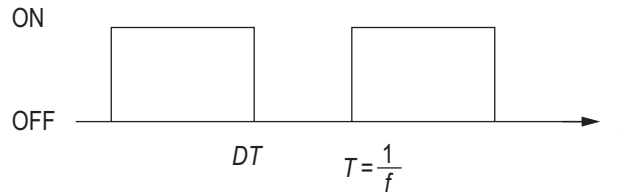
For an  $n$ -pulse rectifier with a line-to-line RMS input voltage of  $V_{rms}$  and no output filter, the average output voltage is

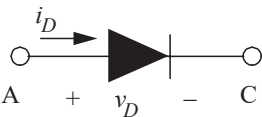
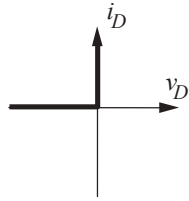
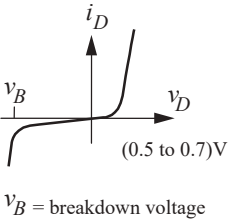
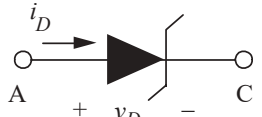
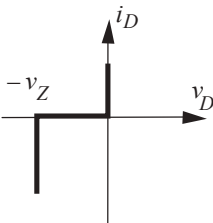
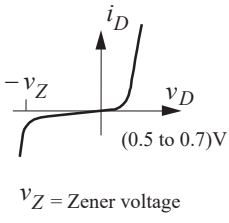
$$V_{dc} = V_{rms} \times \frac{n\sqrt{2}}{\pi} \sin \frac{\pi}{n}$$

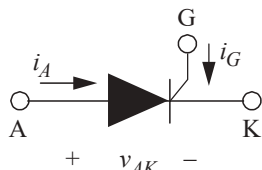
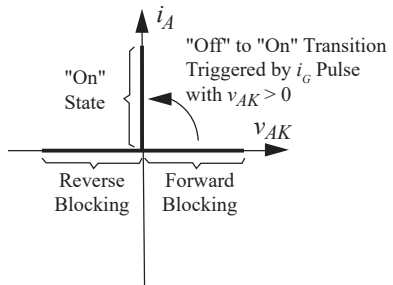
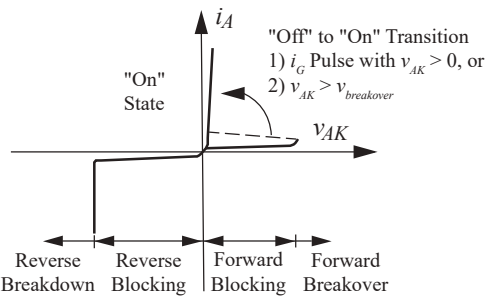
For a three-phase voltage-source inverter with an input voltage of  $V_{dc}$  and sine-triangle pulsewidth modulation with a peak modulation index of  $m$ , the line-to-line RMS fundamental output voltage is

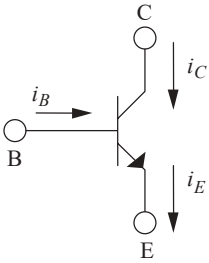
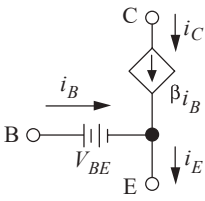
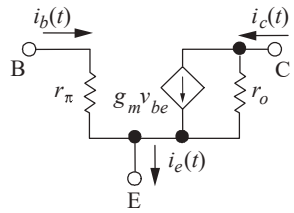
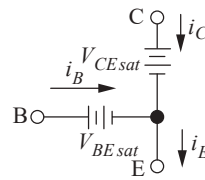
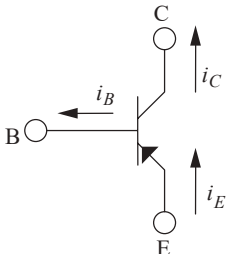
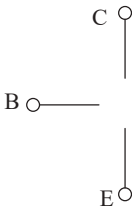
$$V_{rms} = mV_{dc} \times \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{3}{2}}$$

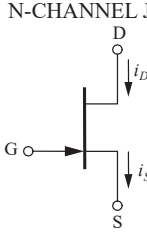
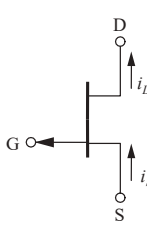
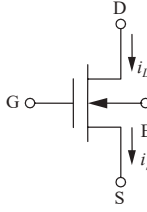
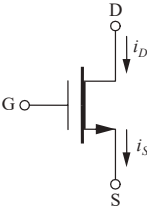
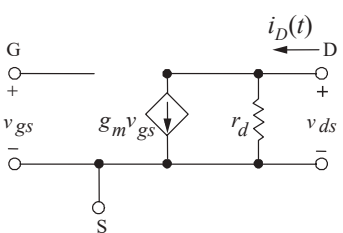
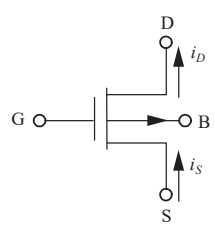
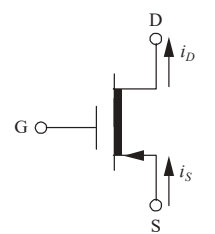
This is valid for  $0 \leq m \leq 1$ , or with third-harmonic injection  $0 \leq m \leq 1.15$ .

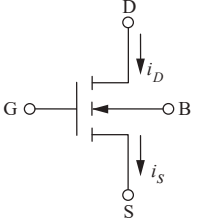
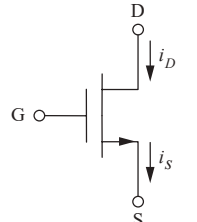
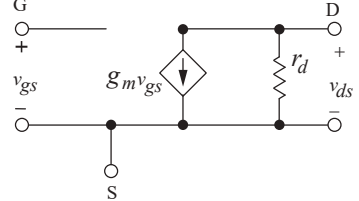
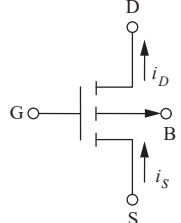
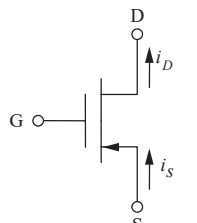


| DIODES                                                                                                |                                                                                   |                                                                                                                       |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Device and Schematic Symbol                                                                           | Ideal $I - V$ Relationship                                                        | Realistic $I - V$ Relationship                                                                                        | Mathematical $I - V$ Relationship                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| (Junction Diode)<br> |  | <br>$v_B = \text{breakdown voltage}$ | Shockley Equation<br>$i_D \approx I_s \left[ e^{(v_D/\eta V_T)} - 1 \right]$ where<br>$I_s = \text{saturation current}$<br>$\eta = \text{emission coefficient, typically 1 for Si}$<br>$V_T = \text{thermal voltage} = \frac{kT}{q}$ |
| (Zener Diode)<br>    |  | <br>$v_Z = \text{Zener voltage}$     | Same as above.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |

| Thyristor or Silicon Controlled Rectifier (SCR)                                     |                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Schematic Symbol                                                                    | Ideal $I - V$ Relationship                                                                                                                                 | Realistic $I - V$ Relationship                                                                                                                                                           |
|  | <br>"Off" to "On" Transition Triggered by $i_G$ Pulse with $v_{AK} > 0$ | <br>"Off" to "On" Transition<br>1) $i_G$ Pulse with $v_{AK} > 0$ , or<br>2) $v_{AK} > v_{breakover}$ |

| Bipolar Junction Transistor (BJT)                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Schematic Symbol                                                                                           | Mathematical Relationships                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Large-Signal (DC) Equivalent Circuit                                                                                                                                                                | Low-Frequency Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|  <p>NPN – Transistor</p>  | $i_E = i_B + i_C$ $i_C = \beta i_B$ $i_C = \alpha i_E$ $\alpha = \beta / (\beta + 1)$ $i_C \approx I_S e^{(V_{BE} / V_T)}$ $I_S = \text{emitter saturation current}$ $V_T = \text{thermal voltage}$ <p>Note: These relationships are valid in the active mode of operation.</p> | <p><u>Active Region:</u><br/>base emitter junction forward biased;<br/>base collector junction reverse biased</p>  | <p><u>Low Frequency:</u></p> $g_m \approx I_{CQ} / V_T$ $r_\pi \approx \beta / g_m$ $r_o = \left[ \frac{\partial v_{CE}}{\partial i_c} \right]_{Q_{point}} \approx \frac{V_A}{I_{CQ}}$ <p>where<br/> <math>I_{CQ}</math> = dc collector current at the <math>Q_{point}</math><br/> <math>V_A</math> = Early voltage</p>  |
|                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p><u>Saturation Region:</u><br/>both junctions forward biased</p>                                                 |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|  <p>PNP – Transistor</p> | <p>Same as for NPN with current directions and voltage polarities reversed.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u><br/>both junctions reverse biased</p>                                                    | <p>Same as for NPN.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Same as NPN with current directions and voltage polarities reversed</p>                                                                                                                          |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Junction Field Effect Transistors (JFETs)<br>and Depletion MOSFETs (Low and Medium Frequency)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Schematic Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Mathematical Relationships                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <p>N-CHANNEL JFET</p>  <p>P-CHANNEL JFET</p>  <p>N-CHANNEL DEPLETION MOSFET (NMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &lt; V_p</math><br/><math>i_D = 0</math></p> <p><u>Triode Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &gt; V_p</math> and <math>v_{GD} &gt; V_p</math><br/><math>i_D = (I_{DSS}/V_p^2)[2v_{DS}(v_{GS} - V_p) - v_{DS}^2]</math></p> <p><u>Saturation Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &gt; V_p</math> and <math>v_{GD} &lt; V_p</math><br/><math>i_D = I_{DSS}(1 - v_{GS}/V_p)^2</math></p> <p>where<br/> <math>I_{DSS}</math> = drain current with <math>v_{GS} = 0</math><br/>                     (in the saturation region)<br/> <math>= KV_p^2</math>,<br/> <math>K</math> = conductivity factor</p> <p>For JFETs,<br/> <math>V_p</math> = pinch-off voltage</p> <p>For MOSFETs,<br/> <math>V_p = V_T</math> = threshold voltage</p> | <p><math>g_m = \frac{2\sqrt{I_{DSS}I_D}}{ V_p }</math> in saturation region</p>  <p>where<br/> <math>r_d = \left  \frac{\partial v_{ds}}{\partial i_d} \right _{Q_{point}}</math></p> |
| <p>P-CHANNEL DEPLETION MOSFET (PMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Same as for N-Channel with current directions and voltage polarities reversed</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <p>Same as for N-Channel</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |

| Enhancement MOSFET (Low and Medium Frequency)                                                                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Schematic Symbol                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | Mathematical Relationships                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | Small-Signal (AC) Equivalent Circuit                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| <p>N-CHANNEL ENHANCEMENT MOSFET (NMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>     | <p><u>Cutoff Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &lt; V_t</math><br/> <math>i_D = 0</math></p> <p><u>Triode Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &gt; V_t</math> and <math>v_{GD} &gt; V_t</math><br/> <math>i_D = K [2v_{DS}(v_{GS} - V_t) - v_{DS}^2]</math></p> <p><u>Saturation Region:</u> <math>v_{GS} &gt; V_t</math> and <math>v_{GD} &lt; V_t</math><br/> <math>i_D = K (v_{GS} - V_t)^2</math><br/>             where<br/> <math>K =</math> conductivity factor<br/> <math>V_t =</math> threshold voltage</p> | <p><math>g_m = 2K(v_{GS} - V_t)</math> in saturation region</p>  <p>where</p> $r_d = \left  \frac{\partial v_{ds}}{\partial i_d} \right _{Q_{\text{point}}}$ |
| <p>P-CHANNEL ENHANCEMENT MOSFET (PMOS)</p>  <p>SIMPLIFIED SYMBOL</p>  | <p>Same as for N-channel with current directions and voltage polarities reversed</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <p>Same as for N-channel</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

## Number Systems and Codes

An unsigned number of base- $r$  has a decimal equivalent  $D$  defined by

$$D = \sum_{k=0}^n a_k r^k + \sum_{i=1}^m a_i r^{-i}$$

where

$a_k$  = the  $(k + 1)$  digit to the left of the radix point

$a_i$  = the  $i$ th digit to the right of the radix point

### Binary Number System

In digital computers, the base-2, or binary, number system is normally used. Thus the decimal equivalent,  $D$ , of a binary number is given by

$$D = a_k 2^k + a_{k-1} 2^{k-1} + \dots + a_0 + a_{-1} 2^{-1} + \dots$$

Since this number system is so widely used in the design of digital systems, we use a shorthand notation for some powers of two:

$2^{10} = 1,024$  is abbreviated "K" or "kilo"

$2^{20} = 1,048,576$  is abbreviated "M" or "mega"

Signed numbers of base- $r$  are often represented by the radix complement operation. If  $M$  is an  $N$ -digit value of base- $r$ , the radix complement  $R(M)$  is defined by

$$R(M) = r^N - M$$

The 2's complement of an  $N$ -bit binary integer can be written

$$2\text{'s Complement}(M) = 2^N - M$$

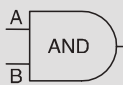
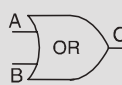
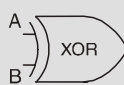
This operation is equivalent to taking the 1's complement (inverting each bit of  $M$ ) and adding one.

The following table contains equivalent codes for a four-bit binary value.

| Binary<br>Base-2 | Decimal<br>Base-10 | Hexa-<br>decimal<br>Base-16 | Octal<br>Base-8 | Packed<br>BCD<br>Code | Gray<br>Code |
|------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|--------------|
| 0000             | 0                  | 0                           | 0               | 0000                  | 0000         |
| 0001             | 1                  | 1                           | 1               | 0001                  | 0001         |
| 0010             | 2                  | 2                           | 2               | 0010                  | 0011         |
| 0011             | 3                  | 3                           | 3               | 0011                  | 0010         |
| 0100             | 4                  | 4                           | 4               | 0100                  | 0110         |
| 0101             | 5                  | 5                           | 5               | 0101                  | 0111         |
| 0110             | 6                  | 6                           | 6               | 0110                  | 0101         |
| 0111             | 7                  | 7                           | 7               | 0111                  | 0100         |
| 1000             | 8                  | 8                           | 10              | 1000                  | 1100         |
| 1001             | 9                  | 9                           | 11              | 1001                  | 1101         |
| 1010             | 10                 | A                           | 12              | ---                   | 1111         |
| 1011             | 11                 | B                           | 13              | ---                   | 1110         |
| 1100             | 12                 | C                           | 14              | ---                   | 1010         |
| 1101             | 13                 | D                           | 15              | ---                   | 1011         |
| 1110             | 14                 | E                           | 16              | ---                   | 1001         |
| 1111             | 15                 | F                           | 17              | ---                   | 1000         |

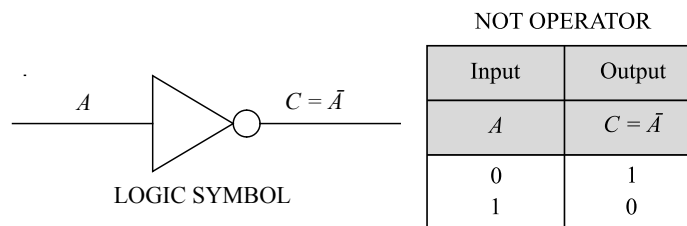
## Logic Operations and Boolean Algebra

Three basic logic operations are the "AND ( $\bullet$ )," "OR (+)," and "Exclusive-OR  $\oplus$ " functions. The definition of each function, its logic symbol, and its Boolean expression are given in the following table.

| Function |  |  |  |
|----------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Inputs   |                                                                                   |                                                                                   |                                                                                    |
| $A \ B$  | $C = A \bullet B$                                                                 | $C = A + B$                                                                       | $C = A \oplus B$                                                                   |
| 0 0      | 0                                                                                 | 0                                                                                 | 0                                                                                  |
| 0 1      | 0                                                                                 | 1                                                                                 | 1                                                                                  |
| 1 0      | 0                                                                                 | 1                                                                                 | 1                                                                                  |
| 1 1      | 1                                                                                 | 1                                                                                 | 0                                                                                  |

As commonly used,  $A$  AND  $B$  is often written  $AB$  or  $A \bullet B$ .

The not operator inverts the sense of a binary value ( $0 \rightarrow 1$ ,  $1 \rightarrow 0$ )



## De Morgan's Theorems

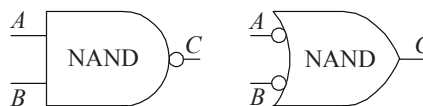
First theorem:  $\overline{A + B} = \bar{A} \bullet \bar{B}$

Second theorem:  $\overline{A \bullet B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$

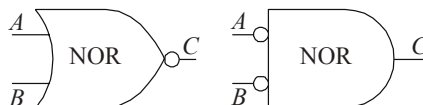
These theorems define the NAND gate and the NOR gate.

Logic symbols for these gates are shown below.

NAND Gates:  $\overline{A \bullet B} = \bar{A} + \bar{B}$

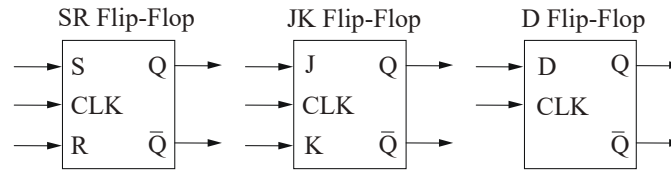


NOR Gates:  $\overline{A + B} = \bar{A} \bullet \bar{B}$



## Flip-Flops

A flip-flop is a device whose output can be placed in one of two states, 0 or 1. The flip-flop output is synchronized with a clock (CLK) signal.  $Q_n$  represents the value of the flip-flop output before CLK is applied, and  $Q_{n+1}$  represents the output after CLK has been applied. Three basic flip-flops are described below.



| SR | $Q_{n+1}$       | JK | $Q_{n+1}$               | D | $Q_{n+1}$ |
|----|-----------------|----|-------------------------|---|-----------|
| 00 | $Q_n$ no change | 00 | $Q_n$ no change         | 0 | 0         |
| 01 | 0               | 01 | 0                       | 1 | 1         |
| 10 | 1               | 10 | 1                       |   |           |
| 11 | x invalid       | 11 | $\overline{Q_n}$ toggle |   |           |

| Composite Flip-Flop State Transition |           |   |   |   |   |   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|---|---|---|---|---|
| $Q_n$                                | $Q_{n+1}$ | S | R | J | K | D |
| 0                                    | 0         | 0 | x | 0 | x | 0 |
| 0                                    | 1         | 1 | 0 | 1 | x | 1 |
| 1                                    | 0         | 0 | 1 | x | 1 | 0 |
| 1                                    | 1         | x | 0 | x | 0 | 1 |

## Switching Function Terminology

**Minterm**,  $m_i$  – A product term which contains an occurrence of every variable in the function.

**Maxterm**,  $M_i$  – A sum term which contains an occurrence of every variable in the function.

**Implicant** – A Boolean algebra term, either in sum or product form, which contains one or more minterms or maxterms of a function.

**Prime Implicant** – An implicant which is not entirely contained in any other implicant.

**Essential Prime Implicant** – A prime implicant which contains a minterm or maxterm which is not contained in any other prime implicant.

A function can be described as a sum of minterms using the notation

$$F(ABCD) = \Sigma m(h, i, j, \dots) \\ = m_h + m_i + m_j + \dots$$

A function can be described as a product of maxterms using the notation

$$G(ABCD) = \Pi M(h, i, j, \dots) \\ = M_h \cdot M_i \cdot M_j \cdot \dots$$

A function represented as a sum of minterms only is said to be in *canonical sum of products* (SOP) form. A function represented as a product of maxterms only is said to be in *canonical product of sums* (POS) form. A function in canonical SOP form is often represented as a *minterm list*, while a function in canonical POS form is often represented as a *maxterm list*.

A *Karnaugh Map* (K-Map) is a graphical technique used to represent a truth table. Each square in the K-Map represents one minterm, and the squares of the K-Map are arranged so that the adjacent squares differ by a change in exactly one variable. A four-variable K-Map with its corresponding minterms is shown below. K-Maps are used to simplify switching functions by visually identifying all essential prime implicants.

| AB \ CD | 00              | 01              | 11              | 10              |
|---------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 00      | m <sub>0</sub>  | m <sub>1</sub>  | m <sub>3</sub>  | m <sub>2</sub>  |
| 01      | m <sub>4</sub>  | m <sub>5</sub>  | m <sub>7</sub>  | m <sub>6</sub>  |
| 11      | m <sub>12</sub> | m <sub>13</sub> | m <sub>15</sub> | m <sub>14</sub> |
| 10      | m <sub>8</sub>  | m <sub>9</sub>  | m <sub>11</sub> | m <sub>10</sub> |

## Computer Networking

Modern computer networks are primarily packet switching networks. This means that the messages in the system are broken down, or segmented into packets, and the packets are transmitted separately into the network. The primary purpose of the network is to exchange messages between endpoints of the network called *hosts* or *nodes*, typically computers, servers, or handheld devices. At the host, the packets are reassembled into the message and delivered to a software application, e.g., a browser, email, or video player.

Two widely used abstract models for modern computer networks are the open systems interconnect (OSI) model and the TCP/IP model shown in the figure below.

| OSI MODEL    | TCP/IP MODEL      |
|--------------|-------------------|
| APPLICATION  | APPLICATION       |
| PRESENTATION |                   |
| SESSION      |                   |
| TRANSPORT    | TRANSPORT         |
| NETWORK      | INTERNET          |
| DATA LINK    | NETWORK INTERFACE |
| PHYSICAL     |                   |

Source: Tanenbaum, Andrew S., *Computer Networks*, 3rd ed., Prentice Hall, 1996, p. 36.

The application layer on the TCP/IP model corresponds to the three upper layers (application, presentation, and session) of the OSI model. The network interface layer of the TCP/IP model corresponds to the bottom two layers (data link and physical) of the OSI model.

The application layer is the network layer closest to the end user, which means both the application layer and the user interact directly with the software application. This layer interacts with software applications that implement a communicating component.

In the OSI model, the application layer interacts with the presentation layer. The presentation layer is responsible for the delivery and formatting of information to the application layer for further processing or display. It relieves the application layer of concern regarding syntactical differences in data representation within the end-user systems.

The OSI session layer provides the mechanism for opening, closing, and managing a session between end-user application processes. It provides for full-duplex, half-duplex, or simplex operation, and establishes checkpointing, adjournment, termination, and restart procedures.

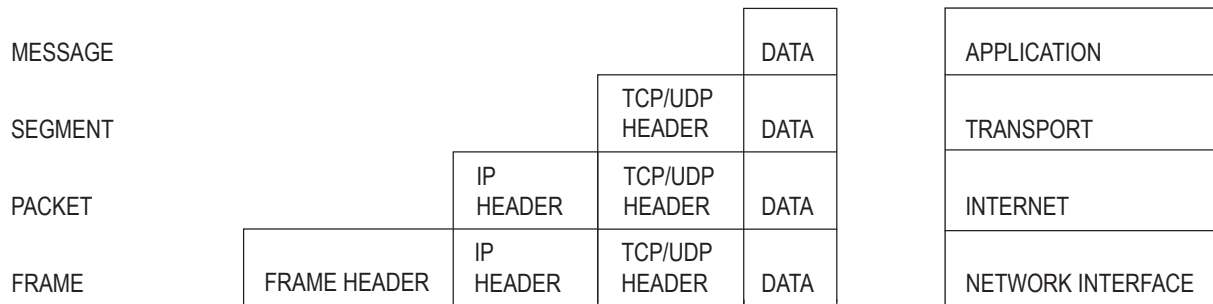
The transport layer adds a transport header normally containing TCP and UDP protocol information. The transport layer provides logical process-to-process communication primitives. Optionally, it may provide other services, such as reliability, in-order delivery, flow control, and congestion control.

The network layer or Internet layer adds another header normally containing the IP protocol; the main role of the networking layer is finding appropriate routes between end hosts, and forwarding the packets along these routes.

The link layer or data link layer contains protocols for transmissions between devices on the same link and usually handles error detection and correction and medium-access control.

The physical layer specifies physical transmission parameters (e.g., modulation, coding, channels, data rates) and governs the transmission of frames from one network element to another sharing a common link.

Hosts, routers, and link-layer switches showing the four-layer protocol stack with different sets of layers for hosts, a switch, and a router are shown in the figure below.



ENCAPSULATION OF APPLICATION DATA THROUGH EACH LAYER

In computer networking, encapsulation is a method of designing modular communication protocols in which logically separate functions in the network are abstracted from their underlying structures by inclusion or information hiding within higher-level objects. For example, a network layer packet is encapsulated in a data link layer frame.

### Abbreviation

|      |                                     |
|------|-------------------------------------|
| ACK  | Acknowledge                         |
| ARQ  | Automatic request                   |
| BW   | Bandwidth                           |
| CRC  | Cyclic redundancy code              |
| DHCP | Dynamic host configuration protocol |
| IP   | Internet protocol                   |
| LAN  | Local area network                  |
| NAK  | Negative acknowledgement            |
| OSI  | Open systems interconnect           |
| TCP  | Transmission control protocol       |

### Protocol Definitions

- TCP/IP is the basic communication protocol suite for communication over the Internet.
- Internet Protocol (IP) provides end-to-end addressing and is used to encapsulate TCP or UDP datagrams. Both version 4 (IPv4) and version 6 (IPv6) are used and can coexist on the same network.
- Transmission Control Protocol (TCP) is a connection-oriented protocol that detects lost packets, duplicated packets, or packets that are received out of order and has mechanisms to correct these problems.
- User Datagram Protocol (UDP) is a connectionless-oriented protocol that has less network overhead than TCP but provides no guarantee of delivery, ordering, or duplicate protection.
- Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) is a supporting protocol used to send error messages and operational information.

### Internet Protocol Addressing

Source: This section from Hinden, R., and S. Deering, eds., *RFC 1884--IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture*, 1995, as found on <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc1884> on October 16, 2019; and Information Science Institute, University of Southern California, *RFC 791--Internet Protocol*, 1981, as found on <https://tools.ietf.org/html/rfc791> on October 16, 2019

IPv4 addresses are 32 bits in length and represented in dotted-decimal format using 4 decimal numbers separated by dots, e.g., 192.268.1.1. IPv6 addresses are 128 bits and are represented by eight groups of 4 hexadecimal digits separated by colons. Each group of digits is separated by a colon, e.g., 2001:0db8:85a3:0000:0000:8a2e:0370:7334. Optionally, leading zeros in a group may be dropped in order to shorten the representation, e.g., 2001:db8:85a3:0:0:8a2e:370:7334. One or more consecutive groups containing zeros only may be replaced with a single empty group, using two consecutive colons (::), e.g., 2001:db8:85a3::8a2e:370:7334. For both IPv4 and IPv6, the network address ranges can be specified in slash (/) - CIDR (Classless Inter-Domain Routing) notation after the address. The integer following the slash indicates the number of leftmost bits that are common to all addresses on the network. Alternately, for IPv4, the address range may also be specified by a network mask, a 32-bit dotted decimal number with ones for all bits common to the address space, e.g., 192.168.5.0/24 can be represented by 192.168.5.0/255.255.255.0.

| <b>IPv4 Special Address Blocks</b> |                             |                            |                 |                                                                                                                                                                            |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <b>Address block</b>               | <b>Address range</b>        | <b>Number of addresses</b> | <b>Scope</b>    | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                         |
| 0.0.0.0/8                          | 0.0.0.0–0.255.255.255       | 16777216                   | Software        | Current network (only valid as source address).                                                                                                                            |
| 10.0.0.0/8                         | 10.0.0.0–10.255.255.255     | 16777216                   | Private network | Used for local communications within a private network.                                                                                                                    |
| 100.64.0.0/10                      | 100.64.0.0–100.127.255.255  | 4194304                    | Private network | Shared address space for communications between a service provider and its subscribers when using a carrier-grade NAT.                                                     |
| 127.0.0.0/8                        | 127.0.0.0–127.255.255.255   | 16777216                   | Host            | Used for loopback addresses to the local host.                                                                                                                             |
| 169.254.0.0/16                     | 169.254.0.0–169.254.255.255 | 65536                      | Subnet          | Used for link-local addresses between two hosts on a single link when no IP address is otherwise specified, such as would have normally been retrieved from a DHCP server. |
| 172.16.0.0/12                      | 172.16.0.0–172.31.255.255   | 1048576                    | Private network | Used for local communications within a private network.                                                                                                                    |
| 192.0.0.0/24                       | 192.0.0.0–192.0.0.255       | 256                        | Private network | IETF Protocol Assignments.                                                                                                                                                 |
| 192.0.2.0/24                       | 192.0.2.0–192.0.2.255       | 256                        | Documentation   | Assigned as TEST-NET-1, documentation and examples.                                                                                                                        |
| 192.88.99.0/24                     | 192.88.99.0–192.88.99.255   | 256                        | Internet        | Reserved. Formerly used for IPv6 to IPv4 relay (included IPv6 address block 2002::/16).                                                                                    |
| 192.168.0.0/16                     | 192.168.0.0–192.168.255.255 | 65536                      | Private network | Used for local communications within a private network.                                                                                                                    |
| 198.18.0.0/15                      | 198.18.0.0–198.19.255.255   | 131072                     | Private network | Used for benchmark testing of inter-network communications between two separate subnets.                                                                                   |
| 198.51.100.0/24                    | 198.51.100.0–198.51.100.255 | 256                        | Documentation   | Assigned as TEST-NET-2, documentation and examples.                                                                                                                        |
| 203.0.113.0/24                     | 203.0.113.0–203.0.113.255   | 256                        | Documentation   | Assigned as TEST-NET-3, documentation and examples.                                                                                                                        |
| 224.0.0.0/4                        | 224.0.0.0–239.255.255.255   | 268435456                  | Internet        | In use for IP multicast. (Former Class D network.)                                                                                                                         |
| 240.0.0.0/4                        | 240.0.0.0–255.255.255.254   | 268435456                  | Internet        | Reserved for future use. (Former Class E network.)                                                                                                                         |
| 255.255.255.255/32                 | 255.255.255.255             | 1                          | Subnet          | Reserved for the "limited broadcast" destination address.                                                                                                                  |

| IPv6 Special Address Blocks |                  |                                         |                                    |                 |                                                          |
|-----------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| Address block (CIDR)        | First address    | Last address                            | Number of addresses                | Usage           | Purpose                                                  |
| ::/0                        | ::               | ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff | $2^{128}$                          | Routing         | Default route.                                           |
| ::/128                      | ::               |                                         | 1                                  | Software        | Unspecified address.                                     |
| ::1/128                     | ::1              |                                         | 1                                  | Host            | Loopback address to the local host.                      |
| ::ffff:0:0/96               | ::ffff:0:0:0:0   | ::ffff:255.255.255.255                  | $2^{128-96} = 2^{32} = 4294967296$ | Software        | IPv4 mapped addresses.                                   |
| ::ffff:0:0:0/96             | ::ffff:0:0:0:0:0 | ::ffff:0:255.255.255.255                | $2^{32}$                           | Software        | IPv4 translated addresses.                               |
| 64:ff9b::/96                | 64:ff9b::0:0:0:0 | 64:ff9b::255.255.255.255                | $2^{32}$                           | Global Internet | IPv4/IPv6 translation.                                   |
| 100::/64                    | 100::            | 100::ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff                | $2^{64}$                           | Routing         | Discard prefix.                                          |
| 2001::/32                   | 2001::           | 2001::ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff     | $2^{96}$                           | Global Internet | Teredo tunneling.                                        |
| 2001:20::/28                | 2001:20::        | 2001:2f:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff   | $2^{100}$                          | Software        | ORCHIDv2.                                                |
| 2001:db8::/32               | 2001:db8::       | 2001:db8:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff  | $2^{96}$                           | Documentation   | Addresses used in documentation and example source code. |
| fc00::/7                    | fc00::           | fdff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff | $2^{121}$                          | Private network | Unique local address.                                    |
| fe80::/10                   | fe80::           | febf:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff | $2^{118}$                          | Link            | Link-local address.                                      |
| ff00::/8                    | ff00::           | ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff:ffff | $2^{120}$                          | Global Internet | Multicast address.                                       |

## Internet Protocol version 4 Header

The IPv4 packet header consists of 14 fields, of which 13 are required. The 14th field is optional and is named options. The fields in the header are packed with the most significant byte first (big endian), and for the diagram and discussion, the most significant bits are considered to come first (MSB 0 bit numbering). The most significant bit is numbered 0, so the version field is actually found in the four most significant bits of the first byte, for example.

| IPv4 Header Format |       |                        |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
|--------------------|-------|------------------------|---|---|---|-----|---|---|---|----------|---|----|----|----|----|-----|----|-----------------|----|----|-----------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|--|
| Offsets            | Octet | 0                      |   |   |   |     |   |   |   | 1        |   |    |    |    |    |     |    | 2               |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    | 3  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| Octet              | Bit   | 0                      | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4   | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8        | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14  | 15 | 16              | 17 | 18 | 19              | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |  |
| 0                  | 0     | Version                |   |   |   | IHL |   |   |   | DSCP     |   |    |    |    |    | ECN |    | Total Length    |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 4                  | 32    | Identification         |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    | Flags           |    |    | Fragment Offset |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 8                  | 64    | Time To Live           |   |   |   |     |   |   |   | Protocol |   |    |    |    |    |     |    | Header Checksum |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 12                 | 96    | Source IP Address      |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 16                 | 128   | Destination IP Address |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 20                 | 160   | Options (if IHL > 5)   |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 24                 | 192   |                        |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 28                 | 224   |                        |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |
| 32                 | 256   |                        |   |   |   |     |   |   |   |          |   |    |    |    |    |     |    |                 |    |    |                 |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |  |

### Version

The first header field in an IP packet is the four-bit version field. For IPv4, this is always equal to 4.

### Internet Header Length (IHL)

The Internet Header Length (IHL) field has 4 bits, which is the number of 32-bit words. Since an IPv4 header may contain a variable number of options, this field specifies the size of the header (this also coincides with the offset to the data). The minimum value for this field is 5, which indicates a length of  $5 \times 32 \text{ bits} = 160 \text{ bits} = 20 \text{ bytes}$ . As a 4-bit field, the maximum value is 15 words ( $15 \times 32 \text{ bits}$ , or  $480 \text{ bits} = 60 \text{ bytes}$ ).

### Differentiated Services Code Point (DSCP)

Originally defined as the type of service (ToS), this field specifies differentiated services (DiffServ). New technologies are emerging that require real-time data streaming and therefore make use of the DSCP field. An example is Voice over IP (VoIP), which is used for interactive voice services.

### Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN)

This field allows end-to-end notification of network congestion without dropping packets. ECN is an optional feature that is only used when both endpoints support it and are willing to use it. It is effective only when supported by the underlying network.

### Total Length

This 16-bit field defines the entire packet size in bytes, including header and data. The minimum size is 20 bytes (header without data) and the maximum is 65,535 bytes. All hosts are required to be able to reassemble datagrams of size up to 576 bytes, but most modern hosts handle much larger packets. Sometimes links impose further restrictions on the packet size, in which case datagrams must be fragmented. Fragmentation in IPv4 is handled in either the host or in routers.

### Identification

This field is an identification field and is primarily used for uniquely identifying the group of fragments of a single IP datagram.

### Flags

A three-bit field follows and is used to control or identify fragments. They are (in order, from most significant to least significant):

- bit 0: Reserved; must be zero
- bit 1: Don't Fragment (DF)
- bit 2: More Fragments (MF)

If the DF flag is set, and fragmentation is required to route the packet, then the packet is dropped. This can be used when sending packets to a host that does not have resources to handle fragmentation. It can also be used for path MTU discovery, either automatically by the host IP software, or manually using diagnostic tools such as ping or traceroute. For unfragmented packets, the MF flag is cleared. For fragmented packets, all fragments except the last have the MF flag set. The last fragment has a non-zero Fragment Offset field, differentiating it from an unfragmented packet.

**Fragment Offset**

The fragment offset field is measured in units of eight-byte blocks. It is 13 bits long and specifies the offset of a particular fragment relative to the beginning of the original unfragmented IP datagram. The first fragment has an offset of zero. This allows a maximum offset of  $(2^{13} - 1) \times 8 = 65,528$  bytes, which would exceed the maximum IP packet length of 65,535 bytes with the header length included ( $65,528 + 20 = 65,548$  bytes).

**Time To Live (TTL)**

An eight-bit time to live field helps prevent datagrams from persisting (e.g., going in circles) on an internet. This field limits a datagram's lifetime. It is specified in seconds, but time intervals less than 1 second are rounded up to 1. In practice, the field has become a hop count—when the datagram arrives at a router, the router decrements the TTL field by one. When the TTL field hits zero, the router discards the packet and typically sends an ICMP Time Exceeded message to the sender. The program traceroute uses these ICMP Time Exceeded messages to print the routers used by packets to go from the source to the destination.

**Protocol**

This field defines the protocol used in the data portion of the IP datagram.

**Header Checksum**

The 16-bit IPv4 header checksum field is used for error-checking of the header. When a packet arrives at a router, the router calculates the checksum of the header and compares it to the checksum field. If the values do not match, the router discards the packet. Errors in the data field must be handled by the encapsulated protocol. Both UDP and TCP have checksum fields. When a packet arrives at a router, the router decreases the TTL field. Consequently, the router must calculate a new checksum.

**Source Address**

This field is the IPv4 address of the sender of the packet. Note that this address may be changed in transit by a network address translation device.

**Destination Address**

This field is the IPv4 address of the receiver of the packet. As with the source address, this may be changed in transit by a network address translation device.

**Options**

The options field is not often used. Note that the value in the IHL field must include enough extra 32-bit words to hold all the options (plus any padding needed to ensure that the header contains an integer number of 32-bit words). The list of options may be terminated with an EOL (End of Options List, 0x00) option; this is only necessary if the end of the options would not otherwise coincide with the end of the header. The possible options that can be put in the header are as follows:

| Field         | Size (bits) | Description                                                                                                             |
|---------------|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Copied        | 1           | Set to 1 if the options need to be copied into all fragments of a fragmented packet.                                    |
| Option Class  | 2           | A general options category. 0 is for "control" options, and 2 is for "debugging and measurement." 1 and 3 are reserved. |
| Option Number | 5           | Specifies an option.                                                                                                    |
| Option Length | 8           | Indicates the size of the entire option (including this field). This field may not exist for simple options.            |
| Option Data   | Variable    | Option-specific data. This field may not exist for simple options.                                                      |

## Internet Protocol version 6 Header

The fixed header starts an IPv6 packet and has a size of 40 octets (320 bits). It has the following format:

| Offsets | Octet | 0                   |   |   |   |               |   |   |   | 1 |   |    |    |            |    |    |    | 2           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 3         |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|---------|-------|---------------------|---|---|---|---------------|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|------------|----|----|----|-------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Octet   | Bit   | 0                   | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4             | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12         | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16          | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24        | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| 0       | 0     | Version             |   |   |   | Traffic Class |   |   |   |   |   |    |    | Flow Label |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 4       | 32    | Payload Length      |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    | Next Header |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | Hop Limit |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 8       | 64    | Source Address      |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 12      | 96    |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 16      | 128   |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 20      | 160   |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 24      | 192   | Destination Address |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 28      | 224   |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 32      | 256   |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 36      | 288   |                     |   |   |   |               |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |            |    |    |    |             |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |           |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

### Version (4 bits)

The constant 6 (bit sequence 0110).

### Traffic Class (6+2 bits)

The bits of this field hold two values. The six most-significant bits hold the Differentiated Services (DS) field, which is used to classify packets. Currently, all standard DS fields end with a '0' bit. Any DS field that ends with two '1' bits is intended for local or experimental use.

The remaining two bits are used for Explicit Congestion Notification (ECN); priority values subdivide into ranges: traffic where the source provides congestion control and non-congestion control traffic.

### Flow Label (20 bits)

Originally created for giving real-time applications special service. When set to a non-zero value, it serves as a hint to routers and switches with multiple outbound paths that these packets should stay on the same path, so that they will not be reordered. It has further been suggested that the flow label be used to help detect spoofed packets.

### Payload Length (16 bits)

The size of the payload in octets, including any extension headers. The length is set to zero when a Hop-by-Hop extension header carries a Jumbo Payload option.

### Next Header (8 bits)

Specifies the type of the next header. This field usually specifies the transport layer protocol used by a packet's payload. When extension headers are present in the packet, this field indicates which extension header follows. The values are shared with those used for the IPv4 protocol field, as both fields have the same function.

### Hop Limit (8 bits)

Replaces the time to live field of IPv4. This value is decremented by one at each forwarding node and packet discarded if it becomes 0. However destination node should process the packet normally even if hop limit becomes 0.

### Source Address (128 bits)

The IPv6 address of the sending node.

**Destination Address (128 bits)**

The IPv6 address of the destination node(s).

**Transmission Control Protocol**

| TCP Header |         |                                                                                  |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
|------------|---------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---|-------------------|---|---|--------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|---|---|---|-----------------------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Offsets    | Octet   | 0                                                                                |   |                   |   |   |        | 1           |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   | 2 |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 3 |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| Octet      | Bit     | 0                                                                                | 1 | 2                 | 3 | 4 | 5      | 6           | 7           | 8           | 9           | 0           | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1                           | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 2 | 3 | 3 |
| 0          | 0       | Source port                                                                      |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   | Destination port            |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 4          | 32      | Sequence number                                                                  |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 8          | 64      | Acknowledgment number (if ACK set)                                               |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 12         | 96      | Data offset                                                                      |   | Reserved<br>0 0 0 |   |   | N<br>S | C<br>W<br>R | E<br>C<br>E | U<br>R<br>G | A<br>C<br>K | P<br>C<br>H | R<br>S<br>S | S<br>Y<br>N | F<br>I<br>N | Window Size |   |   |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 16         | 128     | Checksum                                                                         |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   | Urgent pointer (if URG set) |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |
| 20 ...     | 160 ... | Options (if data offset > 5. Padded at the end with "0" bytes if necessary.) ... |   |                   |   |   |        |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |             |   |   |   |                             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |

**Source Port (16 bits)**

Identifies the sending port.

**Destination Port (16 bits)**

Identifies the receiving port.

**Sequence Number (32 bits)**

Has a dual role:

- If the SYN flag is set (1), then this is the initial sequence number. The sequence number of the actual first data byte and the acknowledged number in the corresponding ACK are then this sequence number plus 1.
- If the SYN flag is clear (0), then this is the accumulated sequence number of the first data byte of this segment for the current session.

**Acknowledgment Number (32 bits)**

If the ACK flag is set then the value of this field is the next sequence number that the sender of the ACK is expecting. This acknowledges receipt of all prior bytes (if any). The first ACK sent by each end acknowledges the other end's initial sequence number itself, but no data.

**Data Offset (4 bits)**

Specifies the size of the TCP header in 32-bit words. The minimum size header is 5 words and the maximum is 15 words thus giving the minimum size of 20 bytes and maximum of 60 bytes, allowing for up to 40 bytes of options in the header. This field gets its name from the fact that it is also the offset from the start of the TCP segment to the actual data.

### **Reserved (3 bits)**

For future use and should be set to zero.

### **Flags (9 bits) (aka Control bits)**

Contains 9 1-bit flags

- NS (1 bit): ECN-nonce - concealment protection (experimental).
- CWR (1 bit): Congestion Window Reduced (CWR) flag is set by the sending host to indicate that it received a TCP segment with the ECE flag set and had responded in congestion control mechanism.
- ECE (1 bit): ECN-Echo has a dual role, depending on the value of the SYN flag. It indicates:
  - If the SYN flag is set (1), that the TCP peer is ECN capable.
  - If the SYN flag is clear (0), that a packet with Congestion Experienced flag set (ECN=11) in the IP header was received during normal transmission. This serves as an indication of network congestion (or impending congestion) to the TCP sender.
- URG (1 bit): indicates that the Urgent pointer field is significant
- ACK (1 bit): indicates that the Acknowledgment field is significant. All packets after the initial SYN packet sent by the client should have this flag set.
- PSH (1 bit): Push function. Asks to push the buffered data to the receiving application.
- RST (1 bit): Reset the connection
- SYN (1 bit): Synchronize sequence numbers. Only the first packet sent from each end should have this flag set. Some other flags and fields change meaning based on this flag, and some are only valid when it is set, and others when it is clear.
- FIN (1 bit): Last packet from sender.

### **Window Size (16 bits)**

The size of the receive window, which specifies the number of window size units (by default, bytes) (beyond the segment identified by the sequence number in the acknowledgment field) that the sender of this segment is currently willing to receive.

### **Checksum (16 bits)**

The 16-bit checksum field is used for error-checking of the header, the Payload and a Pseudo-Header. The Pseudo-Header consists of the Source IP Address, the Destination IP Address, the protocol number for the TCP-Protocol (0x0006) and the length of the TCP-Headers including Payload (in Bytes).

### **Urgent Pointer (16 bits)**

If the URG flag is set, then this 16-bit field is an offset from the sequence number indicating the last urgent data byte.

### **Options (Variable 0–320 bits, divisible by 32)**

The length of this field is determined by the data offset field. Options have up to three fields: Option-Kind (1 byte), Option-Length (1 byte), Option-Data (variable). The Option-Kind field indicates the type of option, and is the only field that is not optional. Depending on what kind of option we are dealing with, the next two fields may be set: the Option-Length field indicates the total length of the option, and the Option-Data field contains the value of the option, if applicable. For example, an Option-Kind byte of 0x01 indicates that this is a No-Op option used only for padding, and does not have an Option-Length or Option-Data byte following it. An Option-Kind byte of 0 is the End Of Options option, and is also only one byte. An Option-Kind byte of 0x02 indicates that this is the Maximum Segment Size option, and will be followed by a byte specifying the length of the MSS field (should be 0x04). This length is the total length of the given options field, including Option-Kind and Option-Length bytes. So while the MSS value is typically expressed in two bytes, the length of the field will be 4 bytes (+2 bytes of kind and length). In short, an MSS option field with a value of 0x05B4 will show up as (0x02 0x04 0x05B4) in the TCP options section.

Some options may only be sent when SYN is set; they are indicated below as. Option-Kind and standard lengths given as (Option-Kind, Option-Length).

- 0 (8 bits): End of options list
- 1 (8 bits): No operation (NOP, Padding) This may be used to align option fields on 32-bit boundaries for better performance.
- 2,4,SS (32 bits): Maximum segment size
- 3,3,S (24 bits): Window scale
- 4,2 (16 bits): Selective Acknowledgement permitted.
- 5,N,BBBB,EEEE,... (variable bits, N is either 10, 18, 26, or 34)- Selective ACKnowledgement (SACK) These first two bytes are followed by a list of 1–4 blocks being selectively acknowledged, specified as 32-bit begin/end pointers.
- 8,10,TTTT,EEEE (80 bits)- Timestamp and echo of previous timestamp
- The remaining options are historical, obsolete, experimental, not yet standardized, or unassigned. Option number assignments are maintained by the IANA.

### **Padding**

The TCP header padding is used to ensure that the TCP header ends, and data begins, on a 32 bit boundary. The padding is composed of zeros.

### **User Datagram Protocol**

| UDP Header |       |             |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |                  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|------------|-------|-------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|------------------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Offsets    | Octet | 0           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 1 |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | 2                |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 3  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Octet      | Bit   | 0           | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16               | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| 0          | 0     | Source port |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | Destination port |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 4          | 32    | Length      |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | Checksum         |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

The UDP header consists of four fields, each of which is 2 bytes (16 bits). The use of the checksum and source port fields is optional in IPv4 (gray background in table). In IPv6 only the source port field is optional.

### **Source Port Number**

This field identifies the sender's port, when used. If not used, it should be zero.

### **Destination Port Number**

This field identifies the receiver's port and is required.

### **Length**

This field that specifies the length in bytes of the UDP header and UDP data. The minimum length is 8 bytes, the length of the header. The field size sets a theoretical limit of 65,535 bytes (8 byte header + 65,527 bytes of data) for a UDP datagram. However, the actual limit for the data length, which is imposed by the underlying IPv4 protocol, is 65,507 bytes (65,535 – 8 byte UDP header – 20 byte IP header).

Using IPv6 jumbograms, it is possible to have UDP packets of size greater than 65,535 bytes. RFC 2675 specifies that the length field is set to zero if the length of the UDP header plus UDP data is greater than 65,535.

## Checksum

The checksum field may be used for error-checking of the header and data. This field is optional in IPv4 and mandatory in IPv6. The field carries all-zeros if unused.

## Internet Control Message Protocol

The Internet Control Message Protocol (ICMP) is a supporting protocol in the Internet protocol suite and is used for Internet Protocol version 4 (IPv4). It is used by network devices, including routers, to send error messages and operational information indicating, for example, that a requested service is not available or that a host or router could not be reached. Internet Control Message Protocol version 6 (ICMPv6) is the implementation of ICMP for Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6).

| ICMP and ICMPv6 Header Format |       |                |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |      |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |          |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|-------------------------------|-------|----------------|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|------|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|----------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| Offsets                       | Octet | 0              |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | 1    |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | 2        |    |    |    |    |    |    |    | 3  |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| Octet                         | Bit   | 0              | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8    | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 | 13 | 14 | 15 | 16       | 17 | 18 | 19 | 20 | 21 | 22 | 23 | 24 | 25 | 26 | 27 | 28 | 29 | 30 | 31 |
| 0                             | 0     | Type           |   |   |   |   |   |   |   | Code |   |    |    |    |    |    |    | Checksum |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
| 4                             | 32    | Rest of Header |   |   |   |   |   |   |   |      |   |    |    |    |    |    |    |          |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |

## Partial List of ICMP Type and Code Values (IPv4)

| ICMP Type                   | ICMP Code                                     |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| 0 = Echo Reply              | 0                                             |
| 3 = Destination Unreachable | 0 = net unreachable                           |
|                             | 1 = host unreachable                          |
|                             | 2 = protocol unreachable                      |
|                             | 4 = fragmentation needed and DF set           |
|                             | 5 = source route failed                       |
| 5 = Redirect Message        | 0 = Redirect Datagram for the Network         |
|                             | 1 = Redirect Datagram for the Host            |
|                             | 2 = Redirect Datagram for the ToS and network |
|                             | 3 = Redirect Datagram for the ToS and host    |
| 8 = Echo Request            | 0                                             |
| 9 = Router Advertisement    | 0                                             |
| 10 = Router Solicitation    | 0                                             |
| 11 = Time Exceeded          | 0 = TTL expired in transit                    |
|                             | 1 = Fragment reassembly time exceeded         |

## Partial List of ICMPv6 Type and Code Values

| ICMPv6 Type                                            | ICMPv6 Code                                                                                                   |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 = Destination Unreachable                            | 0 = no router to destination                                                                                  |
|                                                        | 1 = communication with destination administratively prohibited                                                |
|                                                        | 2 = Beyond scope of source address                                                                            |
|                                                        | 3 = address unreachable                                                                                       |
|                                                        | 4 = port unreachable                                                                                          |
|                                                        | 5 = source address failed ingress/egress policy                                                               |
|                                                        | 6 = reject route to destination                                                                               |
|                                                        | 7 = Error in Source Routing Header                                                                            |
| 2 = Packet Too Big                                     | 0                                                                                                             |
| 3 = Time exceeded                                      | 0 = hop limit exceeded in transit                                                                             |
|                                                        | 1 = fragment reassembly time exceeded                                                                         |
| 4 = Parameter problem                                  | 0 = erroneous header field encountered                                                                        |
|                                                        | 1 = unrecognized Next Header type encountered                                                                 |
|                                                        | 2 = unrecognized IPv6 option encountered                                                                      |
| 128 = Echo Request                                     | 0                                                                                                             |
| 129 = Echo Reply                                       | 0                                                                                                             |
| 130 = Multicast Listener Query                         | 0                                                                                                             |
| 131 = Multicast listener Done                          | 0                                                                                                             |
| 133 = Router Solicitation                              | 0                                                                                                             |
| 134 = Router Advertisement                             | 0                                                                                                             |
| 135 = Neighbor Solicitation                            | 0                                                                                                             |
| 136 = Neighbor Advertisement                           | 0                                                                                                             |
| 137 = Redirect Message                                 | 0                                                                                                             |
| 138 = Router Renumbering                               | 0 = Router Renumbering Command                                                                                |
|                                                        | 1 = Router Renumbering Result                                                                                 |
|                                                        | 255 = Sequence Number Reset                                                                                   |
| 139 = ICMP Node Information Query                      | 0 = The Data field contains an IPv6 address which is the Subject of this Query                                |
|                                                        | 1 = The Data field contains a name which is the Subject of this Query, or is empty, as in the case of a NOOP. |
|                                                        | 2 = The Data field contains an IPv4 address which is the Subject of this Query                                |
| 140 = ICMP Node Information Response                   | 0 = A successful reply. The Reply Data field may or may not be empty.                                         |
|                                                        | 1 = The Responder refuses to supply the answer. The Reply Data field will be empty.                           |
|                                                        | 2 = The Qtype of the Query is unknown to the Responder. The Reply Data field will be empty.                   |
| 141 = Inverse Neighbor Discovery Solicitation Message  | 0                                                                                                             |
| 142 = Inverse Neighbor Discovery Advertisement Message | 0                                                                                                             |
| 143 = Multicast Listener Discovery (MLDv2) reports     | 0                                                                                                             |
| 144 = Home Agent Address Discovery Request Message     | 0                                                                                                             |
| 145 = Home Agent Address Discovery Reply Message       | 0                                                                                                             |
| 146 = Mobile Prefix Solicitation                       | 0                                                                                                             |
| 147 = Mobile Prefix Advertisement                      | 0                                                                                                             |
| 148 = Certification Path Solicitation                  | 0                                                                                                             |
| 149 = Certification Path Advertisement                 | 0                                                                                                             |
| 151 = Multicast Router Advertisement                   | 0                                                                                                             |
| 152 = Multicast Router Solicitation                    | 0                                                                                                             |
| 153 = Multicast Router Termination                     | 0                                                                                                             |
| 155 = RPL Control Message                              | 0                                                                                                             |

## Local Area Network (LAN)

There are different methods for assigning IP addresses for devices entering a network.

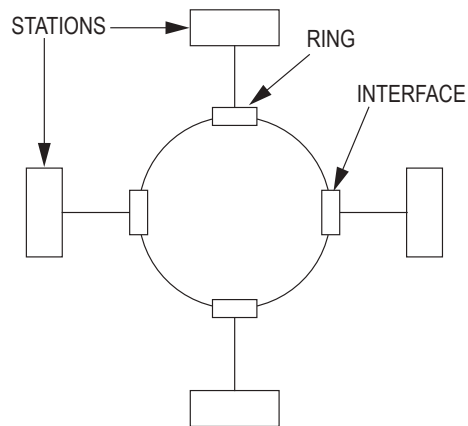
- Dynamic host configuration protocol (DHCP) is a networking protocol that allows a router to assign the IP address and other configuration information for all stations joining a network.
- Static IP addressing implies each station joining a network is manually configured with its own IP address.
- Stateless address autoconfiguration (SLAAC) allows for hosts to automatically configure themselves when connecting to an IPv6 network.

## Network Topologies

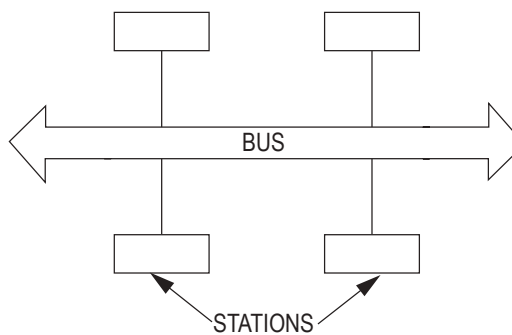
### Point-to-Point



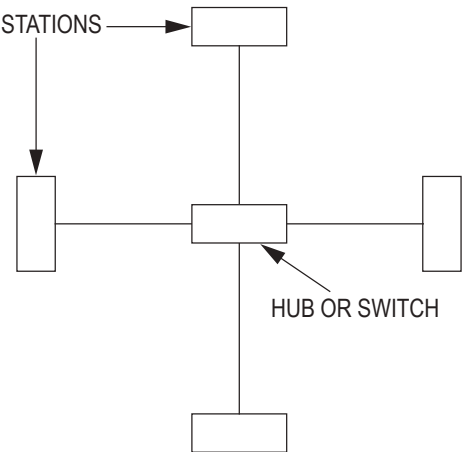
### Token Ring



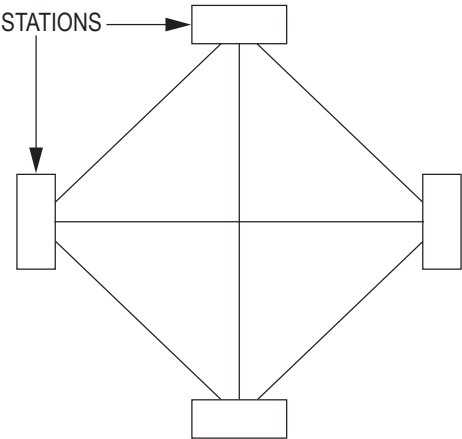
### Bus



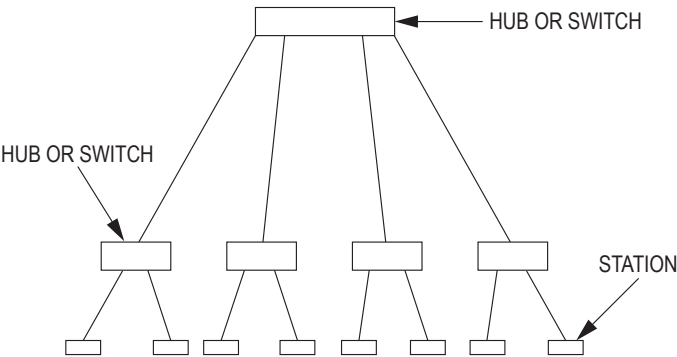
Star



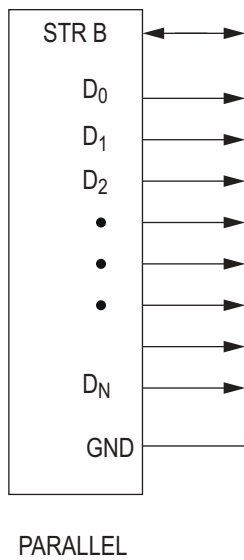
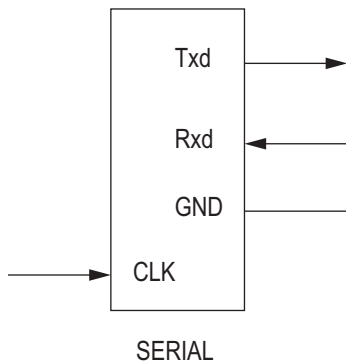
Mesh



Tree



## Communication Methodologies



### Serial

A communications channel where data is sent sequentially one bit at a time. RS-232 and RS-485 are common interfaces of this type.

### Parallel

A communications channel where data is sent several bits as a whole. IEEE 1284 is a common interface.

### Simplex

A single channel where communications is one direction only.

### Half-Duplex

Provides communications in two directions but only one at a time

### Full Duplex (Duplex)

Allows communications in both directions simultaneously

## Computer Systems

### Memory/Storage Types

*RAM* – Primary memory system in computing systems, volatile

*Cache* – faster, but smaller segment of memory used for buffering immediate data from slower memories

- L1: Level 1 cache, fastest memory available
- L2: Level 2 cache, next level away from CPU. May or may not be exclusive of L1 depending on architecture

*ROM* – nonvolatile. Contains system instructions or constant data for the system

*Replacement Policy* – For set associative and fully associative caches, if there is a miss and the set or cache (respectively) is full, then a block must be selected for replacement. The replacement policy determines which block is replaced. Common replacement policies are:

- Least recently used (LRU): Replace the least recently used block.
- Most recently used (MRU): Replace the most recently used block.
- First-in, first-out (FIFO): Also referred to as first come, first serve (FCFS) queue. Data is processed in the order it entered the buffer.
- Last-in, first-out (LIFO): Also referred to as a stack. Youngest (last) item is processed first.
- Random: Choose a block at random for replacement.
- Least frequently used (LFU): Replace the block that had the fewest references among the candidate blocks.

*Write Policy* – With caches, multiple copies of a memory block may exist in the system (e.g., a copy in the cache and a copy in main memory). There are two possible write policies.

- Write-through: Write to both the cache's copy and the main memory's copy.
- Write-back: Write only to the cache's copy. This requires adding a "dirty bit" for each block in the cache. When a block in the cache is written to, its dirty bit is set to indicate that the main memory's copy is stale. When a dirty block is evicted from the cache (due to a replacement), the entire block must be written back to main memory. Clean blocks need not be written back when they are evicted.

*Cache Size* –  $C \text{ (bytes)} = S * A * B$

where

$S$  = Number of sets

$A$  = Set associativity

$B$  = Block size (bytes)

To search for the requested block in the cache, the CPU will generally divide the address into three fields: the tag, index, and block offset.

| TAG | INDEX | BLOCK OFFSET |
|-----|-------|--------------|
|-----|-------|--------------|

- *Tag* – These are the most significant bits of the address, which are checked against the current row (the row that has been retrieved by index) to see if it is the one needed or another, irrelevant memory location that happened to have the same index bits as the one wanted.

$\# \text{ tag bits} = \# \text{ address bits} - \# \text{ index bits} - \# \text{ block offset bits}$

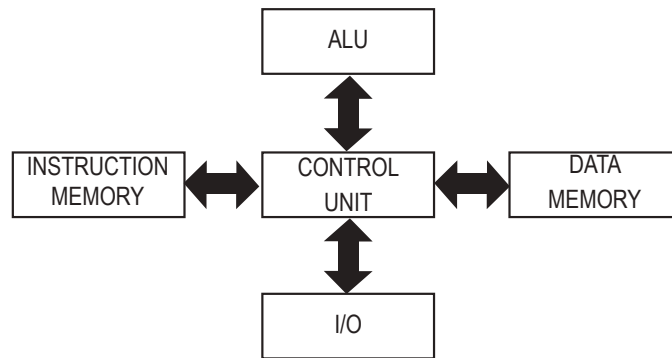
- *Index* – These bits specify which cache row (set) that the data has been put in.

$\# \text{ index bits} = \log_2(\# \text{ sets}) = \log_2(S)$

- *Block Offset* – These are the lower bits of the address that select a byte within the block.

$\# \text{ block offset bits} = \log_2(\text{block size}) = \log_2(B)$

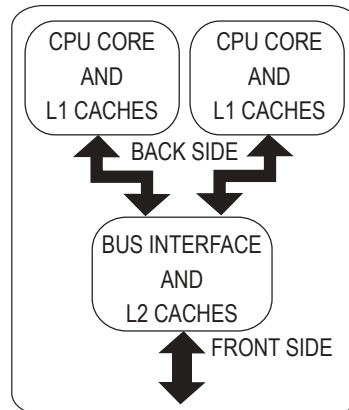
## Microprocessor Architecture – Harvard



## Multicore

A multicore processor is a single computing component with two or more independent actual processing units (called *cores*), which are the units that read and execute program instructions. The instructions are ordinary CPU instructions such as Add, Move Data, and Branch, but the multiple cores can run multiple instructions at the same time, increasing overall speed for programs amenable to parallel computing.

A multicore processor implements multiprocessing in a single physical package. Designers may couple cores in a multicore device tightly or loosely. For example, cores may or may not share caches, and they may implement message passing or shared memory intercore communication methods. Common network topologies to interconnect cores include bus, ring, two-dimensional mesh, and crossbar. Homogeneous multicore systems include only identical cores; heterogeneous multicore systems have cores that are not identical. Just as with single-processor systems, cores in multicore systems may implement architectures such as superscalar, VLIW, vector processing, SIMD, or multithreading.



Generic dual-core processor, with CPU-local level 1 caches, and a shared, on-die level 2 cache

## Threading

In computer science, a thread of execution is the smallest sequence of programmed instructions that can be managed independently by a scheduler, which is typically a part of the operating system. The implementation of threads and processes differs between operating systems, but in most cases a thread is a component of a process. Multiple threads can exist within the same process and share resources such as memory, while different processes do not share these resources. In particular, the threads of a process share its instructions (executable code) and its context (the values of its variables at any given moment).

On a single processor, multithreading is generally implemented by time-division multiplexing (as in multitasking), and the CPU switches between different software threads. This context switching generally happens frequently enough that the user perceives the threads or tasks as running at the same time. On a multiprocessor or multicore system, threads can be executed in a true concurrent manner, with every processor or core executing a separate thread simultaneously. To implement multiprocessing, the operating system may use hardware threads that exist as a hardware-supported method for better utilization of a particular CPU. These are different from the software threads that are a pure software construct with no CPU-level representation.

## Abbreviation

|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| CISC | Complex instruction set computing |
| CPU  | Central processing unit           |
| FIFO | First-in, first-out               |
| LIFO | Last-in, first-out                |
| I/O  | Input/output                      |
| LFU  | Least frequently used             |
| LRU  | Least recently used               |
| MRU  | Most recently used                |
| RISC | Reduced instruction set computing |
| RAM  | Random access memory              |
| ROM  | Read only memory                  |

## Software Engineering

### Endianness

*MSB* – most significant bit first. Also known as Big-endian.

*LSB* – least significant bit first. Also known as Little-endian.

### Pointers

A pointer is a reference to an object. The literal value of a pointer is the object's location in memory. Extracting the object referenced by a pointer is defined as dereferencing.

### Algorithms

An algorithm is a specific sequence of steps that describe a process.

Sorting Algorithm – an algorithm that transforms a random collection of elements into a sorted collection of elements.

Examples include:

Bubble Sort: continuously steps through a list, swapping items until they appear in the correct order.

Insertion Sort: takes elements from a list one by one and inserts them in their correct position into a new sorted list.

Merge Sort: divides the list into the smallest unit (e.g., 1 element), then compares each element with the adjacent list to sort and merge the two adjacent lists. This process continues with larger lists until at last, two lists are merged into the final sorted list.

Heap Sort: divides a list into sorted and an unsorted lists and extracts the largest element from the unsorted list and moves it to the bottom of the sorted list.

Quick Sort: partitions list using a pivot value, placing elements smaller than the pivot before the pivot value and greater elements after it. The lesser and greater sublists are then recursively sorted.

Searching Algorithm – an algorithm that determines if an element exists in a collection of elements. If the element does exist, its location is also returned. Examples include:

Binary search: finds a search value within a sorted list by comparing the search value to the middle element of the array. If they are not equal, the half in which the target cannot lie is eliminated and the search continues on the remaining half, again taking the middle element to compare to the target value, and repeating this until the target value is found.

Hashing: uses a hashing function that maps data of arbitrary size (e.g., a string of characters) to data of a fixed size (e.g., an integer) and then to compute an index that suggests where the entry can be found in a hash table (an array of buckets or slots, from which the desired value can be found through the index).

## Data Structures

Collection – a grouping of elements that are stored and accessed using algorithms. Examples include:

Array: collection of elements, typically of the same type, where each individual element can be accessed using an integer index.

Linked list: collection of nodes, where each node contains an element and a pointer to the next node in the linked list (and sometimes back to the previous node).

Stack: collection of elements that are kept in order and can only be accessed at one end of the set (e.g., last in, first out (LIFO))

Queue: collection of elements that are kept in order and can be accessed at both ends of the set where one is used to insert elements and the other end is used to remove elements.

Map: collection of key, value pairs, such that each possible key appears at most once in the collection. Also known as an associative array.

Set: collection of elements, without any particular order, that can be queried (static sets) and/or modified by inserting or deleting elements (dynamic set).

Graph: collection of nodes and a set of edges that connect a pair of nodes.

Tree: collection of nodes and a set of edges that connect the nodes hierarchically. One node is distinguished as a root and every other node is connected by a directed edge from exactly one other node in a parent to child relationship. A binary tree is a specialized case where each parent node can have no more than two children nodes.

## Graph Traversal

There are primarily two algorithms used to parse through each node in a graph.

Breadth First Search – Beginning at a given node, the algorithm visits all connected nodes that have not been visited. The algorithm repeats for each visited node. The output of the algorithm is a list of nodes in the order that they have been visited. A queue data structure can be used to facilitate this algorithm.

Depth First Search – Beginning at a given node, the algorithm visits one connected node that has not been visited. This is repeated until a node does not have any connected nodes that have not been visited. At this point the algorithm backtracks to the last visited node and repeats the algorithm. The output of the algorithm is a list of nodes in the order that they have been visited. A stack can be used to facilitate this algorithm.

## Tree Traversal

There are three primary algorithms that are used to traverse a binary tree data structure.

In-Order Traversal

1. Traverse the left sub-tree.
2. Visit the root node.
3. Traverse the right sub-tree.

Preorder Traversal

1. Visit the root node.
2. Traverse the left sub-tree.
3. Traverse the right sub-tree.

Postorder Traversal

1. Traverse the left sub-tree.
2. Traverse the right sub-tree.
3. Visit the root node.

## Algorithm Efficiency (Big-O)

The concept of Big O Notation is used in software engineering to determine the efficiency of an algorithm. Big O equations are written as:

$$O(n) = f(n)$$

When comparing the efficiency of two algorithms, compare two  $O(n)$  values as  $n$  approaches infinity.

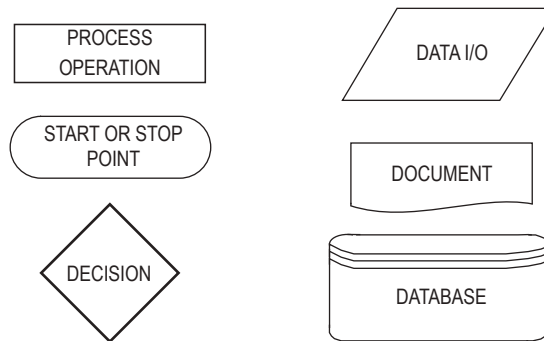
| ALGORITHM              | AVERAGE        | WORST          |
|------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| Quick Sort             | $O(n \log(n))$ | $O(n^2)$       |
| Merge Sort             | $O(n \log(n))$ | $O(n \log(n))$ |
| Heap Sort              | $O(n \log(n))$ | $O(n \log(n))$ |
| Bubble Sort            | $O(n^2)$       | $O(n^2)$       |
| Insertion Sort         | $O(n^2)$       | $O(n^2)$       |
| Hash Table             | $O(1)$         | $O(n)$         |
| Binary Search Tree     | $O(\log(n))$   | $O(n)$         |
| Fast Fourier Transform | $O(n \log(n))$ | $O(n \log(n))$ |

## Software Syntax Guidelines

- Code is pseudocode, no specific language
- No end-of-line punctuation (e.g., semicolon) is used
- Comments are indicated with "--" double hyphen
- Loop structures end with "end" followed by structure name, e.g., "end while"
- "do-while" begins with "do" and ends with "while"—no "end" per se
- "if-then" statements have both "if" and "then"
- "else if" is a substitute for the "end" on the preceding "if"
- "=" is used to designate assignment. "==" refers to comparison in a conditional statement.
- Not equals is represented by <>
- Logical "and" and "or" are spelled out as "and" and "or"
- Variable and argument declarations are Pascal style—"name: type"
- Numeric data types are "integer" and "float"
- Text is a procedural variable, unless specified to be an object of type String
- Variables can be constant, and are declared with the "const" modifier
- Variables whose type is object and the exact specification of that object is not critical to the problem must have the data type obj
- Array indices are designated with square brackets [], not parentheses
- Unless otherwise specified, arrays begin at 1 (one)
- Compilation units are "procedure" and "function". "Module" is not a compilation unit
- Function parameters are designated with parentheses ()
- Unless specified, procedures and functions must have the return type "void"
- Arguments in a function/procedure call are separated by semicolons
- Class definitions start with "cls" (e.g., clsClassName)
- Classes, properties, and procedures are by default public and may be optionally modified by "private" or "protected"
- To instantiate an object, the follow syntax must be used: new clsName objName

- For input, read ("filename.ext", <variable list>)—if reading from console, do not use the first argument
- For output, write ("filename.ext", <expression list>)—if writing to console, do not use the first argument
- The Boolean data type is "boolean"; the return result of all comparison operators is a boolean type
- The operator "\*" in front of a variable is used to return the data at the address location within that variable
- The operator "&" in front of a variable is used to return the address of a given variable. The declaration of "pointer\_to" is used to define a variable of a pointer type

### Flow Chart Definition



### Software Testing

There are many approaches to software testing but they are typically split into static testing versus dynamic and black box versus white box testing.

**Static Testing:** techniques that do not execute the code but concentrate on checking the code, requirement documents and design documents. Examples: code reviews and walkthroughs and compiler syntax and structure checks.

**Dynamic Testing:** techniques that take place when the code is executed and is performed in the runtime environment. Examples: unit, integration, system, and acceptance testing.

**Black Box Testing:** examines functionality without knowledge of the internal code. Also known as functional testing, the approach oftentimes concentrates on checking performance against specifications and also avoids programmer bias.

**White Box Testing:** verifies the internal structures and workings of a code. The approach is a necessary part of software testing at the unit, integration and system levels, needed to uncover errors or problems, but does not detect unimplemented parts of the specification or missing requirements.

### Computer Network Security

Source for material in Computer Network Security: Barrett, Diane, Martin M. Weiss, and Kirk Hausman, *CompTIA Security+™ SYO-401 Exam Cram*, 4th ed., Pearson IT Certification, Pearson Education, Inc., 2015.

#### Firewalls

A network security system that monitors and controls incoming and outgoing network traffic based on predetermined security rules. A firewall typically establishes a barrier between a trusted internal network and untrusted external network, such as the Internet.

#### Nmap

Usage: nmap [Scan Type(s)] [Options] {target specification}

##### Target Specification

Can pass hostnames, IP addresses, networks, etc.

Ex: scanme.nmap.org, microsoft.com/24, 192.168.0.1; 10.0.0-255.1-254

##### Host Discovery

sL: List Scan - simply list targets to scan

sn: Ping Scan - disable port scan

PS/PA/PU/PY[portlist]: TCP SYN/ACK, UDP or SCTP discovery to given ports

PE/PP/PM: ICMP echo, timestamp, and netmask request discovery probes

PO[protocol list]: IP Protocol Ping

dns-servers: Specify custom DNS servers

system-dns: Use OS's DNS resolver

traceroute: Trace hop path to each host

### Scan Techniques

sS/sT/sA/sW/sM: TCP SYN/Connect()/ACK/Window/Maimon scans

sU: UDP Scan

sN/sF/sX: TCP Null, FIN, and Xmas scans

scanflags: Customize TCP scan flags

sO: IP protocol scan

b: FTP bounce scan

### Port Specification and Scan Order

p: Only scan specified ports

Ex: -p22; -p1-65535; -p U:53,111,137,T:21-25,80,139,8080,S:9

### Service/Version Detection

sV: Probe open ports to determine service/version info

### OS Detection

O: Enable OS detection

### Timing and Performance

Options which take <time> are in seconds, or append 'ms' (milliseconds),

's' (seconds), 'm' (minutes), or 'h' (hours) to the value (e.g., 30m).

max-retries: Caps number of port scan probe retransmissions.

host-timeout: Give up on target after this long

scan-delay/--max-scan-delay: Adjust delay between probes

min-rate: Send packets no slower than per second

max-rate: Send packets no faster than per second

### Firewall/IDS Evasion and Spoofing

S: Spoof source address

e: Use specified interface

g/--source-port: Use given port number

data-length: Append random data to sent packets

### Output

-oN/-oX/-oS/-oG: Output scan in normal, XML, s|: Output in the three major formats at once

open: Only show open (or possibly open) ports

packet-trace: Show all packets sent and received

### Misc.

6: Enable IPv6 scanning

A: Enable OS detection, version detection, script scanning, and traceroute

V: Print version number

h: Print this help summary page.

### Examples

```
nmap -v -A scanme.nmap.org
```

```
nmap -v -sn 192.168.0.0/16 10.0.0.0/8
```

```
nmap -v -iR 10000 -Pn -p 80
```

### Port Scanning

Generally either TCP or UDP ports are scanned. Types of TCP scans include SYN, TCP Connect, NULL, FIN, XMAS

#### Common TCP Ports

| <u>Protocol</u> | <u>Port Number</u> |
|-----------------|--------------------|
| FTP             | 20, 21             |
| Telnet          | 23                 |
| HTTP            | 80                 |
| HTTPS           | 443                |
| POP3            | 110                |
| SMTP            | 25                 |
| TLS             | 587                |

### Web Vulnerability Testing

OWASP – Open Web Application Security Project. Online community that provides many open source resources for web application security

Cross Site Scripting(XSS) – script injection attack, using a web application to send an attack to another user

Cross Site Request Forgery(CRSF) – an attack that forces user to perform unwanted actions with current authorizations. Usually coupled with a social engineering attack.

SQL Injection(SQLi) – injection attack, by inserting SQL query via input data from the client to the application for execution. The statements usually insert, select, delete or update stored data in the SQL database.

Endpoint Detection – collection and storage of endpoint data activity to help network administrators analyze, investigate and prevent cyber threats on a network.

WEP – Wired Equivalent Privacy – Uses 40 bit(10 hex digits) or 104(26 hex digits) bit key

WPA– Wifi Protected Access – Replacement for WPA, added TKIP and MIC

WPA2 – Replaced WPA and implements all mandatory elements of 802.11i, particularly mandatory support for CCMP(AES encryption mode)

WPA3 – Replaces WPA2. Replaces PSK with Simultaneous Exchange of Equals

### Penetration Testing—Authorized Vulnerability Testing

#### Phases

1. Reconnaissance
2. Scanning
3. Gaining Access
4. Maintaining Access
5. Covering Tracks

### **Methods**

External testing—Only systems and assets that are visible on the internet, such as the web application itself, are targeted. The goal of the testing is to gain access to the application and its data.

Internal testing—The pen tester has access to the application behind the firewall.

Blind testing—The pen tester is given the name of the company, but nothing else. This simulates an actual application attack in real-time.

Double-blind testing—This is similar to a blind test, but the security team is not made aware of the simulation.

Targeted testing—The penetration tester and security team work together, informing each other of steps taken to attack the application and to defend against the attack. (Red Team vs Blue Team)

### **Security Triad**

AIC—Availability, Integrity, Confidentiality (also referred to as CIA Triad)

Availability—guarantee of reliable access to information by authorized entities

Integrity—assurance information is trustworthy and accurate

Confidentiality—set of rules that limits access to information

### **Authentication**

Three factors for authentication

Something you know (password, PIN, etc)

Something you have (token, smart card, etc)

Something you are (biometrics, etc)

AAA protocols (Authentication, Authorization, Accounting)

TACACS, XTACACS, TACACS+—Terminal Access Controller Access Control System

RADIUS—Remote Authentication Dial In User Service

DIAMETER—Enhancement for RADIUS.

PPP protocols

PAP—Password Authentication Protocol

CHAP—Challenge Handshake Authentication Protocol

EAP—Extensible Authentication Protocol

Other protocols

Kerberos—authentication system using a Key Distribution Center

## Key Equations

### McCabe's Cyclomatic Complexity

$$c = e - n + 2$$

where for a single program graph,  $n$  is the number of nodes,  $e$  is the number of edges, and  $c$  is the cyclomatic complexity.

### The RSA Public-Key Cryptosystem

$$n = p \times q$$

where  $p$  and  $q$  are both primes.

$$e \times d = 1 \pmod{t}$$

where

$$t = \text{least common multiple } (p - 1, q - 1)$$

$$\text{mod } t = \text{modulo function (remainder of the division)}$$

- The encrypted cyphertext  $c$  of a message  $m$  is  $c = m^e \pmod{n}$
- The decrypted message is  $m = c^d \pmod{n}$
- The signature  $s$  of a message  $m$  is  $s = m^d \pmod{n}$

### Diffie-Hellman Key-Exchange Protocol

A sender and receiver separately select private keys  $x$  and  $y$ . Generator value  $g$  and prime number  $p$  is shared between the two. Their shared secret key  $k$  is:

$$k = (g^x)^y \pmod{p} = (g^y)^x \pmod{p}$$

# Industrial and Systems Engineering

## Linear Programming

The general linear programming (LP) problem is:

$$\text{Maximize } Z = c_1x_1 + c_2x_2 + \dots + c_nx_n$$

Subject to:

$$a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n \leq b_1$$

$$a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2n}x_n \leq b_2$$

$\vdots$

$$a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n \leq b_m$$

$$x_1, \dots, x_n \geq 0$$

An LP problem is frequently reformulated by inserting non-negative slack and surplus variables. Although these variables usually have zero costs (depending on the application), they can have non-zero cost coefficients in the objective function. A slack variable is used with a "less than" inequality and transforms it into an equality. For example, the inequality  $5x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 \leq 5$  could be changed to  $5x_1 + 3x_2 + 2x_3 + s_1 = 5$  if  $s_1$  were chosen as a slack variable. The inequality  $3x_1 + x_2 - 4x_3 \geq 10$  might be transformed into  $3x_1 + x_2 - 4x_3 - s_2 = 10$  by the addition of the surplus variable  $s_2$ . Computer printouts of the results of processing an LP usually include values for all slack and surplus variables, the dual prices, and the reduced costs for each variable.

## Dual Linear Program

Associated with the above linear programming problem is another problem called the *dual linear programming problem*. If we take the previous problem and call it the primal problem, then in matrix form the primal and dual problems are respectively:

| Primal                                             | Dual                                               |
|----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| Maximize $Z = \mathbf{c}\mathbf{x}$                | Minimize $W = \mathbf{y}\mathbf{b}$                |
| Subject to: $\mathbf{A}\mathbf{x} \leq \mathbf{b}$ | Subject to: $\mathbf{y}\mathbf{A} \geq \mathbf{c}$ |
| $\mathbf{x} \geq 0$                                | $\mathbf{y} \geq 0$                                |

It is assumed that if  $\mathbf{A}$  is a matrix of size  $[m \times n]$ , then  $\mathbf{y}$  is a  $[1 \times m]$  vector,  $\mathbf{c}$  is a  $[1 \times n]$  vector,  $\mathbf{b}$  is an  $[m \times 1]$  vector, and  $\mathbf{x}$  is an  $[n \times 1]$  vector.

## Network Optimization

Assume we have a graph  $G(N, A)$  with a finite set of nodes  $N$  and a finite set of arcs  $A$ . Furthermore, let

$$N = \{1, 2, \dots, n\}$$

$$x_{ij} = \text{flow from node } i \text{ to node } j$$

$$c_{ij} = \text{cost per unit flow from } i \text{ to } j$$

$$u_{ij} = \text{capacity of arc } (i, j)$$

$$b_i = \text{net flow generated at node } i$$

We wish to minimize the total cost of sending the available supply through the network to satisfy the given demand. The minimal cost flow model is formulated as follows:

$$\text{Minimize } Z = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij}x_{ij}$$

subject to

$$\sum_{j=1}^n x_{ij} - \sum_{j=1}^n x_{ji} = b_i \text{ for each node } i \in N$$

and

$$0 \leq x_{ij} \leq u_{ij} \text{ for each arc } (i, j) \in A$$

The constraints on the nodes represent a conservation of flow relationship. The first summation represents total flow out of node  $i$ , and the second summation represents total flow into node  $i$ . The net difference generated at node  $i$  is equal to  $b_i$ .

Many models, such as shortest-path, maximal-flow, assignment and transportation models, can be reformulated as minimal-cost network flow models.

## Process Capability

### Actual Capability

$$PCR_k = C_{pk} = \min\left(\frac{\mu - LSL}{3\sigma}, \frac{USL - \mu}{3\sigma}\right)$$

### Potential Capability (i.e., Centered Process)

$$PCR = C_p = \frac{USL - LSL}{6\sigma}$$

where

$\mu$  and  $\sigma$  are the process mean and standard deviation, respectively, and  $LSL$  and  $USL$  are the lower and upper specification limits, respectively.

## Queueing Models

### Definitions

- $P_n$  = probability of  $n$  units in system
- $L$  = expected number of units in the system
- $L_q$  = expected number of units in the queue
- $W$  = expected waiting time in system
- $W_q$  = expected waiting time in queue
- $\lambda$  = mean arrival rate (constant)
- $\tilde{\lambda}$  = effective arrival rate
- $\mu$  = mean service rate (constant)
- $\rho$  = server utilization factor
- $s$  = number of servers

Kendall notation for describing a queueing system:

$$A / B / s / M$$

- $A$  = the arrival process
- $B$  = the service time distribution
- $s$  = the number of servers
- $M$  = the total number of customers including those in service

### Fundamental Relationships

- $L = \lambda W$
- $L_q = \lambda W_q$
- $W = W_q + 1/\mu$
- $\rho = \lambda/(s\mu)$

### Single Server Models ( $s = 1$ )

Poisson Input—Exponential Service Time:  $M = \infty$

$$P_0 = 1 - \lambda/\mu = 1 - \rho$$

$$P_n = (1 - \rho)\rho^n = P_0\rho^n$$

$$L = \rho/(1 - \rho) = \lambda/(\mu - \lambda)$$

$$L_q = \lambda^2/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]$$

$$W = 1/[\mu(1 - \rho)] = 1/(\mu - \lambda)$$

$$W_q = W - 1/\mu = \lambda/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]$$

Finite queue:  $M < \infty$

$$\tilde{\lambda} = \lambda(1 - P_M)$$

$$P_0 = (1 - \rho)/(1 - \rho^{M+1})$$

$$P_n = [(1 - \rho)/(1 - \rho^{M+1})]\rho^n$$

$$L = \rho/(1 - \rho) - (M + 1)\rho^{M+1}/(1 - \rho^{M+1})$$

$$L_q = L - (1 - P_0)$$

$$W = L/\tilde{\lambda}$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

Poisson Input—Arbitrary Service Time

Variance  $\sigma^2$  is known. For constant service time,  $\sigma^2 = 0$ .

$$P_0 = 1 - \rho$$

$$L_q = (\lambda^2\sigma^2 + \rho^2)/[2(1 - \rho)]$$

$$L = \rho + L_q$$

$$W_q = L_q / \lambda$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

Poisson Input—Erlang Service Times,  $\sigma^2 = 1/(k\mu^2)$

$$L_q = [(1 + k)/(2k)][(\lambda^2)/(\mu(\mu - \lambda))]$$

$$= [\lambda^2/(k\mu^2) + \rho^2]/[2(1 - \rho)]$$

$$W_q = [(1 + k)/(2k)]\{\lambda/[\mu(\mu - \lambda)]\}$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

## Multiple Server Model ( $s > 1$ )

Poisson Input—Exponential Service Times

Because calculations for  $P_0$  and  $L_q$  can be time consuming, the following table gives formulas for 1, 2, and 3 servers.

| $s$ | $P_0$                                     | $L_q$                                          |
|-----|-------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | $1 - \rho$                                | $\rho^2/(1 - \rho)$                            |
| 2   | $(1 - \rho)/(1 + \rho)$                   | $2\rho^3/(1 - \rho^2)$                         |
| 3   | $\frac{2(1 - \rho)}{2 + 4\rho + 3\rho^2}$ | $\frac{9\rho^4}{2 + 2\rho - \rho^2 - 3\rho^3}$ |

$$P_n = P_0(\lambda/\mu)^n/n! \quad 0 \leq n \leq s$$

$$P_n = P_0(\lambda/\mu)^n/(s!s^{n-s}) \quad n \geq s$$

$$W_q = L_q/\lambda$$

$$W = W_q + 1/\mu$$

$$L = L_q + \lambda/\mu$$

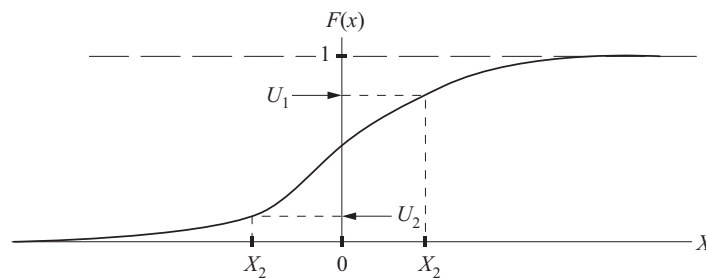
## Simulation

### 1. Random Variate Generation

The linear congruential method of generating pseudo-random numbers  $U_i$  between 0 and 1 is obtained using  $Z_n = (aZ_{n-1} + C) \pmod{m}$  where  $a$ ,  $C$ ,  $m$ , and  $Z_0$  are given nonnegative integers and where  $U_i = Z_i/m$ . Two integers are equal  $\pmod{m}$  if their remainders are the same when divided by  $m$ .

### 2. Inverse Transform Method

If  $X$  is a continuous random variable with cumulative distribution function  $F(x)$ , and  $U_i$  is a random number between 0 and 1, then the value of  $X_i$  corresponding to  $U_i$  can be calculated by solving  $U_i = F(x_i)$  for  $x_i$ . The solution obtained is  $x_i = F^{-1}(U_i)$ , where  $F^{-1}$  is the inverse function of  $F(x)$ .



Inverse Transform Method for Continuous Random Variables

## Forecasting

### Moving Average

$$\hat{d}_t = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n d_{t-i}}{n}$$

where

$\hat{d}_t$  = forecasted demand for period  $t$

$d_{t-i}$  = actual demand for  $i$ th period preceding  $t$

$n$  = number of time periods to include in the moving average

### Exponentially Weighted Moving Average

$$\hat{d}_t = \alpha d_{t-1} + (1 - \alpha) \hat{d}_{t-1}$$

where

$\hat{d}_t$  = forecasted demand for  $t$

$\alpha$  = smoothing constant,  $0 \leq \alpha \leq 1$

## 2<sup>n</sup> Factorial Experiments

$$E_i = \bar{Y}_{i2} - \bar{Y}_{i1}$$

$$E_{ij} = \frac{(\bar{Y}_{ij}^{22} - \bar{Y}_{ij}^{21}) - (\bar{Y}_{ij}^{12} - \bar{Y}_{ij}^{11})}{2}$$

where

Factors:  $X_1, X_2, \dots, X_n$

Levels of each factor: 1, 2 (sometimes these levels are represented by the symbols – and +, respectively)

$r$  = number of observations for each experimental condition (treatment)

$E_i$  = estimate of the effect of factor  $X_i$ ,  $i = 1, 2, \dots, n$

$E_{ij}$  = estimate of the effect of the interaction between factors  $X_i$  and  $X_j$

$\bar{Y}_{ik}$  = average response value for all  $r2^{n-1}$  observations having  $X_i$  set at level  $k$ ,  $k = 1, 2$

$\bar{Y}_{ij}^{km}$  = average response value for all  $r2^{n-2}$  observations having  $X_i$  set at level  $k$ ,  $k = 1, 2$ , and  $X_j$  set at level  $m$ ,  $m = 1, 2$ .

## Analysis of Variance for 2<sup>n</sup> Factorial Designs

### Main Effects

Let  $E$  be the estimate of the effect of a given factor, let  $L$  be the orthogonal contrast belonging to this effect. It can be proved that

$$E = \frac{L}{2^{n-1}}$$

$$L = \sum_{c=1}^m \alpha_{(c)} \bar{Y}_{(c)}$$

$$SS_L = \frac{rL^2}{2^n}$$

where

$m$  = number of experimental conditions ( $m = 2^n$  for  $n$  factors)

$a_{(c)} = -1$  if the factor is set at its low level (Level 1) in experimental condition  $c$

$a_{(c)} = +1$  if the factor is set at its high level (Level 2) in experimental condition  $c$

$r$  = number of replications for each experimental condition

$\bar{Y}_{(c)}$  = average response value for experimental condition  $c$

$SS_L$  = sum of squares associated with the factor

## Interaction Effects

Consider any group of two or more factors.

$a_{(c)} = +1$  if there is an even number (or zero) of factors in the group set at the low level (Level 1) in experimental condition  $c = 1, 2, \dots, m$

$a_{(c)} = -1$  if there is an odd number of factors in the group set at the low level (Level 1) in experimental condition  $c = 1, 2, \dots, m$

It can be proved that the interaction effect  $E$  for the factors in the group and the corresponding sum of squares  $SS_L$  can be determined as follows:

$$E = \frac{L}{2^{n-1}}$$

$$L = \sum_{c=1}^m a_{(c)} \bar{Y}_{(c)}$$

$$SS_L = \frac{rL^2}{2^n}$$

## Sum of Squares of Random Error

The sum of the squares due to the random error can be computed as

$$SS_{\text{error}} = SS_{\text{total}} - \sum_i SS_i - \sum_i \sum_j SS_{ij} - \dots - SS_{12\dots n}$$

where  $SS_i$  is the sum of squares due to factor  $X_i$ ,  $SS_{ij}$  is the sum of squares due to the interaction of factors  $X_i$  and  $X_j$ , and so on. The total sum of squares is equal to

$$SS_{\text{total}} = \sum_{c=1}^m \sum_{k=1}^r Y_{ck}^2 - \frac{T^2}{N}$$

where  $Y_{ck}$  is the  $k$ th observation taken for the  $c$ th experimental condition,  $m = 2^n$ ,  $T$  is the grand total of all observations, and  $N = r2^n$ .

## Reliability

If  $P_i$  is the probability that component  $i$  is functioning, a reliability function  $R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n)$  represents the probability that a system consisting of  $n$  components will work.

For  $n$  independent components connected in series,

$$R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n) = \prod_{i=1}^n P_i$$

For  $n$  independent components connected in parallel,

$$R(P_1, P_2, \dots, P_n) = 1 - \prod_{i=1}^n (1 - P_i)$$

## Learning Curves

The time to do the repetition  $N$  of a task is given by

$$T_N = KN^s$$

where

$K$  = constant

$s$  =  $\ln$  (learning rate, as a decimal)/ $\ln 2$ ; or, learning rate =  $2^s$

If  $N$  units are to be produced, the average time per unit is given by

$$T_{\text{avg}} = \frac{K}{N(1+s)} \left[ (N+0.5)^{(1+s)} - 0.5^{(1+s)} \right]$$

## Inventory Models

For instantaneous replenishment (with constant demand rate, known holding and ordering costs, and an infinite stockout cost), the economic order quantity is given by

$$EOQ = \sqrt{\frac{2AD}{h}}$$

where

$A$  = cost to place one order

$D$  = number of units used per year

$h$  = holding cost per unit per year

Under the same conditions as above with a finite replenishment rate, the economic manufacturing quantity is given by

$$EMQ = \sqrt{\frac{2AD}{h(1-D/R)}}$$

where  $R$  = the replenishment rate

## Facility Planning

### Equipment Requirements

$$M_j = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{P_{ij}T_{ij}}{C_{ij}}$$

where

$M_j$  = number of machines of type  $j$  required per production period

$P_{ij}$  = desired production rate for product  $i$  on machine  $j$ , measured in pieces per production period

$T_{ij}$  = production time for product  $i$  on machine  $j$ , measured in hours per piece

$C_{ij}$  = number of hours in the production period available for the production of product  $i$  on machine  $j$

$n$  = number of products

### People Requirements

$$A_j = \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{P_{ij}T_{ij}}{C_{ij}}$$

where

$A_j$  = number of crews required for assembly operation  $j$

$P_{ij}$  = desired production rate for product  $i$  and assembly operation  $j$  (pieces per day)

$T_{ij}$  = standard time to perform operation  $j$  on product  $i$  (minutes per piece)

$C_{ij}$  = number of minutes available per day for assembly operation  $j$  on product  $i$

$n$  = number of products

## Standard Time Determination

$$ST = NT \times AF$$

where

$NT$  = normal time

$AF$  = allowance factor

Case 1: Allowances are based on the *job time*.

$$AF_{\text{job}} = 1 + A_{\text{job}}$$

$A_{\text{job}}$  = allowance fraction (percentage/100) based on job time.

Case 2: Allowances are based on *workday*.

$$AF_{\text{time}} = 1/(1 - A_{\text{day}})$$

$A_{\text{day}}$  = allowance fraction (percentage/100) based on workday.

Predetermined time systems are useful in cases where either (1) the task does not yet exist or (2) changes to a task are being designed and normal times have not yet been established for all elements of the new task or changed task. In such cases no opportunity exists to measure the element time. Unfortunately, there is no scientific basis for predicting element times without breaking them down into motion-level parts. A task consists of elements. An organization may develop its own database of normal element durations, and normal times for new or changed tasks may be predicted if the tasks consist entirely of elements whose normal times are already in the database. But new elements can be decomposed into motions, for which scientifically predetermined times exist in databases called *MTM-1*, *MTM-2*, and *MTM-3*. These databases and software to manipulate them are commercially available. To use one of them effectively requires about 50 hours of training.

## Plant Location

The following is one formulation of a discrete plant location problem.

Minimize

$$z = \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^n c_{ij}y_{ij} + \sum_{j=1}^n f_j x_j$$

subject to

$$\sum_{i=1}^m y_{ij} \leq mx_j, \quad j = 1, \dots, n$$

$$\sum_{j=1}^n y_{ij} = 1, \quad i = 1, \dots, m$$

$$y_{ij} \geq 0, \text{ for all } i, j$$

$$x_j = (0, 1), \text{ for all } j$$

Source: Kennedy, W.J., and Daniel P. Rogers, *Review for the Professional Engineers' Examination in Industrial Engineering*, 2012.

where

$m$  = number of customers

$n$  = number of possible plant sites

$y_{ij}$  = fraction or proportion of the demand of customer  $i$  which is satisfied by a plant located at site  $j$ ;  
 $i = 1, \dots, m; j = 1, \dots, n$

$x_j$  = 1, if a plant is located at site  $j$

$x_j$  = 0, otherwise

$c_{ij}$  = cost of supplying the entire demand of customer  $i$  from a plant located at site  $j$

$f_j$  = fixed cost resulting from locating a plant at site  $j$

## Material Handling

Distances between two points  $(x_1, y_1)$  and  $(x_2, y_2)$  under different metrics:

Euclidean:

$$D = \sqrt{(x_1 - x_2)^2 + (y_1 - y_2)^2}$$

Rectilinear (or Manhattan):

$$D = |x_1 - x_2| + |y_1 - y_2|$$

Chebyshev (simultaneous  $x$  and  $y$  movement):

$$D = \max(|x_1 - x_2|, |y_1 - y_2|)$$

## Line Balancing

$$N_{\min} = \left( OR \times \sum_i t_i / OT \right)$$

= theoretical minimum number of stations

$$\text{Idle Time/Station} = CT - ST$$

$$\text{Idle Time/Cycle} = \sum (CT - ST)$$

$$\text{Percent Idle Time} = \frac{\text{Idle Time/Cycle}}{N_{\text{actual}} \times CT} \times 100$$

where

$CT$  = cycle time (time between units)

$OT$  = operating time/period

$OR$  = output rate/period

$ST$  = station time (time to complete task at each station)

$t_i$  = individual task times

$N$  = number of stations

## Job Sequencing

Two Work Centers—Johnson's Rule

1. Select the job with the shortest time, from the list of jobs, and its time at each work center.
2. If the shortest job time is the time at the first work center, schedule it first, otherwise schedule it last. Break ties arbitrarily.
3. Eliminate that job from consideration.
4. Repeat 1, 2, and 3 until all jobs have been scheduled.

## Critical Path Method (CPM)

$$T = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} d_{ij}$$

where

$d_{ij}$  = duration of activity  $(i, j)$

$CP$  = critical path (longest path)

$T$  = duration of project

## PERT

$$\mu_{ij} = \frac{a_{ij} + 4b_{ij} + c_{ij}}{6}$$

$$\sigma_{ij} = \frac{c_{ij} - a_{ij}}{6}$$

$$\mu = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} \mu_{ij}$$

$$\sigma^2 = \sum_{(i,j) \in CP} \sigma_{ij}^2$$

where

$(a_{ij}, b_{ij}, c_{ij})$  = (optimistic, most likely, pessimistic) durations for activity  $(i, j)$

$\mu_{ij}$  = mean duration of activity  $(i, j)$

$\sigma_{ij}$  = standard deviation of the duration of activity  $(i, j)$

$\mu$  = project mean duration

$\sigma$  = standard deviation of project duration

## Taylor Tool Life Formula

$$VT^n = C$$

where

$V$  = speed in surface feet per minute

$T$  = tool life in minutes

$C, n$  = constants that depend on the material and on the tool

## Work Sampling Formulas

$$D = Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} \quad \text{and} \quad R = Z_{\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{1-p}{pn}}$$

where

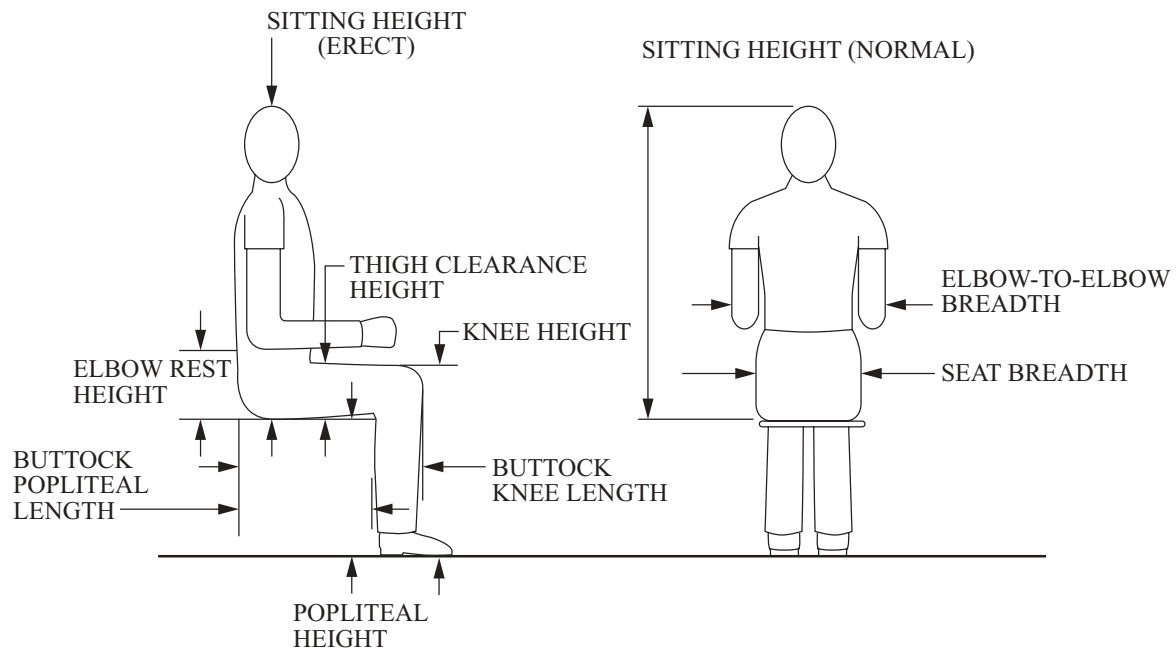
$p$  = proportion of observed time in an activity

$D$  = absolute error

$R$  = relative error =  $D/p$

$n$  = sample size

ANTHROPOMETRIC MEASUREMENTS



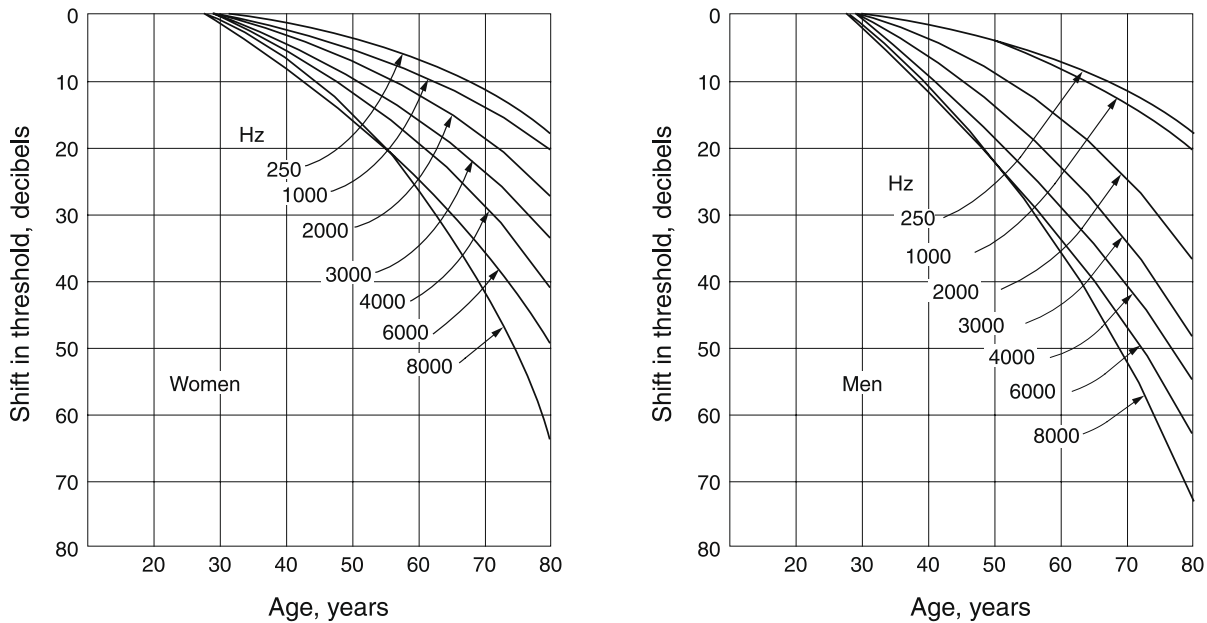
Source: After Sanders and McCormick, *Human Factors In Engineering and Design*, McGraw-Hill, 1987.

| U.S. Civilian Body Dimensions, Female/Male, for Ages 20 to 60 Years<br>(Centimeters) |                    |                    |                    |                  |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| (See Anthropometric<br>Measurements Figure)                                          | Percentiles        |                    |                    |                  |
|                                                                                      | 5th                | 50th               | 95th               | Std. Dev.        |
| <b>HEIGHTS</b>                                                                       |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Stature (height)                                                                     | 149.5 / 161.8      | 160.5 / 173.6      | 171.3 / 184.4      | 6.6 / 6.9        |
| Eye height                                                                           | 138.3 / 151.1      | 148.9 / 162.4      | 159.3 / 172.7      | 6.4 / 6.6        |
| Shoulder (acromion) height                                                           | 121.1 / 132.3      | 131.1 / 142.8      | 141.9 / 152.4      | 6.1 / 6.1        |
| Elbow height                                                                         | 93.6 / 100.0       | 101.2 / 109.9      | 108.8 / 119.0      | 4.6 / 5.8        |
| <b>Knuckle height</b>                                                                | <b>64.3 / 69.8</b> | <b>70.2 / 75.4</b> | <b>75.9 / 80.4</b> | <b>3.5 / 3.2</b> |
| Height, sitting (erect)                                                              | 78.6 / 84.2        | 85.0 / 90.6        | 90.7 / 96.7        | 3.5 / 3.7        |
| Eye height, sitting                                                                  | 67.5 / 72.6        | 73.3 / 78.6        | 78.5 / 84.4        | 3.3 / 3.6        |
| Shoulder height, sitting                                                             | 49.2 / 52.7        | 55.7 / 59.4        | 61.7 / 65.8        | 3.8 / 4.0        |
| Elbow rest height, sitting                                                           | 18.1 / 19.0        | 23.3 / 24.3        | 28.1 / 29.4        | 2.9 / 3.0        |
| <b>Knee height, sitting</b>                                                          | <b>45.2 / 49.3</b> | <b>49.8 / 54.3</b> | <b>54.5 / 59.3</b> | <b>2.7 / 2.9</b> |
| Popliteal height, sitting                                                            | 35.5 / 39.2        | 39.8 / 44.2        | 44.3 / 48.8        | 2.6 / 2.8        |
| Thigh clearance height                                                               | 10.6 / 11.4        | 13.7 / 14.4        | 17.5 / 17.7        | 1.8 / 1.7        |
| <b>DEPTHS</b>                                                                        |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Chest depth                                                                          | 21.4 / 21.4        | 24.2 / 24.2        | 29.7 / 27.6        | 2.5 / 1.9        |
| Elbow-fingertip distance                                                             | 38.5 / 44.1        | 42.1 / 47.9        | 46.0 / 51.4        | 2.2 / 2.2        |
| Buttock-knee length, sitting                                                         | 51.8 / 54.0        | 56.9 / 59.4        | 62.5 / 64.2        | 3.1 / 3.0        |
| Buttock-popliteal length, sitting                                                    | 43.0 / 44.2        | 48.1 / 49.5        | 53.5 / 54.8        | 3.1 / 3.0        |
| Forward reach, functional                                                            | 64.0 / 76.3        | 71.0 / 82.5        | 79.0 / 88.3        | 4.5 / 5.0        |
| <b>BREADTHS</b>                                                                      |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Elbow-to-elbow breadth                                                               | 31.5 / 35.0        | 38.4 / 41.7        | 49.1 / 50.6        | 5.4 / 4.6        |
| Seat (hip) breadth, sitting                                                          | 31.2 / 30.8        | 36.4 / 35.4        | 43.7 / 40.6        | 3.7 / 2.8        |
| <b>HEAD DIMENSIONS</b>                                                               |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Head breadth                                                                         | 13.6 / 14.4        | 14.54 / 15.42      | 15.5 / 16.4        | 0.57 / 0.59      |
| Head circumference                                                                   | 52.3 / 53.8        | 54.9 / 56.8        | 57.7 / 59.3        | 1.63 / 1.68      |
| Interpupillary distance                                                              | 5.1 / 5.5          | 5.83 / 6.20        | 6.5 / 6.8          | 0.4 / 0.39       |
| <b>HAND DIMENSIONS</b>                                                               |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Hand length                                                                          | 16.4 / 17.6        | 17.95 / 19.05      | 19.8 / 20.6        | 1.04 / 0.93      |
| Breadth, metacarpal                                                                  | 7.0 / 8.2          | 7.66 / 8.88        | 8.4 / 9.8          | 0.41 / 0.47      |
| Circumference, metacarpal                                                            | 16.9 / 19.9        | 18.36 / 21.55      | 19.9 / 23.5        | 0.89 / 1.09      |
| Thickness, metacarpal III                                                            | 2.5 / 2.4          | 2.77 / 2.76        | 3.1 / 3.1          | 0.18 / 0.21      |
| Digit 1                                                                              |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Breadth, interphalangeal                                                             | 1.7 / 2.1          | 1.98 / 2.29        | 2.1 / 2.5          | 0.12 / 0.13      |
| Crotch-tip length                                                                    | 4.7 / 5.1          | 5.36 / 5.88        | 6.1 / 6.6          | 0.44 / 0.45      |
| Digit 2                                                                              |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Breadth, distal joint                                                                | 1.4 / 1.7          | 1.55 / 1.85        | 1.7 / 2.0          | 0.10 / 0.12      |
| Crotch-tip length                                                                    | 6.1 / 6.8          | 6.88 / 7.52        | 7.8 / 8.2          | 0.52 / 0.46      |
| Digit 3                                                                              |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Breadth, distal joint                                                                | 1.4 / 1.7          | 1.53 / 1.85        | 1.7 / 2.0          | 0.09 / 0.12      |
| Crotch-tip length                                                                    | 7.0 / 7.8          | 7.77 / 8.53        | 8.7 / 9.5          | 0.51 / 0.51      |
| Digit 4                                                                              |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Breadth, distal joint                                                                | 1.3 / 1.6          | 1.42 / 1.70        | 1.6 / 1.9          | 0.09 / 0.11      |
| Crotch-tip length                                                                    | 6.5 / 7.4          | 7.29 / 7.99        | 8.2 / 8.9          | 0.53 / 0.47      |
| Digit 5                                                                              |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Breadth, distal joint                                                                | 1.2 / 1.4          | 1.32 / 1.57        | 1.5 / 1.8          | 0.09/0.12        |
| Crotch-tip length                                                                    | 4.8 / 5.4          | 5.44 / 6.08        | 6.2 / 6.99         | 0.44/0.47        |
| <b>FOOT DIMENSIONS</b>                                                               |                    |                    |                    |                  |
| Foot length                                                                          | 22.3 / 24.8        | 24.1 / 26.9        | 26.2 / 29.0        | 1.19 / 1.28      |
| Foot breadth                                                                         | 8.1 / 9.0          | 8.84 / 9.79        | 9.7 / 10.7         | 0.50 / 0.53      |
| Lateral malleolus height                                                             | 5.8 / 6.2          | 6.78 / 7.03        | 7.8 / 8.0          | 0.59 / 0.54      |
| Weight (kg)                                                                          | 46.2 / 56.2        | 61.1 / 74.0        | 89.9 / 97.1        | 13.8 / 12.6      |

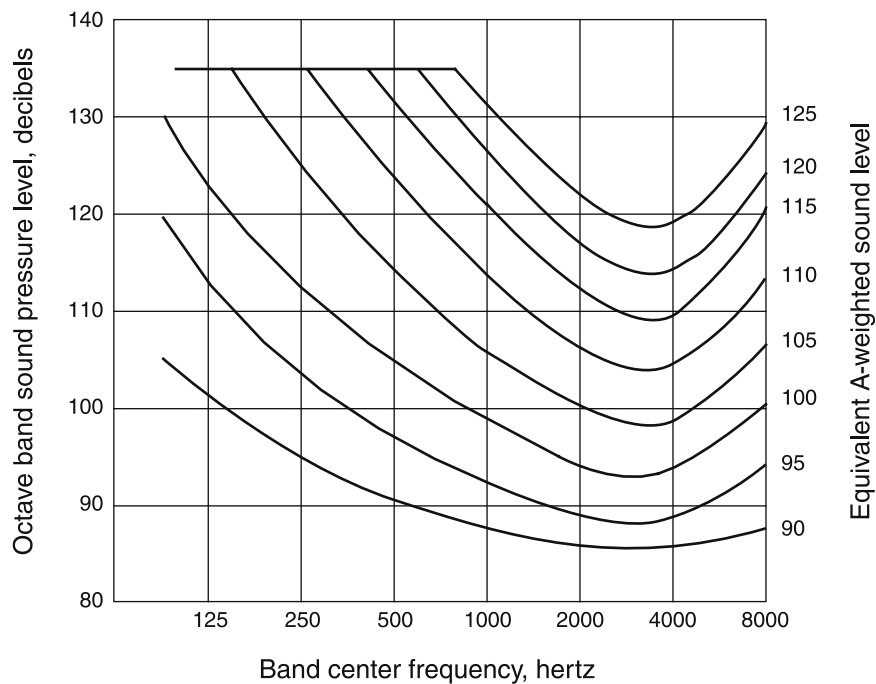
Source: Kroemer, Karl H. E., "Engineering Anthropometry," *Ergonomics*, Vol. 32, No. 7, pp. 779-780, 1989.

## Ergonomics—Hearing

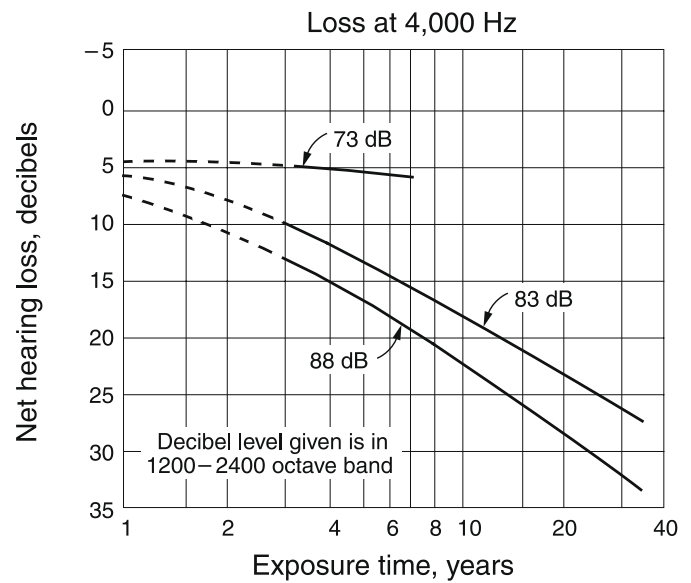
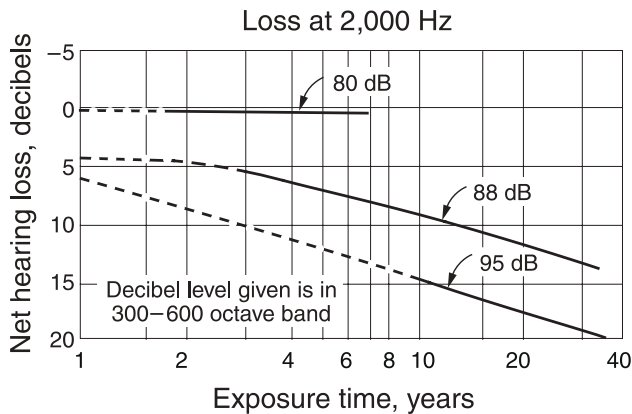
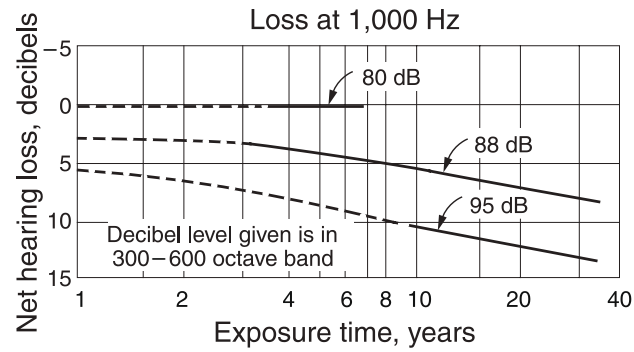
The average shifts with age of the threshold of hearing for pure tones of persons with "normal" hearing, using a 25-year-old group as a reference group.



Equivalent sound-level contours used in determining the A-weighted sound level on the basis of an octave-band analysis. The curve at the point of the highest penetration of the noise spectrum reflects the A-weighted sound level.

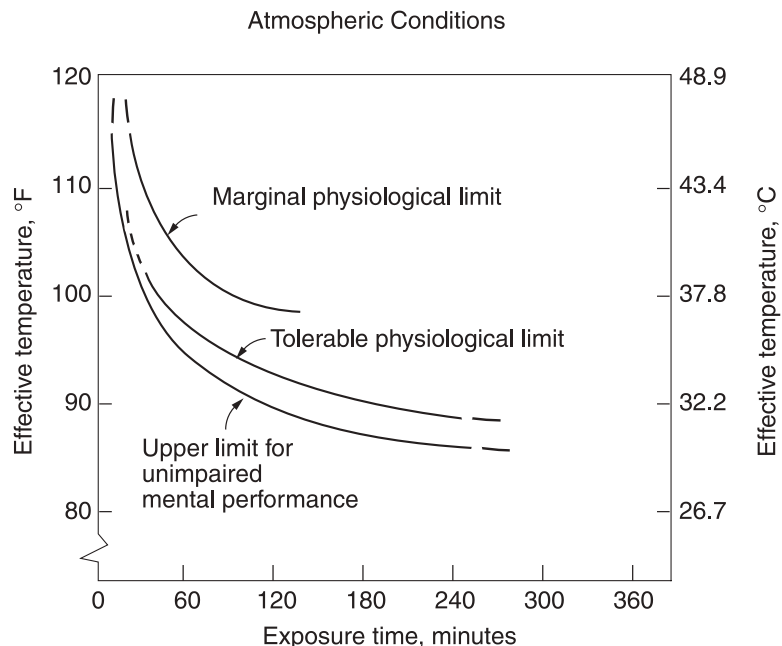


Estimated average trend curves for net hearing loss at 1,000, 2,000, and 4,000 Hz after continuous exposure to steady noise. Data are corrected for age, but not for temporary threshold shift. Dotted portions of curves represent extrapolation from available data.



Source: "The Relations of Hearing Loss to Noise Exposure," Exploratory Subcommittee Z24-X-2 of the American Standards Association Z24 Special Committee on Acoustics, Vibration, and Mechanical Shock, sponsored by the Acoustical Society of America, American Standards Association, 1954, pp. 31–33.

Tentative upper limit of effective temperature (ET) for unimpaired mental performance as related to exposure time; data are based on an analysis of 15 studies. Comparative curves of tolerable and marginal physiological limits are also given.



Effective temperature (ET) is the dry bulb temperature at 50% relative humidity, which results in the same physiological effect as the present conditions.

# Mechanical Engineering

## Mechanical Design and Analysis

### Springs

#### Mechanical Springs

*Helical Linear Springs:* The shear stress in a helical linear spring is

$$\tau = K_s \frac{8FD}{\pi d^3}$$

where

$d$  = wire diameter

$F$  = applied force

$D$  = mean spring diameter

$K_s = (2C + 1)/(2C)$

$C = D/d$

The deflection and force are related by  $F = kx$  where the spring rate (spring constant)  $k$  is given by

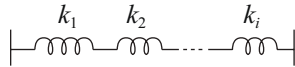
$$k = \frac{d^4 G}{8D^3 N}$$

where  $G$  is the shear modulus of elasticity and  $N$  is the number of active coils.

#### Equivalent Spring Constant

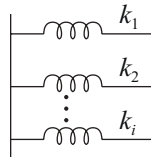
*Springs in series:*

$$\frac{1}{k_{eq}} = \sum_i \frac{1}{k_i}$$



*Springs in parallel:*

$$k_{eq} = \sum_i k_i$$



*Spring Material:* The minimum tensile strength of common spring steels may be determined from

$$S_{ut} = A/d^m$$

where  $S_{ut}$  is the tensile strength in MPa,  $d$  is the wire diameter in millimeters, and  $A$  and  $m$  are listed in the following table:

| Material          | ASTM | $m$   | $A$  |
|-------------------|------|-------|------|
| Music wire        | A228 | 0.163 | 2060 |
| Oil-tempered wire | A229 | 0.193 | 1610 |
| Hard-drawn wire   | A227 | 0.201 | 1510 |
| Chrome vanadium   | A232 | 0.155 | 1790 |
| Chrome silicon    | A401 | 0.091 | 1960 |

Maximum allowable torsional stress for static applications may be approximated as

$$S_{sy} = \tau = 0.45S_{ut} \text{ cold-drawn carbon steel (A227, A228, A229)}$$

$$S_{sy} = \tau = 0.50S_{ut} \text{ hardened and tempered carbon and low-alloy steels (A232, A401)}$$

### Compression Spring Dimensions

| Type of Spring Ends |               |                  |
|---------------------|---------------|------------------|
| Term                | Plain         | Plain and Ground |
| End coils, $N_e$    | 0             | 1                |
| Total coils, $N_t$  | $N$           | $N + 1$          |
| Free length, $L_0$  | $pN + d$      | $p(N + 1)$       |
| Solid length, $L_s$ | $d(N_t + 1)$  | $dN_t$           |
| Pitch, $p$          | $(L_0 - d)/N$ | $L_0/(N + 1)$    |

| Term                | Squared or Closed | Squared and Ground |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| End coils, $N_e$    | 2                 | 2                  |
| Total coils, $N_t$  | $N + 2$           | $N + 2$            |
| Free length, $L_0$  | $pN + 3d$         | $pN + 2d$          |
| Solid length, $L_s$ | $d(N_t + 1)$      | $dN_t$             |
| Pitch, $p$          | $(L_0 - 3d)/N$    | $(L_0 - 2d)/N$     |

*Helical Torsion Springs:* The bending stress is given as

$$\sigma = K_i [32Fr/(\pi d^3)]$$

where  $F$  is the applied load and  $r$  is the radius from the center of the coil to the load.

$K_i$  = correction factor

$$= (4C^2 - C - 1) / [4C(C - 1)]$$

$$C = D/d$$

The deflection  $\theta$  and moment  $Fr$  are related by

$$Fr = k\theta$$

where the spring rate  $k$  is given by

$$k = \frac{d^4 E}{64DN}$$

where  $k$  has units of N•m/rad and  $\theta$  is in radians.

**Spring Material:** The strength of the spring wire may be found as shown in the section on linear springs. The allowable stress  $\sigma$  is then given by

$$S_y = \sigma = 0.78S_{ut} \text{ cold-drawn carbon steel (A227, A228, A229)}$$

$$S_y = \sigma = 0.87S_{ut} \text{ hardened and tempered carbon and low-alloy steel (A232, A401)}$$

### Bearings

#### Ball/Roller Bearing Selection

The minimum required *basic load rating* (load for which 90% of the bearings from a given population will survive 1 million revolutions) is given by

$$C = PL^{1/a}$$

where

$C$  = minimum required basic load rating

$P$  = design radial load

$L$  = design life (in millions of revolutions)

$a$  = 3 for ball bearings, 10/3 for roller bearings

When a ball bearing is subjected to both radial and axial loads, an equivalent radial load must be used in the equation above. The equivalent radial load is

$$P_{eq} = XVF_r + YF_a$$

where

$P_{eq}$  = equivalent radial load

$F_r$  = applied constant radial load

$F_a$  = applied constant axial (thrust) load

For radial contact, deep-groove ball bearings:

$V = 1$  if inner ring rotating, 1.2 if outer ring rotating,

If  $F_a/(VF_r) > e$ ,

$$X = 0.56, \text{ and } Y = 0.840 \left( \frac{F_a}{C_0} \right)^{-0.247}$$

$$\text{where } e = 0.513 \left( \frac{F_a}{C_0} \right)^{0.236}$$

$C_0$  = basic static load rating from bearing catalog

If  $F_a/(VF_r) \leq e$ ,  $X = 1$  and  $Y = 0$ .

## Power Screws

Square Thread Power Screws: The torque required to raise,  $T_R$ , or to lower,  $T_L$ , a load is given by

$$T_R = \frac{Fd_m}{2} \left( \frac{l + \pi \mu d_m}{\pi d_m - \mu l} \right) + \frac{F \mu_c d_c}{2}$$

$$T_L = \frac{Fd_m}{2} \left( \frac{\pi \mu d_m - l}{\pi d_m + \mu l} \right) + \frac{F \mu_c d_c}{2}$$

where

$d_c$  = mean collar diameter

$d_m$  = mean thread diameter =  $d_o - \frac{p}{2}$

$p$  = pitch of thread

$d_o$  = outside diameter of screw

$l$  = lead

$p$  for single-start thread

$np$  for n-start thread

$F$  = load

$\mu$  = coefficient of friction for thread

$\mu_c$  = coefficient of friction for collar

The efficiency of a power screw in raising a load may be expressed as

$$\eta = Fl/(2\pi T_R)$$

## Power Transmission

### Shafts and Axles

Static Loading: The maximum shear stress and the von Mises stress may be calculated in terms of the loads from

$$\tau_{max} = \frac{2}{\pi d^3} \left[ (8M + Fd)^2 + (8T)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

$$\sigma' = \frac{4}{\pi d^3} \left[ (8M + Fd)^2 + 48T^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

where

$M$  = bending moment

$F$  = axial load

$T$  = torque

$d$  = diameter

*Fatigue Loading:* Using the maximum-shear-stress theory combined with the Soderberg line for fatigue, Westinghouse code formula, the diameter and safety factor are related by

$$\frac{\pi d^3}{32} = n \left[ \left( \frac{M_m}{S_y} + \frac{K_f M_a}{S_e} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{T_m}{S_y} + \frac{K_{fs} T_a}{S_e} \right)^2 \right]^{1/2}$$

where

$d$  = diameter

$n$  = safety factor

$M_a$  = alternating moment

$M_m$  = mean moment

$T_a$  = alternating torque

$T_m$  = mean torque

$S_e$  = fatigue limit

$S_y$  = yield strength

$K_f$  = fatigue stress concentration factor for bending

$K_{fs}$  = fatigue stress concentration factor for shear

### Gearing

#### *Involute Gear Tooth Nomenclature*

Circular pitch  $p_c = \pi d/N$

Base pitch  $p_b = p_c \cos \phi$

Module  $m = d/N$

Center distance  $C = (d_1 + d_2)/2$

where

$N$  = number of teeth on pinion or gear

$d$  = pitch circle diameter

$\phi$  = pressure angle

*Gear Trains: Velocity ratio,  $m_v$ ,* is the ratio of the output velocity to the input velocity. Thus,  $m_v = \omega_{\text{out}}/\omega_{\text{in}}$ . For a two-gear train,  $m_v = -N_{\text{in}}/N_{\text{out}}$  where  $N_{\text{in}}$  is the number of teeth on the input gear and  $N_{\text{out}}$  is the number of teeth on the output gear. The negative sign indicates that the output gear rotates in the opposite sense with respect to the input gear. In a *compound gear train*, at least one shaft carries more than one gear (rotating at the same speed). The velocity ratio for a compound train is:

$$m_v = \pm \frac{\text{product of number of teeth on driver gears}}{\text{product of number of teeth on driven gears}}$$

A *simple planetary gearset* has a sun gear, an arm that rotates about the sun gear axis, one or more gears (planets) that rotate about a point on the arm, and a ring (internal) gear that is concentric with the sun gear. The planet gear(s) mesh with the sun gear on one side and with the ring gear on the other. A planetary gearset has two independent inputs and one output (or two outputs and one input, as in a differential gearset).

Often one of the inputs is zero, which is achieved by grounding either the sun or the ring gear. The velocities in a planetary set are related by

$$\frac{\omega_L - \omega_{\text{arm}}}{\omega_f - \omega_{\text{arm}}} = \pm m_v$$

where

$\omega_f$  = speed of the first gear in the train

$\omega_L$  = speed of the last gear in the train

$\omega_{\text{arm}}$  = speed of the arm

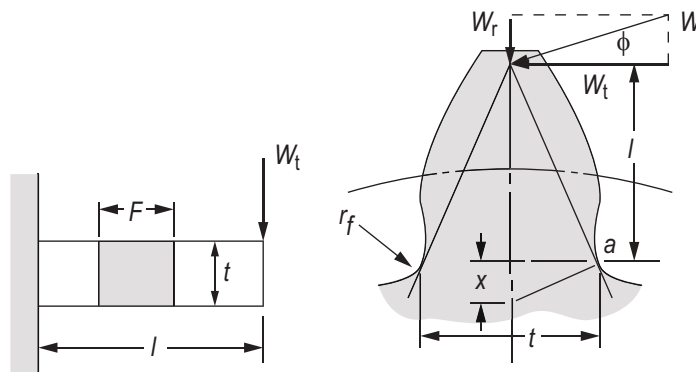
Neither the first nor the last gear can be one that has planetary motion. In determining  $m_v$ , it is helpful to invert the mechanism by grounding the arm and releasing any gears that are grounded.

## Dynamics of Mechanisms

### Gearing

**Loading on Straight Spur Gears:** The load,  $W$ , on straight spur gears is transmitted along a plane that, in edge view, is called the *line of action*. This line makes an angle with a tangent line to the pitch circle that is called the *pressure angle*  $\phi$ . Thus, the contact force has two components: one in the tangential direction,  $W_t$ , and one in the radial direction,  $W_r$ . These components are related to the pressure angle by

$$W_r = W_t \tan(\phi)$$



Source: Budynas, Richard G., and J. Keith Nisbett, *Shigley's Mechanical Engineering Design*, 8th ed., New York: McGraw-Hill, 2008, p. 717.

Only the tangential component  $W_t$  transmits torque from one gear to another. Neglecting friction, the transmitted force may be found if either the transmitted torque or power is known:

$$W_t = \frac{2T}{d} = \frac{2T}{mN}$$

$$W_t = \frac{2H}{d\omega} = \frac{2H}{mN\omega}$$

where

$W_t$  = transmitted force (newtons)

$T$  = torque on the gear (newton-mm)

$d$  = pitch diameter of the gear (mm)

$N$  = number of teeth on the gear

$m$  = gear module (mm) (same for both gears in mesh)

$H$  = power (kW)

$\omega$  = speed of gear (rad/s)

### Lewis Equation

$$\sigma = \frac{W_t P}{F Y}$$

where

$P = \frac{N}{d}$  = diameter pitch (teeth/mm)

$F$  = face width (mm)

$Y$  = Lewis form factor

## Joining Methods

Threaded Fasteners: The load carried by a bolt in a threaded connection is given by

$$F_b = CP + F_i \quad F_m < 0$$

while the load carried by the members is

$$F_m = (1 - C)P - F_i \quad F_m < 0$$

where

$$C = \text{joint coefficient} \\ = k_b / (k_b + k_m)$$

$$F_b = \text{total bolt load}$$

$$F_i = \text{bolt preload}$$

$$F_m = \text{total material load}$$

$$P = \text{externally applied load}$$

$$k_b = \text{effective stiffness of the bolt or fastener in the grip}$$

$$k_m = \text{effective stiffness of the members in the grip}$$

*Bolt stiffness* may be calculated from

$$k_b = \frac{A_d A_t E}{A_d l_t + A_t l_d}$$

where

$$A_d = \text{major-diameter area}$$

$$A_t = \text{tensile-stress area}$$

$$E = \text{modulus of elasticity}$$

$$l_d = \text{length of unthreaded shank}$$

$$l_t = \text{length of threaded shank contained within the grip}$$

If all members within the grip are of the same material, *member stiffness* may be obtained from

$$k_m = dEAe^{b(d/l)}$$

where

$$d = \text{bolt diameter}$$

$$E = \text{modulus of elasticity of members}$$

$$l = \text{grip length}$$

Coefficients  $A$  and  $b$  are given in the table below for various joint member materials.

| Material       | $A$     | $b$     |
|----------------|---------|---------|
| Steel          | 0.78715 | 0.62873 |
| Aluminum       | 0.79670 | 0.63816 |
| Copper         | 0.79568 | 0.63553 |
| Gray cast iron | 0.77871 | 0.61616 |

The approximate tightening torque required for a given preload  $F_i$  and for a steel bolt in a steel member is given by

$$T = KF_i d$$

where

$$K = \text{torque coefficient which is typically 0.2}$$

Threaded Fasteners – Design Factors: The bolt load factor is

$$n_b = (S_p A_t - F_i) / CP$$

where

$$S_p = \text{proof strength}$$

The factor of safety guarding against joint separation is

$$n_s = F_i / [P (1 - C)]$$

Threaded Fasteners – Fatigue Loading: If the externally applied load varies between zero and  $P$ , the alternating stress is

$$\sigma_a = CP/(2A_t)$$

and the mean stress is

$$\sigma_m = \sigma_a + F_i/A_t$$

Bolted and Riveted Joints Loaded in Shear:

*Failure by Pure Shear*



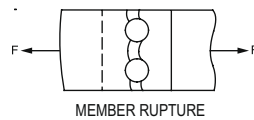
$$\tau = F/A$$

where

$F$  = shear load

$A$  = cross-sectional area of bolt or rivet

*Failure by Rupture*



$$\sigma = F/A$$

where

$F$  = load

$A$  = net cross-sectional area of thinnest member

*Failure by Crushing of Rivet or Fastener*



$$\sigma = F/A$$

where

$F$  = load

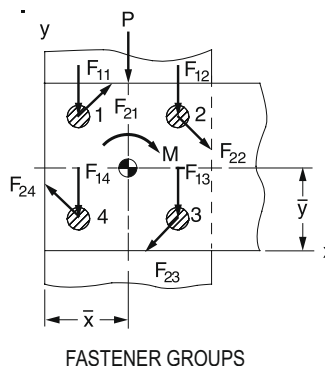
$A = (d)(t)$  = projected area of a single rivet or fastener

where

$d$  = projected diameter of rivet

$t$  = thickness of thinnest plate

*Fastener Groups in Shear*



The location of the centroid of a fastener group with respect to any convenient coordinate frame is:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i x_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i}, \quad \bar{y} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i y_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n A_i}$$

where

- $n$  = total number of fasteners
- $i$  = the index number of a particular fastener
- $A_i$  = cross-sectional area of the  $i$ th fastener
- $x_i$  = x-coordinate of the center of the  $i$ th fastener
- $y_i$  = y-coordinate of the center of the  $i$ th fastener

The total shear force on a fastener is the **vector** sum of the force due to direct shear  $P$  and the force due to the moment  $M$  acting on the group at its centroid.

The magnitude of the direct shear force due to  $P$  is

$$|F_{1i}| = \frac{P}{n}.$$

This force acts in the same direction as  $P$ .

The magnitude of the shear force due to  $M$  is

$$|F_{2i}| = \frac{Mr_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n r_i^2}.$$

This force acts perpendicular to a line drawn from the group centroid to the center of a particular fastener. Its sense is such that its moment is in the same direction (CW or CCW) as  $M$ .

#### Press/Shrink Fits

The interface pressure induced by a press/shrink fit is

$$p = \frac{0.5\delta}{\frac{r}{E_o} \left( \frac{r_o^2 + r^2}{r_o^2 - r^2} + \nu_o \right) + \frac{r}{E_i} \left( \frac{r^2 + r_i^2}{r^2 - r_i^2} - \nu_i \right)}$$

where the subscripts  $i$  and  $o$  stand for the inner and outer member, respectively, and

- $p$  = inside pressure on the outer member and outside pressure on the inner member
- $\delta$  = diametral interference
- $r$  = nominal interference radius
- $r_i$  = inside radius of inner member
- $r_o$  = outside radius of outer member
- $E$  = Young's modulus of respective member
- $\nu$  = Poisson's ratio of respective member

The *maximum torque* that can be transmitted by a press fit joint is approximately

$$T = 2\pi r^2 \mu p l,$$

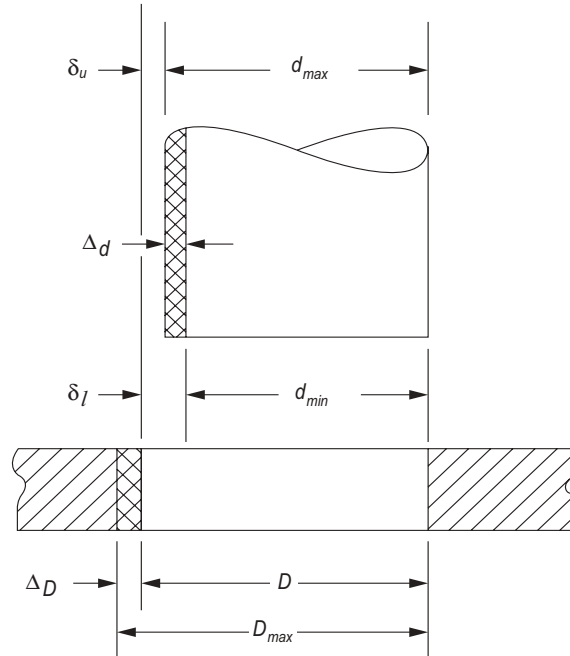
where  $r$  and  $p$  are defined above,

- $T$  = torque capacity of the joint
- $\mu$  = coefficient of friction at the interface
- $l$  = length of hub engagement

## Manufacturability

### Limits and Fits

The designer is free to adopt any geometry of fit for shafts and holes that will ensure intended function. Over time, sufficient experience with common situations has resulted in the development of a standard. The metric version of the standard is newer and will be presented. The standard specifies that uppercase letters always refer to the hole, while lowercase letters always refer to the shaft.



### Definitions

**Basic Size or nominal size**,  $D$  or  $d$ , is the size to which the limits or deviations are applied. It is the same for both components.

**Deviation** is the algebraic difference between the actual size and the corresponding basic size.

**Upper Deviation**,  $\delta_u$ , is the algebraic difference between the maximum limit and the corresponding basic size.

**Lower Deviation**,  $\delta_l$ , is the algebraic difference between the minimum limit and the corresponding basic size.

**Fundamental Deviation**,  $\delta_F$ , is the upper or lower deviation, depending on which is closer to the basic size.

**Tolerance**,  $\Delta_D$  or  $\Delta_d$ , is the difference between the maximum and minimum size limits of a part.

**International tolerance (IT)** grade numbers designate groups of tolerances such that the tolerance for a particular IT number will have the same relative accuracy for a basic size.

**Hole basis** represents a system of fits corresponding to a basic hole size. The fundamental deviation is  $H$ .

## Some Preferred Fits

| Clearance                                                                                                                                                     |         |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|
| <i>Free running fit</i> : not used where accuracy is essential but good for large temperature variations, high running speeds, or heavy journal loads.        | H9/d9   |
| <i>Sliding fit</i> : where parts are not intended to run freely but must move and turn freely and locate accurately.                                          | H7/g6   |
| <i>Locational clearance fit</i> : provides snug fit for location of stationary parts, but can be freely assembled and disassembled.                           | H7/h6   |
| <i>Loose running fit</i> : for wide commercial tolerances or allowances on external members                                                                   | H11/c11 |
| <i>Close running fit</i> : for running on accurate machines and for accurate location at moderate speeds and journal pressures                                | H8/f7   |
| Transition                                                                                                                                                    |         |
| <i>Locational transition fit</i> : for accurate location, a compromise between clearance and interference                                                     | H7/k6   |
| <i>Locational transition fit</i> : for more accurate location where greater interface is permissible                                                          | H7/n6   |
| Interference                                                                                                                                                  |         |
| <i>Location interference fit</i> : for parts requiring rigidity and alignment with prime accuracy of location but without special bore pressure requirements. | H7/p6   |
| <i>Medium drive fit</i> : for ordinary steel parts or shrink fits on light sections. The tightest fit usable on cast iron.                                    | H7/s6   |
| <i>Force fit</i> : suitable for parts which can be highly stressed or for shrink fits where the heavy pressing forces required are impractical.               | H7/u6   |

For the hole

$$D_{\max} = D + \Delta_D$$

$$D_{\min} = D$$

For a shaft with clearance fits  $d$ ,  $g$ ,  $h$ ,  $c$ , or  $f$

$$d_{\max} = d + \delta_F$$

$$d_{\min} = d_{\max} - \Delta_d$$

For a shaft with transition or interference fits  $k, p, s, u$ , or  $n$

$$d_{\min} = d + \delta_F$$

$$d_{\max} = d_{\min} + \Delta_d$$

where

$D$  = basic size of hole

$d$  = basic size of shaft

$\delta_u$  = upper deviation

$\delta_l$  = lower deviation

$\delta_F$  = fundamental deviation

$\Delta_D$  = tolerance grade for hole

$\Delta_d$  = tolerance grade for shaft

### International Tolerance (IT) Grades

Lower limit < Basic Size ≤ Upper Limit  
All values in mm

| Basic Size | Tolerance Grade, ( $\Delta_D$ or $\Delta_d$ ) |       |       |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------|-------|-------|
|            | IT6                                           | IT7   | IT9   |
| 0–3        | 0.006                                         | 0.010 | 0.025 |
| 3–6        | 0.008                                         | 0.012 | 0.030 |
| 6–10       | 0.009                                         | 0.015 | 0.036 |
| 10–18      | 0.011                                         | 0.018 | 0.043 |
| 18–30      | 0.013                                         | 0.021 | 0.052 |
| 30–50      | 0.016                                         | 0.025 | 0.062 |

*Source: Preferred Metric Limits and Fits, ANSI B4.2-1978*

### Deviations for Shafts

Lower limit < Basic Size ≤ Upper Limit  
All values in mm

| Basic Size | Upper Deviation Letter, ( $\delta_u$ ) |        |        |        |   | Lower Deviation Letter, ( $\delta_l$ ) |        |        |        |        |
|------------|----------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|---|----------------------------------------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
|            | c                                      | d      | f      | g      | h | k                                      | n      | p      | s      | u      |
| 0–3        | –0.060                                 | –0.020 | –0.006 | –0.002 | 0 | 0                                      | +0.004 | +0.006 | +0.014 | +0.018 |
| 3–6        | –0.070                                 | –0.030 | –0.010 | –0.004 | 0 | +0.001                                 | +0.008 | +0.012 | +0.019 | +0.023 |
| 6–10       | –0.080                                 | –0.040 | –0.013 | –0.005 | 0 | +0.001                                 | +0.010 | +0.015 | +0.023 | +0.028 |
| 10–14      | –0.095                                 | –0.050 | –0.016 | –0.006 | 0 | +0.001                                 | +0.012 | +0.018 | +0.028 | +0.033 |
| 14–18      | –0.095                                 | –0.050 | –0.016 | –0.006 | 0 | +0.001                                 | +0.012 | +0.018 | +0.028 | +0.033 |
| 18–24      | –0.110                                 | –0.065 | –0.020 | –0.007 | 0 | +0.002                                 | +0.015 | +0.022 | +0.035 | +0.041 |
| 24–30      | –0.110                                 | –0.065 | –0.020 | –0.007 | 0 | +0.002                                 | +0.015 | +0.022 | +0.035 | +0.048 |
| 30–40      | –0.120                                 | –0.080 | –0.025 | –0.009 | 0 | +0.002                                 | +0.017 | +0.026 | +0.043 | +0.060 |
| 40–50      | –0.130                                 | –0.080 | –0.025 | –0.009 | 0 | +0.002                                 | +0.017 | +0.026 | +0.043 | +0.070 |

*Source: ASME B4.2:2009*

As an example, 34H7/s6 denotes a basic size of  $D = d = 34$  mm, an IT class of 7 for the hole, and an IT class of 6 and an "s" fit class for the shaft.

## Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T)

GD&T is used to communicate design intent. This reference provides materials drawn from the ASME Y14.5 standard: "GD&T is an essential tool for communicating design intent—that parts from technical drawings have the desired form, fit, function and interchangeability."

GD&T helps the designer provide information about the size, geometry, and location of features for mechanical parts.

### Definitions used in ASME Y14.5

#### ***Regardless of Feature Size (RFS)***

This is the default condition for geometric tolerances.

#### ***Least Material Condition (LMC)***

This is a modifier for the geometric tolerance. The modifier defines the tolerance or acceptability where the part has the least amount of material or weighs the least.

#### ***Maximum Material Condition (MMC)***

This is a modifier for the geometric tolerance. The modifier defines the tolerance or acceptability where the part has the most amount of material or weighs the most.

#### ***Feature Control Frame***

From the ASME Y14.5 standard: "A feature control frame is a rectangle divided into compartments containing the geometric characteristic symbol followed by the tolerance value or description, modifiers, and any applicable datum reference features."

#### ***Datum***

A datum is a plane, axis, point, or other reference geometry with respect to which the tolerance is specified.

#### ***Virtual Condition***

The virtual condition is used to determine the clearance between mating parts. For an external feature, the virtual condition is equal to the MMC plus the related geometric tolerance. For an internal feature, it is equal to the MMC minus the related geometric tolerance.

## Modifying Symbols

| Term                                                                                                                                        | Symbol                                                                              | Definitions                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| AT MAXIMUM MATERIAL CONDITION<br>(When applied to a tolerance value)<br>AT MAXIMUM MATERIAL BOUNDARY<br>(When applied to a datum reference) |    | The condition in which a feature of size contains the maximum amount of material within the stated limits of size, e.g., minimum hole diameter or maximum shaft diameter.                                    |
| AT LEAST MATERIAL CONDITION<br>(When applied to a tolerance value)<br>AT LEAST MATERIAL BOUNDARY<br>(When applied to a datum reference)     |    | An MMB and an LMB, where at least one boundary is a specified shape that is not a uniform offset from true profile.                                                                                          |
| PROJECTED TOLERANCE ZONE                                                                                                                    |    | The symbolic means of indicating a projected tolerance zone.                                                                                                                                                 |
| DIAMETER                                                                                                                                    |    | The symbols used to indicate diameter, spherical diameter, radius, spherical radius, and controlled radius shall precede the value of a dimension or tolerance given as a diameter or radius, as applicable. |
| SPHERICAL DIAMETER                                                                                                                          |    |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| RADIUS                                                                                                                                      |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| SPHERICAL RADIUS                                                                                                                            |  |                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| SQUARE                                                                                                                                      |  | Feature nominal size is square.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| REFERENCE                                                                                                                                   |  | The symbolic means of indicating a dimension or other dimensional data as reference shall be to enclose the dimension (or dimensional data) within parentheses.                                              |
| ARC LENGTH                                                                                                                                  |  | The symbolic means of indicating a dimension is an arch length measured on a curved outline.                                                                                                                 |
| DIMENSION ORIGIN                                                                                                                            |  | The symbolic means of indicating a toleranced dimension between two features originates from one of these features and not the other.                                                                        |

Source: Adapted from ASME Y14.5–2018, American Society of Mechanical Engineers, 2018.

Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T)

| Tolerance Types | ASME Symbol          | Drawing Callout Example | Drawing Callout Meaning | Tolerance Zone Definition (for Example)                                                                                                            | Zone Modifiers Allowed | Datums Used          | Additional Comments                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Form            | Straightness         |                         |                         | Parallel lines, within which the surface element must lie                                                                                          | No (Surface)           | No                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance value must be less than the size tolerance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                 |                      |                         |                         | Cylindrical boundary, within which the axis of the feature must lie (derived median line)                                                          | Yes (Axis)             | No                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Not a refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Rule #1 only applies to each circular element.<br><input type="checkbox"/> MMC or RFS only.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Where necessary the geometric tolerance may be greater than the size tolerance.                                                                                                                                         |
|                 | Flatness             |                         |                         | Parallel planes, within which the elements of a surface must lie                                                                                   | No                     | No                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance value must be less than the size tolerance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|                 | Circularity          |                         |                         | Concentric circles, within which each circular element of the surface must lie                                                                     | No                     | No                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Does not control straightness or taper.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance value must be less than the size tolerance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                 | Cylindricity         |                         |                         | Concentric cylinders, within which all surface elements must lie                                                                                   | No                     | No                   | <input type="checkbox"/> Refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance value must be less than the size tolerance.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Cylindricity is a composite control of form which includes circularity, straightness and taper of a cylindrical feature.                                                                                                                                            |
| Profile         | Profile of a Surface |                         |                         | A uniform boundary equally disposed along the true (theoretically exact) profile within which the elements of the surface must lie                 | No                     | Yes                  | <input type="checkbox"/> Used to control form or combinations of size, form, orientation, and location.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance zone can be bilateral or unilateral.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Basic dimensions must be used to establish the true profile.                                                                                                                                                    |
|                 |                      |                         |                         | Parallel planes, within which the elements of both surfaces must lie simultaneously                                                                | No                     | No (In this example) | <input type="checkbox"/> Used as a refinement of size, the profile tolerance must be contained within the size limits.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Also controls flatness of each individual surface.<br><input type="checkbox"/> If a datum was used with a linear dimension it would also control parallelism.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Datum with a basic dimension would control the tolerance around the true profile. |
|                 | Profile of a Line    |                         |                         | A uniform boundary equally disposed along the true (theoretically exact) profile, within which the surface elements of each cross-section must lie | No                     | No (In this example) | <input type="checkbox"/> Used to control form, or combination of size, form, orientation, and location.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance zone can be bilateral or unilateral.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Can be used as refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Datums can be used where necessary to define design intent differently.                                                                          |

Geometric Dimensioning and Tolerancing (GD&T)  
(continued)

| Tolerance Types            | ASME Symbol      | Drawing Callout Example                                                                                                                                                                | Drawing Callout Meaning                                                                              | Tolerance Zone Definition (for Example)                                                                                                               | Zone Modifiers Allowed                                                                                                                                                        | Datums Used                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | Additional Comments                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------------|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Orientation                | Angularity       |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Parallel planes, at a specified basic angle from a datum plane(s) within which all surface elements must lie                                          | No (Surface)                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Also controls surface flatness.<br><input type="checkbox"/> A basic angle must be used from the tolerated feature to the datum referenced.<br><input type="checkbox"/> MMC can be used when angularity is applied to an axis or centerplane of a feature.                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|                            | Perpendicularity |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Parallel planes, at 90 degrees basic (perpendicular) to a datum plane(s) within which the elements of a surface must lie                              | No (Surface)                                                                                                                                                                  | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> A refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Also controls surface flatness.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                            |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Cylindrical boundary, at 90 degrees basic (perpendicular) to a datum plane within which the axis of the feature must lie                              | Yes (Axis)                                                                                                                                                                    | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Not a refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Hole must also be within size limits.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Calculation                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Parallelism                |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        | Parallel planes, parallel to a datum plane (or axis) within which the elements of a surface must lie | No (Surface)                                                                                                                                          | Yes                                                                                                                                                                           | <input type="checkbox"/> Refinement of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Also controls surface flatness.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Can be applied to an axis of a feature in which the zone could be parallel planes or a cylindrical tolerance zone.<br><input type="checkbox"/> MMC can be used when parallelism is applied to an axis or centerplane of a feature. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Location                   | Position         |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Cylindrical boundary, within which the center axis of a cylindrical feature of size is permitted to vary from the true (theoretically exact) position | Yes                                                                                                                                                                           | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> Primary control for features of size.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Tolerance zone also defines the limits of variation in attitude (perpendicularity) of the axis of a cylinder or slot in relationship to a datum(s).<br><input type="checkbox"/> Where feature control frames contain the same datums in the same order of precedence with the same modifying symbols, they are considered a single composite pattern. If not required, it must state "SEPARATE REQUIREMENT." |
|                            |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Parallel planes, within which the center plane of a slot is permitted to vary from the true (theoretically exact) position                            | Yes                                                                                                                                                                           | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Runout                     | Circular Runout  |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Two concentric circles, within which each circular element must lie in relationship to the datum axis                                                 | No                                                                                                                                                                            | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> An axis to surface control.<br><input type="checkbox"/> A composite control which includes roundness and axis offset.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Applies to each circular element independently.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Datum applied on an RFS basis only.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|                            | Total Runout     |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      | Two concentric cylinders, within which all circular elements must lie (simultaneously) in relationship to the datum axis                              | No                                                                                                                                                                            | Yes                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <input type="checkbox"/> An axis to surface control.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Provides composite control of all surface elements. Used to control cumulative variations of circularity, straightness, taper, and axis offset.<br><input type="checkbox"/> Datum applied on an RFS basis only.                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Rule #1                    |                  | Variations of Form (Envelope Principle) A feature shall not extend beyond a boundary (envelope) of perfect form at MMC.                                                                |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                       | Variations of Size                                                                                                                                                            |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | Rule #2                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Individual Feature of Size |                  | Where only a tolerance of size is specified, the limits of size of an individual feature prescribe the extent to which variations in its geometric form, as well as size, are allowed. |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                       | The actual local size of an individual feature at each cross section shall be within the specified tolerance of size.                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | All Applicable Geometric Tolerances                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|                            |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                       | Perfect Form at MMC Not Required                                                                                                                                              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         | RFS applies, with respect to the individual tolerance, datum reference, or both, where no modifying symbol is specified. MMC and LMC must be specified on the drawing where it is required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|                            |                  |                                                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                      |                                                                                                                                                       | Where it is desired to permit a surface or surfaces of a feature to exceed the boundary of perfect form at MMC, a note such as PERFECT FORM AT MMC NOT REQUIRED is specified. |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

Source: Courtesy of Dr. Greg Hetland, International Institute of Geometric Dimensioning & Tolerancing, [www.iigdt.com](http://www.iigdt.com).

## Intermediate- and Long-Length Columns

For both intermediate and long columns, the effective column length depends on the end conditions. The AISC recommended design values for the effective lengths of columns are, for: rounded-ended or pinned-pinned ends,  $l_{eff} = l$ ; fixed-free,  $l_{eff} = 2.1l$ ; fixed-pinned,  $l_{eff} = 0.80l$ ; fixed-fixed,  $l_{eff} = 0.65l$ . The effective column length should be used when calculating the slenderness ratio.

The slenderness ratio of a column is  $S_r = l_{eff}/r$ , where  $l$  is the length of the column and  $r$  is the radius of gyration. The radius of gyration of a column cross-section is,  $r = \sqrt{I/A}$  where  $I$  is the area moment of inertia and  $A$  is the cross-sectional area of the column. A column is considered to be intermediate if its slenderness ratio is less than or equal to  $(S_r)_D$ , where

$$(S_r)_D = \pi \sqrt{\frac{2E}{S_y}}, \text{ and}$$

$E$  = Young's modulus of respective member

$S_y$  = yield strength of the column material

For intermediate columns, the critical load is

$$P_{cr} = A \left[ S_y - \frac{1}{E} \left( \frac{S_y S_r}{2\pi} \right)^2 \right]$$

where

$P_{cr}$  = critical buckling load

$A$  = cross-sectional area of the column

$S_y$  = yield strength of the column material

$E$  = Young's modulus of respective member

$S_r$  = slenderness ratio

For long columns, the critical load is

$$P_{cr} = \frac{\pi^2 EA}{S_r^2}$$

where the variables are as defined above.

## Static Loading Failure Theories

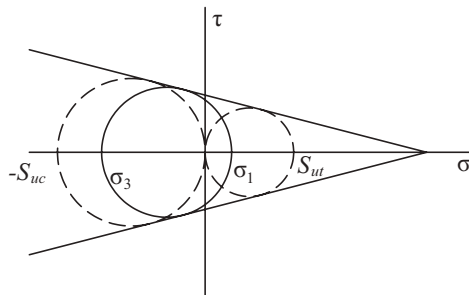
### Brittle Materials

#### Maximum-Normal-Stress Theory

The maximum-normal-stress theory states that failure occurs when one of the three principal stresses equals the strength of the material. If  $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$ , then the theory predicts that failure occurs whenever  $\sigma_1 \geq S_{ut}$  or  $\sigma_3 \leq -S_{uc}$  where  $S_{ut}$  and  $S_{uc}$  are the tensile and compressive strengths, respectively.

#### Coulomb-Mohr Theory

The Coulomb-Mohr theory is based upon the results of tensile and compression tests. On the  $\sigma, \tau$  coordinate system, one circle is plotted for  $S_{ut}$  and one for  $S_{uc}$ . As shown in the figure, lines are then drawn tangent to these circles. The Coulomb-Mohr theory then states that fracture will occur for any stress situation that produces a circle that is either tangent to or crosses the envelope defined by the lines tangent to the  $S_{ut}$  and  $S_{uc}$  circles.



If  $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$  and  $\sigma_3 < 0$ , then the theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_1}{S_{ut}} - \frac{\sigma_3}{S_{uc}} \geq 1$$

## Ductile Materials

### Maximum-Shear-Stress Theory

The maximum-shear-stress theory states that yielding begins when the maximum shear stress equals the maximum shear stress in a tension-test specimen of the same material when that specimen begins to yield. If  $\sigma_1 \geq \sigma_2 \geq \sigma_3$ , then the theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever  $\tau_{\max} \geq S_y/2$  where  $S_y$  is the yield strength.

$$\tau_{\max} = \frac{\sigma_1 - \sigma_3}{2}.$$

### Distortion-Energy Theory

The distortion-energy theory states that yielding begins whenever the distortion energy in a unit volume equals the distortion energy in the same volume when uniaxially stressed to the yield strength. The theory predicts that yielding will occur whenever

$$\left[ \frac{(\sigma_1 - \sigma_2)^2 + (\sigma_2 - \sigma_3)^2 + (\sigma_1 - \sigma_3)^2}{2} \right]^{1/2} \geq S_y$$

The term on the left side of the inequality is known as the effective or von Mises stress. For a biaxial stress state the effective stress becomes

$$\sigma' = (\sigma_A^2 - \sigma_A \sigma_B + \sigma_B^2)^{1/2}$$

or

$$\sigma' = (\sigma_x^2 - \sigma_x \sigma_y + \sigma_y^2 + 3\tau_{xy}^2)^{1/2}$$

where  $\sigma_A$  and  $\sigma_B$  are the two nonzero principal stresses and  $\sigma_x$ ,  $\sigma_y$ , and  $\tau_{xy}$  are the stresses in orthogonal directions.

## Variable Loading Failure Theories

### Modified Goodman Theory

The modified Goodman criterion states that a fatigue failure will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{S_e} + \frac{\sigma_m}{S_{ut}} \geq 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\sigma_{\max}}{S_y} \geq 1, \quad \sigma_m \geq 0, \quad (\text{without a factor of safety})$$

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{S_e} + \frac{\sigma_m}{S_{ut}} \geq \frac{1}{n} \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{\sigma_{\max}}{S_y} \geq \frac{1}{n}, \quad \sigma_m \geq 0 \quad (\text{with a factor of safety})$$

where

$S_e$  = endurance limit

$S_{ut}$  = ultimate strength

$S_y$  = yield strength

$\sigma_a$  = alternating stress

$\sigma_m$  = mean stress

$\sigma_{\max} = \sigma_m + \sigma_a$

$n$  = factor of safety

### Soderberg Theory

The Soderberg theory states that a fatigue failure will occur whenever

$$\frac{\sigma_a}{S_e} + \frac{\sigma_m}{S_y} \geq 1 \quad \sigma_m \geq 0$$

## Endurance Limit for Steels

When test data is unavailable, the endurance limit for steels may be estimated as

$$S'_e = \begin{cases} 0.5 S_{ut}, S_{ut} \leq 1,400 \text{ MPa} \\ 700 \text{ MPa}, S_{ut} > 1,400 \text{ MPa} \end{cases}$$

## Endurance Limit Modifying Factors

Endurance limit modifying factors are used to account for the differences between the endurance limit as determined from a rotating beam test,  $S'_e$ , and that which would result in the real part,  $S_e$ .

$$S_e = k_a k_b k_c k_d k_e S'_e$$

where

Surface Factor,  $k_a = a S_{ut}^b$

| Surface Finish | Factor $a$ |       | Exponent $b$ |
|----------------|------------|-------|--------------|
|                | kpsi       | MPa   |              |
| Ground         | 1.34       | 1.58  | -0.085       |
| Machined or CD | 2.70       | 4.51  | -0.265       |
| Hot rolled     | 14.4       | 57.7  | -0.718       |
| As forged      | 39.9       | 272.0 | -0.995       |

Size Factor,  $k_b$ :

For bending and torsion:

$$d \leq 8 \text{ mm}; \quad k_b = 1$$

$$8 \text{ mm} \leq d \leq 250 \text{ mm}; \quad k_b = 1.189 d_{eff}^{-0.097}$$

$$d > 250 \text{ mm}; \quad 0.6 \leq k_b \leq 0.75$$

For axial loading:  $k_b = 1$

Load Factor,  $k_c$ :

$$k_c = 0.923 \quad \text{axial loading, } S_{ut} \leq 1,520 \text{ MPa}$$

$$k_c = 1 \quad \text{axial loading, } S_{ut} > 1,520 \text{ MPa}$$

$$k_c = 1 \quad \text{bending}$$

$$k_c = 0.577 \quad \text{torsion}$$

Temperature Factor,  $k_d$ :

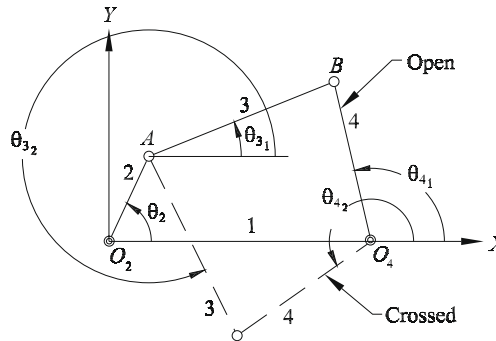
$$\text{for } T \leq 450^\circ\text{C}, k_d = 1$$

Miscellaneous Effects Factor,  $k_e$ : Used to account for strength reduction effects such as corrosion, plating, and residual stresses. In the absence of known effects, use  $k_e = 1$ .

## Kinematics, Dynamics, and Vibrations

### Kinematics of Mechanisms

#### Four-Bar Linkage



The four-bar linkage shown above consists of a reference (usually grounded) link (1), a crank (input) link (2), a coupler link (3), and an output link (4). Links 2 and 4 rotate about the fixed pivots  $O_2$  and  $O_4$ , respectively. Link 3 is joined to link 2 at the moving pivot  $A$  and to link 4 at the moving pivot  $B$ . The lengths of links 2, 3, 4, and 1 are  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$ , respectively.

Taking link 1 (ground) as the reference ( $X$ -axis), the angles that links 2, 3, and 4 make with the axis are  $\theta_2$ ,  $\theta_3$ , and  $\theta_4$ , respectively. It is possible to assemble a four-bar in two different configurations for a given position of the input link (2). These are known as the "open" and "crossed" positions or circuits.

*Position Analysis.* Given  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$ , and  $\theta_2$

$$\theta_{4,2} = 2 \arctan \left( \frac{-B \pm \sqrt{B^2 - 4AC}}{2A} \right)$$

where

$$A = \cos \theta_2 - K_1 - K_2 \cos \theta_2 + K_3$$

$$B = -2 \sin \theta_2$$

$$C = K_1 - (K_2 + 1) \cos \theta_2 + K_3$$

$$K_1 = \frac{d}{a}, K_2 = \frac{d}{c}, K_3 = \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2 + d^2}{2ac}$$

In the equation for  $\theta_4$ , using the minus sign in front of the radical yields the open solution. Using the plus sign yields the crossed solution.

$$\theta_{3,2} = 2 \arctan \left( \frac{-E \pm \sqrt{E^2 - 4DF}}{2D} \right)$$

where

$$D = \cos \theta_2 - K_1 + K_4 \cos \theta_2 + K_5$$

$$E = -2 \sin \theta_2$$

$$F = K_1 + (K_4 - 1) \cos \theta_2 + K_5$$

$$K_4 = \frac{d}{b}, K_5 = \frac{c^2 - d^2 - a^2 - b^2}{2ab}$$

In the equation for  $\theta_3$ , using the minus sign in front of the radical yields the open solution. Using the plus sign yields the crossed solution.

*Velocity Analysis.* Given  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$ ,  $\theta_2$ ,  $\theta_3$ ,  $\theta_4$ , and  $\omega_2$

$$\omega_3 = \frac{a\omega_2 \sin(\theta_4 - \theta_2)}{b \sin(\theta_3 - \theta_4)}$$

$$\omega_4 = \frac{a\omega_2 \sin(\theta_2 - \theta_3)}{c \sin(\theta_4 - \theta_3)}$$

$$V_{Ax} = -a\omega_2 \sin \theta_2, \quad V_{Ay} = a\omega_2 \cos \theta_2$$

$$V_{Bx} = -b\omega_3 \sin \theta_3, \quad V_{By} = b\omega_3 \cos \theta_3$$

$$V_{Cx} = -c\omega_4 \sin \theta_4, \quad V_{Cy} = c\omega_4 \cos \theta_4$$

*Acceleration Analysis.* Given  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$ ,  $\theta_2$ ,  $\theta_3$ ,  $\theta_4$ , and  $\omega_2$ ,  $\omega_3$ ,  $\omega_4$ , and  $\alpha_2$

$$\alpha_3 = \frac{CD - AF}{AE - BD}, \quad \alpha_4 = \frac{CE - BF}{AE - BD}$$

$$A = c \sin \theta_4, \quad B = b \sin \theta_3$$

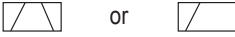
$$C = a\alpha_2 \sin \theta_2 + a\omega_2^2 \cos \theta_2 + b\omega_3^2 \cos \theta_3 - c\omega_4^2 \cos \theta_4$$

$$D = c \cos \theta_4, \quad E = b \cos \theta_3$$

$$F = a\alpha_2 \cos \theta_2 - a\omega_2^2 \sin \theta_2 - b\omega_3^2 \sin \theta_3 + c\omega_4^2 \sin \theta_4$$

Symbols commonly used to represent hydraulic pneumatic and electromechanical components.

ANSI Symbols for Hydraulic Power

|                                                                                                                                                |                                                                                                                                                        |                                                                                                                        |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <br>(a) spring (spring-loaded)                                | <br>(m) hydraulic motor, fixed capacity<br>(two directions of flow)   | <br>(y) flow control valve          |
| <br>two winding or one winding<br>(b) solenoid                | <br>(n) hydraulic motor, variable capacity<br>(one direction of flow) | <br>(z) shut-off valve              |
| <br>(c) adjustable symbol                                     | <br>(o) actuating cylinder (single acting)                            | <br>(aa) electric motor             |
| <br>(d) directional arrow (oil)                               | <br>(p) actuating cylinder (double acting)                            | <br>(bb) internal combustion engine |
| <br>(e) directional arrow (air or gas)                        | <br>(q) two-way, two-position control valve<br>(normally closed)      | <br>(cc) coupling                   |
| <br>(f) fluid line flow                                       | <br>(r) two-way, two-position control valve<br>(normally open)        | <br>(dd) accumulator                |
| <br>(g) shaft or lever                                      | <br>(s) three-way, two-position control valve<br>(normally open)    | <br>(ee) cooler                   |
| <br>(h) reservoir (open)                                    | <br>(t) four-way, two-position control valve                        | <br>(ff) heater                   |
| <br>(i) reservoir (closed)                                  | <br>(u) check (nonreturn) valve                                     | <br>(gg) pressure gage            |
| <br>(j) filter or strainer                                  | <br>(v) shuttle valve                                               | <br>(hh) temperature gage         |
| <br>(k) pump, fixed capacity<br>(one direction of flow)     | <br>(w) pressure control valve                                      | <br>(ii) flow meter               |
| <br>(l) pump, variable capacity<br>(two directions of flow) | <br>(x) pressure relief valve                                       |                                                                                                                        |

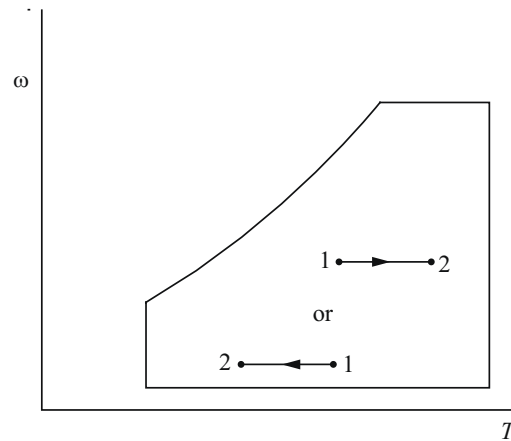
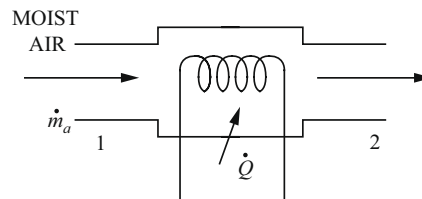
Source: MIL-TD-17B-1: *Military Standard Mechanical Symbols*, Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Defense, 1963.

## HVAC

### Nomenclature

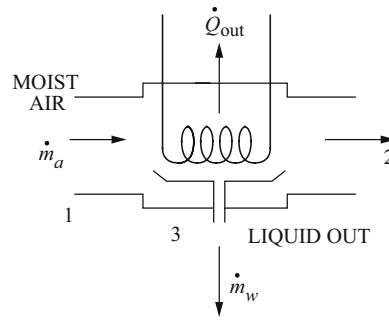
- $h$  = specific enthalpy
- $h_f$  = specific enthalpy of saturated liquid
- $\dot{m}_a$  = mass flow rate of dry air
- $\dot{m}_w$  = mass flow rate of water
- $\dot{Q}$  = rate of heat transfer
- $T_{wb}$  = wet bulb temperature
- $\omega$  = specific humidity (absolute humidity, humidity ratio)

### HVAC—Pure Heating and Cooling



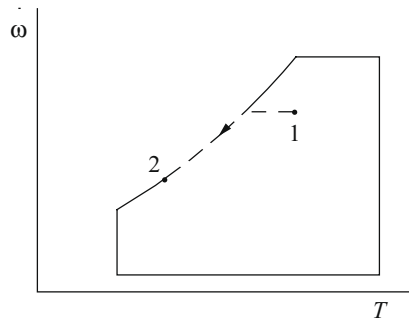
$$\dot{Q} = \dot{m}_a(h_2 - h_1)$$

### Cooling and Dehumidification

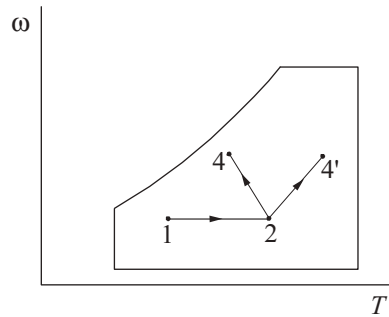
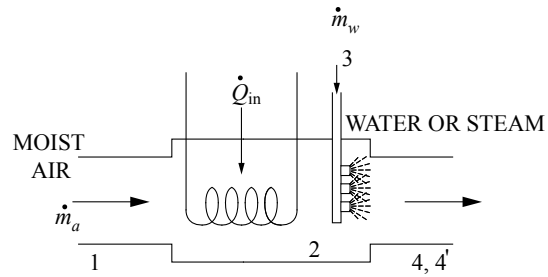


$$\dot{Q}_{\text{out}} = \dot{m}_a [(h_1 - h_2) - h_{f3} (\omega_1 - \omega_2)]$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a (\omega_1 - \omega_2)$$



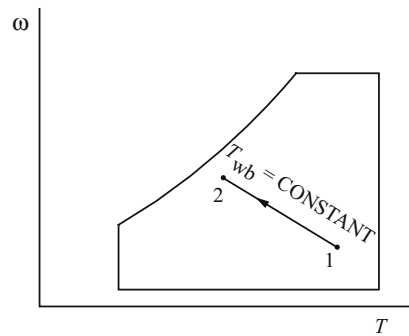
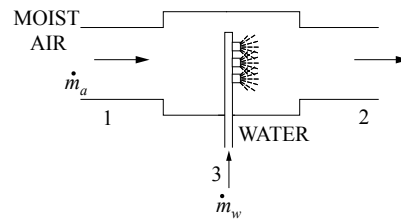
### Heating and Humidification



$$\dot{Q}_{\text{in}} = \dot{m}_a (h_2 - h_1)$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a (\omega_{4'} - \omega_2) \text{ or } \dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a (\omega_4 - \omega_2)$$

### Adiabatic Humidification (evaporative cooling)

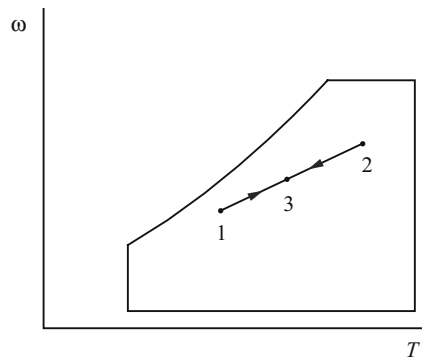
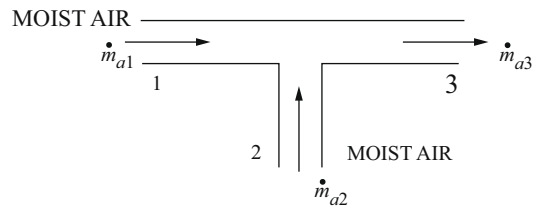


$$h_2 = h_1 + h_3(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$$

$$\dot{m}_w = \dot{m}_a(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$$

$$h_3 = h_f \text{ at } T_{wb}$$

### Adiabatic Mixing



$$\dot{m}_{a3} = \dot{m}_{a1} + \dot{m}_{a2}$$

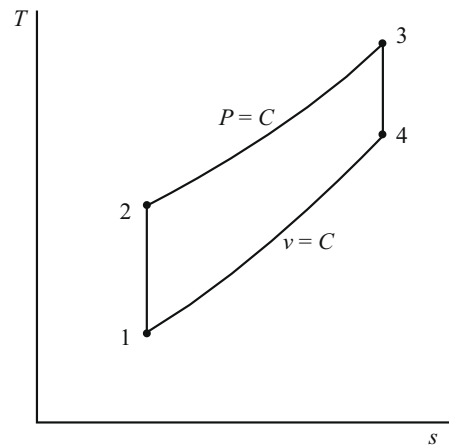
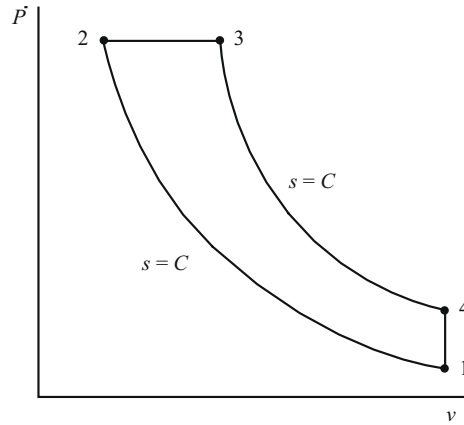
$$h_3 = \frac{\dot{m}_{a1}h_1 + \dot{m}_{a2}h_2}{\dot{m}_{a3}}$$

$$\omega_3 = \frac{\dot{m}_{a1}\omega_1 + \dot{m}_{a2}\omega_2}{\dot{m}_{a3}}$$

## Cycles and Processes

### Internal Combustion Engines

#### Diesel Cycle



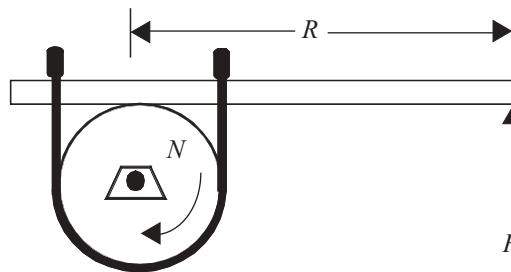
$$r = V_1/V_2$$

$$r_c = V_3/V_2$$

$$\eta = 1 - \frac{1}{r^{k-1}} \left[ \frac{r_c^k - 1}{k(r_c - 1)} \right] \quad (\text{cold air standard})$$

$$k = c_p/c_v$$

#### Brake Power



$$\dot{W}_b = 2\pi TN = 2\pi FRN$$

where

$\dot{W}_b$  = brake power (W)

$T$  = torque (N•m)

$N$  = rotation speed (rev/s)

$F$  = force at end of brake arm (N)

$R$  = length of brake arm (m)

### Indicated Power

$$\dot{W}_i = \dot{W}_b + \dot{W}_f$$

where

$\dot{W}_i$  = indicated power (W)

$\dot{W}_f$  = friction power (W)

### Brake Thermal Efficiency

$$\eta_b = \frac{\dot{W}_b}{\dot{m}_f(HV)}$$

where

$\eta_b$  = brake thermal efficiency

$\dot{m}_f$  = fuel consumption rate (kg/s)

HV = heating value of fuel (J/kg)

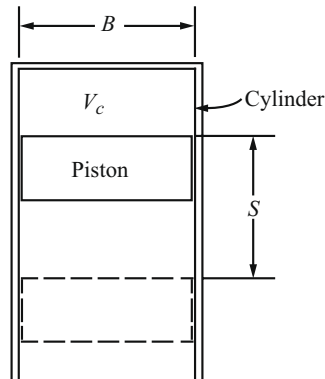
### Indicated Thermal Efficiency

$$\eta_i = \frac{\dot{W}_i}{\dot{m}_f(HV)}$$

### Mechanical Efficiency

$$\eta_i = \frac{\dot{W}_b}{\dot{W}_i} = \frac{\eta_b}{\eta_i}$$

### Displacement Volume



$$V_d = \frac{\pi B^2 S}{4}, \text{ m}^3 \text{ for each cylinder}$$

$$\text{Total volume (m}^3\text{)} = V_t = V_d + V_c$$

$$V_c = \text{clearance volume (m}^3\text{)}$$

### Compression Ratio

$$r_c = V_t/V_c$$

### Mean Effective Pressure (*mep*)

$$mep = \frac{\dot{W} n_s}{V_d n_c N}$$

where

$n_s$  = number of crank revolutions per power stroke

$n_c$  = number of cylinders

$V_d$  = displacement volume per cylinder

*mep* can be based on brake power (*bmeP*), indicated power (*imeP*), or friction power (*fmeP*).

### Volumetric Efficiency

$$\eta_v = \frac{2\dot{m}_a}{\rho_a V_d n_c N} \quad (\text{four-stroke cycles only})$$

where

$\dot{m}_a$  = mass flow rate of air into engine (kg/s)

$\rho_a$  = density of air (kg/m<sup>3</sup>)

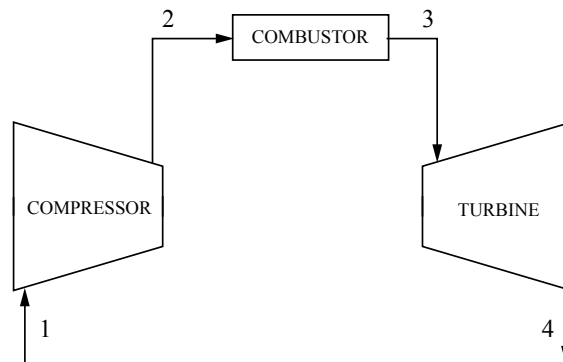
### Specific Fuel Consumption (*SFC*)

$$sfc = \frac{\dot{m}_f}{\dot{W}} = \frac{1}{\eta HV}, \text{ kg/J}$$

Use  $\eta_b$  and  $\dot{W}_b$  for *bsfc* and  $\eta_i$  and  $\dot{W}_i$  for *isfc*.

### Gas Turbines

#### Brayton Cycle (Steady-Flow Cycle)



$$w_{12} = h_1 - h_2 = c_p (T_1 - T_2)$$

$$w_{34} = h_3 - h_4 = c_p (T_3 - T_4)$$

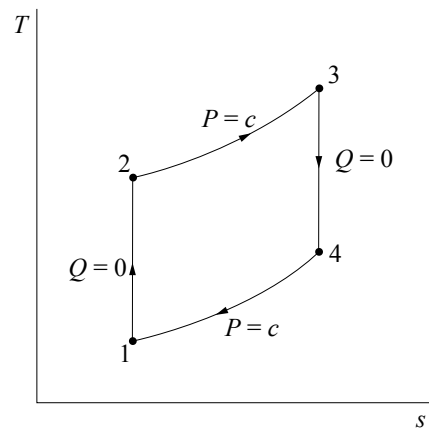
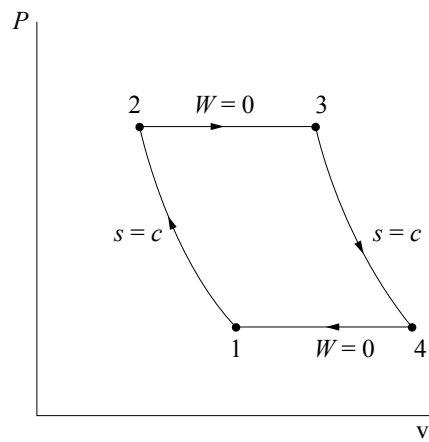
$$w_{\text{net}} = w_{12} + w_{34}$$

$$q_{23} = h_3 - h_2 = c_p (T_3 - T_2)$$

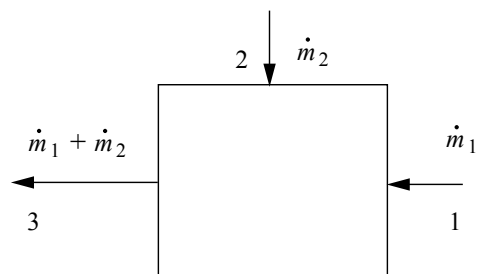
$$q_{41} = h_1 - h_4 = c_p (T_1 - T_4)$$

$$q_{\text{net}} = q_{23} + q_{41}$$

$$\eta = w_{\text{net}} / q_{23}$$

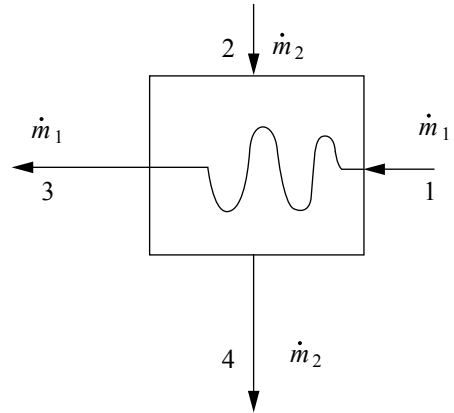


Steam Power Plants  
Feedwater Heaters  
 • Open (mixing)



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = h_3 (\dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_2)$$

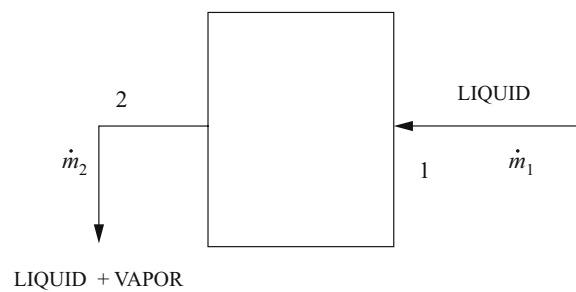
- Closed (no mixing)



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = \dot{m}_1 h_3 + \dot{m}_2 h_4$$

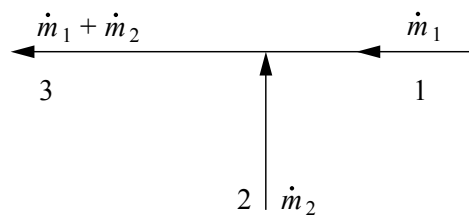
### Steam Trap

A steam trap removes condensate from steam piping or a heat exchanger.



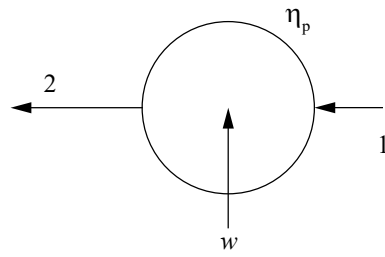
$$h_2 = h_1 \text{ (if adiabatic)}$$

### Junction



$$\dot{m}_1 h_1 + \dot{m}_2 h_2 = h_3 (\dot{m}_1 + \dot{m}_2)$$

*Pump*



$$w = h_1 - h_2 = (h_1 - h_{2s}) / \eta_p$$

$$h_{2s} - h_1 = v(P_2 - P_1)$$

$$w = \frac{v(P_1 - P_2)}{\eta_p}$$

# Index

## Symbols

2n factorial design and experiments 423

$\chi^2$  - distribution 68

## A

AASHTO 266

absorption (packed columns) 247

ac circuits 360

acids, bases, and pH 86

ac machines 367

ac power 364

activated carbon adsorption 337

activated sludge 333

addition of two matrices 58

aerobic digestion 335

aerodynamics 197

affinity laws 194

airfoil/wing theory 197

air infiltration rates 320

air pollution 312

air refrigeration cycle 173

air stripping 338

alcohols 89

aldehydes 89

algebra of complex numbers 37

algorithm efficiency (Big-O) 413

algorithms 411

allowable stress design 272

amorphous materials 126

amplitude modulation 376

anaerobic digestion 336

analog filter circuits 380

analog-to-digital conversion 224

analysis of variance for 2n factorial designs 423

angle modulation 376

angle of repose 256

angular momentum or moment of momentum 107

anion 92

anode 92

anode reaction (oxidation) of a typical metal, M 116

ANOVA table 71, 72

ANSI symbols for hydraulic power 453

anthropometric measurements 429

approximate solution for solid with sudden convection 206

approximations 83

aqueous solutions 86

Archimedes principle and buoyancy 179

area formulas 310

area moment of inertia 98

arithmetic progression 51

Arrhenius equation 237

ASD 272, 281

ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1 (English units) 175

ASHRAE Psychrometric Chart No. 1 (metric units) 174

ASME Y14.5 444

associative law 64

ASTM grain size 122

ASTM standard reinforcement bars 277

atmospheric dispersion modeling (Gaussian) 312

atomic bonding 116

atomic number 85

authentication, computer network security 417

automatic request for retransmission (ARQ) 379

available strength in axial compression, W shapes 289

average and range charts 82

average value, ac circuits 360

Avogadro's number 85

## B

baghouse 318

balanced three-phase systems 364

bases 86

basic cycles 148

basic freeway segment highway capacity 304

basic heat transfer rate equations 203

Basquin equation 121

batch reactor, constant volume 237

batch reactor, variable volume 239

Bayes' theorem 65

beams 134, 268, 281

beams--flexure 275

beams--shear 276

beam stiffness and moment carryover 268

bearings 434

belt friction 97

bending moment sign conventions 134

benefit-cost analysis 231

Bernoulli equation 180, 181

binary number system 390

binary phase diagrams 127

binomial distribution 66

bioconversion 86

biology 85

biomass as an energy source 349

biomechanics of the human body 32

biotower 335

bipolar junction transistor (BJT) 387

blowers 193

BOD5 for mixed lagoons in series 332

BOD test solution and seeding procedures 333

boiling, convection 210

boiling point elevation 85

bonds 230

book value 230

breakeven analysis 230

break-through time for leachate to penetrate a clay liner 327

brittle materials 448

bulk (volume) modulus of elasticity 130

bus, network topologies 406

**C**

- cantilevered beam slopes and deflections 140
- capacitors and inductors 359
- capacitors and inductors in parallel and series 360
- capillary rise 177
- capitalized costs 230
- carboxylic acids 89
- carcinogens 24
- Carnot cycle 148, 171
- Cartesian coordinates 101
- catalyst 85
- cathode 92
- cathode reactions (reduction) 116
- cation 92
- cellular biology 93
- centrifugal pump characteristics 190
- centroids and moments of inertia 99
- centroids of masses, areas, lengths, and volumes 95
- characteristics of a static liquid 177
- characteristics of selected flow configurations 184
- chemical compatibility chart 26
- chemical engineering 237
- chemical reaction engineering 237
- chemical reaction equilibria 154
- chemical reaction equilibrium 155
- chemical sensors 224
- chemistry and biology definitions 85
- circular pipe head loss equation 298
- circular sector 41
- circular segment 41
- circular sewers 295
- civil engineering 259
- Clapeyron equation 154
- clarifier 339
- classifiers: wet and dry operations 255
- Clausius-Clapeyron equation 154
- Clausius' statement of second law 150
- closed-system exergy (availability) 151
- closed thermodynamic system 146
- coagulation equations 342
- code of ethics 4
- coefficient of performance (COP) 148
- columns 136, 281
- combinations of random variables 66
- combustion 348
- combustion processes 152
- common mode rejection ratio 382
- communication methodologies 408
- communication theory and concepts 373
- compaction 328
- complex power 364
- composite materials 123
- composite plane wall 205
- composite sections 136
- compressibility factor 170
- compressible flow 188
- compressible fluid 194
- compressors 192
- computer engineering 356
- computer networking 393
- computer network security 414
- computer systems 409
- concentrations of vaporized liquids 30
- concept of weight 105
- concrete 125
- concurrent forces 97
- conduction 203
- conduction through a cylindrical wall 204
- conduction through a plane wall 203
- confidence interval for intercept 70
- confidence interval for slope 70
- confidence interval for the difference between two means  $\mu_1$  and  $\mu_2$  75
- confidence interval for the mean of a normal distribution 74
- confidence intervals for the variance of a normal distribution 75
- confidence intervals, sample distributions and sample size 74
- confined space safety 21
- conic section equation 46
- conic sections 44
- consequences of fluid flow 182
- conservation of angular momentum 111
- conservation of mass 180
- constant acceleration 104
- constant fluid temperature 205
- construction 310
- continuity equation 180
- control network security 414
- control systems 225
- convection 203, 208, 243
- conversion 154
- conversion factors 2, 3
- convolution 371
- copyrights 12
- corrosion 116
- cost estimation 256
- cost performance index 311
- coupling multiplier (CM) 32
- CPM precedence relationships 310
- creep, mechanical properties 121
- critical insulation radius 204
- critical path method 427
- critical stress for compression members 288
- critical values of the F distribution 78
- critical values of X distribution 79
- crystallization processes 256
- cumulative binomial probabilities 80
- cumulative distribution functions 65
- current, electric 357
- cycles and processes 457
- cycles, refrigeration and HVAC 172
- cyclone 316, 317
- cylindrical pressure vessel 130

**D**

Darcy's law 292  
 Darcy-Weisbach equation 182  
 data quality objectives (DQO) for sampling soils and solids 330  
 data structures 412  
 dc machines 368  
 dechlorination of sulfite compounds 333  
 decibels and Bode plots 374  
 definition of safety 14  
 definitions used in ASME Y14.5 444  
 deflection of beams 135  
 deflectors and blades 187  
 delays in computer networks 379  
 De Morgan's law 64  
 De Morgan's theorems 391  
 density 176  
 density, specific volume, specific weight, and specific gravity 176  
 depletion MOSFETs (low and medium frequency) 388  
 depreciation 230  
 derivative for differential calculus 46  
 derivatives 49  
 design column strength, tied columns 278  
 design compressive strength 281  
 design flexural strength 281  
 design of reinforced concrete components (ACI 318-14) 274  
 design of steel components (ANSI/AISC 360-16) LRFD, ASD 281  
 design shear strength 281  
 determinants 59  
 deviations for shafts 443  
 dew-point temperature 149  
 difference equations 61, 370  
 differential amplifier 384  
 differential calculus 46  
 differential equations 52  
 Diffie-Hellman key-exchange protocol 418  
 diffusion 116, 241  
 diffusion coefficient 116  
 digital signal processing 372  
 dimensional analysis 196  
 dimensional homogeneity 196  
 diodes 386  
 directed graphs, or digraphs, of relation 35  
 discrete math 35  
 disinfection 346  
 dispersion, mean, median, and mode values 63  
 distillation, mass transfer 244  
 distributive law 64  
 Dittus-Boelter equation 210  
 dose-response curves 22  
 double-sideband modulation 376  
 drag coefficient 201  
 drag coefficient for spheres, disks, and cylinders 201

drag force 183  
 dual linear program 419  
 ductile materials 449  
 Dupuit's formula 292  
 dynamics 101, 451  
 dynamics of mechanisms 437

**E**

earned-value analysis 310  
 earthwork formulas 309  
 effective half-life 329  
 effective length factor,  $K$  287  
 effective or RMS values 361  
 effective stack height 314, 315  
 effect of overburden pressure 327  
 elastic strain energy 137  
 electrical and computer engineering 356  
 electrical properties of materials 117  
 electrical safety 22  
 electrical units 356  
 electrochemistry 92  
 electromagnetic dynamic fields 369  
 electrostatic fields 356  
 electrostatic precipitator efficiency 319  
 electrostatics 356  
 elementary statically indeterminate structures by force method of analysis 270  
 ellipse 40  
 endianness 411  
 endurance limit for steels 450  
 endurance limit modifying factors 450  
 energy 348  
 energy equation 180  
 energy line (Bernoulli equation) 181  
 energy sources and conversion processes 348  
 engineering economics 229  
 engineering strain 129  
 enhancement MOSFET (low and medium frequency) 388  
 enthalpy 149  
 enthalpy curves 160  
 entropy 150  
 environmental engineering 312  
 equations of state (EOS) 145  
 equilibrium constant of a chemical reaction 85  
 equilibrium requirements, system of forces 94  
 ergonomics 31  
 ergonomics: hearing 431  
 error coding 378  
 essential prime implicant 392  
 ethers 89  
 ethics 4  
 Euler's approximation 62  
 Euler's equation 181  
 Euler's Identity 38  
 Euler's or forward rectangular rule 62  
 evapotranspiration rates for grasses 291  
 exergy (availability) 150

expected values 65  
 exponentially weighted moving average 423  
 exposure 28  
 external flow 209

## F

facility planning 425  
 facultative pond 334  
 families of organic compounds 90  
 fan characteristics 191  
 fans, pumps, and compressors 194  
 Faraday's law 85  
 fate and transport 321  
 fatigue 121  
 FE exam specifications 473  
 Fick's First Law 241  
 Fick's Second Law 241  
 film boiling 212  
 film condensation of a pure vapor 213  
 filtration equations 341  
 finite queue, single server models 421  
 finite state machine 35  
 fins 208  
 fire hydrant: calculating rated capacity 299  
 fire hydrant discharging to atmosphere 299  
 fire sprinkler discharge 299  
 firewalls 414  
 first law of thermodynamics 146  
 first-order control system model 227  
 first-order linear difference equation 61, 371  
 first-order linear homogeneous differential equations  
   with constant coefficients 52  
 first-order linear nonhomogeneous differential  
   equations 52  
 fits, manufacturability 442  
 fixed blade 187  
 flammability 20  
 flammable gases 21  
 flat bars or angles, bolted or welded steel 282  
 flat roof snow loads 273  
 flip-flops 392  
 flow chart definition 414  
 flow in closed circuits 200  
 flow in noncircular conduits 183  
 flow reactors, steady state 240  
 flow through a packed bed 184  
 fluid flow characterization 181  
 fluid flow machinery 190  
 fluid flow measurement 194  
 fluid mechanics 176  
 force 94  
 forced convection boiling 210  
 forced vibration 112  
 force method of analysis 270  
 forces on submerged surfaces and the center of  
   pressure 179  
 forecasting 311, 423

Fourier series 54  
 Fourier transform 53  
 Fourier transform and its inverse 373  
 Fourier transform pairs 56  
 Fourier transform theorems 56  
 fracture toughness 122  
 frame deflection by unit load method 269  
 free convection boiling 211  
 free flow speed 304  
 free vibration 111  
 freezing point depression 85  
 frequency modulation 377  
 frequency response and impulse response 373  
 Freundlich isotherm 337  
 friction 96, 108  
 full duplex (Duplex) 408  
 fundamental constants 2  
 fundamental relationships 420

## G

gamma function 68  
 gas flux 327  
 gauge factor (GF) 221  
 Gaussian distribution 67  
 Gauss' law 356  
 general requirements for licensure 8  
 geometric dimensioning and tolerancing (GD&T) 444, 446  
 geometric progression 51  
 geotechnical 259  
 Gibbs free energy 151  
 Gibbs phase rule 154  
 Globally Harmonized System (GHS) of Classification 16  
 Goodman theory, modified 449  
 grade line, hydraulic gradient 181  
 granular storage and process safety 21  
 graph traversal 412  
 gravity model 306  
 greenhouse gases: global warming potential 354  
 Greenshields model 306

## H

half-duplex 408  
 half-life 329  
 hardenability 123  
 hazard assessments 15  
 hazardous materials classification 15  
 Hazen-Williams equation 184, 297  
 head loss due to flow 182  
 heat 248  
 heat exchangers 214  
 heats of reaction 151  
 heats of reaction, solution, formation, and combustion 85  
 heat transfer 203  
 heat-transfer rate equations 203  
 Helmholtz free energy 151  
 Henry's law at constant temperature 152  
 highway pavement design 308

hollow, thin-walled shafts 134  
 Hooke's law 133  
 horizontal curves 302  
 horizontal stress profiles and forces 263  
 humid volume, psychrometrics 149  
 HVAC 172, 454  
 hydraulic conductivity 291  
 hydraulic elements graph 294  
 hydraulic gradient (grade line) 181  
 hydraulic jump 297  
 hydraulic permeability 291  
 hydraulic residence time 334  
 hydrologic mass balance (budget) 290  
 hydrology/water resources 290  
 hydropower 349  
 hypothesis testing 70

## I

ICMP type and code values 404  
 ICMPv6 type and code values 405  
 ideal gas constants 2  
 ideal gas mixtures 144  
 ideal-impulse sampling 377  
 identity matrix 58  
 impact 108  
 impact test 125  
 impulse and momentum 107  
 impulse-momentum principle 186  
 impulse turbine 188  
 incidence variable values 33  
 incineration 319  
 indefinite integrals 50  
 indoor air quality 319  
 induced voltage 357  
 induction machines 367  
 industrial and systems engineering 419  
 inflation 230  
 influence lines for beams and trusses 268  
 instrumental methods of analysis 87  
 instrumentation 219  
 intake rates 29  
 integral calculus 48  
 intellectual property 12  
 interaction effects 424  
 interest rate tables 232  
 intermediate- and long-length columns 448  
 internal flow 209  
 international tolerance grades 443  
 internet control message protocol 404  
 internet protocol addressing 395  
 internet protocol version 4 header 397  
 internet protocol version 6 header 400  
 inventory models 425  
 inverse transform method 422  
 IPv4 special address blocks 396  
 IPv6 special address blocks 397  
 iron-iron carbide phase diagram 128  
 irreversibility 151  
 isentropic flow relationships 189

## J

jet propulsion 187  
 job safety analysis 15  
 job sequencing 427  
 joining methods 438  
 junction field effect transistors (JFETs) 388

## K

Kelvin-Planck statement of second law 149  
 ketones 89  
 kiln formula 319  
 kinematics, dynamics, and vibrations 451  
 kinematics of a rigid body 109  
 kinematics of mechanisms 451  
 kinetic energy 106, 111  
 Kirchhoff's laws 358  
 Kline-McClintock equation 225

## L

lake classification 291  
 landfill 326  
 Langmuir isotherm 337  
 Laplace transforms 57  
 lateral-torsional buckling 281  
 law of compound or joint probability 65  
 laws of probability 64  
 learning curves 425  
 least squares 69  
 Le Chatelier's principle for chemical equilibrium 85  
 Le Chatelier's Rule 21  
 level of service (LOS) 306  
 lever rule 127  
 Lewis equation 437  
 L'Hospital's Rule 48  
 life-cycle analysis 13  
 lime-soda softening equations 342  
 limiting reactant 154  
 limits and fits, manufacturability 441  
 limits for longitudinal reinforcements 278  
 linear combinations 68  
 linear momentum 107  
 linear programming 419  
 linear regression and goodness of fit 69  
 line balancing 427  
 live load reduction 272  
 load combinations using allowable stress design (ASD) 272  
 load combinations using strength design (LRFD) 272  
 loads: exposure factor 273  
 loads: importance factor 273  
 loads, structural design 272  
 loads: thermal factor 273  
 local area network (LAN) 406

logarithm identities 37  
 logarithms 36  
 logic operations and Boolean algebra 391  
 logit models 307  
 lossless transmission lines 370  
 LRFD 272, 281

## M

Mach number 188  
 magnetic fields 357  
 Manning's equation 184, 297  
 manometers 178  
 manufacturability 441  
 mass calculations 321  
 mass moment of inertia 110  
 mass transfer 241  
 mass-transfer analogy 248  
 material balance 319  
 material handling 427  
 material properties 137  
 materials science/structure of matter 116  
 mathematics 35  
 matrices 58  
 matrix of relation 35  
 matrix properties 59  
 matrix transpose 58  
 maximum power-transfer theorem 362  
 maxterm, switching function terminology 392  
 McCabe's cyclomatic complexity 418  
 McCabe-Thiele 246  
 mean 63  
 mean particle sizes calculated from particle size distributions (PSDs) 253  
 measurement 219  
 measurement error 68  
 measurement uncertainty 69, 225  
 mechanical design and analysis 433  
 mechanical engineering 433  
 mechanical properties of materials 118  
 median 63  
 member fixed-end moments (magnitudes) 271  
 memory/storage types 409  
 mensuration of areas and volumes 40  
 mesh, network topologies 407  
 methanol requirement for biologically treated wastewater 333  
 metric prefixes 1  
 microbial kinetics 321  
 microprocessor architecture 410  
 minimum heat flux 212  
 minor losses in pipe fittings, contractions, and expansions 182  
 minterm, switching function terminology 392  
 mode 63  
 model law 6  
 model rules 4  
 modified accelerated cost recovery system

(MACRS) 230  
 Mohr's Circle--Stress, 2D 132  
 molality of solutions 85  
 molar volume of an ideal gas 85  
 Mollier (h, s) diagram for steam 158  
 moment of inertia 95  
 moment of inertia parallel axis theorem 95  
 moment of momentum 107  
 moments (couples) 94  
 momentum depth diagram 296  
 Monod kinetics 322  
 Moody, Darcy, or Stanton friction factor diagram 200  
 moving average 423  
 moving blade 188  
 moving concentrated load sets 268  
 multicore, computer systems 410  
 multipath pipeline problems 186  
 multiple server model 422  
 multiplication of two matrices 58  
 municipal solid wastes (MSW) 353

## N

National Research Council (NRC) trickling filter performance 332  
 natural (free) convection 213  
 Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) 290  
 Nernst equation 86  
 net energy exchange by radiation between two black bodies 217  
 net tensile strain 275  
 network optimization 419  
 network topologies 406  
 Newton's method for root extraction 61  
 Newton's method of minimization 61  
 Newton's second law for a particle 105  
 NIOSH formula 31  
 nmap 414  
 NOAEL 25  
 noise pollution 33  
 nomenclature for areas and volumes 40  
 non-annual compounding 230  
 noncarcinogens 25  
 non-constant acceleration 105  
 normal and tangential components 103  
 normal and tangential kinetics for planar problems 106  
 normal distribution (Gaussian distribution) 67  
 normality of solutions 85  
 normal shock relationships 189  
 Norton equivalent 359  
 nuclear energy 350  
 nucleate boiling 211  
 number systems and codes 390  
 numerical integration 62  
 numerical methods 61  
 numerical solution of ordinary differential equations 62

**O**

one-dimensional fluid flow 180  
 one-dimensional motion of a particle (constant mass) 105  
 one-way analysis of variance (ANOVA) 70  
 open-channel flow and/or pipe flow of water 184  
 open-system exergy (availability) 151  
 open thermodynamic system 146  
 operational amplifiers 382  
 orifice discharging freely into atmosphere 185  
 orifices, fluid flow measurement 195  
 Otto cycle 171  
 outdoor air changes per hour 320  
 overburden pressure 327  
 oxidation 92

**P**

pan evaporation 290  
 parabola 40  
 parabolic rule 62  
 paraboloid of revolution 43  
 parallel, communication methodologies 408  
 parallelogram 42  
 parallel resonance 363  
 Parseval's theorem 374  
 particle curvilinear motion 102  
 particle kinematics 101  
 particle kinetics 105  
 particle rectilinear motion 102  
 partition coefficients 323  
 patents 12  
 peak heat flux 211  
 peak hour factor (PHF) 300  
 penetration testing—authorized vulnerability testing 416  
 people requirements, facility planning 425  
 percent elongation 129  
 percent of outdoor air 320  
 percent reduction in area (RA) 129  
 performance of components 194  
 periodic table of elements 88  
 permissible noise exposure 34  
 permutations and combinations 64  
 PERT 428  
 pH 86  
 phase relations 154  
 phasor transforms of sinusoids 361  
 P-h diagrams 159, 160, 164  
 phosphorus removal equations 342  
 photoelectric effect 117  
 photosynthesis 87  
 pH sensors 223  
 pictograms, GHS 17, 18  
 piezoelectric effect 117, 221  
 piezoresistive effect 221  
 pin fin 208  
 pipe bends, enlargements, and contractions 186  
 pipe flow of water 184  
 pipeline type 410  
 plane circular motion 103  
 plane frame 271  
 plane motion of a rigid body 109  
 plane truss 271  
 plane truss: method of joints 97  
 plane truss: method of sections 97  
 plant location 426  
 pointers, software engineering 411  
 polar coordinate system 37  
 polymer additives 126  
 polymers 126  
 pool boiling 210  
 population modeling 328  
 population projection equations 328  
 port scanning 416  
 possible cathode reactions (reduction) 116  
 potential energy 106  
 pound-force 1  
 pound-mass 1  
 power absorbed by a resistive element 358  
 power and efficiency 107  
 power conversion 385  
 power screws 435  
 power series 51  
 power transmission 435  
 pressure 176  
 pressure curves 160  
 pressure drop for laminar flow 183  
 pressure field in a static liquid 177  
 pressure sensors 223  
 pressure versus enthalpy curves for Refrigerant 134a 160  
 pressure versus enthalpy curves for Refrigerant 410A 164  
 primary bonds 116  
 prime implicant 392  
 principal stresses 131  
 principle of angular impulse and momentum 111  
 principle of superposition 135  
 principle of work and energy 106  
 principles of one-dimensional fluid flow 180  
 prismoid 42  
 probability and density functions: means and variances 84  
 probability density function 65  
 probability functions, distributions, and expected values 65  
 process capability 420  
 product of inertia 96, 98  
 professional practice 4  
 progressions and series 51  
 projectile motion 104  
 propagation of error 68  
 properties for two-phase (vapor-liquid) systems 143  
 properties of air 313  
 properties of liquid 165  
 properties of materials 117  
 properties of materials: electrical 117

properties of materials: mechanical 118  
 properties of metals 119  
 properties of saturated liquid and saturated vapor 161  
 properties of series 51  
 properties of single-component systems 142  
 properties of water 198, 199  
 protocol definitions 394  
 psychrometric charts 174, 175  
 psychrometrics 149  
 pulse-amplitude modulation--natural sampling 378  
 pulse-code modulation 378  
 pump power equation 191  
 PVT behavior 143

## Q

quadratic equation 36  
 quadric surface (sphere) 36  
 queueing models 420

## R

radial and transverse components for planar motion 101  
 radiation 203, 216, 329  
 radiation: types of bodies 216  
 radius of gyration 96  
 rainfall 290  
 randomized complete block design 71  
 random variate generation 422  
 Rankine cycle 171  
 Raoult's law for vapor-liquid equilibrium 152  
 rapid mix and flocculator design 343  
 rate-of-return 230  
 rate of transfer as a function of gradients at the wall 249  
 rational formula 290  
 RC and RL transients 363  
 real gas 145  
 recommended weight limit (RWL) 31  
 rectangular fin 208  
 reduction, electrochemistry 92  
 reference dose (RfD) 25  
 Refrigerant 134a (1,1,1,2-Tetrafluoroethane) properties  
   of saturated liquid and saturated vapor 161  
 Refrigerant 410A [R-32/125 (50/50)] properties of liquid  
   on bubble line and vapor on dew line 165  
 refrigeration and HVAC 172  
 refrigeration cycle 171  
 regular polygon 42  
 reinforced concrete beams 275  
 relationship between hardness and tensile strength 122  
 relative humidity 102  
 relative motion 102  
 reliability 424  
 removal and inactivation requirements 346  
 removal credits and inactivation requirements for  
   various treatment technologies 347  
 representative values of fracture toughness 122  
 residual, linear regression and goodness of fit 69  
 resistance factors 275

resistance temperature detector (RTD) 219  
 resistivity 357  
 resistors in series and parallel 358  
 resolution of a force 94  
 resonance 363  
 resultant force (two dimensions) 94  
 retaining walls 264  
 reversed Carnot cycle 171  
 reverse osmosis 344  
 Reynolds number 181  
 right circular cone 43  
 right circular cylinder 43  
 rigid body motion about a fixed axis 111  
 rigorous vapor-liquid equilibrium 153  
 risk 14  
 risk assessment/toxicology 22  
 RMS values 361  
 roots 38  
 rotating machines 366  
 RSA public-key cryptosystem 418  
 runoff 290

## S

safety 14  
 safety and prevention 14  
 safety data sheet (SDS) 19  
 sample correlation coefficient and coefficient of  
   determination 70  
 sampled messages 377  
 sample size 75  
 sampling 224  
 sampling and monitoring 330  
 saturated boiling 210  
 scaling laws; affinity laws 194  
 schedule performance index 311  
 screw thread 97  
 SCS rainfall-runoff 290  
 second law of thermodynamics 149  
 second-order control system models 227  
 second-order linear difference equation 371  
 second-order linear homogeneous differential equations with  
   constant coefficients 53  
 security triad 417  
 selected properties of air 313  
 selected rules of nomenclature in organic chemistry 89  
 selectivity, chemical reaction equilibria 154  
 semiconductors 120  
 serial, communications methodologies 408  
 series resonance 363  
 servomotors and generators 369  
 settling equations 340  
 sewage flow ratio curves 294  
 Shannon channel capacity formula 380  
 shape factor (view factor, configuration factor) relations 216  
 shear 281  
 shearing force and bending moment sign conventions 134

- shear stress-strain 129
  - short columns 278
  - Sieder-Tate equation 210
  - sieve conversion table 252
  - signal conditioning 225
  - signal words 20
  - significant figures 2
  - similitude 196
  - simplex, communication methodologies 408
  - simply supported beam slopes and deflections 139
  - Simpson's 1/3 Rule, area formula 310
  - Simpson's Rule/Parabolic Rule 62
  - simulation 422
  - sine-cosine relations and trigonometric identities 361
  - single server models 421
  - single-sideband modulation 376
  - singly-reinforced beams 275
  - slope failure along planar surface 265
  - societal considerations 13
  - Soderberg theory 449
  - software engineering 411
  - software process flows 413
  - software syntax guidelines 413
  - software testing 414
  - soil classification 265, 266
  - Soil Conservation Service (SCS) 290
  - soil landfill cover water balance 327
  - solar energy 352
  - solids handling 250
  - solids processing 253
  - solid-state electronics and devices 383
  - solid with sudden convection 206
  - solubility product 85
  - sorption zone 337
  - source equivalents 358
  - specific energy diagram 296
  - specific gravity 176
  - specific gravity for a solids slurry 332
  - specific humidity 149
  - specific volume 176
  - specific weight 176
  - sphere 41
  - spherical particles 202
  - springs 433
  - sprinkler K factors 299
  - stability, determinacy, and classification of structures 271
  - standard deviation charts 82
  - standard error of estimate 69
  - standard time determination 426
  - star, network topologies 407
  - state functions (properties) 142
  - statically determinate truss 97
  - static liquid 177
  - static loading failure theories 448
  - statics 94
  - statistical quality control 82
  - statistics 63
  - steady-flow systems 147
  - steam tables 156
  - steel beams 281
  - steel columns 281
  - steel tension members 282
  - Steinhart-Hart equation 220
  - Stokes' law 340
  - stopping sight distance 300
  - storativity 292
  - straight line equation 36
  - strain gauge 221
  - strength design 272
  - stress 121, 176
  - stress and strain 131
  - stresses in beams 134
  - stress, pressure, and viscosity 176
  - stress-strain curve for mild steel 129
  - structural analysis 268
  - structural design 272
  - student's t-distribution 77
  - sub-cooled boiling 210
  - submerged orifice operating under steady-flow conditions 185
  - sum of squares of random error 424
  - superheated water tables 157
  - surface tension and capillarity 177
  - surface water system hydrologic budget 290
  - sustainability 355
  - sweep-through concentration change in a vessel 30
  - switching function terminology 392
  - synchronous machines 367
  - system performance studies 226
  - systems engineering 419
  - systems of forces 94
- T**
- taxation 230
  - Taylor's series 52
  - Taylor tool life formula 428
  - t-distribution 68
  - temperature conversion 1
  - temperature sensors 219
  - tension members 282
  - terminal velocities 202
  - tests for out of control 83
  - tests on means of normal distribution---variance known 73
  - tests on means of normal distribution---variance unknown 73
  - tests on variances of normal distribution with unknown mean 74
  - test statistics 75
  - Theim equation 293
  - thermal and mechanical processing 116
  - thermal and physical property tables 168
  - thermal deformations 130
  - thermal properties 126
  - thermal resistance (R) 204

thermistors 220  
 thermocouple (TC) 220  
 thermodynamics 142  
 Thévenin equivalent 358  
 threading, computer systems 410  
 three-phase transformer connection diagrams 366  
 threshold limit value (TLV) 24  
 thyristor or silicon controlled rectifier (SCR) 386  
 torsion 133  
 torsional strain 133  
 torsional vibration 113  
 toxicity 19, 20, 23, 24  
 toxicology 22  
 trademarks 12  
 trade secrets 12  
 traffic flow relationships 306  
 traffic safety equations 307  
 traffic signal timing 300  
 transducer 219  
 transformers 365  
 transient conduction using the lumped capacitance model 205  
 transition boiling 212  
 transmission algorithms 379  
 transmission control protocol 401  
 transmissivity 292  
 transportation 299  
 transport phenomena--momentum, heat, and mass-transfer analogy 248  
 trapezoidal rule, area formulas 310  
 trapezoidal rule, numerical integration 62  
 tree, network topologies 407  
 tree traversal 412  
 trigonometric identities 361  
 trigonometry 38  
 trigonometry identities 39  
 truss deflection by unit load method 268  
 turbines 193  
 turns ratio 365  
 two-factor factorial designs 71  
 two first-order irreversible reactions in series 240  
 two irreversible reactions in parallel 240  
 two-stage cycle 172

## U

ultimate bearing capacity 264  
 ultrafiltration 345  
 uniaxial loading and deformation 130  
 uniaxial stress-strain 129  
 unified design provisions 277  
 Unified Soil Classification System 267  
 unit hydrograph 292  
 unit normal distribution 76  
 units in FE exam 1  
 unsaturated acyclic hydrocarbons 89  
 user datagram protocol 403

## V

Vadose zone penetration 324  
 vaporized liquids 30  
 vapor-liquid equilibrium (VLE) 152, 246  
 variable loading failure theories 449  
 variances 310  
 vectors 59  
 vectors: gradient, divergence, and curl 60  
 vectors: identities 60  
 velocity pressure exposure 274  
 Venturi meters 195  
 vertical curve formulas 309  
 vertical curves 301  
 vertical stress profiles 264  
 vertical stress profiles with surcharge 264  
 vibrations 451  
 viscosity 176  
 voltage 357  
 voltage regulation 369  
 volume flow rate of outdoor air 320

## W

wastes with fuel value 353  
 wastewater treatment and technologies 332  
 water resources 290  
 water treatment technologies 337  
 web vulnerability testing 416  
 weir formulas 297  
 well drawdown 292  
 wet-bulb temperature 149  
 wet solids: equilibrium moisture curves 251  
 Wheatstone bridge 223  
 wind energy 350  
 wind loads 274  
 wind turbines 351  
 work 107  
 work sampling formulas 428  
 W shapes available moment vs. unbraced length 286  
 W shapes dimensions and properties 284

## X

## Y

yield, chemical reaction equilibria 154  
 yielding 281

## Z

z-transforms 371

**Appendix: FE Exam Specifications**

Chemical.....474

Civil.....478

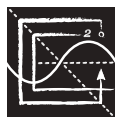
Electrical and Computer .....481

Environmental.....484

Industrial and Systems .....487

Mechanical.....490

Other Disciplines .....494



## Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) CHEMICAL CBT Exam Specifications

### Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations

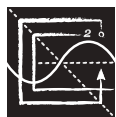
- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                                     | Number of Questions |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                                         | <b>6–9</b>          |
| A. Analytic geometry, logarithms, and trigonometry                                                                            |                     |
| B. Calculus (e.g., single-variable, integral, differential)                                                                   |                     |
| C. Differential equations (e.g., ordinary, partial, Laplace)                                                                  |                     |
| D. Numerical methods (e.g., error propagation, Taylor's series, curve fitting, Newton-Raphson, Fourier series)                |                     |
| E. Algebra (e.g., fundamentals, matrix algebra, systems of equations)                                                         |                     |
| F. Accuracy, precision, and significant figures                                                                               |                     |
| <b>2. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                                          | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial)                                                   |                     |
| B. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making                                                                       |                     |
| C. Hypothesis testing and design of experiments (e.g., t-test, outlier testing, analysis of the variance)                     |                     |
| D. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation, confidence intervals)                |                     |
| E. Regression and curve fitting                                                                                               |                     |
| F. Statistical control (e.g., control limits)                                                                                 |                     |
| <b>3. Engineering Sciences</b>                                                                                                | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Basic dynamics (e.g., friction, force, mass, acceleration, momentum)                                                       |                     |
| B. Work, energy, and power (as applied to particles or rigid bodies)                                                          |                     |
| C. Electricity, current, and voltage laws (e.g., charge, energy, current, voltage, power, Kirchhoff's law, Ohm's law)         |                     |
| <b>4. Materials Science</b>                                                                                                   | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Chemical, electrical, mechanical, and physical properties (e.g., effect of temperature, pressure, stress, strain, failure) |                     |
| B. Material types and compatibilities (e.g., engineered materials, ferrous and nonferrous metals)                             |                     |
| C. Corrosion mechanisms and control                                                                                           |                     |
| D. Polymers, ceramics, and composites                                                                                         |                     |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |              |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>5. Chemistry and Biology</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <b>7–11</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Inorganic chemistry (e.g., molarity, normality, molality, acids, bases, redox reactions, valence, solubility product, pH, pK, electrochemistry, periodic table)</li> <li>B. Organic chemistry (e.g., nomenclature, structure, balanced equations, reactions, synthesis)</li> <li>C. Analytical chemistry (e.g., wet chemistry and instrumental chemistry)</li> <li>D. Biochemistry, microbiology, and molecular biology (e.g., organization and function of the cell; Krebs, glycolysis, Calvin cycles; enzymes and protein chemistry; genetics; protein synthesis, translation, transcription)</li> <li>E. Bioprocessing (e.g., fermentation, biological treatment systems, aerobic, anaerobic process, nutrient removal)</li> </ul> |              |
| <b>6. Fluid Mechanics/Dynamics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>8–12</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Fluid properties</li> <li>B. Dimensionless numbers (e.g., Reynolds number)</li> <li>C. Mechanical energy balance (e.g., pipes, valves, fittings, pressure losses across packed beds, pipe networks)</li> <li>D. Bernoulli equation (hydrostatic pressure, velocity head)</li> <li>E. Laminar and turbulent flow</li> <li>F. Flow measurement (e.g., orifices, Venturi meters)</li> <li>G. Pumps, turbines, compressors, and vacuum systems</li> <li>H. Compressible flow and non-Newtonian fluids</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |              |
| <b>7. Thermodynamics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>8–12</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Thermodynamic properties of pure components and mixtures (e.g., specific volume, internal energy, enthalpy, entropy, free energy, ideal gas law)</li> <li>B. Properties data and phase diagrams of pure components and mixtures (e.g., steam tables, psychrometric charts, T-s, P-h, x-y, T-x-y)</li> <li>C. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., first law, second law)</li> <li>D. Thermodynamic processes (e.g., isothermal, adiabatic, isentropic, phase changes)</li> <li>E. Cyclic processes and efficiencies (e.g., power, refrigeration, heat pump)</li> <li>F. Phase equilibrium (e.g., fugacity, activity coefficient, Raoult's law)</li> <li>G. Chemical equilibrium</li> <li>H. Heats of reaction and mixing</li> </ul>              |              |
| <b>8. Material/Energy Balances</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>10–15</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Steady-state mass balance</li> <li>B. Unsteady-state mass balance</li> <li>C. Steady-state energy balance</li> <li>D. Unsteady-state energy balance</li> <li>E. Recycle/bypass processes</li> <li>F. Reactive systems (e.g., combustion)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |              |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |             |
|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>9. Heat Transfer</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <b>8–12</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Conductive heat transfer</li> <li>B. Convective heat transfer (natural and forced)</li> <li>C. Radiation heat transfer</li> <li>D. Heat-transfer coefficients (e.g., overall, local, fouling)</li> <li>E. Heat-transfer equipment, operation, and design (e.g., double pipe, shell and tube, fouling, number of transfer units, log-mean temperature difference, flow configuration)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
| <b>10. Mass Transfer and Separation</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             | <b>8–12</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Molecular diffusion (e.g., steady and unsteady state, physical property estimation)</li> <li>B. Convective mass transfer (e.g., mass-transfer coefficient, eddy diffusion)</li> <li>C. Separation systems (e.g., distillation, absorption, extraction, membrane processes, adsorption)</li> <li>D. Equilibrium stage methods (e.g., graphical methods, McCabe-Thiele, efficiency)</li> <li>E. Continuous contact methods (e.g., number of transfer units, height equivalent to a theoretical plate, height of transfer unit, number of theoretical plates)</li> <li>F. Humidification, drying, and evaporation</li> </ul> |             |
| <b>11. Solids Handling</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>3–5</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Particle properties (e.g., surface and bulk forces, particle size distribution)</li> <li>B. Processing (e.g., crushing, grinding, crystallization)</li> <li>C. Transportation and storage (e.g., belts, pneumatic, slurries, tanks, hoppers)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |             |
| <b>12. Chemical Reaction Engineering</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>7–11</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Reaction rates and order</li> <li>B. Rate constant (e.g., Arrhenius function)</li> <li>C. Conversion, yield, and selectivity</li> <li>D. Type of reactions (e.g., series, parallel, forward, reverse, homogeneous, heterogeneous, biological)</li> <li>E. Reactor types (e.g., batch, semibatch, continuous stirred tank, plug flow, gas phase, liquid phase)</li> <li>F. Catalysis (e.g., mechanisms, biocatalysis, physical properties)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                      |             |
| <b>13. Economics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <b>4–6</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Time value of money (e.g., present worth, annual worth, future worth, rate of return)</li> <li>B. Economic analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost, optimal economic life)</li> <li>C. Uncertainty (e.g., expected value and risk)</li> <li>D. Project selection (e.g., comparison of projects with unequal lives, lease/buy/make, depreciation, discounted cash flow)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |             |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |             |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>14. Process Design</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>7–11</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Process flow diagrams and piping and instrumentation diagrams</li> <li>B. Equipment selection (e.g., sizing and scale-up)</li> <li>C. Equipment and facilities cost estimation (e.g., cost indices, equipment costing)</li> <li>D. Process design and optimization (e.g., sustainability, efficiency, green engineering, inherently safer design, evaluation of specifications, product design)</li> <li>E. Design standards (e.g., regulatory, ASTM, ISO, OSHA)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |
| <b>15. Process Control</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>4–6</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Dynamics (e.g., first- and second-order processes, gains and time constants, stability, damping, and transfer functions)</li> <li>B. Control strategies (e.g., feedback, feedforward, cascade, ratio, PID controller tuning, alarms, other safety equipment)</li> <li>C. Control loop design and hardware (e.g., matching measured and manipulated variables, sensors, control valves, conceptual process control, distributed control system [DCS] programming, programmable logic controller [PLC] programming, interlocks)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
| <b>16. Safety, Health, and Environment</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>5–8</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Hazardous properties of materials, including SDS (e.g., corrosivity, flammability, toxicity, reactivity, handling, storage, transportation)</li> <li>B. Industrial hygiene (e.g., toxicity, noise, PPE, ergonomics)</li> <li>C. Process safety, risk assessment, and hazard analysis (e.g., layer of protection analysis, hazard and operability [HAZOP] studies, fault and event tree analysis, dispersion modeling)</li> <li>D. Overpressure and underpressure protection (e.g., relief, redundant control, inherently safe)</li> <li>E. Waste minimization, waste treatment, and regulation (e.g., air, water, solids, RCRA, CWA, other EPA, OSHA)</li> <li>F. Reactivity hazards (e.g., inerting, runaway reactions, compatibility)</li> </ul> |             |
| <b>17. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>3–5</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies)</li> <li>B. Agreements, contracts, and contract law (e.g., noncompete, nondisclosure, memorandum of understanding)</li> <li>C. Public health, safety, and welfare (e.g., public protection issues, licensing, professional liability, regulatory issues)</li> <li>D. Intellectual property (e.g., copyright, trade secrets, patents, trademarks)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |             |



## Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) CIVIL CBT Exam Specifications

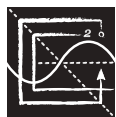
### Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                              | Number of Questions |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics and Statistics</b>                                                                                   | <b>8–12</b>         |
| A. Analytic geometry                                                                                                   |                     |
| B. Single-variable calculus                                                                                            |                     |
| C. Vector operations                                                                                                   |                     |
| D. Statistics (e.g., distributions, mean, mode, standard deviation, confidence interval, regression and curve fitting) |                     |
| <b>2. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                             | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Codes of ethics (professional and technical societies)                                                              |                     |
| B. Professional liability                                                                                              |                     |
| C. Licensure                                                                                                           |                     |
| D. Contracts and contract law                                                                                          |                     |
| <b>3. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                        | <b>5–8</b>          |
| A. Time value of money (e.g., equivalence, present worth, equivalent annual worth, future worth, rate of return)       |                     |
| B. Cost (e.g., fixed, variable, direct and indirect labor, incremental, average, sunk)                                 |                     |
| C. Analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost, life cycle, sustainability, renewable energy)                              |                     |
| D. Uncertainty (e.g., expected value and risk)                                                                         |                     |
| <b>4. Statics</b>                                                                                                      | <b>8–12</b>         |
| A. Resultants of force systems                                                                                         |                     |
| B. Equivalent force systems                                                                                            |                     |
| C. Equilibrium of rigid bodies                                                                                         |                     |
| D. Frames and trusses                                                                                                  |                     |
| E. Centroid of area                                                                                                    |                     |
| F. Area moments of inertia                                                                                             |                     |
| G. Static friction                                                                                                     |                     |

|                                                                                                     |              |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>5. Dynamics</b>                                                                                  | <b>4–6</b>   |
| A. Kinematics (e.g., particles, rigid bodies)                                                       |              |
| B. Mass moments of inertia                                                                          |              |
| C. Force acceleration (e.g., particles, rigid bodies)                                               |              |
| D. Work, energy, and power (e.g., particles, rigid bodies)                                          |              |
| <b>6. Mechanics of Materials</b>                                                                    | <b>7–11</b>  |
| A. Shear and moment diagrams                                                                        |              |
| B. Stresses and strains (e.g., diagrams, axial, torsion, bending, shear, thermal)                   |              |
| C. Deformations (e.g., axial, torsion, bending, thermal)                                            |              |
| D. Combined stresses, principal stresses, and Mohr's circle                                         |              |
| E. Elastic and plastic deformations                                                                 |              |
| <b>7. Materials</b>                                                                                 | <b>5–8</b>   |
| A. Mix design of concrete and asphalt                                                               |              |
| B. Test methods and specifications of metals, concrete, aggregates, asphalt, and wood               |              |
| C. Physical and mechanical properties of metals, concrete, aggregates, asphalt, and wood            |              |
| <b>8. Fluid Mechanics</b>                                                                           | <b>6–9</b>   |
| A. Flow measurement                                                                                 |              |
| B. Fluid properties                                                                                 |              |
| C. Fluid statics                                                                                    |              |
| D. Energy, impulse, and momentum of fluids                                                          |              |
| <b>9. Surveying</b>                                                                                 | <b>6–9</b>   |
| A. Angles, distances, and trigonometry                                                              |              |
| B. Area computations                                                                                |              |
| C. Earthwork and volume computations                                                                |              |
| D. Coordinate systems (e.g., state plane, latitude/longitude)                                       |              |
| E. Leveling (e.g., differential, elevations, percent grades)                                        |              |
| <b>10. Water Resources and Environmental Engineering</b>                                            | <b>10–15</b> |
| A. Basic hydrology (e.g., infiltration, rainfall, runoff, watersheds)                               |              |
| B. Basic hydraulics (e.g., Manning equation, Bernoulli theorem, open-channel flow)                  |              |
| C. Pumps                                                                                            |              |
| D. Water distribution systems                                                                       |              |
| E. Flood control (e.g., dams, routing, spillways)                                                   |              |
| F. Stormwater (e.g., detention, routing, quality)                                                   |              |
| G. Collection systems (e.g., wastewater, stormwater)                                                |              |
| H. Groundwater (e.g., flow, wells, drawdown)                                                        |              |
| I. Water quality (e.g., ground and surface, basic water chemistry)                                  |              |
| J. Testing and standards (e.g., water, wastewater, air, noise)                                      |              |
| K. Water and wastewater treatment (e.g., biological processes, softening, drinking water treatment) |              |

- 11. Structural Engineering** **10–15**
- A. Analysis of statically determinant beams, columns, trusses, and frames
  - B. Deflection of statically determinant beams, trusses, and frames
  - C. Column analysis (e.g., buckling, boundary conditions)
  - D. Structural determinacy and stability analysis of beams, trusses, and frames
  - E. Elementary statically indeterminate structures
  - F. Loads, load combinations, and load paths (e.g., dead, live, lateral, influence lines and moving loads, tributary areas)
  - G. Design of steel components (e.g., codes and design philosophies, beams, columns, tension members, connections)
  - H. Design of reinforced concrete components (e.g., codes and design philosophies, beams, columns)
- 12. Geotechnical Engineering** **10–15**
- A. Index properties and soil classifications
  - B. Phase relations
  - C. Laboratory and field tests
  - D. Effective stress
  - E. Stability of retaining structures (e.g., active/passive/at-rest pressure)
  - F. Shear strength
  - G. Bearing capacity
  - H. Foundation types (e.g., spread footings, deep foundations, wall footings, mats)
  - I. Consolidation and differential settlement
  - J. Slope stability (e.g., fills, embankments, cuts, dams)
  - K. Soil stabilization (e.g., chemical additives, geosynthetics)
- 13. Transportation Engineering** **9–14**
- A. Geometric design (e.g., streets, highways, intersections)
  - B. Pavement system design (e.g., thickness, subgrade, drainage, rehabilitation)
  - C. Traffic capacity and flow theory
  - D. Traffic control devices
  - E. Transportation planning (e.g., travel forecast modeling, safety, trip generation)
- 14. Construction Engineering** **8–12**
- A. Project administration (e.g., documents, management, procurement, project delivery methods)
  - B. Construction operations and methods (e.g., safety, equipment, productivity analysis, temporary erosion control)
  - C. Project controls (e.g., earned value, scheduling, allocation of resources, activity relationships)
  - D. Construction estimating
  - E. Interpretation of engineering drawings



---

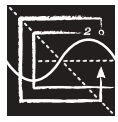
**Fundamentals of Engineering (FE)**  
**ELECTRICAL AND COMPUTER CBT Exam Specifications**  
**Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations**

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                       | Number of Questions |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                           | <b>11–17</b>        |
| A. Algebra and trigonometry                                                                                     |                     |
| B. Complex numbers                                                                                              |                     |
| C. Discrete mathematics                                                                                         |                     |
| D. Analytic geometry                                                                                            |                     |
| E. Calculus (e.g., differential, integral, single-variable, multivariable)                                      |                     |
| F. Ordinary differential equations                                                                              |                     |
| G. Linear algebra                                                                                               |                     |
| H. Vector analysis                                                                                              |                     |
| <b>2. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                            | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation)                        |                     |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial, conditional probability)            |                     |
| C. Expected value (weighted average)                                                                            |                     |
| <b>3. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                      | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Codes of ethics (e.g., professional and technical societies, NCEES <i>Model Law</i> and <i>Model Rules</i> ) |                     |
| B. Intellectual property (e.g., copyright, trade secrets, patents, trademarks)                                  |                     |
| C. Safety (e.g., grounding, material safety data, PPE, radiation protection)                                    |                     |
| <b>4. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                 | <b>5–8</b>          |
| A. Time value of money (e.g., present value, future value, annuities)                                           |                     |
| B. Cost estimation                                                                                              |                     |
| C. Risk identification                                                                                          |                     |
| D. Analysis (e.g., cost-benefit, trade-off, breakeven)                                                          |                     |

|                                                                                                                        |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>5. Properties of Electrical Materials</b>                                                                           | <b>4–6</b>   |
| A. Semiconductor materials (e.g., tunneling, diffusion/drift current, energy bands, doping bands, p-n theory)          |              |
| B. Electrical (e.g., conductivity, resistivity, permittivity, magnetic permeability, noise)                            |              |
| C. Thermal (e.g., conductivity, expansion)                                                                             |              |
| <b>6. Circuit Analysis (DC and AC Steady State)</b>                                                                    | <b>11–17</b> |
| A. KCL, KVL                                                                                                            |              |
| B. Series/parallel equivalent circuits                                                                                 |              |
| C. Thevenin and Norton theorems                                                                                        |              |
| D. Node and loop analysis                                                                                              |              |
| E. Waveform analysis (e.g., RMS, average, frequency, phase, wavelength)                                                |              |
| F. Phasors                                                                                                             |              |
| G. Impedance                                                                                                           |              |
| <b>7. Linear Systems</b>                                                                                               | <b>5–8</b>   |
| A. Frequency/transient response                                                                                        |              |
| B. Resonance                                                                                                           |              |
| C. Laplace transforms                                                                                                  |              |
| D. Transfer functions                                                                                                  |              |
| <b>8. Signal Processing</b>                                                                                            | <b>5–8</b>   |
| A. Sampling (e.g., aliasing, Nyquist theorem)                                                                          |              |
| B. Analog filters                                                                                                      |              |
| C. Digital filters (e.g., difference equations, Z-transforms)                                                          |              |
| <b>9. Electronics</b>                                                                                                  | <b>7–11</b>  |
| A. Models, biasing, and performance of discrete devices (e.g., diodes, transistors, thyristors)                        |              |
| B. Amplifiers (e.g., single-stage/common emitter, differential, biasing)                                               |              |
| C. Operational amplifiers (e.g., ideal, nonideal)                                                                      |              |
| D. Instrumentation (e.g., measurements, data acquisition, transducers)                                                 |              |
| E. Power electronics (e.g., rectifiers, inverters, converters)                                                         |              |
| <b>10. Power Systems</b>                                                                                               | <b>8–12</b>  |
| A. Power theory (e.g., power factor, single and three phase, voltage regulation)                                       |              |
| B. Transmission and distribution (e.g., real and reactive losses, efficiency, voltage drop, delta and wye connections) |              |
| C. Transformers (e.g., single-phase and three-phase connections, reflected impedance)                                  |              |
| D. Motors and generators (e.g., synchronous, induction, dc)                                                            |              |
| <b>11. Electromagnetics</b>                                                                                            | <b>4–6</b>   |
| A. Electrostatics/magnetostatics (e.g., spatial relationships, vector analysis)                                        |              |
| B. Electrodynamics (e.g., Maxwell equations, wave propagation)                                                         |              |
| C. Transmission lines (high frequency)                                                                                 |              |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |             |
|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>12. Control Systems</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <b>6–9</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Block diagrams (e.g. feedforward, feedback)</li> <li>B. Bode plots</li> <li>C. Closed-loop response, open-loop response, and stability</li> <li>D. Controller performance (e.g., steady-state errors, settling time, overshoot)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                             |             |
| <b>13. Communications</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | <b>5–8</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Basic modulation/demodulation concepts (e.g., AM, FM, PCM)</li> <li>B. Fourier transforms/Fourier series</li> <li>C. Multiplexing (e.g., time division, frequency division, code division)</li> <li>D. Digital communications</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                               |             |
| <b>14. Computer Networks</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>4–6</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Routing and switching</li> <li>B. Network topologies (e.g., mesh, ring, star)</li> <li>C. Network types (e.g., LAN, WAN, internet)</li> <li>D. Network models (e.g., OSI, TCP/IP)</li> <li>E. Network intrusion detection and prevention (e.g., firewalls, endpoint detection, network detection)</li> <li>F. Security (e.g., port scanning, network vulnerability testing, web vulnerability testing, penetration testing, security triad)</li> </ul> |             |
| <b>15. Digital Systems</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       | <b>8–12</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Number systems</li> <li>B. Boolean logic</li> <li>C. Logic gates and circuits</li> <li>D. Logic minimization (e.g., SOP, POS, Karnaugh maps)</li> <li>E. Flip-flops and counters</li> <li>F. Programmable logic devices and gate arrays</li> <li>G. State machine design</li> <li>H. Timing (e.g., diagrams, asynchronous inputs, race conditions and other hazards)</li> </ul>                                                                        |             |
| <b>16. Computer Systems</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <b>5–8</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Microprocessors</li> <li>B. Memory technology and systems</li> <li>C. Interfacing</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
| <b>17. Software Engineering</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>4–6</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Algorithms (e.g., sorting, searching, complexity, big-O)</li> <li>B. Data structures (e.g., lists, trees, vectors, structures, arrays)</li> <li>C. Software implementation (e.g., iteration, conditionals, recursion, control flow, scripting, testing)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                     |             |



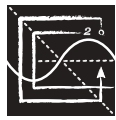
## **Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) ENVIRONMENTAL CBT Exam Specifications Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations**

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| <b>Knowledge</b>                                                                                                            | <b>Number of Questions</b> |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                                       | <b>5–8</b>                 |
| A. Analytic geometry and trigonometry                                                                                       |                            |
| B. Algebraic equations and roots                                                                                            |                            |
| C. Calculus (e.g., differential, integral, differential equations)                                                          |                            |
| D. Numerical methods (e.g., numerical integration, approximations, precision limits, error propagation)                     |                            |
| <b>2. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                                        | <b>4–6</b>                 |
| A. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation)                                    |                            |
| B. Probability distributions (e.g., discrete, continuous, normal, binomial)                                                 |                            |
| C. Estimation for a single mean (e.g., point, confidence intervals)                                                         |                            |
| D. Regression (linear, multiple), curve fitting, and goodness of fit (e.g., correlation coefficient, least squares)         |                            |
| E. Hypothesis testing (e.g., t-test, outlier testing, analysis of the variance)                                             |                            |
| <b>3. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                                  | <b>5–8</b>                 |
| A. Codes of ethics (e.g., professional and technical societies, ethical and legal considerations)                           |                            |
| B. Public health, safety, and welfare (e.g., public protection issues, licensing boards, professional liability)            |                            |
| C. Compliance with codes, standards, and regulations (e.g., CWA, CAA, RCRA, CERCLA, SDWA, NEPA, OSHA)                       |                            |
| D. Engineer's role in society (e.g., sustainability, resiliency, long-term viability)                                       |                            |
| <b>4. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                             | <b>5–8</b>                 |
| A. Time value of money (e.g., equivalence, present worth, equivalent annual worth, future worth, rate of return, annuities) |                            |
| B. Cost types and breakdowns (e.g., fixed, variable, direct and indirect labor, incremental, average, sunk, O&M)            |                            |
| C. Economic analyses (e.g., benefit-cost, breakeven, minimum cost, overhead, life cycle)                                    |                            |
| D. Project selection (e.g., comparison of projects with unequal lives, lease/buy/make, depreciation, discounted cash flow)  |                            |

|                                                                                                                                                 |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>5. Fundamental Principles</b>                                                                                                                | <b>7–11</b>  |
| A. Population projections and demand calculations (e.g., water, wastewater, solid waste, energy)                                                |              |
| B. Reactors                                                                                                                                     |              |
| C. Materials science (e.g., properties, corrosion, compatibility, stress strain)                                                                |              |
| <b>6. Environmental Chemistry</b>                                                                                                               | <b>7–11</b>  |
| A. Stoichiometry and chemical reactions (e.g., equilibrium, acid-base, oxidation-reduction, precipitation, pC-pH)                               |              |
| B. Kinetics (e.g., chemical conversion, growth and decay)                                                                                       |              |
| C. Organic chemistry (e.g., nomenclature, functional group reactions)                                                                           |              |
| D. Multimedia equilibrium partitioning (e.g., Henry's law, octanol partitioning coefficient)                                                    |              |
| <b>7. Health Hazards and Risk Assessment</b>                                                                                                    | <b>4–6</b>   |
| A. Dose-response toxicity (e.g., carcinogen, noncarcinogen)                                                                                     |              |
| B. Exposure routes and pathways                                                                                                                 |              |
| C. Occupational health (e.g., PPE, noise pollution, safety screening)                                                                           |              |
| <b>8. Fluid Mechanics and Hydraulics</b>                                                                                                        | <b>12–18</b> |
| A. Fluid statics (e.g., pressure, force analysis)                                                                                               |              |
| B. Closed conduits (e.g., Darcy-Weisbach, Hazen-Williams, Moody)                                                                                |              |
| C. Open channel (e.g., Manning, supercritical/subcritical, culverts, hydraulic elements)                                                        |              |
| D. Pumps (e.g., power, operating point, parallel, series)                                                                                       |              |
| E. Flow measurement (e.g., weirs, orifices, flumes)                                                                                             |              |
| F. Blowers (e.g., power, inlet/outlet pressure, efficiency, operating point, parallel, series)                                                  |              |
| G. Fluid dynamics (e.g., Bernoulli, laminar flow, turbulent flow, continuity equation)                                                          |              |
| H. Steady and unsteady flow                                                                                                                     |              |
| <b>9. Thermodynamics</b>                                                                                                                        | <b>3–5</b>   |
| A. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., first law, second law)                                                                                             |              |
| B. Energy, heat, and work (e.g., efficiencies, coefficient of performance, energy cycles, energy conversion, conduction, convection, radiation) |              |
| C. Behavior of ideal gases                                                                                                                      |              |
| <b>10. Surface Water Resources and Hydrology</b>                                                                                                | <b>9–14</b>  |
| A. Runoff calculations (e.g., land use, land cover, time of concentration, duration, intensity, frequency, runoff control, runoff management)   |              |
| B. Water storage sizing (e.g., reservoir, detention and retention basins)                                                                       |              |
| C. Routing (e.g., channel, reservoir)                                                                                                           |              |
| D. Water quality and modeling (e.g., erosion, channel stability, stormwater quality management, wetlands, Streeter-Phelps, eutrophication)      |              |
| E. Water budget (e.g., evapotranspiration, precipitation, infiltration, soil moisture, storage)                                                 |              |

- 11. Groundwater, Soils, and Sediments** **8–12**
- A. Basic hydrogeology (e.g., aquifer properties, soil characteristics, subsurface)
  - B. Groundwater flow (e.g., Darcy’s law, specific capacity, velocity, gradient, transport mechanisms)
  - C. Drawdown (e.g., Dupuit, Jacob, Theis, Thiem)
  - D. Remediation of soil, sediment, and/or groundwater (e.g., recovery, ex-situ/in-situ treatment)
- 12. Water and Wastewater** **12–18**
- A. Water and wastewater characteristics (e.g., physical, chemical, biological, nutrients)
  - B. Mass balance and loading rates (e.g., removal efficiencies)
  - C. Physical processes (e.g., sedimentation/clarification, filtration, adsorption, membrane, flocculation, headworks, flow equalization, air stripping, activated carbon)
  - D. Chemical processes (e.g., disinfection, ion exchange, softening, coagulation, precipitation)
  - E. Biological processes (e.g., activated sludge, fixed film, lagoons, phytoremediation, aerobic, anaerobic, anoxic)
  - F. Sludge treatment and handling (e.g., land application, digestion, sludge dewatering, composting)
  - G. Water conservation and reuse
- 13. Air Quality and Control** **8–12**
- A. Ambient and indoor air quality (e.g., criteria, toxic and hazardous air pollutants)
  - B. Mass and energy balances (e.g., STP basis, loading rates, heating values)
  - C. Emissions (e.g., factors, rates)
  - D. Atmospheric modeling and meteorology (e.g., stability classes, dispersion modeling, lapse rates)
  - E. Gas treatment technologies (e.g., biofiltration, scrubbers, adsorbers, incineration, catalytic reducers)
  - F. Particle treatment technologies (e.g., baghouses, cyclones, electrostatic precipitators)
  - G. Indoor air quality modeling and controls (e.g., air exchanges, steady- and nonsteady-state reactor model)
- 14. Solid and Hazardous Waste** **7–11**
- A. Mass and energy balances
  - B. Solid waste management (e.g., collection, transportation, storage, composting, recycling, waste to energy)
  - C. Solid waste disposal (e.g., landfills, leachate and gas collection)
  - D. Hazardous waste compatibility
  - E. Site characterization (e.g., sampling, monitoring, remedial investigation)
  - F. Hazardous and radioactive waste treatment and disposal (e.g., physical, chemical, thermal, biological)
- 15. Energy and Environment** **4–6**
- A. Energy sources concepts (e.g., conventional and alternative)
  - B. Environmental impact of energy sources and production (e.g., greenhouse gas production, carbon footprint, thermal, water needs)



---

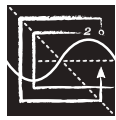
**Fundamentals of Engineering (FE)  
INDUSTRIAL AND SYSTEMS CBT Exam Specifications  
Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations**

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                                        | Number of Questions |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                                            | <b>6–9</b>          |
| A. Analytic geometry (e.g., areas, volumes)                                                                                      |                     |
| B. Calculus (e.g., derivatives, integrals, progressions, series)                                                                 |                     |
| C. Linear algebra (e.g., matrix operations, vector analysis)                                                                     |                     |
| <b>2. Engineering Sciences</b>                                                                                                   | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Thermodynamics and fluid mechanics                                                                                            |                     |
| B. Statics, dynamics, and materials                                                                                              |                     |
| C. Electricity and electrical circuits                                                                                           |                     |
| <b>3. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                                       | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Codes of ethics and licensure                                                                                                 |                     |
| B. Agreements and contracts                                                                                                      |                     |
| C. Professional, ethical, and legal responsibility                                                                               |                     |
| D. Public protection and regulatory issues                                                                                       |                     |
| <b>4. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                                  | <b>9–14</b>         |
| A. Discounted cash flows (e.g., nonannual compounding, time value of money)                                                      |                     |
| B. Evaluation of alternatives (e.g., PW, EAC, FW, IRR, benefit-cost)                                                             |                     |
| C. Cost analyses (e.g., fixed/variable, breakeven, estimating, overhead, inflation, incremental, sunk, replacement)              |                     |
| D. Depreciation and taxes (e.g., MACRS, straight line, after-tax cash flow, recapture)                                           |                     |
| <b>5. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                                             | <b>10–15</b>        |
| A. Probabilities (e.g., permutations and combinations, sets, laws of probability)                                                |                     |
| B. Probability distributions and functions (e.g., types, statistics, central limit theorem, expected value, linear combinations) |                     |
| C. Estimation, confidence intervals, and hypothesis testing (e.g., normal, t, chi-square, types of error, sample size)           |                     |
| D. Linear regression (e.g., parameter estimation, residual analysis, correlation)                                                |                     |
| E. Design of experiments (e.g., ANOVA, factorial designs)                                                                        |                     |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |             |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>6. Modeling and Quantitative Analysis</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Data, logic development, and analytics (e.g., databases, flowcharts, algorithms, data science techniques)</li> <li>B. Linear programming and optimization (e.g., formulation, solution, interpretation)</li> <li>C. Stochastic models and simulation (e.g., queuing, Markov processes, inverse probability functions)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                |             |
| <b>7. Engineering Management</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>8–12</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Principles and tools (e.g., planning, organizing, motivational theory, organizational structure)</li> <li>B. Project management (e.g., WBS, scheduling, PERT, CPM, earned value, agile)</li> <li>C. Performance measurement (e.g., KPIs, productivity, wage scales, balance scorecard, customer satisfaction)</li> <li>D. Decision making and risk (e.g., uncertainty, utility, decision trees, financial risk)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                      |             |
| <b>8. Manufacturing, Service, and Other Production Systems</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Manufacturing processes (e.g., machining, casting, welding, forming, dimensioning, new technologies)</li> <li>B. Manufacturing and service systems (e.g., throughput, measurement, automation, line balancing, energy management)</li> <li>C. Forecasting (e.g., moving average, exponential smoothing, tracking signals)</li> <li>D. Planning and scheduling (e.g., inventory, aggregate planning, MRP, theory of constraints, sequencing)</li> <li>E. Process improvements (e.g., lean systems, sustainability, value engineering)</li> </ul> |             |
| <b>9. Facilities and Supply Chain</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Flow, layout, and location analysis (e.g., from/to charts, layout types, distance metrics)</li> <li>B. Capacity analysis (e.g., number of machines and people, trade-offs, material handling)</li> <li>C. Supply chain management and design (e.g., pooling, transportation, network design, single-level/multilevel distribution models)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                            |             |
| <b>10. Human Factors, Ergonomics, and Safety</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          | <b>8–12</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Human factors (e.g., displays, controls, usability, cognitive engineering)</li> <li>B. Safety and industrial hygiene (e.g., workplace hazards, safety programs, regulations, environmental hazards)</li> <li>C. Ergonomics (e.g., biomechanics, cumulative trauma disorders, anthropometry, workplace design, macroergonomics)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                       |             |
| <b>11. Work Design</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>7–11</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Methods analysis (e.g., charting, workstation design, motion economy)</li> <li>B. Work measurement (e.g., time study, predetermined time systems, work sampling, standards)</li> <li>C. Learning curves</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |             |

- 12. Quality** **9–14**
- A. Quality management, planning, assurance, and systems (e.g., Six Sigma, QFD, TQM, house of quality, fishbone, Taguchi loss function)
  - B. Quality control (e.g., control charts, process capability, sampling plans, OC curves, DOE)
- 13. Systems Engineering, Analysis, and Design** **8–12**
- A. Requirements analysis and system design
  - B. Functional analysis and configuration management
  - C. Risk management (e.g., FMEA, fault trees, uncertainty)
  - D. Life-cycle engineering
  - E. Reliability engineering (e.g., MTTF, MTBR, availability, parallel and series failure)



## Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) MECHANICAL CBT Exam Specifications

### Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                                   | Number of Questions |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                                       | <b>6–9</b>          |
| A. Analytic geometry                                                                                                        |                     |
| B. Calculus (e.g., differential, integral, single-variable, multivariable)                                                  |                     |
| C. Ordinary differential equations (e.g., homogeneous, nonhomogeneous, Laplace transforms)                                  |                     |
| D. Linear algebra (e.g., matrix operations, vector analysis)                                                                |                     |
| E. Numerical methods (e.g., approximations, precision limits, error propagation, Taylor's series, Newton's method)          |                     |
| F. Algorithm and logic development (e.g., flowcharts, pseudocode)                                                           |                     |
| <b>2. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                                        | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Probability distributions (e.g., normal, binomial, empirical, discrete, continuous)                                      |                     |
| B. Measures of central tendencies and dispersions (e.g., mean, mode, standard deviation, confidence intervals)              |                     |
| C. Expected value (weighted average) in decision making                                                                     |                     |
| D. Regression (linear, multiple), curve fitting, and goodness of fit (e.g., correlation coefficient, least squares)         |                     |
| <b>3. Ethics and Professional Practice</b>                                                                                  | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Codes of ethics (e.g., NCEES <i>Model Law</i> , professional and technical societies, ethical and legal considerations)  |                     |
| B. Public health, safety, and welfare                                                                                       |                     |
| C. Intellectual property (e.g., copyright, trade secrets, patents, trademarks)                                              |                     |
| D. Societal considerations (e.g., economic, sustainability, life-cycle analysis, environmental)                             |                     |
| <b>4. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                             | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Time value of money (e.g., equivalence, present worth, equivalent annual worth, future worth, rate of return, annuities) |                     |
| B. Cost types and breakdowns (e.g., fixed, variable, incremental, average, sunk)                                            |                     |
| C. Economic analyses (e.g., cost-benefit, breakeven, minimum cost, overhead, life cycle)                                    |                     |

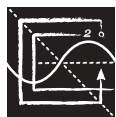
|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |              |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>5. Electricity and Magnetism</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            | <b>5–8</b>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Electrical fundamentals (e.g., charge, current, voltage, resistance, power, energy, magnetic flux)</li> <li>B. DC circuit analysis (e.g., Kirchhoff's laws, Ohm's law, series, parallel)</li> <li>C. AC circuit analysis (e.g., resistors, capacitors, inductors)</li> <li>D. Motors and generators</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                       |              |
| <b>6. Statics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | <b>9–14</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Resultants of force systems</li> <li>B. Concurrent force systems</li> <li>C. Equilibrium of rigid bodies</li> <li>D. Frames and trusses</li> <li>E. Centroids and moments of inertia</li> <li>F. Static friction</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |              |
| <b>7. Dynamics, Kinematics, and Vibrations</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | <b>10–15</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Kinematics of particles</li> <li>B. Kinetic friction</li> <li>C. Newton's second law for particles</li> <li>D. Work-energy of particles</li> <li>E. Impulse-momentum of particles</li> <li>F. Kinematics of rigid bodies</li> <li>G. Kinematics of mechanisms</li> <li>H. Newton's second law for rigid bodies</li> <li>I. Work-energy of rigid bodies</li> <li>J. Impulse-momentum of rigid bodies</li> <li>K. Free and forced vibrations</li> </ul>                                                |              |
| <b>8. Mechanics of Materials</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               | <b>9–14</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Shear and moment diagrams</li> <li>B. Stress transformations and Mohr's circle</li> <li>C. Stress and strain caused by axial loads</li> <li>D. Stress and strain caused by bending loads</li> <li>E. Stress and strain caused by torsional loads</li> <li>F. Stress and strain caused by shear</li> <li>G. Stress and strain caused by temperature changes</li> <li>H. Combined loading</li> <li>I. Deformations</li> <li>J. Column buckling</li> <li>K. Statically indeterminate systems</li> </ul> |              |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| <b>9. Material Properties and Processing</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | <b>7–11</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Properties (e.g., chemical, electrical, mechanical, physical, thermal)</li> <li>B. Stress-strain diagrams</li> <li>C. Ferrous metals</li> <li>D. Nonferrous metals</li> <li>E. Engineered materials (e.g., composites, polymers)</li> <li>F. Manufacturing processes</li> <li>G. Phase diagrams, phase transformation, and heat treating</li> <li>H. Materials selection</li> <li>I. Corrosion mechanisms and control</li> <li>J. Failure mechanisms (e.g., thermal failure, fatigue, fracture, creep)</li> </ul> |              |
| <b>10. Fluid Mechanics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>10–15</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Fluid properties</li> <li>B. Fluid statics</li> <li>C. Energy, impulse, and momentum</li> <li>D. Internal flow</li> <li>E. External flow</li> <li>F. Compressible flow (e.g., Mach number, isentropic flow relationships, normal shock)</li> <li>G. Power and efficiency</li> <li>H. Performance curves</li> <li>I. Scaling laws for fans, pumps, and compressors</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                      |              |
| <b>11. Thermodynamics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>10–15</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Properties of ideal gases and pure substances</li> <li>B. Energy transfers</li> <li>C. Laws of thermodynamics</li> <li>D. Processes</li> <li>E. Performance of components</li> <li>F. Power cycles</li> <li>G. Refrigeration and heat pump cycles</li> <li>H. Nonreacting mixtures of gases</li> <li>I. Psychrometrics</li> <li>J. Heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) processes</li> <li>K. Combustion and combustion products</li> </ul>                                                          |              |
| <b>12. Heat Transfer</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>7–11</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Conduction</li> <li>B. Convection</li> <li>C. Radiation</li> <li>D. Transient processes</li> <li>E. Heat exchangers</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |              |
| <b>13. Measurements, Instrumentation, and Controls</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      | <b>5–8</b>   |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Sensors and transducers</li> <li>B. Control systems (e.g., feedback, block diagrams)</li> <li>C. Dynamic system response</li> <li>D. Measurement uncertainty (e.g., error propagation, accuracy, precision, significant figures)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |              |

## **14. Mechanical Design and Analysis**

**10–15**

- A. Stress analysis of machine elements
- B. Failure theories and analysis
- C. Deformation and stiffness
- D. Springs
- E. Pressure vessels and piping
- F. Bearings
- G. Power screws
- H. Power transmission
- I. Joining methods (e.g., welding, adhesives, mechanical fasteners)
- J. Manufacturability (e.g., limits, fits)
- K. Quality and reliability
- L. Components (e.g., hydraulic, pneumatic, electromechanical)
- M. Engineering drawing interpretations and geometric dimensioning and tolerancing (GD&T)



## Fundamentals of Engineering (FE) OTHER DISCIPLINES CBT Exam Specifications Effective Beginning with the July 2020 Examinations

- The FE exam is a computer-based test (CBT). It is closed book with an electronic reference.
- Examinees have 6 hours to complete the exam, which contains 110 questions. The 6-hour time also includes a tutorial and an optional scheduled break.
- The FE exam uses both the International System of Units (SI) and the U.S. Customary System (USCS).

| Knowledge                                                                                                                                                                              | Number of Questions |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <b>1. Mathematics</b>                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>8–12</b>         |
| A. Analytic geometry and trigonometry                                                                                                                                                  |                     |
| B. Differential equations                                                                                                                                                              |                     |
| C. Numerical methods (e.g., algebraic equations, roots of equations, approximations, precision limits, convergence)                                                                    |                     |
| D. Linear algebra (e.g., matrix operations)                                                                                                                                            |                     |
| E. Single-variable calculus                                                                                                                                                            |                     |
| <b>2. Probability and Statistics</b>                                                                                                                                                   | <b>6–9</b>          |
| A. Estimation (e.g., point, confidence intervals)                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| B. Expected value and expected error in decision making                                                                                                                                |                     |
| C. Sample distributions and sizes (e.g., significance, hypothesis testing, non-normal distributions)                                                                                   |                     |
| D. Goodness of fit (e.g., correlation coefficient, standard errors, $R^2$ )                                                                                                            |                     |
| <b>3. Chemistry</b>                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>5–8</b>          |
| A. Oxidation and reduction (e.g., reactions, corrosion control)                                                                                                                        |                     |
| B. Acids and bases (e.g., pH, buffers)                                                                                                                                                 |                     |
| C. Chemical reactions (e.g., stoichiometry, equilibrium, bioconversion)                                                                                                                |                     |
| <b>4. Instrumentation and Controls</b>                                                                                                                                                 | <b>4–6</b>          |
| A. Sensors (e.g., temperature, pressure, motion, pH, chemical constituents)                                                                                                            |                     |
| B. Data acquisition (e.g., logging, sampling rate, sampling range, filtering, amplification, signal interface, signal processing, analog/digital [A/D], digital/analog [D/A], digital) |                     |
| C. Logic diagrams                                                                                                                                                                      |                     |
| <b>5. Engineering Ethics and Societal Impacts</b>                                                                                                                                      | <b>5–8</b>          |
| A. Codes of ethics (e.g., identifying and solving ethical dilemmas)                                                                                                                    |                     |
| B. Public protection issues (e.g., licensing boards)                                                                                                                                   |                     |
| C. Societal impacts (e.g., economic, sustainability, life-cycle analysis, environmental, public safety)                                                                                |                     |

|                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |             |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| <b>6. Safety, Health, and Environment</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           | <b>6–9</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Industrial hygiene (e.g., carcinogens, toxicology, exposure limits, radiation exposure, biohazards, half-life)</li> <li>B. Basic safety equipment (e.g., pressure-relief valves, emergency shutoffs, fire prevention and control, personal protective equipment)</li> <li>C. Gas detection and monitoring (e.g., O<sub>2</sub>, CO, CO<sub>2</sub>, CH<sub>4</sub>, H<sub>2</sub>S, radon)</li> <li>D. Electrical safety</li> <li>E. Confined space entry and ventilation rates</li> <li>F. Hazard communications (e.g., SDS, proper labeling, concentrations, fire ratings, safety equipment)</li> </ul> |             |
| <b>7. Engineering Economics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | <b>6–9</b>  |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Time value of money (e.g., present worth, annual worth, future worth, rate of return)</li> <li>B. Cost analysis (e.g., incremental, average, sunk, estimating)</li> <li>C. Economic analyses (e.g., breakeven, benefit-cost, optimal economic life)</li> <li>D. Uncertainty (e.g., expected value and risk)</li> <li>E. Project selection (e.g., comparison of projects with unequal lives, lease/buy/make, depreciation, discounted cash flow, decision trees)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                |             |
| <b>8. Statics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Vector analysis</li> <li>B. Force systems (e.g., resultants, concurrent, distributed)</li> <li>C. Force couple systems</li> <li>D. Equilibrium of rigid bodies (e.g., support reactions)</li> <li>E. Internal forces in rigid bodies (e.g., trusses, frames, machines)</li> <li>F. Area properties (e.g., centroids, moments of inertia, radius of gyration, parallel axis theorem)</li> <li>G. Static friction</li> <li>H. Free-body diagrams</li> <li>I. Weight and mass computations (e.g., slug, lb<sub>m</sub>, lb<sub>f</sub>, kg, N, ton, dyne, g, g<sub>c</sub>)</li> </ul>                       |             |
| <b>9. Dynamics</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Particle and rigid-body kinematics</li> <li>B. Linear motion (e.g., force, mass, acceleration)</li> <li>C. Angular motion (e.g., torque, inertia, acceleration)</li> <li>D. Mass moment of inertia</li> <li>E. Impulse and momentum (e.g., linear, angular)</li> <li>F. Work, energy, and power</li> <li>G. Dynamic friction</li> <li>H. Vibrations (e.g., natural frequency)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |             |
| <b>10. Strength of Materials</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    | <b>9–14</b> |
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A. Stress types (e.g., normal, shear)</li> <li>B. Combined loading—principle of superposition</li> <li>C. Stress and strain caused by axial loads, bending loads, torsion, or transverse shear forces</li> <li>D. Shear and moment diagrams</li> <li>E. Analysis of beams, trusses, frames, and columns</li> <li>F. Loads and deformations (e.g., axial-extension, torque-angle of twist, moment-rotation)</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                        |             |

- G. Stress transformation and principal stresses, including stress-based yielding and fracture criteria (e.g., Mohr's circle, maximum normal stress, Tresca, von Mises)
- H. Material failure (e.g., Euler buckling, creep, fatigue, brittle fracture, stress concentration factors, factor of safety, and allowable stress)

## **11. Materials**

**6–9**

- A. Physical (phase diagrams) properties of materials (e.g., alloy phase diagrams, phase equilibrium, and phase change)
- B. Mechanical properties of materials
- C. Chemical properties of materials
- D. Thermal properties of materials
- E. Electrical properties of materials
- F. Material selection

## **12. Fluid Mechanics**

**12–18**

- A. Fluid properties (e.g., Newtonian, non-Newtonian, liquids and gases)
- B. Dimensionless numbers (e.g., Reynolds number, Froude number, Mach number)
- C. Laminar and turbulent flow
- D. Fluid statics (e.g., hydrostatic head)
- E. Energy, impulse, and momentum equations (e.g., Bernoulli equation)
- F. Pipe and duct flow and friction losses (e.g., pipes, valves, fittings, laminar, transitional and turbulent flow)
- G. Open-channel flow (e.g., Manning's equation, drag)
- H. Fluid transport systems (e.g., series and parallel operations)
- I. Flow measurement (e.g., pitot tube, venturi meter, weir)
- J. Turbomachinery (e.g., pumps, turbines, fans, compressors)
- K. Ideal gas law (e.g., mixtures of nonreactive gases)
- L. Real gas law (e.g., z factor)

## **13. Basic Electrical Engineering**

**6–9**

- A. Electrical fundamentals (e.g., charge, current, voltage, resistance, power, energy)
- B. Current and voltage laws (e.g., Kirchhoff, Ohm)
- C. AC and DC circuits (e.g., real and imaginary components, complex numbers, power factor, reactance and impedance, series, parallel, capacitance and inductance, RLC circuits)
- D. Measuring devices (e.g., voltmeter, ammeter, wattmeter)
- E. Three-phase power (e.g., motor efficiency, balanced loads, power equation)

## **14. Thermodynamics and Heat Transfer**

**9–14**

- A. Thermodynamic laws (e.g., first law, second law)
- B. Thermodynamic equilibrium
- C. Thermodynamic properties (e.g., entropy, enthalpy, heat capacity)
- D. Thermodynamic processes (e.g., isothermal, adiabatic, reversible, irreversible)
- E. Heat transfer (e.g., conduction, convection, radiation)
- F. Mass and energy balances
- G. Property and phase diagrams (e.g., T-s, P-h, P-v)
- H. Combustion and combustion products (e.g., CO, CO<sub>2</sub>, NO<sub>x</sub>, ash, particulates)
- I. Psychrometrics (e.g., relative humidity, wet bulb)